THE WORKS OF FRANCIS BACON,
Baron of VERULAM,
Viscount St. Alban,
and
Lord High Chancellor of England.

VOL. III.

LONDON:
Printed for J. Walthoe, D. Midwinter, W. Innys, A. Ward,
D. Browne, C. Davis, J. and R. Tonson, and A. Millar.
M.DCC.XL.
Experiments in comfort, touching the straining and passing of bodies, one through another; which they call Percolation.

Dig a pit upon the sea-shore, somewhat above the high-water mark, and sink it as deep as the low-water mark; and as the tide cometh in, it will fill with water, fresh and potable. This is commonly practised upon the coast of Barbary, where other fresh water is wanting. And Caesar knew this well when he was besieged in Alexandria: for by digging of pits in the sea-shore, he did frustrate the laborious works of the enemies, which had turned the sea-water upon the wells of Alexandria; and so saved his army being then in desperation. But Caesar mistook the cause, for he thought that all sea-sands had natural springs of fresh water: but it is plain, that it is the sea-water; because the pit filled according to the measure of the tide: and the sea-water passing or straining through the sands, leaveth the saltiness.

2. I remember to have read, that trial hath been made of salt-water passed through earth, through ten vessels, one within another; and yet it hath not lost its saltiness, as to become potable: but the same man faith, that (by the relation of another) salt-water drained through twenty vessels, hath become fresh. This experiment seemeth to cross that other of pits, made by the sea-side; and yet but in part, if it be true, that twenty repetitions do the effect. But it is worth the note, how poor the imitations of nature are in common course of experiments, except they be led by great judgment, and some good light of axioms. For first, there is no small difference between a passage of water through twenty small vessels, and through such a distance, as between the low-water and high-water mark. Secondly, there is a great difference between earth and sand; for all earth hath in it a kind of nitrous salt, from which sand is more free; and besides, earth doth not strain the water so finely, as sand doth. But there is a third point, that I suspect as much or more than the other two; and that is, that in the experiment of transmission of the sea-water into the pits, the water rifeth; but in the experiment of transmission of the water through the vessels, it falleth. Now certain it is, that the saltier part of water (once salted throughout) goeth to the bottom. And therefore no marvel, if the draining of water by descent, doth not make it fresh: besides, I do somewhat doubt, that the
very da
ing of the water, that cometh from the sea, is more proper to strike off the salt part, than where the water slideth of its own motion.

3. IT feemeth Percolation, or Tranfmißion, (which is commonly called Straining) is a good kind of separation, not only of thick from thin, and gross from fine, but of more subtile natures; and varieth according to the body through which the tranfmißion is made: as if through a woollen bag, the liquor leaveth the saltnefs; if through sand, the saltnefs, &c. They speake of fevering wine from water, passing it through ivy wood, or through othef the like porous body; but non conf.lat.

4. Th. gum of trees (which we fee to be commonly shining and clear) is but a fine passage or Straining of the juice of the tree through the wood and bark. And in like manner, cornith diamonds, and rock rubies (which are yet more re población than gums) are the fine exudations of ftone.

5. ARISTOTLE giveth the caufe, vainly, why the feathers of birds are of more lively colours, than the hairs of beaifs; for no beaff hath any fine azure, or carnation, or green hair. He faith; it is, because birds are more in the beams of the fun than beaiffs; but that is manifestly untrue; for cattle are more in the fun than birds, that live commonly in the woods, or in fome covert. The true caufe is, that the excrementitious moifteur of living creatures, which maketh as well the feathers in birds, as the hair in beaiffs, passeth through a finer and more delicate Strainer than it doth in beaiffs: for feathers pass through quills; and hair through skin.

6. THE clarifying of liquors by adhefion, is an inward Percolation; and is effected, when fome cleaving body is mixed and agitated with the liquors; whereby the groffer part of the liquor ficks to that cleaving body; and fo the finer parts are freed from the groffer. So the apothecaries clarify their syrups by whites of eggs, beaten with the juices which they would clarifie; which whites of eggs gather all the dregs and groffer parts of the juice to them; and after the syrup being fet on the fire, the whites of eggs themselves harden, and are taken forth. So ippocrates is clarifyed by mixing with milk, and ftring it about, and then passing it through a woollen bag, which they call Hippocrates's Sleeve, and the cleaving nature of the milk draweth the powder of the fpices, and groffer parts of the liquor to it; and in the passage they fick upon the woollen bag.

7. THE clarifying of water, is an experiment tending to health; besides the pleafure of the eye, when water is cryftalline. It is effected by cafting in and placing pebbles at the head of the current, that the water may flain through them.

8. IT may be, Percolation doth not only caufe clearnefs and splendour, but sweetnefs of favour; for that alfo followeth as well as clearnefs, when the finer parts are fevered from the groffer. So it is found, that the sweats of men, that have much heat, and exercife much, and have clean bodies, and fine skins, do smell sweet; as was faid of Alexander; and we fee, commonly that gums have sweet odours.

Experiments in conform, touching Motion of bodies upon their pressure.

9. TAKE a glafs, and put water into it, and wet your finger, and draw it round about the lip of the glafs, prefing it somewhat hard; and after you have drawn it fome few times about, it will make the water frifk and fpinkle up, in a fine dew. This infance doth excellently demonstrate the force of compreflion in a solid body: for whencesover a solid body (as wood, ftone, metal, &c.) is prefled, there is an inward tumult in the parts thereof, seeking to...
to deliver themselves from the compression: and this is the cause of all violent motion. Wherein it is strange, in the highest degree, that this motion hath never been observed, nor inquired; it being of all motions the most common, and the chief root of all mechanical operations. This motion worketh in round at first, by way of proof and search; which way to deliver it self; and then worketh in progress, where it findeth the deliverance easiest. In liquors this motion is visible; for all liquors strucken make round circles, and withal daim; but in solids (which break not) it is so subtle, as it is invisible; but nevertheless bewrayeth it self by many effects; as in this instance whereof we speak. For the pressure of the finger, furthered by the wetting, (because it sticketh so much the better unto the lip of the glafs) after some continuance, putteth all the small parts of the glafs into work; that they stroke the water sharply; from which percussion that sprinkling cometh.

10. If you strike or pierce a solid body, that is brittle, as glafs, or sugar, it breaketh not only where the immediate force is; but breaketh all about into shivers and sisters; the motion, upon the pressure, searching all ways, and breaking where it findeth the body weakest.

11. The powder in shot, being dilated into such a flame; as endureth not compression, moveth likewise in round, (the flame being in the nature of a liquid body) sometimes recoiling; sometimes breaking the piece; but generally discharging the bullet, because there it findeth easiest deliverance.

12. This motion upon pressure, and the reciprocal thereof, which is motion upon tenure, we use to call (by one common name) motion of liberty; which is, when any body, being forced to a preternatural extent or dimension, delivereth and restoreth itself to the natural: as when a blown bladder (pressed) riseth again; or when leather or cloth tentured, spring back. These two motions (of which there be infinite instances) we shall handle in due place.

13. This motion upon pressure is excellently also demonstrated in sounds; as when one chimeth upon a bell, it soundeth; but as soon as he layeth his hand upon it, the sound ceaseth: and so, the sound of a virginal string, as soon as the quill of the jack falleth from it, stoppeth. For these sounds are produced by the subtile percussione of the minute part of the bell, or string, upon the air, all one, as the water is caused to leap by the subtile percussione of the minute parts of the glafs, upon the water, whereof we spake a little before in the ninth experiment. For you must not take it to be the local shaking of the bell, or string, that doth it: as we shall fully declare, when we come hereafter to handle sounds.

Experiments in comfort, touching Separation of bodies by weight.

14. Take a glafs with a belly and a long neb; fill the belly (in part) with water: take also another glafs, whereinto put claret wine and water mingled; reverse the first glafs, with the belly upwards, stopping the neb with your finger; then dip the mouth of it within the second glafs, and remove your finger; continue it in that posture for a time; and it will unmingle the wine from the water: the wine ascending and settling in the top of the upper glafs; and the water descending and settling in the bottom of the lower glafs. The passage is apparent to the eye; for you shall see the wine, as it were, in a small vein, riling through the water. For handiness sake (because the working requireth some small time) it were good you hang the upper glafs upon a nail. But as soon as there is gathered so much pure and unmixed
NATURAL HISTORY.  CENT. I.

unmixed water in the bottom of the lower glass, as that the mouth of the upper glass dippeeth into it, the motion ceaseth.

15. LET the upper glass be wine, and the lower water; there followeth no motion at all. Let the upper glass be water pure, the lower water coloured, or, contrariwise, there followeth no motion at all. But it hath been tried, that though the mixture of wine and water, in the lower glass, be three parts water and but one wine, yet it doth not dead the motion. This separation of water and wine appeareth to be made by weight; for it must be of bodies of unequal weight, or else it worketh not; and the heavier body must ever be in the upper glass. But then note, withal, that the water being made penfile, and there being a great weight of water in the belly of the glass, sustained by a small pillar of water in the neck of the glass, it is that which setteth the motion on work: For water and wine in one glass, with long standing, will hardly sever.

16. THIS experiment would be extended from mixtures of several liquors, to simple bodies, which consist of several similar parts: try it therefore with brine, or salt-water, and fresh-water; placing the salt-water (which is the heavier) in the upper glass; and see whether the fresh will come above. Try it also with water thick sugared, and pure water; and see whether the water, which cometh above, will losse its sweetnes: for which purpofe it were good there were a little cock made in the belly of the upper glass.

Experiments in contort, touching judicious and accurate infusions, both in liquors and air.

17. IN bodies containing fine spirits, which do easily dissipate, when you make infusions, the rule is; a short stay of the body in the liquor, receiveth the spirit; and a longer stay, confoundeth it; because it draweth forth the earthy part withal, which enbaith the finer. And therefore it is an error in physicians, to rest firmly upon the length of stay, for increasing the virtue. But if you will have the infusion strong, in those kinds of bodies which have fine spirits, your way is not to give longer time, but to repeat the infusion of the body oftner. Take violets, and infuse a good pugil of them in a quart of vinegar; let them stay three quarters of an hour, and take them forth, and refresh the infusion with like quantity of new violets, seven times; and it will make a vinegar so fresh of the flower, as if a twelvemonth after, it be brought you in a faucer, you shall smell it before it come at you.

Note, that it smelleth more perfectly of the flower, a good while after than at first.

18. THIS rule, which we have given, is of singular use for the preparations of medicines, and other infusions. As for example: the leaf of burrage hath an excellent spirit, to reprefs the fuliginous vapour of dusky melancholy, and so to cure madness: but nevertheless, if the leaf be infused long, it yieldeth forth but a raw subsance, of no virtue: therefore I suppose, that if in the must of wine, or wort of beer, while it worketh, before it be tuned, the burrage stay a small time, and be often changed with fresh; it will make a sovereign drink for melancholy passions. And the like I conceive of orange flowers.

16 RHUBARB hath manifestly in it parts of contrary operations: parts that purge; and parts that bind the body: and the first lay looser, and the latter lay deeper: so that if you infuse rhubarb for an hour, and crush it well, it will purge better, and bind the body less after the purging, than if it stood twenty four hours; this is tried; but I conceive like wise, that by repeating
the infusion of rhubarb, several times, (as was said of violets,) letting each stay in but a small time; you may make it as strong a purging medicine, as scammony. And it is not a small thing won in physic, if you can make rhubarb, and other medicines that are benedict, as strong purgers, as those that are not without some malignity.

20. **Purging** medicines, for the most part, have their purgative virtue in a fine spirit; as appeareth by that they endure not boiling without much loss of virtue. And therefore it is of good use in physic, if you can retain the purging virtue, and take away the unpleasing taste of the purger; which it is like you may do, by this course of infusing oft, with little stay. For it is probable, that the horrible and odious taste, is in the grosser part.

21. **Generally**, the working by infusions is gross and blind, except you first try the issuing of the several parts of the body, which of them issue more speedily, and which more slowly; and so by apportioning the time, can take and leave that quality, which you desire. This to know, there are two ways; the one to try what long stay, and what short stay worketh, as hath been said: the other to try in order, the succeeding infusions, of one and the same body, successively in several liquors. As for example; take orange pills, or rosemary, or cinnamon, or what you will; and let them infuse half an hour in water: then take them out, and infuse them again in another water; and so the third time: and then taste and consider the first water, the second, and the third: and you will find them differing, not only in strength and weakness, but otherwise in taste or odour; for it may be the first water will have more of the scent, as more fragrant; and the second more of the taste, as more bitter or biting, &c.

22. **Infusions** in air, (for so we may well call odours) have the same diversities with infusions in water; in that the several odours (which are in one flower, or other body) issue at several times; some earlier, some later: so we find that violets, woodbines, strawberies, yield a pleasing scent, that cometh forth first; but soon after an ill scent quite differing from the former. Which is caused, not so much by mellowing, as by the late issuing of the grosser spirit.

23. As we may desire to extract the finest spirits in some cases; so we may desire also to discharge them (as hurtful) in some other. So wine burnt, by reason of the evaporating of the finer spirit, enflameth less, and is better in aques: opium loseth some of his poisonous quality, if it be vapoured out, mingled with spirit of wine, or the like: fesc loseth somewhat of its windiness by decocting; and (generally) subtile or windy spirits are taken off by incension, or evaporation. And even in infusions in things that are of too high a spirit, you were better pour off the first infusion, after a small time, and use the later.

*Experiment solitary touching the appetite of continuation in liquids.*

24. **Bubbles** are in the form of an hemisphere; air within, and a little skin of water without: and it seemeth somewhat strange, that the air should rise so swiftly, while it is in the water; and when it cometh to the top, should be stayed by so weak a cover as that of the bubble is. But as for the swift ascent of the air, while it is under the water, that is a motion of percussion from the water; which it self descending, driveth up the air; and no motion of levity in the air. And this *Democritus* called *Motus Plagae*. In this common experiment, the cause of the enclosure of the bubble is, for that the appetite to resist separation, or discontinuance, (which in solid bodies
dies is strong) is also in liquors, though fainter and weaker; as we see in this of the bubble: we see it also in little glasses of spit that children make of rushes; and in cattles of bubbles, which they make by blowing into water, having obtained a little degree of tenacity by mixture of soap: we see it also in the stillicides of water, which if there be water enough to follow, will draw themselves into a small thread, because they will not discontinue; but if there be no remedy, then they cast themselves into round drops; which is the figure that saveth the body from discontinuance: the same reason is of the roundness of the bubble, as well for the skin of water, as for the air within: for the air likewise avoideth discontinuance; and therefore casteth itself into a round figure. And for the stop and arrest of the air a little while, it sheweth that the air of itself hath little or no appetite of ascending.

Experiment solitary touching the making of artificial springs.

25. The rejection, which I continually use, of experiments, (though it appeareth not) is infinite; but yet if an experiment be probable in the work, and of great use, I receive it, but deliver it as doubtful. It was reported by a sober man, that an artificial spring may be made thus: find out a hanging ground, where there is a good quick fall of rain-water. Lay a half-trough of stone, of a good length, three or four foot deep within the same ground; with one end upon the high ground, the other upon the low. Cover the trough with brakes a good thickness, and cast sand upon the top of the brakes: you shall see, (faith he) that after some showers are past, the lower end of the trough will run like a spring of water: which is no marvel if it hold while the rain-water lasteth; but he said it would continue long time after the rain is past: as if the water did multiply itself upon the air, by the help of the coldness and condensation of the earth, and the comfort of the first water.

Experiment solitary touching the venomous quality of man's flesh.

26. The French, (which put off the name of the French disease, unto the name of the disease of Naples,) do report, that at the siege of Naples, there were certain wicked merchants that barrelled up man's flesh, (of some that had been lately slain in Barbary) and sold it for tunny and that upon that soul and high nourishment, was the original of that disease. Which may well be; for that it is certain, that the canibals in the West-Indies, eat man's flesh; and the West-Indies were full of the pox when they were first discovered: and at this day the most of the poisons, practised by the West-Indians, have some mixture of the blood, or fat, or flesh of man: and divers witches, and for-ceress, as well amongst the heathen, as amongst the christians, have fed upon man's flesh, to aid (as it seemeth) their imagination, with high and foul vapours.

Experiment solitary touching the variation and transmutatian of air into water.

27. It seemeth that there be these ways (in likelihood) of version of vapours or air, into water and moisture. The first is cold; which doth manifestly condense; as we see in the contracting of the air in the weather-glass; whereby it is a degree nearer to water. We see it also in the generation of springs, which the antients thought (very probably) to be made by the version of air into water, holpen by the reft, which the air hath in those parts; whereby it cannot dilipate. And by the coldness of rocks; for there springs are chiefly generated. We see it also in the effects of the cold of the middle region.
I. NATURAL HISTORY.

region (as they call it) of the air; which produceth dews and rains. And the experiment of turning water into ice, by snow, nitre and salt, (whereof we shall speak hereafter,) would be transferred to the turning of air into water.

The second way is by compression; as in stillatories, where the vapour is turned back upon itself, by the encounter of the sides of the stillatory; and in the dew upon the covers of boiling pots; and in the dew towards rain, upon marble and wainscot. But this is like to do no great effect; except it be upon vapours, and gross air, that are already very near in degree to water. The third is that, which may be searched into, but doth not yet appear; which is, by mingling of moist vapours with air; and trying if they will not bring a return of more water, than the water was at first: for if so, that increase is a version of the air: therefore put water into the bottom of a stillatory, with the neb stopped; weigh the water first; hang in the middle of the stillatory a large sponge; and see what quantity of water you can crush out of it; and what it is more, or less, compared with the water spent; for you must understand, that if any version can be wrought, it will be easiest done in small pores: and that is the reason why we prescribe a sponge.

The fourth way is probable also, though not appearing; which is, by receiving the air into the small pores of bodies: for (as hath been said) every thing in small quantity is more easy for version; and tangible bodies have no pleasure in the comfort of air, but endeavour to subduct it into a more dense body: but in entire bodies it is checked; because if the air should condense, there is nothing to succeed: therefore it must be in loose bodies, as sand, and powder; which we see, if they lie close, of themselves gather moisture.

Experiment solitary touching helps towards the beauty and good features of persons.

28. It is reported by some of the ancients; that whelps, or other creatures, if they be put young into such a cage or box, as they cannot rise to their stature, but may increase in breadth or length, will grow accordingly, as they can get room: which if it be true and feasible, and that the young creature so pressed, and straightened, doth not thereupon die; it is a means to produce dwarf creatures, and in a very strange figure. This is certain, and noted long since; that the pressure or forming of parts of creatures, when they are very young, doth alter the shape not a little; as the froaking of the heads of infants, between the hands, was noted of old, to make Macroscopephali; which shape of the head, at that time, was esteemed. And the raising gently of the bridge of the nose, doth prevent the deformity of a saddle nose. Which observation well weighed, may teach a means, to make the persons of men and women, in many kinds, more comely, and better featured; than otherwise they would be; by the forming and shaping of them in their infancy: as by froaking up the calves of the legs, to keep them from falling down too low; and by froaking up the forehead, to keep them from being low-foreheaded. And it is a common practice, to swathe infants, that they may grow more straight, and better shaped: and we see young women, by wearing straight bodice, keep themselves from being gross and corpulent.

Experiment solitary touching the condenSing of air in such fort as it may put on weight, and yield nourishment.

29. ONIONS, as they hang, will many of them shoot forth; and so will penny-royal; and so will an herb called orpin; with which they use in the country,
country, to trim their houses, binding it to a lath or stick, and setting it against a wall. We see it likewise, more especially, in the greater sempervivem, which will put out branches, two or three years: but it is true, that commonly they wrap the root in a cloth smeared with oil, and renew it once in half a year. The like is reported by some of the ancients, of the stalks of lilies. The cause is; for that these plants have a strong, dense, and succulent moisture, which is not apt to exhale; and so is able, from the old store, without drawing help from the earth, to suffice the sprouting of the plant: and this sprouting is chiefly in the late spring, or early summer; which are the times of putting forth. We see also, that stumps of trees, lying out of the ground, will put forth sprouts for a time. But it is a noble trial, and of very great consequence, to try whether these things, in the sprouting, do increase weight; which must be tried, by weighing them before they are hang’d up; and afterwards again, when they are sprouted. For if they encrease not in weight; then it is no more but this; that what they lend forth in the sprout, they lose in some other part: but if they gather weight, then it is magnae naturae; for it sheweth that air may be made so to be condensed, as to be converted into a dense body; whereas the race and period of all things, here above the earth, is to extenuate and turn things to be more pneumatical and rare; and not to be retrograde, from pneumatical to that which is dense. It sheweth also, that air can nourish; which is another great matter of consequence. Note, that to try this, the experiment of the sempervivem, must be made without oiling the cloth; for else, it may be the plant receiveth nourishment from the oil.

Experiment solitary touching the commixture of flame and air, and the great force thereof.

30. Flame and air do not mingle, except it be in an instant; or in the vital spirit of vegetables, and living creatures. In gun-powder, the force of it hath been ascribed to rarefaction of the earthy substance into flame; and thus far it is true: and then (forsooth) it is become another element; the form whereof occupieth more place; and so, of necessity, followeth a dilatation: and therefore, left two bodies should be in one place, there must needs also follow an expulsion of the pellet; or blowing up of the mine. But these are crude and ignorant speculations. For flame, if there were nothing else, except it were in very great quantity, will be suffocated with any hard body, such as a pellet is; or the barrel of a gun; so as the flame would not expel the hard body; but the hard body would kill the flame, and not suffer it to kindle, or spread. But the cause of this so potent a motion, is the nitre, (which we call otherwise sall-petre;) which having in it a notable crude and windy spirit, first by the heat of the fire suddenly dilateth it self; (and we know that simple air, being preternaturally attenuated by heat, will make it self room, and break, and blow up that which resisteth it;) and secondly, when the nitre hath dilated it self, it bloweth abroad the flame, as an inward bellows. And therefore we see that brimstone, pitch, camphire, wild-fire, and divers other inflammable matters, though they burn cruelly, and are hard to quench, yet they make no such fiery wind, as gun-powder doth: and on the other side, we see that quick-silver, (which is a most crude and watry body) heated, and pent in, hath the like force with gun-powder. As for living creatures, it is certain, their vital spirits are a substance compounded of an airy and flamy matter; and though air and flame being free, will not well mingle; yet bound in by a body that hath some fixing, they will. For that you may
may best see in those two bodies, (which are their aliment,) water and oil; for they likewise will not well mingle of themselves; but in the bodies of plants, and living creatures, they will. It is no marvel therefore, that a small quantity of spirits, in the cells of the brain and canals of the finevES, are able to move the whole body, (which is of so great mass,) both with so great force, as in wrestling, leaping; and with so great swiftness, as in playing division upon the lute. Such is the force of these two natures, air and flame, when they incorporate.

*Experiment solitary touching the secret nature of flame.*

31. Take a small wax candle, and put it in a socket of brass or iron; then set it upright in a porringer full of spirit of wine, heated: then set both the candle, and spirit of wine, on fire, and you shall see the flame of the candle open itself, and become four or five times bigger than otherwise it would have been; and appear in figure globular, and not in pyramids. You shall see also, that the inward flame of the candle keepeth colour, and doth not wax any whit blue towards the colour of the outward flame of the spirit of wine. This is a noble instance; wherein two things are most remarkable: the one, that one flame within another quencheth not; but is a fixed body, and continueth as air and water do. And therefore flame would still ascend upwards in one greatness, if it were not quenched on the sides; and the greater the flame is at the bottom, the higher is the rise. The other, that flame doth not mingle with flame; as air doth with air, or water with water, but only remaineth contiguous; as it cometh to pains betwixt consisting bodies. It appeareth also, that the form of a pyramid in flame, which we usually see, is merely by accident, and that the air about, by quenching the sides of the flame, crusheth it, and extenuateth it into that form; for of it self it would be round; and therefore smoke is in the figure of a pyramid reversed; for the air quencheth the flame, and receiveth the smoke. Note also, that the flame of the candle, within the flame of the spirit of wine, is troubled; and doth not only open and move upwards, but moveth waving, and to and fro: as if flame of its own nature (if it were not quenched,) would roll and turn, as well as move upwards. By all which it sheweth, that the celestial bodies, (most of them,) are true fires or flames, as the Stoicks held; more fine (perhaps) and rarified, than our flame is. For they are all globular and determinate; they have rotation; and they have the colour and splendour of flame: so that flame above is durable, and confistent, and in its natural place; but with us it is a stranger, and momentary, and impure; like Vulcan that halted with his fall.

*Experiment solitary touching the different force of flame in the midst and on the sides.*

32. Take an arrow, and hold it in flame, for the space of ten pulsers, and when it cometh forth, you shall find those parts of the arrow, which were on the outsides of the flame, more burned, blacked, and turned almost into a coal, whereas that in the midst of the flame, will be, as if the fire had scarce touched it. This is an instance of great consequence for the discovery of the nature of flame; and sheweth manifestly, that flame burneth more violently towards the sides, than in the midst; and which is more, that heat or fire is not violent or furious, but where it is checked and pent. And therefore the Peripateticks (howsoever their opinion of an element of fire above the air is justly exploded;) in that point they acquit themselves well:

Vol. III, B for
for being opposed, that if there were a sphere of fire, that encompassed the earth so near hand, it were impossible but all things should be burnt up; they answer, that the pure elemental fire, in its own place, and not irritated, is but of a moderate heat.

Experiment solitary touching the decrease of the natural motion of gravity in great distance from the earth; or within some depth of the earth.

33. It is affirmed constantly by many, as an usual experiment; that a lump of ore, in the bottom of a mine, will be tumbled and stirred by two men's strength; which if you bring it to the top of the earth, will all fix men's strength at the least to stir it. It is a noble instance, and is fit to be tried to the full: for it is very probable, that the motion of gravity worketh weakly, both far from the earth, and also within the earth: the former, because the appetite of union of dense bodies with the earth, in respect of the distance, is more dull; the latter, because the body hath in part attained its nature, when it is some depth in the earth. For as for the moving to a point or place (which was the opinion of the ancients) it is a mere vanity.

Experiment solitary touching the contraction of bodies in bulk, by the mixture of the more liquid body with the more solid.

34. It is strange, how the ancients took up experiments upon credit, and yet did build great matters upon them. The observation of some of the best of them, delivered confidently is, that a vessel filled with ashes, will receive the like quantity of water, that it would have done if it had been empty. But this is utterly untrue, for the water will not go in by a fifth part. And I suppose, that that fifth part is the difference of the lying close, or open, of the ashes; as we see that ashes alone, if they be hard pressed, will lie in less room: and so the ashes with air between, lie looser; and with water, closer. For I have not yet found certainly, that the water itself, by mixture of ashes or dust, will shrink or draw into less room.

Experiment solitary touching the making vines more fruitful.

35. It is reported of credit, that if you lay good store of kernels of grapes about the root of a vine, it will make the vine come earlier and prosper better. It may be tried with other kernels, laid about the root of a plant of the same kind; as figs, kernels of apples, &c. The cause may be, for that the kernels draw out of the earth juice fit to nourish the tree, as those that would be trees of themselves, though there were no root; but the root being of greater strength, robbeth and devoureth the nourishment, when they have drawn it: as great fitches devour little.

Experiments in consort touching purging medicines.

36. The operation of purging medicines, and the causes thereof, have been thought to be a great secret; and so according to the slothful manner of men, it is referred to a hidden propriety, a specific virtue, and a fourth quality, and the like shifts of ignorance. The causes of purging are divers; all plain and perspicuous; and thoroughly maintained by experience. The first is, that whatsoever cannot be overcome and digested by the stomach, is by the stomach either put up by vomit, or put down to the guts; and by that motion of expulsion in the stomach and guts, other parts of the body, (as the orifices of the veins, and the like) are moved to expel by consent. For nothing is more frequent than motion of consent in the body of man.
This surcharge of the stomach, is caused either by the quality of the medicine, or by the quantity. The qualities are three: extreme bitter, as in aloes, coloquintida, &c. loathsome and of horrible taste, as in agarick, black helmbore, &c. and of secret malignity, and disagreement towards man's body, many times not appearing much in the taste; as in scammony, mechochan, antimony, &c. And note well, that if there be any medicine that purgeth, and hath neither of the first two manifest qualities; it is to be held suspected as a kind of poison; for that it worketh either by corrosion, or by a secret malignity, and enmity to nature: and therefore such medicines are warily to be prepared and used. The quantity of that which is taken, doth also cause purging; as we see in a great quantity of new milk from the cow; yea and a great quantity of meat; for surfeits many times turn to purges, both upwards and downwards. Therefore we see generally, that the working of purging medicines cometh two or three hours after the medicines taken; for that the stomach first maketh a proof, whether it can concoct them. And the like happeneth after surfeits, or milk in too great quantity.

37. A second cause is mordication of the orifices of the parts; especially of the mesentery veins; as it is seen, that salt, or any such thing that is sharp and biting, put into the fundament, doth provoke the part to expel; and mustard provoketh sneezing; and any sharp thing to the eyes provoketh tears. And therefore we see that almost all purgers have a kind of twitching and vellication, besides the griping which cometh of wind. And if this mordication be in an over-high degree, it is little better than the corrosion of poison; as it cometh to pass sometimes in antimony, especially if it be given to bodies not replete with humours; for where humours abound, the humours have the parts.

38. The third cause is attraction: for I do not deny, but that purging medicines have in them a direct force of attraction; as drawing plaisters have in surgery: and we see sage, or betony bruised, sneezing powder, and other powders or liquors (which the physicians call errhines,) put into the nose, draw phlegm and water from the head; and so it is in apophlegmatisms and gargarisms, that draw the rheum down by the palate. And by this virtue, no doubt, some purgers draw more one humour, and some another, according to the opinion received: as rhubarb draweth choleric; fena melancholy; agarick phlegm, &c. but yet (more or less) they draw promiscuously. And note also, that besides sympathy between the purger and the humour, there is also another cause, why some medicines draw some humour more than another. And it is, for that some medicines work quicker than others: they that draw quick, draw only the lighter and more fluid humours; and they that draw slow, work upon the more tough and viscous humours. And therefore men must beware how they take rhubarb, and the like, alone familiarly; for it taketh only the lightest part of the humour away, and leaveth the mass of humours more obstinate. And the like may be said of wormwood, which is so much magnified.

39. The fourth cause is flatulency; for wind stirred moveth to expel: and we find that (in effect) all purgers have in them a raw spirit, or wind; which is the principal cause of tortion in the stomach and belly. And therefore purgers lose (most of them) the virtue, by decoction upon the fire; and for that cause are given chiefly in infusion, juice, or powder.

40. The fifth cause is compression, or crushing: as when water is crushed out of a sponge: so we see that taking cold moveth looseness by contraction of the skin and outward parts, and so doth cold likewise cause rheums and defluxions.
defluxions from the head; and some astringent plaisters crust out purulent matter. This kind of operation is not found in many medicines: myrtle-balm have it; and it may be the barks of peaches; for this virtue requireth an affiction; but such an affiction as is not grateful to the body; (for a pleasing affiction doth rather bind in the humours, then expel them;) and therefore such affiction is found in things of an harsh taste.

41. The sixth cause is lubrefaction and relaxation. As we see in medicines emollient; such as are milk, honey, mallows, lettuce, mercurial, pellitory of the wall, and others. There is also a secret virtue of relaxation in cold: for the heat of the body bindeth the parts and humours together, which cold relaxeth: as it is seen in urine, blood, pottage, or the like; which, if they be cold, break and dissolve. And by this kind of relaxation, fear looseth the belly; because the heat retiring inwards towards the heart, the guts and other parts are relaxed; in the same manner as fear also causeth trembling in the finsews. And of this kind of purgers are some medicines made of mercury.

42. The seventh cause is ablation; which is plainly a scouring off, or incision of the more vicious humours, and making the humours more fluid; and cutting between them and the part: As is found in nitrous water; which scoureth linen cloth (speedily) from the foulness. But this incision must be by a sharpness, without affiction: which we find in salt, wormwood, oxymel, and the like.

43. There be medicines that move stools, and not urine; some other; urine, and not stools. Those that purge by stool, are such as enter not at all, or little into the mesenteries veins; but either at the first are not digestible by the stomach, and therefore move immediately downwards to the guts; or else are afterwards rejected by the mesenteries veins, and so turn likewise downwards to the guts; and of these two kinds are most purgers. But those that move urine, are such as are well digested of the stomach, and well received also of the mesenteries veins; so they come as far as the liver, which sendeth urine to the bladder, as the whey of blood: and those medicines being opening and piercing, do fortify the operation of the liver, in sending down the wheyey part of the blood to the reins. For medicines urinative do not work by refection and indigestion, as solutive do.

44. There be divers medicines, which in greater quantity move stool, and in smaller, urine: and so contrariwise, some that in greater quantity, move urine, and in smaller, stool. Of the former sort is rhubarb, and some others. The cause is, for that rhubarb is a medicine, which the stomach in a small quantity doth digest and overcome, (being not nativous nor loathsome;) and so sendeth it to the mesenteries veins; and so being opening, it helpeth down urine: but in a greater quantity, the stomach cannot overcome it, and so it goeth to the guts. Pepper by some of the ancients is noted to be of the second sort; which being in small quantity, moveth wind in the stomach and guts, and so expelleth by stool; but being in greater quantity, dissipateth the wind; and it itself geteth to the mesenteries veins, and so to the liver and reins; where, by heating and opening, it sendeth down urine more plentifully.

Experiments in confort touching meats and drinks that are most nourishing.

45. We have spoken of evacuating of the body; we will now speak something of the filling of it by reimators in consumptions and emaciating diætes. In vegetables, there is one part that is more nourishing than another; as grains and roots nourish more, than the leaves; in so much as the order of
of the folliculuses was put down by the pope, as finding leaves unable to nourish man's body. Whether there be that difference in the flesh of living creatures, is not well inquired: as whether livers, and other entrails, be not more nourishing than the outward flesh. We find that amongst the Romans, a goose's liver was a great delicacy; insomuch as they had artificial means to make it fair and great; but whether it were more

receive that some would receive, that a pottage of beef, made of the two capons, or the pith of artichokes, which are black-manger, or jelly: and so is the cullice of almonds, for the mortreys is more favourable and strong, but the almonds that are not of so high a quality it.

The yolks of eggs are clearly more nourishing than the whites. So that it should seem, that the parts of living creatures that lie more inwards, nourish more than the outward flesh; except it be the brain: which the spirits prey too much upon, to leave it any great virtue of nourishing. It seemeth for the nourishing of aged men, or men in consumptions, some such thing should be devised, as should be half chylus, before it be put into the stomach.

46. Take two large capons; parboil them upon a soft fire, by the space of an hour or more, till in effect all the blood be gone. Add in the decoction the pill of a sweet lemon, or a good part of the pill of a citron, and a little mace. Cut off the thans, and throw them away. Then with a good strong chopping-knife, mince the two capons, bones and all, as small as ordinary minced meat; put them into a large neat boulter; then take a kilderkin, sweet, and well seasoned, of four gallons of beer, of 8 s. strength, new as it cometh from the tunning; make in the kilderkin a great bung-hole of purpose: then thrust into it the boulter (in which the capons are) drawn out in length; let it steep in it three days and three nights, the bung-hole open, to work; then clofe the bung-hole, and so let it continue a day and a half; then draw it into bottles, and you may drink it well after three days botteling; and it will last fix weeks (approved). It drinketh freth, flowrth and mantleth exceedingly; it drinketh not new with all; it is an excellent drink for a consumption, to be drunk either alone, or carded with some other beer. It quencheth thirst, and hath no whit of windinefs. Note, that it is not possible, that meat and bread, either in broths, or taken with drink, as is used, should get forth into the veins and outward parts, so finely and easly, as when it is thus incorporate, and made almost a chylus aforeshand.

47. Trial would be made of the like brew with potato roots, or burr roots, or the pith of artichoaks, which are nourishing meats: it may be tried also with other flesh; as pheafant, partridge, young pork, pig, venifon, especially of young deer, &c.

48. A mortreys made with the brawn of capons, flamped, and strained, and mingled (after it is made) with like quantity (at the least) of almonds butter, it is an excellent meat to nourish those that are weak; better than black-manger, or jelly: and so is the cullice of cocks, boiled thick with the like mixture of almond butter: for the mortreys or cullice, of it self, is more favour and strong, and not so fit for nourishing of weak bodies; but the almonds that are not of so high a taffe as flesh, do excellently qualify it.

49. Indian maiz hath (of certain) an excellent spirit of nourishment, but
but it must be thoroughly boiled, and made into a maiz-cream like a barley-cream. I judge the fame of rice, made into a cream; for rice is in Turky, and other countries of the east, most fed upon; but it must be thoroughly boiled in respect of the hardness of it: and also because otherwise it bindeth the body too much.

50. Pistachoes, so they be good, and not musty, joined with almonds in almond milk; or made into a milk of themselves, like unto almond milk, but more green; are an excellent nourisher: But you shall do well, to add a little ginger, scraped, because they are not without some subtile windines.

51. Milk warm from the cow, is found to be a great nourisher, and a good remedy in consumptions; but then you must put into it, when you milk the cow, two little bags; the one of powder of mint, the other of powder of red roses; for they keep the milk somewhat from turning, or curdling in the stomach; and put in sugar also, for the same cause, and partly for the taste's sake; but you must drink a good draught, that it may stay less time in the stomach, left it curdle: and let the cup into which you milk the cow, be set in a greater cup of hot water, that you may take it warm. And cow milk thus prepared, I judge to be better for a consumption, than ass milk, which (it is true) turneth not so easily, but it is a little harsh; marry it is more proper for sharpness of urine, and exulceration of the bladder, and all manner of leucings. Woman's milk likewise is prescribed, when all fail; but I commend it not, as being a little too near the juice of man's body, to be a good nourisher; except it be in infants, to whom it is natural.

52. Oil of sweet almonds, newly drawn, with sugar, and a little spice, spread upon bread toast, is an excellent nourisher: but then to keep the oil from frying in the stomach, you must drink a good draught of mild beer after it; and to keep it from relaxing the stomach too much, you must put in a little powder of cinnamon.

53. The yolks of eggs are of themselves so well prepared by nature for nourishment; as (so they be poached, or rare boiled) they need no other preparation or mixture; yet they may be taken also raw, when they are new laid with malmsey, or sweet wine; you shall do well to put in some few slices of eryngium roots, and a little ambergrice; for by this means, besides the immediate faculty of nourishment, such drink will strengthen the back; so that it will not draw down the urine too fast; for too much urine doth always hinder nourishment.

54. Mincing of meat, as in pies, and buttered minced meat, saveth the grinding of the teeth; and therefore (no doubt) it is more nourishing, especially in age, or to them that have weak teeth; but the butter is not so proper for weak bodies; and therefore it was good to moisten it with a little claret wine, pill of lemon, or orange, cut small, sugar, and a very little cinnamon, or nutmeg. As for chuehs, which are likewise minced meat, instead of butter and fat, it were good to moisten them, partly with cream, or almond, or pistacho milk; or barley, or maiz cream; adding a little coriander seed and caraway seed, and a very little saffron. The more full handling of alimentation we referve to the due place.

We have hitherto handled the particulars which yield best, and easieft, and plentifully nourishment; and now we will speak of the best means of conveying and converting the nourishment.

55. The first means is, to procure that the nourishment may not be rob-
bed and drawn away; wherein that which we have already said is very material; to provide, that the reins draw not too strongly an over-great part of the blood into urine. To this add that precept of Aristotle, that wine be forbear in all consumptions; for that the spirits of the wine, do prey upon the rufcid juice of the body, and inter-common with the spirits of the body, and so deceive and rob them of their nourishment. And therefore if the consumption growing from the weakness of the stomach, do force you to use wine; let it always be burnt; that the quicker spirits may evaporate; or at the least quenched with two little wedges of gold, six or seven times repeated. Add also this provision, that there be not too much expence of the nourishment, by exhaling and sweating: and therefore if the patient be apt to sweat, it must be gently restrained. But chiefly Hippocrates's rule is to be followed, who adviseth quite contrary to that which is in use: Namely, that the linen, or garment next the belly, be in winter dry, and oft changed; and in summer seldom changed, and smeared over with oil; for certain it is, that any substance that is fat, doth a little fill the pores of the body, and stay sweat, in some degree: But the more cleanly way is, to have the linen smeared lightly over with oil of sweet almonds; and not to forbear shifting as oft as is fit.

56. The second means is, to send forth the nourishment into the parts more strongly; for which the working must be by strengthening of the stomach; and in this, because the stomach is chiefly comforted by wine and hot things, which otherwise hurt; it is good to refer to outward applications to the stomach: Wherein it hath been tried, that the quilts of roses, spices, mastic, wormwood, mint, &c. are nothing so helpful, as to take a cake of new bread, and to bedew it with a little sacca, or alicant; and to dry it; and after it be dried a little before the fire, to put it within a clean bapkin, and to lay it to the stomach; for it is certain, that all flower hath a potent virtue of attrition; in so much as it hardeneth a piece of flesh, or a flower, that is laid in it: and therefore a bag quilted with bran, is likewise very good; but it drieth somewhat too much, and therefore it must not lie long.

57. The third means (which may be a branch of the former) is to send forth the nourishment the better by sleep. For we see, that bears, and other creatures that sleep in the winter, wax exceeding fat: and certain it is (as it is commonly believed) that sleep doth nourish much; both for that the spirits do less spend the nourishment in sleep, than when living creatures are awake: and because (that which is to the present purpose) it helpeth to thrust out the nourishment into the parts. Therefore in aged men, and weak bodies; and such as abound not with choler, a short sleep after dinner doth help to nourish; for in such bodies there is no fear of an over-hasty digestion; which is the inconvenience of postmeridian sleeps. Sleep also in the morning, after the taking of somewhat of easy digestion; as milk from the cow, nourishing broth, or the like, doth further nourishment: but this would be done sitting upright, that the milk or broth may pass the more speedily to the bottom of the stomach.

58. The fourth means is to provide that the parts themselves may draw to them the nourishment strongly. There is an excellent observation of Aristotle; that a great reason, why plants (some of them) are of greater age than living creatures, is, for that they yearly put forth new leaves and boughs; whereas living creatures put forth (after their period of growth) nothing that is young, but hair and nails, which are excrements, and no parts. And
it is most certain, that whatsoever is young, doth draw nourishment better than that which is old; and then (that which is the mystery of that observation) young boughs, and leaves, calling the sap up to them; the same nourishment the body in the passage. And this we see notably proved also, in that the oft cutting, or polling of hedges, trees, and herbs, doth conduce much to their lasting. Transfer therefore this observation to the helping of nourishment in living creatures: the noblest and principal use whereof is, for the prolongation of life; restauration of some degree of youth, and inteneration of the parts: for certain it is, that there are in living creatures parts that nourish and repair easily, and parts that nourish and repair hardly: and you must refresh and renew those that are easy to nourish, that the other may be refreshed, and (as it were) drink in nourishment in the passage. Now we see that draught of oxen, put into a good pasture, recover the flesh of young beef; and men after long emaciating diets wax plump and fat, and almost new: so that you may surely conclude, that the frequent and wise use of those emaciating diets, and of purgings, and perhaps of some kind of bleeding, is a principal means of prolongation of life, and restoring some degree of youth: for as we have often said, death cometh upon living creatures like the torment of Mezentius:

*Mortua quinetiam jungebat corpora cicis,*
*Componens manibufque manus, atque orbis ora.*

En. 8. v. 485.

For the parts in man's body easily reparable, (as spirits, blood and flesh) die in the embracement of the parts hardly reparable, (as bones, nerves, and membranes;) and likewise some entrails (which they reckon amongst the spermatical parts) are hard to repair: though that division of spermatical and menstrual parts be but a conceit. And this same observation also may be drawn to the present purpose of nourishing emaciated bodies: and therefore gentle friction draweth forth the nourishment, by making the parts a little hungry, and heating them; whereby they call forth nourishment the better. This friction I wish to be done in the morning. It is also best done by the hand, or a piece of scarlet wooll, wet a little with oil of almonds mingled with a small quantity of bay-salt, or saffron; we see that the very currying of horses doth make them fat, and in good liking.

59. The fifth means is, to further the very act of assimilation; which is done by some outward emollients, that make the parts more apt to assimilate. For which I have compounded an ointment of excellent odour, which I call Roman ointment; vide the receipt. The use of it would be between sleeps; for in the latter sleep the parts assimilate chiefly.

Experiments solitary touching Filum medicinale.

60. There be many medicines, which by themselves would do no cure, but perhaps hurt; but being applied in a certain order, one after another, do great cures. I have tried (myself) a remedy for the gout, which hath seldom failed, but driven it away in twenty four hours space: it is first to apply a poultis, of which vide the receipt; and then a bath or fomentation, of which vide the receipt; and then a plaister, vide the receipt. The poultis relaxeth the pores, and maketh the humour apt to exhale. The fomentation calleth forth the humour by vapours; but yet in regard of the way made by the poultis, draweth gently; and therefore draweth the humours out, and doth not draw more to it; for it is a gentle fomentation, and hath within it a mixture (though very little) of some stupefactive. The plaister is a moderate
moderate astringent plaister, which repelleth new humour from falling. The poultis alone would make the part more soft and weak, and apter to take the defluxion and impression of the humour. The fomentation alone, if it were too weak, without way made by the poultis, would draw forth little; if too strong, it would draw to the part, as well as draw from it. The plaister alone would pen the humour already contained in the part, and so exasperate it, as well as forbid new humour. Therefore they must be all taken in order, as is said. The poultis is to be laid to for two or three hours: the fomentation for a quarter of an hour, or somewhat better, being used hot, and seven or eight times repeated: the plaister to continue on still, till the part be well confirmed.

Experiments solitary touching cure by custom.

61. There is a secret way of cure, (unpractisid) by affuetude of that which in it self hurteth. Poifons have been made, by some, familiar, as hath been said. Ordinary keepers of the sick of the plague, are seldom infected. Enduring of tortures, by cuftom, hath been made more easy: the broking of enormous quantity of meats, and so of wine or strong drink, hath been, by cuftom, made to be without furfeit or drunkenness. And generally diſeases that are chronical, as coughs, phthisicks, fonie kinds of palfies, lunacies, &c. are most dangerous at the first: therefore a wise phyfician will consider whether a difeafe be incurable; or whether the juft cure of it be not full of peril; and if he find it to be such, let him reftort to palliation; and alleviate the fymptom, without buflying himself too much with the perfect cure: and many times (if the patient be indeed patient) that courfe will exceed all expectation. Likewise the patient himself may strive, by little and little, to overcome the fymptom in the exacerbation, and fo, by time, turn fuffering into nature.

Experiments solitary touching cure by excefs.

62. Divers diſeases, especially chronical, (fuch as quartan agues) are fonetimes cured by furfeit and excefs: as excefs of meat, excefs of drink, extraordinary felling, extraordinary flirring or lafitude, and the like. The caufe is, for that diſeases of continuance get an adventitious ftrength from cuftom, besides their material caufe from the humours: fo that the breaking of the cuftom doth leave them only to their firft caufe; which if it be any thing weak will fall off. Besides, fuch excefses do excite and spur nature, which thereupon rifes more forcibly againft the diſeafe.

Experiments solitary touching cure by motion of conſent.

63. There is in the body of man a great conſent in the motion of the feveral parts. We fee, it is children's fport, to prove whether they can rub upon their breaft with one hand, and pat upon their forehead with another: and straightways they shall sometimes rub with both hands, or pat with both hands. We fee, that when the spirits that come to the noftrils, expel a bad fcent, the ftomach is ready to expel by vomit. We find that in conſumptions of the lungs, when nature cannot expel by cough, men fall into fluxes of the belly, and then they die. So in peffilent diſeases, if they cannot be expelled by sweat, they fall likewise into loofenefs; and that is commonly mortal. Therefore phyficians should ingeniously contrive, how by motions that are in their power, they may excite inward motions that are not in their power, by conſent: as by the ftench of feathers, or the like, they can the rifing of the mother.
Experiment solitary touching cure of diseases, which are contrary to predisposition.

64. Hippocrates aphorism, in morbis minus, is a good profound aphorism. It importeth, that diseases, contrary to the complexion, age, sex, season of the year, diet, &c. are more dangerous than those that are concurrent. A man would think it should be otherwise; for that, when the accident of sickness, and the natural disposition, do second the one the other, the disease should be more forcible: and so (no doubt) it is; if you suppose like quantity of matter. But that which maketh good the aphorism, is, because such diseases do shew a greater collection of matter, by that they are able to overcome those natural inclinations to the contrary. And therefore in diseases of that kind, let the physician apply himself more to purgation, than to alteration; because the offence is in the quantity; and the qualities are rectified of themselves.

Experiment solitary touching preparations before purging, and settling of the body afterward.

65. Physicians do wisely prescribe, that there be preparatives used before just purgations; for certain it is, that purgers do many times great hurt, if the body be not accommodated, both before and after the purging. The hurt that they do, for want of preparation before purging, is by the sticking of the humours, and their not coming fair away; which causeth in the body great perturbations, and ill accidents, during the purging; and also the diminishing and dulling of the working of the medicine itself, that it purgeth not sufficiently; therefore the work of preparation is double; to make the humours fluid and mature, and to make the passages more open: for both those help to make the humours pass readily. And for the former of these, syrups are most profitable; and for the latter, apozemes, or preparing broths; clysters also help left the medicine stop in the guts, and work gripingly. But it is true, that bodies abounding with humours, and fat bodies, and open weather, are preparatives in themselves; because they make the humours more fluid. But let a physician beware, how he purge after hard frosty weather, and in a lean body, without preparation. For the hurt that they may do after purging, is caused by the lodging of some humours in ill places: for it is certain, that there be humours, which somewhere placed in the body, are quiet, and do little hurt; in other places, (especially passages) do much mischief. Therefore it is good, after purging, to use apozemes and broths, not so much opening as those used before purging; but abatfive and mundifying clysters also are good to conclude with, to draw away the relics of the humours, that may have descended to the lower region of the body.

Experiment solitary touching stanching of blood.

66. Blood is stanch'd divers ways. First by astringents, and repercussive medicines. Secondly by drawing of the spirits and blood inwards; which is done by cold; as iron or a stone laid to the neck, doth stanch the bleeding at the nose; also it hath been tried, that the tefticles being put into sharp vinegar, hath made a sudden reces of the spirits, and stanch'd blood. Thirdly by the reces of the blood by sympathy. So it hath been tried, that the part that bleedeth, being thrust into the body of a capon, or sheep, new ript and bleeding, hath stanch'd blood; the blood, as it seemeth, sticking and drawing.
drawing up, by similitude of substance, the blood it meeteth with; and so it
self going back. Fourthly by custom and time; so the Prince of Orange, in
his first hurt, by the Spanjib boy, could find no means to stanch the blood,
either by medicine or ligament; but was fain to have the orifice of the wound
stopped by mens thumbs, succeeding one another, for the space at the leaf
of two days; and at the last the blood by custom only retired. There is a
fifth way also in ume, to let blood in an adverse part, for a revulsion.

Experiment solitary touching change of aliment and medicines.

67. It helpeth, both in medicine and aliment, to change and not to con-
tinue the fame medicine and aliment still. The cause is, for that nature by
continual use of any thing, growtheth to a fatiety and dulness, either of appe-
tite or working. And we see that affuetude of things hurtful, doth make
them lose their force to hurt; as poison, which with use some have brought
themselves to brook. And therefore it is no marvel, though things helpful
by custom lose their force to help: I count intermission almost in the same thing
with change; for that, that hath been intermitted, is after a fort new.

Experiment solitary touching diets.

68. It is found by experience, that in diets of guaiacum, farza, and the
like, (especially if they be strict) the patient is more troubled in the begin-
ing, than after continuance; which hath made some of the more delicate
sort of patients give them over in the midst; supposing that if those diets
trouble them so much at first, they shall not be able to endure them to the
end. But the cause is, for that all those diets do dry up humours, rheums,
and the like; and they cannot dry up until they have first attenuated; and
while the humour is attenuated, it is more fluid than it was before, and
troubles the body a great deal more, until it be dried up and consumed.
And therefore patients must expect a due time, and not kick at them at
the first.

Experiments in conform touching the production of cold.

69. The producing of cold is a thing very worthy the inquisition; both
for the use and disclosure of causes. For heat and cold are nature’s two hands,
whereby the chiefly worketh: and heat we have in readiness, in respect of
the fire; but for cold we must stay till it cometh, or seek it in deep caves,
or high mountains: and when all is done, we cannot obtain it in any great
degree: for furnaces of fire are far hotter than a summer’s sun; but vaults or
hills are not much colder than a winter’s frost.

The first means of producing cold, is that which nature presenteth us
withal; namely, the expiring of cold out of the inward parts of the earth
in winter, when the sun hath no power to overcome it; the earth being
(as hath been noted by some) primus frigidum. This hath been ascertained,
as well by ancient, as by modern philosophers: it was the tenet of Parme-
nides. It was the opinion of the author of the discourse in Plutarch, (for I
take it, that book was not Plutarch’s own) de primo frigido. It was the opin-
on of Teleflus, who hath renewed the philosophy of Parmenides, and is the
beast of the novelists.

70. The second cause of cold is the contact of cold bodies; for cold is active
and transitive into bodies adjacent, as well as heat: which is seen in those
things that are touched with snow or cold water. And therefore, whosoever
will be an inquirer into nature, let him resort to a conservatory of snow and
ice;
ice; such as they use for delicacy, to cool wine in summer: which is a poor and contemptible use, in respect of other uses, that may be made of such conservatories.

71. THE third cause is the primary nature of all tangible bodies: for it is well to be noted, that all things whatsoever (tangible) are of themselves cold; except they have an accessory heat by fire, life, or motion: For even the spirit of wine, or chymical oils, which are so hot in operation, are to the first touch cold; and air itself compressed, and condensed a little by blowing, is cold.

72. THE fourth cause is the density of the body; for all dense bodies are colder than most other bodies, as metals, stone, glass; and they are longer in heating than softer bodies. And it is certain, that earth, dense, tangible, hold all of the nature of cold. The cause is, for that all matters tangible being cold, it must needs follow, that where the matter is most congregate, the cold is the greater.

73. THE fifth cause of cold, or rather of increase and vehement of cold, is a quick spirit inclosed in a cold body: as will appear to any that shall attentively consider of nature in many instances. We see nitre (which hath a quick spirit) is cold; more cold to the tongue than a stone; so water is colder than oil, because it hath a quicker spirit; for all oil, though it hath the tangible parts better digested than water, yet hath it a duller spirit: so snow is colder than water, because it hath more spirit within it: so we see that salt put to ice (as in the producing of the artificial ice) increaseth the activity of cold: so some infected which have spirit of life, as snakes and filkworms, are to the touch cold. So quicksilver is the coldest of metals, because it is fullest of spirit.

74. THE sixth cause of cold is the chafing and driving away of spirits, such as have some degree of heat: for the banishing of the heat must needs leave any body cold. This we see in the operation of opium, and stupefactives, upon the spirits of living creatures: and it were not amiss to try opium, by laying it upon the top of a weather-glass, to see whether it will contract the air: but I doubt it will not succeed; for besides that the virtue of opium will hardly penetrate through such a body as glass, I conceive that opium, and the like, make the spirits fly rather by malignity, than by cold.

75. SEVENTHLY, the same effect must follow upon the exhaling or drawing out of the warm spirits, that doth upon the flight of the spirits. There is an opinion, that the moon is magnetical of heat, as the sun is of cold and moisture: it were not amiss therefore to try it, with warm waters; the one exposed to the beams of the moon, the other with some green betwixt the beams of the moon and the water; as we use to the sun for shade; and to see whether the former will cool sooner. And it were also good to inquire, what other means there may be, to draw forth the exile heat, which is in the air; for that may be a secret of great power to produce cold weather.

Experiments in confort touching the version and transmutation of air into water.

We have formerly set down the means of turning air into water, in the experiment 27. But because it is magnae-naturae, and tendeth to the subduing of a very great effect, and is also of manifold use, we will add some inances in confort that give light thereunto.
76. It is reported by some of the ancients, that sailors have used, every night, to hang fleeces of wool on the sides of their ships, the wool towards the water; and that they have crushed fresh water out of them, in the morning, for their use. And thus much we have tried, that a quantity of wool tied loose together, being let down into a deep well, and hanging in the middle, some three fathoms from the water, for a night, in the winter-time; increased in weight (as I now remember) to a fifth part.

77. It is reported by one of the ancients, that in Lydia, near Pergamus, there were certain workmen, in time of wars fled into caves; and the mouth of the caves being stopped by the enemies, they were famished. But long time after the dead bones were found; and some vessels which they had carried with them; and the vessels full of water; and that water thicker, and more towards ice, than common water: which is a notable instance of condensation and induration by burial under earth, (in caves) for a long time; and of version also (as it should seem) of air into water; if any of those vessels were empty. Try therefore a small bladder hung in snow, and the like in nitre, and the like in quicksilver: and if you find the bladders fallen or shrunk, you may be sure the air is condensed by the cold of those bodies, as it would be in a cave under earth.

78. It is reported of very good credit, that in the East-Indies, if you set a tub of water open in a room where cloves are kept, it will be drawn dry in twenty four hours; though it stand at some distance from the cloves. In the country, they use many times, in deceit, when their wool is new thorn, to set some pails of water by in the same room, to increase the weight of the wool. But it may be, that the heat of the wool, remaining from the body of the sleeper, or the heat gathered by the lying close of the wool, helpeth to draw the watry vapour; but that is nothing to the version.

79. It is reported also credibly, that wool new thorn, being laid casually upon a vessel of verjuice, after some time, had drunk up a great part of the verjuice, though the vessel were whole without any flaw, and had not the bung-hole open. In this instance, there is (upon the by) to be noted, the percolation or suing of the verjuice through the wood; for verjuice of itself would never have passed through the wood: so as, it seemeth, it must be first in a kind of vapour, before it pass.

80. It is especially to be noted, that the cause that doth facilitate the version of air into water, when the air is not in gross but subtilly mingled with tangible bodies, is, (as hath been partly touched before) for that tangible bodies have an antipathy with air; and if they find any liquid body that is more dense near them, they will draw it: and after they have drawn it, they will condense it more, and in effect incorporate it; for we see that a sponge, or wool, or sugar, or a woollen cloth, being put but in part in water, or wine, will draw the liquor higher, and beyond the place: where the water or wine comeeth. We see also, that wood, hute-string, and the like, do swell in moist seasons: as appeareth by the breaking of the strings, the hard turning of the pegs, and the hard drawing forth of boxes, and opening of wainscot doors; which is a kind of infusion: and is much like to an infusion in water, which will make wood to swell: as we see in the filling of the chops of bowls, by laying them in water. But for that part of these experiments which concerneth attraction, we will reserve it to the proper title of attraction.

81. There is also a version of air into water seen in the sweating of marble and other stones; and of wainscot before and in moist weather. This must be either by some moisture the body yieldeth; or else by the moist air thickened
thickened against the hard body. But it is plain, that it is the latter; for that
we see wood painted with oil colour, will sooner gather drops in a moist
night, than wood alone; which is caus’d by the smoothness and closeness;
which letteth in no part of the vapour, and so turneth it back, and thicken-
eth it into dew. We see also, that breathing upon a glafs, or smooth body,
giveth a dew; and in frosty mornings (such as we call rime frosts) you shall
find drops of dew upon the inside of glafs windows; and the frost it self
upon the ground, is but a version or condensation, of the moist vapours of
the night, into a watry substance: dews likewise and rimes, are but the
returns of moist vapours condensed; the dew, by the cold only of the sun’s
departure, which is the gentler cold; rains, by the cold of that which they
call the middle region of the air; which is the more violent cold.

82. It is very probable (as hath been touched) that that which will turn
water into ice, will likewise turn air some degree nearer unto water. There-
fore try the experiment of the artificial turning water into ice (whereof we
shall speak in another place) with air in place of water, and the ice about
it. And although it be a greater alteration to turn air into water, than water
into ice; yet there is this hope—that by continuing the air longer time, the
effect will follow: for that artificial conversion of water into ice, is the work
of a few hours; and this of air may be tried by a month’s space, or the like.

Experiments in concerning induration of bodies;

Induration, or lapidification of substances more soft, is likewise another
degree of condensation; and is a great alteration in nature. The effecting
and accelerating thereof is very worthy to be inquired. It is effect’d by
three means. The first is by cold; whose property is to condense and con-
flipate, as hath been said. The second is by heat; which is not proper but
by consequence; for the heat doth attenuate; and by attenuation doth tend
forth the spirit and moister part of a body; and upon that, the more gross
of the tangible parts do contract and serre themselves together; both to
avoid vacuum (as they call it) and also to munite themselves against the
force of the fire, which they have suffered. And the third is by assimilation;
when a hard body assimilateth a soft, being contiguous to it.

The examples of induration, taking them promiscuously, are many: as
the generation of stones within the earth, which at the first are but rude
earth or clay: and so of minerals, which come (no doubt) at first of juices
concrete, which afterward indurate: and so of porcellane, which is an arti-
ficial cement, buried in the earth a long time; and so the making of brick
and tile: also the making of glafs of a certain sand and brake-roots, and
some others matters: also the exudations of rock-diamonds and crystal,
which harden with time: also the induration of bead-amber, which at first
is a soft substance; as appeareth by the flies and spiders which are found in it;
and many more: but we will speak of them distinctly.

83. For inductions by cold, there be few trials of it; for we have no
strong or intense cold here on the surface of the earth, so near the beams
of the sun, and the heavens. The likeliest trial is by snow and ice; for as
snow and ice, especially being holpen and their cold activat’d by nitre or
salt, will turn water into ice, and that in a few hours; so it may be, it will
turn wood or stiff clay into stone, in longer time. Put therefore, into a
conserving pit of snow and ice, (adding some quantity of salt and nitre) a
piece of wood, or a piece of tough clay, and let it lie a month or more.

84. Another trial is by metalline waters, which have virtual cold in
them. Put therefore wood or clay into smiths water, or other metalline water, and try whether it will not harden in some reasonable time. But I understand it of metalline waters, that come by washing or quenching; and not of strong waters that come by dissolution; for they are too corrosive to consolidate.

85. It is already found, that there are some natural spring-waters, that will inlapidate wood; so that you shall see one piece of wood, whereas of the part above the water shall continue wood; and the part under the water shall be turned into a kind of gravelly stone. It is likely those waters are of some metalline mixture; but there would be more particular inquiry made of them. It is certain, that an egg was found, having lain many years in the bottom of a moat, where the earth had somewhat overgrown it; and this egg was come to the hardness of a stone; and had the colours of the white and yolk perfect: and the shell shining in small grains like sugar, or ash after.

86. Another experience there is of induration by cold, which is already found; which is, that metals themselves are hardened by often heating and quenching in cold water: for cold ever worketh most potently upon heat precedent.

87. For induration by heat, it must be considered, that heat, by the ex-haling of the moister parts, doth either harden the body, as in bricks, tiles, &c. or if the heat be more fierce, maketh the groffer part it self run and melt; as in the making of ordinary glass; and in the vitrification of earth, (as we see in the inner parts of furnaces;) and in the vitrification of brick, and of metals. And in the former of these, which is the hardening by baking without melting, the heat hath these degrees; first, it indurateth, and then maketh fragile; and lastly it doth incinerate and calcinat.

88. But if you desire to make an induration with toughness, and less fragility, a middle way would be taken; which is that which Aristotle hath well noted; but would be throughly verified. It is to decoct bodies in water for two or three days; but they must be such bodies into which the water will not enter; as stone and metal: For if they be bodies, into which the water will enter, then long seething will rather soften than indurate them; as hath been tried in eggs, &c. therefore softer bodies must be put into bottles; and the bottles hung into water seething, with the mouths open above the water, that no water may get in; for by this means the actual heat of the water will enter; and such a heat, as will not make the body adult, or fragile; but the substance of the water will be that out. This experiment we made; and it sorteth thus. It was tried with a piece of free-stone, and with pewter, put into the water at large. The free-stone we found received in some water; for it was softer and easier to scrape, than a piece of the same stone kept dry. But the pewter into which no water could enter, became more white, and liker to silver, and less flexible, by much. There were also put into an earthen bottle, placed as before, a good pellet of clay, a piece of cheese, a piece of chalk, and a piece of free-stone. The clay came forth almost of the hardness of a stone; the cheese likewise very hard, and not well to be cut: the chalk and the free-stone much harder than they were. The colour of the clay inclined not a whit to the colour of brick, but rather to white, as in ordinary drying by the sun. Note, that all the former trials were made by a boiling upon a good hot fire, renewing the water as it consumed, with other hot water; but the boiling was but for twelve hours only; and it is like that the experiment would have been more effectual,
effectual, if the boiling had been for two or three days, as we prescribed before.

89. As touching affimilation, (for there is a degree of affimilation even in inanimate bodies) we see examples of it in some stones in clay-grounds, lying near to the top of the earth, where pebble is; in which you may manifestly see divers pebbles gathered together, and a crust of cement or stone between them, as hard as the pebbles themselves: and it were good to make a trial of purpose, by taking clay, and putting in it divers pebble stones, thick set, to see whether in continuance of time, it will not be harder than other clay of the same lump, in which no pebbles are set. We see also in ruins of old walls, especially towards the bottom, the mortar will become as hard as the brick: we see also, that the wood on the sides of vessels of wine, gathereth a crust of tartar, harder than the wood itself; and scales likewise grow to the teeth, harder than the teeth themselves.

90. Most of all, induration by affimilation appeareth in the bodies of trees and living creatures: for no nourishment that the tree receiveth, or that the living creature receiveth, is so hard as wood, bone, or horn, &c. but is indurated after by affimilation.

Experiment solitary touching the version of water into air.

91. The eye of the understanding, is like the eye of the sense: for as you may see great objects through small crannies, or levels; so you may see great axioms of nature, through small and contemptible instances. The speedy depredation of air upon watry moisture, and version of the same into air, appeareth in nothing more visible, than in the sudden discharge, or vanishing, of a little cloud of breath, or vapour, from glass, or the blade of a sword, or any such polished body; such as doth not at all detain or imbibe the moisture; for the mistiness scattereth and breaketh up suddenly. But the like cloud, if it were oily or fatty, will not discharge; not because it sticketh faster; but because air preyeth upon water; and flame, and fire, upon oil; and therefore, to take out a spot of grease, they use a coal upon brown paper; because fire worketh upon grease, or oil, as air doth upon water. And we see paper oiled, or wood oiled, or the like, last long moist; but wet with water, dry or putrify sooner. The cause is, for that air meddleth little with the moisture of oil.

Experiment solitary touching the force of union.

92. There is an admirable demonstration in the same triling instance of the little cloud upon glass, or gems, or blades of swords, of the force of union, even in the least quantities, and weakest bodies, how much it conducteth to preservation of the present form, and the refifiting of a new. For mark well the discharge of that cloud; and you shall see it ever break up, first in the skirts, and last in the midft. We see likewise, that much water draweth forth the juice of the body infused; but little water is imbied by the body: and this is a principal cause, why in operation upon bodies for their version or alteration, the trial in great quantities doth not answer the trial in small; and so deceiteth many; for that (I say) the greater body refifieth more any alteration of form, and requireth far greater strength in the active body, that should subdue it.

Experiment solitary touching the producing of feathers and hairs of divers colours.

93. We have spoken before, in the fifth instance, of the cause of orient colours in birds; which is by the fineness of the strainer; we will now en-
deavour to reduce the same axiom to a work. For this writing of our
Sylva Sybarum, is (to speak properly) not natural history, but a high kind of
natural magick. For it is not a description only of nature, but a breaking
of nature, into great and strange works. Try therefore the anointing over
of pigeons, or other birds, when they are but in their down; or of whelps,
cutting their hair as short as may be; or of some other beast; with some
ointment, that is not hurtful to the flesh; and that will harden and flick
very close; and see whether it will not alter the colours of the feathers or
hair. It is received, that the pulling off the first feathers of birds clean,
will make the new come forth white: and it is certain, that white is a pe­
nurious colour, and where moisture is scant. So blue violets, and other flow­
ers, if they be starved, turn pale and white; birds and horses, by age or scars,
turn white: and the hoar hairs of men come by the same reason. And
therefore in birds, it is very likely, that the feathers that come first,
will be many times of divers colours, according to the nature of the bird; for that
the skin is more porous; but when the skin is more stout and close, the fea­
thers will come white. This is a good experiment, not only for the pro­
cucing of birds and beasts of strange colours; but also for the disclosure of
the nature of colours themselves; which of them require a finer porosity,
and which a grofier.

Experiment solitary touching the nourishment of living creatures before they
be brought forth.

94. It is a work of providence, that hath been truly observed by some;
that the yolk of the egg conduceth little to the generation of the bird, but
only to the nourishment of the same: for if a chicken be opened, when it
is new hatched; you shall find much of the yolk remaining. And it is need­
ful, that birds that are shaped without the female's womb, have in the egg,
as well matter of nourishment, as matter of generation for the body. For
after the egg is laid, and severed from the body of the hen; it hath no more
nourishment from the hen; but only a quickening heat when the fitteth.
But beasts and men need not the matter of nourishment within themselves;
because they are shaped within the womb of the female, and are nourished
continually from her body.

Experiments in confort touching sympathy and antipathy for medicinal use.

95. It is an inveterate and received opinion, that cantharides applied to
any part of the body, touch the bladder, and exulcerate it, if they stay on
long. It is likewise received, that a kind of stone, which they bring out of the
West-Indies, hath a peculiar force to move gravel, and to dissolve the
stone; in so much, as laid but to the wrist, it hath so forcibly sent down gra­
vel, as men have been glad to remove it, it was so violent.

96. It is received and confirmed by daily experience, that the soals of the
feet have great affinity with the head, and the mouth of the stomatch: as we
see, going wet-footed, to those that use it not, affecteth both: applications of
hot powders to the feet attenuate first, and after dry the rheum: and there­
fore a physician that would be mystical, prescribeth, for the cure of the
rheum, that a man should walk continually upon a camomile alley; mean­
ing, that he should put camomile within his focks. Likewise pigeons bleed­
ing, applied to the soals of the feet, ease the head: and soporiferous medi­
cines applied unto them, provoke sleep.

97. It seemeth, that as the feet have a sympathy with the head; so the

Vol. III.
wrists and hands have a sympathy with the heart; we see the affects and passions of the heart and spirits are notably disclosed by the pulse: and it is often tried, that juices of flock-gilly-flowers, rose-campian, garlick, and other things, applied to the wrists, and renewed, have cured long agues. And I conceive, that washing, with certain liquors, the palms of the hands doth much good: and they do well in heats of agues, to hold in the hands eggs of alabaster, and balls of crystal.

Of these things we shall speak more, when we handle the title of sympathy and antipathy in the proper place.

Experiment solitary touching the secret processes of nature.

98. The knowledge of man (hitherto) hath been determined by the view, or sight; so that whatsoever is invisible, either in respect of the fineness of the body itself; or the smallness of the parts; or of the subtlety of the motion; is little inquired. And yet these be the things that govern nature principally; and without which, you cannot make any true analysis and indication of the proceedings of nature. The spirits or pneumatics, that are in all tangible bodies, are scarce known. Sometimes they take them for vacuum; whereas they are the most active of bodies. Sometimes they take them for air; from which they differ exceedingly, as much as wine from water; and as wood from earth. Sometimes they will have them to be natural heat, or a portion of the element of fire; whereas some of them are crude and cold. And sometimes they will have them to be the virtues and qualities of the tangible parts, which they see; whereas they are things by themselves. And then, when they come to plants and living creatures, they call them souls. And such superficial speculations they have; like prospectives, that shew things inward, when they are but paintings. Neither is this a question of words; but infinitely material in nature. For spirits are nothing else but a natural body, rarified to a proportion, and included in the tangible parts of bodies, as in an integument. And they be no less differing one from the other, than the dense or tangible parts; and they are in all tangible bodies whatsoever, more or less; and they are never (almost) at rest: and from them, and their motions, principally proceed aerafaction, colligation, concotion, maturation, putrefaction, vivification, and most of the effects of nature: for, as we have figured them in our Sapientia veterum, in the fable of Proserpina, you shall in the infernal regiment hear little doings of Pluto, but most of Proserpina: for tangible parts in bodies are stupid things; and the spirits do (in effect) all. As for the differences of tangible parts in bodies, the industry of the chymists hath given some light, in discerning by their separations, the oily, crude, pure, impure, fine, gross parts of bodies, and the like. And the physicians are content to acknowledge, that herbs and drugs have divers parts; as that opium hath a stupefactive part, and a heating part; the one moving sleep, the other a sweat following; and that rhubarb hath purging parts, and astringent parts, &c. But this whole inquisition is weakly and negligently handled. And for the more subtle differences of the minute parts, and the posture of them in the body, (which also hath great effects) they are not at all touched: as for the motions of the minute parts of bodies, which do so great effects, they have not been observed at all; because they are invisible, and incur not to the eye; but yet they are to be comprehended by experience: as Democritus said well, when they charged him to hold, that the world was made of such little moats, as were seen in the sun; atomus (faith he) necessitate rationis & experientiae esse convincitur; atomum.
mum enim nemou quam vidit. And therefore the tumult in the parts of solid bodies, when they are compressed, which is the cause of all flight of bodies through the air, and of other mechanical motions, (as hath been partly touched before, and shall be thoroughly handled in due place) is not seen at all. But nevertheless, if you know it not, or inquire it not attentively and diligently, you shall never be able to discern, and much less to produce, a number of mechanical motions. Again, as to the motions corporal, within the enclosures of bodies, whereby the effects (which were mentioned before) pass between the spirits and the tangible parts, (which are arcasion, colligation, concoction, maturation, &c.) they are not at all handled. But they are put off by the names of virtues, and natures, and actions, and passions, and such other logical words.

Experiment solitary touching the power of heat.

99. It is certain, that of all powers in nature, heat is the chief; both in the frame of nature, and in the works of art. Certain it is likewise, that the effects of heat are most advanced, when it worketh upon a body without loss or dissipation of the matter; for that ever betrayeth the account. And therefore it is true, that the power of heat is best perceived in distillations, which are performed in close vessels and receptacles. But yet there is a higher degree; for howsoever distillations do keep the body in cells and cloysters, without going abroad, yet they give space unto bodies to turn into vapour; to return into liquor; and to separate one part from another. So as nature doth expatiate, although it hath not full liberty: whereby the true and ultimate operations of heat are not attained. But if bodies may be altered by heat, and yet no such reciprocation of rarefaction, and of condensation, and of separation, admitted; then it is like that this Proteus of matter, being held by the sleeves, will turn and change into many metamorphoses. Take therefore a square vessel of iron, in form of a cube, and let it have good thick sides. Put into it a cube of wood, that may fill it as close as may be; and let it have a cover of iron, as strong (at least) as the sides; and let it be well luted, after the manner of the chymists. Then place the vessel within burning coals, kept quick kindled for some few hours space. Then take the vessel from the fire, and take off the cover, and see what is become of the wood.

I conceive, that since all inflammation and evaporation are utterly prohibited, and the body still turned upon itself, that one of these two effects will follow: either that the body of the wood will be turned into a kind of amalgama, (as the chymists call it;) or that the finer part will be turned into air, and the groffer stick as it were baked, and incrustate upon the sides of the vessel; being become of a denser matter, than the wood itself, crude. And for another trial, take also water, and put it in the like vessel, flopped as before; but use a gentler heat, and remove the vessel sometimes from the fire; and again, after some small time, when it is cold, renew the heating of it; and repeat this alteration some few times: and if you can once bring to pass, that the water, which is one of the simplest of bodies, be changed in colour, odour, or taste, after the manner of compound bodies, you may be sure that there is a great work wrought in nature, and a notable entrance made into strange changes of bodies, and productions: and also a way made to do that by fire, in small time, which the sun and age do in long time. But of the admirable effects of this distillation in close, (for so we call it) which is like the wombs and matrices of living creatures, where nothing expireth nor separateth; we will speak fully, in the due place;
not that we aim at the making of Paracelsus pygmies, or any such prodigious follies; but that we know the effects of heat will be such, as will scarce fall under the conceit of man, if the force of it be altogether kept in.

*Experiment solitary touching the impossibility of annihilation.*

100. There is nothing more certain in nature, than that it is impossible for any body to be utterly annihilated; but that, as it was the work of the omnipotency of God, to make somewhat of nothing; so it requireth the like omnipotency to turn somewhat into nothing. And therefore it is well said by an obscure writer of the sect of the chymists; that there is no such way to effect the strange transmutations of bodies, as to endeavour and urge by all means, the reducing of them to nothing. And herein is contained also a great secret of preservation of bodies from change; for if you can prohibit, that they neither turn into air, because no air cometh to them; nor go into the bodies adjacent, because they are utterly heterogeneal; nor make a round and circulation within themselves; they will never change, though they be in their nature never so perishable or mutable. We see, how flies, and spiders, and the like, get a sepulchre in amber, more durable than the monument and embalming of the body of any king. And I conceive the like will be of bodies put into quick-silver. But then they must be but thin, as a leaf, or a piece of paper or parchment; for if they have a greater crassitude, they will alter in their own body, though they spend not. But of this, we shall speak more, when we handle the title of conservation of bodies.
NATURAL HISTORY.

CENT. II.

Experiments in confort touching musick.

MUSICK in the practick, hath been well purfued; and in good variety; but in the theory, and especially in the yielding of the causes of the practick, very weakly; being reduced into certain mystical subtilties, of no use, and not much truth. We shall therefore, after our manner, join the contemplative and active part together.

101. ALL sounds, are either musical sounds, which we call tones; whereunto there may be an harmony; which sounds are ever equal; as singing, the sounds of stringed and wind-instruments, the ringing of bells, &c. or immusical sounds, which are ever unequal; such as are the voice in speaking, all whisperings, all voices of beasts and birds, (except they be singing birds;) all percussions of stones, wood, parchment, skins, (as in drums;) and infinite others.

102. THE sounds that produce tones, are ever from such bodies, as are in their parts and pores equal; as well as the sounds themselves are equal; and such are the percussions of metal, in bells; of glafs, as in the filling of a drinking glafs; of air, as in mens voices whilst they sing; in pipes, whistles, organs, stringed instruments, &c. and of water, as in the night-gale pipes of regals, or organs, and other hydraulicks; which the ancients had, and Nero did so much esteem, but are now loft. And if any man think, that the string of the bow, and the string of the viol, are neither of them equal bodies; and yet produce tones; he is in an error. For the sound is not created between the bow or plectrum, and the string; but between the string and the air; no more than it is between the finger or quill, and the string in other instruments. So there are (in effect) but three percussions that create tones; percussions of metals, (comprehending glafs, and the like) percussions of air, and percussions of water.

103. THE diapason or eight in musick is the sweetest concord; in so much as it is in effect an unison; as we see in lutes, that are strung in the base strings with two strings, one an eight above another; which make but as one sound. And every eight note in ascent, (as from eight to fifteen, from fifteen to twenty two, and so in infinitum) are but scales of diapason. The cause is dark, and hath not been rendred by any; and therefore would be better contemplated. It seemeth that air, (which is the subject of sounds)
in sounds that are not tones, (which are all unequal, as hath been said) ad-
mitteth much variety; as we see in the voices of living creatures; and like-
wise in the voices of several men, (for we are capable to discern several men
by their voices;) and in the combination of letters, whence articulate sounds
proceed; which of all others are most various. But in the sounds which we
call tones, (that are ever equal) the air is not able to cast it self into any such
variety; but is forced to recur into one and the same posture or figure, only
differing in greatness and smallness. So we see figures may be made of lines,
crooked and straight, in infinite variety, where there is inequality; but cir-
cles or squares or triangles equilateral, (which are all figures of equal lines)
can differ but in greater or lesser.

104. It is to be noted (the rather lest any man should think, that there
is any thing in this number of eight, to create the diapason) that this com-
putation of eight, is a thing rather received, than any true computation.
For a true computation ought ever to be, by distribution into equal por-
tions. Now there be intervenient in the rise of eight (in tones) two beemolls,
or half notes; so as if you divide the tones equally, the eight is but seven
whole and equal notes; and if you subdivide that into half notes, (as it is in:
the stops of a lute) it maketh the number of thirteen.

105. Yet this is true; that in the ordinary rises and falls of the voice of
man (not measuring the tone by whom notes, and half notes, which is the
equal measure;) there fall out to be two beemolls (as hath been said) between
the unison and the diapason: and this varying is natural. For if a man
would endeavour to raise or fall his voice, still by half notes, like the stops
of a lute; or by whom notes alone without halfs, as far as an eight; he
will not be able to frame his voice unto it. Which sheweth, that after every
three whom notes, nature requireth, for all harmonical use, one whom note
to be interposed.

106. It is to be considered, that whatsoever virtue is in numbers, for con-
ducing to concert of notes, is rather to be ascribed to the ante-number, than
to the entire number; as namely, that the sound returneth after six, or after
twelve; so that the seventh or the thirteenth is not the matter, but the
fifth or the twelfth; and the seventh and the thirteenth are but the limits
and boundaries of the return.

107. The concords in musick which are perfect or semiperfect, between
the unison, and the diapason, are the fifth, which is the most perfect; the
third next; and the sixth which is more harsh: and as the ancients esteem
ed, and so do my self and some other yet, the fourth they call diatessiri-
on. As for the tenth, twelfth, thirteenth, and so in infinitum; they be but
recurrences of the former; viz. of the third, the fifth, and the sixth; being
an eight respectively from them.

108. For discords, the second and the seventh are of all others the most
odious, in harmony, to the sense; whereof the one is next above the unison,
the other next under the diapason: which may shew, that harmony requi-
reth a competent distance of notes.

109. In harmony, if there be not a discord to the base, it doth not disturb
the harmony, though there be a discord to the higher parts; so the discord
be not of the two that are odious; and therefore the ordinary concert of
four parts consisteth of an eight, a fifth, and a third to the base; but that
fifth is a fourth to the treble, and the third is a sixth. And the caufe is, for
that the base striking more air, doth overcome and drown the treble, (unless
the discord be very odious;) and so hideth a small imperfection. For we see,
that in one of the lower firings of a lute, there foundeth not the found of the treble, nor any mixt found, but only the found of the base.

110. We have no music of quarter-notes; and it may be, they are not capable of harmony; for we see the half-notes themselves do but interpose sometimes. Nevertheless we have some slides or relishes of the voice, or firings, as it were continued without notes, from one tone to another,rising or falling, which are delightful.

111. The causes of that which is pleasing or ingrate to the hearing, may receive light by that which is pleasing or ingrate to the sight. There be two things pleasing to the sight (leaving pictures and shapes aside, which are but secondary objects; and please or displease but in memory) these two are colours and order. The pleasing of colour symbolizeth with the pleasing of any single tone to the ear; but the pleasing of order doth symbolize with harmony. And therefore we see in garden-knots, and the frets of houses, and all equal and well-answering figures, (as globes, pyramids, cones, cylinders, &c.) how they please; whereas unequal figures are but deformities. And both these pleasures, that of the eye, and that of the ear, are but the effects of equality, good proportion, or correspondence: so that (out of question) equality, and correspondence, are the causes of harmony. But to find the proportion of that correspondence, is more abstruse; and notwithstanding we shall speak somewhat, (when we handle tones) in the general enquiry of sounds.

112. Tones are not so apt altogether to procure sleep, as some other sounds; as the wind, the purling of water, humming of bees, a sweet voice of one that readeth, &c. The cause whereof is, for that tones, because they are equal and slide not, do more strike and erect sense than the other. And overmuch attention hindreth deep.

113. There be in music certain figures or tropes; almost agreeing with the figures of rhetoric; and with the affections of the mind, and other senses. First, the division and quavering, which please so much in music, have an agreement with the glittering of light; as the moon-beams playing upon a wave. Again, the falling from a discord to a concord, which maketh great sweetnes in music, hath an agreement with the affections, which are reintegrated to the better, after some dislikes: it agreeeth also with the taste, which is soon glutted with that which is sweet alone. The sliding from the close or cadence, hath an agreement with the figure in rhetoric, which they call praeter expeBatum; for there is a pleasure even in being deceived. The reports, and fuges, have an agreement with the figures in rhetoric, of repetition and traduction. The tripla's, and changing of times, have an agreement with the changes of motions; as when galliard time, and measure time, are in the medley of one dance.

114. It hath been anciently held and observed, that the sense of hearing, and the kinds of music, have most operation upon manners; as to encourage men, and make them warlike; to make them soft and effeminate; to make them grave; to make them light; to make them gentle and inclin'd to pity, &c. The cause is, for that the sense of hearing striketh the spirits more immediately, than the other senses; and more incorporeally than the smelling: for the sight, taste, and feeling, have their organs, not of so present and immediate access to the spirits, as the hearing hath. And as for the smelling, (which indeed worketh also immediately upon the spirits, and is forcible while the object remaineth) it is with a communication of the breath, or vapour of the object odorate: but harmony entering easily, and mingling not
at all, and coming with a manifest motion; doth by custom of often affect-
ing the spirits, and putting them into one kind of posture, alter not a little the nature of the spirits, even when the object is removed. And therefore we see, that tunes and airs, even in their own nature, have in themselves some affinity with the affections; as there be merry tunes, doleful tunes, solemn tunes; tunes inclining mens minds to pity; warlike tunes, &c. So as it is no marvel if they alter the spirits, considering that tunes have a predi-
position to the motion of the spirits in themselves. But yet it hath been no-
ted, that though this variety of tunes doth difpoe the spirits to variety of
passions, conform unto them, yet generally musick feedeth that disposition of the spirits which it findeth. We see also, that several airs, and tunes, do please several nations and persons, according to the sympathy they have with their spirits.

Experiments in consof touching sounds; and first touching the nullity and entity of sounds.

Perspective hath been with some diligence inquired; and so hath the
nature of sounds, in some sort, as far as concerneth musick: But the nature of sounds in general hath been superficially observed. It is one of the sub-
tilest pieces of nature. And besides, I practise, as I do advise; which is, after long inquiry of things, immerfe in matter, to interpofe some subject which is immaterial, or less matter; such as this of sounds; to the end, that the intellect may be rectified, and become not partial.

It is first to be considered, what great motions there are in nature, which pas without sound or noife. The heavens turn about in a moft ra-
pid motion, without noise to us perceived; though in some dreams they have been said to make an excellent musick. So the motions of the comets, and fiery meteors (as fella cadens, &c.) yield no noife. And if it be thought, that it is the greatnefs of distance from us, whereby the sound cannot be heard; we see that lightnings and corufcations, which are near at hand, yield no sound neither: And yet in all these, there is a percussion and divi-
sion of the air. The winds in the upper region (which move the cloudsa-
bove, which we call the rack, and are not perceived below) pass without
noife. The lower winds in a plain, except they be strong, make no noife; but amongst trees, the noife of such winds will be perceived. And the winds (generally) when they make a noife, do ever make it unequally, rising and falling, and sometimes (when they are vehement) trembling at the height of their blast. Rain or hail falling (though vehemently) yieldeth no noise in passing through the air, till it fall upon the ground, water, houses, or the like. Water in a river (though a swift stream) is not heard in the channel, but runneth in silence, if it be of any depth; but the very stream upon shallows, of gravel, or pebble, will be heard. And waters, when they beat upon the shore, or are straitened, (as in the falls of bridges) or are dafled against themselves, by winds, give a roaring noife. Any piece of timber, or hard body, being thrust forwards by another body contiguous, without knock-
ing, giveth no noife. And bodies in weighing one upon another, though the upper body press the lower body down, make no noife. So the motion in the minute parts of any solid body, (which is the principal caufe of vio-
}
116. **Air open, and at large, maketh no noise, except it be sharply per-
cuffed**, as in the sound of a string, where air is percutted by a hard and stiff
body, and with a sharp loofe: for if the string be not strained, it maketh no
noise. But where the air is pent and straitned, there breath or other blowing,
(which carry but a gentle percussion) suffice to create sound; as in pipes and
wind-instruments. But then you must note, that in recorders, which go with
a gentle breath, the concave of the pipe, were it not for the file that
straitneth the air, (much more than the simple concave) would yield no
sound. For as for other wind-instruments, they require a forcible breath;
as trumpets, cornets, hunters-horns, &c. which appeareth by the blown
cheeks of him that windeth them. Organs also are blown with a strong
wind by the bellows. And note again, that some kind of wind-instruments
are blown at a small hole in the side, which straitneth the breath at the
first entrance; the rather, in respect of their traverse and flop above the hole,
which performeth the fipples part; as it is seen in flutes and fifes, which will
not give sound by a blast at the end, as recorders, &c. do. Likewise in all
whistling, you contract the mouth; and to make it more sharpe, men some-
times use their finger. But in open air, if you throw a stone or a dart, they
give no sound: no more do bullets, except they happen to be a little hollow-
ed in the casting; which hollownes penneth the air: nor yet arrows, except
they be ruffled in their feathers, which likewise penneth the air. As for
small whistles or shepherds eaten pipes, they give a sound because of their
extreme slendernefs, whereby the air is more pent, than in a wider pipe.
Again, the voices of men and living creatures pass through the
throat, which penneth the breath. As for the **Jews harp it is a sharpe percussion**;
and besides, hath the advantage of penting the air in
the mouth.

117. **Solid bodies, if they be very softly percutted, give no sound; as**
when a man treadeth very softly upon boards. So chefs or doors in fair
weather, when they open easily, give no sound. And cart-wheels squeak not
when they are liquored.

118. The flame of tapers or candles, though it be a swift motion and
breaketh the air, yet paaseth without sound. Air in ovens, though (no doubt)
it doth (as it were) boil and dilate it self, and is repercussed; yet it is with-
out noise.

119. **Flame percussed by air, giveth a noise**; as in blowing of the fire by
bells; greater, than if the bellows should blow upon the air itself. And
so likewise flame percussing the air strongly, (as when flame suddenly taketh
and openeth) giveth a noise; so great flames, while the one impelleth the
other, give a bellowing sound.

120. **There is a conceit runneth abroad, that there should be a white**
powder, which will discharge a piece without noise; which is a dangerous
experiment if it should be true: for it may cause secret murders. But it
seemeth to me impossible; for, if the air pent be driven forth and strike
the air open, it will certainly make a noise. As for the white powder, (if
any such thing be, that may extingiuish or dead the noise) it is like to be a
mixture of petre and sulphur, without coal. For petre alone will not take
fire. And if any man think, that the sound may be extingiuished or deaded,
by discharging the pent air, before it cometh to the mouth of the piece and
to the open air; that is not probable; for it will make more divided sounds:
as if you should make a crofs barrel hollow, through the barrel of a piece,
it may be, it would give several sounds, both at the nose and at the sides.
But I conceive, that if it were possible to bring to pass, that there should be
no air pent at the mouth of the piece, the bullet might fly with small or no noise. For first it is certain, there is no noise in the percussation of the flame upon the bullet. Next the bullet, in piercing through the air, maketh no noise; as hath been said. And then, if there be no pent air that striketh upon open air, there is no cause of noise; and yet the flying of the bullet will not be stayed. For that motion (as hath been oft said) is in the parts of the bullet, and not in the air. So as trial must be made by taking some small concave of metal, no more than you mean to fill with powder; and laying the bullet in the mouth of it, half out into the open air.

121. I heard it affirmed by a man, that was a great dealer in secrets, but he was but vain; that there was a conspiracy (which himself hindered) to have killed Queen Mary, sister to Queen Elizabeth, by a burning glass, when she walked in Saint James's park, from the leads of the house. But thus much (no doubt) is true; that if burning glasses could be brought to a great strength, (as they talk generally of burning glasses, that are able to burn a navy) the percussation of the air alone, by such a burning glass, would make no noise; no more than is found in coruscations and lightnings, without thunders.

122. I suppose, that impression of the air with sounds asketh a time to be conveyed to the senses; as well as the impression of species visible. Or else they will not be heard. And therefore, as the bullet moveth so swiftly, that it is invisible; so the same quickness of motion maketh it inaudible: for we see, that the apprehension of the eye, is quicker than that of the ear.

123. All eruptions of air, though small and slight, give an entity of sound, which we call crackling, puffing, spitting, &c. as in bay-salt and bay-leaves, cast into the fire; so in chestnuts, when they leap forth of the ashes; so in green wood laid upon the fire, especially roots; so in candles that spit flame, if they be wet; so in rasping, sneezing, &c. so in a rose leaf gathered together into the flesh of a purée, and broken upon the forehead, or back of the hand, as children use.

Experiments in conflux touching production, conservation, and delation of sounds; and the office of the air therein.

124. The cause given of sound, that it would be an elision of the air, (whereby, if they mean any thing, they mean a cutting or dividing, or else an attenuating of the air) is but a term of ignorance; and the motion is but a catch of the wit upon a few instances; as the manner is in the philosophy received. And it is common with men, that if they have gotten a pretty expression, by a word of art, that expression goeth current; though it be empty of matter. This conceit of elision, appeareth most manifestly to be false, in that the sound of a bell, striking, or the like, continueth melting some time after the percussion; but ceaseth straightways, if the bell, or striking, be touched and stayed: whereas, if it were the elision of the air that made the sound, it could not be, that the touch of the bell or striking should extinguish so suddenly that motion, caused by the elision of the air. This appeareth yet more manifestly, by chiming with a hammer, upon the outside of a bell; for the sound will be according to the inward concave of the bell; whereas the elision or attenuation of the air, cannot be but only between the hammer and the outside of the bell. So again, if it were an elision, a broad hammer, and a bodkin, struck upon metal, would give a divers tone, as well as a divers loudness: but they do not so; for though the sound of the one be louder, and of the other softer, yet the tone is the same.

Besides,
Besides, in echoes (whereof some are as loud as the original voice) there is no new elision, but a repercussion only. But that which convinceth most of all is, that sounds are generated, where there is no air at all. But this and the like conceits, when men have cleared their understanding, by the light of experience, will scatter and break up like a mist.

125. It is certain, that sound is not produced at the first, but with some local motion of the air or flame, or some other medium; nor yet without some resistance, either in the air or the body percussed. For if there be a mere yielding or cession, it produceth no sound; as hath been said. And therein sounds differ from light and colours, which pas through the air, or other bodies, without any local motion of the air; either at the first, or after. But you must attentively distinguish, between the local motion of the air (which is but ve hiculum causae, a carrier of the sounds) and the sounds themselves, conveyed in the air. For as to the former, we see manifestly, that no sound is produced, (no not by air it self against other air, as in organs, &c.) but with a perceptible blast of the air; and with some resistence of the air strucken. For even all speech, (which is one of the gentilic motions of air) is with expulsion of a little breath. And all pipes have a blast, as well as a sound. We see also manifestly, that sounds are carried with wind: and therefore sounds will be heard further with the wind, than against the wind; and likewise do rise and fall with the intention or remission of the wind. But for the impression of the sound, it is quite another thing; and is utterly without any local motion of the air, perceptible; and in that resembleth the species visible: for after a man hath lured, or a bell is rung, we cannot discern any perceptible motion (at all) in the air along as the sound goeth; but only at the first. Neither doth the wind (as tarbas it carrieth a voice) with the motion thereof, confound any of the delicate and articulate figurations of the air, in variety of words. And if a man speake a good loudness against the flame of a candle, it will not make it tremble much; though most, when those letters are pronounced which contract the mouth; as $F$, $S$, and some others. But gentle breathing, or blowing without speaking, will move the candle far more. And it is the more probable, that sound is without any local motion of the air, because as it differeth from the sight, in that it needeth a local motion of the air at first; so it paralleth in so many other things with the sight, and radiation of things visible; which (without all question) induce no local motion in the air, as hath been said.

126. Nevertheless it is true, that upon the noife of thunder, and great ordnance, glafs windows will shake; and fishes are thought to be frayed with the motion, caufed by noife upon the water. But these effects are from the local motion of the air, which is a concomitant of the sound, (as hath been said) and not from the sound.

127. It hath been anciently reported, and is still received, that extreme applauses and shouting of people assembled in great multitudes, have so reaped and broken the air, that birds flying over have fallen down, the air being not able to support them. And it is believed by some, that great ringing of bells in populous cities hath chafed away thunder; and also dis sipated pestilent air: all which may be also from the concussion of the air, and not from the sound.

128. A very great sound, near hand, hath strucken many deaf; and at the instant they have found, as it were, the breaking of a skin or parchment in their ear: and my self standing near one that lured loud and thrill,
had suddenly an offence, as if somewhat had broken, or been dislocated in my ear; and immediately after a loud ringing (not an ordinary singing or hissing, but far louder and differing;) so as I feared some deafness. But after some half quarter of an hour it vanished. This effect may be truly referred unto the sound: for (as is commonly received) an over-potent object doth destroy the sense; and spiritual species (both visible and audible) will work upon the senses, though they move not any other body.

129. In delation of sounds, the enclosure of them preferveth them, and causeth them to be heard further. And we find in rolls of parchment or trunks, the mouth being laid to the one end of the roll of parchment or trunk, and the ear to the other, the sound is heard much farther than in the open air. The cause is, for that the sound spendeth, and is dissipated in the open air; but in such concaves it is conserved and contracted. So also in a piece of ordnance, if you speak in the touch-hole, and another lay his ear to the mouth of the piece, the sound passeth and is far better heard than in the open air.

130. It is further to be considered, how it proveth and worketh, when the sound is not enclosed all the length of his way, but passeth partly through open air; as where you speak some distance from a trunk; or where the ear is some distance from the trunk at the other end; or where both mouth and ear are distant from the trunk. And it is tried, that in a long trunk of some eight or ten foot, the sound is helped, though both the mouth and the ear be a handful or more from the ends of the trunk; and somewhat more helped, when the ear of the hearer is near, than when the mouth of the speaker. And it is certain, that the voice is better heard in a chamber from abroad, than abroad from within the chamber.

131. As the enclosure that is round about and entire, preferveth the sound; so doth a semi-concave, though in a less degree. And therefore, if you divide a trunk, or a cane into two, and one speak at the one end, and you lay your ear at the other, it will carry the voice further, than in the air at large. Nay further, if it be not a full semi-concave, but if you do the like upon the mast of a ship, or a long pole, or a piece of ordnance, (though one speak upon the surface of the ordnance, and not at any of the bores;) the voice will be heard farther than in the air at large.

132. It would be tried, how, and with what proportion of disadvantage the voice will be carried in an horn, which is a line arched; or in a trumpet, which is a line retorted; or in some pipe that were finious.

133. It is certain, (howsoever it cross the received opinion) that sounds may be created without air, though air be the most favourable deferent of sounds. Take a vessel of water, and knap a pair of tongs some depth within the water, and you shall hear the sound of the tongs well, and not much diminished; and yet there is no air at all present.

134. Take one vessel of silver, and another of wood, and fill each of them full of water, and then knap the tongs together, as before, about an handful from the bottom, and you shall find the sound much more resounding from the vessel of silver, than from that of wood: and yet if there be no water in the vessel, so that you knap the tongs in the air, you shall find no difference between the silver and the wooden vessel. Whereby, beside the main point of creating sound without air, you may collect two things: the one, that the sound communicateth with the bottom of the vessel; the other, that such a communication passeth far better through water than air.

135. Strike
C E N T. II. N A T U R A L H I S T O R Y.

135. Strike any hard bodies together, in the midst of a flame; and you shall hear the sound with little difference from the sound in the air.

136. The pneumatical part which is in all tangible bodies, and hath some affinity with the air, performeth, in some degree, the parts of the air; as when you knock upon an empty barrel, the sound is (in part) created by the air on the outside; and (in part) by the air in the inside: for the sound will be greater or less, as the barrel is more empty or more full; but yet the sound participateth also with the spirit in the wood, through which it paffeth, from the outside to the inside: and so it cometh to pass in the chiming of bells on the outside; where also the sound paffeth to the inside: and a number of other like inciances, whereof we shall speak more when we handle the communication of sounds.

137. It were extreme grossness to think, (as we have partly touched before) that the sound in strings is made or produced between the hand and the string, or the quill and the string, or the bow and the string: for those are but vehicula motus, passages to the creation of the sound, the sound being produced between the string and the air; and that not by any impulsion of the air from the first motion of the string; but by the return or result of the string, which was strained by the touch to his former place: which motion of result is quick and sharp; whereas the first motion is soft and dull. So the bow tortureth the string continually, and thereby holdeth it in a continual trepidation.

Experiments in confort touching the magnitude and exility and damps of sounds.

138. Take a trunk, and let one whistle at the one end, and hold your ear at the other, and you shall find the sound strike so sharp, as you can scarce endure it. The cause is, for that sound diffuseth it self in round, and so spendeth it self; but if the sound, which would scatter in open air, be made to go all into a canal, it must needs give greater force to the sound. And so you may note, that enclosures do not only preserve sound, but also increafe and sharpen it.

139. A hunter's horn being greater at one end than at the other, doth increafe the sound more, than if the horn were all of an equal bore. The cause is, for that the air and sound being ftirt contracted at the leffer end, and afterwards having more room to spread at the greater end, do dilate themfelves; and in coming out strike more air; whereby the sound is the greater and bafer. And even hunters horns, which are sometimes made ftraight, and not oblique, are ever greater at the lower end. It would be tried alfo in pipes, being made far larger at the lower end: or being made with a belly towards the lower end: and then ifluing into a ftraight concave again.

140. There is in Saint James's fields a conduit of brick, unto which joineth a low vault; and at the end of that a round house of ftone: and in the brick conduit there is a window; and in the round house a slit or rift of fome little breadth: if you cry out in the rift, it will make a fearful roaring at the window. The cause is the fame with the former; for that all concaves, that proceed from more narrow to more broad, do amplify the sound at the coming out.

141. Hawks bells, that have holes in the fides, give a greater ring, than if the pellet did strike upon brass in the open air. The cause is the fame with the firt inciance of the trunk; namely, for that the sound inclofed with the fides of the bell, cometh forth at the holes unfpent and more strong.

142. In
142. In drums, the closeness round about that preferveth the sound from dispersing, maketh the noise come forth at the drum-hole, far more loud and strong, than if you should strike upon the like skin, extended in the open air. The cause is the same with the two precedent.

143. Sounds are better heard, and farther off, in an evening or in the night, than at the noon or in the day. The cause is, for that in the day, when the air is more thin, (no doubt) the sound pierceth better; but when the air is more thick (as in the night) the sound spendeth and spreadeth abroad less: and so it is a degree of enclosure. As for the night, it is true also that the general silence helpeth.

144. There be two kinds of reflexions of sounds; the one at distance, which is the echo; wherein the original is heard distinctly, and the reflexion also distinctly; of which we shall speak hereafter: the other in concurrence, when the sound reflecting (the reflexion being near at hand) returneth immediately upon the original, and so iterateth it not, but amplifieth it. Therefore we see, that music upon the water findeth more; and so likewise music is better in chambers wainscotted than hanged.

145. The strings of a lute, or viol, or virginals, do give a far greater sound, by reason of the knot and board and concave underneath, than if there were nothing but only the flat of a board without that hollow and knot; to let in the upper air into the lower. The cause is the communication of the upper air with the lower; and penning of both from expense or dispersing.

146. An Irish harp hath open air on both sides of the strings: and it hath the concave or belly not along the strings, but at the end of the strings. It maketh a more refounding sound than a bandora, or pharion, or cittern, which have likewise wire-strings. I judge the cause to be, for that open air on both sides helpeth, so that there be a concave; which is therefore best placed at the end.

147. In a virginal, when the lid is down, it maketh a more exile sound, than when the lid is open. The cause is, for that all shutting in of air, where there is no competent vent, dampeth the sound: which maintaineth likewise the former instance; for the belly of the lute or viol doth pen the air somewhat.

148. There is a church at Gloucester, (and as I have heard the like is in some other places) where if you speak against a wall softly, another shall hear your voice better a good way off, than near at hand. Enquire more particularly of the frame of that place. I suppose there is some vault or hollow or hole, behind the wall, and some passage to it towards the farther end of that wall, against which you speak; so as the voice of him that speaketh slideth behind the wall, and then entret at some passage, and communicateth with the air of the hollow; for it is preferred somewhat by the plain wall; but that is too weak to give a sound audible, till it hath communicated with the back air.

149. Strike upon a bow-string, and lay the horn of the bow near your ear, and it will increase the sound, and make a degree of a tone. The cause is, for that the senfory, by reason of the clofe holding, is percussif before the air disperseth. The like is, if you hold the horn between your teeth: But that is a plain delation of the sound, from the teeth to the instrument of hearing; for there is a great intercourse between those two parts; as appeareth by this, that a harsh grating tune setten the teeth on edge. The like
falleth out, if the horn of the bow be put upon the temples; but that is but the slide of the sound from thence to the ear.

150. If you take a rod of iron or brass, and hold the one end to your ear, and strike upon the other, it maketh a far greater sound than the like stroke upon the rod, not so made contiguous to the ear. By which, and by some other instances that have been partly touched, it should appear; that sounds do not only slide upon the surface of a smooth body, but do also communicate with the spirits, that are in the pores of the body.

151. I remember in Trinity College in Cambridge, there was an upper chamber, which being thought weak in the roof of it, was supported by a pillar of iron of the bigness of one's arm in the midst of the chamber; which if you had struck, it would make a little flat noise in the room where it was struck, but it would make a great bomb in the chamber beneath.

152. The sound which is made by buckets in a well, when they touch upon the water, or when they strike upon the side of the well, or when two buckets dash the one against the other, these sounds are deeper and fuller than if the like percusion were made in the open air. The cause is the penning and encloiture of the air in the concave of the well.

153. Barrels placed in a room under the floor of a chamber, make all noises in the same chamber more full and resounding: So that there be five ways (in general) of majoration of sounds: encloiture simple; encloiture with dilatation; communication; reflexion concurrent; and approach to the fenfory.

154. For exility of the voice or other sounds; it is certain that the voice doth pass through solid and hard bodies if they be not too thick: And through water, which is likewise a very close body; and such an one as leteth not in air. But then the voice, or other sound, is reduced by such passage to a great weakness or exility. If therefore you stop the holes of a hawk's bell, it will make no ring, but a flat noise or rattle. And so doth the aetites or eagle-stone, which hath a little stone within it.

155. And as for water, it is a certain trial: let a man go into a bath, and take a pail, and turn the bottom upward, and carry the mouth of it (even) down to the level of the water, and so press it down under the water, some handful and an half, still keeping it even, that it may not tilt on either side, and so the air get out: then let him that is in the bath, dive with his head so far under water, as he may put his head into the pail, and there will come as much air bubbling forth, as will make room for his head. Then let him speak, and any that shall stand without shall hear his voice plainly; but yet made extreme sharp and exile, like the voice of puppets: but yet the articulate sounds of the words will not be confounded. Note, that it may be much more handomely done, if the pail be put over the man's head above water, and then he cowre down, and the pail be pressed down with him. Note that a man must kneel or fit, that he may be lower than the water. A man would think that the Sicilian poet had knowledge of this experiment; for he faith, that Hercules's page Hylas went with a water-pot to fill it at a pleasant fountain that was near the shore, and that the nymphs of the fountain fell in love with the boy, and pulled him under water, keeping him alive; and that Hercules missing his page, called him by his name aloud, that all the shore rang of it; and that Hylas from within the water answered his matter; but (that which is to the present purpose) with so small and exile a voice, as Hercules thought he had been three miles off, when the fountain (indeed) was fast by.

156. Is
NATURAL HISTORY.  CENT. II.

156. In lutes and instruments of strings, if you stop a string high, (whereby it hath less scope to tremble) the sound is more treble, but yet more dead.

157. Take two saucers, and strike the edge of the one against the bottom of the other, within a pel of water; and you shall find, that as you put the saucers lower and lower, the sound groweth more flat; even while part of the saucer is above the water: but that flatness of sound is joined with a harshness of sound; which no doubt is caused by the inequality of the found, which cometh from the part of the saucer under the water, and from the part above. But when the saucer is wholly under the water, the sound becometh more clear, but far more low; and as if the sound came from afar off.

158. A soft body dampeth the sound much more than a hard; as if a bell hath cloth or silk wrapped about it, it deadeth the sound more than if it were wood. And therefore in clericals the keys are lined; and in colleges they use to line the tablemen.

159. Trial was made in a recorder after these several manners. The bottom of it was set against the palm of the hand, stopped with wax round about, set against a damask cushion; thruf into sand; into ashes; into water, (half an inch under the water) close to the bottom of a silver basin; and still the tone remained: but the bottom of it was set against a woollen carpet; a lining of pluth; a lock of wool, (though loosely put in) against snow; and the sound of it was quite deaded, and but breath.

160. Iron hot produceth not so full a sound as when it is cold; for while it is hot, it appeareth to be more soft and less resounding. So likewise warm water, when it falleth, maketh not so full a sound as cold: And I conceive it is softer, and nearer the nature of oil; for it is more slippery, as may be perceived in that it scowreth better.

161. Let there be a recorder made with two fipples, at each end one; the trunk of it of the length of two recorders, and the holes answerable towards each end; and let two play the same lesson upon it at an unison; and let it be noted whether the sound be confounded, or amplified, or dulled. So likewise let a cross be made of two trunks (throughout) hollow; and let two speak, or sing, the one long ways, the other traverse; and let two hear at the opposite ends; and note, whether the sound be confounded, amplified, or dulled. Which two instances will also give light to the mixture of sounds, whereof we shall speak hereafter.

162. A bellows blown in at the hole of a drum, and the drum then strucken, maketh the sound a little flatter, but no other apparent alteration. The cause is manifest; partly for that it hindereth the issue of the sound; and partly for that it maketh the air, being blown together, less moveable.

Experiments in concert touching the loudness or softnesse of sounds, and their carriage at longer or shorter distance.

163. The loudness and softness of sounds, is a thing distinct from the magnitude and extility of sounds; for a base string, though softly strucken, giveth the greater sound; but a treble string, if hard strucken, will be heard much farther off. And the cause is, for that the base string striketh more air, and the treble less air, but with a sharper percussion.

164. It is therefore the strength of the percussio, that is a principal cause of the loudnesse or softnesse of sounds; as in knocking harder or softer; winding of a horn stronger or weaker; ringing of a hand-bell harder or softer,
And the strength of this percussion consisteth as much or more in the hardness of the body percussed, as in the force of the body percussing: for if you strike against a cloth, it will give a less sound; if against wood, a greater; if against metal, yet a greater; and in metals, if you strike against gold (which is the more pliant) it giveth the flatter sound; if against silver or brass, the more ringing sound. As for air, where it is strongly pent, it matcheth a hard body. And therefore we see in discharging of a piece, what a great noise it maketh. We see also, that the charge with bullet, or with paper wet and hard stopped, or with powder alone rammed in hard, maketh no great difference in the loudness of the report.

The sharpness or quickness of the percussion, is a great cause of the loudness, as well as the strength: as in a whip or wand, if you strike the air with it; the sharper and quicker you strike it, the louder sound it giveth. And in playing upon the lute or virginals, the quick stroke or touch is a great life to the sound. The cause is, for that the quick striking cutteth the air speedily; whereas the soft striking doth rather beat than cut.

Experiments in conformity touching the communication of sounds.

The communication of sounds (as in bellies of lutes, empty vessels, &c.) hath been touched obiter in the mensuration of sounds; but it is fit also to make a title of it apart.

The experiment for greatest demonstration of communication of sounds, is the chiming of bells; where if you strike with a hammer upon the upper part, and then upon the midst, and then upon the lower, you shall find the sound to be more treble and more base, according unto the concave on the inside, though the percussion be only on the outside.

When the sound is created between the blast of the mouth and the air of the pipe, it hath nevertheless some communication with the matter of the sides of the pipe, and the spirits in them contained; for in a pipe, or trumpet, of wood and brass, the sound will be divers; so if the pipe be covered with cloth or silk, it will give a divers sound from that it would do of it self; so if the pipe be a little wet on the inside, it will make a differing sound from the same pipe dry.

That sound made within water, doth communicate better with a hard body through water, than made in air it doth with air; vide experimentum 134.

Experiments in conformity touching equality and inequality of sounds.

We have spoken before (in the inquisition touching musick) of musical sounds, whereunto there may be a concord or discord in two parts; which sounds we call tones; and likewise of immusical sounds; and have given the cause, that the tone proceedeth of equality, and the other of inequality. And we have also expressed there, what are the equal bodies that give tones, and what are the unequal that give none. But now we shall speak of such inequality of sounds, as proceedeth not from the nature of the bodies themselves, but is accidental; either from the roughness or obliquity of the passage, or from the doubling of the percussient, or from the trepidation of the motion.

A bell, if it have a rift in it, whereby the sound hath not a clear passage, giveth a hoarse and jarring sound; so the voice of man, when by cold taken the well! growth rugged, and (as we call it) furred, becometh hoarse. And in these two instances the sounds are ingrate, because they are merely un-
equal: but if they be unequal in equality, then the sound is grateful but
purling.

170. All instruments that have either returns, as trumpets, or flexions, as
cornets; or are drawn up, and put from, as sackbuts; have a purling sound:
but the recorder, or flute, that have none of these inequalities, give a clear
sound. Nevertheless, the recorder itself, or pipe moistened a little in the in-
side, soundeth more solemnly, and with a little purling or hissing. Again, a
wreathed string, such as are in the base strings of pandora's, giveth also a
purling sound.

171. But a lute-string, if it be merely unequal in its parts, giveth a harsh
and untuneable sound; which strings we call false, being bigger in one place
than in another, and therefore wire-strings are never false. We see also, that
when we try a false lute-string, we use to extend it hard between the fingers,
and to fillip it; and if it giveth a double species, it is true; but if it giveth a
treble, or more, it is false.

172. Waters, in the noise they make as they run, represent to the ear a
trembling noise; and in regals, (where they have a pipe they call the nightin-
gale-pipe, which containeth water) the sound hath a continual
trembling: and children have also little things they call cocks, which
have water in them; and when they blow or whisle in them, they yield a trembling noise; which
trembling of water hath an affinity with the letter
L. All which inequalities
of trepidation are rather pleasant than otherwise.

173. All base notes, or very treble
notes, give an asper sound;
for that the base striketh more air, than it can well
shake equally. and the treble
cutteth the air so
sharp, as it returneth too swift to make the sound equal: and there-
fore a mean or tenor is the sweetest:
part.

174. We know nothing that can at pleasure make a musical or immusical
sound by voluntary motion, but the voice of man and birds. The cause is (no
doubt) in the weifl or wind-pipe, (which we call aftera arteria,) which be-
ing well extended, gathereth equality; as a bladder that is wrinkled, if it be
extended, becometh smooth. The extension is always more in
times than in
speech: therefore the inward voice or whispeo can never give a tone. And in
singing, there is (manifestly) a greater working and labour of the throat, than
in speaking; as appeareth in the thrufing out or drawing in of the chin,
when we sing.

175. The humming of bees is an unequal buzzing, and is conceived
by some of the ancients, not to come forth at their mouth, but to be an inward
sound; but (it may be) it is neither; but from the motion of their wings,
for it is not heard but when they stir.

176. All metals quenched in water give a fibilation or hissing sound;
(which hath an affinity with the letter Z) notwithstanding the sound be
created between the water or vapour, and the air. Seething also, if there
be but small store of water in a vessel, giveth a hissing sound; but boiling in
a full vessel giveth a bubbling sound, drawing somewhat near to the cocks
used by children.

177. Trial would be made, whether the inequality or interchange of the
medium will not produce an inequality of sound; as if three bells were
made one within another, and air betwixt each; and then the outermost
bell were chimed with a hammer, how the sound would differ from a simple
bell. So likewise take a plate of brass, and a plank of wood, and join them
close together, and knock upon one of them, and see if they do not give an
unequal sound. So make two or three partitions of wood in a hoghead,
with holes or knots in them; and mark the difference of their sound from the
found of an hoghead without such partitions.

Experiments in confort touching the more treble, and the more base tones,
or musical sounds.

178. It is evident, that the percussio of the greater quantity of air, cau­
seth the bafer sound; and the les quantity the more treble sound. The per­
cussio of the greater quantity of air, is produced by the greatness of the bo­
dy percussing; by the latitude of the concave by which the sound paffeth;
and by the longitude of the same concave. Therefore we see that a base
string is greater than a treble; a base pipe hath a greater bore than a treble;
and in pipes, and the like, the lower the note-holes be, and the further off
from the mouth of the pipe, the more base sound they yield; and the nearer
the mouth, the more treble. Nay more, if you strike an entire body, as an
andiron of brass at the top, it maketh a more treble sound; and at the bottom
a bafer.

179. It is also evident, that the sharper or quicker percussio of air cau­
seth the more treble sound; and the lower or heavier the more base sound.
So we see in strings; the more they are wound up and strained, (and thereby
give a more quick start-back) the more treble is the sound; and the flacker
they are, or les wound up, the bafer is the sound. And therefore a bigger
string more strained, and a leffer string less strained, may fall into the fame
tone.

180. Children, women, eunuchs have more small and shrill voices, than
men. The reason is, not for that men have greater heat, which may make
the voice stronger, (for the strength of a voice or sound, doth make a difference
in the loudnefs or softnefs, but not in the tone) but from the dilatation of the
organ; which (it is true) is likewise caufed by heat. But the caufe of chang­
ing the voice at the years of puberty, is more obfcure. It feemeth to be, for
that when much of the moisture of the body, which did before irrigate the
parts, is drawn down to the spermatical vessels; it leaveth the body more hot
than it was; whence cometh the dilatation of the pipes: for we see plainly
all effects of heat do then come on; as pilofity, more roughnefs in the
skin, hardnefs of the Belly, &c.

181. The indufly of the musician hath produced two other means of
straining or intention of stringes, besides their winding up. The one is the flop­
ing of the string with the finger; as in the necks of lutes, viols, &c. The
other is the shortnefs of the string, as in harps, virginals, &c. Both these have
one and the fame reason; for they caufe the string to give a quicker start.

182. In the straining of a string, the further it is strained, the les super­
straining goeth to a note; for it requireth good winding of a string before it
will make any note at all: and in the stops of lutes, &c. the higher they go,
the les distance is between the frets.

183. If you fill a drinking-glas with water, (especialy one sharp below,
and wide above) and fillip upon the brim or out fide; and after empty part of
the water, and so more and more, and still try the tone by fillipping; you
shall find the tone fall and be more base, as the glass is more empty.

Experiments in confort touching the proportion of treble and base tones.

The juft and measured proportion of the air percussed, towards the base­
notes or treblenefs of tones, is one of the greatest secrets in the contemplation
of sounds. For it discovereth the true coincidence of tones into diapasons;

Vol. III. F 2
which is the return of the same sound. And so of the concords and discords between the unison and the diapason, which we have touched before in the experiments of music; but think fit to resume it here, as a principal part of our inquiry touching the nature of sounds. It may be found out in the proportion of the winding of strings; in the proportion of the distance of frets; and in the proportion of the concave of pipes, &c. but most commodiously in the last of these.

184. Try therefore the winding of a string once about, as soon as it is brought to that extension as will give a tone; and then of twice about, and thrice about, &c. and mark the scale or difference of the rise of the tone: whereby you shall discover in one two effects; both the proportion of the sound towards the dimension of the winding; and the proportion likewise of the sound towards the string, as it is more or less strained. But note that to measure this, the way will be, to take the length in a right line of the string, upon any winding about of the peg.

185. As for the stops, you are to take the number of frets; and principally the length of the line, from the first stop of the string, unto such a stop as shall produce a diapason to the former stop upon the same string.

186. But it will best (as it is said) appear in the bores of wind-instruments: and therefore cause some half dozen pipes to be made, in length and all things else alike, with a single, double, and so on to a fextuple bore; and so mark what fall of tone every one giveth. But still in these three last instances, you must diligently observe, what length of string, or distance of stop, or concave of air, maketh what rise of sound. As in the last of these (which, as we said, is that which giveth the aptest demonstration) you must set down what increase of concave goeth to the making of a note higher; and what of two notes, and what of three notes; and so up to the diapason: for then the great secret of numbers and proportions will appear. It is not unlike that those that make recorders, &c. know this already; for that they make them ill sets: And likewise bell-founders, in fitting the tune of their bells. So that inquiry may save trial. Surely it hath been observed by one of the ancients, that an empty barrel knocked upon with the finger, giveth a diapason to the sound of the like barrel full; but how that should be, I do not well understand; for that the knocking of a barrel full or empty, doth scarce give any tone.

187. There is required some sensible difference in the proportion of creating a note, towards the sound itself, which is the passive: and that it be not too near, but at a distance. For in a recorder, the three uppermost holes yield one tone; which is a note lower than the tone of the first three. And the like (no doubt) is required in the winding or stopping of strings.

Experiments in comfort touching exterior and interior sounds.

There is another difference of sounds which we will call exterior and interior. It is not soft nor loud: nor, it is not base nor treble: nor, it is not musical nor immusical: though it be true, that there can be no tone in an interior sound; but on the other side, in an exterior sound there may be both musical and immusical. We shall therefore enumerate them, rather than precisely distinguish them; though (to make some adumbration of that we mean) the interior is rather an impulsion or contusion of the air, than an elision or section of the same: So as the percussion of the one towards the other, differeth as a blow differeth from a cut.

188. In speech of man, the whispering (which they call susurrus in Latin) whether
whether it be louder or softer, is an interior sound; but the speaking out is an exterior sound; and therefore you can never make a tone, nor sing in whispering; but in speech you may: so breathing, or blowing by the mouth, bellows, or wind, (though loud) is an interior sound; but the blowing through a pipe or coneve, (though soft) is an exterior. So likewise the greatest winds, if they have no coarctation or blow not hollow, give an interior sound; the whistling or hollow wind yieldeth a singing, or exterior sound; the former being pent by some other body; the latter being pent in by its own denseness: and therefore we see, that when the wind bloweth hollow, it is a sign of rain. The flame, as it moveth within it self or is blown by a bellows, giveth a murmur or interior sound.

189. There is no hard body, but struck against another hard body, will yield an exterior sound greater or lesser: in so much as if the percussion be over-soft, it may induce a nullity of sound; but never an interior sound; as when one treadeth so softly that he is not heard.

190. Where the air is the percipient, pent or not pent against a hard body, it never giveth an exterior sound; as if you blow strongly with a bellows against a wall.

191. Sounds (both exterior and interior) may be made as well by suction as by emission of the breath: as in whistling or breathing.

Experiments in comfort touching articulation of sounds.

192. It is evident, and it is one of the strangest secrets in sounds, that the whole sound is not in the whole air only; but the whole sound is also in every small part of the air. So that all the curious diversity of articulate sounds, of the voice of man or birds, will enter at a small cranny inconspicuous.

193. The unequal agitation of the winds and the like, though they be material to the carriage of the sounds farther or lesse way; yet they do not confound the articulation of them at all, within that distance that they can be heard; though it may be, they make them to be heard lesse way than in a still; as hath been partly touched.

194. Over-great distance confoundeth the articulation of sounds; as we see, that you may hear the sound of a preacher's voice, or the like, when you cannot distinguish what he faith. And one articulate sound will confound another, as when many speak at once.

195. In the experiment of speaking under water, when the voice is reduced to such an extreme exility, yet the articulate sounds (which are the words) are not confounded, as hath been said.

196. I conceive, that an extreme small, or an extreme great sound, cannot be articulate; but that the articulation requireth a mediocrity of sound: for, that the extreme small sound confoundeth the articulation by contracting; and the great sound by dispersing: and although (as was formerly said) a sound articulate, already created, will be contracted into a small cranny; yet the first articulation requireth more dimension.

197. It hath been observed, that in a room, or in a chapel, vaulted below and vaulted likewise in the roof, a preacher cannot be heard so well, as in the like places not so vaulted. The cause is, for that the subsequent words come on, before the precedent words vanish: and therefore the articulate sounds are more confused, though the gross of the sound be greater.

198. The motions of the tongue, lips, throat, palate, &c. which go to the making of the several alphabetical letters, are worthy enquiry, and pertinent
to the present inquisition of sounds: but because they are subtle, and long to
describe, we will refer them over, and place them amongst the experiments
of speech. The Hebrews have been diligent in it, and have assigned which
letters are labial, which dental, which guttural, &c. As for the Latins and
Greeks, they have distinguished between semi-vowels and mutes; and in
mutes, between mutae tenues, mediae, and aspiratae; not amis, but yet not
diligently enough. For the special strokes and motions that create those sounds,
they have little inquired: as that the letters B, P, F, M, are not
expressed, but with the contracting or shutting of the mouth; that the letters N and B,
cannot be pronounced, but that the letter N will turn into M. As Hecatomba
will be Hecatomba. That M and T cannot be pronounced together, but
P will come between; as emptus is pronounced emptus; and a number of the
like. So that if you enquire to the full, you will find, that to the making
of the whole alphabet, there will be fewer simple motions required, than
there are letters.

199. The lungs are the most spongy part of the body; and therefore ablest
to contract and dilate itself; and where it contracteth itself, it expelleth the
air; which through the artery, throat, and mouth, maketh the voice: but yet
articulation is not made but with the help of the tongue, palate, and the
rest of those they call instruments of voice.

200. There is found a similitude between the sound that is made by
inanimate bodies, or by animate bodies, that have no voice articulate; and di-
vers letters of articulate voices: and commonly men have given such names
to those sounds, as do allude unto the articulate letters. As trembling of wa-
ter hath resemblance with the letter L; quenching of hot metals with the
letter Z; snarling of dogs with the letter R; the noise of screech-owls with
the letter Sh; voice of cats with the diphthong Eu; voice of cuckows with
the diphthong Ou; sounds of strings with the letters Ng: so that if a man
(for curiosity or strangeness sake) would make a puppet or other dead body
to pronounce a word; let him consider on the one part, the motion of the
instruments of voice; and on the other part the like sounds made in inani-
mate bodies; and what conformity there is that causeth the similitude of
sounds; and by that he may minifter light to that effect.
Experiments in conform touching the motions of sounds, in what lines they are circular, oblique, straight, upwards, downwards, forwards, backwards.

201. All sounds whatsoever move round; that is to say, on all sides; upwards, downwards, forwards, and backwards. This appeareth in all instances.

202. Sounds do not require to be conveyed to the sense in a right line, as visibles do, but may be arched; though it be true, they move strongest in a right line; which nevertheless is not caused by the rightness of the line, but by the shortness of the distance; *linea recta brevissima*. And therefore we see if a wall be between, and you speak on the one side, you hear it on the other; which is not because the sound passed through the wall, but archeth over the wall.

203. If the sound be stopped and repercutted, it cometh about on the other side in an oblique line. So if in a coach, one side of the boot be down, and the other up, and a beggar beg on the close side; you will think that he were on the open side. So likewise, if a bell or clock be (for example) on the north side of a chamber, and the window of that chamber be upon the south; he that is in the chamber will think the sound came from the south.

240. Sounds, though they spread round, (so that there is an orb or spherical area of the sound) yet they move strongest, and go farthest in the forelines, from the first local impulsion of the air. And therefore in preaching, you shall hear the preacher's voice better before the pulpit, than behind it, or on the sides, though it stand open. So a harquebus, or ordnance, will be farther heard forwards from the mouth of the piece, than backwards, or on the sides.

205. It may be doubted, that sounds do move better downwards than upwards. Pulpits are placed high above the people. And when the ancient generals spake to their armies, they had ever a mount of turf cast up, whereupon they stood; but this may be imputed to the stops and obstructions which the voice meeteth with, when one spaketh upon the level. But there seemeth to be more in it; for it may be that spiritual species, be-th of things visible and sounds, do move better downwards than upwards. It is a strange thing, that to men standing below on the ground, those that be on the top of Paul's, seem much less than they are, and cannot be known; but to men above,
above, those below seem nothing so much lessened, and may be known: yet it is true, that all things to them above, seem also somewhat contracted and better collected into figure: as knots in gardens shew best from an upper window or terras.

206. But to make an exact trial of it, let a man stand in a chamber not much above the ground, and speak out at the window through a trunk, to one standing on the ground, as softly as he can, the other laying his ear close to the trunk: then via verfa, let the other speak below keeping the same proportion of softness; and let him in the chamber lay his ear to the trunk: and this may be the aptest means to make a judgment, whether sounds descend or ascend better.

Experiments in confort touching the lasting and perishing of sounds; and touching the time they require to their generation or delation.

207. After that sound is created, (which is in a moment) we find it continueth some small time, melting by little and little. In this there is a wonderful error amongst men, who take this to be a continuance of the first sound; whereas (in truth) it is a renovation, and not a continuance: for the body percuss'd hath by reason of the percussion a trepidation wrought in the minute parts, and so reneweth the percussion of the air. This appeareth manifestly, because that the melting sound of a bell, or of a string strucken, which is thought to be a continuance, ceaseth as soon as the bell or string are touch'd. As in a virginal, as soon as ever the jack falleth, and toucheth the string, the sound ceaseth; and in a bell, after you have chimed upon it, if you touch the bell the sound ceaseth. And in this you must distinguish that there are two trepidations: the one manifest and local; as of the bell when it is sounded: the other secret of the minute parts; such as is described in the ninth inscription. But it is true, that the local helpeth the secret greatly.

We see likewise, that in pipes and other wind-instruments, the sound laieth no longer than the breath bloweth. It is true, that in organs there is a confused murmur for a while after you have played; but that is but while the bellows are in falling.

208. It is certain, that in the noise of great ordnance, where many are shot off together, the sound will be carried (at the least) twenty miles upon the land, and much farther upon the water. But then it will come to the ear, not in the instant of the shooting off, but it will come an hour or more later. This must needs be a continuance of the first sound; for there is no trepidation which should renew it. And the touching of the ordinance would not extinguish the sound the sooner: so that in great sounds the continuance is more than momentary.

209. To try exactly the time wherein sound is delayed, let a man stand in a steeple, and have with him a taper; and let some vail be put before the taper; and let another man stand in the field a mile off. Then let him in the steeple strike the bell; and in the same instant withdraw the vail; and so let him in the field tell by his pulse what distance of time there is between the light seen, and the sound heard: for it is certain that the delation of light is in an instant. This may be tried in far greater distances, allowing greater lights and sounds.

210. It is generally known and observed, that light, and the object of light, move swifter than sound; for we see a flash of a piece is seen sooner, than the noise is heard. And in hewing wood, if one be some distance off, he shall see the arm lifted up for a second stroke, before he hear the noise of the first. And the greater the distance, the greater is the prevention: as we see in thunder
OCTAV. III. NATURAL HISTORY.

thunder which is far off; where the lightning precedeth the crack a good space.

211. Colours, when they represent themselves to the eye, fade not, nor melt not by degrees, but appear still in the same strength; but sounds melt and vanish by little and little. The cause is, for that colours participate nothing with the motion of the air, but sounds do. And it is a plain argument that sound participateth of some local motion of the air, (as a cause sine qua non) in that it peripeth so suddenly; for in every section or impulsion of the air, the air doth suddenly restore and reunite it self; which the water also doth, but not so swiftly.

Experiments in conforit touching the passage and interception of sounds.

In the trials of the passage, or not passage of sounds, you must take heed you mistake not the passing by the sides of a body, for the passing through a body; and therefore you must make the intercepting body very close; for sound will pass through a small chink.

212. Where sound passeth through a hard or close body (as through water; through a wall; through metal, as in hawks bells stoppee, &c.) the hard or close body must be but thin and small; for else it deadeth and extinguisheth the sound utterly. And therefore in the experiment of speaking in air under water, the voice must not be very deep within the water: for then the sound pierceth not. So if you speak on the farther side of a close wall, if the wall be very thick you shall not be heard: and if there were an hog'shead empty, whereof the sides were some two foot thick, and the bung-hole stoppee; I conceive the resounding sound, by the communication of the outward air with the air within, would be little or none: but only you shall hear the noise of the outward knock, as if the vessel were full.

213. It is certain, that in the passage of sounds through hard bodies, the spirit or pneumatical part of the hard body itself doth cooperate; but much better when the sides of that hard body are struck, than when the percussion is only within, without touch of the sides. Take therefore a hawk's bell, the holes stoppee up, and hang it by a thread within a bottle glass, and stop the mouth of the glass very close with wax; and then shake the glass, and see whether the bell give any sound at all, or how weak: but note, that you must instead of the thread take a wire; or else let the glass have a great belly; lest when you shake the bell, it dash upon the sides of the glass.

214. It is plain, that a very long and downright arch for the sound to pass, will extinguish the sound quite; so that that sound, which would be heard over a wall, will not be heard over a church; nor that sound which will be heard, if you stand some distance from the wall, will be heard if you stand close under the wall.

215. Soft and foraminous bodies, in the first creation of the sound, will dead it; for the striking against cloth or fur will make little sound; as hath been said: but in the passage of the sound, they will admit it better than harder bodies; as we see, that curtains and hangings will not stay the sound much; but glass-windows, if they be very close, will check a sound more, than the like thickness of cloth. We see also in the rumbling of the belly, how easily the sound passeth through the guts and skin.

216. It is worthy the enquiry, whether great sounds (as of ordnance or bells) become not more weak and exile when they pass through small can-
Experiments in comfort touching the medium of sounds.

217. The mediums of sounds are air; soft and porous bodies; also water. And hard bodies refuse not altogether to be mediums of sounds. But all of them are dull and unapt deferents, except the air.

218. In air, the thinner or drier air carrieth not the sound so well as the more dense; as appeareth in night sounds and evening sounds; and sounds in moist weather and southern winds. The reason is already mentioned in the title of majoration of sounds; being for that thin air is better pierced; but thick air preserveth the sound better from waste: let further trial be made by hollowing in mists and gentle showers; for (it may be) that will somewhat dead the sound.

219. How far forth flame may be a medium of sounds, (especially of such sounds as are created by air, and not betwixt hard bodies) let it be tried in speaking where a bonfire is between; but then you must allow for some disturbance the noise that the flame itself maketh.

220. Whether any other liquors being made mediums, cause a diversity of sound from water, it may be tried: as by the knapping of the tongs; or striking the bottom of a vessel, filled either with milk, or with oil; which though they be more light, yet are they more unequal bodies than air.

Of the natures of the mediums we have now spoken; as for the disposition of the said mediums, it doth consist in the penning, or not penning of the air; of which we have spoken before in the title of delation of sounds: it consisteth also in the figure of the concave through which it passeth; of which we will speak next.

Experiments in comfort, what the figures of the pipes or concaves of the bodies deferent conduce to the sounds.

How the figures of pipes, or concaves, through which sounds pass, or of other bodies deferent, conduce to the variety and alteration of the sounds; either in respect of the greater quantity, or less quantity of air, which the concaves receive; or in respect of the carrying of sounds longer and shorter way; or in respect of many other circumstances; they have been touched, as falling into other titles. But those figures which we now are to speak of, we intend to be as they concern the lines through which sound passeth; as straight, crooked, angular, circular, &c.

221. The figure of a bell partaketh of the pyramis, but yet coming off and dilating more suddenly. The figure of a hunter's horn and cornet, is oblique; yet they have likewise straight horns; which if they be of the same bore with the oblique, differ little in sound; save that the straight require somewhat a stronger blast. The figures of recorders and flutes, and pipes are straight; but the recorder hath a less bore and a greater; above and below. The trumpet hath the figure of the letter S: which maketh that purling sound, &c. Generally the straight line hath the cleanest and roundest sound, and the crooked the more hoarse and jarring.

222. Of a finuous pipe that may have some four flexions, trial would be made. Likewise of a pipe made like a crof, open in the midst. And so likewise of an angular pipe: and see what will be the effects of these several sounds. And so again of a circular pipe; as if you take a pipe perfect round, and make a hole whereinto you shall blow, and another hole not far from that;
that; but with a traverse or stop between them; so that your breath may go
the round of the circle, and come forth at the second hole. You may try
likewise percussions of solid bodies of several figures; as globes, flats, cubes,
crosses, triangles, &c. and their combinations, as flat against flat, and convex
against convex, and convex against flat, &c. and mark well the diversities of
the sounds. Try also the difference in sound of several asides of hard
bodies percussed; and take knowledge of the diversities of the sounds. I my
self have tried, that a bell of gold yieldeth an excellent sound, not inferior
to that of silver or brass, but rather better: yet we see that a piece of mo-
ney of gold soundeth far more flat than a piece of money of silver.

223. The harp hath the concave not along the strings, but across the
strings; and no instrument hath the sound so melting and prolonged, as the
Irish harp. So as I suppose, that if a virginal were made with a double con-
cave, the one all the length as the virginal hath; the other at the end of the
strings as the harp hath; it must needs make the sound perfecter, and not so
thawlow and jarring. You may try it without any sound-board along, but only
harp-wise at one end of the strings: or lastly with a double concave at each
end of the strings one.

Experiments in consort touching the mixture of sounds.

224. There is an apparent diversity between the species visible and au-
dible in this, that the visible doth not mingle in the medium, but the audible
doeth. For if we look abroad, we see heaven, a number of stars, trees, hills,
men, beasts, at once. And the species of the one doth not confound the
other. But if so many sounds come from several parts, one of them would
utterly confound the other. So we see, that voices or consorts of music do
make an harmony by mixture, which colours do not. It is true nevertheless,
that a great light drowneth a smaller, that it cannot be seen; as the sun that
of a glow-worm; as well as a great sound drowneth a leffer. And I suppose
likewise, that if there were two lanthorns of glass, the one a crimson, and
the other an azure, and a candle within either of them, those coloured lights
would mingle and cast upon a white paper a purple colour. And even in
colours, they yield a faint and weak mixture: for white walls make rooms
more lightsome than black, &c. but the cause of the confusion in sounds,
and the inconfusion in species visible, is, for that the light worketh in right
lines, and maketh several cones; and so there can be no coincidence in the eye
or visual point: but sounds that move in oblique and arcuate lines, must needs
encounter and disturb the one the other.

225. The sweetest and best harmony is, when every part or instrument
is not heard by it self, but a confonation of them all; which requireth to
stand some distance off. Even as it is in the mixture of perfumes; or the taking
of the smells of several flowers in the air.

226. The disposition of the air in other qualities, except it be joined with
sound, hath no great operation upon sounds: for whether the air be light-
some or dark, hot or cold, quiet or stirring, (except it be with noise) sweet-
smelling, or thinking, or the like; it importeth not much: some petty altera-
tion or difference it may make.

227. But sounds do disturb and alter the one the other: sometimes the one
drowning the other, and making it not heard; sometimes the one jarring and
discording with the other, and making a confusion; sometimes the one min-
gling and compounding with the other, and making an harmony.

228. Two voices of like loudness, will not be heard twice as far as one
of them alone; and two candles of like light, will not make things seem twice as far off as one. The cause is profound; but it seemeth that the impressions from the objects of the senses do mingle respectively, every one with his kind; but not in proportion, as is before demonstrated: and the reason may be, because the first impression, which is from privative to active, (as from silence to noise, or from darkness to light) is a greater degree, than from less noise to more noise, or from less light to more light. And the reason of that again may be, for that the air, after it hath received a charge, doth not receive a surcharge, or greater charge, with like appetite as it doth the first charge. As for the increase of virtue, generally, what proportion it beareth to the increase of the matter, it is a large field, and to be handled by it self.

Experiments in comfort touching melioration of sounds.

229. All reflexions concurrent do make sounds greater; but if the body that createth either the original sound, or the reflexion, be clean and smooth, it maketh them sweeter. Trial may be made of a lute or viol, with the belly of polished brass instead of wood. We see that even in the open air, the wire string is sweeter than the string of guts. And we see that for reflexion water excelleth; as in music near the water; or in echo's.

230. It hath been tried, that a pipe a little moisten'd on the inside, but yet so as there be no drops left, maketh a more solemn sound, than if the pipe were dry: but yet with a sweet degree of fibilation or purling; as we touched it before in the title of equality. The cause is, for that all things porous being superficially wet, and (as it were) between dry and wet, become a little more even and smooth; but the purling (which must needs proceed of inequality) I take to be bred between the smoothness of the inward surface of the pipe, which is wet; and the rest of the wood of the pipe unto which the wet cometh not, but it remaineth dry.

231. In frosty weather music within doors soundeth better. Which may be by reason not of the disposition of the air, but of the wood or string of the instrument, which is made more crisp, and so more porous and hollow: and we see that old lutes sound better than new for the same reason. And so do lute-strings that have been kept long.

232. Sound is likewise meliorated by the mingling of open air with pent air; therefore trial may be made of a lute or viol with a double belly; making another belly with a knot over the strings; yet so, as there be room enough for the strings, and room enough to play below that belly. Trial may be made also of an Irish harp, with a concave on both sides; whereas it useth to have it but on one side. The doubt may be, lest it should make too much resounding; whereby one note would overtake another.

233. If you sing in the hole of a drum, it maketh the singing more sweet. And so I conceive it would, if it were a song in parts sung into several drums; and for handomeness and strangeness sake, it would not be amiss to have a curtain between the place where the drums are and the hearers.

234. When a sound is created in a wind-instrument between the breath and the air, yet if the sound be communicated with a more equal body of the pipe, it meliorateth the sound. For (no doubt) there would be a differing sound in a trumpet or pipe of wood; and again in a trumpet or pipe of brass. It were good to try recorders and hunters horns of brass, what the sound would be.

235. Sounds are meliorated by the intention of the sense, where the common
mon sense is collected most to the particular sense of hearing, and the sight suspended: and therefore sounds are sweeter (as well as greater) in the night, than in the day; and I suppose they are sweeter to blind men than to others: and it is manifest that between sleeping and waking (when all the senses are bound and suspended) music is far sweeter, than when one is fully waking.

Experiments in concom touching the imitation of sounds.

236. It is a thing strange in nature when it is attentively considered, how children, and some birds, learn to imitate speech. They take no mark (at all) of the motion of the mouth of him that speaketh, for birds are as well taught in the dark as by light. The sounds of speech are very curious and exquisite: so one would think it were a lesson hard to learn. It is true that it is done with time, and by little and little, and with many essays and profers: but all this discharges not the wonder. It would make a man think (though this which we shall say may seem exceeding strange) that there is some transmission of spirits; and that the spirits of the teacher put in motion, should work with the spirits of the learner a pre-disposition to offer to imitate; and so to perfect the imitation by degrees. But touching operations by transmissions of spirits, (which is one of the highest secrets in nature) we shall speak in due place; chiefly when we come to inquire of imagination. But as for imitation, it is certain that there is in men and other creatures a pre-disposition to imitate. We see how ready apes and monkeys are, to imitate all motions of man; and in the catching of dottrels, we see how the Foolish bird playeth the ape in gestures: and no man (in effect) doth accompany with others, but he learneth (ere he is aware) some gesture, or voice, or fashion of the other.

237. In imitation of sounds, that man should he the teacher is no part of the matter; for birds will learn one of another; and there is no reward by feeding, or the like, given them for the imitation; and besides, you shall have parrots that will not only imitate voices, but laughing, knocking, squeaking of a door upon the hinges, or of a cart-wheel; and (in effect) any other noise they hear.

238. No beast can imitate the speech of man but birds only; for the ape it self, that is so ready to imitate otherwise, attaineth not any degree of imitation of speech. It is true, that I have known a dog, that if one howled in his ear, he would fall a howling a great while. What should be the aptness of birds in comparison of beasts, to imitate the speech of man, may be further enquired. We see that beasts have those parts which they count the instruments of speech, (as lips, teeth, &c.) liker unto man than birds. As for the neck by which the throat pafeth, we see many beasts have it for the length as much as birds. What better gorge or attire birds have, may be farther enquired. The birds that are known to be speakers, are parrots, pies, Jays, daws and ravens. Of which parrots have an adunque bill, but the rest not.

239. But I conceive, that the aptness of birds is not so much in the conformity of the organs of speech, as in their attention. For speech must come by hearing and learning; and birds give more heed, and mark sounds more than beasts; because naturally they are more delighted with them, and practice them more, as appeareth in their singing. We see also that those that teach birds to sing, do keep them waking to increase their attention. We
fee also, that cock birds amongst singing birds are ever the betteringers; which may be because they are more lively and listen more.

240. Labour and intention to imitate voices, doth conduce much to imitation: and therefore we fee that there be certain *Pantomimis*, that will represent the voices of players of interludes so to life, as if you see them not you would think they were those players themselves, and so the voices of other men that they hear.

241. There have been some that could counterfeit the distance of voices, (which is a secondary object of hearing) in such sort, as when they stand far by you, you would think the speech came from afar off in a fearful manner. How this is done may be further enquired. But I see no great use of it but for imposture, in counterfeiting ghosts or spirits.

*Experiments in concert touching the reflexion of sounds.*

There be three kinds of reflexion of sounds; a reflexion concurrent, a reflexion iterant, which we call echo; and a super-reflexion, or an echo of an echo, whereof the first hath been handled in the title of magnitude of sounds: the latter two we will now speake of.

242. The reflexion of species visible by mirrours you may command; because passing in right lines they may be guided to any point: but the reflexion of sounds is hard to master; because the sound filling great spaces in arched lines, cannot be so guided: and therefore we see there hath not been practised any means to make artificial echo’s. And no echo already known returneth in a very narrow room.

243. The natural echo’s are made upon walls, woods, rocks, hills and banks; as for waters being near, they make a concurrent echo; but being farther off (as upon a large river) they make an iterant echo: for there is no difference between the concurrent echo and the iterant, but the quicknes or slownes of the return. But there is no doubt but water doth help the delation of echo; as well as it helpeth the delation of original sounds.

244. It is certain, (as hath been formerly touched) that if you speake through a trunk stopped at the farther end, you shall find a blast return upon your mouth, but no sound at all. The cause is, for that the clofene of which prevenveth the original, is not able to prerverve the reflected sound: besides that echo’s are seldom created but by loud sounds. And therefore there is les hope of artificial echo’s in air, pent in a narrow concave. Nevertheless it hath been tried, that one leaning over a well of 25 fathom deep, and speaking, though but softly, (yet not so soft as a whisper) the water returned a good audible echo. It would be tried, whether speaking in caves, where there is no issue fave where you speake, will not yield echo’s as well do.

245. The echo cometh as the original sound doth, in a round orb of air: it were good to try the creating of the echo, where the body repercussing maketh an angle: as against the return of a wall, &c. Also we see that in mirrours there is the like angle of incidence, from the object of the glafs, and from the glafs to the eye. And if you strike a ball side-long, not full upon the surface, the rebound will be as much the contrary way; whether there be any such resillience in echo’s, (that is, whether a man shall hear better if he stand aside the body repercussing, than if he stand where he speakeketh, or any where in a right line between) may be tried. *Trial likewise would be made, by standing nearer the place of repercussing than he that speakeketh; and again by standing farther off than he that speakeketh; and so knowledge...*
knowledge would be taken, whether echo’s as well as original sounds, be not strongest near hand.

246. **There** be many places where you shall hear a number of echo’s one after another: and it is when there is variety of hills or woods, some nearer, some farther off: so that the return from the farther being last created, will be likewise last heard.

247. As the voice goeth round, as well towards the back, as towards the front of him that speaketh; so likewise doth the echo: for you have many back echo’s to the place where you stand.

248. To make an echo that will report three; or four, or five words distinctly, it is requisite that the body repercussing be a good distance off: for if it be near, and yet not so near as to make a concurrent echo, it choppeth with you upon the sudden. It is requisite likewise that the air be not much pent: For air at a great distance pent, worketh the same effect with air at large in a small distance. And therefore in the trial of speaking in the well, though the well was deep, the voice came back suddenly, and would bear the report but of two words.

249. For echo’s upon echo’s, there is a rare instance thereof in a place, which I will now exactly describe. It is some three or four miles from Paris, near a town called Pont-Charenton; and some bird-bolt-shot or more from the river of Seine. The room is a chapel or small church. The walls all standing, both at the sides and at the ends. Two rows of pillars, after the manner of isles of churches, also standing; the roof all open, not so much as any embowment near any of the walls left. There was against every pillar a stack of billets above a man’s height; which the watermen that bring wood down the Seine in sacks, and not in boats, laid there (as it seemeth) for their case. Speaking at the one end, I did hear it return the voice thirteen several times; and I have heard of others, that it would return sixteen times: for I was there about three of the clock in the afternoon: and it is best (as all other echo’s are) in the evening. It is manifest: that it is not echo’s from several places, but a toiling of the voice as a ball to and fro; like to reflexions in looking-glass; where if you place one glass before and another behind, you shall see the glass behind with the image, within the glass before; and again, the glass before in that; and divers such super-reflexions, till the *species speciei* at last die. For it is every return weaker and more shady. In like manner the voice in that chapel created *speciem speciei*, and maketh succeeding super-reflexions; for it melteth by degrees, and every reflexion is weaker than the former: so that if you speak three words, it will (perhaps) some three times report you the whole three words; and then the two latter words for some times; and then the last word alone for some times; still fading and growing weaker. And whereas in echo’s of one return, it is much to hear four or five words; in this echo of so many returns upon the matter, you hear above twenty words for three.

250. The like echo upon echo, but only with two reports, hath been observed to be, if you stand between a house and a hill, and lure towards the hill. For the house will give a back echo, one taking it from the other, and the latter the weaker.

251. There are certain letters that an echo will hardly express; as S for one, especially being principal in a word. I remember well, that when I went to the echo at Pont-Charenton, there was an old Parisian, that took it to be the work of spirits, and of good spirits. For (said he) call Satan, and the echo will not deliver back the devil’s name; but will say vat’en; which is
as much in French as a page, or avoid. And thereby I did hap to find, that
an echo would not return S, being but a hifing and an interiour sound.

252. Echo's are some more sudden, and chop again as soon as the voice
is delivered; as hath been partly said: others are more deliberate, that is, give
more space between the voice and the echo; which is caused by the local near-
ness or distance: some will report a longer train of words; and some a shorter:
some more loud (full as loud as the original, and sometimes more loud) and
some weaker and fainter.

253. Where echo's come from several parts at the same distance, they
must needs make (as it were) a quire of echo's, and so make the report grea-
ter, and even a continued echo; which you shall find in some hills that stand
encompassed theatre-like.

254. It doth not yet appear that there is refraction in sounds, as well as
in species visible. For I do not think, that if a sound should pass through di-
ers mediums, (as air, cloth, wood) it would deliver the sound in a different
place from that unto which it is deferred; which is the proper effect of
refraction. But majoration, which is also the work of refraction, appeareth
plainly in sounds, (as hath been handled at full) but it is not by diversity of
mediums.

Experiments in confirm touching the consist and diffent between visibles and
audibles.

We have obiter, for demonstration sake, used in divers instances the exa-
amples of the sight and things visible, to illustrate the nature of sounds: But
we think good now to prosecute that comparison more fully.

Consent of visibles and audibles.

255. Both of them spread themselves in round, and fill a whole floor or
orb unto certain limits: and are carried a great way: and do languifh and
leffen by degrees, according to the distance of the objects from the fenfories.

256. Both of them have the whole species in every small portion of the
air or medium, so as the species do pass through small crannies without con-
fusion: as we see ordinarily in levels, as to the eye; and in crannies or chinks
as to the sound.

257. Both of them are of a sudden and easy generation and delation
and likewise perifh swiftly and suddenly; as if you remove to the light, or
touch the bodies that give the sound.

258. Both of them do receive and carry exquisite and accurate differences;
as of colours, figures, motions, distances, in visibles; and of articulate voices,
tones, songs and quaverings, in audibles.

259. Both of them in their virtue and working, do not appear to emit
any corporal substance into their mediums, or the orb of their virtue; nei-
ther again to rife or fir any evident local motion in their mediums as they
pass, but only to carry certain spiritual species; the perfect knowledge of the
cause whereof being hitherto scarcely attained, we shall search and handle in
due place.

260. Both of them seem not to generate or produce any other effect in
nature, but such as appertaineth to their proper objects and senfes, and are
otherwise barren.

261. But both of them in their own proper action, do work three mani-

fest effects. The first, in that the stronger species drowneth the leffer; as the
light of the sun, the light of a glow-worm; the report of an ordnance, the

voice:
voice: The second, in that an object of surcharge or excess destroyeth the sense, as the light of the sun the eye; a violent sound (near the ear) the hearing: the third, in that both of them will be reverberated; as in mirrors, and in echo's.

262. Neither of them doth destroy or hinder the species of the other, although they encounter in the same medium; as light or colour hinder not sound, nor e contra.

263. Both of them affect the sense in living creatures, and yield objects of pleasure and dislike: yet nevertheless the objects of them do also (if it be well observed) affect and work upon dead things; namely such as have some conformity with the organs of the two senses; as visibles work upon a looking-glass, which is like the pupil of the eye; and audibles upon the places of echo, which resemble in some sort the cavern and structure of the ear.

264. Both of them do diversly work, as they have their medium diversly disposed. So a trembling medium (as smoke) maketh the object seem to tremble; and a rising or falling medium (as winds) maketh the sounds to rise or fall.

265. To both, the medium, which is the most propitious and conducible, is air; for glass or water, &c. are not comparable.

266. In both of them, where the object is fine and accurate, it conduceth much to have the sense intentive and erect; in so much as you contract your eye when you would see sharply; and erect your ear when you would hear attentively; which in beasts that have ears moveable is most manifest.

267. The beams of light, when they are multiplied and conglomerate, generate heat; which is a different action from the action of sight: and the multiplication and conglomeration of sounds doth generate an extreme rarefaction of the air; which is an action materiale, differing from the action of sound; if it be true (which is anciently reported) that birds with great shouts have fallen down.

Differences of visibles and audibles.

268. The species of visibles seem to be emissions of beams from the object seen, almost like odours, save that they are more incorporeal: but the species of audibles seem to participate more with local motion, like percussions, or impressions made upon the air. So that whereas all bodies do seem to work in two manners, either by the communication of their natures, or by the impressions and signatures of their motions; the diffusion of species visible seemeth to participate more of the former operation, and the species audible of the latter.

269. The species of audibles seem to be carried more manifestly through the air than the species of visibles: for (I conceive) that a contrary strong wind will not much hinder the sight of visibles, as it will do the hearing of sounds.

270. There is one difference above all others between visibles and audibles, that is the most remarkable; as that whereupon many smaller differences do depend: namely, that visibles (except lights) are carried in right lines, and audibles in arcuate lines. Hence it cometh to pafs, that visibles do not intermingle and confound one another, as hath been said before; but sounds do. Hence it cometh, that the solidity of bodies doth not much hinder the sight, so that the bodies be clear, and the pores in a right line, as in glass, crystal.
crystal, diamonds, water, &c. but a thin scarf or handkerchief, though they be bodies nothing so solid, hinder the sight: whereas (contrariwise) these porous bodies do not much hinder the hearing, but solid bodies do almost stop it, or at the least attenuate it. Hence also it cometh, that to the reflection of visibles small glasses suffice; but to the reverberation of audibles are required greater spaces, as hath likewife been said before.

271. **Visibles** are seen farther off than sounds are heard; allowing nevertheless the rate of their bigness: for otherwise a great sound will be heard farther off, than a small body seen.

272. **Visibles** require (generally) some distance between the object and the eye, to be better seen; whereas in audibles, the nearer the approach of the sound is to the sense, the better. But in this there may be a double error. The one because to seeing there is required light; and any thing that toucheth the pupil of the eye (all over) excludes the light. For I have heard of a person very credible, (who himself was cured of a cataract in one of his eyes) that while the silver needle did work upon the sight of his eye, to remove the film of the cataract, he never saw any thing more clear or perfect than the pupil of the eye, and so took not the light from it. The other error may be, for that the object of sight doth strike upon the pupil of the eye directly without any interception; whereas the cave of the ear doth hold off the sound a little from the organ: and so nevertheless there is some distance required in both.

273. **Visibles** are swifter carried to the sense than audibles; as appeareth in thunder and lightning, flame and report of a piece, motion of the air in hewing of wood. All which have been set down heretofore, but are proper for this title.

274. I conceive also, that the species of audibles do hang longer in the air than those of visibles: for although even those of visibles do hang some time, as we see in rings turned, that shew like spheres; in lute-strings slipped; a fire-brand carried along, which leaveth a train of light behind it; and in the twilight; and the like: yet I conceive that sounds stay longer, because they are carried up and down with the wind; and because of the distance of the time in ordnance discharged, and heard twenty miles off.

275. In visibles there are not found objects so odious and ingrate to the sense as in audibles. For foul sights do rather displease, in that they excite the memory of foul things, than in the immediate objects. And therefore in pictures, those foul sights do not much offend; but in audibles, the grating of a saw, when it is sharpned, doth offend so much, as it setteth the teeth on edge. And any of the harsh discords in musick the ear doth straightways refuse.

276. In visibles, after great light, if you come suddenly into the dark, or contrariwise, out of the dark into a glaring light, the eye is dazzled for a time, and the sight confused; but whether any such effect be after great sounds, or after a deep silence, may be better enquired. It is an old tradition, that those that dwell near the cataracts of Niles, are stricken deaf; but we find no such effect in cannoniers nor millers, nor those that dwell upon bridges.
beget the like borrowed or second beams, except it be by reflexion, whereof we speak not. For the beams pass, and give little tincture to that air which is adjacent; which if they did, we should see colours out of a right line. But as this is in colours, so otherwise it is in the body of light. For when there is a screen between the candle and the eye, yet the light passeth to the paper whereon one writeth; so that the light is seen where the body of the flame is not seen; and where any colour (if it were placed where the body of the flame is) would not be seen. I judge that found is of this latter nature: for when two are placed on both sides of a wall, and the voice is heard, I judge it is not only the original found which passeth in an arched line; but the found which passeth above the wall in a right line, begeteth the like motion round about it as the first did, though more weak.

Experiments in comfort touching the sympathy or antipathy of sounds one with another.

278. All concords and discords of music, are (no doubt) sympathies and antipathies of sounds. And so (likewise) in that music which we call broken music or comfort music, some concords of instruments are sweeter than others; (a thing not sufficiently yet observed:) as the Irish harp and base viol agree well: organs and the voice agree well, &c. But the virginals and the lute; or the Welsh harp and Irish harp; or the voice and pipes alone, agree not so well; but for the melioration of music, there is yet much left (in this point of exquisite concords) to try and enquire.

279. There is a common observation, that if a lute or viol be laid upon the back, with a small straw upon one of the strings; and another lute or viol be laid to it; and in the other lute or viol, the unison to that string be struck, it will make the string move; which will appear both to the eye, and by the straws falling off. The like will be, if the diapason or eight to that string be struck, either in the same lute or viol, or in others lying by; but in none of these there is any report of sound that can be discerned, but only motion.

280. It was devised, that a viol should have a lay of wire-strings below, as close to the belly as the lute; and then the strings of guts mounted upon a bridge as in ordinary viols: to the end that by this means the upper strings strucken, should make the lower resound by sympathy, and so make the musician the better; which, if it be to purpose, then sympathy worketh, as well by report of sound as by motion. But this device I conceive to be of no use, because the upper strings which are stopped in great variety, cannot maintain a diapason or unison with the lower, which are never stopped. But if it should be of use at all, it must be in instruments which have no stops; as virginals and harps; wherein trial may be made of two rows of strings, distant the one from the other.

281. The experiment of sympathy may be transferred (perhaps) from instruments of strings, to other instruments of sound. As to try if there were in one steeple two bells of unison, whether the striking of the one would move the other, more than if it were another accord; and so in pipes (if they be of equal bore and sound) whether a little straw or feather would move in the one pipe, when the other is blown at an unison.

282. It seemeth both in ear and eye, the instrument of sense hath a sympathy or similitude with that which giveth the reflexion; (as hath been touched before:)}
Experiments in comfort touching the hindring or helping of the hearing.

283. **When a man yawneth, he cannot hear so well.** The cause is, for that the membrane of the ear is extended; and so rather casteth off the sound than draweth it to.

284. **We hear better when we hold our breath than contrary;** so much as in all listening to attain a sound afar off, men hold their breath. The cause is, for that in all expiration the motion is outwards; and therefore rather driveth away the voice than draweth it: and besides we see, that in all labour to do things with any strength, we hold the breath; and listening after any sound that is heard with difficulty, is a kind of labour.

285. **Let it be tried, for the help of the hearing, (and I conceive it likely to succeed) to make an instrument like a tunnel;** the narrow part whereof may be of the bigness of the hole of the ear; and the broader end much larger, like a bell at the skirts; and the length half a foot or more. And let the narrow end of it be set close to the ear: and mark whether any sound, abroad in the open air, will not be heard distinctly from farther distance, than without that instrument; being (as it were) an ear-spectacle. And I have heard there is in Spain an instrument in use to be set to the ear, that helpeth somewhat those that are thick of hearing.

286. **If the mouth be shut close, nevertheless there is yielded by the roof of the mouth a murmur;** such as is used by dumb men. But if the nostrils be likewise stopped, no such murmur can be made: except it be in the bottom of the palate towards the throat. Whereby it appeareth manifestly, that a sound in the mouth, except such as aforesaid if the mouth be stopped, passeth from the palate through the nostrils.

Experiments in comfort touching the spiritual and fine nature of sounds.

287. **The repercussion of sounds (which we call echo) is a great argument of the spiritual essence of sounds.** For if it were corporeal, the repercussion should be created in the same manner, and by like instruments with the original sound: but we see what a number of exquisite instruments must concur in speaking of words, whereof there is no such matter in the returning of them, but only a plain stop and repercussion.

288. **The exquisite differences of articulate sounds, carried along in the air, shew that they cannot be signatures or impressions in the air, as hath been well refuted by the ancients.** For it is true, that seals make excellent impressions; and so it may be thought of sounds in their first generation: but then the delation and continuance of them without any new sealing, shew apparently they cannot be impressions.

289. **All sounds are suddenly made, and do suddenly perish;** but neither that nor the exquisite differences of them, is matter of so great admiration: for the quaverings and warblings in lutes and pipes are as swift; and the tongue (which is no very fine instrument) doth in speech make no fewer motions than there be letters in all the words which are uttered. But that sounds should not only be so speedily generated, but carried so far every way in such a momentary time, deserveth more admiration. As for example; if a man stand in the middle of a field and speak aloud, he shall be heard a furlong in round;
round; and that shall be in articulate sounds; and those shall be entire in every little portion of the air; and this shall be done in the space of less than a minute.

290. The sudden generation and perishing of sounds, must be one of these two ways. Either that the air suffereth some force by sound, and then restoreth it self as water doth; which being divided, maketh many circles, till it restor it self to the natural consistence: or otherwife, that the air doth willingly imbibe the sound as grateful, but cannot maintain it; for that the air hath (as it should seem) a secret and hidden appetite of receiving the sound at the first; but then other gross and more materiate qualities of the air straightways suffocate it; like unto flame, which is generated with alacrity, but strait quenched by the enmity of the air or other ambient bodies.

There be these differences (in general) by which sounds are divided: 1. Musical, immusical. 2. Treble, base. 3. Flat, sharp. 4. Soft, loud. 5. Exteriour, interiour. 6. Clean, harsh or purling. 7. Articulate, inarticulate.

We have laboured (as may appear) in this inquisition of sounds diligently; both because sound is one of the most hidden portions of nature, (as we said in the beginning;) and because it is a virtue which may be called incorporeal and immateriate; whereof there be in nature but few. Besides, we were willing (now in these our first centuries) to make a pattern or precedent of an exact inquisition; and we shall do the like hereafter in some other subjects which require it. For we desire that men should learn and perceive, how severe a thing the true inquisition of nature is; and should accustom themselves by the light of particulars, to enlarge their minds to the amplitude of the world, and not reduce the world to the narrowness of their minds.

Experiment solitary touching the orient colours in dissolution of metals.

291. Metals give orient and fine colours and dissolutions; as gold giveth an excellent yellow; quicksilver an excellent green; tin giveth an excellent azure; likewise in their putrefactions or rusts; as vermilion, verdigraze, bise, cirrus, &c. and likewise in their vitrifications. The cause is, for that by their strength of body they are able to endure the fire or strong waters, and to be put into an equal posture; and again to retain part of their principal spirit; which two things (equal posture and quick spirits) are required chiefly to make colours lightsome.

Experiment solitary touching prolongation of life.

292. It conduceth unto long life, and to the more placid motion of the spirits, which thereby do less prey and consume the juice of the body; either that mens actions be free and voluntary, that nothing be done invita Minerva, but secundum genium: or on the other side, that the actions of men be full of regulation and commands within themselves: for then the victory and performing of the command giveth a good disposition to the spirits; especially if there be a proceeding from degree to degree; for then the sense of victory is the greater. An example of the former of these is in a country life; and of the latter in monks and philosophers, and such as do continually enjoin themselves.

Experiment solitary touching appetite of union in bodies.

293. It is certain that in all bodies there is an appetite of union, and evi-
tation of solution of continuity: and of this appetite there be many degrees; but the most remarkable and fit to be distinguished are three. The first in liquors; the second in hard bodies; and the third in bodies cleaving or tenacious. In liquors this appetite is weak: we see in liquors, the threading of them in stilllicides (as hath been said;) the falling of them in round drops (which is the form of union) and the faying of them for a little time in bubbles and froth. In the second degree or kind, this appetite is strong; as in iron, in stone, in wood, &c. In the third, this appetite is in a medium between the other two: for such bodies do partly follow the touch of another body, and partly flick and continue to themselves; and therefore they rope and draw themselves in threads; as we see in pitch, glue, birdlime, &c. But note, that all solid bodies are cleaving more or less; and that they love better the touch of somewhat that is tangible, than of air. For water in small quantity cleaveth to any thing that is solid; and so would metal too, if the weight drew it not off. And therefore gold foliate, or any metal foliate, cleaveth: but those bodies which are noted to be clammy and cleaving, are such as have a more indifferent appetite (at once) to follow another body, and to hold to themselves. And therefore they are commonly bodies ill mixed; and which take more pleasure in a foreign body, than in preserving their own confluence; and which have little predominance in drought or moisture.

Experiment solitary touching the like operations of heat and time.

294. Time and heat are fellows in many effects. Heat drieth bodies that do easily expire; as parchment, leaves, roots, clay, &c. And so doth time or age arely; as in the same bodies, &c. Heat diffolveth and melteth bodies that keep in their spirits; as in divers liquefactions; and so doth time in some bodies of a softer confluence: as is manifest in honey, which by age waxeth more liquid; and the like in sugar; and so in old oil, which is ever more clear and more hot in medicinable use. Heat caueth the spirits to search some issue out of the body; as in the volatility of metals; and so doth time; as in the rust of metals. But generally heat doth that in a small time, which age doth in long.

Experiment solitary touching the different operations of fire and time.

295. Some things which pass the fire are softest at first, and by time grow hard, as the crumb of bread. Some are harder when they come from the fire, and afterwards give again, and grow soft, as the crust of bread, bisket, sweet meats, salt, &c. The cause is, for that in those things which wax hard with time, the work of the fire is a kind of melting; and in those that wax soft with time, (contrariwise) the work of the fire is a kind of baking; and whatsoever the fire baketh, time doth in some degree dissolve.

Experiment solitary touching motions by imitation.

296. Motions pass from one man to another, not so much by exciting imagination, as by invitation; especially if there be an aptness or inclination before. Therefore gaping, or yawning, and stretching do pass from man to man; for that that caueth gaping and stretching is, when the spirits are a little heavy by any vapour, or the like. For then they strive (as it were) to wring out and expel that which loadeth them. So men drowsy, and devious to sleep, or before the fit of an ague, do use to yaw and stretch; and do likewi...
likewise yield a voice or sound, which is an interjection of expulsion: so that if another be apt and prepared to do the like, he followeth by the sight of another. So the laughing of another maketh to laugh.

Experiment solitary touching infectious diseases.

207. There be some known diseases that are infectious; and others that are not. Those that are infectious are, first, such as are chiefly in the spirits, and not so much in the humours; and therefore pass easily from body to body: such are pestilences, lippitudes, and such like. Secondly, such as taint the breath, which we see pass manifestly from man to man; and not invisible, as the affects of the spirits do: such are consumptions of the lungs, &c. Thirdly, such as come forth to the skin, and therefore taint the air on the body adjacent; especially if they consist in an unctuous substance not apt to dissipate; such are scabs and leprosy. Fourthly, such as are merely in the humours, and not in the spirits, breath or exhalations: and therefore they never infect but by touch only; and such a touch also as cometh within the epidermis; as the venom of the French-pox, and the biting of a mad dog.

Experiment solitary touching the incorporation of powders and liquors.

298. Most powders grow more close and coherent by mixture of water, than by mixture of oil, though oil be the thicker body; as meal, &c. The reason is the congruity of bodies; which if it be more, maketh a perfect imbition and incorporation; which in most powders is more between them and water, than between them and oil: but painters colours ground, and athes, do better incorporate with oil.

Experiments solitary touching exercise of the body.

299. Much motion and exercise is good for some bodies; and sitting and less motion for others. If the body be hot and void of superfluous moisture, too much motion hurteth: and it is an error in physicians, to call too much upon exercise. Likewise men ought to beware, that they use not exercise and a spare diet both: but if much exercise, then a plentiful diet; and if sparing diet, then little exercise. The benefits that come of exercise are, first, that it sendeth nourishment into the parts more forcibly. Secondly, that it helpeth to expel by sweat, and so maketh the parts assimilate the more perfectly. Thirdly, that it maketh the substance of the body more solid and compact; and so less apt to be consumed and depredated by the spirits. The evils that come of exercise are, first, that it maketh the spirits more hot and predatory. Secondly, that it doth absorb likewise, and attenuate too much the moisture of the body. Thirdly, that it maketh too great concussion (especially if it be violent) of the inward parts, which delight more in rest. But generally exercise, if it be much, is no friend to prolongation of life; which is one cause why women live longer than men, because they sit less.

Experiment solitary touching meats that induce satiety.

300. Some food we may use long, and much, without glutting; as bread, flesh that is not fat or rank, &c. Some other (though pleasant) gluteth sooner; as sweet meats, fat meats, &c. The cause is, for that appetite confesseth in the emptiness of the mouth of the stomach; or possessing it with some-what
what that is astringent; and therefore cold and dry. But things that are sweet and fat are more filling; and do swim and hang more about the mouth of the stomach; and go not down so speedily: and again turn sooner to choler, which is hot, and ever abateth the appetite. We see also, that another cause of satiety, is an over-custom; and of appetite is novelty; and therefore meats, if the same be continually taken, induce loathing. To give the reason of the distaste of satiety, and of the pleasure in novelty; and to distinguish not only in meats and drinks, but also in motions, loves, company, delights, studies, what they be that custom maketh more grateful, and what more tedious, were a large field. But for meats, the cause is attraction, which is quicker, and more excited towards that which is new, than towards that whereof there remaineth a relish by former use. And (generally) it is a rule, that whatsoever is somewhat ingrate at first, is made grateful by custom; but whatsoever is too pleasing at first, groweth quickly to satiate.
Experiments in comfort touching the clarification of liquors, and the accelerating thereof.

Acceleration of time, in works of nature, may well be esteemed inter magalia naturae. And even in divine miracles, accelerating of the time is next to the creating of the matter. We will now therefore proceed to the enquiry of it: and for acceleration of germination, we will refer it over unto the place where we shall handle the subject of plants generally; and will now begin with other accelerations.

301. Liquors are (many of them) at the first thick and troubled; as muste, wort, juices of fruits, or herbs expreßed, &c. and by time they settle and clarify. But to make them clear before the time, is a great work; for it is a spur to nature, and putteth her out of her pace: and besides, it is of good use for making drinks and sauces potable and serviceable speedily; but to know the means of accelerating clarification, we must first know the causes of clarification. The first cause is, by the separation of the großer parts of the liquor from the finer. The second, by the equal distribution of the spirits of the liquor with the tangible parts: for that ever representeth bodies clear and untroubled. The third, by the refining the spirit itself, which thereby giveth to the liquor more splendor and more lustre.

302. First, for separation, it is wrought by weight, as in the ordinary residence or settlement of liquors, by heat, by motion, by precipitation, or sublimation; (that is, a calling of the several parts either up or down, which is a kind of attraction:) by adhesion; as when a body more viscus is mingled and agitated with the liquor; which viscus body (afterwards severed) draweth with it the großer parts of the liquor: and lastly, by percolation or passage.

303. Secondly, for the even distribution of the spirits, it is wrought by gentle heat; and by agitation or motion; (for of time we speak not, because it is that we would anticipate and represent:) and it is wrought also by mixture of some other body, which hath a virtue to open the liquor, and to make the spirits the better pass through.

304. Thirdly, for the refining of the spirit, it is wrought likewise by heat; by motion; and by mixture of some body which hath virtue to attenuate. So therefore (having shewn the causes) for the accelerating of clarification in general, and the inducing of it, take these instances and trials.
It is in common practice to draw wine or beer from the lees, (which we call racking;) whereby it will clarify much the sooner: for the lees, though they keep the drink in heart, and make it lasting; yet withal they cast up some dirtiness: and this instance is to be referred to separation.

On the other side it were good to try, what the adding to the liquor more lees than his own will work; for though the lees do make the liquor turbid, yet they refine the spirits. Take therefore a vessel of new beer, and take another vessel of new beer, and rack the one vessel from the lees, and pour the lees of the racked vessel into the un racked vessel, and see the effect: this instance is referred to the refining of the spirits.

Take new beer, and put in some quantity of stale beer into it, and see whether it will not accelerate the clarification, by opening the body of the beer, and cutting the groffer parts, whereby they may fall down into lees. And this instance again is referred to separation.

The longer malt or herbs, or the like, are infused in liquor, the more thick and troubled the liquor is; but the longer they be decocted in the liquor, the clearer it is. The reason is plain, because in infusion, the longer it is, the greater is the part of the groser body that goeth into the liquor: but in decoction, though more goeth forth, yet it either purgeth at the top, or setteth at the bottom. And therefore the most exact way to clarify, is, first, to infuse, and then to take off the liquor and decoct it; as they do in beer, which hath malt first infused in the liquor, and is afterwards boiled with the hop. This also is referred to separation.

Take hot embers, and put them about a bottle filled with new beer, almoft to the very neck: let the bottle be well stoppe, left it fly out: and continue it, renewing the embers every day by the space of ten days; and then compare it with another bottle of the same beer let by. Take also lime both quenched and unquenched, and set the bottles in them surrea. This instance is referred both to the even distribution, and also to the refining of the spirits by heat.

Take bottles, and swing them; or carry them in a wheel-barrow upon rough ground, twice in a day: but then you may not fill the bottles full, but leave some air; for if the liquor come close to the stopple, it cannot play nor flower: and when you have shaken them well either way, pour the drink into another bottle stoppe close after the usual manner; for if it stay with much air in it, the drink will pall; neither will it settle so perfectly in all the parts. Let it stand some twenty four hours: then take it, and put it again into a bottle with air, ut supra: and thence into a bottle stoppe, ut supra: and so repeat the same operation for seven days. Note, that in the emptying of one bottle into another, you must do it swiftly lest the drink pall. It were good also to try it in a bottle with a little air below the neck, without emptying. This instance is referred to the even distribution and refining of the spirits by motion.

As for percolation inward and outward, (which belongeth to separation) trial would be made of clarifying by adhesion, with milk put into new beer, and stirr'd with it: for it may be that the groser part of the beer will cleave to the milk: the doubt is, whether the milk will never well again; which is soon tried. And it is usual in clarifying hippocrafs to put in milk; which after fevereth and carrieth with it the groser parts of the hippocrafs, as hath been said elsewhere. Also for the better clarification by percolation, when they tun new beer, they use to let it pass through a strainer; and it is like the finer the strainer is, the clearer it will be.
Experiments in comfort touching maturation, and the accelerating thereof. And first, touching the maturation and quickning of drinks. And next, touching maturation of fruits.

The accelerating of maturation we will now enquire of. And of maturation it fell. It is of three natures. The maturation of fruits: the maturation of drinks: and the maturation of impostumes and ulcers. This last we refer to another place, where we shall handle experiments medicinal. There be also other maturations, as of metals, &c. whereof we will speak as occasion serveth. But we will begin with that of drinks, because it hath such affinity with the clarification of liquors.

For the maturation of drinks, it is wrought by the congregation of the spirits together, whereby they digest more perfectly the grosser parts: and it is effected partly by the same means that clarification is, (whereof we spake before,) but then note, that an extreme clarification doth spread the spirits so smooth, as they become dull, and the drink dead, which ought to have a little flowering. And therefore all your clear amber drink is flat.

We see the degrees of maturation of drinks; in muste, in wine, as it is drunk, and in vinegar. Whereof muste hath not the spirits well congregated; wine hath them well united; so as they make the parts somewhat more oily; vinegar hath them congregated, but more jetune, and in smaller quantity; the greatest and finest spirit and part being exhaled: for we see vinegar is made by setting the vessel of wine against the hot sun; and therefore vinegar will not burn; for that much of the finer parts is exhaled.

The refreshing and quickning of drink pall’d or dead, is by enforcing the motion of the spirit: so we see that open weather relaxeth the spirit, and maketh it more lively in motion. We see also bottling of beer or ale, while it is new and full of spirit, (so that it spiriteth when the stopple is taken forth) maketh the drink more quick and windy. A pan of coals in the cellar doth likewise good, and maketh the drink work again. New drink put to drink that is dead provoketh it to work again: nay, which is more, (as some affirm) a brewing of new beer set by old beer, maketh it work again. It were good also to enforce the spirits by some mixtures, that may excite and quicken them; as by putting into the bottles, nitre, chalk, lime, &c.

We see cream is matured, and made to rise more speedily by putting in cold water; which as it seemeth getteth down the whey.

It is tried, that the burying of bottles of drink well stop’d, either in dry earth a good depth; or in the bottom of a well within water; and both of all the hanging of them in a deep well somewhat above the water for some fortnights space, is an excellent means of making drink fresh and quick: for the cold doth not caufe any exhaling of the spirits at all, as heat doth, though it rarifieth the rest that remain: but cold maketh the spirits vigorous, and irritateth them, whereby they incorporate the parts of the liquor perfectly.

As for the maturation of fruits; it is wrought by the calling forth of the spirits of the body outward, and so spreading them more smoothly: and likewise by digesting in some degree the grosser parts: and this is effected by heat, motion, attraction; and by a rudiment of putrefaction; for the inception of putrefaction hath in it a maturation.
up in wax; shut in a box, &c. There was also an apple hanged up in smoak; of all which the experiment forted in this manner.

318. After a month's space, the apple enclosed in wax, was as green and fresh as at the first putting in, and the kernels continued white. The cause is, for that all exclusion of open air, (which is ever predatory) maintaineth the body in his first freshness and moisture: but the inconvenience is, that it taith a little of the wax; which, I suppose, in a pomegranate, or some such thick-coated fruit, it would not do.

319. The apple hanged in the smoak, turned like an old mellow apple, wrinkled, dry, soft, sweet, yellow within. The cause is, for that such a degree of heat, which doth neither melt nor scorch, (for we see that in a greater heat, a roast apple softeth and melteth; and pigs feet, made of quarters of warden, scorch and have a skin of cole) doth mellow, and not adure: the smoak also maketh the apple (as it were) sprinkled with foot, which helpeth to mature. We see that in drying of pears and prunes in the oven, and removing of them often as they begin to sweat, there is a like operation; but that is with a far more intense degree of heat.

320. The apples covered in the lime and ashes were well matured; as appeared both in their yellowness and sweetness. The cause is, for that that degree of heat which is in lime and ashes, (being a smothering heat) is of all the rest most proper, for it doth neither liquefy nor arefy; and that is true maturation. Note that the taste of those apples was good; and therefore it is the experiment fitted for use.

321. The apples covered with crabs and onions, were likewise well matured. The cause is, not any heat; but for that the crabs and the onions draw forth the spirits of the apple, and spread them equally throughout the body; which taketh away hardness. So we see one apple ripeneth against another. And therefore in making of cyder, they turn the apples first upon a heap. So one cluster of grapes that toucheth another whilst it groweth, ripeneth faster; *botrus contra botrum citius maturejcit.*

322. The apples in hay and the straw, ripened apparently, though not so much as the other; but the apple in the straw more. The cause is, for that the hay and straw have a very low degree of heat, but yet close and smothing, and which drieth not.

323. The apple in the close box was ripened also: the cause is, for that all air kept close hath a degree of warmth: as we see in wool, furr, plufh, &c. Note that all these were compared with another apple of the same kind, that lay of itself: and in comparison of that were more sweet and more yellow, and so appeared to be more ripe.

324. Take an apple, or pear, or other like fruit, and roll it upon a table hard: we see in common experience, that the rolling doth soften and sweeten the fruit pretently: which is nothing but the smooth distribution of the spirits into the parts: for the unequal distribution of the spirits maketh the harshness: but this hard rolling is between concoction, and a simple maturation; therefore, if you should roll them but gently, perhaps twice a day; and continue it some seven days, it is like they would mature more finely, and like unto the natural maturation.

325. Take an apple, and cut out a piece of the top, and cover it, to see whether that solution of continuity will not hasten a maturation: we see that where a wap, or a fly, or a worm hath bitten, in a grape, or any fruit, it will sweeten haftily.

326. Take an apple, &c. and prick it with a pin full of holes, not deep, and
and smear it a little with sack, or cinnamon water, or spirit of wine, every
day for ten days, to see if the virtual heat of the wine or strong waters
will not mature it.

In these trials also, as was used in the first, let another of the same fruits
by to compare them; and try them by their yellowness and by their
sweetness.

Experiment solitary touching the making of gold.

The world hath been much abused by the opinion of making of gold:
the work itself I judge to be possible; but the means (hitherto propounded)
to effect it, are, in the practice, full of error and imposture; and in the theo­
ry, full of unfound imaginations. For to say, that nature hath an intention
to make all metals gold; and that, if she were delivered from impediments,
she would perform her own work; and that, if the crudities; impurities, and
leprofities of metals were cured, they would become gold; and that a little
quantity of the medicine, in the work of projection, will turn a sea of the
bafer metal into gold by multiplying: all these are but dreams; and so are
many other grounds of alchymy. And to help the matter, the alchymists call
in likewise many vanities out of astrology; natural magick; superflitious in­
terpretations of scriptures; auricular traditions; feigned testimonies of an­
cient authors; and the like. It is true, on the other side, they have brought
to light not a few profitable experiments, and thereby made the world some
amends. But we, when we shall come to handle the version and transmu­
tation of bodies, and the experiments concerning metals and minerals; will
lay open the true ways and passages of nature, which may lead to this great
effect. And we commend the wit of the Chinese, who despair of making of
gold, but are mad upon the making of silver: for certain it is, that it is more
difficult to make gold, (which is the moft ponderous and materiate
amongst metals) of other metals less ponderous and less materiate; than (via ver­ja)
to make silver of lead or quicksilver; both which are more ponderous than
silver; so that they need rather a farther degree of fixation, than any con­
densation. In the mean time, by occasion of handling the axioms touching
maturation, we will direct a trial touching the maturing of metals, and
thereby turning some of them into gold: for we conceive indeed, that a per­
sect good concoction, or digestion, or maturation of some metals, will pro­
duce gold. And here we call to mind, that we knew a Dutchman, that had
wrought himself into the belief of a great person, by undertaking that he
could make gold: whose discourse was, that gold might be made; but that
the alchymists over-fired the work: for (he said) the making of gold did re­
quire a very temperate heat, as being in nature a subterrany work, where lit­
tle heat cometh; but yet more to the making of gold than of any other
metal; and therefore that he would do it with a great lamp, that should car­
ry a temperate and equal heat: and that it was the work of many months.
The device of the lamp was folly; but the over-firing now used, and the e­
equal heat to be required, and the making it a work of some good time, are
no ill discourses.

We refer therefore to our axioms of maturation, in effect touched before.
The first is, that there be used a temperate heat; for they are ever tempe­
rate heats that digest and mature: wherein we mean temperate, according
to the nature of the subject; for that may be temperate to fruits and liquors,
which will not work at all upon metals. The second is, that the spirit of the
metal be quickned, and the tangible parts opened: for without those two
ope-
operations, the spirit of the metal wrought upon, will not be able to digest the parts. The third is, that the spirits do spread themselves even, and move not subfultorily; for that will make the parts clofe and plant. And this requireth a heat that doth not rise and fall, but continue as equal as may be. The fourth is, that no part of the spirit be emitted, but detained: for if there be emiſsion of spirit, the body of the metal will be hard and churlife. And this will be performed, partly by the temper of the fire; and partly by the cloſenefs of the vefSEL. The fifth is, that there be choice made of the likeliest and beſt prepared metal for the verſion: for that will facilitate the work. The fith is, that you give time enough for the work: not to prolong hopes (as the alchymists do;) but indeed to give nature a convenient fpace to work in. These principles are moft certain and true; we will now derive a direction of trial out of them; which may (perhaps) by farther medicin be improved.

327. Let there be a fmall furnace made of a temperate heat; let the heat be ſuch as may keep the metal perpetually molten, and no more; for that above all importeth to the work. For the material, take filver, which is the metal that in nature symbolizeth moſt with gold; put in alfo with the filver, a tenth part of quicksilver, and a twelfth part of nitre, by weight; both thefe to quicken and open the body of the metal: and let the work be continued by the fpace of fix months at the leaft. And this be at fome times) an injection of fome oiled fubſtance; fuch as they uſe in the recovering of gold, which by vexing with separations hath been made chrulife: and this is to lay the parts more clofe and smooth, which is the main work. For gold (as we fee) is the clofeft (and therefore the heaviest) of metals; and is likewife the moft flexible and tenſible. Note; that to think to make gold of quicksilver, becaufe it is the heaviest, is a thing not to be hoped; for quicksilver will not endure the manage of the fire. Next to filver, I think copper were fitteſt to be the material.

Experiment solitary touching the nature of gold.

328. Gold hath these natures; greatnefs of weight; cloſenefs of parts; fixation; plianſefs, or softneſs; immunity from ruſt; colour or tincture of yellow. Therefore the fure way (though moft about) to make gold, is to know the caufes of the feveral natures before rehearſed, and the axioms concerning the fame. For if a man can make a metal that hath all these properties, let men diſpute whether it be gold or no?

Experiments in conſort touching the inducing and accelerating of putreſſation.

The inducing and accelerating of putreſſation, is a subjeſt of a very univerſal enquiry: for corruption is a reciprocal to generation: and they two are as nature’s two terms or boundaries; and the guides to life and death. Putreſſation is the work of the spirits of bodies, which ever are unquiet to get forth and congregate with the air, and to enjoy the fun-beams. The getting forth, or spreading of the spirits, (which is a degree of getting forth) hath five differing operations. If the spirits be detained within the body, and move more violently, there followeth colligation, as in metals, &c. If more mildly, there followeth digestion, or maturation; as in drinks and fruits. If the spirits be not merely detained, but protrude a little, and that motion be confused and inordinate, there followeth putreſſation; which ever dissolveth the confifence of the body into much inequality; as in fleſh, rotten fruits, shining wood, &c. and alfo in the ruſt of metals. But if that motion be in
In certain order, there followeth vivification and figuration; as both in living creatures bred of putrefaction, and in living creatures perfect. But if the spirits issue out of the body, there followeth desiccation, induration, consump-

329. **The means to induce and accelerate putrefaction, are, first, by adding some crude or watry moisture**; as in wetting of any flesh, fruit, wood, with water, &c. as in brick, evaporation of bodies liquid, &c. for contrariwise unctuous and oily substances preferve.

330. **The second is by invitation or excitation**; as when a rotten apple lieth close to another apple that is found: or when dung (which is a substance already putrefied) is added to other bodies. And this is also notably seen in church-yards, where they bury much: where the earth will consume the corps in far shorter time than other earth will.

331. **The third is by closeness and flopping, which detaineth the spirits in priof more than they would**; and thereby irritateth them to seek issue; as in corn and clothes which wax musty; and therefore open air (which they call aer perflabilis) doth preferve: and this doth appear more evidently in aquas, which come (most of them) of obstructions, and penning the humours, which thereupon putrefy.

332. **The fourth is by solution of continuity**; as we see an apple will rot sooner if it be cut or pierced; and so will wood, &c. And so the flesh of creatures alive, where they have received any wound.

333. **The fifth is either by the exhaling or by the driving back of the principal spirits, which preferve the consistence of the body**; so that when their government is dissolved, every part returneth to his nature or homogeneity. And this appeareth in urine and blood when they cool, and thereby break: it appeareth also in the gangrene, or mortification of flesh, either by opiates, or by intense colds. I conceive also the same effect is in putrefactions; for that the malignity of the infecting vapour danceh the principal spirits, and maketh them fly and leave their regiment; and then the humours, flesh, and secondary spirits, do dissolve and break as in an anarchy.

334. **The sixth is when a foreign spirit, stronger and more eager than the spirit of the body, enthrall the body; as in the slinging of serpents. And this is the cause (generally) that upon all poisons followeth swelling: and we see swelling followeth also, when the spirits of the body it self congregate too much; as upon blows and bruises; or when they are pent in too much, as in swelling upon cold. And we see also, that the spirits coming of putrefaction of humours in aquas, &c. which may be counted as foreign spirits, though they be bred within the body, do extinguish and suffocate the natural spirits and heat.

335. **The seventh is by such a weak degree of heat, as setteth the spirits in a little motion, but is not able either to digest the parts, or to issue the spirits; as is seen in flesh kept in a room that is not cool: whereas in a cool and wet larder it will keep longer. And we see that vivification (whereof putrefaction is the bastard brother) is effected by such soft heats; as the hatching of eggs, the heat of the womb, &c.

336. **The eighth is by the releasing of the spirits, which before were close kept by the solidness of their coverture, and thereby their appetite of issuing checked; as in the artificial rusts induced by strong waters, in iron, lead, &c. and therefore wetting hasteneth rust or putrefaction of any thing, because it softeneth the crust for the spirits to come forth.

337. **The ninth is by the interchange of heat and cold, or wet and dry; as**
as we see in the mouldring of earth in frosts and sun; and in the more hastily rotting of wood, that is sometimes wet, sometimes dry.

338. The tenth is by time, and the work and procedure of the spirits themselves, which cannot keep their station; especially if they be left to themselves; and there be not agitation or local motion. As we see in corn not stirred; and men's bodies not exercised.

339. All moulds are inceptions of putrefaction; as the moulds of pies and flesh; the moulds of oranges and lemons; which moulds afterwards turn into worms, or more odious putrefactions: and therefore (commonly) prove to be of ill odour. And if the body be liquid, and not apt to putrefy totally, it will cast up a mother in the top, as the mothers of distilled waters.

340. Moss is a kind of mould of the earth and trees. But it may be better sorted as a rudiment of germination; to which we refer it.

Experiments in confort touching prohibiting and preventing putrefaction.

It is an enquiry of excellent use, to enquire of the means of preventing or staying of putrefaction; for therein consisteth the means of conservation of bodies: for bodies have two kinds of dissolutions; the one by consumeption and deficcation; the other by putrefaction. But as for the putrefactions of the bodies of men and living creatures, (as in agues, worms, consumptions of the lungs, impotumes, and ulcers both inwards and outwards) they are a great part of physic and surgery; and therefore we will reserve the enquiry of them to the proper place, where we shall handle medicinal experiments of all sorts. Of the rest we will now enter into an enquiry: wherein much light may be taken, from that which hath been said of the means to induce or accelerate putrefactions: for the removing that which caused putrefaction, doth prevent and avoid putrefaction.

341. The first means of prohibiting or checking putrefaction, is cold: for so we see that meat and drink will last longer unpreserved, or unswored, in winter than in summer: and we see that flowers and fruits, put in conservatories of snow, keep fresh. And this worketh by the detention of the spirits, and confinement of the tangible parts.

342. The second is astringence: for astringence prohibiteth dissolution: as we see (generally) in medicines, whereof such as are astringents do inhibit putrefaction: and by the same reason of astringency, some small quantity of oil of vitriol will keep fresh water long from putrefying. And this astringence is in a substanse that hath a virtual cold; and it worketh (partly) by the same means that cold doth.

343. The third is the excluding of the air; and again, the exposing to the air: for these contraries (as it cometh often to pass) work the same effect, according to the nature of the subject matter. So we see, that beer or wine, in bottles close stopped, last long; that the garnerers under ground keep corn longer than those above ground; and that fruit closed in wax keepeth fresh; and likewise bodies put in honey and flower, keep more fresh: and liquors, drinks and juices, with a little oil cast on the top, keep fresh. Contrariwise, we see that cloth and apparel not aired, do breed moths and mould; and the diversity is, that in bodies that need detention of spirits, the exclusion of the air doth good; as in drinks and corn: but in bodies that need emission of spirits to discharge some of the superfluous moisture, it doth hurt, for they require airing.

344. The fourth is motion and stirring; for putrefaction asketh rest: for the subtle motion which putrefaction requireth, is disturbed by any agitation; and
and all local motion keepeth bodies integral, and their parts together; as we see that turning over of corn in a garner, or letting it run like an hour-glass, from an upper room into a lower, doth keep it sweet; and running waters putrefy not: and in mens bodies, exercize hindreth putrefaction; and contrariwise, rest and want of motion, or stoppings (whereby the run of humours, or the motion of perspiration is stayed) further putrefaction; as we partly touched a little before.

345. THE fifth is, the breathing forth of the adventitious moisture in bodies; for as wetting doth hasten putrefaction; so convenient drying (whereby the more radical moisture is only kept in) putteth back putrefaction: so we see that herbs and flowers, if they be dried in the shade, or dried in the hot sun for a small time, keep best. For the emission of the loose and adventitious moisture, doth betray the radical moisture; and carrieth it out for company.

346. THE sixth is the strengthening of the spirits of bodies; for as a great heat keepeth bodies from putrefaction, but a tepid heat inclineth them to putrefaction: so a strong spirit likewise prevailseth, and a weak or faint spirit dissolveth to corruption. So we find that salt water corrupteth not so soon as fresh: and salting of oysters, and powdring of meat, keepeth them from putrefaction. It would be tried also, whether chalk put into water or drink, doth not preserve it from putrefying, or speedily souring. So we see that strong beer will last longer than small; and all things that are hot and aromatical, do help to preserve liquors, or powders, &c. which they do as well by strengthening the spirits, as by soaking out the loose moisture.

347. THE seventh is separation of the cruder parts, and thereby making the body more equal; for all imperfect mixture is apt to putrefy; and watry substances are more apt to putrefy than oily. So we see distilled waters will last longer than raw waters; and things that have pass'd the fire, do last longer than those that have not pass'd the fire; as dried pears, &c.

348. THE eighth is the drawing forth continually of that part where the putrefaction beginneth: which is (commonly) the loose and watry moisture; not only for the reason before given, that it provoketh the radical moisture to come forth with it; but because being detained in the body, the putrefaction taking hold of it, infecteth the rest: as we see in the embalming of dead bodies: and the same reason is of preserving herbs, or fruits, or flowers, in bran or meal.

349. THE ninth is the commixture of any thing that is more oily or sweet: for such bodies are least apt to putrefy, the air working little upon them; and they not putrefying, preserve the rest. And therefore we see syrups and ointments will last longer than juices.

350. THE tenth is the commixture of somewhat that is dry; for putrefaction beginneth first from the spirits; and then from the moisture: and that which is dry is unapt to putrefy: and therefore smoke preventeth flesh; as we see in bacon and neat's tongues, and Martlemas beef, &c.

351. The opinion of some of the ancients, that blown airs do preserve bodies longer than other airs, seemeth to me probable; for that the blown airs being overcharged and compressed, will hardly receive the exhaling of any thing, but rather repulse it. It was tried in a blown bladder, whereinto flesh was put, and likewise a flower, and it forsook not: for dry bladders will not blow; and new bladders rather further putrefaction: the way were therefore to blow strongly with a pair of bellows into a hog's head, putting into the hog's head...
hoghead (before) that which you would have preferred; and in the instant that you withdraw the bellows, stop the hole close.

**Experiment solitary touching wood shining in the dark.**

352. The experiment of wood that shineth in the dark, we have diligently driven and purified: the rather, for that of all things that give light here below, it is the most durable, and hath least apparent motion. Fire and flame are in continual expense; sugar shineth only while it is in scraping; and salt-water while it is in dashing; glow-worms have their shining while they live, or a little after; only scales of fishes (putrefied) seem to be of the same nature with shining wood: and it is true, that all putrefaction hath with it an inward motion, as well as fire or light. The trial went thus: 1. The shining is in some pieces more bright, in some more dim; but the most bright of all doth not attain to the light of a glow-worm. 2. The woods that have been tried to shine, are chiefly willow and willow; also the ash and hazle; it may be it holdeth in others. 3. Both roots and bodies do shine, but the roots better. 4. The colour of the shining part, by day-light, is in some pieces white, in some pieces inclining to red; which in the country they call the white and red garret. 5. The part that shineth, is (for the most part) somewhat soft, and moist to feel to; but some was found to be firm and hard; so as it might be figured into a cros, or into beads, &c. But you must not look to have an image, or the like, in any thing that is lightsome; for even a face in iron red-hot will not be seen, the light confounding the small differences of lightsome and darksome, which shew the figure. 6. There was the shining part pared off, till you came to that that did not shine; but within two days the part contiguous began also to shine, being laid abroad in the dew; so as it seemeth the putrefaction spreadeth. 7. There was other dead wood of like kind, that was laid abroad, which shineth not at the first; but after a night's lying abroad began to shine. 8. There was other wood that did first shine; and being laid dry in the house within five or six days, lost the shining; and laid abroad again, recover'd the shining. 9. Shining woods being laid in a dry room, within a seven-night lost their shining; but being laid in a cellar, or dark room, kept the shining. 10. The boring of holes in that kind of wood, and then laying it abroad, seemeth to conduce to make it shine: the cause is, for that all solution of continuity doth help on putrefaction, as was touched before. 11. No wood hath been yet tried to shine, that was cut down alive, but such as was rotted both in stock and root while it grew. 12. Part of the wood that shineth was steeped in oil, and retained the shining a fortnight. 13. The like succeded in some steeped in water, and much better. 14. How long the shining will continue, if the wood be laid abroad every night, and taken in and sprinkled with water in the day, is not yet tried. 15. Trial was made of laying it abroad in frosty weather, which hurt it not. 16. There was a great piece of a root which did shine, and the shining part was cut off till no more shineth; yet after two nights, though it were kept in a dry room, it got a shining.

**Experiment solitary touching the acceleration of birth.**

353. The bringing forth of living creatures may be accelerated in two respects: the one, if the embryo ripeneth and perfecteth sooner: the other, if there be some cause from the mother's body, of expulsions or putting it down: whereof the former is good, and argueth strength; the latter is ill, and cometh by accident or disease. And therefore the ancient observation is true,
true, that the child born in the seventh month doth commonly well; but born in the eighth month, doth (for the most part) die. But the cause assigned is fabulous; which is, that in the eighth month should be the return of the reign of the planet Saturn: which (as they say) is a planet malign; whereas in the seventh is the reign of the moon, which is a planet propitious. But the true cause is, for that where there is so great a prevention of the ordinary time, it is the lustiness of the child; but when it is less, it is some indisposition of the mother.

Experiment solitary touching the acceleration of growth and stature.

354. To accelerate growth or stature, it must proceed either from the plenty of the nourishment; or from the nature of the nourishment; or from the quickening and exciting of the natural heat. For the first, excess of nourishment is hurtful; for it maketh the child corpulent; and growing in breadth rather than in height. And you may take an experiment from plants, which, if they spread much, are seldom tall. As for the nature of the nourishment; first, it may not be too dry; and therefore children in dairy countries do wax more tall, than where they feed more upon bread and flesh. There is also a received tale; that boiling of dairy roots in milk, (which it is certain are great driers) will make dogs little. But so much is true, that an over-dry nourishment in childhood putteth back stature. Secondly, the nourishment must be of an opening nature; for that attenuateth the juice, and furthereth the motion of the spirits upwards. Neither is it without cause, that Xenophon, in the nurture of the Persian children, doth so much commend their feeding upon cardamon; which (he faith) made them grow better, and of a more active habit. Cardamon is in Latin nafsurtium; and with us water-crefles; which, it is certain, is an herb, that whilst it is young, is friendly to life. As for the quickening of natural heat, it must be done chiefly with exercisé; and therefore (no doubt) much going to school, where they sit so much, hindreth the growth of children; whereas country-people that go not to school, are commonly of better stature. And again men must beware how they give children any thing that is cold in operation; for even long sucking doth hinder both wit and stature. This hath been tried, that a whelp that hath been fed with nitre in milk, hath become very little; but extreme lively: for the spirit of nitre is cold. And though it be an excellent medicine in strength of years for prolongation of life; yet it is in children and young creatures an enemy to growth: and all for the same reason; for heat is requisite to growth; but after a man is come to his middle age, heat consumeth the spirits; which the coldness of the spirit of nitre doth help to condense and correct.

Experiments in consort touching sulphur and mercury, two of Paracelsus’s principles.

There be two great families of things; you may term them by several names; sulphurous and mercurial, which are the chymists words: (for as for their salt, which is their third principle, it is a compound of the other two;) inflammable and not inflammable; mature and crude; oily and watry. For we see that in subterraneies there are, as the fathers of their tribes, brimstone and mercury: in vegetables and living creatures there is water and oil: in the inferior order of pneumaticals there is air and flame; and in the superiour, there is the body of the star and the pure sky. And these pairs, though they be unlike in the primitive differences of matter, yet they seem to have

Vol. III. K 2 many
many contents: for mercury and sulphur are principal materials of metals; water and oil are principal materials of vegetables and animals; and seem to differ but in maturation or concoction: flame (in vulgar opinion) is but air incensed; and they both have quickness of motion, and facility of cession, much alike: and the interstellar sky (though the opinion be vain, that the star is the denser part of his orb) hath notwithstanding so much affinity with the star, that there is a rotation of that, as well as of the star. Therefore it is one of the greatest magnalia naturae, to turn water or watry juice into oil or oily juice: greater in nature, than to turn silver or quicksilver into gold.

355. The instances we have wherein crude and watry substance turneth into fat and oily, are of four kinds. First in the mixture of earth and water; which mingled by the help of the sun, gather a nitrous fatness, more than either of them have severally; as we see in that they put forth plants which need both juices.

356. The second is in the assimilation of nourishment, made in the bodies of plants and living creatures; whereof plants turn the juice of mere water and earth, into a great deal of oily matter: living creatures, though much of their fat and flesh are out of oily aliments, (as meat and bread) yet they assimilate also in a measure their drink of water, &c. But these two ways of version of water into oil, namely, (by mixture and by assimilation) are by many passages and percolations, and by long continuance of soft heats, and by circuits of time.

357. The third is in the inception of putrefaction; as in water corrupted; and the mothers of waters distilled; both which have a kind of fatness, or oil.

358. The fourth is in the dulcoration of some metals; as saccharum Saturni, &c.

359. The intention of version of water into a more oily substance, is by digestion; for oil is almost nothing else but water digested; and this digestion is principally by heat; which heat must be either outward or inward; again, it may be by provocation or excitation; which is caused by the mingling of bodies already oily or digested; for they will somewhat communicate their nature with the rest. Digestion also is strongly effected by direct assimilation of bodies crude into bodies digested; as in plants and living creatures, whose nourishment is far more crude than their bodies: but this digestion is by a great compass, as hath been said. As for the more full handling of these two principles, whereof this is but a taste; (the enquiry of which is one of the profoundest enquiries of nature) we leave it to the title of version of bodies; and likewise to the title of the first congregation of matter; which, like a general assembly of estates, doth give law to all bodies.

Experiment solitary touching chameleons.

360. A chameleon is a creature about the bigness of an ordinary lizard: his head unproportionably big; his eyes great: he moveth his head without the writhing of his neck, (which is inflexible) as a hog doth: his back crooked; his skin spotted with little tumours, less eminent nearer the belly; his tail slender and long: on each foot he hath five fingers; three on the outside, and two on the inside; his tongue of a marvellous length in respect of his body, and hollow at the end; which he will launch out to prey upon flies. Of colour green, and of a dusky yellow, brighter and whiter towards the belly; yet spotted with blue, white, and red. If he be laid upon green, the
green predominateth; if upon yellow, the yellow; not so if he be laid upon blue, or red, or white; only the green spots receive a more orient lufire; laid upon black, he looketh all black, though not without a mixture of green.

He feedeth not only upon air, (though that be his principal sustenance) for sometimes he taketh flies, as was said; yet some that have kept chameleons a whole year together, could never perceive that ever they fed upon any thing else but air; and might observe their bellies to swell after they had exhausted the air, and closed their jaws; which they open commonly against the rays of the sun. They have a foolish tradition in magic, that if a chameleon be burnt upon the top of an house, it will raise a tempest; supposing (according to their vain dreams of sympathies) because he nouriseth with air, his body should have great virtue to make impression upon the air.

Experiments solitary touching subterrany fires.

361. It is reported by one of the ancients, that in part of Media, there are eruptions of flames out of plains; and that those flames are clear, and cast not forth such smook, and ashes, and pumice, as mountain flames do. The reason (no doubt) is, because the flame is not pent as it is in mountains and earthquakes which cast flame. There be also some blind fires under stone, which flame not out, but oil being poured upon them they flame out. The caufe whereof is, for that it seemeth the fire is so choaked, as not able to remove the stone, it is heat rather than flame; which nevertheless is sufficient to inflame the oil.

Experiment solitary touching nitre.

362. It is reported, that in some lakes the water is so nitrous, as if foul clothes be put into it, it scoureth them of it self: and if they stay any whit long, they moulder away. And the scouring virtue of nitre is the more to be noted, because it is a body cold; and we see warm water scoureth better than cold. But the caufe is, for that it hath a subtle spirit, which severeth and divideth any thing that is foul and vicious, and sticketh upon a body.

Experiment solitary touching congealing of air.

363. Take a bladder, the greatest you can get; fill it full of wind, and tie it about the neck with a silk thread waxed; and upon that likewise wax very close; so that when the neck of the bladder dieth, no air may possibly get in nor out. Then bury it three or four foot under the earth in a vault, or in a conservatory of snow, the snow being made hollow about the bladder; and after some fortnight's distance, fee whether the bladder be shrunk; for if it be, then it is plain that the coldness of the earth or snow hath condened the air, and brought it a degree nearer to water; which is an experiment of great conquence.

Experiment solitary touching congealing of water into cryystal.

364. It is a report of some good credit, that in deep caves there are penile cryystal, and degrees of cryystal that drop from above; and in some other, (though more rarely) that rise from below: Which though it be chiefly the work of cold, yet it may be that water that paffeth through the earth, gathereth a nature more clammy, and fitter to congeal, and becomes solid, than water of it self. Therefore trial would be made, to lay a heap of earth in great frosts, upon a hollow vessel, putting a canvass between, that it falleth not in; and pour water upon it, in such quantity as will be sure to soak through;
through; and see whether it will not make an harder ice in the bottom of the
vessel, and less apt to dissolve than ordinarily. I suppose also, that if you make
the earth narrower at the bottom than at the top, in fashion of a sugar-loaf
reversed, it will help the experiment. For it will make the ice where it issueth
less in bulk; and evermore smallness of quantity is a help to version.

Experiment solitary touching preferring of rose-leaves both in colour and smell.

365. Take damask roses, and pull them; then dry them upon the top of an
houfe, upon a lead or terras, in the hot sun, in a clear day, between the
hours only of twelve and two, or thereabouts. Then put them into a
sweet dry earthen bottle, or a glass with narrow mouths, stuffing them close
together, but without bruising: stop the bottle or glass close, and these roses
will retain not only their smell perfect, but their colour fresh for a year at
least. Note, that nothing doth so much destroy any plant, or other body,
either by putrefaction or aerafaction, as the adventitious moisture which hangeth
loose in the body, if it be not drawn out. For it betrayeth and telleth forth the innate and radical moisture along with it when it self goeth forth.
And therefore in living creatures, moderate sweat doth preserve the juice of
the body. Note, that these roses, when you take them from the drying, have
little or no smell; so that the smell is a second smell, that issueth out of the
flower afterwards.

Experiments in comfort touching the continuance of flame.

366. The continuation of flame, according unto the diversity of the body
inflamed, and other circumstances, is worthy the enquiry; chiefly, for that
though flame be (almost) of a momentary lasting, yet it receiveth the more,
and the less: we will first therefore speake (at large) of bodies inflamed wholly
and immediately, without any wick to help the inflammation. A spoonful
of spirit of wine a little heated, was taken, and it burnt as long as came to
a hundred and sixteen pulsés. The same quantity of spirit of wine, mixed
with the sixth part of a spoonful of nitre, burnt but to the space of ninety four
pulses. Mixed with the like quantity of bay-salt, eighty three pulsés. Mixed
with the like quantity of gunpowder, which dissolved into a black water, one
hundred and ten pulsés. A cube or pellet of yellow wax was taken, as much
as half the spirit of wine, and set in the midst, and it burnt only to the space
of eighty seven pulsés. Mixed with the sixth part of a spoonful of milk, it
burnt to the space of one hundred pulses; and the milk was curdled. Mixed
with the sixth part of a spoonful of water, it burnt to the space of eighty
six pulses; with an equal quantity of water, only to the space of four pulses.
A small pebble was laid in the midst, and the spirit of wine burnt to the space
of ninety four pulsés. A piece of wood of the bigness of an arrow, and
about a finger's length, was set up in the midst, and the spirit of wine burnt
to the space of ninety four pulsés. So that the spirit of wine simple endured
the longest; and the spirit of wine with the bay-salt, and the equal quantity
of water, were the shortest.

367. Consider well, whether the more speedy going forth of the flame,
be caused by the greater vigour of the flame in burning; or by the refistancy
of the body mixed, and the averfion thereof to take flame: which will ap­
p ear by the quantity of the spirit of wine, that remaineth after the going out
of the flame. And it seemeth clearly to be the latter; for that the mixture
of things least apt to burn, is the speedieft in going out. And note, by the
way, that spirit of wine burned, till it go out of it self, will burn no more; and
and tafteth nothing so hot in the mouth as it did; no, nor yet four, (as if it were a degree towards vinegar) which burnt wine doth; but flat and dead.

368. Note, that in the experiment of wax aforesaid, the wax dissolved in the burning, and yet did not incorporate it self with the spirit of wine, to produce one flame; but wherefover the wax floated, the flame forsook it, till at laft it spread all over, and put the flame quite out.

369. The experiments of the mixtures of the spirit of wine inflamed, are things of discovery, and not of use: but now we will speak of the continuance of flames, such as are used for candles, lamps or tapers; consisting of inflammable matters, and of a wick that provoketh inflammation. And this importeth not only discovery, but also use and profit; for it is a great saving in all such lights, if they can be made as fair and right as others, and yet last longer. Wax pure made into a candle, and wax mixed severally into candlestuff, with the particulars that follow; (viz. water, aqua vitae, milk, bay-salt, oil, butter, nitre, brimstone, saw-dust) every of these bearing a sixth part to the wax; and every of these candles mixed, being of the same weight and wick with the wax pure, proved thus in the burning and lafting. The swiftest in consuming was that with saw-dust; which first burned fair till some part of the candle was consumed, and the dust gathered about the shaft; but then it made the shaft big and long, and to burn dully, and the candle wasted in half the time of the wax pure. The next in swiftness were the oil and butter, which consumed by a fifth part swifter than the pure wax. Then followed in swiftness the clear wax itself; then the bay-salt, which lasted about an eighth part longer than the clear wax. Then followed the aqua vitae, which lasted about a fifth part longer than the clear wax. Then followed the milk and water, with little difference from the aqua vitae, but the water nowest. And in these four last, the wick would spit forth little sparks. For the nitre, it would not hold lighted above some twelve pulses: but all the while it would spit out portions of flame, which afterwards would go out into a vapour. For the brimstone, it would hold lighted much about the same with the nitre; but then after a little while it would harden and cake about the shaft; so that the mixture of bay-salt with wax, will win an eighth part of the time of lasting, and the water a fifth.

370. After the several materials were tried, trial was likewise made of several wicks; as of ordinary cotton, flaxing thread, ruff, filk, straw, and wood. The filk, straw, and wood, would flame a little, till they came to the wax, and then go out: of the other three, the thread consumed faster than the cotton, by a sixth part of time: the cotton next: then the ruff consumed slower than the cotton, by at least a third part of time. For the brightness of the flame, the cotton and thread cast a flame much alike; and the ruff much less and dimmer. 

Quaere, Whether wood and wicks both, as in torches, consume faster than the wicks simple?

371. We have spoken of the several materials, and the several wicks: but to the lafting of the flame it importeth also; not only what the material is, but in the same material, whether it be hard, soft, old, new, &c. Good housewives, to make their candles burn the longer, uto lay them (one by one) in bran or flower, which make them harder, and so they consume the flower: in so much as by this means they will outlast other candles of the same stuff almost half in half. For bran and flower have a virtue to harden; so that both age, and lying in the bran, doth help to the lafting. And we see that wax candles last longer than tallow candles, because wax is more firm and hard.

372. The
372. The lasting of flame also dependeth upon the easy drawing of the nourishment; as we see in the court of *England*, there is a service which they call all-night; which is (as it were) a great cake of wax, with the wick in the midst; whereby it cometh to pass, that the wick fetcheth the nourishment farther off. We see also that lamps last longer, because the vessel is far broader than the breadth of a taper or candle.

373. Take a turreted lamp of tin, made in the form of a square; the height of the turret being thrice as much as the length of the lower part, whereupon the lamp standeth: make only one hole in it, at the end of the return farthest from the turret. Reverse it, and fill it full of oil by that hole; and then set it upright again; and put a wick in at the hole; and lighten it: you shall find that it will burn flow, and a long time: Which is caused, (as was said last before) for that the flame fetcheth the nourishment afar off. You shall find also, that as the oil wasteth and descendeth, so the top of the turret by little and little filleth with air; which is caused by the rarefaction of the oil by the heat. It were worthy the observation, to make a hole in the top of the turret, and to try when the oil is almost consumed, whether the air made of the oil, if you put to it a flame of a candle, in the letting of it forth, will enflame. It were good also to have the lamp made, not of tin, but of glass, that you may see how the vapour, or air gathereth, by degrees, in the top.

374. A fourth point that importeth the lasting of the flame, is the closeness of the air wherein the flame burneth. We see, that if wind bloweth upon a candle, it wasteth apace. We see also, it lasteth longer in a lantern than at large. And there are traditions of lamps and candles, that have burnt a very long time in caves and tombs.

375. A fifth point that importeth the lasting of the flame, is the nature of the air where the flame burneth; whether it be hot or cold, moist or dry. The air, if it be very cold, irritateth the flame, and maketh it burn more fiercely; (as fire scorcheth in frosty weather) and so furthereth the consumption. The air once heated (I conceive) maketh the flame burn more mildly, and so helpeth the continuance. The air, if it be dry, is indifferent: the air, if it be moist, doth in a degree quench the flame, (as we see lights will go out in the damps of mines:) and howsoever maketh it burn more dully, and so helpeth the continuance.

Experiments in confort touching burials or infusions of divers bodies in earth.

376. Burials in earth serve for preservation; and for condensation; and for induration of bodies. And if you intend condensation or induration, you may bury the bodies so as earth may touch them: as if you would make artificial porcellane, &c. And the like you may do for preservation, if the bodies be hard and solid; as clay, wood, &c. But if you intend preservation of bodies, more soft and tender, then you must do one of these two: either you must put them in caskets, whereby they may not touch the earth; or else you must vault the earth, whereby it may hang over them, and not touch them: for if the earth touch them, it will do more hurt by the moisture, causing them to putrefy, than good by the virtual cold, to conserve them; except the earth be very dry and sandy. But if you intend condensation or induration, you may bury the bodies so as earth may touch them: as if you would make artificial porcellane, &c. And the like you may do for preservation, if the bodies be hard and solid; as clay, wood, &c. But if you intend preservation of bodies, more soft and tender, then you must do one of these two: either you must put them in caskets, whereby they may not touch the earth; or else you must vault the earth, whereby it may hang over them, and not touch them: for if the earth touch them, it will do more hurt by the moisture, causing them to putrefy, than good by the virtual cold, to conserve them; except the earth be very dry and sandy.

377. An orange, lemon and apple, wrapt in a linen cloth, being buried for a fortnight's space four foot deep within the earth, though it were in a moist place, and a rainy time, yet came forth no ways mouldy or rotten, but were become a little harder than they were; otherwise fresh in their colour; but their
378. A bottle of beer, buried in like manner as before, became more lively; better tasted, and clearer than it was. And a bottle of wine in like manner. A bottle of vinegar so buried, came forth more lively and more odoriferous, smelling almost like a violet. And after the whole month’s burial, all the three came forth as fresh and lively, if not better than before.

379. It were a profitable experiment, to preserve oranges, lemons, and pomegranates, till summer; for then their price will be mightily increased. This may be done, if you put them in a pot or vessel well covered, that the moisture of the earth come not at them; or else by putting them in a conservatory of snow. And generally, whoever will make experiments of cold, let him be provided of three things; a conservatory of snow; a good large vault, twenty foot at least under the ground; and a deep well.

380. There hath been a tradition, that pearl, and coral, and turquois stone, that have lost their colours, may be recovered by burying in the earth: which is a thing of great profit, if it would fort: but upon trial of six weeks burial, there followed no effect. It were good to try it in a deep well, or in a conservatory of snow, where the cold may be more confinquent and so like the body more united, and thereby more resplendent.

Experiment solitary touching the effects in men’s bodies from several winds.

381. Men’s bodies are heavier, and less disposed to motion, when southern winds blow, than when northern. The cause is, for that when the southern winds blow, the humours do (in some degree) melt and wax fluid, and so flow into the parts; as it is seen in wood and other bodies; which, when the southern winds blow, do swell. Besides, the motion and activity of the body consisteth chiefly in the sinews, which, when the southern wind bloweth, are more relax.

Experiment solitary touching winter and summer sicknesses.

382. It is commonly seen, that more are sick in the summer, and more die in the winter; except it be in pestilential diseases, which commonly reign in summer or autumn. The reason is, because diseases are bred (indeed) chiefly by heat; but then they are cured most by sweat and purge; which in the summer cometh on, or is provoked more easily. As for pestilential diseases, the reason why most die of them in summer, is because they are bred most in the summer; for otherwise those that are touched are in most danger in the winter.

Experiment solitary touching pestilential seasons.

383. The general opinion is, that years hot and moist are most pestilential; upon the superficial ground, that heat and moisture cause putrefaction. In England it is found not true; for many times there have been great plagues in dry years. Whereof the cause may be, for that drought in the bodies of islanders habituate to moist airs, doth exasperate the humours, and maketh them more apt to putrefy or inflame: besides, it tainteth the waters, (commonly) and maketh them less wholesome. And again in Barbary, the plagues break up in the summer months, when the weather is hot and dry.

Experiment solitary touching an error received about epidemic diseases.

384. Many diseases (both epidemic and others) break forth at particular times.
times. And the cause is fallly imputed to the constitution of the air at that time, when they break forth or reign; whereas it proceedeth (indeed) from a precedent sequence, and series of the seasons of the year: and therefore Hippocrates in his prognosticks doth make good observations of the diseases that ensue upon the nature of the precedent four seasons of the year.

Experiment solitary touching the alteration or preservation of liquors in wells or deep vaults.

385. Trial hath been made with earthen bottles well stopped, hanged in a well of twenty fathom deep at the least; and some of the bottles have been let down into the water, some others have hanged above, within about a fathom of the water; and the liquors so tried, have been beer (not new, but ready for drinking) and wine and milk. The proof hath been, that both the beer and the wine (as well within water as above) have not been pall’d or deaded at all; but as good, or somewhat better, than bottles of the same drinks and staleness kept in a cellar. But those which did hang above water were apparently the best; and that beer did flower a little; whereas that under water did not, though it were fresh. The milk sour’d and began to putrefy. Nevertheless it is true, that there is a village near Blois, where in deep caves they do thicken milk; in such sort that it becometh very pleasant; which was some cause of this trial of hanging milk in the well: but our proof was naught; neither do I know, whether that milk in those caves be first boiled. It were good therefore to try it with milk sodden, and with cream; for that milk of itself is such a compound body of cream, curds and whey, as it is easily turned and dissolved. It were good also to try the beer when it is in wort, that it may be seen, whether the hanging in the well will accelerate the ripening and clarifying of it.

Experiment solitary touching flutting.

386. Divers, we see, do flut. The cause may be (in most) the refrigeration of the tongue; whereby it is less apt to move. And therefore we see that naturals do generally flut: and we see that in those that flut, if they drink wine moderately, they flut less, because it heateth: and so we see, that they that flut, do flut more in the first offer to speak, than in continuance; because the tongue is by motion somewhat heated. In some also, it may be (though rarely) the dryness of the tongue: which likewise maketh it less apt to move as well as cold: for it is an effect that it cometh to some wise and great men; as it did unto Moses, who was linguæ praepeditæ; and many flutters (we find) are very choleric men; choler inducing a dryness in the tongue.

Experiments in conformity touching smells.

387. Smells and other odours are sweeter in the air at some distance, than near the nose; as hath been partly touched heretofore. The cause is double: first, the finer mixture, or incorporation of the smell: for we see that in sounds like wise, they are sweeter, when we cannot hear every part by it self. The other reason is, for that all sweet smells have joined with them some earthy or crude odours; and at some distance the sweet, which is the more spiritual, is perceived; and the earthy reacheth not so far.

388. Sweet smells are most forcible in dry substances when they are broken; and so likewise in oranges and lemons, the nipping of their rind, giveth out their smell more: and generally when bodies are moved or stirred, though
though not broken, they smell more; as a sweet bag waved. The cause is double: the one, for that there is a greater emission of the spirit when way is made: and this holdeth in the breaking, nipping or crushing; it holdeth also (in some degree) in the moving: but in this last there is a concurrence of the second cause; which is the impulsion of the air that bringeth the scent faster upon us.

389. The daintiest smells of flowers are out of those plants whose leaves smell not; as violets, roses, wall-flowers, gilly-flowers, pinks, wood-bines, vine-flowers, apple-blooms, lime-tree blooms, bean-blooms, &c. The cause is, for that where there is heat and strength enough in the plant to make the leaves odorate, there the smell of the flower is rather evanished and weaker, than that of the leaves; as it is in rosemary flowers, lavender flowers, and sweet briar roses. But where there is less heat, there the spirit of the plant is digested and refined, and severed from the grofer juice in the effuorece, and not before.

390. Most odours smell best broken or crushed, as hath been said; but flowers pressed or beaten do lose the freighfness and sweetnefs of their odour. The cause is, for that when they are crushed, the grofer and more earthy spirit cometh out with the finer, and troubleth it; whereas in stronger odours there are no such degrees of the issue of the smell.

Experiments in comfort touching the goodness and choice of water.

391. It is a thing of very good use to discover the goodness of waters. The taste, to those that drink water only, doth somewhat; but other experiments are more sure. First, try waters by weight; wherein you may find some difference, though not much: and the lighter you may account the better.

392. Secondly, try them by boiling upon an equal fire: and that which consumeth away freighf, you may account the bett.

393. Thirdly, try them in several bottles, or open vessels, matches in every thing else, and see which of them last longest without stench or corruption. And that which holdeth unprofaned longest, you may likewise account the bett.

394. Fourthly, try them by making drinks stronger or smaller, with the fame quantity of malt; and you may conclude, that that water which maketh the stronger drink, is the more concocted and nourishing; though perhaps it be not so good for medicinal use. And such water (commonly) is the water of large and navigable rivers; and likewise in large and clean ponds of standing water: for upon both of them, the sun hath more power than upon fountains or small rivers. And I conceive that chalk-water is next them the best, for going farthest in drink: for that also helpeth concoction; so it be out of a deep well; for then it cureth the rawnes of the water; but chalky water, towards the top of the earth, is too fretting; as it appeareth in laundry of clothes, which wear out space if you use such waters.

395. Fifthly, the housewives do find a difference in waters, for the bearing or not bearing of soap: and it is likely that the more fat water will bear soap bett; for the hungry water doth kill the unctuous nature of the soap.

396. Sixthly, you may make a judgment of waters, according to the place whence they spring or come: the rain water is, by the physicians, esteemed the finest and the bett; but yet it is said to putrefy sooneft; which is likely, because of the finenes of the spirit: and in conservatories of rain-water,
water, (such as they have in Venice, &c.) they are found not so choice waters; the worse (perhaps) because they are covered aloft, and kept from the sun. Snow-water is held unwholesome; in so much as the people that dwell at the foot of the snow mountains, or otherwise upon the alent, (especially the women) by drinking of snow-water, have great bags hanging under their throats. Well-water, except it be upon chalk, or a very plentiful spring, maketh meat red; which is an ill sign. Springs on the tops of high hills are the best: for both they seem to have a lightness and appetite of mounting; and besides, they are most pure and unmingled; and again, are more percolated through a great space of earth. For waters in valleys, join in effect under ground with all waters of the same level; whereas springs on the tops of hills, pass through a great deal of pure earth, with left mixture of other waters.

397. SEVENTHLY, judgment may be made of waters by the soil whereupon the water runneth; as pebble is the cleanest and best tasted; and next to that, clay-water; and thirdly, water upon chalk; fourthly, that upon sand; and worst of all upon mud. Neither may you trust waters that taste sweet, for they are commonly found in rising grounds of great cities; which must needs take in a great deal of filth.

Experiment solitary touching the temperate heat under the aquinocial.

398. In Peru, and divers parts of the West-Indies, though under the line, the heats are not so intolerable as they be in Barbary, and the skirts of the torrid zone. The causes are, first the great breezes which the motion of the air in great circles, (such as are under the girdle of the world) produceth; which do refrigerate; and therefore in those parts noon is nothing so hot, when the breezes are great, as about nine or ten of the clock in the forenoon. Another cause is, for that the length of the night, and the dews thereof, do compenfate the heat of the day. A third cause is the day of the sun; not in respect of day and night, (for that we spake of before) but in respect of the season; for under the line the sun crosth the line, and maketh two summers and two winters; but in the skirts of the torrid zone it doubleth and goeth back again, and so maketh one long summer.

Experiment solitary touching the coloration of black and tawny moors.

399. The heat of the sun maketh men black in some countries, as in Aethiopia and Guinea, &c. Fire doth it not, as we see in glafs men, that are continually about the fire. The reason may be, because fire doth lick up the spirits and blood of the body, so as they exhale; so that it ever maketh men look pale and fallow; but the sun, which is a gentler heat, doth but draw the blood to the outward parts; and rather concocteth it than soaketh it; and therefore we see that all Aethiopes are fleshy and plump, and have great lips; all which betoken moisture retained, and not drawn out. We see also, that the negroes are bred in countries that have plenty of water, by rivers, or otherwise: for Meroe, which was the metropolis of Aethiopia, was upon a great lake; and Congo, where the negroes are, is full of rivers. And the confines of the river Niger, where the negroes also are, are well watered; and the region about cape Verde is likewise moist, in so much as it is pestilent through moisture: but the countries of the Abyssines, and Barbary, and Peru, where they are tawny, and olivater, and pale, are generally more sandy and dry. As for the Aethiopes, as they are plump and fleshy; so (it may be) they are sanguine and reddly coloured, if their black skin would suffer it to be seen.
Experiment solitary touching motion after the instant of death.

Some creatures do move a good while after their head is off; as birds; some a very little time; as men and all beasts; some move, though cut in several pieces; as snakes, eels, worms, flies, &c. First therefore it is certain, that the immediate cause of death, is the resolution or extinguishment of the spirits; and that the destruction or corruption of the organs, is but the mediate cause. But some organs are so peremptorily necessary, that the extinguishment of the spirits doth speedily follow; but yet so as there is an interim of a small time. It is reported by one of the ancients, of credit, that a sacrificed beast hath lowed after the heart hath been severed; and it is a report also of credit, that the head of a pig hath been opened, and the brain put into the palm of a man's hand trembling, without breaking any part of it, or severing it from the marrow of the back-bone; during which time the pig hath been, in all appearance, stark dead, and without motion; and after a small time the brain hath been replaced, and the skull of the pig closed, and the pig hath a little after gone about. And certain it is, that an eye upon revenge hath been thrust forth, so as it hanged a pretty distance by the visual nerve; and during that time the eye hath been without any power of sight; and yet after (being replaced) recovered sight. Now the spirits are chiefly in the head and cells of the brain, which in men and beasts are large; and therefore when the head is off, they move little or nothing. But birds have small heads, and therefore the spirits are a little more dispersed in the sinews, whereby motion remaineth in them a little longer; in so much as it is extant in story, that an Emperor of Rome, to shew the certainty of his hand, did shoot a great forked arrow at an ostrich, as she ran swiftly upon the stage, and struck off her head; and yet she continued the race a little way with the head off. As for worms, and flies, and eels, the spirits are diffused almost all over; and therefore they move in their several pieces.
NATURAL HISTORY.

Experiments in comfort touching the acceleration of germination.

We will now enquire of plants or vegetables: and we shall do it with diligence. They are the principal part of the third day's work. They are the first producet, which is the word of animation: for the other words are but the words of essence; and they are of excellent and general use for food, medicine, and a number of mechanical arts.

401. There were sown in a bed, turnip-feed, radish-feed, wheat, cucumber-feed and peas. The bed we call a hot bed, and the manner of it is this: there was taken horse dung, old and well rotted; this was laid upon a bank half a foot high, and supported round about with planks; and upon the top was cast sifted earth, some two fingers deep; and then the seed sprinkled upon it, having been steeped all night in water mixed with cow dung. The turnip-feed and the wheat came up half an inch above ground within two days after, without any watering. The rest the third day. The experiment was made in October; and (it may be) in the spring, the accelerating would have been the speedier. This is a noble experiment; for without this help they would have been four times as long in coming up. But there doth not occur to me, at this present, any use thereof for profit; except it should be for sowing of peas, which have their price very much increased by the early coming. It may be tried also with cherries, strawberries, and other fruit, which are dearest when they come early.

402. There was wheat sown in water mixed with cow dung; other in water mixed with horse dung; other in water mixed with pigeon dung; other in urine of man; other in water mixed with chalk powdered; other in water mixed with foot; other in water mixed with ashes; other in water mixed with bay-falt; other in claret-wine; other in malmsay; other in spirit of wine. The proportion of the mixture was, a fourth part of the ingredients to the water. Save that there was not of the salt above an eighth part. The urine, and wines, and spirit of wine, were simple without mixture of water. The time of the steeping was twelve hours. The time of the year October. There was also other wheat sown unssteeped, but watered twice a day with warm water. There was also other wheat sown simple to compare it with the rest. The event was; that those that were in the mixture of dung, and urine, and foot, chalk, ashes and salt, came up within six days: and those
that afterwards proved the highest, thickest, and most lufty, were first the urine; and then the dungs; next the chalk; next the foot; next the ashes; next the salt; next the wheat simple of it itself, unsteeped and unwatered; next the watered twice a day with warm water; next the claret-wine. So that these three last were flower than the ordinary wheat of itself; and this culture did rather retard than advance. As for those that were steeped in malmsey and spirit of wine, they came not up at all. This is a rich experiment for profit; for the most of the steepings are cheap things; and the goodness of the crop is a great matter of gain; if the goodness of the crop answer the earliness of the coming up: as it is like it will; both being from the vigour of the seed; which also partly appeared in the former experiments, as hath been said. This experiment would be tried in other grains, seeds and kernels: for it may be some steeping will agree best with some seeds. It would be tried also with roots steeped as before, but for longer time. It would be tried also in several seasons of the year, especially the spring.

403. Strawberries watered now and then (as once in three days) with water, wherein hath been steeped sheep dung or pigeons dung, will prevent and come early. And it is like the same effect would follow in other berries, herbs, flowers, grains or trees. And therefore it is an experiment, though vulgar in strawberries, yet not brought into use generally: for it is usual to help the ground with muck; and likewise to recomfort it sometimes with muck put to the roots; but to water it with muck water, which is like to be more forcible, is not practised.

404. Dung, or chalk, or blood, applied in substance (seasonably) to the roots of trees, doth set them forwards. But to do it unto herbs, without mixture of water or earth, it may be these helps are too hot.

405. The former means of helping germination, are either by the goodness and strength of the nourishment; or by the comforting and exciting the spirits in the plant, to draw the nourishment better. And of this latter kind, concerning the comforting of the spirits of the plant, are also the experiments that follow; though they be not applications to the root or seed. The planting of trees warm upon a wall against the south, or south-east sun, doth hasten their coming on and ripening; and the south-east is found to be better than the south-west, though the south-west be the holter coast. But the cause is chiefly, for that the heat of the morning succeedeth the cold of the night; and partly, because (many times) the south-west sun is too parching. So likewise the planting of them upon the back of a chimney where a fire is kept, doth hasten their coming on and ripening: nay more, the drawing of the boughs into the inside of a room where a fire is continually kept, worketh the same effect; which hath been tried with grapes; in so much as they will come a month earlier than the grapes abroad.

406. Besides the two means of accelerating germination formerly described; that is to say, the mending of the nourishment; comforting of the spirit of the plant; there is a third, which is the making way for the easy coming to the nourishment, and drawing it. And therefore gentle digging and loosening of the earth about the roots of trees; and the removing herbs and flowers into new earth once in two years, (which is the same thing; for the new earth is ever looser) doth greatly further the prospering and earliness of plants.

407. But the most admirable acceleration by facilitating the nourishment, is that of water. For a standard of a damask rose with the root on, was set in a chamber where no fire was, upright in an earthen pan, full of fair water,
water, without any mixture, half a foot under the water, the standard being more than two foot high above the water: within the space of ten days the standard did put forth a fair green leaf, and some other little buds, which stood at a stay, without any show of decay or withering, more than seven days. But afterwards the leaf faded, but the young buds did sprout on; which afterward opened into fair leaves in the space of three months; and continued so a while after, till upon removal we left the trial. But note that the leaves were somewhat paler and lighter-coloured, than the leaves use to be abroad. Note that the first buds were in the end of October; and it is likely that if it had been in the spring time, it would have put forth with greater strength, and (it may be) to have grown on to bear flowers. By this means you may have (as it feemeth) roses set in the midst of a pool, being supported with some stay; which is matter of rareness and pleafure, though of small use. This is the more strange, for that the like rose-standard was put at the same time into water mixed with horse dung, the horse dung about the fourth part to the water, and in four months space (while it was observed) put not forth any leaf, though divers buds at the first, as the other.

408. A Dutch flower that had a bulbous root, was likewise put at the same time all under water, some two or three fingers deep; and within seven days sprouted, and continued long after a further growing. There were also put in a beet root, a borage root, and a radish root, which had all their leaves cut almost close to the roots; and within six weeks had fair leaves; and so continued till the end of November.

409. Note, that if roots, or pea, or flowers, may be accelerated in their coming and ripening, there is a double profit; the one in the high price that those things bear when they come early: the other in the swiftness of their returns: for in some grounds which are strong, you shall have a radish, &c. come in a month; that in other grounds will not come in two; and so make double returns.

410. Wheat also was put into the water, and came not forth at all; so as it feemeth there must be some strength and bulk in the body put into the water, as it is in roots; for grains, or seeds, the cold of the water will mortify. But casually some wheat lay under the pan, which was somewhats moistened by the suing of the pan; which in six weeks (as aforesaid) looked mouldy to the eye, but it was sprouted forth half a finger's length.

411. It feemeth by these instances of water, that for nourishment the water is almost all in all, and that the earth doth but keep the plant upright, and save it from over-heat and over-cold; and therefore is a comfortable experiment for good drinkers. It proveth also that our former opinion; that drink incorporate with flesh or roots, (as in capon-beer, &c.) will nourish more easily, than meat and drink taken severally.

412. The housing of plants (I conceive) will both accelerate germination, and bring forth flowers and plants in the colder seasons: and as we house hot-country plants, as lemons, oranges, myrtles, to save them; so we may house our own country plants, to forward them, and make them come in the cold seasons; in such sort, that you may have violets, strawberries, pea, all winter: so that you sow or remove them at fit times. This experiment is to be referred unto the comforting of the spirit of the plant by warmth, as well as housing their boughs, &c. So then the means to accelerate germination, are in particular eight, in general three.
Experiments in conformity touching the putting back or retardation of germination.

413. To make roses, or other flowers come late, it is an experiment of pleasure. For the ancients esteemed much of the *rofa fera*. And indeed the *November* rose is the sweetest, having been less exhaled by the Sun. The means are these. First, the cutting off their tops immediately after they have done bearing; and then they will come again the same year about *November*; but they will not come just on the tops, where they were cut, but out of those shoots, which were (as it were) water boughs. The cause is, for that the top, which otherwise would have fed the top, (though after bearing) will, by the discharge of that, divert unto the side sprouts; and they will come to bear, but later.

414. The second is the pulling off the buds of the rose, when they are newly knotted; for then the side branches will bear. The cause is the same with the former: for cutting off the tops, and pulling off the buds, work the same effect, in retention of the sap for a time, and diversion of it to the sprouts, that were not so forward.

415. The third is the cutting off some few of the top boughs in the spring time, but suffered the lower boughs to grow on. The cause is, for that the boughs do help to draw up the sap more strongly; and we see that in pollarding of trees, many do use to leave a bough or two on the top, to help to draw up the sap. And it is reported also, that if you graft upon the bough of a tree, and cut off some of the old boughs, the new cions will perish.

416. The fourth is by laying the roots bare about *Christmas* some days. The cause is plain, for that it doth arrest the sap from going upwards for a time; which arrest is afterwards released by the covering of the root again with earth; and then the sap getheth up, but later.

417. The fifth is the removing of the tree some months before it buddeth. The cause is, for that some time will be required after the remove for the resettling, before it can draw the juice; and that time being lost, the blossoms must needs come forth later.

418. The sixth is the grafting of roses in *May*, which commonly gardeners do not till *July*; and then they bear not till the next year; but if you graft them in *May*, they will bear the same year, but late.

419. The seventh is the girding of the body of the tree about with some packthread; for that also in a degree restraineth the sap, and maketh it come up more late and more slowly.

420. The eighth is the planting of them in a shade, or in a hedge; the cause is, partly the keeping out of the sun, which hasteneth the sap to rise; and partly the robbing them of nourishment, by the stuff in the hedge. These means may be practised upon other, both trees and flowers, *mutatis mutandis*.

421. Men have entertained a conceit that sheweth prettily; namely, that if you graft a late-coming fruit upon a stock of a fruit-tree that cometh early, the graft will bear fruit early; as a peach upon a cherry; and contrariwise, if an early-coming fruit upon a stock of a fruit-tree that cometh late, the graft will bear fruit late; as a cherry upon a peach. But these are but imaginations, and untrue. The cause is, for that the cion over-ruleth the stock quite; and the stock is but passive only, and giveth aliment, but no motion to the graft.

Vol. III. M Expe-
Experiments in conferm touching the melioration of frults, trees and plants.

We will speak now, how to make frults, flowers and roots larger, in more plenty, and sweeter than they use to be; and how to make the trees themselves more tall, more spread, and more haftv and sudden than they use to be: Wherein there is no doubt, but the former experiments of acceleration will serve much to these purposes. And again, that these experiments, which we shall now set down, do serve also for acceleration, because both effects proceed from the encrease of vigour in the tree; but yet to avoid confufion, and because some of the means are more proper for the one effect, and some for the other, we will handle them apart.

422. It is an aflured experience, that an heap of flint, or flone, laid about the bottom of a wild tree, (as an oak, elm, ah, &c.) upon the first planting, doth make it prosper double as much as without it. The cause is, for that it retaineth the moisture which falleth at any time upon the tree, and suffereth it not to be exhaled by the fun. Again, it keeppeth the tree warm from cold blasts and frosts, as it were in an house. It may be also there is somewhat in the keeping of it fteady at the firft. Quare, if laying of straw some height about the body of a tree, will not make the tree forwards. For though the root giveth the sap, yet it is the body that draweth it. But you must note, that if you lay flones about the stalk of lettuce, or other plants that are more soft, it will over-moiften the roots, so as the worms will eat them.

423. A tree, at the firft setting, should not be shaken, unl until it hath taken root fully: and therefore some have put two little forks about the bottom of their trees to keep them upright; but after a year’s rooting, then shaking doth the tree good, by loofening of the earth, and (perhaps) by exercising (as it were) and stirring the sap of the tree.

424. Generally the cutting away of boughs and suckers at the root and body doth make trees grow high; and contrariwise, the polling and cutting of the top maketh them grow spread and bufty. As we fee in pollards, &c.

425. It is reported, that to make haftv growing cop pice woods, the way is, to take willow, fallow, poplar, alder, of some feven years growth; and to fet them, not upright, but alope, a reafonable depth under the ground; and then instead of one root they will put forth many, and so carry more shoots upon a stem.

426. When you would have many new roots of fruit trees, take a low tree and bow it, and lay all his branches aflat upon the ground, and cut earth upon them; and every twig will take root. And this is a very profitable experiment for costly trees, (for the boughs will make stocks without charge;) such as are apricots, peaches, almonds, cornelians, mulberries, figs, &c. The like is continually practised with vines, roses, musk-roses, &c.

427. From May to July you may take off the bark of any bough, being of the bignefs of three or four inches, and cover the bare place somewhat above and below, with loam well tempered with horse-dung, binding it falt down. Then cut off the bough about Allhallontide in the bare place, and let it in the ground; and it will grow to be a fair tree in one year. The caufe may be, for that the baring from the bark keeppeth the sap from defcending towards winter, and fo holdeth it in the bough; and it may be also that the loam and horse-dung applied to the bare place do moiften it, and cherifh it, and make it more apt to put forth the root. Note, that this may
may be a general means for keeping up the sap of trees in their boughs; which may serve to other effects.

428. It hath been practised in trees that shew fair and bear not, to bore a hole through the heart of the tree, and therewith it will bear. Which may be, for that the tree before had too much repletion, and was oppressed with its own sap; for repletion is an enemy to generation.

429. It hath been practised in trees that do not bear, to cleave two or three of the chief roots, and to put into the cleft a small pebble, which may keep it open, and then it will bear. The cause may be, for that a root of a tree may be (as it were) hide-bound, no less than the body of the tree; but it will not keep open without somewhat put into it.

430. It is usually practised, to set trees that require much sun upon walls against the south; as apricots, peaches, plumbs, vines, figs, and the like. It hath a double commodity; the one, the heat of the wall by reflexion; the other, the taking away of the shade; for when a tree groweth round, the upper boughs overshadow the lower: but when it is spread upon a wall, the sun cometh alike, upon the upper and lower branches.

431. It hath also been practised (by some) to pull off some leaves from the trees so spread, that the sun may come upon the bough and fruit the better. There hath been practised also a curiosity, to set a tree upon the north side of a wall, and at a little height, to draw it through the wall, and spread it upon the south side: conceiving that the root and lower part of the stock should enjoy the freshness of the shade; and the upper boughs, and fruit, the comfort of the sun. But it sorteth not; the cause is, for that the root requireth some comfort of the sun, though under earth, as well as the body: and the lower part of the body loseth than the upper, as we see in compassing a tree below with straw.

432. The lowness of the bough where the fruit cometh, maketh the fruit greater, and to ripen better; for you shall ever see, in apricots, peaches, or melo-cotones upon a wall, the greatest fruits towards the bottom. And in France, the grapes that make the wine, grow upon low vines bound to small stakes; and the raised vines in arbors make but verjuice. It is true, that in Italy, and other countries where they have hotter sun, they raise them upon elms and trees; but I conceive, that if the French manner of planting low were brought in use there, their wines would be stronger and sweeter. But it is more chargeable in respect of the props. It were good to try whether a tree grafted somewhat near the ground, and the lower boughs only maintained, and the higher continually pruned off, would not make a larger fruit.

433. To have fruit in greater plenty, the way is, to graft, not only upon young stocks, but upon divers boughs of an old tree; for they will bear great numbers of fruit: whereas if you graft but upon one stock, the tree can bear but few.

434. The digging yearly about the roots of trees, which is a great means both to the acceleration and melioration of fruits, is practised in nothing but in vines; which if it were transferred unto other trees and shrubs, (as roses, &c.) I conceive would advance them likewise.

435. It hath been known, that a fruit-tree hath been blown up (almost) by the roots, and set up again, and the next year bear exceedingly. The cause of this was nothing but the loosening of the earth, which comforteth any tree, and is fit to be practised more than it is in fruit-trees: for trees cannot be so fitly removed into new grounds, as flowers and herbs may.
436. To revive an old tree, the digging of it about the roots, and applying new mould to the roots, is the way. We see also that draught-oxens put into fresh pasture gather new and tender flesh; and in all things, better nourishment than hath been used doth help to renew; especially if it be not only better but changed, and differing from the former.

437. If an herb be cut off from the roots in the beginning of winter, and then the earth be trodden and beaten down hard with the foot and spade, the roots will become of very great magnitude in summer. The reason is, for that the moisture being forbidden to come up in the plant, stayeth longer in the root, and so dilateth it. And gardeners use to tread down any loose ground after they have sown onions, or turnips, &c.

438. If panicum be laid below and about the bottom of a root, it will cause the root to grow to an excessive bigness. The cause is, for that being itself of a spongy substance, it draweth the moisture of the earth to it, and so feedeth the root. This is of greatest use for onions, turnips, parsnips, and carrots.

439. The shifting of ground is a means to better the tree and fruit; but with this caution, that all things do prosper best when they are advanced to the better: your nursery of stocks ought to be in a more barren ground than the ground is whereunto you remove them. So all graziers prefer their cattle from meaner pastures to better. We see also, that hardness in youth lengtheneth life, because it leaveth a cherishing to the better of the body in age: nay, in exercises, it is good to begin with the hardest, as dancing in thick shoes, &c.

440. It hath been observed, that hacking of trees in their bark, both downright and across, so as you may make them rather in slices than in continued hacks, doth great good to trees; and especially delivereth them from being hidebound, and killeth their moss.

441. Shade to some plants conduceth to make them large and prosperous, more than the sun; as in strawberries and bays, &c. Therefore amongst strawberries sow here and there some borage seed; and you shall find the strawberries under those leaves far more large than their fellows. And bays you must plant to the north, or defend them from the sun by a hedge-row; and when you sow the berries, weed not the borders for the first half year; for the weed giveth them shade.

442. To encrease the crops of plants, there would be considered not only the encreasing the luft of the earth, or of the plant, but the saving also of that which is spilt. So they have lately made a trial to set wheat, which nevertheless hath been left off, because of the trouble and pains; yet so much is true, that there is much faved by the setting, in comparison of that which is sown; both by keeping it from being picked up by birds, and by avoiding the shallow lying of it, whereby much that is sown taketh no root.

443. It is prescribed by some of the ancients, that you take small trees, upon which figs or other fruit grow, being yet unripe, and cover the trees in the middle of autumn with dung until the spring; and then take them up in a warm day, and replant them in good ground; and by that means the former year's tree will be ripe, as by a new birth; when other trees of the same kind do but blossom. But this seemeth to have no great probability.

444. It is reported, that if you take nitre, and mingle it with water, to the thicknes of honey, and therewith anoint the bud, after the vine is cut, it will sprout forth within eight days. The cause is like to be (if the experiment be true) the opening of the bud, and of the parts contiguous, by the spirit of the nitre; for nitre is (as it were) the life of vegetables.
445. **Take** seed, or kernels of apples, pears, oranges; or a peach, or a plumb-stone, &c. and put them into a squill, (which is like a great onion) and they will come up much earlier than in the earth itself. This I conceive to be as a kind of grafting in the root; for as the stock of a graft yieldeth better prepared nourishment to the graft, than the rude earth; so the squill doth the like to the feed. And I suppose the same would be done, by putting kernels into a turnip, or the like; save that the squill is more vigorous and hot. It may be tried also, with putting onion-lead into an onion-head, which thereby (perhaps) will bring forth a larger and earlier onion.

446. **The** pricking of a fruit in several places, when it is almost at its big­ness, and before it ripeneth, hath been practiced with success, to ripen the fruit more suddenly. We see the example of the biting of wasps or worms upon fruit, whereby it (manifestly) ripeneth the sooner.

447. It is reported, that *algæ marina*, (sea-weed) put under the roots of coleworts, and (perhaps) of other plants, will further their growth. The virtue (no doubt) hath relation to salt, which is a great help to fertility.

448. It hath been practiced, to cut off the stalks of cucumbers, immediately after their bearing, close by the earth; and then to cast a pretty quantity of earth upon the plant that remaineth, and they will bear the next year fruit long before the ordinary time. The cause may be, for that the sap goeth down the sooner, and is not spent in the stalk or leaf, which remaineth after the fruit. Where note, that the dying in the winter of the roots of plants that are annual, seemeth to be partly caused by the over-expense of the sap into stalk and leaves; which being prevented, they will super-annulate, if they stand warm.

449. The pulling off many of the blossoms from a fruit tree, doth make the fruit fairer. The cause is manifest; for that the sap hath the less to nourish. And it is a common experience, that if you do not pull off some blossoms the first time a tree bloometh, it will blossom to itself to death.

450. It were good to try, what would be the effect, if all the blossoms were pulled from a fruit tree; or the acorns and chestnut buds, &c. from a wild tree, for two years together. I suppose that the tree will either put forth the third year bigger and more plentiful fruit; or else, the same years, larger leaves, because the sap stored up.

451. It hath been generally received, that a plant watered with warm water, will come up sooner and better, than with cold water or with showers. But our experiment of watering wheat with warm water (as hath been said) succeeded not; which may be, because the trial was too late in the year, viz. in the end of October. For the cold then coming upon the seed, after it was made more tender by the warm water, might check it.

452. There is no doubt, but that grafting (for the most part) doth meliorate the fruit. The cause is manifest; for that the nourishment is better prepared in the stock, than in the rude earth: but yet note well, that there be some trees, that are said to come up more happily from the kernel than from the graft; as the peach and melocotone. The cause I suppose to be, for that those plants require a nourishment of great moisture; and though the nourishment of the stock be finer and better prepared, yet it is not so moist and plentiful as the nourishment of the earth. And indeed we see those fruits are very cold fruits in their nature.

453. It hath been received, that a smaller pear grafted upon a stock that beareth a greater pear, will become great. But I think it is as true, as that
of the prime fruit upon the late stock; and e controverjo; which we rejected before: for the cions will govern. Nevertheless, it is probable enough, that if you can get a cion to grow upon a flock of another kind, that is much moister than its own flock, it may make the fruit greater, because it will yield more plentiful nourishment; though it is like it will make the fruit bafer. But generally the grafting is upon a drier flock; as the apple upon a crab; the pear upon a thorn, &c. Yet it is reported, that in the Low-Countries they will graft an apple cion upon the flock of a colewort, and it will bear a great flaggy apple; the kernel of which, if it be set, will be a colewort, and not an apple. It were good to try, whether an apple cion will prosper, if it be grafted upon a fallow, or upon a poplar, or upon an alder, or upon an elm, or upon an horie-plumb, which are the moistest of trees. I have heard that it hath been tried upon an elm and succeeded.

454. It is manifeft by experience, that flowers removed wax greater, because the nourishment is more easily come by in the loose earth. It may be, that oft regrafting of the same cions, may likewise make fruit greater; as if you take a cion, and graft it upon a flock the first year; and then cut it off, and graft it upon another flock the second year; and so for a third or fourth year; and then let it reft, it will yield afterward when it bear eth the greater fruit.

OF grafting there are many experiments worth the noting, but those we referve to a proper place.

455. It maketh figs better, if a fig-tree, when it beginneth to put forth leaves, have his top cut off. The caufe is plain, for that the sap hath the les to feed, and the les way to mount: but it may be the fig will come somewhat later, as was formerly touched. The fame may be tried likewise in other trees.

456. It is reported, that mulberries will be fairer, and the trees more fruitful, if you bore the trunk of the tree through in several places, and thruft into the places bored wedges of some hot trees, as turpentine, mastick tree, guaiacum, juniper, &c. The caufe may be, for that adventive heat doth cheer up the native juice of the tree.

457. It is reported, that trees will grow greater, and bear better fruit, if you put salt, or lees of wine, or blood to the root. The caufe may be the encreaing the luil: or fpirit of the root; these things being more forcible than ordinary compolls.

458. It is reported by one of the ancients, that artichoaks will be less prickly, and more tender, if the seeds have their tops dulled, or grated off upon a stone.

459. Herbs will be tenderer and fairer, if you take them out of beds, when they are newly come up, and remove them into pots with better earth. The remove from bed to bed was fpoken of before; but that was in several years; this is upon the sudden. The caufe is the fame with other removes formerly mentioned.

460. Coleworts are reported by one of the ancients to prosper exceedingly, and to be better tafted if they be sometimes warted with falt water; and much more with water mixed with nitre; the spirit of which is les adurent than falt.

461. It is reported, that cucumbers will prove more tender and dainty, if their seeds be steeped (a little) in milk; the caufe may be, for that the seed being mollified with the milk, will be too weak to draw the grofer juice of the earth, but only the finer. The fame experiment may be made in artichoaks.
choaks and other seeds, when you would take away either their flatness or bitterness. They speak also, that the like effect followeth, of steeping in water mixed with honey; but that seemeth to me not so probable, because honey hath too quick a spirit.

462. It is reported, that cucumbers will be less watry, and more melon-like, if in the pit where you set them, you fill it (half-way up) with chaff, or small sticks, and then pour earth upon them; for cucumbers, as it seemeth, do extremely affect moisture, and over-drink themselves; which this chaff or chips forbiddeth. Nay, it is farther reported, that if when a cucumber is grown, you set a pot of water about five or six inches distance from it, it will, in twenty four hours, shoot so much out as to touch the pot; which, if it be true, is an experiment of an higher nature than belongeth to this title: for it discovereth perception in plants, to move towards that other: for that water may affect moisture, and over-drink themselves; which this chaff or chips forbiddeth. Nay, it is farther reported, that if when a cucumber is grown, you set a pot of water about five or six inches distance from it, it will grow that way; which is far stranger (as is said) than the other: for that water may work by a sympathy of attraction; but this of the flake seemeth to be a reasonable discourse.

463. It hath been touched before, that terebration of trees doth make them proper better. But it is found also, that it maketh the fruit sweeter and better. The cause is, for that notwithstanding the terebation, they may receive aliment sufficient; and yet no more than they can well turn and digest; and withal do sweat out the coarsest and unprofitable juice; even as it is in living creatures, which by moderate feeding, and exercise, and sweat, attain the soundest habit of body.

464. As terebration doth meliorate fruit, so upon the like reason doth letting of plants blood; as pricking vines, or other trees, after they be of some growth; and thereby letting forth gum or tears; though this be not to continue, as it is in terebation, but at some seasons. And it is reported, that by this artifice bitter almonds may be turned into sweet.

465. The ancients for the dulcorating of fruit, do commend swines dung above all other dung; which may be because of the moisture of that beast, whereby the excrement hath less acrimony; for we see swines and pigs flesh is the most sweet of flesh.

466. It is observed by some, that all herbs wax sweeter, both in smell and taste, if after they be grown up some reasonable time, they be cut, and so you take the later sprout. The cause may be, for that the longer the juice stayeth in the root and stalk, the better it concocteth. For one of the chief causes why grains, seeds and fruits, are more nourishing than leaves, is the length of time in which they grow to maturation. It were not amis to keep back the sap of herbs, or the like, by some fit means, till the end of summer; whereby (it may be) they will be more nourishing.

467. As grafting doth generally advance and meliorate fruits, above that which they would be if they were set of kernels or stones, in regard the nourishment is better concocted; so (no doubt) even in grafting, for the same cause, the choice of the stock doth much; always provided, that it be somewhat inferior to the cion: for otherwise it dulleth it. They commend much the grafting of pears or apples upon a quince.

468. Besides the means of melioration of fruits before mentioned, it is set down as tried, that a mixture of bran and swines dung, or chaff and swines dung, (especially laid up together for a month to rot) is a very great nourisher and comforter to a fruit-tree.
469. It is delivered, that onions wax greater if they be taken out of the earth, and laid a drying twenty days, and then set again; and yet more, if the outermost pill be taken off all over.

470. It is delivered by some, that if one take the bough of a low fruit-tree newly budded, and draw it gently without hurting it into an earthen pot, perforate at the bottom to let in the plant, and then cover the pot with earth, it will yield a very large fruit within the ground. Which experiment is nothing but potting of plants without removing, and leaving the fruit in the earth. The like (they say) will be effected by an empty pot without earth in it, put over a fruit, being propped up with a stake as it hangeth upon the tree; and the better, if some few perturbations be made in the pot. Wherein, besides the defending of the fruit from extremity of fun or weather, some give a reason, that the fruit loving and coveting the open air and fun, is invited by those perturbations to spread and approach as near the open air as it can; and so enlargeth in magnitude.

471. All trees in high and sandy grounds are to be set deep; and in watery grounds more shallow. And in all trees, when they be removed, (especially fruit-trees) care ought to be taken, that the sides of the trees be coasted, (north and south, &c.) as they stood before. The same is said also of stone out of the quarry, to make it more durable; though that seemeth to have less reason; because the stone lieth not so near the sun, as the tree groweth.

472. Timber trees in a coppice wood, do grow better than in an open field; both because they offer not to spread so much, but shoot up still in height; and chiefly because they are defended from too much sun and wind, which do check the growth of all fruit; and so (no doubt) fruit-trees, or vines, set upon a wall against the sun, between elbows or buttresses of stone, ripen more than upon a plain wall.

473. It is said, that if potato-roots be set in a pot filled with earth, and then the pot with earth be set likewise within the ground some two or three inches, the roots will grow greater than ordinary. The cause may be, for that having earth enough within the pot to nourish them; and then being flopped by the bottom of the pot from putting firings downward, they must needs grow greater in breadth and thickness. And it may be, that all seeds or roots potted, and set into the earth, will prosper the better.

474. The cutting off the leaves of radish, or other roots, in the beginning of winter, before they wither, and covering again the root something high with earth, will preserve the root all winter, and make it bigger in the spring following, as hath been partly touched before. So that there is a double use of this cutting off the leaves; for in plants where the root is the esculent, as radish and parsnips, it will make the root the greater; and so it will do to the heads of onions. And where the fruit is the esculent, by strengthening the root, it will make the fruit also the greater.

475. It is an experiment of great pleasure, to make the leaves of shady trees larger than ordinary. It hath been tried (for certain) that a cion of a weech elm, grafted upon the stock of an ordinary elm, will put forth leaves almost as broad as the brim of one's hat. And it is very likely, that as in fruit-trees the graft maketh a greater fruit; so in trees that bear no fruit, it will make the greater leaves. It would be tried therefore in trees of that kind chiefly, as birch, asp, willow; and especially the shining willow, which they call swallow-tail, because of the pleasure of the leaf.

476. The barrenness of trees by accident, (besides the weakness of the soil,
Experiments in comfort touching compound fruits and flowers.

We see that in living creatures, that have male and female, there is copulation of several kinds; and so compound creatures; as the mule, that is generated betwixt the horse and the ass; and some other compounds which we call monsters, though more rare: and it is held that that proverb, *Africa semper aliquid monstrum parit*, cometh, for that the fountains of waters there being rare, divers sorts of beasts come from several parts to drink; and so being refreshed, fall to couple, and many times with several kinds. The compounding or mixture of kinds in plants is not found out; which nevertheless, if it be possible, is more at command than that of living creatures; for that their lust requireth a voluntary motion; wherefore it was one of the most notable experiments touching plants to find it out: for so you may have great variety of new fruits and flowers yet unknown. Grafting doth it not; that mendeth the fruit, or doubleth the flowers, &c. but it hath not the power to make a new kind. For the cion ever over-ruleth the stocK.

477. It hath been set down by one of the ancients, that if you take two twigs of several fruit-trees, and flat them on the sides, and then bind them close together and set them in the ground, they will come up in one stock; but yet they will put forth their several fruits without any commixture in the fruit. Wherein note (by the way) that unity of continuance is easier to procure than unity of species. It is reported also, that vines of red and white grapes being set in the ground, and the upper parts being flattened and bound close together, will put forth grapes of the several colours upon the same branch; and grape stones of several colours within the same grape: but the more after a year or two; the unity (as it seemeth) growing more perfect. And this will likewise help, if from the first uniting they be often water'd; for all moisture helpeth to union. And it is prescribed also to bind the bud as soon as it cometh forth, as well as the stock, at the least for a time.

478. They report, that divers seeds put into a clout; and laid in earth well dunged, will put up plants contiguous; which (afterwards) being bound in their shoots will incorporate. The like is said of kernels put into a bottle with a narrow mouth filled with earth.

479. It is reported, that young trees of several kinds set contiguous without any binding, and very often water'd, in a fruitful ground, with the very luxury of the trees, will incorporate and grow together. Which seemeth to me the likeliest means that hath been propounded; for that the binding doth hinder the natural swelling of the tree; which while it is in motion doth better unite.

Experiments in comfort touching the sympathy and antipathy of plants.

There are many ancient and received traditions and observations touching the sympathy and antipathy of plants; for that some will thrive best growing near others, which they impute to sympathy; and some worse, which they impute to antipathy. But these are idle and ignorant conceits, and forsake the true indication of the causes, as the most part of Experiments.
ments that concern sympathies and antipathies do. For as to plants, neither is there any such secret friendship or hatred as they imagine; and if we should be content to call it sympathy and antipathy, it is utterly mistaken; for their sympathy is an antipathy, and their antipathy is a sympathy: for it is thus; wheresoever one plant draweth such a particular juice out of the earth, as it qualifieth the earth, so as that juice which remaineth is for the other plant; there the neighbourhood doth good, because the nourishments are contrary or several; but where two plants draw (much) the same juice, there the neighbourhood hurteth, for the one deceiveth the other.

480. First therefore, all plants that do draw much nourishment from the earth, and so soak the earth and exhaust it, hurt all things that grow by them; as great trees, (especially oaks,) and such trees as spread their roots near the top of the ground. So the colewort is not an enemy (though that were anciently received) to the vine only; but it is an enemy to any other plant, because it draweth strongly the fattest juice of the earth. And if it be true, that the vine when it creepeth near the colewort will tum away, this may be, because there it findeth worse nourishment; for though the root be where it was, yet (I doubt) the plant will bend as it nouriseth.

481. Where plants are of several natures, and draw several juices out of the earth, there (as hath been said) the one set by the other helpeth: as it is set down by divers of the ancients, that rue doth prosper much, and cometh stronger, if it be set by a fig-tree; which (we conceive) is caused not by reason of friendship, but by extraction of a contrary juice: the one drawing juice fit to result (sweet, the other bitter. So they have set down likewise, that a rose set by garlick is sweeter: which likewise may be, because the more fetid juice of the earth goeth into the garlick, and the more edematous into the rose.

482. This we see manifestly, that there be certain corn-flowers which come seldom or never in other places, unless they be set, but only amongst corn: as the bluebottle, a kind of yellow marigold, wild poppy, and fumicety. Neither can this be, by reason of the culture of the ground, by plowing or furrowing; as some herbs and flowers will grow but in ditches new cast; for if the ground lie fallow, and unfown, they will not come: so as it should seem to be the corn that qualifieth the earth, and prepareth it for their growth.

483. This observation, if it holdeth, (as it is very probable) is of great use for the meliorating of taste in fruits and succulent herbs, and of the scent of flowers. For I do not doubt, but if the fig-tree do make the rue more strong and bitter, (as the ancients have noted) good store of rue planted about the fig-tree will make the fig more sweet. Now the taines that do most offend in fruits, and herbs, and roots, are bitter, harsh, sour, and watrich, or flathly. It were good therefore to make the trials following:

484. Take wormword, or rue, and set it near lettuce, or coleflory, or artichoke, and see whether the lettuce, or the coleflory, &c. become not the sweeter.

485. Take a service tree, or a cornelian tree, or an elder tree, which we know have fruits of harsh and binding juice, and set them near a vine, or fig-tree, and see whether the grapes or figs will not be the sweeter.

486. Take cucumbers, or pumphions, and set them (here and there) a-
amongst musk-melons, and see whether the melons will not be more winy, and better tasted. Set cucumbers (likewise) amongst radishes, and see whether the radish will not be made the more biting.

487. Take farrel, and set it amongst raspberries, and see whether the raspberries will not be the sweeter.

488. Take common briar, and set it amongst violets or wall-flowers, and see whether it will not make the violets or wall-flowers sweeter, and less earthy in their smell. So set lettuce, or cucumbers, amongst rosemary or bays, and see whether the rosemary or bays will not be the more odoriferous or aromatic.

489. Contrariwise, you must take heed how you set herbs together, that draw much the like juice. And therefore I think rosemary will lose in sweetness, if it be set with lavender, or bays, or the like. But yet if you will correct the strength of an herb, you shall do well to set other like herbs by him to take him down; and if you should set tansey by angelica, it may be the angelica would be the weaker, and fitter for mixture in perfume. And if you should set rue by common wormwood, it may be the wormwood would turn to be like Roman wormwood.

490. This axiom is of large extent; and therefore would be severer, and refined by trial. Neither must you expect to have a gross difference by this kind of culture, but only farther perfection.

491. Tryal would be also made in herbs poisonous and purgative, whose ill quality (perhaps) may be discharged, or attempted, by setting stronger poisons or purgatives by them.

492. It is reported, that the shrub called our ladies seal, (which is a kind of borage) and coleworts, set near together, one or both will die. The cause is, for that they be both great depredators of the earth, and one of them starveth the other. The like is said of a reed and a brake; both which are succulent; and therefore the one deceiveth the other. And the like of hemlock and rue; both which draw strong juices.

493. Some of the ancients, and likewise divers of the modern writers, that have laboured in natural magick, have noted a sympathy between the sun, moon, and some principal stars; and certain herbs and plants. And so they have denominated some herbs solar, and some lunar; and such like toys put into great words. It is manifest that there are some flowers that have respect to the sun in two kinds, the one by opening and shutting, and the other by bowing and inclining the head. For marigolds, tulips, pimpernel, and indeed most flowers, do open and spread their leaves abroad when the sun shineth serene and fair: and again (in some part) close them, or gather them inward, either towards night, or when the sky is overcast. Of this there needeth no such solemn reason to be assigned; as to say, that they rejoice at the presence of the sun, and mourn at the absence thereof. For it is nothing else but a little loading of the leaves, and swelling them at the bottom, with the moisture of the air; whereas the dry air doth extend them: and they make it a piece of the wonder, that garden-claver will hide the stalk when the sun shineth bright; which is nothing but a full expansion of the leaves. For the bowing and inclining the head, it is found in the great flower of the sun; in marigolds, wart-wort, mallow flowers, and others. The cause is somewhat more obscure than the former; but I take it to be no other, but that the part against which the sun beateth waxeth more faint and flaccid in the stalk, and thereby less able to support the flower.
494. _What a little moisture will do in vegetables, even though they be dead and fevered from the earth, appeareth well in the experiment of jugglers._ They take the beard of an oat; which (if you mark it well) is wreathed at the bottom, and one smooth entire straw at the top. They take only the part that is wreathed, and cut off the other, leaving the beard half the breadth of a finger in length. Then they make a little cross of a quill, long-ways of that part of the quill which hath the pith; and cross-ways of that piece of the quill without pith; the whole cross being the breadth of a finger high. Then they prick the bottom where the pith is, and thereto they put the oat-en-beard, leaving half of it sticking forth of the quill: then they take a little white box of wood to deceive men, as if somewhat in the box did work the feat; in which, with a pin, they make a little hole, enough to take the beard, but not to let the cross sink down, but to stick. Then likewise, by way of imposture, they make a question; as, who is the fairest woman in the company? or, who hath a glove or card? and cause another to name divers persons: and upon every naming they stick the cross in the box, having first put it towards their mouth, as if they charmed it; and the cross stirreth not; but when they come to the person that they would take, as they hold the cross to their mouth, they touch the beard with the tip of their tongue, and wet it; and so stick the cross in the box; and then you shall see it turn finely and softly three or four turns; which is caused by the untwining of the beard by the moisture. You may see it more evidently, if you stick the cross between your fingers instead of the box; and therefore you may see, that this motion, which is effected by so little wet, is stronger than the closing or bending of the head of a marigold.

495. _It is reported by some, that the herb called rosa folis, (whereof they make strong waters) will, at the noon-day, when the sun shineth hot and bright, have a great dew upon it. And therefore, that the right name is rosa folis: which they impute to a delight and sympathy that it hath with the sun. Men favour wonders. It were good first to be sure, that the dew that is found upon it, be not the dew of the morning preserved, when the dew of other herbs is breathed away; for it hath a smooth and thick leaf, that doth not discharge the dew so soon as other herbs that are more fpongy and porous. And it may be purslane, or some other herb, doth the like, and is not marked. But if it be so, that it hath more dew at noon than in the morning, then sure it seemeth to be an exudation of the herb itSelf. As plumbs sweat when they are set into the oven: for you will not (I hope) think, that it is like Gideon's fleece of wool, that the dew should fall upon that and no where else._

496. _It is certain, that the honey dews are found more upon oak leaves, than upon ash, or beech, or the like: but whether any cause be from the leaf it self to concocç the dew; or whether it be only that the leaf is close and smooth, (and therefore drinketh not in the dew, but preserveth it;) may be doubted. It would be well enquired, whether manna the drug doth fall but upon certain herbs or leaves only. Flowers that have deep sockets, do gather in the bottom a kind of honey; as honey-fuckles, (both the woodbine and the trefoil) lillies, and the like. And in them certainly the flower beareth part with the dew._

497. _The experience is, that the froth which they call woodesfare, (being like a kind of spittle) is found but upon certain herbs, and those hot ones:
as lavender, lavender-cotton, sage, hyssop, &c. Of the cause of this enquire further; for it seemeth a secret. There falleth also mildew upon corn, and sinmuttereth it; but it may be, that the same falleth also upon other herbs, and is not observed.

498. It were good trial were made, whether the great consent between plants and water, which is a principal nourishment of them, will make an attraction at distance, and not at touch only. Therefore take a vessel, and in the middle of it make a false bottom of coarse canvas; fill it with earth above the canvas, and let not the earth be watered; then sow some good seeds in that earth; but under the canvas, some half a foot in the bottom of the vessel, lay a great sponge thoroughly wet in water; and let it lie so some ten days, and see whether the seeds will sprout, and the earth become more moist, and the sponge more dry. The experiment formerly mentioned of the cucumber creeping to the pot of water, is far stranger than this.

Experiments in comfort touching the making herbs and fruits medicinable.

499. The altering of the scent, colour, or taste of fruit, by infusing, mixing, or letting into the bark, or root of the tree, herb or flower, any coloured, aromatical, or medicinal substance, are but fancies. The cause is, for that those things have past their period, and nourish not. And all alteration of vegetables in those qualities, must be by somewhat that is apt to go into the nourishment of the plant. But this is true, that where kind feed upon wild garlick, their milk tasteth plainly of the garlick, and the flesh of muttons is better tasted where the sheep feed upon wild thyme, and other wholesome herbs. Galen also speaketh of the curing of the fæirus of the liver, by milk of a cow that feedeth upon certain herbs; and honey in Spain finelleth (apparently) of the rosemary, or orange; from whence the bee gathereth it: and there is an old tradition of a maiden that was fed with Nolellus; (which is counted the strongest poison of all vegetables) which with use did not hurt the maid, but poisoned some that had carnal company with her. So it is observed by some, that there is a virtuous bezoar, and another without virtue, which appear to the eye alike: but the virtuous is taken from the beast that feedeth upon the mountains, where there are theriacal herbs; and that without virtue, from those that feed in the valleys where no such herbs are. Thus far I am of opinion; that as steeped wines and beers are very medicinal; and likewise bread tempered with divers powders: so of meat also, (as flesh, fitch, milk and eggs) that they may be made of great use for medicine and diet, if the beast, fowl, or fitch, be fed with a special kind of food fit for the disease. It were a dangerous thing also for secret empoisnments. But whether it may be applied unto plants and herbs I doubt more; because the nourishment of them is a more common juice; which is hardly capable of any special quality, until the plant do assimilate it.

500. But lest our incredulity may prejudice any profitable operations in this kind, (especially since many of the ancients have set them down) we think good briefly to propound the four means which they have devised of making plants medicinable. The first is by distilling of the root, and infusing into it the medicine; as hellebore, opium, scarmmony, treacle, &c. and then binding it up again. This seemeth to me the leat probable; because the root draweth immediately from the earth; and so the nourishment
The first way is the most common and least qualified: and besides, it is a long time in going up ere it come to the fruit. The second way is to perforate the body of the tree, and there to infuse the medicine; which is somewhat better: for if any virtue be received from the medicine, it hath the least way, and the least time to go up. The third is, the steeping of the seed or kernel in some liquor wherein the medicine is infused: which I have little opinion of, because the seed (I doubt) will not draw the parts of the matter which have the propriety: but it will be far the more likely, if you mingle the medicine with dung; for that the seed naturally drawing the moisture of the dung, may call in withal some of the propriety. The fourth is, the watering of the plant oft with an infusion of the medicine. This, in one respect, may have more force than the rest, because the medication is oft renewed; whereas the rest are applied but at one time; and therefore the virtue may the sooner vanish. But still I doubt, that the root is somewhat too stubborn to receive those fine impressions; and besides, (as I said before) they have a great hill to go up. I judge therefore the likeliest way to be the perforation of the body of the tree in several places one above the other; and the filling of the holes with dung mingled with the medicine; and the watering of those lumps of dung, with squirts of an infusion of the medicine in dugged water once in three or four days.
NATURAL HISTORY.

Experiments in comfort touching curiosities about fruits and plants.

Our experiments we take care to be (as we have often said) either experimenta frutifera, or lucifera; either of use or of discovery: for we hate impolitures, and despise curiosities. Yet because we must apply our selves somewhat to others, we will set down some curiosities touching plants.

501. It is a curiosity to have several fruits upon one tree; and the more when some of them come early, and some come late; so that you may have upon the same tree ripe fruits all summer. This is easily done by grafting of several cions upon several boughs, of a stock, in a good ground plentifully fed. So you may have all kinds of cherries, and all kinds of plumbs, and peaches, and apricots, upon one tree; but I conceive the diversity of fruits must be such as will graft upon the same stock. And therefore I doubt, whether you can have apples, or pears, or oranges, upon the same stock upon which you graft plumbs.

502. It is a curiosity to have fruits of divers shapes and figures. This is easily performed, by moulding them when the fruit is young; with moulds of earth or wood. So you may have cucumbers, &c. as long as a cane; or as round as a sphere; or formed like a crofs. You may have also apples in the form of pears or lemons. You may have also fruit in more accurate figures; as we said, of men, beafts or birds, according as you make the moulds. Wherein you must understand, that you make the mould big enough to contain the whole fruit when it is grown to the greatest; for else you will choke the spreading of the fruit; which otherwise would spread it self, and fill the concave, and so be turned into the shape desired; as it is in mould works of liquid things. Some doubt may be conceived, that the keeping of the fun from the fruit may hurt it: but there is ordinary experience of fruit that groweth covered. Quaere also, whether some small holes may not be made in the wood to let in the sun. And note, that it were best to make the moulds partible, glued, or cemented together, that you may open them when you take out the fruit.

503. It is a curiosity to have inscriptions, or engravings, in fruit or trees. This is easily performed, by writing with a needle, or bodkin, or knife, or the like, when the fruit or trees are young; for as they grow, so the letters will grow more large and graphical.

— Tenerifque
You may have trees appurteiiled with flowers or herbs, by boring holes in the bodies of them, and putting into them earth holpen with muck, and setting seeds, or slips, of violets, strawberries, wild thyme, camomile, and such like in the earth. Wherein they do but grow in the tree, as they do in pots; though (perhaps) with some feeding from the trees. It would be tried also with shoots of vines, and roots of red roses; for it may be they being of a more ligneous nature, will incorporate with the tree itself.

It is an ordinary curiosity to form trees and shrubs (as rosemary, juniper, and the like) into sundry shapes; which is done by moulding them within, and cutting them without. But they are but lame things, being too small to keep figure: great cattles made of trees upon frames of timber, with turrets and arches, were anciently matters of magnificence.

Amongst curiosities I shall place coloration, though it be somewhat better: for beauty in flowers is their preheminence. It is observed by some, that gilly-flowers, sweet-williams, violets, that are coloured, if they be neglected, and neither watered, nor new moulded, nor transplanted, will turn white. And it is probable, that the white with much culture may turn coloured. For this is certain, that the white colour cometh of scarcity of nourishment; except in flowers that are only white, and admit no other colours.

It is good therefore to see what natures do accompany what colours; for by that you shall have light how to induce colours, by producing those natures. Whites are more inodorate, (for the most part) than flowers of the same kind coloured; as is found in single white violets, white roses, white gilly-flowers, white stock-gilly-flowers, &c. We find also, that blossoms of trees, that are white, are commonly inodorate, as cherries, pears, plumbs; whereas those of apples, crabs, almonds and peaches, are blustry, and smell sweet. The cause is, for that the substance that maketh the flower is of the thinnest and finest of the plant, which also maketh flowers to be of so dainty colours. And if it be too sparing and thin, it attaineth no strength of odour, except it be in such plants as are very succulent; whereby they need rather to be scantly in their nourishment than replenished, to have them sweet. As we see in white fatoryion, which is of a dainty smell; and in bean-flowers, &c. And again, if the plant be of nature to put forth white flowers only, and those not thin or dry, they are commonly of rank and fulsome smell; as may-flowers, and white lilies.

Contrariwise, in berries the white is commonly more delicate and sweet in taste than the coloured, as we see in white grapes, in white raps, in white strawberries, in white currans, &c. The cause is, for that the coloured are more juiced, and coarser juiced, and therefore not so well and equally concocted; but the white are better proportioned to the digestion of the plant.

But in fruits the white commonly is meaner; as in pear-plumbs, damascenes, &c. and the choicest plumbs are black; the mulberry, (which though they call it a berry, is a fruit) is better the black than the white. The harvest white plumb is a base plumb; and the verdoccio and white date-plumb, are no very good plumbs. The cause is, for that they are all over watery; whereas an higher concoction is required for sweetness, or pleasure of taste; and therefore all your dainty plumbs are a little dry, and come
come from the stone; as the muscle-plumb, the damascene-plumb, the peach, the apricot, &c. yet some fruits, which grow not to be black, are of the nature of berries; sweetest such as are pale; as the egrist-cherry, which inclineth more to white, is sweeter than the red; but the egrist is more four.

510. Take gilly-flower seed, of one kind of gilly-flower, (as of the clove-gilly-flower, which is the most common,) and sow it, and there will come up gilly-flowers, some of one colour, and some of another, casually, as the seed meeteth with nourishment in the earth; so that the gardeners find, that they may have two or three roots amongst an hundred that are rare and of great price; as purple, carnation of several stripes; the cause is, (no doubt) that in earth, though it be contiguous, and in one bed, there are very several juices; and as the seed doth casually meet with them, so it cometh forth. And it is noted especially, that those which do come up purple, do always come up single; the juice, as it seemeth, not being able to suffice a succulent colour, and a double leaf. This experiment of several colours coming up from one seed, would be tried also in larks-foot, monks-hood, poppy and holyoak.

511. Few fruits are colour'd red within; the queen-apple is; and another apple, called the rofe-apple; mulberries likewise, and grapes, though most toward the skin. There is a peach also that hath a circle of red towards the stone; and the egrist cherry is somewhat red within; but no pear, nor warden, nor plum, nor apricot, although they have (many times) red sides, are coloured within. The cause may be enquired.

512. The general colour of plants is green, which is a colour that no flower is of. There is a greenish primrose, but it is pale, and scarce a green. The leaves of some trees turn a little murry, or reddish; and they be commonly young leaves that do so; as it is in oaks, and vines, and hazle. Leaves rot into a yellow; and some hollies have part of their leaves yellow, that are (to all seeming) as fresh and shining as the green. I suppose also, that yellow is a less succulent colour than green, and a degree nearer white. For it hath been noted, that those yellow leaves of holly stand ever towards the north, or north-east. Some roots are yellow, as carrots; and some plants blood-red, flalk and leaf, and all, as amaranthus. Some herbs incline to purple and red; as a kind of fage doth, and a kind of mint, and rafa folis, &c. And some have white leaves, as another kind of fage, and another kind of mint; but azure and a fair purple are never found in leaves. This sheweth, that flowers are made of a refined juice of the earth, and so are fruits; but leaves of a more coarse and common.

513. It is a curiosity also to make flowers double, which is effected by often removing them into new earth; as on the contrary part, double flowers, by neglecting, and not removing, prove single. And the way to do it speedily, is to sow or set seeds or slips of flowers; and as soon as they come up, to remove them into new ground that is good. Enquire also, whether inoculating of flowers, (as flock-gilly-flowers, roses, musk-roses, &c.) doth not make them double. There is a cherry-tree that hath double blossoms; but that tree bear eth no fruit; and it may be, that the same means which applied to the tree, doth extremely accelerate the sap to rise and break forth, would make the tree spend it all in flowers, and those to become double, which were a great pleasure to see; especially in apple-trees, peach-trees, and almond-trees, that have blossoms blush-colour'd.

514. The making of fruits without core or stone, is likewise a curiosity.
and somewhat better: because whatsoever maketh them so, is like to make them more tender and delicate. If a cion or shoot, fit to be set in the ground, have the pith finely taken forth, (and not altogether, but some of it left, the better to save the life,) it will bear a fruit with little or no core or stone. And the like is said to be of dividing a quick tree down to the ground, and taking out the pith, and then binding it up again.

515. It is reported also, that a citron grafted upon a quince will have small or no seeds; and it is very probable, that any four fruit grafted upon a stock that beareth a sweeter fruit, may both make the fruit sweeter, and more void of the harsh matter of kernels or seeds.

516. It is reported, that not only the taking out of the pith, but the stopping of the juice of the pith from rising in the midst, and turning it to rise on the outside, will make the fruit without core or stone; as if you should bore a tree clean through, and put a wedge in. It is true, there is some affinity between the pith and the kernel, because they are both of a harsh substance, and both placed in the midst.

517. It is reported, that trees water'd perpetually with warm water, will make a fruit with little or no core or stone. And the rule is general, that whatsoever will make a wild tree a garden tree, will make a garden tree to have less core or stone.

Experiments in confort touching the degenerating of plants, and of the transmutation of them one into another.

518. The rule is certain, that plants for want of culture degenerate to be bolder in the same kind; and sometimes so far, as to change into another kind. 1. The standing long, and not being removed, maketh them degenerate. 2. Drought, unless the earth of it self be moist, doth the like. 3. So doth removing into worse earth, or forbearing to compose the earth; as we see that water mint turneth into field mint, and the colewort into rape, by neglect, &c.

519. Whatsoever fruit useth to be set upon a root or a slip, if it be sown, will degenerate. Grapes sown, figs, almonds, pomegranate kernels sown, make the fruits degenerate and become wild. And again, most of those fruits that use to be grafted, if they be set of kernels, or stones, degenerate. It is true, that peaches (as hath been touched before) do better upon stones than than grafting; and the rule of exception should seem to be this; that whatsoever plant requireth much moisture, prospereth better upon the stone or kernel, than upon the graft. For the stock, though it giveth a finer nourishment, yet it giveth a scantier than the earth at large.

520. Seeds, if they be very old, and yet have strength enough to bring forth a plant, make the plant degenerate. And therefore skilful gardeners make trial of the seeds before they buy them, whether they be good or no, by putting them into water gently boiled; and if they be good, they will sprout within half an hour.

521. It is strange which is reported, that basil too much expos'd to the sun doth turn into wild thyme; although those two herbs seem to have small affinity; but basil is almost the only hot herb that hath fat and succulent leaves; which oiliness, if it be drawn forth by the sun, it is like it will make a very great change.

522. There is an old tradition, that boughs of oak put into the earth will put forth wild vines: which if it be true, (no doubt) it is not the oak that turneth into a vine, but the oak bough putrefying, qualifies the earth to put forth a vine of it self.

523. It
It is not impossible, and I have heard it verified, that upon cutting down of an old timber tree, the stub hath put out sometimes a tree of another kind; as that beech hath put forth birch; which, if it be true, the cause may be, for that the old stub is too scant of juice to put forth the former tree; and therefore putteth forth a tree of a smaller kind that needeth less nourishment.

There is an opinion in the country, that if the same ground be oft sown with the grain that grew upon it, it will in the end grow to be of a bacer kind.

It is certain, that in very sterile years corn sown will grow to another kind.

Grandia saepe quibus mandavimus hordea falcis, Infelix lolium, & steriles dominantur avenae.

And generally it is a rule, that plants that are brought forth by culture, as corn, will sooner change into other species, than those that come of themselves; for that culture giveth but an adventitious nature, which is more easily put off.

This work of the transmutation of plants one into another, is inter magnalia naturae; for the transmutation of species is, in the vulgar philosophy, pronounced impossible: and certainly it is a thing of difficulty, and requireth deep search into nature; but seeing there appear some manifest instances of it, the opinion of impossibility is to be rejected, and the means thereof to be found out. We see, that in living creatures that come of putrefaction, there is much transmutation of one into another; as caterpillars turn into flies, &c. And it should seem probable, that whatsoever creature, having life, is generated without seed, that creature will change out of one species into another. For it is the seed, and the nature of it, which locketh and boundeth in the creature, that it doth not expatiate. So as we may well conclude, that seeing the earth of itself doth put forth plants without seed, therefore plants may well have a transmigration of species. Wherefore, wanting instances which do occur, we shall give instances of the most likely trials: and generally we would not have those that read this work of fycea syvarum account it strange, or think that it is an over-haste, that we have set down particulars untried; for contrariwise, in our own estimation, we account such particulars more worthy than those that are already tried and known: for these later must be taken as you find them; but the other do level point-blank at the inventing of causas and axioms.

First therefore you must make account, that if you will have one plant change into another, you must have the nourishment over-rule the seed; and therefore you are to pracifie it by nourishments as contrary as may be to the nature of the herb, so nevertheless as the herb may grow; and likewise with seeds that are of the weakest sort, and have least vigour. You shall do well therefore to take march-herbs, and plant them upon tops of hills and champaines; and such plants as require much moisture, upon sandy and very dry grounds. As for example, march-mallows and fedge, upon hills; cucumber, and lettuce seeds, and coleworts, upon a sandy plot: so contrariwise, plant butcheres, heath, ling, and brakes, upon a wet or marsh ground. This I conceive also, that all esculent and garden herbs, set upon the tops of hills, will prove more medicinal, though less esculent, than they were before. And it may be likewise, some wild herbs you may make fallad-herbs. This is the first rule for transmutation of plants.
527. **The second rule** shall be to bury some few seeds of the herb you would change, amongst other seeds; and then you shall see, whether the juice of those other seeds do not so qualify the earth, as it will alter the seed whereupon you work. As for example; put partly seed amongst onion feed, or lettuce feed amongst partly seed, or basil seed amongst thyme feed; and see the change of taste or otherwise. But you shall do well to put the seed you would change into a little linen cloth, that it mingle not with the foreign seed.

528. **The third rule** shall be, the making of some medley or mixture of earth, with some other plants bruised or shaven either in leaf or root: as for example, make earth with a mixture of colewort leaves stamped, and set in it artichoaks or parsnips; so take earth made with marjoram, or origanum, or wild thyme, bruised or stamped, and set in it fennel seed, &c. In which operation the process of nature still will be, (as I conceive) not that the herb you work upon should draw the juice of the foreign herb, (for that opinion we have formerly rejected;) but that there will be a new confection of mould, which perhaps will alter the seed, and yet not to the kind of the former herb.

529. **The fourth rule** shall be, to mark what herbs some earths do put forth of themselves; and to take that earth, and to pot it, or to vesel it; and in that to set the seed you would change: as for example, take from under walls, or the like, where nettles put forth in abundance, the earth which you shall there find, without any string or root of the nettles; and pot that earth, and set in it stock-gilly-flowers, or wall-flowers, &c. or sow in the seeds of them; and see what the event will be: or take earth that you have prepared to put forth mushrooms of itself, (whereof you shall find some instances following) and sow in it purdane feed, or lettuce feed; for in these experiments, it is likely enough that the earth being accustomed to send forth one kind of nourishment, will alter the new seed.

530. **The fifth rule** shall be, to make the herb grow contrary to its nature; as to make ground-herbs rise in height: as for example; carry camomile, or wild thyme, or the green strawberry, upon sticks, as you do hops upon poles; and see what the event will be.

531. **The sixth rule** shall be, to make plants grow out of the sun or open air; for that is a great mutation in nature, and may induce a change in the seed: as barrel up earth, and sow some seed in it, and put in the bottom of a pond; or put it in some great hollow tree; try also the sowing of seeds in the bottoms of caves; and pots with seeds sown, hanged up in wells some distance from the water, and see what the event will be.

Experiments in consort touching the procerity, and lowness, and artificial dwarfing of trees.

532. It is certain, that timber trees in coppice woods, grow more upright, and more free from under boughs, than those that stand in the field: the cause whereof is, for that plants have a natural motion to get to the sun; and besides, they are not glutted with too much nourishment; for that the coppice shareth with them; and repletion ever hindereth stature: lastly, they are kept warm; and that ever in plants helpeth mounting.

533. Trees that are of themselves full of heat, (which heat appeareth by their inflammable gums) as firs and pines, mount of themselves in height without side boughs, till they come towards the top. The cause is partly heat, and partly tenuity of juice, both which send the sap upwards. As for juniper,
juniper, it is but a shrub, and groweth not big enough in body to maintain a tall tree.

534. It is reported, that a good strong canvas spread over a tree grafted low, soon after it putteth forth, will dwarf it, and make it spread. The cause is plain; for that all things that grow, will grow as they find room.

535. Trees are generally set of roots or kernels; but if you set them of slips, (as of some trees you may, by name the mulberry) some of the slips will take; and those that take, (as is reported) will be dwarf trees. The cause is, for that a slip draweth nourishment more weakly than either a root or kernel.

536. All plants that put forth their sap hastily, have their bodies not proportionable to their length; and therefore they are winders and creepers; as ivy, bryony, hops, woodbine: whereas dwarfing requireth a slow putting forth, and less vigour of mounting.

Experiments in confer touch touching the rudiments of plants, and of the excrescences of plants, or super-plants.

The scripture faith, that Solomon wrote a natural history, from the cedar of Libanus, to the moss growing upon the wall: for so the best translations have it. And it is true that moss is but the rudiment of a plant; and (as it were) the mould of earth or bark.

537. Moss groweth chiefly upon ridges of houses tiled or thatched, and upon the crefts of walls: And that moss is of a lighteome and pleasant green. The growing upon slopes is caused, for that moss, as on the one side it cometh of moistire and water, so on the other side the water muft but slide, and not stand or pool. And the growing upon tiles, or walls, &c. is caused, for that those dried earths, having not moisture sufficient to put forth a plant, do pra‐ctife germination by putting forth moss; though when, by age, or other‐wise, they grow to relent and resolve, they sometimes put forth plants, as wall‐flowers. And almost all moss hath here and there little stalks, besides the low thrum.

538. Moss groweth upon alleys, especially such as lie cold, and upon the north; as in divers terrasses: and again, if they be much trodden; or if they were at the firſt gravelled; for wherefoever plants are kept down, the earth putteth forth moss.

539. Old ground, that hath been long unbroken up, gathereth moss: and therefore husbandmen use to cure their pature grounds when they grow to moss, by tilling them for a year or two: which also dependeth upon the fame cause; for that the more sparing and starving juice of the earth, insufficient for plants, doth breed moss.

540. Old trees are more mossy (far) than young; for that the sap is not so frank as to rife all to the boughs, but tireth by the way, and putteth out moss.

541. Fountains have moss growing upon the ground about them;

Muscis fontes;

The cause is, for that the fountains drain the water from the ground adjacent, and leave but sufficient moistire to breed moss: and besides, the coldness of the water conduceth to the fame.

542. The moss of trees is a kind of hair; for it is the juice of the tree that is excerned, and doth not affimilate. And upon great trees the moss gathereth a figure like a leaf.

543. The
543. The moister sort of trees yield little moss; as we see in asps, poplars, willows, beeches, &c. which is partly caused for the reason that hath been given; of the frank putting up of the sap into the boughs; and partly, for that the barks of those trees are more close and soft, than those of oaks and ashes; whereby the moss can the hardlier issue out.

544. In clay-grounds all fruit-trees grow full of moss, both upon body and boughs; which is caused partly by the coldness of the ground, whereby the plants nourish less; and partly by the toughness of the earth, whereby the sap is shut in, and cannot get up to spread so frankly as it should do.

545. We have said heretofore, that if trees be hidebound, they wax less fruitful, and gather moss; and that they are holpen by hacking, &c. And therefore by the reason of contraries, if trees be bound in with cords, or some outward bands, they will put forth more moss: which (I think) happeneth to trees that stand bleak, and upon the cold winds. It would also be tried, whether if you cover a tree somewhat thick upon the top after his polling, it will not gather more moss. I think also the watering of trees with cold fountain water, will make them grow full of moss.

546. There is a moss the perfumers have, which cometh out of apple trees, that hath an excellent scent. Quaere particularly for the manner of the growth, and the nature of it. And for this experiment's sake, being a thing of price, I have set down the last experiment how to multiply and call on mosses.

Next unto moss, I will speak of mushrooms; which are likewise an imperfect plant. The mushrooms have two strange properties; the one, that they yield so delicious a meat; the other, that they come up so hastily, as in a night; and yet they are unfown. And therefore such as are upstarts in flate, they call in reproach mushrooms. And indeed we find, that mushrooms cause the accident which we call incubus, or the mare in the stomach. And therefore the surfeit of them may suffocate and poison. And this sheweth, that they are windy; and that windiness is gross and swelling, not sharp or grinding. And upon the same reason mushrooms are a venereal meat.

547. It is reported, that the bark of white or red poplar, (which are of the moistest of trees) cut small, and cast into furrows well dunged, will cause the ground to put forth mushrooms at all seasons of the year fit to be eaten. Some add to the mixture leaven of bread resolved in water.

548. It is reported, that if a hilly field where the stubble is standing, be set on fire in the flowry season, it will put forth great store of mushrooms.

549. It is reported, that harts-horn, shaven, or in small pieces, mixed with dung and watered, putteth up mushrooms. And we know that harts-horn is of a fat and clammy substance: and it may be ox-horn would do the like.

550. It hath been reported, though it be scarce credible, that ivy hath grown out of a stag's horn; which they suppose did rather come from a confrication of the horn upon the ivy, than from the horn itself. There is not known any substance but earth, and the proceedures of earth, (as tile, stone, &c.) that yieldeth any moss or herby substance. There may be trial made of some seeds, as that fennel-seed, mustard-seed, and rape-seed, put into some little holes, made in the horns of stags, or oxen, to see if they will grow.

551. There is also another imperfect plant, that (in show) is like a great mushroom:
mushroom: and it is sometimes as broad as one's hat; which they call a
toad's-fool: but it is not succulent; and it groweth (commonly) by a dead
stub of a tree; and likewise about the roots of rotten trees: and therefore
seemeth to take his juice from wood putrefied. Which sheweth, by the way,
that wood putrefied yieldeth a frank moisture.

552. There is a cake that groweth upon the side of a dead tree,
that hath gotten no name, but it is large and of a chefinut colour, and hard and
pithy; whereby it should seem, that even dead trees forget
not
their
putting
forth; no more than the carcases of mens bodies, that put
forth hair and nails
for a time.

553. There is a cod, or bag, that groweth commonly in
the fields; that
at the first is hard like a tennis-ball, and white; and after groweth of a
mush
room colour, and full of light
dust
upon the breaking: and is
thought to be
dangerous for the eyes if the powder get into them; and to be good for kibes.
Belike it hath a corrosive and fretting nature.

554. There is an herb called Jews ear, that groweth upon the roots and
lower parts of the bodies of trees; especially of elders; and sometimes ashes.
It hath a strange property; for in warm water it swelleth, and openeth ex-
tremely. It is not green, but of a dusky brown colour. And it is used for
squinancies and inflammations in the throat; whereby it seemeth to have a
mollifying and lenifying virtue.

555. There is a kind of spongy excrescence; which
groweth chiefly upon
the roots of the lafer tree; and sometimes upon cedar and other trees. It
is
very white, and light, and friable; which we call agarick. It is famous in
physick for the purging of tough phlegm. And it is also an excellent opener
for the liver; but offensive to the stomach: and in taste, it is at the first sweet,
and after bitter.

556. We find no super-plant that
is
a
formed
plant, but miffeltoe. They
have an idle tradition, that there is a bird called a misfel bird, that feedeth
upon a feed, which many times the cannot digest, and so expelleth it whole
with her excrement: which falling upon a bough of a tree that hath some
riff, putteth forth the miffeltoe. But this is a fable; for it is not probable,
that birds should feed upon that they cannot digest. But allow that, yet it
cannot be for other reafons: for first, it is found but upon certain trees; and
thofe trees bear no fuch fruit, as may allure th.at bird to fit and
feed
upon
them. It may be, that bird feedeth upon the miffeltoe-berries,
and so is often found there; which may have given occasion to the tale. But that which
maketh an end of the queftion is, that miffeltoe hath been found to put forth
under the boughs, and not (only) above the boughs; so it cannot be any thing
that falleth upon the bough. Miffeltoe groweth chiefly upon crab-trees, apple-
trees, sometimes upon hazles, and rarely upon oaks; the miffeltoe whereof
is
counted very medicinal. It is ever green winter and summer; and beareth
a white glittering berry: and it is a plant utterly differing from the plant upon
which it groweth. Two things therefore may be certainly fet down: first,
that super-fetation must be by abundance of sap in the bough that putteth it
forth; secondly, that that sap must be such as the tree doth excern, and
cannot affimilate; for else it would go into a bough; and besides, it seemeth
to be more fat and unctuous than the ordinary sap of the tree; both by the
berry which is clammy; and by that it continueth green winter and summer,
which the tree doth not.

557. This experiment of miffeltoe may give light to other practices.
Therefore trial would be made by ripping of the bough of a crab-tree in
the bark; and watering of the wound every day with warm water dunged, to see if it would bring forth mistletoe, or any such like thing. But it were yet more likely to try it with some other watering or anointing, that were not so natural to the tree as water is; as oil, or barm of drink, &c. So they be such things as kill not the bough.

558. It were good to try, what plants would put forth, if they be forbidden to put forth their natural boughs: poll therefore a tree, and cover it some thickness with clay on the top, and see what it will put forth. I suppose it will put forth roots; for so will a cion, being turned down into clay: therefore, in this experiment also, the tree would be closed with somewhat that is not so natural to the plant as clay is. Try it with leather, or cloth, or painting, so it be not hurtful to the tree. And it is certain, that a brake hath been known to grow out of a pollard.

559. A man may count the prickles of trees to be a kind of excrescence; for they will never be boughs, nor bear leaves. The plants that have prickles are thorns, black and white; brier, rose, lemon-trees, crab-trees, goosberry, berberry; these have it in the bough; the plants that have prickles in the leaf are, holly, juniper, whin-bush, thistle; nettles also have a small venomous prickle; so hath borage, but harmless. The cause must be hasty putting forth, want of moisture, and the closeness of the bark; for the haste of the spirit to put forth, and the want of nourishment to put forth a bough, and the closeness of the bark, cause prickles in boughs; and therefore they are ever like a pyramid, for that the moisture spendeth after a little putting forth. And for prickles in leaves, they come also of putting forth more juice into the leaf than can spread in the leaf smooth, and therefore the leaves otherwise are rough, as borage and nettles are. As for the leaves of holly, they are smooth, but never plain, but as it were with folds for the same cause.

560. There be also plants, that though they have no prickles, yet they have a kind of downy or velvet rind upon their leaves; as rose-campion, stock-gilly-flowers, colts-foot, which down or nap cometh of a subtil spirit, in a soft or fat substance. For it is certain, that both stock-gilly-flowers and rose-campions, stamped, have been applied (with success) to the wrists of those that have had tertian or quartan agues; and the vapour of colts-foot hath a sanative virtue towards the lungs; and the leaf allso is healing in surgery.

561. Another kind of excrescence is an exudation of plants joined with putrefaction; as we see in oak-apples, which are found chiefly upon the leaves of oaks, and the like upon willows: and country people have a kind of prediction, that if the oak-apple broken be full of worms, it is a sign of a pestilent year; which is a likely thing, because they grow of corruption.

562. There is also upon sweet, or other brier, a fine tuft or brush of moss of divers colours; which if you cut, you shall ever find full of little white worms.

Experiments in conform touching the producing of perfect plants without seed.

563. It is certain, that earth taken out of the foundations of vaults and houses, and bottoms of wells, and then put into pots, will put forth fundry kinds of herbs: but some time is required for the germination; for if it be taken but from a fathom deep, it will put forth the first year; if much deeper, not till after a year or two.

564. The nature of the plants growing out of earth so taken up, doth follow the nature of the mould it self; as if the mould be soft and fine, it
putteth forth soft herbs; as grasfs, plantain, and the like; if the earth be har-
der and coarfer, it putteth forth herbs more rough, as thistles, firs, &c.

565. It is common experience, that where alleys are close gravelled, the
earth putteth forth the first year knot grasfs, and after spire grasfs. The
cause is, for that the hard gravel or pebble at the first laying will not suffer
the grasfs to come forth upright, but turneth it to find his way where it can;
but after that the earth is somewhat losened at the top, the ordinary grasfs
cometh up.

566. It is reported, that earth being taken out of shady and watery
woods some depth, and potted, will put forth herbs of a fat and juicy sub-
stance; as penny-worth, purflane, houfleek, penny-royal, &c.

567. The water also doth send forth plants that have no roots fixed in the
bottom; but they are les perfect plants, being almost but leaves, and those
small ones; such is that we call duck-weed, which hath a leaf no bigger than
a thyme leaf, but of a frether green, and putteth forth a little string into the
water far from the bottom. As for the water lily, it hath a root in the
ground; and so have a number of other herbs that grow in ponds.

568. It is reported by some of the ancients, and some modern testimony
likewise, that there be some plants that grow upon the top of the sea, be-
ing suppofed to grow of some concretion of lime from the water, where
the sun beateth hot, and where the sea stirreth little. As for alga marina,
(sea weed) and eryngium (sea thifile) both have roots; but the sea weed un-
der the water, the sea thifile but upon the shore.

569. The ancients have noted, that there are some herbs that grow out
of snow laid up close together and putrefied, and that they are all bitter;
and they name one especially flomus, which we call moth-mullein. It is
certain, that worms are found in snow commonly, like earth-worms; and
therefore it is not unlike, that it may likewise put forth plants.

570. The ancients have affirmed, that there are some herbs that grow
out of stone; which may be, for that it is certain that toads have been found
in the middle of a free-stone. We see also that flints, lying above ground,
gather moss; and wall-flowers, and some other flowers, grow upon walls;
but whether upon the main brick or stone, or whether out of the lime or
chinks, is not well observed: for elders and ahes have been seen to grow
out of steeples; but they manifestly grow out of clefts; in so much as
when they grow big, they will disjoin the stone. And besides, it is doubt-
ful whether the mortar itself putteth it forth, or whether some seeds be
not let fall by birds. There be likewise rock-herbs; but I suppose those are
where there is some mould or earth. It hath likewise been found, that great
trees growing upon quarries, have put down their root into the stone.

571. In some mines in Germany, as is reported, there grow in the bot-
tom vegetables; and the work-folks use to say they have magical virtue,
and will not suffer men to gather them.

572. The sea sands seldom bear plants. Whereof the cause is yielded by
some of the ancients, for that the sun exhaled the moisture before it can
incorporate with the earth, and yield a nourishment for the plant. And
it is affirmed also, that sand hath (always) its root in clay; and that there
be no veins of sand any great depth within the earth.

573. It is certain, that some plants put forth for a time of their own
store, without any nourishment from earth, water, stone, &c. of which vide
the experiment 29.
Experiments in comfort touching foreign plants.

574. It is reported, that earth that was brought out of the Indies, and other remote countries for ballast of ships, cast upon some grounds in Italy, did put forth foreign herbs, to us in Europe not known; and that which is more, that of their roots, barks, and seeds, confused together, and mingled with other earth, and well water'd with warm water, there came forth herbs much like the other.

575. Plants brought out of hot countries, will endeavour to put forth at the same time that they usually do in their own climate; and therefore to preserve them, there is no more required, than to keep them from the injury of putting back by cold. It is reported also, that grain out of the hotter countries translated into the colder, will be more forward than the ordinary grain of the cold country. It is likely that this will prove better in grains than in trees, for that grains are but annual, and so the virtue of the seed is not worn out; whereas in a tree, it is embedded by the ground to which it is removed.

576. Many plants which grow in the hotter countries, being set in the colder, will nevertheless, even in those cold countries, being sown of seeds late in the spring, come up and abide most part of the summer; as we find it in orange and lemon seeds, &c. the seeds whereof sown in the end of April will bring forth excellent seedlings, mingled with other herbs. And I doubt not, but the seeds of clove trees, and pepper seeds, &c. if they could come hither green enough to be sown, would do the like.

Experiments in comfort touching the seasons in which plants come forth.

577. There be some flowers, blossoms, grains, and fruits, which come more early, and others which come more late in the year. The flowers that come early with us are primroses, violets, anemonies, water-daffodils, crocus vernus, and some early tulips. And they are all cold plants; which therefore (as it should seem) have a quicker perception of the heat of the sun increasing than the hot herbs have; as a cold hand will sooner find a little warmth than an hot. And those that come next after, are wall flowers, cowslips, hyacinths, rosemary flowers, &c. and after them, pinks, roses, flower-dulces, &c. and the latest are gilly-flowers, holyoaks, larkspur, &c. The earliest blossoms are, the blossoms of peaches, almonds, carnations, &c. and they are of such trees as have much moisture, either watery or oily. And therefore crocus vernus also, being an herb, that hath an oily juice, putteth forth early; for those also find the sun sooner than the drier trees. The grains are, first rye and wheat; then oats and barley; then peas and beans. For though green peas and beans be eaten sooner, yet the dry ones that are used for horse meat, are ripe last; and it seemeth that the latter grain cometh first. The earliest fruits are strawberries, cherries, gooseberries, currans; and after them early apples, early pears, apricots, raisps; and after them, damascenes, and most kind of plumbs, peaches, &c. and the latest are apples, wardens, grapes, nuts, quinces, almonds, fles, briar-berries, hips, medlars, services, cornelians, &c.

578. It is to be noted, that (commonly) trees that ripen latest, blossom soonest; as peaches, cornelians, fles, almonds, &c. and it seemeth to be a work of providence that they blossom so soon; for otherwise they could not have the sun long enough to ripen.

579. There be fruits (but rarely) that come twice in a year; as some pears,
pears, strawberries, &c. And it seemeth they are such as abound with nourishment; whereby after one period, before the sun waxeth too weak, they can endure another. The violet also, amongst flowers, cometh twice a year, especially the double white; and that also is a plant full of moisture. Roses come twice, but it is not without cutting, as hath been formerly said.

580. In Medicin though the corn come not up till late spring, yet their harvest is as early as ours. The cause is, for that the strength of the ground is kept in with the snow; and we see with us, that if it be a long winter, it is commonly a more plentiful year: and after those kind of winters likewife, the flowers and corn, which are earlier and later, do come commonly at once, and at the same time; which troubled the husbandman many times; for you shall have red roses and damask roses come together; and likewise the harvest of wheat and barley. But this happeneth ever, for that the earlier stayeth for the later; and not that the later cometh sooner.

581. There be divers fruit-trees in the hot countries, which have blossoms, and young fruit, and ripe fruit, almost all the year succeeding one another. And it is said the orange hath the like with us, for a great part of summer; and so also hath the fig. And no doubt the natural motion of plants is to have so; but that either they want juice to spend; or they meet with the cold of the winter: and therefore this circle of ripening cannot be but in succulent plants, and hot countries.

582. Some herbs are but annual, and die, root and all, once a year; as borage, lettuce, cucumbers, musk-melons, basil, tobacco, mustard-feed, and all kinds of corn; some continue many years; as hyssop, germander, lavender, fennel, &c. The cause of the dying is double; the first is, the tenderneß and weakneß of the seed, which maketh the period in a small time; as it is in borage, lettuce, cucumbers, corn, &c. and therefore none of these are hot. The other cause is, for that some herbs can worse endure cold; as basil, tobacco, mustard-feed. And these have (all) much heat.

Experiments in comfort touching the lasting of herbs and trees.

583. The lasting of plants is most in those that are largest of body; as oak, elm, chestnut, the locust-tree, &c. and this holdeth in trees; but in herbs it is often contrary: for borage, colewort, ponnions, which are herbs of the largest size, are of small durance; whereas hyssop, winter-favoury, germander, thyme, fage, will last long. The cause is, for that these last according to the strength and quantity of their sap and juice; being well munited by their bark against the injuries of the air: but herbs draw a weak juice, and have a soft stalk; and therefore those amongst them which last longest, are herbs of strong smell, and with a sticky stalk.

584. Trees that bear mast, and nuts, are commonly more lasting than those that bear fruits; especially the moister fruits: as oaks, beeches, chestnuts, walnuts, almonds, pine trees, &c. last longer than apples, pears, plumbs, &c. The cause is the fattness and oiliness of the sap; which ever wasteth less than the more watery.

585. Trees that bring forth their leaves late in the year, and cast them likewise late, are more lasting than those that sprout their leaves early, or shed them betimes. The cause is, for that the late coming forth sheweth a moisture more fixed; and the other more loose, and more easily resolved. And the same cause is, that wild trees last longer than garden trees; and in the same kind, those whose fruit is acid, more than those whose fruit is sweet.

Vol. III. P 2 586. Nothing
§86. **Nothing** procureth the lasting of trees, bushes and herbs, so much as often cutting: for every cutting causeth a renovation of the juice of the plant; that it neither goeth so far, nor riseth so faintly, as when the plant is not cut: in so much as annual plants, if you cut them seasonably, and will spare the use of them, and suffer them to come up still young, will last more years than one, as hath been partly touched; such as is lettuce, purslane, cucumber, and the like. And for great trees, we see almost all overgrown trees in church-yards, or near ancient buildings, and the like, are pollards, or dottards, and not trees at their full height.

§87. **Some experiment** would be made, how by art to make plants more lasting than their ordinary period; as to make a stalk of wheat, &c. last a whole year. You must ever presuppose, that you handle it so as the winter killeth it not; for we speak only of prolonging the natural period. I conceive that the rule will hold, that whatsoever maketh the herb come later than at its time, will make it last longer time: it were good to try it in a stalk of wheat, &c. set in the shade, and encompassed with a case of wood, not touching the straw, to keep out open air.

As for the preservation of fruits and plants, as well upon the tree or stalk, as gathered, we shall handle it under the title of conservation of bodies.

**Experiments in comfort touching the several figures of plants.**

§88. The particular figures of plants we leave to their descriptions; but some few things in general we will observe. Trees and herbs, in the growing forth of their boughs and branches, are not figured, and keep no order. The cause is, for that the sap being restrained in the rind and bark, breaketh not forth at all; as in the bodies of trees, and stalks of herbs, till they begin to branch; and then when they make an eruption, they break forth casually, where they find best way in the bark or rind. It is true, that some trees are more scattered in their boughs; as sallow trees, warden trees, quince trees, medlar trees, lemon trees, &c. Some are more in the form of a pyramid, and come almost to todd; as the pear-tree, (which the criticks will have to borrow his name of **Pyramis**, and orange trees, fir trees, service trees, lime trees, &c. and some are more spread and broad; as beeches, hornbeam, &c. the rest are more indifferent. The cause of scattering the boughs, is the hasty breaking forth of the sap; and therefore those trees rise not in a body of any height, but branch near the ground. The cause of the pyramid is the keeping in of the sap, long before it branch; and the spending of it when it beginneth to branch by equal degrees. The spreading is caused by the carrying up of the sap plentifully, without expence; and then putting it forth speedily and at once.

§89. There be divers herbs, but no trees, that may be said to have some kind of order in the putting forth of their leaves: for they have joints or knuckles, as it were stops in their germination; as have gilly-flowers, pinks, fennel, corn, reeds, and canes. The cause whereof is, for that the sap ascendeth unequally, and doth (as it were) tire and stop by the way. And it seemeth they have some closefnes and hardness in their stalk, which hindreth the sap from going up, until it hath gathered into a knot, and so is more urged to put forth. And therefore they are most of them hollow when the stalk is dry; as fennel-stalk, stubble, and canes.

§90. **Flowers** have (all) exquisite figures; and the flower numbers are (chiefly) five, and four; as in primroses, briar roses, single mull roses, single pinks, and gilly-flowers, &c. which have five leaves: lilies, flowerdeluces, borage,
borage, buglofs, &c. which have four leaves. But some put forth leaves not numbered; but they are ever small ones; as marygolds, trefoils, &c. We see also, that the sockets and supporters of flowers are figured; as in the five brethren of the rose; sockets of gilly-flowers, &c. Leaves also are all figured; some round; some long; some square; and many jagged on the sides; which leaves of flowers seldom are. For I account the jagging of pinks and gilly-flowers, to be like the inequality of oak leaves, or vine leaves, or the like; but they seldom or never have any small purles.

Experiments in comfort touching some principal differences in plants.

591. Of plants, some few put forth their blossoms before their leaves; as almonds, peaches, cornelians, black thorn, &c. but most put forth some leaves before their blossoms; as apples, pears, plumbs, cherries, white thorn, &c. The cause is, for that those that put forth their blossoms first, have either an acute and sharp spirit; (and therefore commonly they all put forth early in the spring, and ripen very late; as most of the particulars before mentioned;) or else an oily juice, which is apter to put out flowers than leaves.

592. Of plants, some are green all winter; others cast their leaves. There are green all winter, holly, ivy, box, fir, yew, cypres, juniper, bays, rosemary, &c. The cause of the holding green, is the close and compact subsidence of their leaves, and the pedicles of them. And the cause of that again is either the tough and viscous juice of the plant; or the strength and heat thereof. Of the first fort is holly; which is of so viscous a juice, as they make birdlime of the bark of it. The stalk of ivy is tough, and not fragile, as we see in other small twigs dry. Fir yieldeth pitch. Box is a fait and heavy wood, as we see it in bowls. Yew is a strong and tough wood, as we see it in bows. Of the second fort is juniper, which is a wood odorate; and maketh a hot fire. Bays is likewise a hot and aromatical wood; and so is rosemary for a shrub. As for the leaves, their densitie appeareth, in that either they are smooth and shining, as in bays, holly, ivy, box, &c. or in that they are hard and spiry, as in the rest. And trial would be made of grafting of rosemary, and bays, and box, upon a holly-stock; because they are plants that come all winter. It were good to try it also with grafts of other trees, either fruit trees, or wild trees; to see whether they will not yield their fruit, or bear their leaves later and longer in the winter; because the sap of the holly putteth forth moss in the winter. It may be also a meridian tree, grafted upon a holly, will prove both an earlier and a greater tree.

593. There be some plants that bear no flower, and yet bear fruit: there be some that bear flowers and no fruit: there be some that bear neither flowers nor fruit. Most of the great timber trees, (as oaks, beeches, &c.) bear no apparent flowers; some few (likewise) of the fruit trees; as mulberry, walnut, &c. and some shrubs, (as juniper, holly, &c.) bear no flowers. Divers herbs also bear seeds, (which is as the fruit) and yet bear no flowers; as purpiane, &c. Thofe that bear flowers and no fruit are few; as the double cherry, the fallow, &c. But for the cherry, it is doubtful whether it be not by art or culture; for if it be by art, then trial would be made, whether apples, and other fruits blossoms, may not be doubled. There are some few that bear neither fruit nor flower; as the elm, the poplars, box, brakes, &c.

594. There be some plants that shot still upwards, and can support themselves;
themselves; as the greatest part of trees and plants: there be some other that creep along the ground; or wind about other trees or props, and cannot support themselves; as vines, ivy, briar, bryony, woodbines, hops, climatis, camomile, &c. The cause is (as hath been partly touched) for that all plants (naturally) move upwards; but if the sap put up too fast, it maketh a flender stalk, which will not support the weight: and therefore these latter first are all swift and hasty comers.

Experiments in comfort touching all manner of composts, and helps of ground.

595. The first and most ordinary help is feracorrection. The sheeps dung is one of the best; and next the dung of kine: and thirdly, that of horfes; which is held to be somewhat too hot unless it be mingled. That of pigeons for a garden, as a small quantity of ground, excelleth. The ordering of dung is, if the ground be arable, to spread it immediately before the ploughing and sowing; and so to plough it in: for if you spread it long before, the sun will draw out much of the fatness of the dung: if the ground be grazing ground, to spread it somewhat late towards winter; that the sun may have the less power to dry it up. As for special composts for gardens, (as a hot bed, &c.) we have handled them before.

596. The second kind of compost is, the spreading of divers kinds of earth; as marle, chalk, sea sand, earth upon earth, pond earth; and the mixtures of them. Marle is thought to be the best, as having most fatness; and not heating the ground too much. The next is sea sand, which (no doubt) obtaineth a special virtue by the salt: for salt is the first rudiment of life. Chalk over-heateth the ground a little; and therefore is best upon cold clay grounds, or moist grounds: but I heard a great husband say, that it was a common error, to think that chalk helpeth arable grounds, but helpeth not grazing grounds; whereas (indeed) it helpeth grass as well as corn: but that which breedeth the error is, because after the chalking of the ground, they wear it out with many crops without rest; and then (indeed) afterwards it will bear little grass, because the ground is tired out. It were good to try the laying of chalk upon arable grounds a little while before ploughing; and to plough it in as they do the dung; but then it must be friable first by rain or lying: as for earth, it compasseth it self; for I knew a great garden, that had a field (in a manner) poured upon it; and it did bear fruit excellently the first year of the planting: for the surface of the earth is ever the fruitfullest. And earth so prepared hath a double surface. But it is true, as I conceive, that such earth as hath salt-petre bred in it, if you can procure it without too much charge, doth excel. The way to hasten the breeding of salt-petre, is to forbid the sun, and the growth of vegetables. And therefore if you make a large hovel, thatched, over some quantity of ground; nay, if you do but plank the ground over, it will breed salt-petre. As for pond earth, or river earth, it is a very good compost; especially if the pond have been long uncleaned, and so the water be not too hungry: and I judge it will be yet better if there be some mixture of chalk.

597. The third help of ground is, by some other substances that have a virtue to make ground fertile, though they be not merely earth: wherein ashes excel; insomuch as the countries about Aetna and Vesuvius have a kind of amends made them, for the mischief the eruptions (many times) do, by the exceeding fruitfulness of the soil, caufed by the ashes scattered about. Soot also, though thin spread in a field or garden, is tried to be a very good compost. For salt, it is too costly; but it is tried, that mingled with feed-corn,
corn, and sown together, it doth good: and I am of opinion, that chalk in powder, mingled with feed corn, would do good; perhaps as much as chalking the ground all over. As for the steeping of the seeds in several mixtures with water to give them vigour; or watering grounds with compost water, we have spoken of them before.

598. The fourth help of ground, is the suffering of vegetables to die into the ground, and so to fatten it; as the stubble of corn, especially peas. Brakes cast upon the ground in the beginning of winter, will make it very fruitful. It were good (also) to try whether leaves of trees swept together, with some chalk and dung mixed, to give them more heart, would not make a good compost; for there is nothing lost, so much as leaves of trees; and as they lie scattered, and without mixture, they rather make the ground sour than otherwise.

599. The fifth help of ground, is heat and warmth: It hath been anciently practised to burn heath, and ling, and sedge, with the vantage of the wind, upon the ground. We see that warmth, of walls and enclosures, mendeth ground: we see also, that lying open to the south, mendeth ground: we see again, that the foldings of sheep help ground, as well by their warmth, as by their compost: and it may be doubted, whether the covering of the ground with brakes in the beginning of the winter (whereof we spake in the last experiment) helpeth it not, by reason of the warmth. Nay, some very good husbands do suspect, that the gathering up of flints in stony grounds, and laying them on heaps, (which is much used,) is no good husbandry, for that they would keep the ground warm.

600. The sixth help of ground is by watering, and irrigation; which is in two manners; the one by letting in and shutting out waters at seasonable times: for water, at some seasons, and with reasonable stay, doth good; but at some other seasons, and with too long stay, doth hurt: and this serveth only for meadows which are along some river. The other way is, to bring water from some hanging grounds where there are springs into the lower grounds, carrying it in some long furrows; and from those furrows, drawing it traverse to spread the water. And this maketh an excellent improvement, both for corn and grass. It is the richer, if those hanging grounds be fruitful, because it washeth off some of the fatness of the earth; but howsoever it prospeth much. Generally, where there are great overflows in fens, or the like, the drowning of them in the winter maketh the summer following more fruitful: the cause may be, for that it keepeth the ground warm and nouriseth it. But the fen-men hold, that the fens must be kept so, as the water may not stay too long in the spring till the weeds and sedge be grown up; for then the ground will be like a wood, which keepeth out the sun, and so continueth the wet; whereby it will never graze (to purpose) that year. Thus much for irrigation. But for avoidances, and drainings of water, where there is too much, and the helps of ground in that kind, we shall speak of them in another place.

NATU-
NATURAL HISTORY.

CENT. VII.

Experiment in conrort touching the affinities and differences between plants and inanimate bodies.

601. THE differences between animate and inanimate bodies, we shall handle fully under the title of life, and living spirits, and powers. We shall therefore make but a brief mention of them in this place. The main differences are two. All bodies have spirits, and pneumatical parts within them; but the main differences between animate and inanimate, are two: The first is, that the spirits of things animate are all continued within themselves, and are branched in veins, and secret canals, as blood is; and in living creatures, the spirits have not only branches, but certain cells or seats, where the principal spirits do reside, and whereunto the rest do resort: but the spirits in things inanimate are shut in, and cut off by the tangible parts, and are not pervious one to another, as air is in snow. The second main difference is, that the spirits of animate bodies are all in some degree (more or less) kindled and inflamed; and have a fine commixture of flame, and an aerial substance. But inanimate bodies have their spirits no whit inflamed, or kindled. And this difference consisteth not in the heat or coolness of spirits; for cloves and other spices, naptha and petroleum, have exceeding hot spirits, (hotter a great deal than oil, wax, or tallow, &c.) but not inflamed. And when any of those weak and temperate bodies come to be inflamed, then they gather a much greater heat than others have un-inflamed, besides their light and motion, &c.

602. The differences, which are secondary, and proceed from these two radical differences, are, first, plants are all figurate and determinate, which inanimate bodies are not; for look how far the spirit is able to spread and continue itself; so far goeth the shape or figure, and then is determined. Secondly, plants do nourish; inanimate bodies do not: they have an accretion, but no alimentation. Thirdly, plants have a period of life, which inanimate bodies have not. Fourthly, they have a succession and propagation of their kind, which is not in bodies inanimate.

603. The differences between plants, and metals or roffils, besides those four before-mention'd, (for metals I hold inanimate,) are these: first, metals are more durable than plants: secondly, they are more solid and hard: thirdly, they are wholly subterrany; whereas plants are part above earth, and part under the earth.

604. There
There be very few creatures that participate of the nature of plants and metals both; coral is one of the nearest of both kinds: another is vitriol, for that is aptest to sprout with moisture.

Another special affinity is between plants and mould, or putrefaction: for all putrefaction (if it difsolve not in arefaction) will in the end difuse into plants, or living creatures bred of putrefaction. I account moss, and mush-rooms, and agarick, and other of those kinds, to be but moulds of the ground, walls, and trees, and the like. As for flesh, and fish, and plants themselves, and a number of other things, after a mouldiness, or rottenness, or corrupting, they will fall to breed worms. These putrefactions, which have affinity with plants, have this difference from them; that they have no succession or propagation, though they nourish, and have a period of life, and have likewise some figure.

I left once by chance a citron cut in a close room for three summer months that I was absent, and at my return there were grown forth of the pith cut tufts of hairs an inch long, with little black heads, as if they would have been some herb.

Experiments in comfort touching the affinities and differences of plants and living creatures, and the confinens and particiles of them.

The affinities and differences between plants and living creatures are these that follow. They have both of them spirits continued, and branched, and also inflamed. But first in living creatures, the spirits have a cell or seat, which plants have not; as was also formerly said. And secondly, the spirits of living creatures hold more of flame than the spirits of plants do. And these two are the radical differences. For the secondary differences, they are as follow. First, plants are all fixed to the earth, whereas all living creatures are severed, and of themselves. Secondly, living creatures have local motion, plants have not. Thirdly, living creatures have their feed and seminal parts uppermost; living creatures have them lowermost: and therefore it was said, not elegantly alone, but philosophically; Homo est planta inversa; Man is like a plant turned upwards: for the root in plants is as the head in living creatures. Fifthly, living creatures have a more exact figure than plants. Sixthly, living creatures have more diversity of organs within their bodies, and (as it were) inward figures, than plants have. Seventhly, living creatures have fënèce, which plants have not. Eighthly, living creatures have voluntary motion, which plants have not.

For the difference of sexes in plants, they are oftentimes by name distinguished; as male-phony, female-phony; male-rosemary, female-rosemary; he-holly, she-holly, &c. but generation by copulation (certainly) extendeth not to plants. The nearest approach of it is between the he-palm and the she-palm, which (as they report) if they grow near, incline the one to the other; insofar as (that which is more strange) they doubt not to report, that to keep the trees upright from bending, they dye ropes or lines from the one to the other, that the contact might be enjoyed by the contact of a middle body. But this may be signified, or at least amplified. Nevertheless, I am apt enough to think, that this fame binarium of a stronger and a weaker, like unto masculine and feminine, doth hold in all living bodies. It is confounded sometimes; as in some creatures of putrefaction, wherein no
marks of distinction appear: and it is doubled sometimes, as in hermaphro-
dites: but generally there is a degree of strength in most species.

609. The participles or confines between plants and living creatures, 
are such chiefly as are fixed, and have no local motion of remove, though 
they have a motion in their parts; such as are oysters, cockles, and such like.
There is a fabulous narration, that in the northern countries there should 
be an herb that groweth in the likeness of a lamb, and feedeth upon the 
gras, in such sort as it will bare the gras round about. But I suppose that 
the figure maketh the fable; for so we see, there be bee-flowers, &c. And 
as for the gras, it seemeth the plant having a great stalk and top doth prey 
upon the gras a good way about, by drawing the juice of the earth from it.

Experiments promiscuous touching plants.

610. The Indian fig boweth its roots down so low in one year, as of it 
self it taketh root again; and so multiplieth from root to root, making of one 
tree a kind of wood. The cause is the plenty of the sap, and the softnes 
of the stalk, which maketh the bough, being over-loaden, and not stiffly 
upheld, weigh down. It hath leaves as broad as a little target, but the 
fruit no bigger than beans. The cause is, for that the continual fhade increa-
feth the leaves, and abateth the fruit, which nevertheless is of a pleasant tafe. 
And that (no doubt) is causeth by the suppleness and gentleness of the juice of 
that plant, being that which maketh the boughs also so flexible.

611. It is reported by one of the ancients, that there is a certain Indian 
tree, having few but very great leaves, three cubits long and two broad; 
and that the fruit being of good tafe, groweth out of the bark. It may 
be, there be plants that pour out the sap so fast, as they have no leisure 
either to divide into many leaves, or to put forth stalks to the fruit. With 
us trees (generally) have small leaves in comparifon. The fig hath the great-
est; and next it the vine, mulberry, and fycamore; and the leafe are those 
of the willow, birch, and thorn. But there be found herbs with far greater 
leaves than any tree; as the burr, gourd, cucumber, and colewort. The 
cause is, (like to that of the Indian fig) the hasty and plentiful putting forth 
of the sap.

612. There be three things in use for sweetnes; fugar, honey, manna. 
For fugar, to the ancients it was scarce known, and little used. It is found 
in canes: Quaere, whether to the firft knuckle, or further up? And whether 
the very bark of the cane it felf do yield fugar, or no? For honey, the bee 
maketh it, or gathereth it; but I have heard from one that was induftrious 
in husbandry, that the labour of the bee is about the wax; and that he hath 
known in the beginning of May, honey-combs empty of honey; and within 
a fortnight, when the fweet dews fall, filled like a cellar. It is reported by 
some of the ancients, that there is a tree called Oeichus in the valleys of 
Hyrcania, that diftilleth honey in the mornings. It is not unlike that the sap 
and tears of fome trees may be sweet. It may be alfo, that fome sweet juices, 
fit for many ues, may be concocted out of fruits, to the thickness of honey, 
or perhaps of fugar; the likeliest are raisins of the sun, figs, and currans: the 
means may be enquired.

613. The ancients report of a tree by the Persian sea, upon the shore lands, 
which is nourished with the falt water; and when the tide ebbeth, you fhall 
see the roots as it were bare without bark, (being as it seemeth corroded by 
the falt) and grasping the lands like a crab; which nevertheless beareth a 
fruit.
fruit. It were good to try some hard trees, as a service tree, or fir tree, by setting them within the sands.

614. There be of plants which they use for garments, these that follow: hemp, flax, cotton, nettles, (whereof they make nettle cloth) sericum; which is a growing silk; they make also cables of the bark of lime trees. It is the stalk that maketh the filaceous matter commonly; and sometimes the down that groweth above.

615. They have in some countries a plant of a rosy colour, which flatteth in the night, openeth in the morning, and openeth wide at noon; which the inhabitants of those countries say is a plant that sleepeth. There be sleepers enough then; for almost all flowers do the like.

616. Some plants there are, but rare, that have a mossy or downy root; and likewife that have a number of threads, like beards; as mandrakes; whereof witches and impostors make an ugly image, giving it the form of a face at the top of the root, and leave those strings to make a broad beard down to the foot. Also there is a kind of nard in Crete, (being a kind of phu) that hath a root hairy, like a rough-footed dove's foot. So as you may see, there are of roots bulbous roots, fibrous roots, and hirsute roots. And, I take it, in the bulbous, the sap hasteth most to the air and sun; in the fibrous, the sap delighteth more in the earth, and therefore putteth downward; and the hirsute is a middle between both; that besides the putting forth upwards and downwards, putteth forth in round.

617. There are some tears of trees, which are bent from the beards of goats: for when the goats bite and crop them, especially in the mornings, the dew being on, the tear cometh forth, and hangeth upon their beards: of this sort is some kind of ladanum.

618. The irrigation of the plane tree by wine, is reported by the ancients to make it fruitful. It would be tried likewise with roots; for upon seeds it worketh no great effects.

619. The way to carry foreign roots a long way, is to vessel them close in earthen vessels. But if the vessels be not very great, you must make some holes in the bottom, to give some refreshment to the roots; which otherwise (as it seemeth) will decay and suffocate.

620. The ancient cinnamon was, of all other plants, while it grew, the dryest; and those things which are known to comfort other plants, did make that more fertile; for in showers it prospereth worst: it grew also amongst bushes of other kinds, where commonly plants do not thrive; neither did it love the sun. There might be one cause of all those effects; namely, the sparing nourishment which that plant required. 

621. It is reported by one of the ancients, that cassia, when it is gathered, is put into the skins of beasts newly flayed; and that the skins corrupting and breeding worms, the worms do devour the pith and marrow of it, and so make it hollow; but meddle not with the bark, because to them it is bitter.

622. There were in ancient time vines of far greater bodies than we know any; for there have been cups made of them, and an image of Jupiter. But it is like they were wild vines; for the vines that they use for wine, are so often cut, and so much digged and dreseed, that their sap spendeth into the grapes, and so the stalk cannot increase much in bulk. The wood of vines is very durable, without rotting. And that which is strange, though no tree hath the twigs, while they are green, so brittle, yet the wood dried is extrem.
trem tough; and was used by the captains of armies amongst the Romans for their cudgels.

623. It is reported, that in some places vines are suffered to grow like herbs, spreading upon the ground; and that the grapes of those vines are very great. It were good to make trial, whether plants that use to be born up by props, will not put forth greater leaves and greater fruits if they be laid along the ground; as hops, ivy, woodbine, &c.

624. Quinces, or apples, &c. if you will keep them long, drown them in honey; but because honey (perhaps) will give them a taste over-luscious, it were good to try in oranges, lemons, and pomegranates; for the powder of sugar, and syrup of wine, will serve for times more than once.

625. The conservation of fruit would be also tried in vessels filled with fine sand, or with powder of chalk; or in meal and flour; or in dust of oak wood; or in mill.

626. Such fruits as you appoint for long keeping, you must gather before they be full ripe; and in a fair and dry day towards noon; and when the wind bloweth not south; and when the moon is under the earth; and in decrease.

627. Take grapes, and hang them in an empty vessel well stopped; and set the vessel not in a cellar, but in some dry place; and it is said they will last long. But it is reported by some, they will keep better in a vessel half full of wine, so that the grapes touch not the wine.

628. It is reported, that the preserving of the stalk helpeth to preserve the grape; especially if the stalk be put into the pith of elder, the elder not touching the fruit.

629. It is reported by some of the ancients, that fruit put in bottles, and the bottles let down into wells under water, will keep long.

630. Of herbs and plants, some are good to eat raw; as lettuce, endive, purslane, tarragon, cress, cucumbers, musk-melons, radish, &c. others only after they are boiled, or have passed the fire; as parley, clary, fage, parsnips, turnips, asparagus, artichokes, (though they also being young are eaten raw:) but a number of herbs are not esculent at all; as wormwood, grass, green corn, centaury, hyssop, lavender, balm, &c. The causes are, for that the herbs that are not esculent, do want the two tastes in which nourishment refeth; which are fat and sweet; and have (contrariwise) bitter and over-spicy tastes, or a juice so crude, as cannot be ripened to the degree of nourishment. Herbs and plants that are esculent raw, have fatness, or sweetness, (as all esculent fruits;) such are onions, lettuce, &c. But then it must be such a fatness (for as for sweet things, they are in effect always esculent) as is not over-grofs, and loading of the stomach: for parsnips and leeks have fatness; but it is too grofs and heavy without boiling. It must be also in a substance somewhat tender; for we see wheat, barley, artichokes, are no good nourishment till they have passed the fire; but the fire doth ripen, and maketh them soft and tender, and so they become esculent. As for radish and tarragon, and the like, they are for condiments, and not for nourishment. And even some of those herbs which are not esculent, are notwithstanding pungent; as hops, broom, &c. Square, what herbs are good for drink besides the two aforesaid; for that it may (perhaps) ease the charge of brewing, if they make beer to require less malt, or make it last longer.

631. Parts fit for the nourishment of man in plants are, seeds, roots, and fruits;
fruits; but chiefly feeds and roots. For leaves, they give no nourishment at all, or very little: no more do flowers, or blossoms, or stalks. The reason is, for that roots, and feeds, and fruits, (in as much as all plants consist of an oily and watery sub stance commixed) have more of the oily substance; and leaves, flowers, &c. of the watery. And secondly, they are more concocted; for the root which continueth ever in the earth, is still concocted by the earth; and fruits and grains, (we see) are half a year or more in concocting; whereas leaves are out and perfect in a month.

632. Plants (for the most part) are more strong both in taste and smell in the feed, than in the leaf and root. The cause is, for that in plants that are not of a fierce and eager spirit, the virtue is increased by concoction and maturation, which is ever moist in the seed; but in plants that are of a fierce and eager spirit, they are stronger whilst the spirit is inclosed in the root; and the spirits do but weaken and dissipate when they come to the air and sun; as we see it in onions, garlic, dragon, &c. Nay, there be plants that have their roots very hot and aromatic, and their seeds rather insipid; as ginger. The cause is (as was touched before) for that the heat of those plants is very dissipated; which under the earth is contained and held in; but when it cometh to the air it exhal eth.

633. The juices of fruits are either watery or oily. I reckon among the watery, all the fruits out of which drink is expressed; as the grape, the apple, the pear, the cherry, the pomegranate, &c. And there are some others which, though they be not in use for drink, yet they appear to be of the same nature; as plums, sarsaparilla, mulberries, rasps, oranges, lemons, &c. and for those juices that are so fishy, as they cannot make drink by expression; yet (perhaps) they may make drink by mixture of water;

Poculaque admittis imitantur viteti .forhis.

And it may be hips and brier-berries would do the like. Those that have oily juices, are, olives, almonds, nuts of all sorts, pine-apples, &c. and their juices are all inflammable. And you must observe also, that some of the watery juices, after they have gathered spirit, will burn and inflame; as wine. There is a third kind of fruit that is sweet, without either sharpness or oiliness; such as is the fig and the date.

634. It hath been noted, that most trees, and specially those that bear mast, are fruitful but once in two years. The cause (no doubt) is, the expense of sap; for many orchard trees, well cultured, will bear divers years together.

635. There is no tree, which besides the natural fruit, doth bear so many bastard fruits as the oak doth: for besides the acorns, it beareth galls, oak apples, and certain oak nuts, which are inflammable; and certain oak berries, sticking close to the body of the tree without stalk. It beareth also mistletoe, though rarely. The cause of all these may be, the closefness and solidness of the wood, and pith of the oak; which maketh several juices find several eruptions. And therefore if you will devise to make any super-plants, you must ever give the sap plentiful rising and hard issue.

636. There are two excrences which grow upon trees; both of them in the nature of mushroo ms: the one the Romans called boletus; which growth upon the roots of oaks; and was one of the dainties of their table; the other is medicinal, that is called agarick, (whereof we have spoken before) which growth upon the tops of oaks; though it be affirmed by some, that it growth also at the roots. I do conceive, that many excrences of trees
trees grow chiefly where the tree is dead or faded; for that the natural sap of the tree corrupteth into some preternatural substance.

637. The greater part of trees bear most and best on the lower boughs; as oaks, figs, walnuts, pears, &c. but some bear best on the top boughs; as crabs, &c. Those that bear best below, are such as shade doth more good to than hurt. For generally all fruits bear best lowest; because the sap tireth not, having but a short way: and therefore in fruits spread upon walls, the lowest are the greatest, as was formerly said: so it is the shade that hindereth the lower boughs; except it be in such trees as delight in shade; or at least bear it well. And therefore they are either strong trees, as the oak; or else they have large leaves, as the walnut and fig; or else they grow in pyramis, as the pear. But if they require very much sun, they bear best on the top; as it is in crabs, apples, plumbs, &c.

638. There be trees that bear best when they begin to be old; as almonds, pears, vines, and all trees that give mast. The cause is, for that all trees that bear mast, have an oily fruit; and young trees have a more watery juice, and less concocted: and of the same kind also is the almond. The pear likewise, though it be not oily, yet it requireth much sap, and well concocted; for we see it is a heavy fruit and solid; much more than apples, plumbs, &c. As for the vine, it is noted, that it beareth more grapes when it is young; but grapes that make better wine when it is old; for that the juice is better concocted: and we see, that wine is inflammable; so as it hath a kind of oilines. But the mast part of trees, amongst which are apples, plumbs, &c. bear best when they are young.

639. There be plants that have a milk in them when they are cut; as figs, old lettuce, sow thistles, spurge, &c. The cause may be an inception of putrefaction: for those milks have all ari acrimony; though one would think they should be lenitive. For if you write upon paper with the milk of the fig, the letters will not be seen, until you hold the paper before the fire, and then they wax brown; which sheweth that it is a sharp or fretting juice: lettuce is thought poisonous, when it is old as to have milk; spurge is a kind of poison in itself; and as for sow thistles, though coneyes eat them, yet sheep and cattle will not touch them: and besides, the milk of them rubbed upon warts, in short time weareth them away; which sheweth the milk of them to be corrosive. We see also, that wheat and other corn, if you take them forth of the ground before they sprout, are full of milk: and the beginning of germination is ever a kind of putrefaction of the seed. Euphorbium also hath a milk, though not very white, which is of a great acrimony: and saladine hath a yellow milk, which hath likewise much acrimony; for it cleanseth the eyes. It is good also for cataracts.

640. Mushrooms are reported to grow, as well upon the bodies of trees, as upon their roots, or upon the earth; and especially upon the oak. The cause is, for that strong trees are towards such excrescences in the nature of earth; and therefore put forth moss, mushrooms, and the like.

641. There is hardly found a plant that yieldeth a red juice in the blade or ear; except it be the tree that beareth fanges draconis; which groweth (chiefly) in the island Socotra: the herb amaranthus (indeed) is red all over; and brasil is red in the wood: and so is red sanders. The tree of the fanges draconis groweth in the form of a sugar loaf. It is like the sap of that plant, concocteth in the body of the tree. For we see that grapes and pomegranates are red in the juice, but are green in the tear: and this maketh the tree
of sanguis draconis lesser towards the top; because the juice hasteneth not up; and besides, it is very astringent; and therefore of slow motion.

642. It is reported, that sweet moss, besides that upon the apple trees, groweth likewise (sometimes) upon poplars; and yet (generally) the poplar is a smooth tree of bark, and hath little moss. The moss of the larch tree burneth also sweet, and sparkleth in the burning. Lycore of the mosses of odorate trees; as cedar, cypress, is.

643. The death that is most without pain, hath been noted to be upon the taking of the potion of hemlock; which in humanity was the form of execution of capital offenders in Athens. The poison of the aspho, that Cleopatra used, hath some affinity with it. The cause is, for that the torments of death are chiefly raised by the strife of the spirits; and these vapours quench the spirits by degrees; like to the death of an extreme old man. I conceive it is less painful than opium, because opium hath parts of heat mixed.

644. There be fruits that are sweet before they be ripe: as myrobalanes; so fencle-feeds are sweet before they ripen, and after grow spicy. And some never ripen to be sweet; as tamarinds, berberries, crabs, floes, &c. The cause is, for that the former kind have much and subtle heat; which causeth early sweetnefs; the latter have a can sweeten. But as for the myrobalane, it hath is lees

645. There be few herbs that have a salt taste; and contrariwise all blood of living creatures hath a saltnefs. The cause may be, for that salt, though it be the rudiment of life, yet in plants the original taste remaineth not; for you shall have them bitter, four, sweet, biting, but seldom salt: but in living creatures, all those high tastes may happen to be (sometimes) in the humours, but are seldom in the fleth or substance; because it is of a more oily nature; which is not very susceptible of those tastes; and the saltnefs is fell of blood, is but a light and secret saltnefs: and even among plants, some do participate of saltnefs, as alga marina, samphire, scurvy-grats, &c. And they report, there is in some of the Indian seas a swimming plant, which they call saltgazus, spreading over the sea in such fort, as one would think it were a meadow. It is certain, that out of the ashes of all plants they extract a salt which they use in medicines.

646. It is reported by one of the ancients, that there is an herb growing in the water, called linoculis, which is full of prickles: this herb putteth forth another small herb out of the leaf; which is imputed to some moisture that is gathered between the prickles, which putrefied by the sun germinateth. But I remember also I have seen, for a great rarity, one rofe grow out of another like honey-fuckles, that they call top and top-gallants.

647. Barley (as appeareth in the malting) being steeped in water three days, and afterwards the water drained from it, and the barley turned upon a dry floor, will sprout half an inch long at leaf: and if it be let alone, and not turned, much more; until the heart be out. Wheat will do the same. Try it also with peas and beans. This experiment is not like that of the orpine, and sempervive; for there it is of the old store, for no water is added; but here it is nourished from the water. The experiment would be farther driven: for it appeareth already, by that which hath been said, that earth is not necessary to the first sprouting of plants; and we see that rofe buds set in water will blow; therefore try whether the sprouts of such grains may not be raised to a farther degree; as to an herb, or flower, with water only; or some small commixture of earth: for if they will, it should seem by the experiments
experiments before, both of the malt and of the roses, that they will come faster on in water than in earth: for the nourishment is easiplier drawn out of water, than out of earth. It may give some light also, that drink infused with flesh, as that with the capon, &c. will nourish faster and easiplier than meat and drink together. Try the same experiment with roots as well as with grains: as for example, take a turnip, and steep it a while, and then dry it, and see whether it will sprout.

648. MALT in the drenching will swell; and that in such a manner, as after the putting forth in sprouts, and the drying upon the kiln, there will be gained at least a bushel in eight, and yet the sprouts are rubbed off; and there will be a bushel of dust besides the malt: which I suppose to be, not only by the loose and open laying of the parts, but by some addition of substance drawn from the water in which it was steeped.

649. MALT gathereth a sweetnefs to the taste, which appeareth yet more in the wort. The dulcoration of things is worthy to be tried to the full; for that dulcoration importeth a degree to nourishment: and the making of things inalimental, to become alimental, may be an experiment of great profit for making new victual.

650. MOST seeds in the growing, leave their husk or rind about the root; but the onion will carry it up, that it will be like a cap upon the top of the young onion. The cause may be, for that the skin or husk is not easy to break; as we see by the pilling of onions, what a holding substance the skin is.

651. PLANTS, that have curled leaves, do all abound with moisture; which cometh so fast on, as they cannot spread themselves plain, but must needs gather together. The weakest kind of curling is roughness; as in clary and burr. The second is curling on the sides; as in lettuce, and young cabbage: and the third is folding into an head; as in cabbage full grown, and cabbage lettuce.

652. It is reported, that fir and pine, especially if they be old and putrefied, though they shine not as some rotten woods do, yet in the sudden breaking they will sparkle like hard sugar.

653. THE roots of trees do (some of them) put downwards deep into the ground; as the oak, pine, fir, &c. Some spread more towards the surface of the earth; as the ash, cypres tree, olive, &c. The cause of this latter may be, for that such trees as love the sun, do not willingly descend far into the earth; and therefore they are (commonly) trees that shoot up much; for in their body, their desire of approach to the sun maketh them spread the less. And the same reason under ground, to avoid recefs from the sun, maketh them spread the more. And we see it cometh to pats in some trees which have been planted too deep in the ground, that for love of approach to the sun, they forsake their first root, and put out another more towards the top of the earth. And we see also, that the olive is full of oily juice; and ash maketh the best fire; and cypres is an hot tree. As for the oak, which is of the former sort, it loveth the earth; and therefore groweth slowly. And for the pine and fir likewise, they have so much heat in themselves, as they need lefs the heat of the sun. There be herbs also that have the same difference; as the herb they call morfus diaboli; which putteth the root down so low, as you cannot pull it up without breaking; which gave occasion to the same and fable; for that it was said, it was so whole some a root, that the devil, when it was gathered, bit it for envy: and some of the ancients do report, that there was a goodly fir, which they desired to remove whole, that had a root under ground eight cubits deep; and so the root came up broken.

654. It
654. It hath been observed, that a branch of a tree, being unbarked some space at the bottom, and so set into the ground, hath grown; even of such trees, as if the branch were set with the bark on, they would not grow; yet contrariwise we see, that a tree pared round in the body above ground, will die. The cause may be, for that the unbarkt part draweth the nourishment best, but the bark continueth it only.

655. Grapes will continue fresh and moist all winter long, if you hang them cluster by cluster in the roof of a warm room; especially if you gather the cluster, you take off with the cluster some of the stock.

656. The reed or cane is a watry plant, and groweth not but in the water; it hath these properties; that it is hollow; that it is knuckled both stalk and root; that being dry, it is more hard and fragile than other wood, that it putteth forth no boughs, though many stalks out of one root. It differeth much in greatness; the smalllest being fit for thatching of houses; and stopping the chinks of ships; better than glew or pitch. The second bigness is used for angle-rods and flaves; and in China for beating of offenders upon the thighs. The differing kinds of them are; the common reed; the cajsa fistula; and the sugar reed. Of all plants it boweth the easiest, and riseth again. It seemeth, that amongst plants which are nourished with mixture of earth and water, it draweth mois: nourishment from water; which maketh it the smoothest of all others in bark, and the hollowest in body.

657. The sap of trees when they are let blood, is of differing natures. Some more watery and clear; as that of vines, of beeches, of pears: some thick, as apples: some gummy, as cherries: some frothy; as elms: some: some milky, as figs. In mulberries, the sap seemeth to be (almost) towards the bark only; for if you cut the tree a little into the bark with a stone; it will come forth; if you pierce it deeper with a tool, it will be dry. The trees which have the moistef: juices in their fruit, have commonly the moistest sap in their body; for the vines and pears are very moist; apples somewhat more spongy: the milk of the fig hath the quality of the rennet, to gather cheese: and so have certain four herbs wherewith they make cheese in Lent.

658. The timber and wood are in some trees more clean, in some more knotty; and it is a good trial, to try it by speaking at one end, and laying the ear at the other: for if it be knotty, the voice will not pass well. Some have the veins more varied and chambletted; as oak, whereof wainscot is made; maple, whereof trenchers are made: some more easily breed worms and spiders; some more hardly, as it is said of Irish trees: besides there be a number of differences that concern their use; as oak, cedar, and chestnut, are the best builders: some are best for plough timber, as ash; some for oars, that are sometimes wet and sometimes dry, as elm; some for planchers, as deal; some for tables, cupboards, and desks, as walnuts; some for ship timber, as oaks that grow in moist grounds; for that maketh the timber tough, and not apt to rift with ordnance; wherein English and Irish timber are thought to excel: some for masts of ships, as fir and pine, because of their length, straightness, and lightness: some for pale, as oak; some for fuel, as ash; and so of the rest.

659. The coming of trees and plants in certain regions, and not in others, is sometimes casual: for many have been translated, and have prospered well; as damask roses, that have not been known in England above an hundred years, and now are so common. But the liking of plants in certain soils more than in others, is merely natural; as the fir and pine love the mountains;
mountains; the poplar, willow, fallow, and alder, love rivers and moist places; the asp loveth coppices, but is best in standards alone; juniper loveth chalk; and so do moist fruit trees; samphire growth but upon rocks; reeds and osiers grow where they are washed with water; the vine loveth sides of hills, turning upon the south-eaft sun, &c.

660. The putting forth of certain herbs, discovereth of what nature the ground where they put forth is; as wild thyme showeth good feeding ground for cattle; betony and strawberries shew grounds fit for wood; camomile sheweth mellow grounds fit for wheat. Mustard-feed, growing after the plough, sheweth a good strong ground also for wheat: burnet sheweth good meadow, and the like.

661. There are found in divers countries some other plants that grow out of trees, and plants, besides mistletoe: as in Syria, there is an herb called _cassitas_, that growth out of tall trees, and windeth it self about the same tree where it groweth, and sometimes about thorns. There is a kind of polypode that growth out of trees, though it windeth not. So likewise an herb called _faunos_, upon the wild olive. And an herb called _hippophaespon_ upon the fullers thorn; which, they say, is good for the falling-sickness.

662. It hath been observed by some of the ancients, that howsoever cold and easterly winds are thought to be great enemies to fruit, yet nevertheless south winds are also found to do hurt, especially in the blossoming time; and the more, if showers follow. It seemeth, they call forth the moisture too fast. The west winds are the best. It hath been observed also, that green and open winters do hurt trees; insomuch as if two or three such winters come together, almond trees, and some other trees, will die. The cause is the same with the former, because the luft of the earth over-spendeth it self; howsoever some other of the ancients have commended warm winters.

663. Snows lying long causeth a fruitful year; for first, they keep in the strength of the earth; secondly, they water the earth better than rain: for in snow, the earth doth (as it were) suck the water, as out of the teat: thirdly, the moisture of snow is the finest moisture, for it is the froth of the cloudy waters.

664. Showers, if they come a little before the ripening of fruits, do good to all succulent and moist fruits; as vines, olives, pomegranates; yet it is rather for plenty than for goodnes; for the best wines are in the driest vintages: small showers are likewise good for corn, so as parching heats come not upon them. Generally night showers are better than day showers, for that the sun followeth not so fast upon them; and we see even in watering by the hand, it is best in summer time to water in the evening.

665. The differences of earths, and the trial of them, are worthy to be diligently inquired. The earth, that with showers doth castilest often, is commended; and yet some earth of that kind will be very dry and hard before the showers. The earth that casteth up from the plough a great clod, is not so good as that which casteth up a smaller clod. The earth that putteth forth moss easily, and may be called mouldy, is not good. The earth that smelleth well upon the digging, or ploughing, is commended; as containing the juice of vegetables almost already prepared. It is thought by some, that the ends of low rain-bows fall more upon one kind of earth than upon another; as it may well be; for that the earth is most rosid: and therefore it is commended for a sign of good earth. The poornes of the herbs (it is plain) shewed the poornes of the earth; and especially if they be in colour more dark: but if the herbs shew withered, or blasted at the top,
top, it sheweth the earth to be very cold; and so doth the moisness of trees. The earth, whereof the grass is soon parched with the sun, and toasted, is commonly forced earth, and barren in its own nature. The tender, chaffom, and mellow earth, is the best, being mere mould, between the two extrems of clay and sand, especially if it be not loamy and binding.

The earth, that after rain will scarce be ploughed, is commonly fruitful: for it is cleaving, and full of juice.

666. It is strange, which is observed by some of the ancients, that dust helpeth the fruitfulness of trees, and of vines by name; insomuch as they cast dust upon them of purpose. It should seem, that that powdering, when a shower cometh, maketh a kind of foiling to the tree, being earth and water finely laid on. And they note, that countries where the fields and ways are dusty bear the best vines.

667. It is commended by the ancients for an excellent help to trees, to lay the stalks and leaves of lupins about the roots, or to plough them into the ground where you will sow corn. The burning also of the cuttings of vines, and casting them upon land, doth much good. And it was generally received of old, that dุงing of grounds when the west wind bloweth, and in the decrease of the moon, doth greatly help; the earth (as it seemeth) being then more thirsty and open to receive the dung.

668. The grafting of vines upon vines (as I take it) is not now in use; the ancients had it, and that three ways: the first was incision, which is the ordinary manner of grafting: the second was terebration through the middle of the stock, and putting in the cions there: and the third was paring of two vines that grow together to the marrow, and binding them close.

669. The diseases and ill accidents of corn, are worthy to be enquired; and would be more worthy to be enquired, if it were in mens power to help them; whereas many of them are not to be remedied. The mildew is one of the greatest, which (out of question) cometh by closeness of air; and therefore in hills, or large champain grounds, it seldom cometh; such as is with us York's woald. This cannot be remedied, otherwise than that in countries of small enclosure, the grounds be turned into larger fields: which I have known to do good in some farms. Another disease is the putting forth of wild oats, whereinto corn oftentimes (especially barley) doth degenerate. It happeneth chiefly from the weakness of the grain that is sown; for if it be either too old, or mouldy, it will bring forth wild oats. Another disease is the fatiety of the ground; for if you sow one ground still with the same corn, (I mean not the same corn that grew upon the same ground) but the same kind of grain, (as wheat, barley, &c.) it will prosper but poorly: therefore, besides the resting of the ground, you must vary the seed. Another ill accident is from the winds, which hurt at two times; at the flowering, by baking off the flowers; and at the full ripening, by baking out the corn. Another ill accident is drought, at the spindling of the corn, which with us is rare, but in hotter countries common: insomuch as the word calamitas was first derived from calamus, when the corn could not get out of the stalk. Another ill accident is over-wet at sowing time, which with us breedeth much dearth, insomuch as the corn never cometh up; and (many times) they are forced to re-sow summer corn, where they sowed winter corn. Another ill accident is bitter frosts continued without snow, especially in the beginning of the winter, after the seed is new sown. Another disease is worms; which sometimes breed in the root, and happen upon hot suns and showers, immediately after the sowing; and
another worm breedeth in the ear it self; especially when hot funs break often out of clouds. Another disease is weeds; and they are such as either choke and overshadow the corn, and bear it down; or starve the corn, and deprive it of nourishment. Another disease is over-rankness of the corn; which they use to remedy, by mowing it after it is come up; or putting sheep into it. Another ill accident, is laying of corn with great rains, near or in harvest. Another ill accident is, if the seed happen to have touched oil, or any thing that is fat; for those substances have an antipathy with nourishment of water.

670. The remedies of the diseases of corn have been observed as followeth. The steeping of the grain before sowing, a little time in wine, is thought a preservative: the mingling of feed corn with ashes, is thought to be good: the sowing at the wane of the moon, is thought to make the corn found: it hath not been practised, but it is thought to be of use, to make some miscellaneous in corn; as if you sow a few beans with wheat, your wheat will be the better. It hath been observed, that the sowing of corn with houfleck doth good. Though grain, that toucheth oil or fat, receiveth hurt, yet the steeping of it in the dregs of oil, when it beginneth to putrefy, (which they call amurca) is thought to assure it against worms. It is reported also, that if corn be mowed, it will make the grain longer, but emptier, and having more of the husk.

671. It hath been noted, that feed of a year old is the best; and of two or three years is worse; and that which is more old is quite barren; though (no doubt) some seed and grains last better than others. The corn which in the vanning lieth lowest is the best: and the corn, which broken or bitten retaineth a little yellowness, is better than that which is very white.

672. It hath been observed, that of all roots of herbs, the root of s兒el goeth the farthest into the earth; insomuch as it hath been known to go three cubits deep; and that it is the root that continueth fit (longest) to be retag2ir; of any root that groweth. It is a cold and acid herb, that (as it seemeth) loveth the earth, and is not much drawn by the sun.

673. It hath been observed, that some herbs like beest being watered with salt water; as radish, beet, rue, penroyal; this trial would be extended to some other herbs; especially such as are strong, as tarragon, mustard-seed, rocket, and the like.

674. It is strange that is generally received, how some poisonous beasts affect odorate and wholesome herbs; as that the snake loveth fennel; that the toad will be much under sage; that frogs will be in cinquefoil. It may be it is rather the shade, or other coverture, that they take liking in, than the virtue of the herb.

675. It were a matter of great profit, (fave that I doubt it is too conjectural to venture upon) if one could discern what corn, herbs, or fruits, are like to be in plenty or scarcity) by some signs and prognosticks in the beginning of the year: for as for those that are like to be in plenty, they may be bargained for upon the ground; as the old relation was of Thules; who to shew how easy it was for a philosopher to be rich, when he forefaw a great plenty of olives, made a monopoly of them. And for scarcity, men may make profit in keeping better the old store. Long continuance of snow is believed to make a fruitful year of corn: an early winter, or a very late winter, a barren year of corn: an open and serene winter, an ill fruit of year: these we have partly touched before: but other prognosticks of like nature are diligently to be enquired.

676. There
There seem to be in some plants, singularities, wherein they differ from all other; the olive hath the oily part only on the outside; whereas all other fruits have it in the nut or kernel. The fir hath (in effect) no stone, nut, nor kernel; except you will count the little grains kernels. The pomegranate and pine-apple have only amongst fruits grains distinct in several cells. No herbs have curled leaves, but cabbage and cabbage lettuce. None have double leaves, one belonging to the stalk, another to the fruit or seed, but the artichoke. No flower hath that kind of spread that the woodbine hath. This may be a large field of contemplation; for it sheweth that in the frame of nature, there is, in the producing of some species, a composition of matter, which happeneth oft, and may be much diversified: in others, such as happeneth rarely, and amongst little variety: for so it is likewise in beasts: dogs have a resemblance with wolves and foxes; horses with asses; kine with buffles; hares with hares, &c. And so in birds: kites and kestrels have a resemblance with hawks; common doves with ring-doves and turtles; black birds with thrushes and marties; crows with ravens, daws, and choughs, &c. But elephants and swine amongst beasts; and the bird of paradise and the peacock amongst birds; and some few others; have scarce any other species that have affinity with them.

We leave the description of plants, and their virtues, to herbals; and other like books of natural history; wherein mens diligence hath been great, even to curiosity: for our experiments are only such, as do ever ascend a degree to the deriving of causes, and extracting of axioms, which we are not ignorant but that some both of the ancient and modern writers, have also laboured; but their causes and axioms are so full of imagination, and so infected with the old received theories, as they are mere inquisitions of experience, and concoct it not.

Experiment solitary touching healing of wounds.

It hath been observed by some of the ancients, that skins (especially of rams) newly pulled off, and applied to the wounds of stripes, do keep them from swelling and exulcerating; and likewise heal them and close them up; and that the whites of eggs do the same. The cause is a temperate conglutination; for both bodies are clammy and viscous, and do bridle the deflux of humours to the hurts, without penned them in too much.

Experiment solitary touching fat diffused in flesh:

You may turn (almost) all flesh into a fatty substance, if you take flesh, and cut it into pieces, and put the pieces into a glass covered with parchment; and so let the glass stand six or seven hours in boiling water. It may be an experiment of profit for making of fat, or greafe, for many uses; but then it must be of such flesh as is not edible; as horses, dogs, bears, foxes, badgers, &c.

Experiment solitary touching ripening of drink before the time.

It is reported by one of the ancients, that new wine put into vessels well stopped, and the vessels let down into the sea, will accelerate very much the making of them ripe and potable. The same would be tried in wort.

Experiment solitary touching pilosity and plumage.

Beasts are more hairy than men, and savage men more than civil;
vile; and the plumage of birds exceedeth the pilosity of beasts. The cause of
the smoothness in men is not any abundance of heat and moisture, tho’ that
indeed causeth pilosity; but there is requisite to pilosity, not so much heat
and moisture as excrementitious heat and moisture; (for whatsoever assimil-
ateeth, goeth not into the hair:) and excrementitious moisture aboundeth
most in beasts, and men that are more savage. Much the same reason is
there of the plumage of birds; for birds assimilate less, and excern more than
beasts; for their excrements are ever liquid, and their flesh (generally) more
dry: beside, they have not instruments for urine; and so all the excrementi-
tious moisture goeth into the feathers: and therefore it is no marvel, though
birds be commonly better meat than beasts, because their flesh doth assim-
ilate more finely, and excerneth more subtilly. Again, the head of man
hath hair upon the first birth, which no other part of the body hath. The
cause may be want of perspiration; for much of the matter of hair, in the
other parts of the body, goeth forth by insensible perspiration; and besides,
the skull being of a more solid substance, nouriseth and assimilateth less,
and excerneth more; and so likewise doth the chin. We see also, that
hair cometh not upon the palms of the hands, nor soles of the feet; which
are parts more perspirable. And children likewise are not hairy, for that their
skins are more perspirable.

Experiment solitary touching the quickness of motion in birds.
681. Birds are of swifter motion than beasts; for the flight of many
birds is swifter than the race of any beasts. The cause is, for that the spirits
in birds are in greater proportion, in comparison of the bulk of their body,
than in beasts; for as for the reason that some give, that they are partly car-
ried, whereas beasts go, that is nothing; for by that reason swimming should
be swifter than running: and that kind of carriage also is not without la-
bour of the wing.

Experiment solitary touching the different clearness of the sea.
682. The sea is clearer when the north wind bloweth, than when the
south wind. The cause is, for that salt water hath a little oiliness in the
surface thereof, as appeareth in very hot days: and again, for that the sou-
thern wind relaxeth the water somewhat; and no water boiling is so clear as
cold water.

Experiment solitary touching the different heats of fire and boiling water.
683. Fire burneth wood, making it first luminous; then black and brit-
tle; and lastly, broken and incinerate: scalding water doth none of these.
The cause is, for that by fire the spirit of the body is first refined, and then
emitted; whereof the refining or attenuation causeth the light; and the e-
mission, first the fragility, and after the dissolution into ashes; neither doth
any other body enter: but in water the spirit of the body is not refined so
much; and besides part of the water entereth, which doth increafe the spi-
rit, and in a degree extinguish it: therefore we see that hot water will quench fire.
And again we see, that in bodies wherein the water doth not
much enter, but only the heat paffeth, hot water worketh the effects of fire:
As in eggs boiled and roasted, (into which the water entereth not at all,) there is scarce difference to be discerned; but in fruit, and flesh, whereinto
the water entereth in some part, there is much more difference.

Expe-
**Experiment solitary touching the qualification of heat by moisture.**

684. The bottom of a vessel of boiling water (as hath been observed) is not very much heated, so as men may put their hand under the vessel and remove it. The cause is, for that the moisture of water as it quencheth coals where it entereth, so it doth allay heat where it toucheth: and therefore note well, that moisture, although it doth not pass through bodies, without communication of some substance, (as heat and cold do;) yet it worketh manifest effects; not by entrance of the body, but by qualifying of the heat and cold; as we see in this instance: and we see likewise, that the water of things distilled in water, (which they call the bath) differeth not much from the water of things distilled by fire. We see also, that pewter dishes with water in them will not melt easily, but without it they will; nay we see more, that butter, or oil, which in themselves are inflammable, yet by the virtue of their moisture will do the like.

**Experiment solitary touching yawning.**

685. It hath been noted by the ancients, that it is dangerous to pick one's ear whilst he yawneth. The cause is, for that in yawning the inner parchment of the ear is extended, by the drawing in of the spirit and breath; for in yawning, and sighing both, the spirit is first strongly drawn in, and then strongly expelled.

**Experiment solitary touching the hiccough.**

686. It hath been observed by the ancients, that sneezing doth cease the hiccough. The cause is, for that the motion of the hiccough is a lifting up of the stomach, which sneezing doth somewhat depress and divert the motion another way. For first we see that the hiccough cometh of fulness of meat, (especially in children) which causeth an extension of the stomach: we see also it is causeth by acid meats, or drinks, which is by the pricking of the stomach; and this motion is ceased either by diversion, or by detention of the spirits; diversion, as in sneezing; detention, as we see holding of the breath doth help somewhat to cease the hiccough; and putting a man into an earnest study doth the like, as is commonly used: and vinegar put to the nostrils, or gargarized, doth it also; for that it is astringent, and inhibiteth the motion of the spirit.

**Experiment solitary touching sneezing.**

687. Looking against the sun doth induce sneezing. The cause is not the heating of the nostrils, for then the holding up of the nostrils against the sun, though one wink, would do it; but the drawing down of the moisture of the brain: for it will make the eyes run with water; and the drawing of moisture to the eyes, doth draw it to the nostrils by motion of contact; and so followeth sneezing: as contrariwise, the tickling of the nostrils within, doth draw the moisture to the nostrils, and to the eyes by contact; for they also will water. But yet it hath been observed, that if one be about to sneeze, the rubbing of the eyes till they run with water, will prevent it. Whereof the cause is, for that the humour which was descending to the nostrils, is diverted to the eyes.

**Experiment solitary touching the tenderness of the teeth.**

688. The teeth are more by cold drink or the like affected than the other parts.
parts. The cause is double; the one, for that the resistance of bone to cold is greater than of flesh, for that the flesh shrinketh, but the bone refifith, whereby the cold becometh more eager: the other is, for that the teeth are parts without blood; whereas blood helpeth to qualify the cold; and therefore we see that the finews are much affected with cold, for that they are parts without blood; so the bones in sharp colds wax brittle; and therefore it hath been seen, that all contusions of bones in hard weather are more difficult to cure.

Experiment solitarius touching the tongue.

689. It hath been noted, that the tongue receiveth more eaisily tokens of diseases than the other parts; as of heats within, which appear most in the blackness of the tongue. Again, pyed cattle are spotted in their tongues, &c. The cause is, (no doubt) the tenderness of the part, which thereby receiveth more eaisily all alterations, than any other parts of the flesh.

Experiment solitarius touching the taste.

690. When the mouth is out of taste, it maketh things taste sometimes salt, chiefly bitter; and sometimes loathsome, but never sweet. The cause is; the corrupting of the moisture about the tongue, which many times turneth bitter, and salt, and loathsome, but sweet never; for the rest are degrees of corruption.

Experiment solitarius touching some prognosticks of pestilential seasons.

691. It was observed in the great plague of the last year, that there were seen in divers ditches and low grounds about London, many toads, that had tails two or three inches long at the least; whereas toads (usually) have no tails at all. Which argueth a great disposition to putrefaction in the soil and air. It is reported likewise, that roots, (such as carrots and parsnips) are more sweet and luscious in infectious years, than in other years.

Experiment solitarius touching special simples for medicines.

692. Wise physicians should with all diligence enquire, what simples nature yieldeth, that have extreme subtile parts, without any mordication or acrimony: for they undermine that which is hard; they open that which is stopped and shut; and they expel that which is offensive gently, without too much perturbation. Of this kind are elder-flowers; which therefore are proper for the stone: of this kind is the dwarf-pine; which is proper for the jaundice: of this kind is hartfoor: which is proper for agues and infections; of this kind is piony: which is proper for stoppings in the head: of this kind is fumitory; which is proper for the spleen: and a number of others. Generally, divers creatures bred of putrefaction, though they be somewhat loathsome to take, are of this kind; as earth-worms, timber-fows, snails, &c. And I conceive that the trochilks of vipers, (which are so much magnified) and the flesh of snakes some ways condited, and corrected, (which of late are grown into some credit) are of the same nature. So the parts of beasts putrefied, (as cafforeum and mulfik, which have extreme subtile parts) are to be placed amongst them. We see also, that putrefaction of plants, as agarrowick and Jews-ear, are of greatest virtue. The cause is, for that putrefaction is the subtillest of all motions in the parts of bodies: and since we cannot take down the lives of living creatures, which some of the Paracelsians say (if
(if they could be taken down) would make us immortal: the next is for sub-
tility of operation, to take bodies putrefied; such as may be safely taken.

Experiments in comfort touching Venus.

693. It hath been observed by the ancients, that much use of Venus doth
dim the sight; and yet eunuchs, which are unable to generate, are (never-
theless) also dim-sighted. The cause of dimness of sight in the former, is
the expence of spirits; in the latter, the over-moisture of the brain: for the over-
moisture of the brain doth thicken the spirits visual, and obstructeth their
passages; as we see by the decay in the sight in age; where also the dimin-
ution of the spirits concurreth as another cause: we see also that blindness
cometh by rheums and cataracts. Now in eunuchs, there are all the notes
of moisture; as the swelling of their thighs, the looseness of their belly, the
smoothness of their skin, &c.

694. The pleasure in the act of Venus, is the greatest of all the pleasures
of the senses; the matching of it with itch is improper, though that also be
pleasing to the touch. But the causes are profound. First, all the organs
of the senses qualify the motions of the spirits; and so many several
species of motions, and pleasures or displeasures thereupon, as there be di-
versities of organs. The instruments of sight, hearing, taste and smell, are
of several frame; and so are the parts for generation. Therefore Scaliger
doeth well to make the pleasure of generation a sixth sense; and if there were
any other differing organs, and qualified perforations for the spirits to pass,
there would be more than the five senses: neither do we well know, whether
some beasts and birds have not senses that we know not; and the very scent
doeth almost a sense by itself. Secondly, the pleasures of the touch, are
greater and deeper than those of the other senses; as we see in warming
up upon cold; or refrigeration upon heat: for as the pains of the touch, are
greater than the offences of other senses; so likewise are the pleasures. It is
true, that the affecting of the spirits immediately, and (as it were) without
an organ, is of the greatest pleasure; which is but in two things: sweet
smells; and wine, and the like sweet vapours. For smells, we see their great
and sudden effect in fetching men again when they swoon: for drink, it is
certain that the pleasure of drunkenness is next the pleasure of Venus; and
great joys (likewise) make the spirits move and touch themselves: and the
pleasure of Venus is somewhat of the same kind.

695. It hath been always observed, that men are more inclined to Venus
in the winter, and women in the summer. The cause is, for that the spirits,
in a body more hot and dry, (as the spirits of men are) by the summer are
more exhaled and disipated; and in the winter more condensed and kept
entire: but in bodies that are cold and moist, (as women’s are) the summer
doeth cherish the spirits, and calleth them forth; the winter doth dull them.
Furthermore, the abstinence, or intermission of the use of Venus in moist
and well habituate bodies, breedeth a number of diseases; and especially dan-
ggerous impotumations. The reason is evident; for that it is a principal eva-
cuation, especially of the spirits: for of the spirits, there is scarce any eva-
cuation, but in Venus and exercise. And therefore the omission of either of
them breedeth all diseases of repletion.

Experiments in comfort touching the infecta.

The nature of vivification is very worthy the enquiry: and as the nature
of things is commonly better perceived in small than in great; and in im-
perfection,
perfect, than in perfect; and in parts, than in whole: so the nature of vivification is best enquired in creatures bred of putrefaction. The contemplation whereof hath many excellent fruits. First, in disclosing the original of vivification. Secondly, in disclosing the original of figuration. Thirdly, in disclosing many things in the nature of perfect creatures, which in them lie more hidden. And fourthly, in traducing, by way of operation, some observations in the infecta, to work effects upon perfect creatures. Note, that the word infecta agreeth not with the matter, but we ever use it for brevity's sake, intending by it creatures bred of putrefaction.

The infecta are found to breed out of several matters: some breed of mud or dung; as the earth-worms, eels, snakes, &c. For they are both putrefactions: for water in mud doth putrefy, as not able to preserve itself; and for dung, all excrements are the refuse and putrefactions of nourishment. Some breed in wood, both growing and cut down. Quaere, in what woods most, and at what seasons? We see that the worms with many feet, which round themselves into hills, are bred chiefly under logs of limber, but not in the timber; and they are said to be found also (many times) in gardens, where no logs are. But it seems their generation requireth a coverture, both from sun, and rain or dew; as the timber is; and therefore they are not venomous, but (contrariwise) are held by the physicians to clarify the blood. It is observed also, that cimices are found in the holes of bed sides. Some breed in the hair of living creatures; as lice and tiques; which are bred by the sweat close kept, and somewhat refreshed by the hair. The excrements of living creatures do not only breed infecta when they are excreted, but also while they are in the body; as in worms whereto children are most subject, and are chiefly in the guts. And it hath been lately observed by physicians, that in many pestilent diseases, there are worms found in the upper parts of the body, where excrements are not, but only humours putrefied. Fleas breed principally of straw or mats, where there hath been a little moisture; or the chamber and bed-straw kept close, and not aired. It is received, that they are killed by strewing wormwood in the rooms. And it is truly observed, that bitter things are apt rather to kill, than engender putrefaction; and they be things that are fat or sweet, that are aptest to putrefy. There is a worm that breedeth in meal, of the shape of a large white maggot, which is given as a great dainty to nightingales. The moth breedeth upon cloth, and other lanifices; especially if they be laid up dankish and wet. It delighteth to be about the flame of a candle. There is a worm called a weevil, bred under ground, and that feedeth upon roots; as parsnips, carrots, &c. Some breed in waters, especially shaded, but they must be standing waters; as the water spider that hath six legs. The fly called the gad-fly, breedeth of somewhat that swimmeth upon the top of the water, and is most about ponds. There is a worm that breedeth of the dregs of wine decayed; which afterwards (as is observed by some of the ancients) turneth into a grnat. It hath been observed by the ancients, that there is a worm that breedeth in old snow, and is of colour reddish, and dull of motion, and dieth soon after it cometh out of snow. Which should shew, that snow hath in it a secret warmth; for else it could hardly vivify. And the season of the dying of the worm, may be the sudden exhaling of that little spirit, as soon as it cometh out of the cold, which had shut it in. For as butterflies quicken with heat, which were benumbed with cold; so spirits may exhale with heat, which were preserved in cold. It is affirmed both by the ancient and modern observation, that in furnaces of copper and brass, where
where chalcites (which is vitriol) is often cast in to mend the working, there rifieth suddenly a fly, which sometimes moveth as if it took hold on the walls of the furnace; sometimes is seen moving in the fire below; and dieth presently as soon as it is out of the furnace: which is a noble instance, and worthy to be weighed; for it sheweth, that as well violent heat of fire, as the gentle heat of living creatures, will vivify, if it have matter proportionable. Now the great axiom of vivification is, that there must be heat to dilate the spirit of the body; an active spirit to be dilated; matter viscous or tenacious to hold in the spirit; and that matter to be put forth and figured. Now a spirit dilated by so ardent a fire as that of the furnace, as soon as ever it cooleth never so little, congealeth presently. And (no doubt) this action is furthered by the chalcites, which hath a spirit that will put forth and germinate, as we see in chymical trials. Briefly, most things putrefied bring forth insects of several names; but we will not take upon us now to enumerate them all.

697. The insects have been noted by the ancients to feed little: but this hath not been diligently observed; for grasshoppers eat up the green of whole countries; and silk-worms devour leaves swiftly; and ants make great provision. It is true, that creatures that sleep and rest much eat little as dormice, and bats, &c. they are all without blood: which may be, for that the juice of their bodies is almost all one; not blood, and flesh, and skin, and bone, as in perfect creatures; the integral parts have extreme variety, but the similar parts little. It is true, that they have (some of them) a diaphragm and an intestine; and they have all skins; which in most of the insects are cast off. They are not (generally) of long life: yet bees have been known to live seven years: and snakes are thought, the rather for the casting of their spoil, to live till they be old: and eels, which many times breed of putrefaction, will live and grow very long: and those that interchange from worms to flies in the summer, and from flies to worms in the winter, have been kept in boxes four years at the least. Yet there are certain flies that are called ephemera that live but a day. The cause is the exit of the spirit, or perhaps the absence of the sun; for that if they were brought in, or kept close, they might live longer. Many of the insects, (as butterflies, and other flies) revive easily when they seem dead, being brought to the sun, or fire. The cause whereof is the diffusion of the vital spirit, and easy dilating of it by a little heat. They fly a good while after their heads are off, or that they be cut in pieces; which is caused also, for that their vital spirits are more diffused throughout all their parts, and less confined to organs than in perfect creatures.

698. The insects have voluntary motion, and therefore imagination; and whereas some of the ancients have said that their motion is indeterminate, and their imagination indefinite, it is negligently observed; for ants go right forwards to their hills; and bees do (admirably) know the way from a flowery heath two or three miles off to their hives. It may be, gnats and flies have their imagination more mutable and giddy, as small birds likewise have. It is said by some of the ancients, that they have only the sense of feeling, which is manifestly untrue; for if they go forth-right to a place, they must needs have sight; besides, they delight more in one flower or herb than in another, and therefore have taste: and bees are called with found upon brass, and therefore they have hearing; which sheweth likewise, that though their spirit be diffused, yet there is a seat of their senses in their head.
OTHER observations concerning the injestia, together with the enumeration of them, we refer to that place, where we mean to handle the title of animals in general.

Experiment solitary touching leaping.

699. A man leapeth better with weights in his hands than without. The cause is, for that the weight (if it be proportionable) strengtheneth the finews by contracting them. For otherwise, where no contraction is needful, weight hindereth. As we see in horse-races, men are curious to foresee that there be not the least weight upon the one horse more than upon the other. In leaping, with weights the arms are first cast backwards, and then forwards, with so much the greater force; for the hands go backward before they take their rise. Quatre, if the contrary motion of the spirits, immediately before the motion we intend, doth not cause the spirits as it were to break forth with more force? as breath also drawn and kept in, cometh forth more forcibly; and in casting of any thing, the arms, to make a greater swing, are first cast backward.

Experiment solitary touching the pleasures and displeasures of the senses, especially of hearing.

700. Of musical tones and unequal sounds we have spoken before; but touching the pleasure and displeasure of the senses, not so fully. Harsh sounds, as of a saw when it is sharpen’d; grinding of one stone against another; squeaking or shrieking noise; make a shivering or horror in the body, and set the teeth on edge. The cause is, for that the objects of the ear do affect the spirits (immediately) most with pleasure and offence. We see there is no colour that affecteth the eye much with displeasure: there be sights that are horrible, because they excite the memory of things that are odious, or fearful; but the same things painted do little affect. As for smells, tastes and touches, they be things that do affect by a participation, or impulsion of the body of the object. So it is found alone that doth immediately and incorporeally affect most; this is most manifest in musick, and concords and discords in musick; for all sounds, whether they be sharp or flat, if they be sweet, have a roundness and equality; and if they be harsh, are unequal: for a discord it self is but a harshness of divers sounds meeting. It is true, that inequality not stayed upon, but passing, is rather an increase of sweetness; as in the purling of a wreathe’d string; and in the raucity of a trumpet; and in the nightingale-pipe of a regal; and in a discord straight falling upon a concord; but if you stay upon it, it is offensive; and therefore there be these three degrees of pleasing and displeasing in sounds, sweet sounds, discords, and harsh sounds, which we call by divers names, as shrieking or grating. As for the setting of the teeth on edge, we plainly see what an intercourse there is between the teeth and the organ of the hearing, by the taking of the end of a bow between the teeth, and striking upon the string.
NATURAL HISTORY.

C E N T. VIII.

Experiment solitary touching veins of medicinal earth.

701. THERE be minerals and fossils in great variety; but of veins of earth medicinal, but few: the chief are, 
terra lemmia, 
terra figilata communis, and 
bolus armenus; whereof 
terra lemmia is the chief. The virtues of them are, for 
curing of wounds, staunching of blood, stopping of fluxes, 
and rheums, and arresting the spreading of poison, infection, and putrefaction: and they have of all other simples the perfectest and purest quality of drying, with little or no mixture of any other quality. Yet it is true, that the bolus-armeniack is the most cold of them; and that 
terra lemmia, is the most hot; for which cause the island Lemnos, where it is digged, was in the old fabulous ages consecrated to Vulcan.

Experiment solitary touching the growth of sponges.

702. About the bottom of the Streights are gathered great quantities of sponges, which are gathered from the sides of rocks, being as it were a large but tough moss. It is the more to be noted, because that there be but few plantances, plant-like, that grow deep within the sea; for they are gathered sometimes fifteen fathom deep: and when they are laid on shore, they seem to be of great bulk; but crushed together, will be transported in a very small room.

Experiment solitary touching sea-fish put in fresh waters.

703. It seemeth, that fishes that are used to the salt water, do nevertheless delight more in fresh. We see, that salmones and smelts love to get into rivers, though it be against the stream. At the haven of Constantinople you shall have great quantities of fish that come from the Euxine sea, that when they come into the fresh water, do inebriate and turn up their bellies, so as you may take them with your hand. I doubt there hath not been sufficient experiment made of putting sea-fish into fresh water, ponds, and pools. It is a thing of great use and pleasure; for so you may have them new at some good distance from the sea: and besides, it may be, the fish will eat the pleasanter, and may fall to breed. And it is said, that Colecbeater oilers, which are put into pits, where the sea goeth and cometh, (but yet so, that there
there is fresh water coming also to them when the sea voideth,) become by that means fatter, and more grown.

Experiment solitary touching attraction by similitude of substance.

704. The Turkish bow giveth a very forcible shoot; insomuch as it hath been known, that the arrow hath pierced a steel target, or a piece of brass of two inches thick: but that which is more strange, the arrow, if it be headed with wood, hath been known to pierce through a piece of wood of eight inches thick. And it is certain, that we had in use at one time, for sea fight, short arrows, which they called sprights, without any other heads, save wood sharpened; which were discharged out of muskets, and would pierce through the sides of ships where a bullet would not pierce. But this dependeth upon one of the greatest secrets in all nature; which is, that similitude of substance will cause attraction, where the body is wholly freed from the motion of gravity: for if that were taken away, lead would draw lead, and gold would draw gold, and iron would draw iron, without the help of the loadstone. But this same motion of weight or gravity, (which is a mere motion of the matter, and hath no affinity with the form, or kind,) doth kill the other motion, except it self be killed by a violent motion, as in these instances of arrows; for then the motion of attraction by similitude of substance beginneth to shew itself. But we shall handle this point of nature fully in due place.

Experiment solitary touching certain drinks in Turkey.

705. They have in Turkey and the east certain confections, which they call servets, which are like to candied conerves, and are made of sugar and lemons, or sugar and citrons, or sugar and violets, and some other flowers; and some mixture of amber for the more delicate persons; and those they dissolve in water, and thereof make their drink, because they are forbidden wine by their law. But I do much marvel, that no Englishman, or Dutchman, or German, doth set up brewing in Constantinople; considering they have such quantity of barley. For as for the general sort of men, frugality may be the cause of drinking water; for that is no small saving, to pay nothing for one's drink; but the better sort might well be at the cost. And yet I wonder the less at it, because I see France, Italy, or Spain, have not taken into use beer or ale; which (perhaps) if they did, would better both their healths and their complexion. It is likely it would be matter of great gain to any that should begin it in Turkey.

Experiments in comfort touching sweat.

706. In bathing in hot water, sweat (nevertheless) cometh not in the parts under the water. The cause is; first, for that sweat is a kind of colliquation; and that kind of colliquation is not made either by an over dry heat, or an over moist heat: for over moisture doth somewhat extinguish the heat, as we see that even hot water quencheth fire, and over dry heat shutteth the pores: and therefore men will sooner sweat covered before the sun, or fire, than if they stood naked: and earthen bottles, filled with hot water, do provoke in bed a sweat more daintily than brick-bats hot. Secondly, hot water doth cause evaporation from the skin; so as it spendeth the matter in those parts under the water, before it issueth in sweat. Again, sweat cometh more plentifully, if the heat be encreased by degrees, than if it be greatest at first, or equal. The cause is, for that the pores are better
better opened by a gentle heat, than by a more violent; and by their opening, the sweat issueth more abundantly. And therefore physicians may do well when they provoke sweat in bed by bottles, with a decoction of sudorific herbs in hot water, to make two degrees of heat in the bottles; and to lay in the bed the less heated first, and after half an hour, the more heated.

707. Sweat is salt in taste; the cause is, for that that part of the nourishment which is freth and sweet, turneth into blood and flesh; and the sweat is only that part which is separate and extruded. Blood also raw hath some saltiness more than flesh; because the assimilation into flesh is not without a little and subtile excretion from the blood.

708. Sweat cometh forth more out of the upper parts of the body than the lower; the reason is, because those parts are more replenished with spirits; and the spirits are they that put forth sweat: besides, they are less fleshy, and sweat issueth (chiefly) out of the parts that are less fleshy, and more dry; as the forehead and breast.

709. Men sweat more in sleep than waking; and yet sleep doth rather stay other fluxions, than cause them; as rheums, looseness of the body, &c. The cause is, for that in sleep the heat and spirits do naturally move inwards, and there rest. But when they are collected once within, the heat becometh more violent and irritate; and thereby expelstth sweat.

710. Cold sweats are (many times) mortal, and near death; and alwayes ill, and suspected; as in great fears, hypochondriacal passions, &c. The cause, for that cold sweats come by a relaxation or forsaking of the spirits, whereby the moisture of the body, which heat did keep firm in the parts, fevereth and issueth out.

711. In those diseases which cannot be discharged by sweat, sweat is ill, and rather to be stayed; as in diseases of the lungs, and fluxes of the belly: but in those diseases which are expelled by sweat, it causeth and lighteneth; as in agues, pestilences, &c. The cause is, for that sweat in the later sort is partly critical, and sendeth forth the matter that offendeth; but in the former, it either proceedeth from the labour of the spirits, which theyeth them oppressed; or from motion of content, when nature not able to expel the disease where it is seated, moveth to an expulsion indifferent over all the body.

Experiment solitary touching the glow-worm.

712. The nature of the glow-worm is hitherto not well observed. Thus much we see; that they breed chiefly in the hottest months of summer; and that they breed not in champain, but in bushes and hedges. Whereby it may be conceived, that the spirit of them is very fine, and not to be referred but by summer heats: and again, that by reason of the fineness, it doth easily exhale. In Italy, and the hotter countries, there is a fly they call Lucciole, that shineth as the glow-worm doth; and it may be is the flying glow-worm. But that fly is chiefly upon fens and marshes. But yet the two former observations hold; for they are not seen but in the heat of summer; and fedge, or other green of the fens, give as good shade as bushes. It may be the glow-worms of the cold countries, ripen not so far as to be winged.

Experiments in consort touching the impressions, which the passions of the mind make upon the body.

713. The passions of the mind work upon the body the impressions following.
lowing. Fear causeth paleness; trembling, the standing of the hair upright, starting; and shrieking. The paleness is caused, for that the blood runneth inward to succour the heart. The trembling is caused, for that through the flight of the spirits inward, the outward parts are destituted, and not sustained. Standing upright of the hair is caused, for that by flushing of the pores of the skin, the hair that lieth aloft must needs rise. Starting is both an apprehension of the thing feared; (and in that kind it is a motion of shrinking;) and likewise an inquisition in the beginning, what the matter should be; (and in that kind it is a motion of erection;) and therefore when a man would listen suddenly to any thing, he starteth; for the starting is an erection of the spirits to attend. Shrieking is an appetite of expelling that which suddenly striketh the spirits: for it must be noted, that many motions, though they be unprofitable to expel that which hurteth, yet they are offers of nature, and cause motions by consent; as in groaning, or crying upon pain.

714. GRIEVE and pain cause sighing, sobbing, groaning, shrieking, and roaring; tears, distorting of the face, grinding of the teeth, sweating. Sighing is caused by the drawing in of a greater quantity of breath to refresh the heart that laboureth: like a great draught when one is thirsty. Sobbing is the same thing stronger. Groaning, and shrieking, and roaring, are caused by an appetite of expulsion, as hath been said: for when the spirits cannot expel the thing that hurteth, in their strife to do it, by motion of consent, they expel the voice. And this is when the spirits yield, and give over to refuse; for if one do constantly resist pain, he will not groan. Tears are caused by a contraction of the spirits of the brain; which contraction by consequence astringeth the moisture of the brain, and thereby sendeth tears into the eyes. And this contraction, or comprexion, causeth also wringing of the hands; for wringing is a gesture of expression of moisture. The distorting of the face is caused by a contention, first to bear and resist, and then to expel; which maketh the parts knit first, and afterwards open. Grinding of the teeth is caused (likewise) by a gathering and forcing of the spirits together to resist; which maketh the teeth also to set hard one against another. Sweating is also a compound motion, by the labour of the spirits, firft to resist, and then to expel.

715. JOY causeth a cheerfulness and vigour in the eyes; singing, leaping, dancing, and sometimes tears. All these are the effects of the dilatation, and coming forth of the spirits into the outward parts; which maketh them more lively and stirring. We know it hath been seen, that excessive sudden joy hath caused present death, while the spirits did spread so much as they could not retire again. As for tears, they are the effects of compreßion of the moisture of the brain, upon dilatation of the spirits. For compreßion of the spirits worketh an expression of the moisture of the brain by consent, as hath been said in grief. But then in joy, it worketh it diversely; viz. by propulsion of the moisture, when the spirits dilate, and occupy more room.

716. ANGER causeth paleness in some, and the going and the coming of the colour in others: also trembling in some; swelling, foaming at the mouth, flamping, bending of the fist. Paleness, and going and coming of the colour, are caused by the burning of the spirits about the heart; which to refresh themselves, call in more spirits from the outward parts. And if the paleness be alone, without sending forth the colour again, it is commonly joined with some fear; but in many there is no paleness at all, but contra-
contrariwise redness about the cheeks and gills; which is by the sending forth of the spirits in an appetite to revenge. Trembling in anger is likewise by a calling in of the spirits; and is commonly when anger is joined with fear. Swelling is caused, both by a dilatation of the spirits by over-heating, and by a liquefaction or boiling of the humours thereupon. Foaming at the mouth is from the same cause, being an ebullition: stamping, and bending of the fist, are caused by an imagination of the act of revenge.

179. **Light** displeasure or dislike, caueth shaking of the head, frowning and knitting of the brows. These effects arise from the same causes that trembling and horror do; namely, from the retiring of the spirits, but in a less degree. For the shaking of the head is but a slow and definite trembling; and is a gesture of slight refusal; and we see also, that a dislike causeth (often) that gesture of the hand, which we use when we refuse a thing, or warn it away. The frowning and knitting of the brows, is a gathering, or ferring of the spirits, to resist: in some measure. And we see also this knitting of the brows will follow upon earnest studying, or cogitation of any thing, though it be without dislike.

180. **Shame** causeth blushing, and casting down of the eyes. Blushing is the resort of blood to the face; which in the passion of shame is the part that laboureth most. And although the blushing will be seen in the whole breast if it be naked, yet that is but in passage to the face. As for the casting down of the eyes, it proceedeth of the reverence a man beareth to other men; whereby, when he is ashamed, he cannot endure to look firmly upon others: and we see, that blushing, and the casting down of the eyes both, are more when we come before many; or Pompeii quiad mollius? Nonquam non coram pluribus erubuit: and likewise when we come before great or reverend persons.

181. **Pity** causeth sometimes tears; and a flexion or cast of the eye aside. Tears come from the same cause that they do in grief: for pity is but grief in another's behalf. The cast of the eye is a gesture of aversion, or lothness to behold the object of pity.

182. **Wonder** causeth astonishment, or an immovable posture of the body; casting up of the eyes to heaven; and lifting up of the hands. For astonishment, it is caused by the fixing of the mind upon one object of cogitation, whereby it doth not satiate and transcur, as it useth; for in wonder the spirits fly not as in fear; but only settle, and are made less apt to move. As for the casting up of the eyes, and lifting up of the hands, it is a kind of appeal to the Deity, which is the author, by power and providence, of strange wonders.

183. **Laughing** causeth a dilatation of the mouth and lips; a continued expulsion of the breath, with the loud noise, which maketh the interjection of laughing: shaking of the breath and sides: running of the eyes with water, if it be violent and continued. Wherein first it is to be understood, that laughing is scarce (properly) a passion, but hath its source from the intellect; for in laughing there ever precedeth a conceit of somewhat ridiculous. And therefore it is proper to man. Secondly, that the cause of laughing is but a light touch of the spirits, and not so deep an impression as in other passions. And therefore (that which hath no affinity with the passions of the mind) it is moved, and that in great vehemence, only by tickling some parts of the body: and we see that men even in a grieved state of mind, yet cannot sometimes forbear laughing. Thirdly, it is ever joined with some degree of delight: and therefore exhilaration hath some affinity with joy, though it...
be a much lighter motion: *res severa est verum gaudium.* Fourthly, that the object of it is deformity, absurdity, shrewd turns, and the like. Now to speak of the causes of the effects before mentioned, whereunto these general notes give some light. For the dilatation of the mouth and lips, continued expulsion of the breath and voice, and shaking of the breast and sides, they proceed (all) from the dilatation of the spirits; especially being sudden. So likewise, the running of the eyes with water, (as hath been formerly touched, where we spake of the tears of joy and grief) is an effect of dilatation of the spirits. And for suddenness, it is a great part of the matter: for we fee, that any shrewd turn that lighteth upon another; or any deformity, &c. moveth laughter in the infant; which after a little time it doth not. So we cannot laugh at any thing after it is stale, but whilst it is new: and even in tickling, if you tickle the sides, and give warning; or give a hard or continued touch, it doth not move laughter so much.

722. Lust causeth a flagrancy in the eyes, and priapism. The cause of both these is, for that in luft, the fight and the touch are the things desired; and therefore the spirits refer to those parts which are most affected. And note well in general, (for that great use may be made of the observation) that (evermore) the spirits, in all passions, refer most to the parts that labour most, or are most affected. As in the last which hath been mentioned, they refer to the eyes and venereous parts: in fear and anger to the heart: in woe to the face: and in light dislikes to the head.

Experiments in conformity touching drunkenness.

723. It hath been observed by the ancients, and is yet believed, that the sperm of drunken men is unfruitful. The cause is, for that it is over-moistened, and wanteth spirituosity: And we have a merry saying, that they that go drunk to bed get daughters.

724. Drunken men are taken with a plain defect, or destitution in voluntary motion. They reel; they tremble; they cannot stand, nor speak strongly. The cause is, for that the spirits of the wine oppresse the spirits animal, and occupy part of the place where they are; and so make them weak to move. And therefore drunken men are apt to fall asleep: and opiates, and stufpective (as poppy, henbane, hemlock, &c.) induce a kind of drunkenness by the grotiness of their vapour; as wine doth by the quantity of the vapour. Besides, they rob the spirits animal of their matter, whereby they are nourished: for the spirits of the wine prey upon it as well as they: and so they make the spirits less supple and apt to move.

725. Drunken men imagine every thing turneth round; they imagine also that things come upon them; they see not well things afar off; these things that they see near hand, they see out of their place; and (sometimes) they see things double. The cause of the imagination that things turn round, is, for that the spirits themselves turn, being compressed by the vapour of the wine; (for any liquid body upon compression, turneth, as we see in water:) and it is all one to the sight, whether the visual spirits move, or the object moveth, or the medium moveth. And we see that long turning round breedeth the same imagination. The cause of the imagination that things come upon them is, for that the spirits visual themselves draw back; which maketh the object seem to come on; and besides, when they see things turn round, and move, fear maketh them think they come upon them. The cause that they cannot see things afar off, is the weaknees of the spirits; for in every megrim, or vertigo, there is an obtenebration joined with a semblance
blance of turning round; which we see also in the lighter sort of swoonings. The cause of seeing things out of their place, is the refraction of the spirits visual; for the vapour is as an unequal medium, and it is as the sight of things out of place in water. The cause of seeing things double, is the swift and unquiet motion of the spirit, (being oppressed) to and fro; for, (as was said before) the motion of the spirits visual, and the motion of the object, make the same appearances; and for the swift motion of the object, we see, that if you fillip a lute-string, it sheweth double or triple.

726. Men are sooner drunk with small draughts than with great. And again, wine sugar'd inebriateth less than wine pure. The cause of the former is, for that the wine descends not so fast to the bottom of the stomach; but maketh longer stay in the upper part of the stomach, and sends vapours faster to the head; and therefore inebriateth sooner. And for the same reason, hops in wine, (quantity for quantity) inebriate more than wine of itself. The cause of the latter is, that the sugar doth insipmate the spirits of the wine, and maketh them not so easy to resolve into vapour. Nay farther, it is thought to be some remedy against inebriating, if wine sugar'd be taken after wine pure. And the same effect is wrought either by oil, or milk, taken upon much drinking.

Experiment solitary touching the help or hurt of wine, tho' moderately used.

727. The use of wine in dry and consumed bodies is hurtful; in moist and full bodies it is good. The cause is, for that the spirits of the wine do prey upon the dew or radical moisture (as they term it) of the body, and deceive the animal spirits. But where there is moisture enough, or superfluous, there wine helpeth to digest, and desiccate the moisture.

Experiments solitary touching caterpillars.

728. The caterpillar is one of the most general of worms, and breedeth of dew and leaves; for we see infinite number of caterpillars which breed upon trees and hedges, by which the leaves of the trees or hedges are in great part consumed; as well by their breeding out of the leaf, as by their feeding upon the leaf. They breed in the spring chiefly, because then there is both dew and leaf. And they breed commonly when the east winds have much blown; the cause whereof is, the dryness of that wind; for to all vivification upon putrefaction, it is requisite the matter be not too moist: and therefore we see they have cobwebs about them, which is a sign of a slimy dryness; as we see upon the ground, whereupon, by dew and sun, cobwebs breed all over. We see also the green caterpillar breedeth in the inward parts of roses, especially not blown, where the dew sticketh; but especially caterpillars, both the greatest, and the most, breed upon cabbages, which have a fat leaf, and apt to putrefy. The caterpillar towards the end of summer waxeth volatile, and turneth to a butterfly, or perhaps some other fly. There is a caterpillar that hath a fur or down upon it, and seemeth to have affinity with the silk-worm.

Experiment solitary touching the flies cantharides.

729. The flies cantharides are bred of a worm, or caterpillar, but peculiar to certain fruit trees; as are the fig-tree, the pine-tree, and the wild briar; all which bear sweet fruit, and fruit that hath a kind of secret biting or sharpness; for the fig hath a milk in it, that is sweet and corrosive; the pine-apple hath a kernel that is strong and abietive: the fruit of the briar...
is said to make children, or those that eat them, scabbed. And therefore, no marvel though cantharides have such a corrosive and cauterizing quality; for there is not one other of the infecta, but is bred of a duller matter. The body of the cantharides is bright coloured; and it may be, that the delicate colour'd dragon-flies may have likewise some corrosive quality.

Experiments in confort touching lassitude.

730. Lassitude is remedied by bathing, or anointing with oil and warm water. The cause is, for that all lassitude is a kind of contusion, and compression of the parts; and bathing and anointing, give a relaxation or emolition; and the mixture of oil and water, is better than either of them alone; because water entereth better into the pores, and oil after entry softneth better. It is found also, that the taking of tobacco doth help and discharge lassitude. The reason whereof is, partly, because by clearing or comforting of the spirits, it openeth the parts compressed or contused; and chiefly, because it refresheth the spirits by the opiate virtue thereof, and so dischargeth wearines, as sleep likewise doth.

731. In going up a hill, the knees will be most weary; in going down a hill, the thighs. The cause is, for that in the lift of the feet, when a man goeth up the hill, the weight of the body beareth most upon the knees; and in going down the hill, upon the thighs.

Experiment solitary touching the casting of the skin and shell in some creatures.

732. The casting of the skin is by the ancients compared to the breaking of the secundine, or caul, but not rightly; for that were to make every casting of the skin a new birth: and besides, the secundine is but a general cover, not shaped according to the parts, but the skin is shaped according to the parts. The creatures that cast their skin are, the snake, the viper, the grasshopper, the lizard, the silk-worm, &c. Those that cast their shell are, the lobster, the crab, the crawfish, the hodmandod or dodman, the tortoise, &c. The old skins are found, but the old shells never: so as it is like they scale off, and crumble away by degrees. And they are known by the extreme tenderness and softness of the new shell, and somewhat by the freshness of the colour of it. The cause of the casting of skin and shell, should seem to be the great quantity of matter in those creatures that is fit to make skin or shell: and again, the loofeness of the skin or shell, that sticketh not close to the flesh. For it is certain, that it is the new skin or shell that putteth off the old: so we see, that in deer it is the young horn that putteth off the old; and in birds, the young feathers put off the old: and so birds that have much matter for their beak, cast their beaks, the new beak putting off the old.

Experiments in confort touching the postures of the body.

733. Lying not erect, but hollow, which is in the making of the bed; or with the legs gathered up, which is in the posture of the body, is the more wholesome. The reason is, the better comforting of the stomach, which is by that left penile: and we see that in weak stomachs, the laying up of the legs high, and the knees almost to the mouth, helpeth and comforteth. We see also that galley-slaves, notwithstanding their misery otherwise, are commonly fat and fleshy; and the reason is, because the stomach is supported somewhat in fitting, and is penile in standing or going. And therefore, for prolongation of life, it is good to chuse those exercises where the limbs
limbs move more than the stomach and belly; as in rowing, and in sawing, being set.

734. **Megrims and giddiness** are rather when we rise after long sitting, than while we sit. The cause is, for that the vapours, which were gathered by sitting, by the sudden motion, fly more up into the head.

735. **Lean ing long upon any part makest it numb, and, as we call it, asleep.** The cause is, for that the compres sion of the part suffereth not the spirits to have free access; and therefore when we come out of it, we feel a stinging or pricking, which is the re-entrance of the spirits.

**Experiment solitary touching pestilential years.**

736. **It hath been noted, that those years are pestilential and unwholesome, when there are great numbers of frogs, flies, locusts, &c. The cause is plain; for that those creatures being engender'd of putrefaction, when they abound, shew a general disposition of the year, and constitution of the air to diseases of putrefaction. And the same prognostick (as hath been said before) holdest, if you find worms in eal-apples: for the constitution of the air appeareth more subtly in any of these things, than to the sense of man.**

**Experiment solitary touching the prognostick of hard winters.**

737. **It is an observation amongst country people, that years of store of haws and hips do commonly portend cold winters; and they ascribe it to God's providence, that (as the scripture faith) reacheth even to the falling of a sparrow; and much more is like to reach to the preservation of birds in such seafons. The natural cause also may be the want of heat, and abundance of moisture in the summer precedent; which putth forth those fruits, and must needs leave great quantity of cold vapours not dissipated; which causeth the cold of the winter following.**

**Experiment solitary touching medicines that condense and relieve the spirits.**

738. **They have in Turkey a drink called coffee, made of a berry of the same name as black as soot, and of a strong scent, but not aromatical; which they take, beaten into powder, in water, as hot as they can drink it: and they take it, and sit at it in their coffee-houses, which are like our taverns. This drink comforteth the brain and heart, and helpeth digestion. Certainly this berry-coffee, the root and leaf betel, the leaf tobacco, and the tear of poppy, (opium,) of which the Turks are great takers, (supposing it expel leth all fear,) do all condense the spirits, and make them strong and alegre. But it seemeth they are taken after several manners; for coffee and opium are taken down, tobacco but in snook, and betle is but champed in the mouth with a little lime. It is like there are more of them, if they were well found out, and well corrected. Quaere of henbane-seed; of mandrake; of saffron, root and flower; of folium indicum; of ambergreece, of the Assyrian amomum, if it may be had; and of the scarlet powder, which they call kermes; and (generally) of all such things as do inebriate and provoke sleep. Note, that tobacco is not taken in root or seed, which are more forcible ever than leaves.**

**Experiment solitary touching paintings of the body.**

739. The Turks have a black powder made of a mineral called alcholoe, which with a fine long pencil they lay under their eye-lids, which doth co-
lour them black; whereby the white of the eye is set off more white. With the fame powder they colour alfo the hair of their eye-lids, and of their eye-brows, which they draw into embowed arches. You fhall find that Xenophon maketh mention, that the Medes used to paint their eyes. The Turks ufe with the fame tincture to colour the hair of their heads and beards black. And divers with us that are grown grey, and yet would appear young, find means to make their hair black, by combing it (as they fay) with a leaden comb, or the like. As for the Chinese, who are of an ill complexion, (being olivafier) they paint their cheeks scarlet, efpecially their king and grandees. Generally, barbarous people, that go naked, do not only paint themselves, but they pounce and raise their skin, that the painting may not be taken forth, and make it into works. So do the Wefl-Indians; and fo did the ancient Pisids and Britons; so that it seemeth men would have the colours of birds feathers, if they could tell how; or at leaft, they will have gay skins instead of gay clothes.

Experiment solitary touching the ufe of bathing and anointing.

740. It is strange, that the ufe of bathing, as a part of diet, is left. With the Romans and the Grecians it was as ufual, as eating or fleeping; and fo it amongst the Turks at this day; whereas with us it remaineth but as a part of phyfick. I am of opinion, that the ufe of it, as it was with the Romans, was hurtful to health; for that it made the body soft, and eafy to wafte. For the Turks it is more proper, becaufe of their drinking water and feeding upon rice, and other food of small nourifhment, maketh their bodies fo folid and hard, as you need not fear that bathing fhould make them frothy. Besides, the Turks are great fitters, and feldom walk; whereby they sweat lefs, and need bathing more. But yet certain it is, that bathing, and efpecially anointing, may be fo ufed as it may be a great help to health, and prolongation of life. But hereof we fhall fpeak in due place, when we come to handle experiments medicinal.

Experiment solitary touching chambletting of paper.

741. The Turks have a pretty art of chambletting of paper, which is not with us in ufe. They take divers oiled papers, and put them severally (in drops) upon water, and fhir the water lightly, and then wet their paper (being of some thicknefs) with it, and the paper will be waved and veined, like chamblet or marble.

Experiment solitary touching cuttle-ink.

742. It is somewhat strange, that the blood of all birds and beasts, and fifies, fhould be of a red colour, and only the blood of the cuttle fhould be as black as ink. A man would think, that the caufe fhould be the high con­coction of that blood; for we fee in ordinary puddings, that the boiling turneath the blood to be black; and the cuttle is accounted a delicate meat, and is much in requeft.

Experiment solitary touching encreafe of weight in earth.

743. It is reported of credit, that if you take earth from land adjoining to the river of Nile, and prefervè it in that manner, that it neither come to be wet nor wafted; and weigh it daily, it will not alter weight until the seventeenth of June, which is the day when the river beginneth to rife; and then it will grow more and more ponderous, till the river cometh to its height.
height. Which if it be true, it cannot be caused but by the air, which then beginneth to condense; and so turneth within that small mould into a degree of moisture, which produceth weight. So it hath been observed, that tobacco cut, and weighed, and then dried by the fire, loseth weight; and after being laid in the open air, recovereth weight again. And it should seem, that as soon as ever the river beginneth to encrease, the whole body of the air thereabouts suffereth a change: for (that which is more strange) it is credibly affirmed, that upon that very day when the river first riseth, great plagues in Cairo use suddenly to break up.

Experiments in comfort touching sleep:

744. Those that are very cold, and especially in their feet, cannot get to sleep: the cause may be, for that in sleep is required a free respiration, which cold doth shut in and hinder; for we see, that in great colds one can scarce draw his breath. Another cause may be, for that cold calleth the spirits to iuoccur, and therefore they cannot so well clothe, and go together in the head, which is ever requisite to sleep. And for the same cause, pain and noise hinder sleep; and darkness (contrariwise) furthereth sleep.

745. Some noises (whereof we spake in the hundred and twelfth experiment) help sleep; as the blowing of the wind, the trickling of water, humming of bees, soft singing, reading, &c. The cause is, for that they move in the spirits a gentle attention; and whatsoever moveth attention without too much labour, calleth the natural and discursive motion of the spirits.

746. Sleep nouriseth, or at least preserveth bodies, a long time, without other nourishment. Beasts that sleep in winter (as it is noted of wild bears) during their sleep wax very fat, though they eat nothing. Bats have been found in ovens, and other hollow close places, matted one upon another; and therefore it is likely that they sleep in the winter time, and eat nothing. Quaere, whether bees do not sleep all winter, and spare their honey? Butterflies, and other flies, do not only sleep, but lie as dead all winter; and yet with a little heat of sun or fire, revive again. A dormouse, both winter and summer, will sleep some days together, and eat nothing.

Experiments in comfort touching teeth and hard substances in the bodies of living creatures.

To restore teeth in age, were magnae naturae. It may be thought of. But howsoever, the nature of the teeth deserveth to be enquired of, as well as the other parts of living creatures bodies.

747. There be five parts in the bodies of living creatures, that are of hard substance; the skull, the teeth, the bones, the horns, and the nails. The greatest quantity of hard substance continued, is towards the head. For there is the skull of one entire bone; there are the teeth; there are the maxillary bones: there is the hard bone, that is the instrument of hearing; and thence issue the horns: so that the building of living creatures bodies, is like the building of a timber house, where the walls and other parts have columns and beams; but the roof is in the better part of houses, all tile, or lead, or stone. As for birds, they have three other hard substances proper to them; the bill, which is of like matter with the teeth; for no birds have teeth: the shell of the egg; and their quills: for as for their spur, it is but a nail. But no living creatures, that have shells very hard, (as oysters, cockles, mussels, hoop, crabs, lobsters, craw-fish, shrimps, and especially the tortoise) have bones within them, but only little gristles.

748. Bones
Bones, after full growth, continue at a fray; and so doth the skull: horns, in some creatures, are cast and renewed: teeth stand at a fray, except their wearing: as for nails, they grow continually: and bills and beaks will overgrow, and sometimes be cast; as in eagles and parrots.

Most of the hard substances fly to the extremities of the body: as skull, horns, teeth, nails, and beaks: only the bones are more inward, and clad with flesh. As for the entrails, they are all without bones; save that a bone is (sometimes) found in the heart of a stag; and it may be in some other creature.

The skull hath brains, as a kind of marrow within it. The backbone hath one kind of marrow, which hath an affinity with the brain; and other bones of the body have another. The jaw-bones have no marrow fever’d, but a little pulp of marrow diffused. Teeth likewise are thought to have a kind of marrow diffused, which causeth the senfe and pain: but it is rather fine: for marrow hath no senfe; no more than blood. Horn is alike throughout; and so is the nail.

None other of the hard substances have senfe, but the teeth; and the teeth have senfe, not only of pain but of cold.

But we will leave the enquiries of other hard substances unto their several places; and now enquire only of the teeth.

The teeth are, in men, of three kinds: sharp, as the foreteeth; broad, as the back-teeth, which we call the molar-teeth, or grinders; and pointed-teeth, or canine, which are between both. But there have been some men, that have had their teeth undivided, as of one whole bone, with some little mark in the place of the division; as Pyrrhus had. Some creatures have over-long, or out-growing teeth, which we call fangs, or tusks; as boars, pikes, falmons, and dogs, though less. Some living creatures have teeth against teeth; as men and horses; and some have teeth, especially their mafter-teeth, indented one within another like saws, as lions; and so again have dogs. Some fishes have divers rows of teeth in the roofs of their mouths; as pikes, falmons, trouts, &c. And many more in salt-waters. Snakes, and other serpents have venomous teeth; which are sometimes mistaken for their sting.

No beast that hath horns, hath upper teeth; and no beast that hath teeth above, wanteth them below: but yet if they be of the same kind, it followeth not, that if the hard matter goeth not into upper teeth, it will go into horns; nor yet e corverfo; for Does, that have no horns, have no upper teeth.

Horses have, at three years old, a tooth put forth, which they call the colt’s tooth; and at four years old there cometh the mark-tooth, which hath a hole as big as you may lay a pea within it; and that weareth shorter and shorter every year; till that at eight years old the tooth is smooth, and the hole gone; and then they say, that the mark is out of the horse’s mouth.

The teeth of men breed firft, when the child is about a year and half old: and then they cast them, and new come about seven years old. But divers have backward-teeth come forth at twenty, yea some at thirty and forty. Quare of the manner of the coming of them forth. They tell a tale of the old countes of Dismond, who lived till she was sevencore years old, that she did dentire twice or thrice; casting her old teeth, and others coming in their place.

Teeth are much hurt by sweet-meats; and by painting with mercury;
CONCERNING teeth, these things are to be considered. 1. The preserving of them. 2. The keeping of them white. 3. The drawing of them with least pain. 4. The slaying and eating of the tooth-ach. 5. The binding in of artificial teeth, where teeth have been struck out. 6. And last of all, that great one of restoring teeth in age. The instances that give any likelihood of restoring teeth in age, are; the late coming of teeth in some; and the renewing of the beaks in birds, which are commaterial with teeth. Quaere therefore more particularly how that cometh. And again, the renewing of horns. But yet that hath not been known to have been provoked by art; therefore let trial be made, whether horns may be procured to grow in beasts that are not horned and how? And whether they may be procured to come larger than usual; as to make an ox, or a deer, have a greater head of horns? And whether the head of a deer, that by age is more split, may be brought again to be more branched: for these trials, and the like, will shew, whether by art such hard matter can be called and provoked. It may be tried also, whether birds may not have something done to them when they are young, whereby they may be made to have greater or longer bills; or greater and longer talons? And whether children may not have some wash, or something to make their teeth better and stronger? Coral is in use as an help to the teeth of children.

Experiments in comfort touching the generation and bearing of living creatures in the womb.

758. Some living creatures generate but at certain seasons of the year; as deer, sheep, wild conies, &c. and most sorts of birds and fishes: others at any time of the year, as men; and all domestick creatures; as horses, hogs, dogs, cats, &c. The cause of generation at all seasons seemeth to be fulness: for generation is from redundance. This fulness ariseth from two causes; either from the nature of the creature, if it be hot, and moist, and sanguine; or from plenty of food. For the first, men, horses, dogs, &c. which breed at all seasons, are full of heat and moisture; doves are the fullest of heat and moisture amongst birds, and therefore breed often; the tame dove almost continually. But deer are a melancholy dry creature, as appeareth by their fearfulness, and the hardness of their flesh. Sheep are a cold creature, as appeareth by their mildness, and for that they seldom drink. Most sort of birds are of a dry substance in comparison of beasts. Fishes are cold. For the second cause, fulness of food; men, kine, swine, dogs, &c. feed full; and we see that those creatures, which being wild, generate seldom, being tame, generate often; which is from warmth, and fulness of food. We find, that the time of going to rut of deer is in September; for that they need the whole summer's feed and grass to make them fit for generation. And if rain come early about the middle of September, they go to rut somewhat sooner; if drought, somewhat the later. So sheep, in respect of their small heat, generate about the same time, or somewhat before. But for the most part, creatures that generate at certain seasons, generate in the spring; as birds and fishes: for that the end of the winter, and the heat and comfort of the spring prepareth them. There is also another reason, why some creatures generate at certain seasons; and that is the relation of their time of bearing, to the time of generation: for no creature goeth to generate, whilst the female is full; nor whilst she is busy in fitting, or rearing her young.
And therefore it is found by experience, that if you take the eggs, or young ones, out of the nests of birds, they will fall to generate again three or four times one after another.

759. Of living creatures, some are longer time in the womb, and some shorter. Women go commonly nine months; the cow and the ewe about six months; Does go about nine months; mares eleven months; bitches nine weeks; elephants are said to go two years; for the received tradition of ten years is fabulous. For birds there is double enquiry; the distance between the treading or coupling, and the laying of the egg; and again, between the egg laid, and the disclosing or hatching. And amongst birds, there is less diversity of time, than amongst other creatures; yet some there is: for the hen sitteth but three weeks; the turkey-hen, goose, and duck, a month: Quaere of others. The cause of the great difference of times amongst living creatures, is, either from the nature of the kind; or from the constitution of the womb. For the former, those that are longer in coming to their maturity or growth, are longer in the womb; as is chiefly seen in men: and so elephants which are long in the womb, are long time in coming to their full growth. But in most other kinds, the constitution of the womb, (that is, the hardnes or dryness thereof) is concurrent with the former cause. For the colt hath about four years of growth; and so the fawn; and so the calf. But whelps, which come to their growth (commonly) within three quarters of a year, are but nine weeks in the womb. As for birds, as there is less variety amongst them in the time of their bringing forth; so there is less variety in the time of their growth; most of them coming to their growth within a twelvemonth.

760. Some creatures bring forth many young ones at a burthen; as bitches, hares, coney, &c. Some ordinarily but one; as women, lionesses, &c. This may be caused, either by the quantity of sperm required to the producing one of that kind; which if less be required, may admit greater number; if more, fewer: or by the partitions and cells of the womb, which may sever the sperm.

Experiments in conform touching species visible.

761. There is no doubt, but light by refraction will shew greater, as well as things coloured. For like as a shining in the bottom of the water will shew greater; so will a candle in a lantern, in the bottom of the water, I have heard of a practice, that glow-worms in glasses were put in the water to make the fish come. But I am not yet informed, whether when a diver diveth, having his eyes open, and swimmeth upon his back; whether (I say) he see things in the air, greater or less. For it is manifest, that when the eye standeth in the finer medium, and the object is in the grofer, things shew greater; but contrariwise, when the eye is placed in the grofer medium, and the obiect in the finer, how it worketh I know not.

762. It would be well bolted out, whether great refractions may not be made upon reflexions, as well as upon direct beams. For example, we see, that take an empty basin, put an angel of gold, or what you will, into it; then go so far from the basin, till you cannot see the angel, because it is not in a right line; then fill the basin with water, and you shall see it out of its place, because of the reflexion. To proceed therefore, put a looking-glass into a basin of water; I suppose you shall not see the image in a right line, or at equal angles, but aside. I know not whether this experiment may not be extended so, as you might see the image, and not the glass, which for beauty and
Experiments in comfort touching impulsion and percussion.

763. A weighty body put into motion, is more easily impelled, than at first when it refeth. The cause is, partly because motion doth dissipate the torpor of solid bodies; which beside their motion of gravity, have in them a natural appetite not to move at all; and partly, because a body that refeth, doth get, by the refistance of the body upon which it refeth, a stronger compression of parts than it hath of itself: and therefore needeth more force to be put in motion. For if a weighty body be penible, and hang but by a thread, the percussion will make an impulsion very near as easily, as if it were already in motion.

764. A body over great, or over small, will not be thrown so far as a body of a middle size: so that (it seemeth) there must be a comminuration, or proportion between the body moved and the force, to make it move well. The cause is, because to the impulsion there is requisite the force of the body that moveth, and the refistance of the body that is moved: and if the body be too great, it yieldeth too little; and if it be too small, it refisteth too little.

765. It is common experience, that no weight will press or cut so strong, being laid upon a body, as falling or strucken from above. It may be the air hath some part in furthering the percussion; but the chief cause I take to be, for that the parts of the body moved have by impulsion, or by the motion of gravity continued a compression in them, as well downwards as they have when they are thrown, or shot through the air forwards. I conceive also, that the quick loss of that motion preventeth the refistance of the body below; and priority of the force (always) is of great efficacy, as appeared in infinite instances.

Experiment solitary touching titillation.

766. Tickling is most in the soles of the feet, and under the arm-holes, and on the sides. The cause is, the thinness of the skin in those parts, joined with the rareness of being touched there: for all tickling is a light motion of the spirits, which the thinness of the skin, and suddeness and rareness of touch do further: for we see a feather, or a rush, drawn along the lip or cheek, doth tickle; whereas a thing more obtuse, or a touch more hard, doth not. And for suddeness, we see no man can tickle himself: we see also that the palm of the hand, though it hath as thin a skin as the other parts mentioned, yet is not ticklish, because it is accustomed to be touched. Tickling also caueth laughter. The cause may be the emission of the spirits, and so of the breath, by a flight from titillation; for upon tickling we see there is ever a flaming, or shrinking away of the part to avoid it; and we see also, that if you tickle the nostrils with a feather, or straw, it procureth sneezing; which is a sudden emission of the spirits that do likewise expel the moisture. And tickling is ever painful, and not well endured.
NATURAL HISTORY. CENT. VIII.

Experiment solitary touching the scarcity of rain in AEgypt.

767. It is strange, that the river of Nilus overflowing, as it doth, the country of AEgypt, there should be nevertheless little or no rain in that country. The cause must be either in the nature of the water, or in the nature of the air, or of both. In the water, it may be ascribed either unto the long race of the water: for swift running waters vapour not so much as standing waters; or else to the concoction of the water; for waters well concocted vapour not so much as waters raw; no more than waters upon the fire do vapour so much after some time of boiling as at the first. And it is true, that the water of Nilus is sweeter than other waters in taste; and it is excellent good for the stone, and hypochondriacal melancholy, which sheweth it is lenifying; and it runneth through a country of a hot climate and flat, without shade either of woods or hills, whereby the sun must needs have great power to concoct it. As for the air, (from whence I conceive this want of showers cometh chiefly,) the cause must be, for that the air is of itself thin and thirsty; and as soon as ever it getteth any moisture from the water, it imbibeth and dissipateth it in the whole body of the air, and suffereth it not to remain in vapour, whereby it might breed rain.

Experiment solitary touching clarification.

768. It hath been touched in the title of percolations, (namely such as are inwards) that the whites of eggs and milk do clarify; and it is certain, that in AEgypt they prepare and clarify the water of Nile, by putting it into great jars of stone, and stirring it about with a few stamped almonds, wherewith they also besmear the mouth of the vessel; and so draw it off, after it hath rested some time. It were good to try this clarifying with almonds in new beer, or muste, to hasten and perfect the clarifying.

Experiment solitary touching plants without leaves.

769. There be scarce to be found any vegetables, that have branches and no leaves, except you allow coral for one. But there is also in the deserts of S. Macario in AEgypt a plant which is long, leafless, brown of colour, and branched like coral, save that it clo eth at the top. This being set in water within a house, spreadeth and displayeth strangely; and the people thereabout have a superstitious belief, that in the labour of women it helpeth to the easy deliverance.

Experiment solitary touching the materials of glass.

770. The crystalline Venice glass, is reported to be a mixture in equal portions of stones brought from Pavia by the river Ticinum; and the ashes of a weed, called by the Arabs kal, which is gathered in a desert between Alexandria and Rosetta; and is by the AEgyptians used first for fuel; and then they crush the ashes into lumps like a stone, and so sell them to the Venetians for their glafs-works.

Experiment solitary touching prohibition of putrefaction, and the long conservation of bodies.

771. It is strange, and well to be noted, how long carcases have continued uncorrupt, and in their former dimensions, as appeareth in the mummies of AEgypt; having lai det, as is conceived, (some of them,) three thousand years. It is true, they find means to draw forth the brains, and to take forth the
the entrails, which are the parts aptest to corrupt. But that is nothing to
the wonder: for we see what a soft and corruptible substance the flesh of
all the other parts of the body is. But it should seem, that according to our
observation and axiom, in our hundredth experiment, putrefaction, which
we conceive to be so natural a period of bodies, is but an accident; and that
matter maketh not that haste to corruption that is conceived. And there­
fore bodies in shining amber, in quick-silver, in balms, (whereof we now
speak,) in wax, in honey, in gums, and (it may be) in conservatories of
snow, &c. are preserved very long. It need not go for repetition, if we re­
sume again that which we said in the aforefaid experiment concerning anni­
hilation; namely, that if you provide against three causes of putrefaction,
bodies will not corrupt: the first is, that the air be excluded, for that un­
dermineth the body, and confpireth with the spirit of the body to dissolv­
e it. The second is, that the body adjacent and ambient be not commaterial, but
merely heterogeneal towards the body that is to be preferred; for nothing
can be received by the one, nothing can issue from the other; such are quick­
silver and white amber, to herbs, and flies, and such bodies: The third is,
that the body to be preferred be not of that gross that it may corrupt within
itself, although no part of it issue into the body adjacent: and therefore it
must be rather thin and small, than of bulk. There is a fourth remedy al­
so, which is, that if the body to be preferred be of bulk, as a corps is, then
the body that enclofeth it must have a virtue to draw forth, and dry the
moisture of the inward body; for else the putrefaction will play within,
though nothing issue forth. I remember Livy doth relate, that there were
found at a time two coffins of lead in a tomb; whereof the one contained
the body of king Numa, it being some four hundred years after his death:
and the other, his books of sacred rites and ceremonies, and the discipline
of the pontifs; and that in the coffin that had the body, there was nothing
(at all) to be seen, but a little light cinders about the sides; but in the cof­
fain that had the books, they were found as fresh as if they had been but
newly written, being written in parchment, and covered over with watch
 candles of wax three or four fold. By this it seemeth that the Romans
in Numa's time were not so good embalmers as the AEgyptians were; which
was the cause that the body was utterly consumed. But I find in Plutarch,
and others, that when Augustus Caesar visited the sepulchre of Alexander
the Great in Alexandria, he found the body to keep its dimension: but
withal, that notwithstanding all the embalming, (which no doubt was of the
best,) the body was so tender, as Caesar touching the nose of it, de­
ced it. Which maketh me find it very strange, that the AEgyptian mum­
 mies should be reported to be as hard as stone-pitch; for I find no difference
but one, which indeed may be very material; namely, that the ancient AE­
gyptian mummies were threwed in a number of folds of linen, bemearcd
with gums, in manner of fear-cloth, which it doth not appear was practicd
 upon the body of Alexander.

Experiment solitary touching the abundance of nitre in certain sea-shores.

772. Near the castle of Caty, and by the wells of Affan, in the land of
Idumæa; a great part of the way you would think the sea were near at hand,
theo' it be a good distance off: and it is nothing but the shining of the nitre
upon the sea-fands, such abundance of nitre the shores there do put forth.
Natural History. Cent. VIII.

Experiment solitary touching bodies that are born up by water.

773. The dead-sea, which vomiteth up bitumen, is of that crassitude, as living bodies bound hand and foot cast into it have been born up, and not sunk; which thoweth, that all sinking into water is but an over-weight of the body put into the water in respect of the water; so that you may make water so strong and heavy, of quick-silver, (perhaps) or the like, as may bear up iron, of which I see no use, but imposture. We see also, that all metals except gold, for the same reason swim upon quick-silver.

Experiment solitary touching fuel that consumeth little or nothing.

774. It is reported, that at the foot of a hill, near the mare mortuum, there is a black stone (whereof pilgrims make fires) which burneth like a coal, and diminisheth not, but only waxeth brighter and whiter. That it should do so, is not strange; for we see iron red-hot burneth, and consumeth not; but the strangenes is, that it should continue any time so: for iron, as soon as it is out of the fire, deadeth straightways. Certainly it were a thing of great use and profit, if you could find out fuel that would burn hot, and yet last long; neither am I altogether incredulous, but there may be such candles as they say are made of salamander's wool; being a kind of mineral, which whiteth also in the burning, and consumeth not. The question is this; flame must be made of somewhat, and commonly it is made of some tangible body which hath weight: but it is not impossible perhaps that it should be made of spirit, or vapour, in a body, (which spirit or vapour hath no weight,) such as is the matter of ignis fatuus. But then you will say, that that vapour also can last but a short time: to that it may be answered, that by the help of oil, and wax, and other candle-stuff, the flame may continue, and the wick not burn.

Experiment solitary economical touching cheap fuel.

775. Sea-coal lasts longer than char-coal; and char-coal of roots, being coaled into great pieces, lasts longer than ordinary char-coal. Turf and peat, and cow-sheards, are cheap fuels, and last long. Small-char, or briar-coal, poured upon char-coal, make them last longer. Sedge is a cheap fuel to brew or bake with; the rather because it is good for nothing else. Trial would be made of some mixture of sea-coal with earth or chalk; for if that mixture be, as the sea-coal men use it, privily, to make the bulk of the coal greater, it is deceit; but if it be used purposely, and be made known, it is saving.

Experiment solitary touching the gathering of wind for fresnesi.

776. It is at this day in use in Gaza, to couch postherds or vessels of earth in their walls to gather the wind from the top, and to pass it down in spouts into rooms. It is a device for fresnesi in great heats: and it is said, there are some rooms in Italy and Spain for fresnesi, and gathering the winds and air in the heats of summer: but they be but pennings of the winds, and enlarging them again, and making them reverberate and go round in circles, rather than this device of spouts in the wall.

Experiment solitary touching the trials of airs.

777. There would be used much diligence in the choice of some bodies and places (as it were) for the tasting of air; to discover the wholesome or
or unwholefomenefs, as well of feafons, as of the feats of dwellings. It is cer­
tain, that there be fome houfes wherein collufures and pies will gather mould
more than in others. And I am perfuaded, that a piece of raw flefh or fift, will
fooner corrupt in fome airs than in others. They be noble experiments that can
make this discovery; for they serve for a natural divination of feafons, better
than the astronomers can by their figures: and again, they teach men where
to change their dwelling, for their better health.

Experiment folitary touching encresping of milk in milch beafs:

778. There is a kind of ftone about Bethlehelm, which they grind to pow­
der, and put into water, whereof cattle drink, which maketh them give more
milk. Surely there would be fome better trials made of mixtures of water in
ponds for cattle, to make them more milch, or to fatten them, or to keep them
from murrain. It may be chalk and nitre are of the beft.

Experiment folitary touching fand of the nature of glafs.

779. It is reported, that in the valley near the mountain Carmel in fyu­
daea there is a fand, which of all other hath moft affinity with glafs; infor­
much as other minerals laid in it turn to a glaffy subftance without the fire;
and again, glafs put into it turneth into the mother fand. The thing is very
ftrange, if it be true: and it is likelieft to be caufed by fome natural fur­
ince or heat in the earth; and, yet they do not fpeak of any eruption of
flames. It were good to try in glafs-works, whether the crude materials of
glafs, mingled with glafs, already made and re-moulted, do not facilitate the
making of glafs with lefs heat.

Experiment folitary touching the growth of coral.

780. In the sea, upon the south-west of Sicily, much coral is found. It is
a fub-marine plant, it hath no leaves: it brancheth only when it is un­
der water; it is foft, and green of colour; but being brought into the air, it
becometh hard and fhining red, as we fee. It is faid alfo to have a white
berry; but we find it not brought over with the coral. Belike it is caft away
as nothing worth: enquire better of it, for the discovery of the nature of
the plant.

Experiment folitary touching the gathering of manna.

781. The manna of Calabria is the beft, and in moft plenty. They ga­
th it from the leaf of the mulberry tree: but not of fuch mulberry trees
as grow in the valleys. And manna falleth upon the leaves by night, as
other dews do. It fhould feem, that before thofe dews come upon trees
in the valleys, they difsipate and cannot hold out. It fhould feem alfo, the
mulberry leaf it felf hath fome coagulating virtue, which infipiffatheth the
dew, for that it is not found upon other trees: and we fee by the filk-worm
which feedeth upon that leaf, what a dainty juice it hath; and the
leaves alfo, (especially of the black mulberry) are fomewhat briftly, which
may help to prefervethe dew. Certainly it were not amifs to obferve a little
better the dews that fall upon trees, or herbs, growing on mountains; for it
may be, many dews fall, that fpend before they come to the valleys. And I
fuppofe, that he that would gather the beft May-dew for medicine, fhould ga­
ther it from the hills.
Experiment solitary touching the correcting of wine.

782. It is said, they have a manner to prepare their Greek wines, to keep them from fuming and inebriating, by adding some sulphur or alume: whereof the one is unctuous, and the other is astringent. And certain it is, that those two natures do best repress fumes. This experiment would be transferred unto other wine and strong beer, by putting in some like substances while they work; which may make them both to fume less, and to inflame less.

Experiment solitary touching the materials of wild-fire.

783. It is conceived by some, (not improbably) that the reason why wild-fires (whereof the principal ingredient is bitumen) do not quench with water, is, for that the first concretion of bitumen, is a mixture of a fiery and watery substance: so is not sulphur. This appeareth, for that in the place near Putetili, which they call the court of Vulcan, you shall hear under the earth a horrible thundring of fire and water conflicting together: and there break forth also spouts of boiling water. Now that place yieldeth great quantities of bitumen; whereas Aeetna, and Vesvius, and the like, which consist upon sulphur, shoot forth smoke, and ashes, and pumice, but no water. It is reported also, that bitumen mingled with lime, and put under water, will make as it were an artificial rock; the substance becometh so hard.

Experiment solitary touching plaster growing as hard as marble.

784. There is a cement, compounded of flower, whites of eggs, and stone powdered, that becometh hard as marble: wherewith Piscina Mira-bilis, near Cumæ, is said to have the walls plastered. And it is certain and tried, that the powder of load-stone and flint, by the addition of whites of eggs and gum-dragon, made into paste, will in a few days harden to the hardness of a stone.

Experiment solitary touching judgment of the cure in some ulcers and hurts.

785. It hath been noted by the ancients, that in full or impure bodies, ulcers or hurts in the legs are hard to cure, and in the head more easy. The cause is, for that ulcers or hurts in the legs require desiccation, which by the defluxion of humours to the lower parts is hindered; whereas hurts and ulcers in the head require it not; but contrariwise dryness maketh them more apt to consolidate. And in modern observation, the like difference hath been found between French-men and English-men; whereof the one’s constitution is more dry, and the other’s more moist. And therefore a hurt of the head is harder to cure in a French-man, and of the leg in an English-man.

Experiment solitary touching the healthfulness or unhealthfulness of the southern wind.

786. It hath been noted by the ancients, that southern winds, blowing much, without rain, do cause a feverous disposition of the year; but with rain, not. The cause is, for that southern winds do of themselves qualify the air, to be apt to cause fevers; but when showers are joined, they do refrigerate in part, and check the sultry heat of the southern wind. Therefore this holdeth not in the sea-coasts, because the vapour of the sea, without showers, doth refresh.
Experiment solitary touching wounds.

787. It hath been noted by the ancients, that wounds which are made with brass, heal more easily than wounds made with iron. The cause is, for that brass hath in itself a sanative virtue; and so in the very instant helpeth somewhat: but iron is corrosive, and not sanative. And therefore it were good, that the instruments which are used by chirurgeons about wounds, were rather of brass than iron.

Experiment solitary touching mortification by cold.

788. In the cold countries, when men's noses and ears are mortified, and (as it were) gangrened with cold, if they come to a fire they rot off presently. The cause is, for that the few spirits that remain in those parts, are suddenly drawn forth, and so putrefaction is made compleat. But snow put upon them helpeth; for that it preserveth those spirits that remain, till they can revive; and besides, snow hath in it a secret warmth: as the monk proved out of the text; *qui dat nivem jicut lanam, gelu jicut cineres Spargit.* Whereby he did infer, that snow did warm like wool, and frost did freeze like ashes. Warm water also doth good; because by little and little it openeth the pores, without any sudden working upon the spirits. This experiment may be transferred unto the cure of gangrenes, either coming of themselves, or induced by too much applying of opiates: wherein you must beware of dry heat, and resort to things that are refrigerant, with an inward warmth and virtue of cherishing.

Experiment solitary touching weight.

789. Weigh iron and *aqua fortis* severally; then dissolve the iron in the *aqua fortis*, and weigh the dissolution; and you shall find it to bear as good weight as the bodies did severally; notwithstanding a good deal of waste, by a thick vapour that issueth during the working: which sheweth that the opening of a body doth increase the weight. This was tried once or twice, but I know not whether there were any error in the trial.

Experiment solitary touching the super-natation of bodies.

790. Take of *aqua fortis* two ounces, of quicksilver two drams, (for that charge the *aqua fortis* will bear;) the dissolution will not bear a flint as big as a nutmeg: yet (no doubt) the increasing of the weight of water, will increase its power of bearing; as we see brine, when it is salt enough, will bear an egg. And I remember well a physician, that used to give some mineral baths for the gout, &c. And the body when it was put into the bath, could not get down so easily as in ordinary water. But it seemeth, the weight of the quicksilver, more than the weight of a stone, doth not compensate the weight of a stone, more than the weight of the *aqua fortis*.

Experiment solitary touching the flying of unequal bodies in the air.

791. Let there be a body of unequal weight; (as of wood and lead, or bone and lead;) if you throw it from you with the light end forward, it will turn, and the weightier end will recover to be forwards; unless the body be over long. The cause is, for that the more dense body hath a more violent presuffre of the parts from the first impulsion; which is the cause (though heretofore not found out, as hath been often said) of all violent motions: and when the hinder part moveth twister, (for that it 1eas endureth pressure...
of parts) than the forward part can make way for it, it must needs be that the body turn over: for (turned) it can more easily draw forward the lighter part. Galilaeus noteth it well; that if an open trough wherein water is, be driven faster than the water can follow, the water gathereth upon an heap towards the hinder end, where the motion began; which he supposeth (holding confidently the motion of the earth) to be the cause of the ebbing and flowing of the ocean; because the earth over-runneth the water. Which theory, though it be false, yet the first experiment is true. As for the inequality of the pressure of parts, It appeareth manifestly in this; that if you take a body of stone, or iron, and another of wood, of the same magnitude and shape, and throw them with equal force, you cannot possibly throw the wood so far as the stone or iron.

Experiment solitary touching water, that it may be the medium of sounds.

792. It is certain, (as it hath been formerly in part touched) that water may be the medium of sounds. If you dash a stone against a stone in the bottom of the water, it maketh a sound. So a long pole struck upon gravel in the bottom of the water, maketh a sound. Nay, if you should think that the sound cometh up by the pole, and not by the water, you shall find that an anchor let down by a rope, maketh a sound; and yet the rope is no solid body whereby the sound can ascend.

Experiment solitary of the flight of the spirits upon odious objects.

793. All objects of the senses which are very offensive, do cause the spirits to retire; and upon their flight, the parts are (in some degree) destitute; and so there is induced in them a trepidation and horror. For sounds, we see, that the grating of a saw, or any very harsh noise, will set the teeth on edge, and make all the body shiver. For tastes, we see, that in the taking of a potion, or pills, the head and the neck shake. For odious smells, the like effect followeth, which is less perceived, because there is a remedy at hand by stopping of the nose: but in horses that can use no such help, we see the smell of a carrion, especially of a dead horse, maketh them fly away, and take on almost as if they were mad. For feeling, if you come out of the sun suddenly into a shade, there followeth a chilliness or shivering in all the body. And even in light, which hath (in effect) no odious object, coming into sudden darkness, induceth an offer to shiver.

Experiment solitary touching the super-reflexion of echo's.

794. There is in the city of Ticinum in Italy, a church that hath windows only from above: it is in length an hundred feet, in breadth twenty feet, and in height near fifty; having a door in the midst. It reporteth the voice twelve or thirteen times, if you stand by the close end wall, over-against the door. The echo faded, and dieth by little and little, as the echo at Pont-Charenton doth. And the voice foundeth, as if it came from above the door. And if you stand at the lower end, or on either side of the door, the echo holdeth; but if you stand in the door, or in the midst just over-against the door, not. Note that all echo's found better against old walls than new; because they are more dry and hollow.

Experiment solitary touching the force of imagination, imitating that of the sense.

795. Those effects which are wrought by the percussion of the sense, and
CENT. VIII. NATURAL HISTORY.

by things in fact, are produced likewise in some degree by the imagination. Therefore if a man see another eat four or acid things, which set the teeth on edge, this object tainteth the imagination. So that he that feeth the thing done by another, hath his own teeth also set on edge. So if a man see another turn swiftly and long; or if he look upon wheels that turn, himself waxeth turn-sick. So if a man be upon an high place without rails, or good hold, except he be used to it, he is ready to fall: for imagining a fall, it putteth his spirits into the very action of a fall. So many upon the seeing of others bleed, or strangled, or tortured, themselves are ready to faint, as if they bled, or were in strife.

Experiment solitary touching preservation of bodies.

796. Take a stock-gilly-flower, and tie it gently upon a stick, and put them both into a hoop glafs full of quicksilver, so that the flower be covered: then lay a little weight upon the top of the glafs, that may keep the stick down; and look upon them after four or five days; and you shall find the flower fresh, and the stalk harder, and less flexible, than it was. If you compare it with another flower gathered at the same time, it will be the more manifest. This sheweth that bodies do preserve excellently in quicksilver; and not preserve only, but by the coldness of the quicksilver induceth; for the freshness of the flower may be merely conservation; which is the more to be observed, because the quicksilver presteth the flower; but the stiffness of the stalk cannot be without induration, from the cold (as it seemeth) of the quicksilver.

Experiment solitary touching the growth or multiplying of metals.

797. It is reported by some of the ancients, that in Cyprus there is a kind of iron, that being cut into pieces, and put into the ground, if it be well water’d, will encrease into greater pieces. This is certain, and known of old; that lead will multiply and encrease; as hath been seen in old statues of stone which have been put in cellars; the feet of them being bound with leaden bands; where (after a time) there appeared, that the lead did swell; insomuch as it hanged upon the stone like warts.

Experiment solitary touching the drowning of the more base metal in the more precious.

798. I call drowning of metals, when that the baser metal is so incorporated with the more rich, as it can by no means be separated again; which is a kind of version, though false; as if silver should be inseparably incorporated with gold; or copper, and lead, with silver. The ancient elektrum had in it a fifth of silver to the gold, and made a compound metal, as fit for most uses as gold; and more replendent, and more qualified in some other properties; but then that was easily separated. This to do privily, or to make the compound pass for the rich metal simple, is an adulteration or counterfeiting; But if it be done avowedly, and without disguising, it may be a great saving of the richer metal. I remember to have heard of a man, skilful in metals, that a fifteenth part of silver incorporate with gold, will not be recovered by any water of separation, except you put a greater quantity of silver to draw to it the less; which (he said) is the laft refuge in separations. But that is a tedious way, which no man (almost) will think on. This would be better enquired; and the quantity of the fifteenth turned to a twentieth; and likewise with some little additional, that may further the in-

Vol. III. X 2
trifick incorporation. Note, that silver in gold will be detected by weight, compared with the dimension; but lead in silver, (lead being the weightier metal,) will not be detected; if you take so much the more silver, as will countervail the over-weight of the lead.

Experiment solitary touching fixation of bodies.

799. Gold is the only substance, which hath nothing in it volatile, and yet melteth without much difficulty. The melting thereof that it is not jejune, or scarce in spirit. So that the fixing of it is not want of spirit to fly out, but the equal spreading of the tangible parts, and the close conservation of them: whereby they have the less appetite, and no means (at all) to issue forth. It were good therefore to try, whether glass remolten do lose any weight? for the parts in glass are evenly spread; but they are not so close as in gold; as we see by the easy admission of light, heat, and cold; and by the smallness of the weight. There be other bodies fixed which have little or no spirit; so as there is nothing to fly out; as we see in the stuff, whereof coppers are made; which they put into furnaces, upon which fire worketh not: so that there are three causes of fixation; the even spreading both of the spirits and tangible parts, the closeness of the tangible parts, and the jejuneeness or extreme comminution of spirits; of which three, the two first may be joined with a nature liquefiable, the last not.

Experiment solitary touching the restless nature of things in themselves, and their desire to change.

800. It is a profound contemplation in nature, to consider of the emptiness (as we may call it) or insatisfaction of several bodies, and of their appetite to take in others. Air taketh in lights, and sounds, and finelles, and vapours; and it is most manifest, that it doth it with a kind of thirst, as not satisfied with its own former consistence; for else it would never receive them in so suddenly and easily. Water, and all liquors, do hastily receive dry and more terrestrial bodies, proportionable: and dry bodies, on the other side, drink in waters and liquors: so that (as it was well said by one of the ancients, of earthy and watery substances) one is a glue to another. Parchment, skins, cloth, &c. drink in liquors, though themselves be entire bodies, and not comminuted, as sand and ashes, not apparently porous: metals themselves do receive in readily strong-waters; and strong-waters likewise do readily pierce into metals and stones: and that strong-water will touch upon gold, that will not touch upon silver; and é converto. And gold, which seemeth by the weight to be the closedst and most solid body, doth greedily drink in quick-silver. And it seemeth, that this reception of other bodies is not violent: for it is (many times) reciprocal, and as it were with content. Of the causé of this, and to what axiom it may be referred, consider attentively; for as for the pretty assertion, that matter is like a common trumpet that defireth all forms, it is but a wandering notion. Only flame doth not content it self to take in any other body, but either to overcome and turn another body into it self, as by victory: or it self to die, and go out.
NATURAL HISTORY.

Experiments in corfort touching perception in bodies insensible, tending to natural divination or subtile trials.

It is certain, that all bodies whatever, though they have no sense, yet they have perception: for when one body is applied to another, there is a kind of election to embrace that which is agreeable, and to exclude or expel that which is ingrate: and whether the body be alterant, or altered, evermore a perception precedeth operation; for else all bodies would be alike one to another. And sometimes this perception, in some kind of bodies, is far more subtile than the sense: so that the sense is but a dull thing in comparison of it: we see a weather-glass will find the least difference of the weather, in heat, or cold, when men find it not. And this perception also is sometimes at distance, as well as upon the touch; as when the load-stone draweth iron; or flame fireth Naphtha of Babylon, a great distance off. It is therefore a subject of a very noble enquiry, to enquire of the more subtile perceptions; for it is another key to open nature, as well as the sense, and sometimes better. And besides, it is a principal means of natural divination; for that which in these perceptions appeareth early, in the great effects cometh long after. It is true also, that it serveth to discover that which is hid, as well as to foretel that which is to come, as it is in many subtile trials; as to try whether seeds be old or new, the sense cannot inform; but if you boil them in water, the new seeds will sprout sooner: and so of water, the taste will not discover the best water; but the speedy confirming of it, and many other means, which we have heretofore set down, will discover it. So in all physiognomy, the lineaments of the body will discover those natural inclinations of the mind which dissimulation will conceal, or discipline will suppres. We shall therefore now handle only those two perceptions, which pertain to natural divination and discovery; leaving the handling of perception in other things to be disposed elsewhere. Now it is true, that divination is attained by other means; as if you know the causes, if you know the concomitants, you may judge of the effect to follow: and the like may be said of discovery: but we tye our selves here to that divination and discovery chiefly, which is caus'd by an early or subtile perception.

The aptness or propension of air or water, to corrupt or putrefy, (no doubt) is to be found before it break forth into manifest effects of diseases, blasting,
NATURAL HISTORY. CENT IX.

801. The wind blowing much from the south without rain, and worms in the oak-apple, have been spoken of before. Also the plenty of frogs, grasshoppers, flies, and the like creatures bred of putrefaction, doth portend pestilential years.

802. Great and early heats in the spring, (and namely in May,) without winds, portend the same; and generally to do years with little wind or thunder.

803. Great droughts in summer, lasting till towards the end of August, and some gentle showers upon them, and then some dry weather again, do portend a pestilential summer the year following: for about the end of August all the sweetness of the earth, which goeth into plants and trees, is exhausted, (and much more if the August be dry;) so that nothing then can breathe forth of the earth but a gross vapour, which is apt to corrupt the air: and that vapour, by the first showers, if they be gentle, is released, and cometh forth abundantly. Therefore they that come abroad soon after these showers, are commonly taken with sickness; and in Africa, no body will stir out of doors after the first showers. But if the first showers come vehemently, then they rather wash and fill the earth, than give it leave to breathe forth presently. But if dry weather come again, then it fixeth and continueth the corruption of the air, upon the first showers begun; and maketh it of ill influence, even to the next summer; except a very frosty winter discharge it, which seldom succeedeth such droughts.

804. The lesser infections, of the small-pox, purple fevers, agues, in the summer precedent, and hovering all winter, do portend a great pestilence in the summer following; for putrefaction doth not rise to its height at once.

805. It were good to lay a piece of raw flesh or fish in the open air; and if it putrefy quickly, it is a sign of a disposition in the air to putrefaction. And because you cannot be informed whether the putrefaction be quick or late, except you compare this experiment with the like experiment in another year, it were not amiss in the same year, and at the same time, to lay one piece of flesh or fish in the open air, and another of the same kind and bigness within doors: for I judge, that if a general disposition be in the air to putrefy, the flesh, or fish, will sooner putrefy abroad where the air hath more power, than in the house, where it hath less, being many ways corrected. And this experiment would be made about the end of March: for that season is likeliest to discover what the winter hath done, and what the summer following will do, upon the air. And because the air (no doubt) receiveth great tincture and infusion from the earth; it were good to try that exposing of flesh, or fish, both upon a stake of wood some height above the earth, and upon the flat of the earth.

806. Take May dew, and see whether it putrefy quickly or no; for that likewise may disclose the quality of the air, and vapour of the earth, more or less corrupted.

807. A dry March and a dry May, portend a wholesome summer, if there be a showering April between: but otherwise it is a sign of a pestilential year.

808. As the discovery of the disposition of the air is good for the prognosticks of wholesome and unwholesome years; so it is of much more use, for the choice of places to dwell in: at the least, for lodges, and retiring places for
for health: (for mansion-houses respect provisions as well as health,) where-
in the experiments above-mentioned may serve.

809. But for the choice of places, or seats, it is good to make trial, not
only of aptness of air to corrupt, but also of the moisture and dryness of the
air, and the temper of it, in heat or cold; for that may concern health di-
versely. We see that there be some houses, wherein sweet meats will relent,
and baked meats will mould, more than in others; and wainscots will also
sweat more; so that they will almost run with water: all which (no doubt)
are caused chiefly by the moistness of the air in those seats. But because it is
better to know it before a man buildeth his house than to find it after, take
the experiments following.

810. Lay wool, or a sponge, or bread, in the place you would try, compa-
ing it with some other places; and see whether it doth not moisten, and make
the wool, or sponge, &c. more ponderous than the other: and if it do, you
may judge of that place, as situate in a gross and moist air.

811. Because it is certain, that in some places, either by the nature of
the earth, or by the situation of woods and hills, the air is more unequal than
in others; and inequality of air is ever an enemy to health; it were good to
take two weather-glasses, matches in all things, and set them, for the same
hours of one day, in several places, where no shade is, nor enclosures; and
to mark when you set them, how far the water cometh; and to compare
them, when you come again, how the water standeth then: and if you find
them unequal, you may be sure that the place where the water is lowest
is in the warmer air, and the other in the colder. And the greater the inequa-
ity be, of the ascent or descent of the water, the greater is the inequality of the
temper of the air.

812. The predictions likewise of cold and long winters, and hot and dry
summers, are good to be known; as well for the discovery of the causes, as
for divers provisions. That of plenty of haws and hips, and briar-berries,
hath been spoken of before. If wainscot, or stone, that have used to sweat,
be more dry in the beginning of winter, or the drops of the eaves of houses
come more slowly down than they use, it portendeth a hard and frothy win-
ter. The cause is, for that it sheweth an inclination of the air to dry weather;
which in winter is ever joined with frost.

813. Generally a moist and a cool summer portendeth a hard winter. The
cause is, for that the vapours of the earth are not dissipated in the sum-
mer by the sun; and so they rebound upon the winter.

814. A hot and dry summer, and autumn, and especially if the heat and
drought extend far into September, portendeth an open beginning of winter;
and colds to succeed toward the latter part of the winter, and the beginning
of the spring: for till then, the former heat and drought bear the sway; and
the vapours are not sufficiently multiplied.

815. An open and warm winter portendeth a hot and dry summer: for
the vapours disperse into the winter showers; whereas cold and frost keep-
eth them in, and transporteth them into the late spring, and summer fol-
lowing.

816. Birds that use to change countries at certain seasons, if they come
earlier, do shew the temperature of weather, according to that country
whence they came: as the winter birds, (namely, woodcocks, seldfares, &c.)
if they come earlier, and out of the northern countries, with us shew cold
winters. And if it be in the same country, then they shew a temperature
of season, like unto that season in which they come: as swallows, bats,
cuckoos,
cuckoos, &c. that come towards summer, if they come early shew a hot summer to follow.

817. The prognosticks, more immediate, of weather to follow soon after, are more certain than those of seasons. The refounding of the sea upon the shore; and the murmuring of winds in the woods, without apparent wind, shew wind to follow; for such winds breathing chiefly out of the earth, are not at the first perceived, except they be pent by water or wood. And therefore a murmuring out of caves likewise portendeth as much.

818. The upper regions of the air perceive the collection of the matter of tempests and winds, before the air here below: and therefore the obscuring of the smaller stars, is a sign of tempest following. And of this kind you shall find a number of instances in our inquisition de ventis.

819. Great mountains have a perception of the disposition of the air to tempests, sooner than the valleys or plains below; and therefore they say in Wales, when certain hills have their night-caps on, they mean mischief. The cause is, for that tempests, which are for the most part bred above in the middle region, (as they call it) are soonest perceived to collect in the places next it.

820. The air, and fire, have subtile perceptions of wind rising, before men find it. We see the trembling of a candle will discover a wind that otherwise we do not feel; and the flexuous burning of flames doth shew the air beginneth to be unquiet; and so do coals of fire by casting off the ashes more than they use. The cause is, for that no wind at the first, till it hath struck and driven the air, is apparent to the sense: but flame is easier to move than air: and for the ashes, it is no marvel, though wind unperceived shake them off; for we usually try which way the wind bloweth, by casting up grass, or chaff, or such light things into the air.

821. When wind expireth from under the sea, as it causeth some resounding of the water (whereof we spake before) so it causeth some light motions of bubbles, and white circles of froth. The cause is, for that the wind cannot be perceived by the sense, until there be an eruption of a great quantity from under the water; and so it getteth into a body: whereas in the first putting up it cometh in little portions.

822. We spake of the ashes that coals cast off; and of grass and chaff carried by the wind; so any light thing that moveth, when we find no wind, sheweth a wind at hand; as when feathers, or down of thistles, fly to and fro in the air.

For prognosticks of weather from living creatures, it is to be noted; that creatures that live in the open air, (fiah dio) must needs have a quicker impression from the air, than men that live most within doors; and especially birds who live in the air freelest and clearest; and are aptest by their voice to tell tales what they find; and likewise by the motion of their flight to express the same.

823. Water-fowls, (as sea-gulls, moor-hens, &c.) when they flock and fly together from the sea towards the shores; and contrariwise, land birds, (as crows, swallows, &c.) when they fly from the land to the waters, and beat the waters with their wings, do foretell rain and wind. The cause is, pleasure that both kinds take in the moisture and density of the air; and so desire to be in motion, and upon the wing, whitherforever they would otherwise go: for it is no marvel, that water-fowl do joy most in that air, which is likest water; and land birds also, (many of them) delight in bathing, and moist air. For the same reason also, many birds do prune their feathers;
thers; and geese do gaggle; and crows seem to call upon rain: all which is but the comfort they seem to receive in the relenting of the air.

824. The heron, when the fourth high, (so as sometimes she is seen to pass over a cloud) sweathet winds: but kites flying aloft, shew fair and dry weather. The cause may be, for that they both mount most into the air, of that temper wherein they delight: and the heron being a water-fowl, taketh pleasure in the air that is condensed; and besides, being but heavy of wing, needeth the help of the grosser air. But the kite affecteth not so much the grossness of the air, as the cold and freeness thereof; for being a bird of prey, and therefore hot, the delighteth in the fresh air; and (many times) flyeth against the wind; as trouts and salmons swim against the stream. And yet it is true also, that all birds find an ease in the depth of the air; as swimmers do in a deep water. And therefore when they are aloft, they can uphold themselves with their wings spread, scarce moving them.

825. Fishes, when they play towards the top of the water, do commonly foretell rain. The cause is, for that a fish hating the dry, will not approach the air till it groweth moist; and when it is dry, will fly it, and swim lower.

826. Beasts do take comfort (generally) in a moist air; and it maketh them eat their meat better: and therefore sheep will get up betimes in the morning to feed against rain; and cattle, and deer, and coney, will feed hard before rain; and a heifer will put up her nose, and snuff in the air against rain.

827. The trefoil against rain sweleth in the stalk; and so standeth more upright; for by wet, stalks do erect, and leaves bow down. There is a small red flower in the stubble-fields, which country people call the wincopipe; which if it open in the morning, you may be sure of a fair day to follow.

828. Even in men, aches, and hurts, and corns, do encrease either towards rain, or towards frost: for the one maketh the humours to a-bound; and the other maketh them sharper. So we see both extremes bring the gout.

829. Worms, vermin, &c. do fore-flew (likewise) rain: for earth-worms will come forth, and moles will cast up more, and fleas bite more, against rain.

830. Solid bodies likewise fore-flew rain. As stones and wainscot when they sweat: and boxes and pegs of wood, when they draw and wind hard; though the former be but from an outward cause; for that the stone, or wainscot, turneth and beateth back the air against itself; but the latter is an inward swelling of the body of the wood itself.

Experiment solitary touching the nature of appetite in the stomach.

831. Appetite is moved chiefly by things that are cold and dry; the cause is, for that cold is a kind of indigence of nature, and calleth upon supply; and so is dryness: and therefore all four things (as vinegar, juice of lemons, oil of vitriol, &c.) provoke appetite. And the disease which they call appetitus caninus, consisteth in the matter of an acid and glazy phlegm in the mouth of the stomach. Appetite is also moved by four things; for that four things induce a contraction in the nerves, placed in the mouth of the stomach; which is a great cause of appetite. As for the cause why onions, and salt, and pepper, in baked meats, move appetite, it is by vellication of those nerves; for motion wheteth. As for wormwood, olives, capers, and others of that kind which participate of bitterness, they move appetite by abstinence.
So as there be four principal causes of appetite; the refrigeration of the stomach joined with some dryness; contraction, vellication, and abfention: besides hunger, which is an emptiness; and yet over-fattening doth (many times) caufe the appetite to cease; for that want of meat maketh the stomach draw humours; and such humours as are light and choleric, which quench appetite most.

Experiment solitary touching sweetness of odour from the rainbow.

832. It hath been observed by the ancients, that where a rainbow feemeth to hang over, or to touch, there breatheth forth a sweet smell. The cause is, for that this happeneth but in certain matters, which have in themselves some sweetness; which the gentle dew of the rainbow doth draw forth: and the like do soft flowers; for they also make the ground sweet: but none are so delicate as the dew of the rainbow where it faileth. It may be also that the water itself hath some sweetness: for the rainbow confieth of a glomeration of small drops, which cannot possibly fall, but from the air that is very low; and therefore may hold the very sweetness of the herbs and flowers, as a distilled water: for rain, and other dew that fall from high, cannot preserve the sweetness, being dissipated in the drawing up: neither do we know, whether some water itself may not have some degree of sweetness. It is true, that we find it sensibly in no pool, river, nor fountain; but good earth newly turned, hath a sweetness and good scent; which water, if it be not too equal, for equal objects never move the sense, may also have. Certain it is, that bay-falt, which is but a kind of water congeald, will sometimes smell like violets.

Experiment solitary touching sweet smells.

833. To sweet smells heat is requisite, to concoct the matter; and some moisture to spread the breath of them. For heat, we see that woods and spices are more odorate in the hot countries, than in the cold: for moisture, we see that things too much dried, lose their sweetness; and flowers growing, smell better in a morning, or evening, than at noon. Some sweet smells are destroyed by approach to the fire; as violets, wall-flowers, gilly-flowers, pinks; and generally all flowers that have cool and delicate spirits. Some do scarce come forth, or at least not so pleasantly, as by means of the fire; as juniper, sweet gums, &c. Some do continue both on the fire, and from the fire; as rose-water, &c. Some do scarce come forth, or at least not so pleasantly, as by means of the fire; as juniper, sweet gums, &c. And all smells that are enclosed in a fast body, but generally those smells are the most grateful, where the degree of heat is small; or where the strength of the smell is allayed; for these things do not so much the sense, than satiate it. And therefore the smell of violets and roses exceedeth in sweetness that of spices and gums: and the strongest fort of smells are best in a west afar off.

Experiment solitary touching the corporeal substance of smells.

834. It is certain, that no smell issueth, but with emisfion of some corporeal substance; not as it is in light, and colours, and in sounds. For we see plainly, that smell doth spread nothing that distance that the other do. It is true, that some woods of oranges, and heaths of rosmary, will smell a great way into the sea, perhaps twenty miles; but what is that, since a peal of ordnance will do as much, which moveth in a small compass? Whereas those woods and heaths are of vaft spaces; besides, we see that smells do adhere to hard bodies; as in perfuming of gloves, &c. which sheweth
Experiment solitary touching fetid and fragrant odours.

The excrements of most creatures smell ill; chiefly to the same creature that voideth them: for we see besides that of man, that pigeons and horses thrive best, if their houses and stables be kept sweet; and so of cage birds: and the cat burieth that which she voideth: and it holdeth chiefly in those beasts which feed upon flesh. Dogs (almost) only of beasts delight in fetid odours; which showeth there is somewhat in their sense of smell, differing from the smells of other beasts. But the cause why excrements smell ill, is manifest; for that the body itself rejecteth them; much more the spirits: and we see that those excrements that are of the first digestion, smell the worst; as the excrements from the belly: those that are from the second digestion least ill; as urine: and those that are from the third; yet least: for sweat is not so bad as the other two; especially of some persons, that are full of heat. Likewise most putrefactions are of an odious smell: for they smell either fetid or mouldy. The cause may be, for that putrefaction doth bring forth such a confusion, as is most contrary to the confinence of the body whilst it is found: for it is a mere dissolution of that form. Besides, there is another reason which is profound: and it is, that the objects that please any of the senses, have (all) some equality, and (as it were) order in their composition: but where those are wanting, the object is ever ingrate. So mixture of many disagreeing colours is ever unpleasent to the eye: mixture of discordant sounds is unpleasent to the ear: mixture, or hodge-podge of many tastes, is unpleasent to the taste: harshnesses and ruggedness of bodies is unpleasent to the touch: now it is certain, that all putrefaction being a dissolution of the first form, is a mere confusion and unformed mixture of the part. Nevertheless it is strange, and seemeth to cross the former observation, that some putrefactions and excrements do yield excellent odours, as civet and musk; and as some think ambergrase: for divers take it (though improbably) to come from the sperm of a fish: and the moss we spake of from apple-trees, is little better than an excretion. The reason may be, for that there paffeth in the excrements, and remaineth in the putrefactions, some good spirits; especially where they proceed from creatures that are very hot. But it may be also joined with a further cause which is more subtle; and it is, that the senses love not to be over-pleasfed; but to have a commixture of somewhat that is in itself ingrati. Certainly, we see how discords in music, falling upon concords, make the sweetest strains: and we see again, what strange tasters delight the taste; as red herrings, caviary, Parmesan, &c. And it may be the same holdeth in smells: for those kind of smells that we have mention'd, are all strong, and do pull and vellicate the sense. And we find also, that places where men urine, commonly have some smell of violets: and urine, if one hath eaten nutmeg, hath so too.

The slothful, general, and indefinite contemplations, and notions, of the elements and their conjugations; of the influences of heaven; of heat, cold, moisture, drought, qualities active, passive, and the like; have swallowed up the true passages, and processes, and affects, and confinences of matter and natural bodies. Therefore they are to be set aside, being but notional and ill limited; and definite axioms are to be drawn out of measured instances: and so affect to be made to the more general axioms by scale. And of these kinds of processes of natures, and characters of matter, we will now set down some instances.
Experiment solitary touching the causes of putrefaction.

836. All putrefactions come chiefly from the inward spirits of the body; and partly also from the ambient body, be it air, liquor, or whatsoever else. And this last, by two means: either by ingress of the substance of the ambient body into the body putrefied; or else by excitation and solicitation of the body putrefied, and the parts thereof, by the body ambient. As for the received opinion, that putrefaction is caused, either by cold, or peregrine and preternatural heat, it is but nugation: for cold in things inanimate, is the greatest enemy that is to putrefaction; though it extinguisheth vivification, which ever consisteth in spirits attenuate, which the cold doth congeal and coagulate. And as for the peregrine heat, it is thus far true, that if the proportion of the adventine heat be greatly predominant to the natural heat and spirits of the body, it tendeth to dissolution, or notable alteration. But this is wrought by emission, or suppreffion, or suffocation, of the native spirits; and also by the disorganization and discomposure of the tangible parts, and other passages of nature, and not by a conflict of heats.

Experiment solitary touching bodies unperfectly mixed.

837. In versions, or main alterations of bodies, there is a medium between the body, as it is at first, and the body resulting; which medium is corpus imperfecte mixtum, and is transitory, and not durable; as mists, smacks, vapours, chylus in the stomach, living creatures in the first vivification: and the middle action, which produceth such imperfect bodies, is fitly called (by some of the ancients) inquination, or inconcoction, which is a kind of putrefaction: for the parts are in confusion, till they settle one way or other.

Experiment solitary touching concoction and crudity.

838. The word concoction, or digestion, is chiefly taken into use from living creatures and their organs; and from thence extended to liquors and fruits, &c. Therefore they speak of meat concocted; urine and excrements concocted; and the four digestions, (in the stomach, in the liver, in the arteries and nerves, and in the several parts of the body,) are likewise called concoctions: and they are all made to be the works of heat: all which notions are but ignorant catches of a few things, which are most obvious to men's observations. The constantest notion of concoction is, that it should signify the degrees of alteration, of one body into another, from crudity to perfect concoction; which is the ultimity of that action or process: and while the body to be converted and altered, is too strong for the efficient that should convert or alter it, (whereby it resifteth and holdeth fast in some degree the first form or consistence) it is (all that while) crude and inconcoct; and the process is to be called crudity and inconcoction. It is true, that concoction is in great part the work of heat, but not the work of heat alone: for all things that further the conversion, or alteration, (as rest, mixture of a body already concocted, &c.) are also means to concoction. And there are of concoction two periods; the one assimilation, or absolute conversion and subjection; the other maturation; whereof the former is most conspicuous in the bodies of living creatures; in which there is an absolute conversion and assimilation of the nourishment into the body: and likewise in the bodies of plants: and again in metals, where there is a full transmutation. The other, (which is maturation) is seen in liquors and fruits; wherein there is not desired, nor pretended, an utter conversion, but only an alteration to that
that form, which is most sought for man's use; as in clarifying of drinks, ripening of fruits, &c. But note, that there be two kinds of absolute conversions; the one is, when a body is converted into another body, which was before; as when nourishment is turned into flesh; that is it which we call assimilation. The other is, when the conversion is into a body merely new, and which was not before; as if silver should be turned to gold, or iron to copper: and this conversion is better called, for distinction sake, transmutation.

Experiment solitary touching alterations, which may be called majors.

839. There are also divers other great alterations of matter and bodies, besides those that tend to concoction and maturation; for whatsoever doth so alter a body, as it returneth not again to that it was, may be called alteratio major; as when meat is boiled, roasted, or fried, &c. or when bread and meat are baked; or when cheese is made of curds, or butter of cream, or coals of wood, or bricks of earth; and a number of others. But to apply notions philosophical to plebeian terms; or to say, where the notions cannot be reconciled, that there wanteth a term or nomenclature for it, (as the ancients used,) they be but illustris of ignorance; for knowledge will ever a wandering and indigested thing, if it be but a commixture of a few notions that are at hand and occur, and not excited from sufficient number of infances, and those well collated.

The consistences of bodies are very diverse: dense, rare, tangible, pneumatical, volatile, fixed; determinate, not determinate; hard, soft, cleaving, not cleaving; congealable, not congealable; liqueifiable, not liqueifiable; fragile, tough; flexible, inflexible; tractile, or to be drawn forth in length, intractile; porous, solid; equal and smooth, unequal; venous, and fibrous, and with grains, entire; and divers others; all which, to refer to heat, and cold, and moisture, and drought, is a compendious and inutile speculation. But of these see principally our Abecedarium naturae; and otherwise parsim in this our Sylva sylvarum: nevertheless in some good part, we shall handle divers of them now presently.

Experiment solitary touching bodies liqueifiable, and not liqueifiable.

840. Liqueifiable, and not liqueifiable, proceed from these causes: liquefaction is ever caused by the detention of the spirits, which play within the body, and open it. Therefore such bodies as are more turgid of spirit, or that have their spirits more straitly imprisoned; or again, that hold them better pleased and content, are liqueifiable: for these three dispositions of bodies do arrest the emision of the spirits. An example of the first two properties is in metals; and of the last in grease, pitch, sulphur, butter, wax, &c. The disposition not to liquefy proceedeth from the easy emission of the spirits, whereby the grofer parts contract; and therefore bodies june of spirits, or which part with their spirits more willingly, are not liqueifiable; as wood, clay, free-stone, &c. But yet even many of those bodies that will not melt, or will hardly melt, will notwithstanding soften; as iron in the forge; and a flick bathed in hot ashes, which thereby become more flexible. Moreover there are some bodies which do liquefy or disolve by fire; as metals, wax, &c. and other bodies, which dissolve in water; as salt, sugar, &c. The cause of the former proceedeth from the dilatation of the spirits by heat: the cause of the latter proceedeth from the opening of the tangible parts, which desire to receive the liquor. Again, there are some bodies
dies that dissolve with both; as gum, &c. And those be such bodies, as on the one side have good store of spirit; and on the other side, have the tangible parts indigent of moisture; for the former helpeth to the dilating of the spirits by the fire; and the latter stimulateth the parts to receive the liquor.

Experiment solitary touching bodies fragile and tough.

841. Of bodies, some are fragile; and some are tough, and not fragile; and in the breaking, some fragile bodies break but where the force is; some shatter and fly in many places. Of fragility, the cause is an impotency to be extended: and therefore stone is more fragile than metal; and so brittle earth is more fragile than crude earth; and dry wood than green. And the cause of this unaptness to extension, is the small quantity of spirits; (for it is the spirit that furthereth the extention or dilatation of bodies;) and it is ever concomitant with porosity, and with dryness in the tangible parts: contrariwise, tough bodies have more spirit, and fewer pores, and moister tangible parts: therefore we see that parchment or leather will stretch, paper will not; woollen cloth will tenter, linen scarcely.

Experiment solitary touching the two kinds of pneumatics in bodies.

842. All solid bodies consist of parts of two several natures, pneumatical and tangible; and it is well to be noted, that the pneumatical substance is in some bodies the native spirit of the body, and in some other, plain air that is gotten in: as in bodies delicate, by heat or age: for in them, when the native spirit goeth forth, and the moisture with it, the air with time geteth into the pores. And those bodies are ever the more fragile; for the native spirit is more yielding and extensive, (especially to follow the parts,) than air. The native spirits also admit great diversity; as hot, cold, active, dull, &c. whence proceed most of the virtues and qualities (as we call them) of bodies: but the air intermixed is without virtues, and maketh things infipid, and without any extimulation.

Experiment solitary touching concretion and dissolution of bodies.

843. The concretion of bodies is (commonly) solved by the contrary; as ice, which is congealed by cold, is dissolved by heat; salt and sugar, which are excocted by heat, are dissolved by cold and moisture. The cause is, for that these operations are rather returns to their former nature, than alternations; so that the contrary cures. As for oil, it doth neither easily congeal with cold, nor thicken with heat. The cause of both effects, though they be produced by contrary efficient, seemeth to be the same; and that is, because the spirit of the oil, by either means, exhaleth little, for the cold keepeth it in; and the heat, (except it be vehement,) doth not call it forth. As for cold, though it take hold of the tangible parts, yet as to the spirits, it doth rather make them swell than congeal them: as when ice is congealed in a cup, the ice will swell instead of contracting, and sometimes rift.

Experiment solitary touching hard and soft bodies.

844. Of bodies, some (we see) are hard, and some soft: the hardness is caused (chiefly) by the jejuneness of the spirits, and their imparity with the tangible parts: both which, if they be in a greater degree, make them not only hard, but fragile and less enduring of preffure; as steel, stone, glass, dry wood, &c. Softness cometh (contrariwise) by the greater quantity of
of spirits, (which ever helpeth to induce yielding and ceflion,) and by the more equal spreading of the tangible parts, which thereby are more sliding and following; as in gold, lead, wax, &c. But note, that soft bodies, (as we use the word) are of two kinds; the one, that easily giveth place to another body, but altereth not bulk, by rising in other places: and therefore we see that wax, if you put any thing into it, doth not rise in bulk, but only giveth place: for you may not think, that in printing of wax, the wax riseth up at all; but only the depressed part giveth place, and the other remaineth as it was. The other that altereth bulk in the ceflion, as water, or other liquors, if you put a stone or any thing into them, they give place (indeed) easily, but then they rise all over; which is a false ceflion; for it is in place, and not in body.

Experiment solitary touching bodies ductile and tenfile:

845. All bodies ductile and tenfile, (as metals) that will be drawn into wires; wool and tow that will be drawn into yarn or thread, have in them the appetite of not discontinuing strong, which maketh them follow the force that pulleth them out; and yet so, as not to discontinue or forfake their own body. Viscous bodies, (likewise) as pitch, wax, bird-lime, cheese toasted, will draw forth and rope. But the difference between bodies fibrous, and bodies viscous, is plain; for all wool, and tow, and cotton, and filk (especially raw-filk) have, besides their desire of continuance, in regard of the teniency of their thread, a greediness of moisture; and by moisture to join and incorporate with other thread; especially if there be a little wreathing; as appeareth by the twirling of thread, and the practice of twirling about of spindles. And we see also, that gold and silvery thread cannot be made without twisting.

Experiment solitary touching other passions of matter, and characters of bodies.

846. The differences of impreffible and not impreffible, figurable and not figurable; mouldable, and not mouldable; sciffible and not sciffible; and many other passions of matter, are plebeian notions, applied unto the instruments and uses which men ordinarily practifie; but they are all but the effects of some of these causes following; which we will enumerate without applying them, because that will be too long. The first is the ceflion or not ceflion of bodies, into a smaller place or room, keeping the outward bulk, and not flying up. The second is the stronger or weaker appetite in bodies to continuity, and to fly discontinuity. The third is the disposition of bodies to contract and not contract: and again, to extend or not extend. The fourth is the small quantity, or great quantity of the pneumatical in bodies. The fifth is the nature of the pneumatical, whether it be native spirit of the body, or common air. The sixth is, the nature of the native spirits in the body, whether they be active and eager, or dull and gentle. The seventh is the emission or detention of the spirits in bodies. The eighth is the dilatation, or contraction of the spirits in bodies, while they are detained. The ninth is the collocation of the spirits in bodies, whether the collocation be equal or unequal; and again, whether the spirits be coacervate or diffused. The tenth is the denity or rarity of the tangible parts. The eleventh is the equality or inequality of the tangible parts. The twelfth is the digestion or crudity of the tangible parts. The thirteenth is the nature of the matter, whether sulphureous or mercurial, watery or oily, dry and terrestrial, or moist and liquid; which natures of sulphureous and mercurial, seem to be natures
natures radical and principal. The fourteenth is the placing of the tangible parts in length or transverse; (as it is in the warp and the woof of textiles) more inward, or more outward, &c. The fifteenth is the porosity or imporosity between the tangible parts, and the greatness or smallness of the pores. The sixteenth is the collocation and posture of the pores. There may be more causes; but these do occur for the present.

Experiment solitary touching induration by sympathy.

847. Take lead and melt it, and in the midst of it, when it beginneth to congeal, make a little dint or hole, and put quicksilver wrapped in a piece of linen into that hole, and the quicksilver will fix and run no more, and endure the hammer. This is a noble instance of induration, by consent of one body with another, and motion of excitation to imitate; for to ascribe it only to the vapour of lead, is less probable. Quaere, whether the fixing may be in such a degree, as it will be figured like other metals? For if so, you may make works of it for some purposes, so they come not near the fire.

Experiment solitary touching honey and sugar.

848. Sugar hath put down the use of honey, insomuch as we have lost those observations and preparations of honey which the ancients had, when it was more in price. First, it seemeth that there was in old time tree-honey, as well as bee-honey, which was the tear or blood issuing from the tree: insomuch as one of the ancients relateth, that in Trebizond there was honey issuing from the box-trees, which made men mad. Again, in ancient time there was a kind of honey, which either of its own nature, or by art, would grow as hard as sugar, and was not so luscious as ours. They had also a wine of honey, which they made thus. They crushed the honey into a great quantity of water, and then strained the liquor; after they boiled it in a copper to the half; then they poured it into earthen vessels for a small time; and after turned it into vessels of wood, and kept it for many years. They have also at this day, in Russia, and those northern countries, mead-simple, which (well made and seasoned) is a good wholesome drink, and very clear. They use also in Wales a compound drink of mead, with herbs and spices. But mean while it were good, in recompence of that we have lost in honey, there were brought in use a sugar mead, (for so we may call it,) tho' without any mixture at all of honey; and to brew it, and keep it stale, as they use mead: for certainly, though it would not be so abstinence, and opening, and solutive a drink as mead; yet it will be more grateful to the stomach, and more lenitive, and fit to be used in sharp diseases: for we see, that the use of sugar in beer and ale, hath good effects in such cases.

Experiment solitary touching the finer sort of base metals.

849. It is reported by the ancients, that there was a kind of steel in some places, which would polish almost as white and bright as silver. And that there was in India a kind of brass, which (being polished) could scarce be discerned from gold. This was in the natural ure; but I am doubtful, whether men have sufficiently refined metals, which we count base; as whether iron, brass, and tin be refined to the height? But when they come to such fineness, as serveth the ordinary use, they try no farther.

Experiment solitary touching cements and quarries.

850. There having been found certain cements under earth that are very soft;
soft; and yet, taken forth into the sun, harden as hard as marble: there are also ordinary quarries in Somersetshire, which in the quarry cut soft to any bigness, and in the building prove firm and hard.

Experiment solitary touching the altering of the colour of hairs and feathers.

851. Living creatures (generally) do change their hair with age, turning to be grey and white: as is seen in men, though some earlier, some later; in horses that are dappled, and turn white; in old squirrels that turn grilly; and many others. So do some birds; as cygnets from grey turn white; hawks from brown turn more white. And some birds there be that upon their moulting do turn colour; as robin-red-breasts, after their moulting, grow to be red again by degrees; so do goldfinches upon the head. The cause is, for that moisture doth (chiefly) colour hair and feathers; and dryness turneth them grey and white; now hair in age waxeth dryer: so do feathers. As for feathers, after moulting, they are young feathers, and so all one as the feathers of young birds. So the beard is younger than the hair of the head, and doth (for the most part) wax hoary later. Out of this ground a man may devise the means of altering the colour of birds, and the retardation of hoary-hairs. But of this see the fifth experiment.

Experiment solitary touching the differences of living creatures, male and female.

852. The difference between male and female, in some creatures, is not to be discerned, otherwise than in the parts of generation: as in horses and mares, dogs and bitches, doves he and she, and others. But some differ in magnitude, and that diversly; for in most the male is the greater; as in man, pheasants, peacocks, turkeys, and the like: and in some few, as in hawks, the female. Some differ in the hair and feathers, both in the quantity, crispation and colours of them; as he-lions are hirsute, and have great mains: the hens are smooth like cats. Bulls are more crisp upon the forehead than cows; the peacock, and pheasant-cock, and goldfinch-cock, have glorious and fine colours; the hens have not. Generally the hens in birds have the fairest feathers. Some differ in divers feathers; as bucks have horns, does none; rams have more wreathed horns than ewes; cocks have great combs and spurs, hens little or none; boars have great fangs, fowes much less: The turkeys-cock hath great and swelling gills, the hen hath less; men have generally deeper and stronger voices than women. Some differ in faculty; as the cocks amongst singing-birds are the best singers. The chief cause of all these (no doubt) is, for that the males have more strength of heat than the females; which appeareth manifestly in this, that all young creatures males are like females; and so are eunuchs, and gelt creatures of all kinds, liker females. Now heat causeth greatness of growth, generally, where there is moisture enough to work upon: but if there be found in any creature, (which is seen rarely) an over-great heat in proportion to the moisture, in them the female is the greater; as in hawks and sparrows. And if the heat be balanced with the moisture, then there is no difference to be seen between male and female; as in the instances of horses and dogs. We see also, that the horns of oxen and cows, for the most part, are larger than the bulls; which is caused by abundance of moisture, which in the horns of the bull faileth. Again, heat causeth pilosity and crispation, and so likewise beards in men. It also expelleth finer moisture, which want of heat cannot expel; and that is the cause of the beauty and variety of feathers. Again,
heat doth put forth many excrences, and much solid matter, which want of heat cannot do: and this is the caufe of horns, and of the greatness of them; and of the greatness of the combs and spurs of cocks, gills of turkey-cocks, and fans of boars. Heat also dilateth the pipes and organs, which caueth the deepnefs of the voice. Again, heat refteth the spirits, and thus caueth the cock-finging-bird to excel the hen.

Experiment solitary touching the comparative magnitude of living creatures.

853. There be fishes greater than any beasts; as the whale is far greater than the elephant: and beasts are (generally) greater than birds. For fishes, the caufe may be, that because they live not in the air, they have not their moifure drawn and foaked by the air and sun-beams. Also they reft always in a manner, and are supported by the water; whereas motion and labour do confume. As for the greatness of beasts, more than of birds, it is cauèd, for that beasts stay longer time in the womb than birds, and there nourish and grow; whereas in birds, after the egg lay’d, there is no further growth or nourifhment from the female; for the fipping doth vivify, and not nourifh.

Experiment solitary touching exfijation of fruits.

854. We have partly touched before the means of producing fruits without cores or stones. And this we add farther, that the caufe must be abundance of moifure; for that the core and stone are made of a dry fap: and we fee, that it is poifible to make a tree put forth only in blossom, without fruit; as in cherries with double flowers; much more in fruit without stone or cores. It is reported, that a cion of an apple, grafted upon a colewort-stalk, fendeth forth a great apple without a core. It is not unlikely, that if the inward pith of a tree were taken out, fo that the juice came only by the bark, it would work the effect. For it hath been obferved, that in pollards, if the water get in on the top, and they become hollow, they put forth the more. We add alfo, that it is delivered for certain by fome, that if the cion be grafted the small end downwards, it will make fruit have little or no cores and stones.

Experiment solitary touching the melioration of tobacco.

855. Tobacco is a thing of great price, if it be in request: for an acre of it will be worth (as is affirmed) two hundred pounds by the year towards charge. The charge of making the ground, and otherwise is great, but nothing to the profit; but the English tobacco hath small credit, as being too dull and earthy: nay, the Virginian tobacco, though that be in a hotter climate, can get no credit, for the fame caufe: fo that a trial to make tobacco more aromatical, and better concocted here in England, were a thing of great profit. Some have gone about to do it by drenching the English tobacco in a decoction or infusion of Indian tobacco: but those are but sophification and toys; for nothing that is once perfect, and hath run its race, can receive much amendment. You must ever refort to the beginnings of things for melioration. The way of maturation of tobacco mufT, as in other plants, be from the heat either of the earth, or of the sun: we fee some leading of this in muskmelons, which are sown upon a hot bed dunged below, upon a bank turned upon the south sun, to give heat by reflexion; laid upon tiles, which increafeth the heat, and covered with straw to keep them from cold. They remove them alfo, which addeth fome life: and by these helps
helps they become as good in England, as in Italy or Provence. These, and
the like means, may be tried in tobacco. Enquire also of the steeping of roots,
in some such liquor as may give them vigour to put forth strong.

Experiment solitary touching several heats working the same effects.

856. Heat of the sun for the maturation of fruits; yea, and the heat of
vivification of living creatures, are both represented and supplied by the heat
of fire; and likewise the heats of the fun, and life, are represented one by
the other. Trees set upon the backs of chimneys do ripen fruit sooner.
Vines, that have been drawn in at the window of a kitchen, have sent forth
grapes ripe a month (at least) before others. Stoves at the back of walls
bring forth oranges here with us. Eggs, as is reported by some, have been
hatched in the warmth of an oven. It is reported by the ancients, that
the ostrich lays her eggs under sand, where the heat of the fun disclo-
feth them.

Experiment solitary touching swelling and dilatation in boiling.

857. Barley in the boiling swelleth not much; wheat swelleth more;
ak extremely; insomuch as a quarter of a pint (unboiled) will arife to a
pint boiled. The caufe (no doubt) is, for that the more close and compact
the body is, the more it will dilate: now barley is the most hollow; wheat
more solid than that; and rice most solid of all. It may be also that some
bodies have a kind of lentour, and more depertible nature than others; as
we see it evident in coloration; for a small quantity of saffron will tinct
more than a very great quantity of brasil or wine.

Experiment solitary touching the dulcoration of fruits.

858. Fruit growth sweet by rolling, or preffing them gently with the
hand; as rolling pears, damaçenes, &c. by rotteneſs; as medlars; services,
floes, hips, &c. by time; as apples, wardens, pomegranates, &c. by certain
special maturations; as by laying them in hay, straw, &c. and by fire; as
in roasting, stewing, baking, &c. The caufe of the sweetneſs by rolling and
preffing, is emollition, which they properly induce; as in beating of ftock-
fish, fleiſh, &c. By rotteneſs is, for that the fpirits of the fruit, by putrefac-
tion gather heat, and thereby digest the harder parts, for in all putrefactions
there is a degree of heat: By time and keeping is, becauſe the fpirits of the
body do ever feed upon the tangible parts; and attenuate them: By feveral
maturations is, by fome degree of heat: And by fire is, becauſe it is the
proper work of heat to refine, and to incorporate; and all fourneſs con-
fifteth in fome groſſneſs of the body: and all incorporation doth make the
mixture of the body more equal in all the parts; which ever induceth a mil-
der taffe.

Experiment solitary touching fleſh edible, and not edible.

859. Or fleſhes, fome are edible; fome, except it be in famine, not.
For thofe that are not edible, the caufe is, for that they have (commonly)
too much bitteneſs of taffe; and therefore thofe creatures, which are fierce
and cholerick, are not edible; as lions, wolves, fquirrels, dogs, foxes, horfes,
&c. As for kine, fheep, goats, deer, fwine, coneyes, hares, &c. we fee they
are mild and fearful. Yet it is true, that horfes, which are beafts of courage,
have been, and are eaten by fome nations; as the Scythians were called Hip-
popagai; and the Chinese eat horfe-fleſh at this day; and fome gluttons have
used to have colts-flesh baked. In birds, such as are carnivora, and birds of prey, are commonly no good meat; but the reason is, rather the choleric nature of those birds, than their feeding upon flesh: for pewits, gulls, shovelers, ducks, do feed upon flesh, and yet are good meat. And we see, that those birds which are of prey, or feed upon flesh, are good meat, when they are very young; as hawks, rooks out of the nest, owls, &c. man's flesh is not eaten. The reasons are three: first, because men in humanity do abhor it: secondly, because no living creature that dieth of itself is good to eat: and therefore the cannibals (themselves) eat no man's flesh, of those that die of themselves, but of such as are slain. The third is, because there must be (generally) some disparity between the nourishment and the body nourished; and they must not be over-near, or like: yet we see, that in great weakness and consumptions, men have been suffained with woman's milk; and Pecinus fondly (as I conceive) adviseth, for the prolongation of life, that a vein be opened in the arm of some wholesome young man, and the blood to be sucked. It is said, that witches do greedily eat man's flesh; which if it be true, besides a devilish appetite in them, it is likely to proceed, for that man's flesh may send up high and pleasing vapours, which may stir the imagination: and witches felicity is chiefly in imagination, as hath been said.

**Experiment solitary touching the salamander.**

860. **There** is an ancient received tradition of the salamander, that it liveth in the fire, and hath force also to extinguish the fire. It must have two things, if it be true, to this operation: the one a very close skin, whereby flame, which in the midst is not so hot, cannot enter; for we see that if the palm of the hand be anointed thick with white of egg, and then water be poured upon it and enflamed, yet one may endure the flame a pretty while. The other is some extreme cold, and quenching virtue in the body of that creature, which choketh the fire. We see that milk quencheth wild fire better than water, because it tretheth better.

**Experiment solitary touching the contrary operations of time upon fruits and liquors.**

861. **Time** doth change fruits (as apples, pears, pomgranates, &c.) from more sour to more sweet: but contrariwise liquors (even those that are of the juice of fruit) from more sweet to more sour; as wort, muste, new verjuice, &c. The cause is, the congregation of the spirits together: for in both kinds the spirit is attenuated by time; but in the first kind it is more diffused, and more masted by the grosser parts, which the spirits do but digest: but in drinks the spirits do reign, and finding less opposition of the parts, become themselves more strong; which causeth also more strength in the liquor: such, as if the spirits be of the hotter sort, the liquor becomes apt to burn; but in time, it causeth likewise, when the higher spirits are evaporated, more sourness.

**Experiment solitary touching blows and bruises.**

862. It hath been observed by the ancients, that plates of metal, and especially of brass, applied prefently to a blow, will keep it down from swelling. The cause is repercussion, without humectation, or entrance of any body: for the plate hath only a virtual cold, which doth not search into the hurt; whereas all plasters and ointments do enter. Surely, the cause that blows and bruises induce swellings, is, for that the spirits resorting to succour
succeour the part that laboureth, draw also the humours with them: for we see, that it is not the repulſe and the return of the humour in the parts strucken that causeth it: for that gouts and tooth-aches caufe swelling, where there is no percusion at all.

*Experiment solitary touching the orrice root.*

863. The nature of the orrice root is almost singular; for there be few odoriferous roots; and in those that are in any degree sweet, it is but the same sweetness with the wood or leaf: but the orrice is not sweet in the leaf: neither is the flower any thing so sweet as the root. The root seemeth to have a tender dainty heat; which when it cometh above ground to the sun and the air, vaniſheth: for it is a great mollifier; and hath a smell like a violet.

*Experiment solitary touching the compression of liquor.*

864. It hath been observed by the ancients, that a great vessel full, drawn into bottles; and then the liquor put again into the vessel; will not fill the vessel again so full as it was, but that it may take in more liquor: and that this holdeth more in wine than in water. The caufe may be trivial; namely; by the expence of the liquor, in regard some may flick to the sides of the bottles: but there may be a caufe more subtile; which is, that the liquor in the vessel is not so much compressed as in the bottle; because in the vessel the liquor meeteth with liquor chiefly; but in the bottles a small quantity of liquor meeteth with the sides of the bottles, which compræfs it so that it doth not open again.

*Experiment solitary touching the working of water upon air contiguous.*

865. Water, being contiguous with air, cooleth it, but moisteneth it not, except it vapour. The caufe is; for that heat and cold have a virtual transition, without communication of substance; but moisture not: and to all madefaction there is required an imbibition: but where the bodies are of such severall gravity as they mingle not, there can follow no imbibition. And therefore, oil likewise lieth at the top of the water without commixture: and a drop of water running swiftly over a straw or smooth body, weteth not.

*Experiment solitary touching the nature of air.*

866. Star-light nights, yea and bright moon-fhine nights, are colder than cloudy nights. The caufe is, the dryness and fineness of the air, which thereby becometh more piercing and sharp; and therefore great continents are colder than islands: and as for the moon, though it self inclineth the air to moisture, yet when it shineth bright, it argueth the air is dry. Also close air is warmer than open air; which (it may be) is, for that the true caufe of cold is an expiration from the globe of the earth, which in open places is stronger; and again, air it self, if it be not altered by that expiration, is not without some secret degree of heat; as it is not likewise without some secret degree of light: for otherwise cats and owls could not see in the night; but that air hath a little light, proportionable to the visual spirits of those creatures.

*Experiments in consort touching the eyes and sight.*

867. The eyes do move one and the same way; for when one eye moveth
to the nostril, the other moveth from the nostril. The cause is motion of
confent, which in the spirits and parts spiritual is strong. But yet use will
induce the contrary; for some can squint when they will: and the common
tradition is, that if children be set upon a table with a candle behind them,
both eyes will move outwards; as affecting to see the light, and so induce
squinting.

868. We see more exquisitely with one eye shut, than with both open.
The cause is, for that the spirits visual unite themselves more, and so become
stronger. For you may see, by looking in a glass, that when you shut one
eye, the pupil of the other eye that is open, dilateth.

869. The eyes, if the sight meet not in one angle, see things double. The
cause is, because seeing two things, and seeing one thing twice, worketh the
same effect: and therefore a little pellet held between two fingers laid across,
seemeth double.

870. Poor-blind men see best in the dimmer light; and likewise have
their sight stronger near hand, than those that are not poor-blind; and can
read and write smaller letters. The cause is, for that the spirits visual in
those that are poor-blind, are thinner and rarer than in others; and there­
fore the greater light disperseth them. For the same cause they need con­
tracting; but being contracted, are more strong than the visual spirits of
ordinary eyes are; as when we see through a level, the sight is the stron­
g; and so is it when you gather the eye-lids somewhat close: and it is com­
monly seen in those that are poor-blind, that they do much gather the eye-lids
together. But old men, when they would see to read, put the paper some­
what afar off: The cause is, for that old men's spirits visual, contrary to
those of poor-blind men, unite not, but when the object is at some good
distance from their eyes.

871. Men see better, when their eyes are over-against the sun, or a can­
dle, if they put their hand a little before their eye. The reason is, for that
the glaring of the sun, or the candle, doth weaken the eye; whereas the
light circumfused is enough for the perception. For we see, that an over­
light maketh the eyes dazzle; insomuch as perpetual looking against the
sun would cause blindness. Again, if men come out of a great light into a
dark room; and contrariwise, if they come out of a dark room into a light
room, they seem to have a mist before their eyes, and see worse than they
shall do, after they have stayed a little while, either in the light, or in the
dark. The cause is, for that the spirits visual are upon a sudden change, dif­
turbed and put out of order; and till they be recollected, do not perform
their function well. For when they are much dilated by light, they cannot
contract suddenly; and when they are much contracted by darkness, they
cannot dilate suddenly. And excess of both these, (that is, of the dilatation
and contraction of the spirits visual) if it be long, destroyeth the eye. For
as long looking against the sun, or fire, hurteth the eye by dilatation; so cu­
rious painting in small volumes, and reading of small letters, do hurt the
eye by contraction.

872. It hath been observed, that in anger the eyes wax red; and in
blushing, not the eyes, but the ears, and the parts behind them. The cause
is, for that in anger the spirits ascend and wax eager: which is most easily
seen in the eyes, because they are translucent; though withal it maketh both
the cheeks and the gills red; but in blushing, it is true the spirits ascend
likewise to succour both the eyes and the face, which are the parts that
labour: but then they are repelled by the eyes, for that the eyes in shame
do
do put back the spirits that ascend to them, as unwilling to look abroad: for no man in that passion doth look strongly, but dejectedly; and that repulsion from the eyes, diverteth the spirits and heat more to the ears, and the parts by them.

873. The objects of the sight may cause a great pleasure and delight in the spirits, but no pain, or great offence; except it be by memory, as hath been said. The glimmer and beams of diamonds that strike the eye; Indian feathers, that have glorious colours; the coming into a fair garden; the coming into a fair room richly furnished; a beautiful person; and the like; do delight and exhilarate the spirits much. The reason why it holdeth not in the offence, is, for that the sight is most spiritual of the senses; whereby it hath no object gross enough to offend it. But the cause (chiefly) is, for that there be no active objects to offend the eye. For harmonical sounds, and discordant sounds, are both active and positive: so are sweet smells and stinks: so are bitter and sweet in tastes: so are over-hot and over-cold in touch: but blackness and darkness are indeed but privatives; and therefore have little or no activity. Somewhat they do contritute, but very little.

Experiment solitary touching the colour of the sea, or other water:

874. Water of the sea, or otherwise, looketh blacker when it is moved, and whiter when it resteth. The cause is, for that by means of the motion, the beams of light pass not straight, and therefore must be darkened; whereas, when it resteth, the beams do pass straight. Besides, splendor hath a degree of whiteness; especially if there be a little repercussion: for a looking-glass with the steel behind, looketh whiter than glass simple. This experiment deserveth to be driven farther, in trying by what means motion may hinder sight.

Experiment solitary touching shell-fish.

875. Shell-fish have been, by some of the ancients, compared and sorted with the infesta; but I see no reason why they should; for they have male and female as other fishes have: neither are they bred of putrefaction; especially such as do move. Nevertheless it is certain, that oysters, and cockles, and muscles, which move not, have not discriminative sex. Quaere in what time, and how they are bred? It seemeth that shells of oysters are bred where none were before; and it is tried, that the great horse-muscle, with the fine shell, that breedeth in ponds, hath bred within thirty years: but then, which is strange, it hath been tried, that they do not only gap and shut as the oysters do, but remove from one place to another.

Experiment solitary touching the right side and the left.

876. The senses are alike strong, both on the right side and on the left; but the limbs on the right side are stronger. The cause may be, for that the brain, which is the instrument of sense, is alike on both sides; but motion, and abilities of moving, are somewhat holpen from the liver, which lieth on the right side. It may be also, for that the senses are put in exercise indifferently on both sides from the time of our birth; but the limbs are used most on the right side, whereby custom helpeth; for we see, that some are left-handed; which are such as have used the left hand most.
Experiment solitary touching frictions.

877. Frictions make the parts more fleshy and full; as we see both in men, and in the currying of horses, &c. The cause is, for that they draw greater quantity of spirits and blood to the parts: and again, because they draw the aliment more forcibly from within: and again, because they relax the pores, and so make better passage for the spirits, blood and aliment: lastly, because they dissipate and digest any inutile or excrementitious moisture, which lieth in the flesh; all which help assimilation. Frictions also do more fill and impinguate the body than exercise. The cause is, for that in frictions the inward parts are at rest; which in exercises are beaten (many times) too much: and for the same reason, (as we have noted heretofore,) gally-slaves are fat and fleshy, because they stir the limbs more, and the inward parts less.

Experiment solitary touching globes appearing flat at distance.

878. All globes afar off appear flat. The cause is, for that distance, being a secondary object of sight, is not otherwise discerned, than by more or less light; which disparity, when it cannot be discerned, all seemeth one: as it is (generally) in objects not distinctly discerned; for so letters, if they be so far off as they cannot be discerned, shew but as a dust upon paper: and all engravings and embossings (afar off) appear plain.

Experiment solitary touching shadows.

879. The uttermost parts of shadows seem ever to tremble. The cause is, for that the little motes which we see in the sun do ever stir, tho' there be no wind; and therefore those moving, in the meeting of the light and the shadow, from the light to the shadow, and from the shadow to the light, do shew the shadow to move, because the medium moveth.

Experiment solitary touching the rolling and breaking of the seas.

880. Shallow and narrow seas, break more than deep and large. The cause is, for that the impulsion being the same in both; where there is greater quantity of water, and likewife space enough, there the water rolleth and moveth, both more slowly, and with a floper rise and fall: but where there is less water, and less space, and the water dasheth more against the bottom, there it moveth more swiftly, and more in precipice; for in the breaking of the waves there is ever a precipice.

Experiment solitary touching the dulcoration of salt water.

881. It hath been observed by the ancients, that salt water boiled, or boiled and cooled again, is more potable, than of itself raw: And yet the taste of salt in distillations by fire rideth not, for the distilled water will be fresh. The cause may be, for that the salt part of the water doth partly rise into a kind of scum on the top, and partly goeth into a sediment in the bottom; and so is rather a separation than an evaporation. But it is too gross to rise into a vapour; and so is a bitter taste likewise; for simple distilled waters, of wormwood, and the like, are not bitter.

Experiment solitary touching the return of saltiness in pits upon the sea-shore.

882. It hath been set down before, that pits upon the sea-shore turn into fresh water, by percolation of the salt through the sand: but it is farther noted,
noted, by some of the ancients, that in some places of Africa, after a time, the water in such pits will become brackish again. The cause is, for that after a time, the very sands through which the salt water passeth, become salt; and so the springer it self is tinted with salt. The remedy therefore is, to dig still new pits, when the old wax brackish; as if you would change your springer.

_Experiment solitary touching attraction by similitude of substance._

883. It hath been observed by the ancients, that salt water will dissolve salt put into it in less time than fresh water will dissolve it. The cause may be, for that the salt in the precedent water doth, by similitude of substance, draw the salt new put in unto it; whereby it diffuseth in the liquor more speedily. This is a noble experiment, if it be true, for it sheweth means of more quick and easy infusions; and it is likewise a good instance of attraction, by similitude of substance. Try it with sugar put into water formerly sugared and into other water unfugared.

_Experiment solitary touching attraction._

884. Put sugar into wine, part of it above, part under the wine, and you shall find (that which may seem strange) that the sugar above the wine will soften and dissolve sooner than that within the wine. The cause is, for that the wine entereth that part of the sugar which is under the wine, by simple infusion or spreading; but that part above the wine is likewise forced by sucking; for all spongy bodies expel the air and draw in liquor, if it be contiguous: as we see it also in sponges put part above the water. It is worthy the enquiry, to see how you may make more accurate infusions, by help of attraction.

_Experiment solitary touching heat under earth._

885. Water in wells is warmer in winter than in summer; and so air in caves. The cause is, for that in the higher parts, under the earth, there is a degree of some heat; (as appeareth in sulphureous veins, &c.) which but close in, (as in winter,) is the more; but if it perspire, (as it doth in summer,) it is the less.

_Experiment solitary touching flying in the air._

886. It is reported, that amongst the Leucadians, in ancient time, upon a superstitition they did use to precipitate a man from a high cliff into the sea; tying about him with string, at some distance, many great fowls; and fixing unto his body divers feathers, spread, to break the fall. Certainly many birds of good wing, (as kites, and the like,) would bear up a good weight as they fly; and spreading of feathers thin and close, and in great breadth, will likewise bear up a great weight, being even laid, without tilting upon the sides. The farther extension of this experiment for flying may be thought upon.

_Experiment solitary touching the dye of scarlet._

887. There are in some places (namely in Cephalenia,) a little shrub which they call holly-oak, or dwarf-oak: upon the leaves whereof there rifeth a tumor like a blister; which they gather, and rub out of it a certain red duff, that converteth (after a while) into worms, which they kill with wine, (as is reported,) when they begin to quicken: with this duff they dye scarlet.
Experiment solitary touching maleficiating.

883. In Zant it is very ordinary to make men impotent, to accompany with their wives. The like is practised in Gascony; where it is called No-ver l'equillette. It is practised always upon the wedding-day. And in Zant the mothers themselves do it, by way of prevention; because thereby they hinder other charms, and can undo their own. It is a thing the civil law taketh knowledge of; and therefore is of no light regard.

Experiment solitary touching the rise of water by means of flame.

889. It is a common experiment, but the cause is mistaken. Take a pot, (or better a glass, because therein you may see the motion,) and set a candle lighted in the bottom of a basin of water, and turn the mouth of the pot or glass over the candle, and it will make the water rise. They ascribe it to the drawing of heat, which is not true: for it appeareth plainly to be but a motion of neæ, which they call neæetur vacuum; and it proceedeth thus. The flame of the candle, as soon as it is covered, being suffocated by the close air, lesseneth by little and little; during which time there is some little ascent of water, but not much: for the flame occupying less and less room, as it lesseneth, the water succeddeth. But upon the instant of the candle's going out, there is a sudden rise of a great deal of water; for that the body of the flame filleth no more place, and so the air and the water succed. It worketh the same effect, if instead of water you put flour or sand into the basin: which sheweth, that it is not the flame's drawing the liquor as nourishment, as it is supposed; for all bodies are alike unto it, as it is ever in motion?neæ; insomuch as I have seen the glass, being held by the hand, hath lifted up the basin and all; the motion of neæ did so clasp the bottom of the basin. That experiment, when the basin was lifted up, was made with oil, and not with water: nevertheless this is true, that at the very first setting of the mouth of the glass upon the bottom of the basin, it draweth up the water a little, and then standeth at a stay, almost till the candle's going out, as was said. This may shew some attraction at firft: but of this we will speak more, when we handle attractions by heat.

Experiments in consort touching the influences of the moon.

Of the power of the celestial bodies, and what more secret influences they have, besides the two manifest influences of heat and light, we shall speak when we handle experiments touching the celestial bodies: meanwhile we will give some directions for more certain trials, of the virtue and influences of the moon, which is our nearest neighbour.

The influences of the moon (most observed) are four: the drawing forth of heat; the inducing of putrefaction; the increase of moisture; the exciting of the motions of spirits.

890. For the drawing forth of heat, we have formerly prescribed to take water warm, and to set part of it against the moon-beams, and part of it with a screen between; and to see whether that which standeth exposed to the beams will not cool sooner. But because this is but a small interposition, (though in the sun we see a small shade doth much,) it were good to try it when the moon shineth, and when the moon shineth not at all; and with water warm in a glass-bottle, as well as in a dish; and with cinders, and with iron red hot, &c.

891. For the inducing of putrefaction, it were good to try it with flesh,
or fish, exposed to the moon-beams; and again exposed to the air, when the moon shineth not for the like time; to see whether will corrupt sooner: and try it also with capon, or some other fowl, laid abroad, to see whether it will mortify and become tender sooner; try it also with dead flies, or dead worms, having a little water cast upon them, to see whether will putrefy sooner. Try it also with an apple, or orange, having holes made in their tops, to see whether will rot or mould sooner? Try it also with Holland cheese, having wine put into it, whether will breed mites sooner or greater?

For the increase of moisture, the opinion received is; that seeds will grow soonest; and hair, and nails, and hedges, and herbs, cut, &c. will grow soonest, if they be set or cut in the increase of the moon. Also that brains in rabbits, woodcocks, calves, &c. are fullest in the full of the moon: and so of marrow in the bones; and so of oysters and cockles, which of all the rest are the easiest tried if you have them in pits.

Take some seeds, or roots, (as onions, &c.) and set some of them immediately after the change; and others of the same kind immediately after the full: let them be as like as can be; the earth also the same as near as may be; and therefore best in pots. Let the pots also stand where no rain or sun may come to them, lest the difference of the weather confound the experiment: and then see in what time the seeds set in the increase of the moon, come to a certain height; and how they differ from those that are set in the decrease of the moon.

It is like, that the brain of man waxeth moister and fuller upon the full of the moon: and therefore it were good for those that have moist brains, and are great drinkers, to take some of lignum aloes, rosemary, frankincense, &c. about the full of the moon. It is like also, that the humours in men's bodies increase and decrease as the moon doth; and therefore it were good to purge some day or two after the full; for that then the humours will not replenish so soon again.

As for the exciting of the motion of the spirits, you must note that the growth of hedges, herbs, hair, &c. is caused from the moon, by exciting of the spirits, as well as by increase of the moisture. But for spirits in particular, the great influence is in lunacies.

There may be other secret effects of the influence of the moon, which are not yet brought into observation. It may be, that if it so fall out, that the wind be north, or north-east, in the full of the moon, it increaseth cold; and if south, or south-west, it disposeth the air for a good while to warmth and rain; which would be observed.

It may be, that children, and young cattle, that are brought forth in the full of the moon, are stronger and larger than those that are brought forth in the wane; and those also which are begotten in the full of the moon: so that it might be good husbandry to put rams and bulls to their females, somewhat before the full of the moon. It may be also, that the eggs laid in the full of the moon breed the better bird: and a number of the like effects which may be brought into observation. Quaere also, whether great thunders and earthquakes be not moist in the full of the moon.

Experiment solitary touching vinegar.

The turning of wine to vinegar, is a kind of putrefaction: and in making of vinegar, they use to set vessels of wine over against the moon-fun; which culleth out the more oily spirits, and leaveth the liquor more four and hard. We see also, that burnt wine is more hard and alltringent, than wine unburnt.
unburnt. It is said, that cyder in navigations under the line ripeneth, when wine or beer foureth. It were good to set a rundlet of verjuice over-againil: the fun in summer, as they do vinegar, to feé whether it will ripen and sweeten.

Experiment solitary touching creatures that sleep all winter.

899. There be divers creatures that sleep all winter, as the bear, the hedge-hog, the bat, the bee, &c. These all wax fat when they sleep, and egel not. The cause of their fattening during their sleeping time, may be the want of assimilating; for whatsoever assimilateth not to flesh, turneth either to sweat or fat. These creatures, for part of their sleeping time, have been observed not to slir at all; and for the other part, to slir, but not to remove. And they get warm and close places to sleep in. When the Flemings wintered in Nova Zembla, the bears about the middle of November went to sleep; and then the foxes began to come forth, which durft not before. It is noted by some of the ancients, that the she-bear breezeth, and lieth, in with her young, during that time of rest: and that a bear big with young hath seldom been seen.

Experiment solitary touching the generation of creatures by copulating, and by putrefaction.

900. Some living creatures are procreated by copulation between male and female: some by putrefaction; and of those which come by putrefaction, many do (neverthelesfs) afterwards procreate by copulation. For the cause of both generations: first, it is most certain, that the cause of all vivification, is a gentle and proportionable heat, working upon a glutinous and yielding substance: for the heat doth bring forth spirit in that substance; and the substance being glutinous produceth two effects; the one, that the spirit is detained, and cannot break forth: the other, that the matter being gentle and yielding, is driven forwards by the motion of the spirits, after some swelling into shape and members. Therefore all sperm, all menstruous substance, all matter whereof creatures are produced by putrefaction, have evermore a closeness, lentor, and fecacity. It seemeth therefore, that the generation by sperm only, and by putrefaction, have two different causes. The first is, for that creatures which have a definite and exact shape, (as those have which are procreated by copulation) cannot be produced by a weak and casual heat; nor out of matter, which is not exactly prepared according to the species. The second is, for that there is a greater time required for maturation of perfect creatures; for if the time required in vivification be of any length, then the spirit will exhale before the creature be mature: except it be inclosed in a place where it may have continuance of the heat, access of some nourishment to maintain it, and closeness that may keep it from exhalins: And such places are the wombs and matrices of the females. And therefore all creatures made of putrefaction, are of more uncertain shape; and are made in shorter time; and need not so perfect an enclofe, though some closeneses be commonly required. As for the heathen opinion, which was, that upon great mutations of the world, perfect creatures were first engendred of concretion; as well as frogs, and worms, and flies, and such like, are now; we know it to be vain: but if any such thing should be admitted, discoursing according to sense, it cannot be, except you admit of a chaos first, and commixture of heaven and earth. For the frame of the world once in order, cannot effect it by any excess or casuality.
NATURAL HISTORY.

Experiments in conformity touching the transmission and influx of immaterial virtues, and the force of imagination.

THE philosophy of Pythagoras, (which was full of superstition) did first plant a monstrous imagination, which afterwards was, by the school of Plato, and others, watered and nourished. It was, that the world was one, entire, perfect, living creature; inasmuch as Apollonius of Tyana, a Pythagorean prophet, affirmed, that the ebbing and flowing of the sea, was the respiration of the world, drawing in water as breath, and putting it forth again. They went on, and inferred; that if the world were a living creature, it had a soul and spirit; which also they held, calling it spiritus mundi; the spirit or soul of the world: by which they did not intend God; (for they did admit of a Deity besides:) but only the soul or essential form of the universe. This foundation being laid, they might build upon it what they would; for in a living creature, though never so great, (as for example, in a great whale) the sense and the affects of any one part of the body, instantly make a transmision throughout the whole body: so that by this they did intimate, that no distance of place, nor want or indisposition of matter, could hinder magical operations; but that (for example) we might here in Europe, have sense and feeling of that which was done in China: and likewise we might work any effect without and against matter; and this not helpen by the co-operation of angels or spirits, but only by the unity and harmony of nature. There were some also that stayed not here; but went farther, and held; that if the spirit of man, (whom they call the microcosm) do give a fit touch to the spirit of the world, by strong imaginations and beliefs, it might command nature; for Paracelsus, and some darksome authors of magick, do ascribe to imagination exalted, the power of miracle-working faith. With these vast and bottomless follies men have been (in part) entertained.

But we, that hold firm to the works of God, and to the sense, which is God’s lamp; (lucerna Dei spiraculum hominis;) will enquire with all sobriety and severity, whether there be to be found in the footsteps of nature, any such transposition and influx of immaterial virtues; and what the force of imagination is; either upon the body imaginant, or upon another body; wherein it will be like that labour of Hercules, in purging the stable of Augeas, to separate from superstitious and magical arts and observations, any thing that is
NATURAL HISTORY. CENT. X.

is clean and pure natural; and not to be either condemned or condemned. And although we shall have occasion to speak of this in more places than one, yet we will now make some entrance thereinto.

Experiments in comfort, monitorly, touching transmission of spirits, and the force of imagination.

901. Men are to be admonished, that they do not withdraw credit from the operations by transmission of spirits, and force of imagination, because the effects fail sometimes. For as in infection, and contagion from body to body, (as the plague, and the like) it is most certain, that the infection is received (many times) by the body passive, but yet is by the strength and good disposition thereof, repulsed and wrought out, before it be formed in a disease; so much more in impressions from mind to mind, or from spirit to spirit, the impression taketh, but is encountered and overcome by the mind and spirit, which is passive, before it work any manifest effect. And therefore they work more upon weak minds and spirits: as those of women; sick persons; superstitious and fearful persons; children and young creatures:

Necio quis teneros oculus mibi fascinat agnos:
The poet speaketh not of sheepe, but of lambs. As for the weakness of the power of them upon kings and magistrates; it may be ascribed (besides the main, which is the protection of God over those that execute his place) to the weakness of the imagination of the imaginant: for it is hard for a witch or a forcerer to put on a belief that they can hurt such persons.

902. Men are to be admonished on the other side, that they do not easily give place and credit to these operations, because they succeed many times; for the cause of this success is (oft) to be truly ascribed unto the force of affection and imagination upon the body agent; and then by a secondary means it may work upon a diverse body: as for example; if a man carry a planet's seal, or a ring, or some part of a beast, believing strongly that it will help him to obtain his love; or to keep him from danger of hurt in fight; or to prevail in a suit, &c. it may make him more active and industrious; and again, more confident and persevering, than otherwise he would be. Now the great effects that may come of induftry and perseverance, (especially in civil business) who knoweth not? For we see audacity doth almost bind and make the weaker sort of minds; and the state of human actions is so variable, that to try things oft, and never to give over, doth wonders: therefore it were a mere fallacy and mistaking to ascribe that to the force of imagination upon another body, which is but the force of imagination upon the proper body; for there is no doubt, but that imagination and vehement affection work greatly upon the body of the imaginant; as we shall shew in due place.

903. Men are to be admonished, that as they are not to mistake the causes of these operations; so much less they are to mistake the fact, or effect; and rashly to take that for done which is not done. And therefore as divers wise judges have prescribed and cautioned, men may not too rashly believe the confessions of witches, nor yet the evidence against them. For the witches themselves are imaginative, and believe oft-times they do that which they do not: and people are credulous in that point, and ready to impute accidents and natural operations to witch-craft. It is worthy the observing, that both in ancient and late times, (as in the Thessalian witches, and the meetings of witches that have been recorded by so many late confessions) the great
great wonders which they tell, of carrying in the air, transforming themselves into other bodies, & c. are still reported to be wrought, not by incantations or ceremonies, but by ointments, and anointing themselves all over: this may justly move a man to think, that these fables are the effects of imagination: for it is certain, that ointments do all, (if they be laid on any thing thick,) by stopping of the pores, that in the vapours, and send them to the head extremely. And for the particular ingredients of those magical ointments, it is like they are opiate and soporiferous. For anointing of the forehead, neck, feet, back-bone, we know is used for procuring dead sleeps: and if any man say that this effect would be better done by inward potions; answer may be made, that the medicines, which go to the ointments, are so strong, that if they were used inwards, they would kill those that use them: and therefore they work potently, though outwards.

We will divide the several kinds of the operations by transmission of spirits and imagination, which will give no small light to the experiments that follow. All operations by transmission of spirits and imagination have this; that they work at distance, and not at touch; and therefore they being distinguished,

904. The first is the transmission or emission of the thinner (and more airy) parts of bodies; as in odours and infections; and this is, of all the rest, the most corporeal. But you must remember withal, that there be a number of those emissions, both wholesome and unwholesome, that give no smell at all: for the plague, many times when it is taken, giveth no scent at all; and there be many good and healthful airs that do appear by habitation and other proofs that differ not in smell from other airs. And under this head you may place all imbibitions of air, where the substance is material, odour-like; whereas some nevertheless are strange, and very suddenly diffused; as the alteration which the air receiveth in Egypt, almost immediately, upon the rising of the river of Nilus, whereof we have spoken.

905. The second is the transmission or emission of those things that we call spiritual species; as visibles and sounds: the one whereof we have handled, and the other we shall handle in due place. These move swiftly, and at great distance; but then they require a medium well disposed, and their transmission is easily stopped.

906. The third is the emissions, which cause attraction of certain bodies at distance; wherein though the lodestone be commonly placed in the first rank, yet we think good to except it, and refer it to another head: but the drawing of amber and jet, and other electrick bodies, and the attraction in gold of the spirit of quicksilver at distance; and the attraction of heat at distance; and that of fire to Naphtha; and that of some herbs to water, tho' at distance; and divers others; we shall handle, but yet not under this present title, but under the title of attraction in general.

907. The fourth is the emission of spirits, and immateriate powers and virtues, in those things which work by the universal configuration and sympathy of the world; not by forms, or celestial influxes, (as is vainly taught and received,) but by the primitive nature of matter, and the seeds of things. Of this kind is (as we yet suppose) the working of the lodestone, which is by consent with the globe of the earth: of this kind is the motion of gravity, which is by consent of dense bodies with the globe of the earth: of this kind is some disposition of bodies to rotation, and particularly from east to west: of which kind we conceive the main float and refloat of the sea is, which is by consent of the univerfe, as part of the diurnal motion. These imma-
immateriate virtues have this property differing from others; that the diversity of the medium hindereth them not; but they pass through all mediums, yet at determinate distances. And of these we shall speak, as they are incident to several titles.

908. The fifth is the emission of spirits; and this is the principal in our intention to handle now in this place; namely, the operation of the spirits of the mind of man upon other spirits: and this is of a double nature; the operations of the affections, if they be vehement; and the operation of the imagination, if it be strong. But these two are so coupled, as we shall handle them together; for when an envious, or amorous aspect, doth infect the spirits of another, there is joined both affection and imagination.

909. The sixth is, the influxes of the heavenly bodies, besides those manifest ones, of heat and light. But these we will handle, where we handle the celestial bodies and motions.

910. The seventh is the operations of sympathy, which the writers of natural magick have brought into an art or precept: and it is this; that if you desire to superinduce any virtue or disposition upon a person, you should take the living creature, in which that virtue is most eminent, and in perfection; of that creature you must take the parts wherein that virtue chiefly is collocate: again, you must take those parts in the time and act when that virtue is most in exercise; and then you must apply it to that part of man wherein that virtue chiefly consists. As if you would superinduce courage and fortitude, take a lion or a cock; and take the heart, tooth, or paw of the lion; or the heart or spur of the cock: take those parts immediately after the lion or the cock have been in fight; and let them be worn upon a man's heart or wrist. Of these and such like sympathies, we shall speak under this present title.

911. The eighth and last is, an emission of immateriate virtues; such as we are a little doubtful to propound; it is so prodigious: But that it is so constantly avouched by many: and we have set it down as a law to our selves, to examine things to the bottom; and not to receive upon credit, or reject upon improbabilities, until there hath passed a due examination. This is the sympathy of individuals: for as there is a sympathy of species, so (it may be) there is a sympathy of individuals: that is, that in things, or the parts of things that have been once contiguous or entire, there should remain a transmission of virtue from the one to the other: as between the weapon and the wound. Whereupon is blazed abroad the operation of unguentum: and so of a piece of hard, or stick of elder, &c. that if part of it be consumed or putrefied, it will work upon the other part sever'd. Now we will pursue the instances themselves.

Experiments in conform touching emission of spirits in vapour or exhalation, odour-like.

912. The plague is many times taken without manifest sense, as hath been said. And they report, that where it is found, it hath a scent of the smell of a mellow apple; and (as some say) of May-flowers: and it is also received, that smells of flowers that are mellow and luscious, are ill for the plague; as white lilies, cowslips and hyacinths.

913. The plague is not easily received by such as continually are about them that have the plague; as keepers of the sick, and physicians; nor again by such as take antidotes, either inward, (as mithridate, juniper-berries, rue, leaf and seed, &c.) or outward, (as angelica, zedoary, and the like, in the mouth;
GENT. X. NATURAL HISTORY.

mouthe; tar, gallbanum, and the like, in perfume;) nor again by old people,
and such as are of a dry and cold complexion. On the other side, the plague
taketh fooneft hold of thofe that come out of a freth air, and of thofe that are
fattinr, and of children; and it is likewife noted to go in a blood, more than
to a stranger.

914. THE moft pernicious infection, next the plague, is the smell of the
ejail, when prisoners have been long, and clofe, and naftilly kept; whereof we
have had, in our time, experience, twice or thrice; when both the judges that
fate upon the jail, and numbers of thofe that attended the bufinefs, or were
preffent, ficken'd upon it, and died. Therefore it were good wisdom, that in
fuch cases the jail were aired before they be brought forth.

915. Out of question, if fuch foul fhmells be made by art, and by the hand,
they confift chiefly of man's flefh, or sweat putrefied; for they are not thofe
flinks which the noftrils straight abhor and expel, that are most pernicious;
but fuch airs as have fome fimilitude with man's body; and fo infinate
themselves, and betray the spirits. There may be great danger in using fuch
compositions, in great meetings of people within housees; as in churches, at
arrangements, at plays and folemnities, and the like: for poisoning of air is
no lefs dangerous than poisoning of water, which hath been used by the
Turks in the wars, and was used by Emmanuel Comnenus towards the Chri-
tians, when they paifed through his country to the Holy Land. And thofe
empoifonments of air are the more dangerous in meetings of people; becaufe
the much breath of people doth further the reception of the
infection; and therefore, where any fuch thing is feared, it were good thofe
publick places were perfumed, before the assembles.

916. The empoifonment of particular perfon's, by odours, hath been re-
ported to be in perfumed gloves, or the like: and it is like, they mingle the
poifon that is deadly, with fome fhmells that are sweet, which alfo make it
the sooner received. Plagues alfo have been raiseft by anointing of the
chinks of doors, and the like; not fo much by the touch, as for that it
is common for men, when they find any thing wet upon their fingers, to put
them to their mouth; which men therefore fhould take heed how they do.
The beft is, that thofe compositions of infectious airs cannot be made with-
out danger of death, to thofe that make them. But then again, they may
have fome antidotes to fave themselves; fo that men ought not to be fecure
of it.

917. THERE have been in divers countries great plagues, by the putrefac-
tion of great swarms of grashoppers and locusts, when they have been dead and
call'd upon heaps.

918. It happeneth often in mines, that there are damps which kill, either
by fuffocation, or by the poisonous nature of the mineral: and thofe that
deal much in refining, or other works about metals and minerals, have their
brains hurt and stupified by the metalline vapours. Amongft which it
is noted, that the spirits of quicksilver ever fly to the skull, teeth, or bones;
infomuch as gilders ufe to have a piece of gold in their mouth, to draw
the spirits of the quicksilver; which gold afterwards they find to be whi-
ten'd. There are alfo certain lakes and pits, fuch as that of Avernus, that
poifon birds (as is faid) which fly over them; or men, that fly too long a-
bout them.

919. The vapour of char-coal, or sea-coal, in a clofe room, hath killed
many; and it is the more dangerous, becaufe it cometh without any ill
fhmell, but velileth on by little and little, inducing only a faintnefs, without
Vol. III. B
any manifest strangling. When the Dutchmen winter'd at Nova Zembla, and that they could gather no more sticks, they fell to make fire of some sea-coal they had, wherewith (at first) they were much refreshed; but a little after they had face about the fire, there grew a general silence and loathsomeness to speak amongst them; and immediately after, one of the weakest of the company fell down in a swoon; whereupon they doubting what it was, opened the door to let in air, and so saved themselves. The effect (no doubt) is wrought by the inspiffation of the air; and so of the breath and spirits. The like ensueth in rooms newly plaster'd, if a fire be made in them; whereas no less man than the emperor Tocinianus died.

920. Vidc the experiment 893. touching the infectious nature of the air, upon the first flowers, after long drought.

921. It hath come to pass, that some apothecaries, upon ramping of colo-quentida, have been put into a great scouring by the vapour only.

922. It hath been a practice to burn a pepper they call guinea-pepper, which hath such a strong spirit, that it provoketh a continual incezing in those that are in the room.

923. It is an ancient tradition, that blare-eyes infect sound eyes; and that a menstruous woman, looking upon a glass, doth ruft it: nay, they have an opinion which seemeth fabulous: that menstruous women going over a field, or garden, do corn and herbs good, by killing the worms.

924. The tradition is no less ancient, that basilisk killeth by aspect; and that the wolf, if he see a man first, by aspect striceth a man hoarse.

925. Perfumes convenient do dry and strengthen the brain, and stay rheums and defluxions, as we find in some of rosemary dried, and lignum aloes; and calamus taken at the mouth and nostrils: and no doubt there be other perfumes that do moisten and refresh, and are fit to be used in burning agest, consumptions, and too much wakefulness; such as are rose-water, vinegar, lemon-peels, violets, the leaves of vines sprinkled with a little rose-water, &c.

926. They do use in sudden faintings and swoonings, to put a handkerchief with rose-water, or a little vinegar, to the nose; which gathereth together again the spirits, which are upon point to resolve and fall away.

927. Tobacco comforteth the spirits, and dichargeth weariness, which it worketh partly by opening, but chiefly by the opiate virtue, which condenseth the spirits. It were good therefore to try the taking of fumes by pipes (as they do in tobacco,) of other things; as well to dry and comfort, as for other intentions. I with trial be made of the drying fume of rosemary and lignum aloes, before-mentioned, in pipe; and so of nutmeg, and folium Indicum, &c.

928. The following of the plough hath been approved for refreshing the spirits, and procuring appetite; but to do it in the ploughing for wheat or rye, is not so good, because the earth has spent her sweet breath in vegetables put forth in summer. It is better therefore to do it when you bow barley. But because ploughing is tied to seasons, it is best to take the air of the earth new turned up, by digging with the spade, or standing by him that diggeth. Gentlewomen may do themselves much good by kneeling upon a cushion, and weeding. And these things you may practice in the best seasons; which is ever the early spring, before the earth putteth forth the vegetables, and in the sweetest earth you can chuse. It would be done also when the dew is a little off the ground, left the vapour be too moist. I knew a great man that lived long, who had a clean clod of earth brought to him every morning
morning as he sat in his bed; and he would hold his head over it a good
pretty while. I commend also, sometimes, in digging of new earth, to pour
in some Malmsey or Greek wine, that the vapour of the earth and wine togeth-
er may comfort the spirits the more; provided always it be not taken for a
heathen sacrifice, or libation to the earth.

929. They have in physicke use of pomanders, and knots of powders, for
drying of rheums, comforting of the heart, provoking of sleep, &c. For
though those things be not so strong as perfumes, yet you may have them
continually in your hand; whereas perfumes you can take but at times:
and besides, there be divers things that breathe better of themselves, than
when they come to the fire; as nigella Romana, the seed of melanthium, amo-
num, &c.

930. There be two things, which (inwardly used) do cool and condense
the spirits; and I will in the same to be tried outwardly in vapours. The one
is nitre, which I would have dissolved in Malmsey, or Greek wine, and so
the smell of the wine taken; or if you would have it more forcible, pour of
it upon a fire-pan, well heated, as they do rose-water and vinegar. The oth-
er is the distilled water of wild poppy, which I wish to be mingled, at half,
with rose-water, and so taken with some mixture of a few cloves in a
distilling-pan. The like would be done with the distilled water of saffron
flowers.

931. Smells of musk, and amber, and civet, are thought to further vene-
rous appetite: which they may do by the refreshing and calling forth of the
spirits.

932. Incense and nidorous smells (such as were of sacrifices) were thought
to intoxicate the brain, and to dispose men to devotion: which they may do
by a kind of fadness, and contrition of the spirits; and partly also by heating
and exciting them. We see, that amongst the Jews, the principal perfume of
the sanctuary was forbidden all common uses.

933. There be some perfumes prescribed by the writers of natural mu-
gick, which procure pleasant dreams: and some others (as they say) that pro-
cure prophetical dreams; as the seeds of flax, flea-wort, &c.

934. It is certain, that odours do, in a small degree, nourish; especially
the odour of wine: and we see men an hungred do love to smell hot bread.
It is related, that Democritus, when he lay a dying, heard a woman in the
house complain, that she should be kept from being at a feast and solemnity,
(which she much desired to see,) because there would be a corps in the house;
whereupon he caused loaves of new bread to be sent for, and opened them,
and poured a little wine into them; and so kept himself alive with the odour
of them, till the feast was past. I knew a gentleman that would fast (some-
times) three or four, yea five days, without meat, bread, or drink; but the
same man used to have continually, a great wisp of herbs that he smelt on:
and amongst those herbs, some esculent herbs of strong scent; as onions, gar-
llick, leeks, and the like.

935. They do use, for the accident of the mother, to burn feathers, and
other things of ill odour: and by those ill smells, the rising of the mother is
put down.

936. There be airs which the physicians advise their patients to remove
unto, in consumptions, or upon recovery of long sicknesses: which (com-
monly) are plain champains, but grasping, and not over-grown with heath,
or the like; or else timber-shades, as in forests, and the like. It is noted
also, that groves of bays do forbid pestilent airs; which was accounted a

VOL. III.

BB 2.

great
great cause of the wholesome air of Antiochia. There be also some soils that put forth odorate herbs of themselves; as wild thyme, wild marjoram, penny-royal, camomile; and in which the briar roses smell almost like musk roses; which (no doubt) are signs that do discover an excellent air.

937. It were good for men to think of having healthful air in their houses; which will never be if the rooms be low roofed, or full of windows and doors; for the one maketh the air close, and not fresh; and the other maketh it exceeding unequal; which is a great enemy to health. The windows also should not be high up to the roof, (which is in use for beauty and magnificence) but low. Also stone-walls are not wholesome; but timber is more wholesome; and especially brick: nay, it hath been used by some with great success to make their walls thick; and to put a lay of chalk between the bricks, to take away all dampness.

Experiment solitary touching the emissions of spiritual species which affect the senses.

938. These emissions (as we said before) are handled, and ought to be handled by themselves under their proper titles; that is, visibles and audibles, each apart: in this place it shall suffice to give some general observations common to both. First, they seem to be incorporeal. Secondly, they work swiftly. Thirdly, they work at large distances. Fourthly, in curious varieties. Fifthly, they are not effective of any thing; nor leave no work behind them; but are energies merely: for their working upon mirrors, and places of echo, doth not alter any thing in those bodies; but it is the same action with the original, only repercussed. And as for the thaking of windows, or rarifying the air by great noises; and the heat caused by burning-glasses; they are rather concomitants of the audible and visible species, than the effects of them. Sixthly, they seem to be of so tender and weak a nature, as they affect only such a rare and attenuate substance, as is the spirit of living creatures.

Experiments in comfort touching the emission or immateriate virtues from the minds and spirits of men, either by affections, or by imaginations, or by other impressions.

939. It is mentioned in some stories, that where children have been exposed, or taken away young from their parents; and that afterward they have approached to their parents presence, the parents (though they have not known them) have had a secret joy or other alteration thereupon.

940. There was an Egyptian soothsayer, that made Antonius believe, that his genius (which otherwise was brave and confident) was in the presence of Octavius Caesar, poor and cowardly: and therefore he advised him, to absent himself, (as much as he could) and remove far from him. The soothsayer was thought to be suborned by Cleopatra, to make him live in Egypt, and other remote places from Rome. Howsoever the conceit of a predominant or mastering spirit of one man over another, is ancient, and received still, even in vulgar opinion.

941. There are conceits, that some men that are of an ill and melancholy nature, do incline the company into which they come, to be sad and ill-disposed; and contrariwise, that others that are of a jovial nature, do dispose the company to be merry and cheerful. And again, that some men are lucky to be kept company with, and employed; and others unlucky. Certainly, it is agreeable to reason, that there are at the least some light effusions from
from spirit to spirit, when men are in presence one with another, as well as from body to body.

942. It hath been observed, that old men who have loved young company, and been conversant continually with them, have been of long life; their spirits (as it seemeth) being recreated by such company. Such were the ancient sophists and rhetoricians; which ever had young auditors and discipiles; as Gorgias, Protagoras, Socrates, &c., who lived till they were an hundred years old. And so likewise did many of the grammarians and school-masters; such as was Orbilius, &c.

943. Audacity and confidence doth, in civil business, (to great effects, as a man may (reasonably) doubt, that besides the very daring, and earnestness, and perilling, and importunity, there should be some secret binding, and stooping of other mens spirits to such persons.

944. The affections (no doubt) do make the spirits more powerful and active; and especially those affections which draw the spirits into the eyes: which are two; love and envy, which is called oculus malus. As for love, the Platonists (some of them) go so far, as to hold that the spirit of the lover doth pass into the spirits of the person loved; which causeth the desire of return into the body, whence it was emitted: whereupon followeth that appetite of contact and conjunction which is in lovers. And this is observed likewise, that the aspects which procure love, are not gazings, but sudden glances and dartings of the eye. As for envy, that emitteth some malign and poisonous spirits, which taketh hold of the spirit of another; and is likewise of greatest force, when the cast of the eye is oblique. It hath been noted also, that it is most dangerous when an envious eye is cast upon persons in glory, and triumph, and joy. The reason whereof is, for that at such times the spirits come forth most into the outward parts, and so meet the percussion of the envious eye more at hand: and therefore it hath been noted, that after great triumphs, men have been ill-disposed for some days following. We see the opinion of fascination is ancient, for both effects; of procuring love; and sickness caused by envy: and fascination is ever by the eye. But yet if there be any such infection from spirit to spirit, there is no doubt but that it worketh by presence, and not by the eye alone; yet most forcibly by the eye.

945. Fear and shame are likewise infective; for we see that the starting of one will make another ready to start: and when one man is out of countenance in a company, others do likewise blush in his behalf.

Now we will speak of the force of imagination upon other bodies; and of the means to exalt and strengthen it. Imagination, in this place, I understand to be, the representation of an individual thought. Imagination is of three kinds: the first joined with belief of that which is to come: the second joined with memory of that which is past; and the third is of things present, or as if they were present; for I comprehend in this, imagination feigned, and at pleasure; as if one should imagine such a man to be in the vestments of a pope; or to have wings. I single out for this time, that which is with faith, or belief of that which is to come. The inquisition of this subject in our way, (which is by induction) is wonderful hard: for the things that are reported are full of fables; and new experiments can hardly be made, but with extreme caution; for the reason which we will after declare.

The power of imagination is in three kinds; the first upon the body of the imaguant; including likewise the child in the mother’s womb; the second
The third is, the power of it upon the spirits of men and living creatures; and with this last we will only meddle.

The help therefore is, for a man to work by another, in whom he may create belief, and not by himself; until himself have found by experience, that imagination doth prevail; for then experience worketh in himself belief; if the belief that such a thing shall be, be joined with a belief that his imagination may procure it.

For example, I related one time to a man, that was curious and vain enough in these things, that I saw a kind of juggler, that had a pair of cards, and would tell a man what card he thought. This pretended learned man told me; it was a mistaking in me; for (said he) it was not the knowledge of the man's thought, (for that is proper to God) but it was the enforcing of a thought upon him, and binding his imagination by a stronger, that he could think no other card. And thereupon he asked me a question or two, which I thought he did but cunningly, knowing before what used to be the feats of the juggler. Sir, (said he) do you remember whether he told the card, the man thought, himself, or bade another to tell it. I answered (as was true,) that he bade another tell it. Whereunto he said, so I thought: for (said he) himself could not have put on so strong an imagination; but by telling the other the card, (who believed that the juggler was some strange man, and could do strange things) that other man caught a stronger imagination. I hearkened unto him, thinking for a vanity he spoke prettily. Then he asked me another question: faith he, do you remember, whether he bade the man think the card first, and afterwards told the other man in his ear what he should think; or else that he did whisper first in the man's ear that should tell the card, telling that such a man should think such a card, and after bade the man think a card? I told him, as was true; that he did first whisper the man in the ear, that such a man should think such a card: upon this the learned man did much exult and please himself, saying; lo, you may see that my opinion is right: for if the man had thought first, his thought had been fixed; but the other imagining first, bound his thought. Which though it did somewhat sink with me, yet I made it lighter than I thought, and said; I thought it was confederacy between the juggler and the two servants: though (indeed) I had no reason so to think, for they were both my father's servants; and he had never played in the house before. The juggler also did cause a garter to be held up; and took upon him to know, that such an one should point in such a place of the garter; as it should be near so many inches.
inches to the longer end, and so many to the shorter; and still he did it, by first telling the imaginer, and after bidding the actor think.

Having told this relation, not for the weight thereof, but because it doth handomely open the nature of the question, I return to that I said; that experiments of imagination must be practised by others, and not by a man's self. For there be three means to fortify belief: the first is experience; the second is reason; and the third is authority: and that of these which is far the most potent, is authority; for belief upon reason, or experience, will stagger.

For authority, it is of two kinds; belief in an art; and belief in a man. And for things of belief in an art, a man may exercise them by himself; but for belief in a man, it must be by another. Therefore if a man believe in allogogy, and find a figure prosperous; or believe in natural magick, and that a ring with such a stone, or such a piece of a living creature, carried, will do good; it may help his imagination: but the belief in a man is far more active. But howsoever, all authority must be out of a man's self, turned (as was said) either upon an art, or upon a man: and where authority is from one man to another, there the second must be ignorant, and not learned, or full of thoughts; and such are (for the most part) all witches and superstitious persons; whose beliefs, tied to their teachers and traditions, are no whit controlled, either by reason or experience; and upon the same reason, in magick, they use for (the most part) boys and young people, whose spirits easily take belief and imagination.

Now to fortify imagination, there be three ways: the authority whence the belief is derived, means to quicken and corroborate the imagination; and means to repeat it and refresh it.

For the authority, we have already spoken: as for the second, namely the means to quicken and corroborate the imagination; we see what hath been used in magick; (if there be in those practices any thing that is purely natural;) as vestments, characters, words, seals; some parts of plants, or living creatures; stones; choice of the hour; gestures and motions; also incensés and odours; choice of society, which increaseth imagination; diets and preparations for some time before. And for words, there have been ever used, either barbarous words, of no sense, lest they should disturb the imagination; or words of similitude, that may second and feed the imagination, and this was ever as well in heathen charms, as in charms of latter times. There are used also scripture words; for that the belief that religious texts and words have power, may strengthen the imagination. And for the same reason, Hebrew words, (which amongst us is counted the holy tongue, and the words more mystical) are often used.

For the refreshing of the imagination, (which was the third means of exalting it) we see the practices of magick, as in images of wax, and the like, that should melt by little and little; or some other things buried in muck, that should putrefy by little and little; or the like: for so oft as the imaginant doth think of those things, so oft doth he represent to his imagination the effect of that he desireth.

If there be any power in imagination, it is less credible that it should be an incorporeal and immaterial virtue, as to work at great distances; or through all mediums; or upon all bodies: but that the distance must be competent; the medium not adverse; and the body apt and proportionate. Therefore if there be any operation upon bodies, in absence by nature, it is like to be conveyed from man to man, as fame is; as if a witch, by imagination,
agination, should hurt any afar off, it cannot be naturally; but by working upon
the spirit of some that cometh to the witch; and from that party upon the
imagination of another; and so upon another; till it come to one that hath re-
sort to the party intended; and so by him to the party intended himsself.
And although they speak, that it sufficeth, to take a point, or a piece of the
garment, or the name of the party, or the like; yet there is less credit to be
given to those things, except it be by working of evil spirits.

The experiments, which may certainly demonstrate the power of imagination
upon other bodies, are few or none: for the experiments of witchcraft
are no clear proofs; for that they may be by a tacite operation of malign
spirits: we shall therefore be forced in this enquiry, to resort to new experi-
ments; wherein we can give only directions of trials, and not any positive
experiments. And if any man think that we ought to have stayed till we had
made experiment of some of them ourselves, (as we do commonly in other
titles) the truth is, that these effects of imagination upon other bodies have so
little credit with us, as we shall try them at leisure; but in the mean time we
will lead others the way.

951. When you work by the imagination of another, it is necessary that
he, by whom you work, have a precedent opinion of you, that you can do
strange things; or that you are a man of art, as they call it; for else the sim-
ple affirmation to another, that this or that shall be, can work but a weak im-
pression in his imagination.

952. It were good, because you cannot discern fully of the strength of ima-
gination in one man more than another, that you did use the imagination
of one more than one, that so you may light upon a strong one. As if a phy-
cian should tell three or four of his patient's servants, that their
master shall recover.

953. The imagination of one, that you shall use, (such is the variety of
mens minds,) cannot be always alike constant and strong; and if the success
follow not speedily, it will faint and lose strength. To remedy this, you must
pretend to him, whose imagination you use, several degrees of means,
by which to operate: as to prescribe him that every three days, if he find not the
success apparent, he do use another root, or part of a beast, or ring, &c. as
being of more force; and if that fail, another; and if that, another, till seven
times. Also you must prescribe a good large time for the effect you promise;
as if you should tell a servant of a sick man, that his master shall recover, but
it will be fourteen days ere he findeth it apparently, &c. All this to enter-
tain the imagination that it waver less.

954. It is certain, that potions, or things taken into the body; incenses
and perfumes taken at the nostrils; and ointments of some parts; do (natu-
really) work upon the imagination of him that taketh them. And therefore
it must needs greatly co-operate with the imagination of him whom you use,
if you prescribe him, before he do use the receipt, for the work which he de-
fireth, that he do take such a pill, or a spoonful of liquor; or burn such an in-
cense; or anoint his temples, or the soles of his feet, with such an ointment,
or oil: and you must chuse, for the composition of such pill, perfume, or oint-
ment, such ingredients, as do make the spirits a little more gross or muddy;
whereby the imagination will fix the better.

955. The body passive, and to be wrought upon, (I mean not of the ima-
ginant,) is better wrought upon, (as hath been partly touched) at some
times, than at others: as if you should prescribe a servant about a sick per-
son, (whom you have posseffed that his master shall recover) when his ma-
ster
N AT U R A L H I S T O R Y.

1. It is fall asleep, to use such a root, or such a root. For imagination is like to work better upon sleeping men, than men awake; as we shall shew when we handle dreams.

956. We find in the art of memory, that images visible work better than other conceits: as if you would remember the word philosophy, you shall more surely do it, by imagining, that such a man, (for men are best places) is reading upon Aristotle's phylicks; than if you should imagine to say, I'll go study philosophy. And therefore this observation would be translated to the subject we now speak of: for the more luftrous the imagination is, it filleth and fixeth the better. And therefore I conceive, that you shall, in that experiment, (whereof we spake before,) of binding of thoughts, less fail, if you tell one that such an one shall name one of twenty men, than if it were one of twenty cards. The experiment of binding of thoughts would be diversified and tried to the full: and you are to note, whether it hit for the moft part, though not always.

957. It is good to consider, upon what things imagination hath most force: and the rule (as I conceive) is, that it hath most force upon things that have the lightest and eafeft motions. And therefore above all, upon the spirits of men: and in them, upon fuch affections as move lightest; as upon procuring of love: binding of luft, which is ever with imagination, upon men in fear; or men in irresolution; and the like. Whatsoever is of this kind would be throughly enquired. Trials likewise would be made upon plants, and that diligently: as if you should tell a man, that fuch a tree would die this year; and will him at these and these times, to go unto it, to see how it thriveth. As for inanimate things, it is true, that the motions of fruffling of cards, or casting of dice, are very light motions: and there is a folly very usual, that gamesters imagine, that fome that stand by them, bring them ill luck. There would be trial alfo made, of holding a ring by a thread in a glafs, and telling him that holdeth it, before, that it shall go off their fingers: for thefe two are extreme light motions. And howsoever I have no opinion of thefe things, yet so much I conceive to be true; that strong imagination hath more force upon things living, or that have been living, than things merely inanimate: and more force likewise upon light, and subtle motions, than upon motions vehement, or ponderous.

958. It is an usual observation, that if the body of one murthered be brought before the murtherer, the wounds will bleed afresh. Some do affirm, that the dead body, upon the presence of the murtherer, hath opened the eyes; and that there have been fuch like motions, as well where the parties murthered have been strangled, or drowned, as where they have been killed by wounds. It may be, that this participateth of a miracle, by God's just judgment, who usually bringeth murders to light: but if it be natural, it must be referred to imagination.

959. The tying of the point upon the day of marriage, to make men impotent towards their wives, which (as we have formerly touched) is fo frequent in Zant, and Gascony, if it be natural, must be referred to the imagination of him that tieith the point. I conceive it to have the left affinity with witchcraft, because not peculiar persons only, (such as witches are,) but any body may do it.
Experiments in sorcery touching the secret virtue of sympathy and antipathy.

960. There be many things that work upon the spirits of men, by secret sympathy and antipathy: the virtues of precious stones worn, have been anciently and generally received; and curiously assigned to work several effects. So much is true; that stones have in them fine spirits, as appears by their splendours: and therefore they may work by a certain upon the spirits of men, to comfort and exhilarate them. Those that are the best, for that effect, are the diamond, the emerald, the hyacinth oriental, and the gilt stone, which is the yellow topaz. As for their particular properties, there is no credit to be given to them. But it is manifest, that light, above all things, excelseth in comforting the spirits of men: and it is very probable, that light wassail doth the same effect, with more novelty. And this is one of the causes why precious stones comfort. And therefore it was good to have tinted lanterns, or tinted screens, of glass coloured into green, blue, carnation, crimson, purple, &c. and to use them with candles in the night. So likewise to have round glasses, not only of glass coloured through, but with colours laid between crystals, with handles to hold in one’s hand. Prints are also comfortable things. They have of Paris-work, looking-glasses, bordered with broad borders of small crystal, and great counterfeit precious stones, of all colours, that are smart, glorious and pleasant to behold, especially in the night. The pictures of Indian feathers are likewise comfortable, and pleasant to behold. So also fair and clear pools do greatly comfort the eyes and spirits, especially when the sun is not glaring, but over-calm, or when the moon shineth.

962. There be divers sorts of bracelets, to comfort the spirits; and they be of three intentions; refrigerant, corroboration, and apotropaic. For refrigerant, I with them to be of pearl, or of coral, as used: and it hath been noted, that coral, of the party that wear it, be indisposed, will wax pale, which I believe to be true, because otherwise discomposure of heat will make coral loit colour. I commend also beads, or little plates of lapis lazuli, and beads of nitre, either alone, or with some cordial mixture.

962. For corroboration and conjuration, take such bodies as are of alighting quality, without imbrued cold. I commend bead-amber, which is full of attraction, but yet is combustible, and not cold; and is conceived to impregnate those that wear such beads. I commend also beads of hartshorn and ivory, which are of the like nature; also orange-beads, also beads of lignum aloes, macerated first in roe-water, and dry’d.

963. For opening, I commend beads, or pieces of the roots of cardua benedictus: also of the roots of piony, the male; and of coriace; and of calamus aromaticus; and of rue.

964. The cramp (no doubt) cometh by contraction of sinews; which is manifest, in that it cometh either by cold or dryness: as after conjuration, and long ages; for cold and dryness do (both of them) contract, and corrode. We see also, that shaming a little above the place in pain, easeth the cramp; which is wrought by the dilatation of the contracted sinews by heat. There is in use, for the prevention of the cramp, two things: the one rings of sea-horse teeth worn upon the fingers; the other bands of green penitwinkle, (the herb) tied about the calf of the leg, or the thigh, &c. where the cramp uneth to come. I do find this the more strange, because neither of these have any relaxing virtue, but rather the contrary. I judge there-
fore, that their working is rather upon the spirits, within the nerves, to make them strive less, than upon the bodily substance of the nerves.

965. I would have trial made of two other kinds of bracelets, for comforting the heart and spirits; the one of the trochilus of vipers, made into little pieces of beads; for since they do great good inwards, (especially for pestilent agues) it is like they will be effectual outwards; where they may be applied in greater quantity. There would be trochilus likewise made of snakes; whose flesh dried, is thought to have a very opening and cordial virtue. The other is, of beads made of the scarlet powder, which they call kermes; which is the principal ingredient in their cordial confection alterne: the beads would be made up with amber-grise, and some pomander.

966. It hath been long received, and confirmed by divers trials; that the root of the male-piony dried, tied to the neck, doth help the falling-sickness; and likewise the incubus, which we call the mare. The cause of both these diseases, and especially of the epilepsy from the stomach, is the grossness of the vapours which rise and enter into the cells of the brain: and therefore the working is by extreme and subtile attenuation; which that simple hath. I judge the like to be in casoreum, mulk, rue-seed, agnus castus seed, &c.

967. There is a stone which they call the blood-stone, which worn is thought to be good for them that bleed at the nose: which (no doubt) is by affright and cooling of the spirits. Quaere, if the stone taken out of the toad's head, be not of the like virtue; for the toadloveth shade and coolness.

968. Light may be taken from the experiment of the horse-tooth ring, and the garland of periwinkle, how that those things which affuage the stric of the spirits, do help diseases contrary to the intention desired: for in the curing of the cramp, the intention is to relax the sinews, but the contraction of the spirits, that they strive less, is the best help: so to procure easy travails of women, the intention is to bring down the child; but the best help is, to stay the coming down too fast: whereunto they say, the toad-stone likewise helpeth. So in pestilential fevers, the intention is to expel the infection by sweat and evaporation; but the best means to do it is by nitre, diajordium, and other cool things, which do for a time arrest the expulsion, till nature can do it more quietly. For as one saith prettily; in the quenching of the flame of a pestilent ague; nature is like people that come to quench the fire of a house; which are so buffy, as one of them letteth another. Surely it is an excellent axiom, and of manifold use, that whatsoever appeaseth the contention of the spirits, furthereth their action.

969. The writers of natural magick commend the wearing of the spoil of a snake, for preserving of health. I doubt it is but a conceit; for that the snake is thought to renew her youth, by casting her spoil. They might as well take the beak of an eagle, or a piece of a hartthorn, because those renew.

970. It hath been anciently received, (for Pericles the Athenian used it) and it is yet in use, to wear little bladders of quicksilver, or tablets of arsenick, as preservatives against the plague: not as they conceive for any comfort they yield to the spirits, but for that being poisons themselves, they draw the venom to them from the spirits.

971. Vide the experiments 95, 96, and 97, touching the several sympathies and antipathies for medicinal use.
NATURAL HISTORY. CENT. X.

972. It is said, that the guts or skin of a wolf being applied to the belly, do cure the colick. It is true, that the wolf is a beast of great edacity and digestion; and so it may be the parts of him comfort the bowels.

973. We see scare-crows are set up to keep birds from corn and fruit; it is reported by some, that the head of a wolf, whole, dried, and hanged up in a dove-house, will scare away vermin; such as are weasels, pole-cats, and the like. It may be the head of a dog will do as much; for those vermin with us, know dogs better than wolves.

974. The brains of some creatures, (when their heads are roasted) taken in wine, are said to strengthen the memory; as the brains of smallage, wolf-bane, and cinquefoil, mingled with the meal of fine wheat. But I suppose, that the poriferous medicines are likeliest to do it; which are henbane, hemlock, mandrake, moon-thade, tobacco, opium, saffron, poplar-leaves, &c. And it seemeth to be incident to the brains of those creatures that are fearful.

975. The ointment that witches use, is reported to be made of the fat of children digged out of their graves; of the juices of smallage, wolf-bane, and cinquefoil, mingled with the meal of fine wheat. But I suppose, that the poriferous medicines are likeliest to do it; which are henbane, hemlock, mandrake, moon-thade, tobacco, opium, saffron, poplar-leaves, &c.

976. It is reported by some, that the affections of beasts when they are in strength, do add some virtue unto inanimate things; as that the skin of a sheep devoured by a wolf, moveth itching; that a stone bitten by a dog in anger, being thrown at him, drunk in powder, provoketh choler.

977. It hath been observed, that the diet of women with child, doth work much upon the infant; as if the mother eat quinces much, and coriander-seed, (the nature of both which is to repres and stay vapours that ascend to the brain) it will make the child ingenious: and on the contrary side, if the mother eat (much) onions, or beans, or such vaporous food; or drink wine, or strong drink immoderately; or fast much; or be given to much musing; (all which send or draw vapours to the head) it endangereth the child to become lunatick, or of imperfect memory: and I make the same judgment of tobacco often taken by the mother.

978. The writers of natural magick report, that the heart of an ape worn near the heart, comforteth the heart, and increaseth audacity. It is true, that the ape is a merry and bold beast. And that the same heart likewise of an ape, applied to the neck or head, helpeth the wit; and is good for the falling-sicknes: the ape alio is a witty beast, and hath a dry brain; which may be some cause of attenuation of vapours in the head. Yet it is said to move dreams also. It may be the heart of a man would do more, but that it is more against mens minds to use it; except it be in such as wear the reliques of saints.

979. The flesh of a hedge-hog dressed and eaten, is said to be a great drier: it is true, that the juice of a hedge-hog must needs be harsh and dry, because it puttheth forth so many prickles: for plants also that are full of prickles are generally dry; as briars, thorns, berberries; and therefore the ashes of an hedge-hog are said to be a great deficcative of fistula's.

980. Mummy hath great force in stanching of blood; which, as it may be ascribed to the mixture of balms that are glutinous; so it may also partake of a secret propriety, in that the blood draweth man's flesh. And it is approved, that the moss which groweth upon the skull of a dead man unburied, will stanch blood potently: and so do the dregs, or powder of blood, sewer'd from the water, and dried.

981. It hath been practised, to make white swallows, by anointing of the eggs with oil. Which effect may be produced, by the flopping of the pores.
pores of the shell, and making the juice that putteth forth the feathers afterwards, more penurious. And it may be, the anointing of the eggs will be as effectual, as the anointing of the body; of which vide the experiment 93.

982. It is reported, that the white of an egg, or blood, mingled with salt-water, doth gather the saltiness, and maketh the water sweeter. This may be by adhesion; as in the sixth experiment of clarification: it may be also, that blood, and the white of an egg, (which is the matter of a living creature) have some sympathy with salt: for all life hath a sympathy with salt. We see, that salt laid to a cut finger healeth it; so as it seemeth salt draweth blood, as well as blood draweth salt.

983. It hath been anciently received, that the sea hare hath an antipathy with the lungs, (if it cometh near the body) and erodeth them. Whereof the cause is conceived to be, a quality it hath of heating the breath and spirits; as cantharides have upon the watry parts of the body; as urine and hydropical water. And it is a good rule, that whatsoever hath an operation upon certain kinds of matters, that, in man's body, worketh most upon those parts wherein that kind of matter aboundeth.

984. Generally, that which is dead, or corrupted, or excerned, hath antipathy with the same thing when it is alive, and when it is found; and with those parts which do excern: as a carcase of man is most infectious and odious to man; a carrion of an horse to an horse, &c. purulent matter of wounds, and ulcers, carbuncles, pocks, scabs, leprous, to found flesh; and the excrement of every species to that creature that excerneth them: but the excrements are less pernicious than the corruptions.

985. It is a common experience, that dogs know the dog-killer; when, as in times of infection, some petty fellow is sent out to kill the dogs; and that though they have never seen him before, yet they will all come forth, and bark, and fly at him.

986. The relations touching the force of imagination, and the secret instincts of nature, are so uncertain, as they require a great deal of examination, ere we conclude upon them. I would have it first thoroughly enquired, whether there be any secret passages of sympathy between persons of near blood; as parents, children, brothers, sisters, nurse children, husbands, wives, &c. There be many reports in history, that upon the death of persons of such nearness, men have had an inward feeling of it. I myself remember, that being in Paris, and my father dying in London, two or three days before my father's death, I had a dream, which I told to divers English gentlemen; that my father's house in the country was plaster'd all over with black mortar. There is an opinion abroad, (whether idle or no I cannot say) that loving and kind husbands have a sense of their wives breeding child, by some accident in their own body.

987. Next to those that are near in blood, there may be the like passage, and instincts of nature, between great friends and enemies: and sometimes the revealing is unto another person, and not to the party himself. I remember Philippus Commenius, (a grave writer) reporteth, that the archbishop of Vienna, (a reverend prelate) said (one day) after mass, to king Lewis the eleventh of France; Sir, your mortal enemy is dead; what time duke Charles of Burgundy was slain at the battle of Granjon against the Switzers. Some trial also would be made, whether pact or agreement do any thing; as if two friends should agree, that such a day in every week, they being in far distant places, should pray one for another; or should put on a ring or tablet, one
for another's fake; whether if one of them should break their vow and promise, the other should have any feeling of it in absense.

988. If there be any force in imaginations and affections of singular persons; it is probable the force is much more in the joint imaginations and affections of multitudes: as if a victory should be won or lost in remote parts, whether there is not some sense thereof in the people whom it concerned; because of the great joy or grief that many are possessed with at once? Pius Quintus, at the very time when that memorable victory was won by the Christians against the Turks, at the naval battle of Lepanto, being then hearing of causes in consistory, brake off suddenly, and said to those about him, it is now more time we should give thanks to God, for the great victory he hath granted us against the Turks: it is true, that victory had a sympathy with his spirit; for it was merely his work to conclude that league. It may be that revelation was divine; but what shall we say then to a number of examples amongst the Grecians and Romans? Where the people being in theaters at plays, have had news of victories and overthrows, some few days before any messenger could come.

It is true, that they may hold in these things, which is the general root of superstition: namely, that men observe when things hit, and not when they miss; and commit to memory the one, and forget and pass over the other. But touching divination, and the misgiving of minds, we shall speak more when we handle in general the nature of minds, and souls, and spirits.

989. We have given formerly some rules of imagination; and touching the fortifying of the same. We have set down also some few instances and directions, of the force of imagination upon beasts, birds, &c. upon plants, and upon inanimate bodies: wherein you must still observe, that your trials be upon subtle and light motions, and not the contrary; for you will sooner by imagination bind a bird from singing, than from eating or flying: and I leave it to every man, to choose experiments, which himself thinketh most commodious; giving now but a few examples of every of the three kinds.

990. Use some imaginant, (observing the rules formerly prescribed) for binding of a bird from singing; and the like of a dog from barking. Try also the imagination of some, whom you shall accommodate with things to fortify it, in cock-fights, to make one cock more hardy, and the other more cowardly. It would be tried also in flying of hawks; or in coursing of a deer, or hart, with greyhounds; or in horse-races; and the like comparative motions: for you may sooner by imagination quicken or slack a motion, than raise or cease it; as it is easier to make a dog go slower, than to make him stand still that he may not run.

991. In plants also you may try the force of imagination upon the lighter sort of motions: as upon the sudden fading, or lively coming up of herbs, or upon their bending one way or other; or upon their closing and opening, &c.

992. For inanimate things, you may try the force of imagination, upon staying the working of beer when the barm is put in; or upon the coming of butter or cheese, after the churning, or the rennet be put in.

993. It is an ancient tradition everywhere alledged, for example of secret proprieties and influxes, that the torpedo marina, if it be touched with a long stick, doth stupify the hand of him that toucheth it. It is one degree of working at distance, to work by the continuance of a fit medium; as found will be convey'd to the ear, by striking upon a bow-string, if the horn of the bow be held to the ear.

994. The
994. The writers of natural magick do attribute much to the virtues that come from the parts of living creatures; so as they be taken from them, the creatures remaining still alive: as if the creature still living did infuse some immaterial virtue and vigour into the part severed. So much may be true; that any part taken from a living creature newly slain, may be of greater force, than if it were taken from the like creature dying of itself, because it is fuller of spirit.

995. Trial would be made of the like parts of individuals in plants and living creatures; as to cut off a stock of a tree; and to lay that which you cut off to putrefy, to see whether it will decay the rest of the stock: or if you should cut off part of the tail, or leg of a dog or a cat, and lay it to putrefy, and so see whether it will fetter, or keep from healing, the part which remaineth.

996. It is received, that it helpeth to continue love, if one wear a ring, or a bracelet of the hair of the party beloved. But that may be by the exciting of the imagination: and perhaps a glove, or other like favour, may as well do it.

997. The sympathy of individuals, that have been entire, or have touched, is of all others the most incredible: yet according unto our faithful manner of examination of nature, we will make some little mention of it. The taking away of warts, by rubbing them with somewhat that afterwards is put to waste and consume, is a common experiment; and I do apprehend it the rather, because of my own experience. I had from my childhood a wart upon one of my fingers: afterwards when I was about sixteen years old, being then at Paris, there grew upon both my hands a number of warts, (at the least an hundred) in a month's space; The English ambassador's lady, who was a woman far from superstitition, told me one day, she would help me away with my warts: whereupon she got a piece of lard with the skin on, and rubbed the warts all over with the fat side; and amongst the rest, that wart which I had so long endured, for company. But at the rest I did little marvel, because they came in a short time, and might go away in a short time again; but the going away of that which had stayed so long, doth yet stick with me. They say the like is done by the rubbing of warts with a green elder-flick, and then burying the flick to rot in muck. It would be tried with corns and warts, and such other excrescences. I would have it also tried with some parts of living creatures, that are nearest the nature of excrescences; as the combs of cocks, the spurs of cocks, the horns of beasts, &c. And I would have it tried both ways; both by rubbing those parts with lard, or elder, as before; and by cutting off some piece of those parts, and laying it to consume: To see whether it will work any effect towards the consumption of that part which was joined with it.

998. It is constantly received and avouched, that the anointing of the weapon that maketh the wound, will heal the wound it self. In this experiment, upon the relation of men of credit, (though myself, as yet, am not fully inclined to believe it) you shall note the points following: first, the ointment wherewith this is done, is made of divers ingredients; whereof the strangest and hardest to come by, are the moss upon the skull of a dead man unburied; and the fats of a boar, and a bear, killed in the act of generation.
ration. These two last I could easily suspect to be prescribed as a starting hole; that if the experiment proved not, it might be pretended that the beasts were not killed in the due time; for as for the moss, it is certain there is great quantity of it in Ireland, upon slain bodies, laid on heaps unburied. The other ingredients are, the blood-stone in powder, and some other things, which seem to have a virtue to stanch blood; as also the moss hath. And the description of the whole ointment is to be found in the chymical dispensatory of Crollius. Secondly, the same kind of ointment applied to the hurt itself, worketh not the effect; but only applied to the weapon. Thirdly, (which I like well) they do not observe the confectioning of the ointment under any certain constellation; which commonly is the excuse of magical medicines when they fail, that they were not made under a fit figure of heaven. Fourthly, it may be applied to the weapon, though the party hurt be at great distance. Fifthly, it seemeth the imagination of the party to be cured, is not needful to concur; for it may be done without the knowledge of the party wounded: and thus much has been tried, that the ointment (for experiment's sake) hath been wiped off the weapon, without the knowledge of the party hurt, and presently the party hurt has been in great rage of pain, till the weapon was re-anointed. Sixthly, it is affirmed, that if you cannot get the weapon, yet if you put an instrument of iron, or wood, resembling the weapon, into the wound, whereby it bleedeth, the anointing of that instrument will serve and work the effect. This I doubt should be a device to keep this strange form of cure in regular: and use; because many times you cannot come by the weapon it self. Seventhly, the wound must be at first washed clean with white wine, or the party's own water; and then bound up close in fine linen, and no more dressing renewed till it be whole. Eighthly, the sword itself must be wrapped up close, as far as the ointment goeth, that it taketh no wind. Ninthly, the ointment, if you wipe it off from the sword, and keep it, will serve again; and rather increase in virtue, than diminish. Tenthly, it will cure in far shorter time, than ointments of wounds commonly do. Lestly, it will cure a beast as well as a man; which I like best of all the rest, because it subjoeth the matter to an easy trial.

Experiment solitary touching secret proprieties.

999. I would have men know, that though I reprehend the easy passing over of the causes of things, by ascribing them to secret and hidden virtues, and proprieties, (for this hath arrested and laid asleep all true enquiry and indications;) yet I do not understand, but that in the practical part of knowledge, much will be left to experience and probation, whereunto indication cannot so fully reach: and this not only in specie, but in individuo. So in phyllick, if you will cure the jaundice, it is not enough to say, that the medicine must not be cooling; for that will hinder the opening which the disease requireth: that it must not be hot; for that will exasperate choler: that it must go to the gall; for there is the obstruction which causeth the disease, &c. But you must receive from experience, that powder of Chamaepytis, or the like, drunk in beer, is good for the jaundice. So again a wise physician doth not continue still the same medicine to a patient; but he will vary, if the first medicine doth not apparently succeed: for of those remedies that are good for the jaundice, stone, agnes, &c. that will do good in one body, which will not do good in another; according to the correspondence the medicine hath to the individual body.

Experiment solitary touching secret proprieties.
Experiment solitary touching the general sympathy of mens spirits.

1000. The delight which men have in popularity, fame, honour, submission, and subjection of other mens minds, wills, or affections (although these things may be desired for other ends) seemeth to be a thing in it self without contemplation of consequence, grateful and agreeable to the nature of man. This thing (surely) is not without some significacion, as if all spirits and souls of men, came forth out of one divine limbus; else why men be so much affected with that which others think or say? The best temper of minds desireth good name and true honour: the lighter, popularity and applause: the more depraved, subjection and tyranny; as is seen in great conquerors and troublers of the world: and yet more in arch-hereticks; for the introducing of new doctrines, is likewise an affectation of tyranny over the understandings and beliefs of men.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

Inquisitions touching the compounding of metals.

To make proof of the incorporation of iron with flint, or other stone. For if it can be incorporated without over-great charge, or other incommmodity, the cheapness of the flint or stone, doth make the compound stuff profitable for divers uses. The doubts may be three in number.

First, Whether they will incorporate at all, otherwise than to a body that will not hold well together, but become brittle and uneven?

Secondly, Although it should incorporate well, yet whether the stuff will not be so stubborn as it will not work well with a hammer, whereby the charge in working will overthrow the cheapness of the material?

Thirdly, Whether they will incorporate, except the iron and stone be first calcined into powder? And if not, whether the charge of the calcination will not eat out the cheapness of the material?

The uses are most probable to be; first for the implements of the kitchen; as spits, ranges, cobirons, pots, &c. then for the wars, as ordnance, port-cullises, grates, chains, &c.

Note; the finer works of iron are not so probable to be served with such a stuff; as locks, clocks, small chains, &c. because the stuff is not like to be tough enough.

For the better use in comparison of iron, it is like the stuff will be far lighter; for the weight of iron to flint is double and a third part; and, secondly, it is like to rust not so easily, but to be more clean.

The ways of tryal are two: first, by the iron and stone of themselves, wherein it must be enquired, what are the stones that do easielest melt. Secondly, with an additament, wherein brimstone is approved to help to the melting of iron or steel. But then it must be considered, whether the charge of the additament will not destroy the profit.

It must be known also, what proportion of the stone the iron will receive to incorporate well with it, and that with once melting; for if either the proportion be too small, or that it cannot be received but piece-meal by several meltings, the work cannot be of value.

To make proof of the incorporating of iron and brasses. For the cheapness of the iron in comparison of the brasses, if the uses may be served, doth promise profit. The doubt will be, touching their incorporating; for that it is approved, that iron will not incorporate, neither with brasses, nor other metals of it self, by simple fire: so as the enquiry must be upon the calcination, and the additament, and the charge of them.

The uses will be for such things as are now made of brasses, and might be
as well served by the compound stuff; wherein the doubts will be chiefly of
the toughness, and of the beauty.

First, therefore, if brass ordnance could be made of the compound stuff,
in respect of the cheapness of the iron, it would be of great use.

The vantage which brass ordnance hath over iron, is chiefly, as I suppose,
because it will hold the blow, though it be driven far thinner than the iron
can be; whereby it faveth both in the quantity of the material, and in the
charge and commodity of mounting and carriage, in regard, by reason of the
thinness, it beareth much less weight: there may be also somewhat in being
not so easily over-heated.

Secondly, for the beauty. Those things wherein the beauty or luitre are
esteemed, are, andirons, and all manner of images, and statues, and columns,
and tombs, and the like. So as the doubt will be double for the beauty;
the one whether the colour will please so well, because it will not be so like
gold as brass? The other, whether it will polish so well? Wherein for the
latter it is probable it will; for steel glossies are more replentent than the like
plates of brass would be; and so is the glittering of a blade. And besides I take
it, andiron brass, which they call white brass, hath some mixture of tin to
help the luitre. And for the golden colour, it may be by some small mixture
of orpiment, such as they use to brass in the yellow alchymy; it will
easily recover that which the iron loseth. Of this the eye must be the judge
upon proof made.

But now for pans, pots, curfews, counters, and the like, the beauty will
not be so much respected, as the compound stuff is like to pans.

For the better use of the compound stuff, it will be sweeter and cleaner
than brass alone, which yieldeth a fmen or soilefs; and therefore may
be better for the vessells of the kitchen and brewing. It will also be harder than
brass, where hardnes may be required.

For the tryal, the doubts will be two: first, the over-weight of brass
towards iron, which will make iron float on the top in the melting. This
perhaps will be holpen with the calaminar stone, which consenteth so well
with brass, and as I take it, is lighter than iron. The other doubt will be,
the flifines and drynes of iron to melt; which must be holpen either by
moistening the iron, or opening it. For the first, perhaps some mixture of
lead will help. Which is as much more liquid than brass, as iron is less li-
quid. The opening may be holpen by some mixture of sulphur, so as the
trials would be with brass, iron, calaminar-stone and sulphur; and then
again with the same composition, and an addition of some lead; and in all
this the charge must be considered, whether it eat not out the profit of the
cheapness of iron?

There be two proofs to be made of incorporation of metals for magnifi-
cence and delicacy. The one for the eye, and the other for the ear. Statue-
metal, and bell-metal, and trumpet-metal, and string-metal; in all these,
though the mixture of brass or copper should be dearer than the brass itself,
yet the pleasure will advance the price to profit.

First therefore for statue-metal, see Pliny’s mixtures, which are almost
forgotten, and consider the charge.

Try likewise the mixture of tin in large proportion with copper, and observe
the colour and beauty, it being polished. But chiefly let proof be made of the
incorporating of copper or brass with glass-metal, for that is cheap, and is like
to add a great glory and shining.

For bell-metal. First, it is to be known what is the composition which

Vol. III.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

is now in use. Secondly, it is probable that it is the dryness of the metal that doth help the clearness of the found, and the moistness that dulles it: and therefore the mixtures that are probable, are steel, tin, glass-metal.

For string-metal, or trumpet-metal, it is the same reason; save that glass-metal may not be used, because it will make it too brittle; and trial may be made with mixture of silver, it being but a delicacy with iron or brass.

To make proof of the incorporation of silver and tin in equal quantity, or with two parts silver, and one part tin, and to observe whether it be of equal beauty and lustre with pure silver; and also whether it yield no soilen-

ness more than silver? And again, whether it will endure the ordinary fire, which belongeth to chafing-dishes, poñets, and such other silver vessels? And if it do not endure the fire, yet whether by some mixture of iron it may not be made more firm? For if it be in beauty, and all the uses aforesaid equal to silver, it were a thing of singular profit to the state, and to all particular persons, to change silver plate or vessel into the compound stuff, being a kind of silver electre, and to turn the rest into coin. It may be also questioned, whether the compoundstuff will receive gilding as well as silver, and with equal lustre? It is to be noted, that the common alloy of silver coin is brass, which doth discolour more, and is not so neat as tin.

The drownings of metals within other metals, in such sort as they can never rise again, is a thing of great profit. For if a quantity of silver can be so buried in gold, as it never will be reduced again, neither by fire, nor par-

ting waters, nor otherways: and also that it serve all uses as well as pure gold, it is in effect all one, as if so much silver were turned into gold; only the weight will discover it: yet that taketh off but half of the profit; for gold is not fully double weight to silver, but gold is twelve times price to silver.

The burial must be by one of these two ways, either by the smallness of the proportion, as perhaps fifty to one, which will be but six-pence gains in fifty shillings: or it must be holpen by somewhat which may fix the silver, never to be restored or vapoured away, when it is incorporated into such a mass of gold; for the less quantity is ever the harder to serve: and for this purpose iron is the likest, or coppel-duff, upon which the fire hath no power of con-

sumption.

The making of gold seemeth a thing scarcely possible; because gold is the heaviest of metals, and to add matter is impossible: and again, to drive metals into a narrower room than their natural extent beareth, is a condensa-

tion hardly to be expected. But to make silver seemeth more easy, because both quick-silver and lead are weightier than silver; so as there needeth only fixing, and not condensing. The degree unto this that is already known, is infusing of quick-silver in a parchment, or otherwise in the midst of molten lead when it cooleth; for this stupiseth the quick-silver that it runneth no more. This trial is to be advanced three ways. First, by iteratio-

ing the melting of the lead, to see whether it will not make the quick-silver harder and harder. Secondly, to put realgar hot into the midst of the quick-silver, whereby it may be condened, as well from within as without. Thirdly, to try it in the midst of molten iron, or molten steel, which is a body more likely to fix the quick-silver than lead. It may be also tried, by incorporating powder of steel, or copper-duff, by pouncing into the quick-silver, and so to proceed to the stupifying.

Upon glass, four things would be put in proof. The first, means to make the
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

the glass more crystalline. The second, to make it more strong for falls, and for fire, though it come not to the degree to be malleable. The third, to make it coloured by tinctures, comparable to or exceeding precious stones. The fourth, to make a compound body of glass and galletyle; that is, to have the colour milky like a chalcedon, being a stuff between a porcellane and a glass.

For the first; it is good first to know exactly the several materials whereof the glass in use is made; window-glass, Normandy and Burgundy, ale-house-glass, English drinking-glass: and then thereupon to consider what the reason is of the coarnefis or clearnefis; and from thence to rise to a consideration how to make some additions to the coarser materials; to raise them to the whiteness and crystalline splendour of the finest.

For the second; we see pebbles, and some other stones, will cut as fine as crystal, which if they will melt, may be a mixture for glass, and may make it more tough and more crystalline. Besides, we see metals will vitrify; and perhaps some portion of the glass of metal vitrified, mixed in the pot of ordinary glass-metal, will make the whole mass more tough.

For the third; it were good to have of coloured window-glass, such as is coloured in the pot, and not by colours——

It is to be known of what stuff galletyle is made, and how the colours in it are varied; and thereupon to consider how to make the mixture of glass-metal and them, whereof I have seen the example.

Enquire what be the stones that do easiest melt. Of them take half a pound, and of iron a pound and half, and an ounce of brimstone, and see whether they will incorporate, being whole, with a strong fire. If not, try the same quantities calcined: and if they will incorporate, make a plate of them, and burnish it as they do iron.

Take a pound and a half of brass, and half a pound of iron; two ounces of the calaminar stone, an ounce and a half of brimstone, an ounce of lead; calcine them, and see what body they make; and if they incorporate, make a plate of it burnished.

Take of copper an ounce and a half, of tin an ounce, and melt them together, and make a plate of them burnished.

Take of copper an ounce and a half, of tin an ounce, of glass-metal half an ounce; stir them well in the boiling, and if they incorporate, make a plate of them burnished.

Take of copper a pound and a half, tin four ounces, brass two ounces; make a plate of them burnished.

Take of silver two ounces, tin half an ounce; make a little lay-cup of it, and burnish it.

To enquire of the materials of every of the kind of glasses, coarser and finer, and of the proportions.

Take an equal quantity of glass-metal, of stone calcined, and bring a pattern.

Take an ounce of vitrified metal, and a pound of ordinary glass-metal, and see whether they will incorporate, and bring a pattern.

Bring examples of all coloured glasses, and learn the ingredients whereby they are coloured.

Enquire of the substance of galletyle,
Articles of questions touching minerals.

The Lord Bacon's questions, with Dr. Meverel's solutions, concerning the compounding, incorporating, or union of metals or minerals; which subject is the first letter of his lordship's alphabet.

Q. WITH what metals gold will incorporate by simple colligations, and with what not? And in what quantity it will incorporate; and what kind of body the compound makes?

A. GOLD with silver, which was the ancient electrum: gold with quick-silver; gold with lead; gold with copper; gold with brass; gold with iron; gold with tin.

So likewise of silver: silver with quick-silver; silver with lead; silver with copper; silver with brass; silver with iron; (Plinius secund. lib. xxxiii. 9. Mискuit denario triumviri Antonius ferrum,) silver with tin.

So likewise of quick-silver: quick-silver with lead; quick-silver with copper; quick-silver with brass; quick-silver with iron; quick-silver with tin.

So of lead: lead with copper; lead with brass; lead with iron; lead with tin. Plin. xxxiv. 9.

So of copper: copper with brass; copper with iron; copper with tin.

So of brass: brass with iron; brass with tin.

So of iron: iron with tin.

What be the compound metals that are common and known? And what are the proportions of their mixtures? As,

LATTEN of brass, and the calaminar stone,

PEWTER of tin and lead.

BELL-metal of &c. and the counterfeit plate, which they call alchemy.

The decompositors of three metals or more, are too long to enquire of, except there be some compositions of them already observed.

It is also to be observed, whether any two metals which will not mingle of themselves, will mingle with the help of another; and what.

What compounds will be made of metal with stone and other fossils; as latten is made with brass and the calaminar stone; as all the metals incorporate with vitriol; all with iron powdered; all with flint, &c.

Some few of these would be inquired of, to disclose the nature of the rest.

Whether metals or other fossils will incorporate with molten glass, and what body it makes?

The quantity in the mixture would be well considered; for some small quantity perhaps will incorporate, as in the alloys of gold and silver coin.

Upon the compound body, three things are chiefly to be observed; the colour; the fragility or pliancies; the volatility of fixation, compared with the simple bodies.

For present use or profit, this is the rule: consider the price of the two simple bodies; consider again the dignity of the one above the other in use; then see if you can make a compound, that will have more in price, than it will lose in dignity of the use.

As for example; consider the price of brass ordnance; consider again the price of iron ordnance, and then consider wherein the brass ordnance doth excel the iron ordnance in use; then if you can make a compound of brass and iron that will be near as good in use, and much cheaper in price, then there is profit both to the private, and the common-wealth. So of gold and
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

and silver, the price is double of twelve: the dignity of gold above silver is not much, the splendour is alike, and more pleasing to some eyes, as in cloth of silver, silvered rapiers, &c. The main dignity is, that gold bears the fire, which silver doth not: but that is an excellency in nature, but it is nothing at all in use; for any dignity in use I know none, but that silvering will fully and canker more than gilding; which if it might be corrected with a little mixture of gold, there is profit: and I do somewhat marvel, that the latter ages have lost the ancient elecrum, which was a mixture of silver with gold: whereof I conceive there may be much use, both in coin, plate, and gilding.

It is to be noted, that there is in the version of metals impossibility, or at least great difficulty, as in making of gold, silver, copper. On the other side, in the adulterating or counterfeiting of metals, there is deceit and villany. But it should seem there is a middle way, and that is by new compounds, if the ways of incorporating were well known.

What incorporation or imbibition metals will receive from vegetables, without being dissolved in their substance: as when the armourers make their steel more tough and pliant, by aperson of water and juice of herbs; when gold being grown somewhat churlish by recovering, is made more pliant by throwing in threads of tanned leather, or by leather oiled.

Note; that in these and the like shews of imbibition, it were good to try by the weights, whether the weight be increased or no; for if it be not, it is to be doubted that there is no imbibition of substance, but only that the application of that other body, doth dispose and invite the metal to another picture of parts, than of it itself it would have taken.

After the incorporation of metals by simple colliquefaction, for the better discovery of the nature, and contents and divers of metals, it would be likewise tried by incorporating of their disolutions.

What metals being dissolved in strong waters will incorporate well together, and what not? Which is to be enquired particularly, as it was in colliquefactions.

There is to be observed in those disolutions which will not easily incorporate, what the effects are: as the bullication; the precipitation to the bottom; the ejaculation towards the top; the suspension in the midst; and the like.

Note; that the divers of the menstrual or strong waters, may hinder the incorporation, as well as the divers of the metals themselves; therefore where the menstrual are the same, and yet the incorporation followeth not, you may conclude the different is in the metals; but where the menstrua are several, not so certain.

Dr. Meverell's answers to the foregoing questions, concerning the compounding, incorporating, or union of metals and minerals.

Gold will incorporate with silver in any proportion. Plin. lib. xxxiii. cap. 4. Omni auro in efi argentum vario ponder e; alibi dena, alibi nona, alibi octava parte—Ubicunque quintae argenti portio invenitur, elecrum vocatur. The body remains fixt, solid, and coloured, according to the proportion of the two metals.

Gold with quick-silver easily mixeth, but the product is imperfectly fixed; and so are all other metals incorporate with mercury.

Gold incorporates with lead in any proportion.

Gold incorporates with copper in any proportion, the common alloy.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

Gold incorporates with brass in any proportion. And what is said of copper is true of brass, in the union of other metals.

Gold will not incorporate with iron.

Gold incorporates with tin, the ancient allay, *Ibid.* i. 25.

What was said of gold and quicksilver, may be said of quicksilver and the rest of metals.

Silver with lead in any proportion.

Silver incorporates with copper. *Pliny* mentions such a mixture; for *triumphales statuae, lib. xxxiii. 9.* *mifcentur argento, tertia pars aeris Cyprii tenuifimi, quod coronarium vacant, & sulphuris vivi quantum argenti. The same is true of brass.

Silver incorporates not with iron. Wherefore I wonder at that which. *Pliny* hath, *lib. xxxiii. 9.* *Miftuit denario triumvir Antonius ferrum.* And what is said of this is true in the rest; for iron incorporates not with any of them.

Silver mixes with tin.

Lead incorporates with copper. Such a mixture was the pot-metal whereof *Pliny* speaks, *lib. xxxiv. 9.* *Ternis aut quaternis libris plumbi argentarii in centenas aeris additis.*

Lead incorporates with tin. The mixture of these two in equal proportions, is that which was anciently called *plumbum argentarium,* *Plin.* xxxiv. 17.

Copper incorporates with tin. Of such a mixture were the mirrors of the Romans. *Plin. Atque ut omnia de peculis peragantur hoc loco, optima apud maiores erant Brundisina, flanno & aere mistis, lib. xxxiii. 9.*

Compound metals now in use.

1. Fine tin. The mixture is thus; pure tin a thousand pound, temper fifty pound, glafs of tin three pounds.

2. Coarse pewter is made of fine tin and lead. Temper is thus made; the dross of pure tin four pound and a half, copper half a pound.

3. Brass is made of copper and calaminaris.

4. Bell-metal. Copper a thousand pound, tin from three hundred to two hundred pound, brass a hundred and fifty pound.

5. Pot-metal, copper and lead.

6. White alchymy is made of pan-brass one pound, and *arsenicum* three ounces.

7. Red alchymy is made of copper and auripigment. There be divers imperfect minerals, which will incorporate with the metals: being indeed metals inwardly, but clothed with earths and stones: as pyritis, calaminaris, mify, ebaltis, fory, vitriolam.

Metals incorporate not with glafs, except they be brought into the form of glafs.

Metals dissolved. The dissolution of gold and silver disagree, so that in their mixture there is great ebullition, darkness, and in the end a precipitation of a black powder.

The mixture of gold and mercury agree.

Gold agrees with iron. In a word, the dissolution of mercury and iron agree with all the rest.

Silver and copper disagree, and so do silver and lead. Silver and tin agree.

The
Physiological Remains.

Articles of enquiry concerning minerals. The second letter of the cross-row, touching the separation of metals and minerals.

Separation is of three sorts; the first, is the separating of the pure metal from the ore or dross, which we call refining. The second, is the drawing one metal or mineral out of another, which we call extracting. The third, is the separating of any metal into its original, or materia prima, or element, or call them what you will; which work we will call principiation.

1. For refining, we are to enquire of it according to the several metals; as gold, silver, &c. Incidentally we are to enquire of the first stone, or ore, or spar, or marcasite of metals severally, and what kind of bodies they are, and of the degrees of richness. Also we are to enquire of the means of separating, whether by fire, parting waters, or otherwise. Also for the manner of refining, you are to see how you can multiply the heat, or hasten the opening, and so save the charge in the fining.

The means of this in three manners; that is to say, in the blast of the fire; in the manner of the furnace, to multiply heat by union and reflexion; and by some addition, or medicines which will help the bodies to open them the sooner.

Note the quickning of the blast, and the multiplying of the heat in the furnace, may be the same for all metals; but the additaments must be several, according to the nature of the metals. Note again, that if you think that the multiplying of the additaments in the same proportion, that you multiply the ore, the work will follow, you may be deceived: for quantity in the passive will add more resistance, than the same quantity in the active will add force.

2. For extracting, you are to enquire what metals contain others, and likewise what not; as lead, silver, copper, silver, &c.

Note, although the charge of extraction should exceed the worth, yet that is not the matter: For at least it will discover nature and possibility, the other may be thought on afterwards.

We are likewise to enquire what the differences are of those metals which contain more or less other metals, and how that agrees with the poorest or richness of the metals or ore in themselves. As the lead that contains most silver is accounted to be more brittle, and yet otherwise poorer in itself.

3. For principiation, I cannot affirm whether there be any such thing or not; and I think the chymists make too much ado about it: but howsoever it be, be it solution or extraction, or a kind of conversion by the fire; it is diligently to be enquired what salts, sulphur, vitriol, mercury, or the like simple bodies are to be found in the several metals, and in what quantity.

Dr. Mererel’s answers to the foregoing questions, touching the separations of metals and minerals.

1. For the means of separating. After that the ore is washed, or cleansed from the earth, there is nothing simply necessary, save only a wind-furnace well framed, narrow above and at the hearth, in shape oval, sufficiently fed with charcoal and ore, in convenient proportions.

For additions in this first separation, I have observed none; the dross the mineral brings being sufficient. The refiners of iron observe, that that iron-stone is hardest to melt, which is fullest of metal, and that easiest which hath most dross. But in lead, and tin, the contrary is noted. Yet in meltings of metals, when they have been calcined formerly by fire, or strong-waters,
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

waters, there is good use of additaments, as of borax, tartar, armoniack, and salt-petre.

2. In extracting of metals. Note, that lead and tin contain silver. Lead and silver contain gold. Iron contains brass. Silver is best separated from lead by the test. So gold from silver. Yet the best way for that is aqua regia.

3. For precipitation. I can truly and boldly affirm, that there are no such principles as fat, sulphur and mercury, which can be separated from any perfect metals. For every part so separated, may easily be reduced into perfect metal without substitution of that, or those principles which chymists imagine to be wanting. As suppose you take the salt of lead; this salt, or as some name it sulphur, may be turned into perfect lead, by melting it with the like quantity of lead which contains principles only for itself.

I acknowledge that there is quicksilver and brimstone found in the imperfect minerals; but those are nature's remote materials, and not the chymist's principles. As if you dissolve antimony by aqua regia, there will be real brimstone swimming upon the water: as appears by the colour of the fire when it is burnt, and by the smell.

Articles of enquiry concerning metals and minerals. The third letter of the cross-row touching the variation of metals into several shapes, bodies, or natures, the particulars heretofollow:

Tincture: turning to rut: calcination: sublimation: precipitation: amalgamating, or turning into a soft body: vitrification: opening or dissolving into liquor: sproutings, or branchings, or arborecents: induration and mollification: making tough or brittle: volatility and fixation: transmutation, or version.

For tincture: it is to be enquired how metal may be tinged through and through, and with what, and into what colours; as tinging silver yellow, tinging copper white, and tinging red, green, blue; especially with keeping the lustre.

Item, tincture of glasses.

Item, tincture of marble, flint, or other stone.

For turning into rut, two things are chiefly to be enquired; by what corrosives it is done, and into what colours it turns; as lead into white, which they call cerus; iron into yellow, which they call crocus martis; quicksilver into vermilion; brass into green, which they call verdigrise.

For calcination; how every metal is calcined, and into what kind of body, and what is the exquisitest way of calcination.

For sublimation; to enquire the manner of subliming, and what metals endure subliming, and what body the sublimate makes.

For precipitation likewise; by what strong water every metal will precipitate, and with what additaments, and in what time, and into what body.

So for amalgama; what metals will endure it, what are the means to do it, and what is the manner of the body.

For vitrification likewise; what metals will endure it, what are the means to do it, into what colour it turns; and farther, where the whole metal is turned into glass, and where the metal doth but hang in the glasse parts; also what weight the vitrified body bears, compared with the crude body; also because vitrification is accounted a kind of death of metals, what vitrification will admit of turning back again, and what not.

For dissolution into liquor, we are to enquire what is the proper menstruum to dissolve any metal, and in the negative, what will touch upon the one
one, and not upon the other, and what several *menstrua* will dissolve any metal, and which most exactly. *Item,* the process or motion of the dissolution, the manner of rising, boiling, vapouring more violent, or more gentle, causing much heat or less. *Item,* the quantity or charge that the strong water will bear, and then give over. *Item,* the colour into which the liquor will turn. Above all it is to be enquired, whether there be any *menstrua* to dissolve any metal that is not fretting, or corroding, and openeth the body by sympathy, and not by mordacity, or violent penetration.

For sprouting or branching, though it be a thing but tranitory, and a kind of toy or pleasure, yet there is a more serious use of it; for that it discovereth the delicate motions of spirits, when they put forth and cannot get forth, like unto that which is in vegetables.

For induration, or mollification; it is to be enquired what will make metals harder and harder, and what will make them softer and softer. And this enquiry tendeth to two ends: first, for use; as to make iron soft by the fire makes it malleable. Secondly, because induration is a degree towards fixation, and mollification towards volatility; and therefore the enquiry of them will give light towards the other.

For tough and brittle, they are much of the same kind, but yet worthy of an enquiry apart, especially to join hardness with toughness, as making glass malleable, &c. and making blades strong to resist and pierce, and yet not easy to break.

For volatility and fixation. It is a principal branch to be enquired: the utmost degree of fixation is that wherein no fire will work, nor strong water joined with fire, if there be any such fixation possible. The next is, when fire tinctly will not work without strong waters. The next is by the left, The next is when it will endure fire not blown, or such a strength of fire. The next is when it will not endure, but yet is malleable. The next is when it is not malleable, but yet is not fluent, but stupified. So of volatility, the utmost degree is when it will fly away without returning. The next is when it will fly up, but with ease return. The next is when it will fly upwards over the helm by a kind of effuffation without vapouring. The next is when it will melt though not rise. The next is when it will soften though not melt. Of all these diligent enquiry is to be made in several metals, especially of the more extreme degrees.

For transmutation or verion. If it be real and true, it is the farthest part of art, and would be well distinguished, from extraction, from restitution, and from adulteration. I hear much of turning tin into copper; I hear also of the growth of lead in weight, which cannot be without a conversion of some body into lead: but whatsoever is of this kind, and well expressed, is diligently to be enquired and set down.

Dr. Meverel’s answers to the foregoing questions, concerning the variation of metals and minerals.

1. For tinctures, there are none that I know, but that rich variety which springs from mixture of metals with metals, or imperfect minerals.

2. The imperfect metals are subject to rust, all of them except mercury, which is made into vermilion by solution, or calcination. The rest are rusted by any salt, sour, or acid water. Lead into a white body called cerussa. Iron into a pale red called ferrugo. Copper is turned into green, named aerugo, aes viride. Tin into white: But this is not in use, neither hath it obtained a name.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

The Scriptures mention the ruit of gold, but that's in regard of the alloy.

3. Calcination. All metals may be calcined by strong waters, or by admixture of salt, sulphur, and mercury. The imperfect metals may be calcined by continuance of simple fire; iron thus calcined is called crucus martis.

And this is their best way. Gold and silver are best calcined by mercury. Their colour is gray. Lead calcined is very red. Copper dusky red.

4. Metals are sublimed by joining them with mercury or salts. As silver with mercury, gold with salt armoniac, mercury with vitriol.

5. Precipitation is, when any metal being dissolved into a strong water, is beaten down into a powder by salt water. The chiefest in this kind is oil of tartar.

6. Amalgamation, is the joining, or mixing of mercury with any other of the metals. The manner is this in gold, the rest are answerable: take six parts of mercury, make them hot in a crucible, and pour them to one part of gold made red hot in another crucible, stir these well together that they may incorporate; which done, cast the mass into cold water and wash it. This is called the amalgama of gold.

7. For vitiification. All the imperfect metals may be turned by strong fire into glass, except mercury; iron into green; lead into yellow; brass into blue; tin into pale yellow. For gold and silver, I have not known them vitrified, except joined with antimony. These glaifybodies may be reduced into the form of mineral bodies.

8. Dissolution. All metals without exception may be dissolved.

1. Iron may be dissolved by any tart, salt, or vitriolated water; yea, by common water, if it be first calcined with sulphur. It dissolves in aqua fortis with great ebullition and heat, into a red liquor, so red as blood.

2. Lead is fittest dissolved in vinegar, into a pale yellow, making the vinegar very sweet.

3. Tin is best dissolved with distilled salt-water. It retains the colour of the menstruum.

4. Copper dissolves as iron doth, in the same liquor into a blue.

5. Silver hath its proper menstruum, which is aqua fortis. The colour is green, with great heat and ebullition.

6. Gold is dissolved with aqua regia, into a yellow liquor, with little heat or ebullition.

7. Mercury is dissolved with much heat and boiling, into the same liquors which gold and silver are. It alters not the colour of the menstruum.

Note. Strong waters may be charged with half their weight of fixed metals, and equal of mercury; if the workman be skilful.

9. Sprouting. This is an accident of dissolution. For if the menstruum be overcharged, then within short time the metals will shoot into certain crystals.

10. For induration, or mollification, they depend upon the quantity of fixed mercury and sulphur. I have observed little of them, neither of toughness nor bitternes.

11. The degrees of fixation and volatility I acknowledge, except the two utmost, which never were observed.

12. The question of transmutation is very doubtful. Wherefore I refer your honour to the fourth tome of Theatrum chymicum; and there, to that treat
Inquiries concerning metals and minerals. The fourth letter of the cross-row, touching restitution.

First, therefore it is to be inquired in the negative, what bodies will never return, either by their extreme fixings, as in some vitrifications, or by extreme volatility.

It is also to be inquired of the two means of reduction; and first by the fire, which is but by congregation of homogeneal parts.

The second is, by drawing them down by some body that hath consent with them. As iron draweth down copper in water; gold draweth quicksilver in vapour; whatsoever is of this kind, is very diligently to be inquired.

Also it is to be inquired what time, or age, will reduce without help of fire or body.

Also it is to be inquired what gives impediment to union or restitution, which is sometimes called mortification; as when quicksilver is mortified with turpentine, spittle, or butter.

Lastly, it is to be inquired how the metal restored differeth in any thing from the metal rare: as whether it become not more churlish, altered in colour, or the like.

Dr. Meverel's answers touching the restitutions of metals and minerals.

Reduction is chiefly effected by fire, wherein if they stand and nele, the imperfect metals vapour away, and so do all manner of salts which separated them in minimas partes before.

Reduction is singularly holpen, by joining store of metal of the same nature with it in the melting.

Metals reduced are somewhat churlish, but not altered in colour.

The lord Verulam's inquisition concerning the versions, transmutations, multiplications, and ejections of bodies.

Earth by fire is turned into brick, which is of the nature of a stone, and serveth for building as stone doth: and the like of tile. Quaere the manner.

Naphtha, which was the bituminous mortar used in the walls of Babylon, grows to an entire and very hard matter like a stone.

In clay countries, where there is pebble and gravel, you shall find great stones, where you may see the pebbles or gravel, and between them a subsistence of stone as hard or harder than the pebble itself.

There are some springs of water, wherein if you put wood, it will turn into the nature of stone: so as that within the water shall be stone, and that above the water continue wood.

The slime about the reins and bladder in man's body, turns into stone: and stone is likewise found often in the gall; and sometimes, though rarely, in vena porta.

Quaere what time the subsistence of earth in quarries, asketh to be turned into stone?

Water, as it seems, turneth into crystal, as is seen in divers caves, where the crystal hangs in siliciditiis.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

TRY wood, or the stalk of herbs, buried in quick-silver, whether it will not grow hard and stony?

THEY speak of a stone engendred in a toad's head.

THERE was a gentleman, digging in his moat, found an egg turned into stone, the white and the yolk keeping their colour, and the shell glittering like a stone cut with corners.

TRY some things put into the bottom of a well; as wood, or some soft sub stance: but let it not touch the water, because it may not putrefy.

THEY speak, that the white of an egg, with lying long in the sun, will turn stone.

MUD in water turns into shells of fishes, as in horse muscles, in fresh ponds, old and overgrown. And the substance is a wondrous fine substance, light and shining.

A speech touching the recovering of drowned mineral works, prepared for the parliament (as Mr. Bushel affirmed) by the viscount of St. Albans, then lord high chancellor of England (a).

My lords and gentlemen,

THE king, my royal master, was lately (graciously) pleased to move some discourse to me concerning Mr. Sutton's hospital, and such like worthy foundations of memorable piety: which humbly seconded by my self, drew his majesty into a serious consideration of the mineral treasures of his own territories, and the practical discoveries of them by way of my philosophical theory: which he then so well refented, that, afterwards, upon a mature digestion of my whole design, he commanded me to let your lordships understand, how great an inclination he hath to further so hopeful a work, for the honour of his dominions, as the most probable means to relieve all the poor thereof, without any other stock or benevolence, than that which divine bounty should confer on their own industries and honest labours, in recovering all such drowned mineral works, as have been, or shall be therefore deserted.

And, my lords, all that is now desired of his majesty and your lordships, is no more than a gracious act of this present parliament to authorize them herein, adding a mercy to a munificence, which is, the persons of such strong and able petty-felons, who, in true penitence for their crimes, shall implore his majesty's mercy and permission to expiate their offences, by their affiduous labours in so innocent and hopeful a work.

For, by this unchangeable way (my lords) have I proposed to erect the academical fabric of this island's Solomon's house, modell'd in my new Atlantis. And I can hope (my lords) that my midnight studies, to make our countries flourish and outvy European neighbours in mysterious and beneficent arts, have not so ingratefully affected your noble intellects, that you will delay or resist his majesty's desires, and my humble petition in this benevolent, yea, magnificent affair; since your honourable potteries may be enriched thereby, and my ends are only to make the world my heir, and the learned fathers of my Solomon's house, the succursive and sworn trustees in the dispensation of this great service, for God's glory, my prince's magnificence, this parliament's honour, our country's general good, and the propagation of my own memory.

(a) See Mr. Brut's extrafr. p. 18, 19.
AND I may assure your lordships, that all my proposals in order to this great architype, seemed so rational and feasible to my royal sovereign our Christian Solomon, that I thereby prevailed with his majesty to call this honourable parliament, to confirm and empower me in my own way of mining, by an act of the same, after his majesty's more weighty affairs were considered in your wisdoms; both which he desires your lordships, and you gentlemen that are chosen as the patriots of your respective countries, to take speedy care of: which done, I shall not then doubt the happy issue of my undertakings in this design, whereby concealed treasures, which now seem utterly lost to mankind, shall be confined to so universal a piety, and brought into use by the industry of converted penitents, whose wretched carcasses the impartial laws have, or shall dedicate, as untimely sculls, to the worms of the earth, in whose womb those deserted mineral riches must ever lie buried as lost abortments, unless those be made the active midwives to deliver them. For, my lords, I humbly conceive them to be the fittest of all men to effect this great work, for the ends and causes which I have before expressed.

All which, my lords, I humbly refer to your grave and solid judgments to conclude of, together with such other assisiances to this frame, as your own oraculous wisdom shall intimate for the magnifying our Creator in his inerutable providence, and admirable works of nature.

Certain experiments made by the lord Bacon about weight in air and water.

A new sovereign of equal weight in the air to the piece in brass, overweigheth in the water nine grains: in three sovereigns the difference in the water is but twenty-four grains.

The same sovereign overweigheth an equal weight of lead, four grains in the water, in brasses grains for gold: in three sovereigns about eleven grains.

The same sovereign overweigheth an equal weight of stones in the air, at least sixty-five grains in the water: the grains being for the weight of gold, in brasses metal.

A glass filled with water weighing, in Troy weights, thirteen ounces and five drams, the glass and the water together weigheth severally, viz. the water nine ounces and a half, and the glass four ounces and a dram.

A bladder weighing two ounces seven drams and a half, a pebble laid upon the top of the bladder makes three ounces fix drams and a half, the stone weigheth seven drams.

The bladder (as above) blown, and the same fallen, weigheth equal.

A sponge dry weigheth one ounce, twenty fix grains: the same sponge being wet, weigheth fourteen ounces, fix drams and three quarters: the water weigheth in several eleven ounces, one dram and a half, and the sponge three ounces and a half, and three quarters of a dram. First time.

The sponge and water together weigh fifteen ounces and seven drams: in several, the water weigheth eleven ounces and seven drams, and the sponge three ounces seven drams and a half. Second time.

Three sovereigns made equal to a weight in silver in the air, differ in the water.

For false weights, one beam long, the other thick.

The stick and thread weigh half a dram, and twenty grains, being laid in the balance.

The stick tied to reach within half an inch of the end of the beam, and
so much from the tongue, weigheth twenty eight grains; the difference is twenty two grains.

The same stick being tied to hang over the end of the beam an inch and a half, weigheth half a dram and twenty four grains, exceeding the weight of the said stick in the balance by four grains.

The same stick being hanged down beneath the thread, as near the tongue as is possible, weigheth only eight grains.

Two weights of gold being made equal in the air, and weighing severally seven drams; the one balance being put into the water, and the other hanging in the air, the balance in the water weigheth only five drams and three grains, and abateth of the weight in the air one dram and a half, and twenty seven grains.

The same trial being made the second time, and more truly and exactly betwixt gold and gold, weighing severally (as above) and making a just and equal weight in the air, the one balance being put into the water the depth of five inches, and the other hanging in the air, the balance in the water weigheth only four drams, and fifty five grains, and abateth of the weight in the air two drams, and five grains.

The trial being made betwixt lead and lead, weighing severally seven drams in the air, the balance in the water weigheth only four drams, and forty one grains, and abateth of the weight in the air two drams, and five grains.

The same trial being made the second time, and more truly and exactly betwixt lead and lead, weighing severally seven drams in the air, the balance in the water weigheth only four drams, and twenty five grains. So it abateth two drams, and thirty five grains; the same depth in the water observed.

In iron and iron, weighing severally each balance in the air seven drams, the balance in the water weigheth only four drams, and eighteen grains; and abateth of the weight in the air two drams, and nineteen grains; the balance kept the same depth in the water as above-said.

The trial being made betwixt silver and silver, weighing severally seven drams in the air, the balance in the water weigheth only four drams, and twenty five grains. So it abateth two drams, and thirty five grains; the same depth in the water observed.

Certain sudden thoughts of the lord Bacon's, set down by him under the title of experiments for profit.

Muck of leaves: muck of river, earth, and chalk: muck of earth cloved, both for salt-petre and muck: setting of wheat and pease; mending of crops by steeping of feeds: making pease, cherries, and strawberries come early: strengthening of earth for often returns of radishes, parsnips, turnips, &c. making great roots of onions, radishes, and other succulent roots: sowing of feeds.
feeds of trefoil: setting of woad: setting of tobacco, and taking away the
ravens: grafting upon boughs of old trees: making of a hafty coppice: planting
of offers in wet grounds: making of candles to last long: building of chimneys, furnaces, and ovens, to give heat with less wood: fixing of log-
wood: other means to make yellow and green fixed: conserving of oranges,
lemons, citrons, pomegranates, &c. all summer: recovering of pearl, coral,
turquoise colour, by a conservatory of snow: sowing of fenel: brewing with
hay, haws, trefoil, broom, hips, bramble-berries, woodbines, wild thyme,
instead of hops, thistles: multiplying and dressing artichokes.

Certain experiments of the lord Bacon's, about the commixture of liquors only;
not solids, without heat or agitation, but only by simple composition and
settling.

Spirit of wine mingled with common water, although it be much
lighter than oil, yet so as if the first fall be broken, by means of a stop, or
otherwise, it stayeth above; and if it be once mingled, it severeth not again,
as oil doth. Tried with water coloured with saffron.

Spirit of wine mingled with common water, hath a kind of clouding,
and motion shewing no ready commixture. Tried with saffron.

A dram of gold dissolved in aqua regis, with a dram of copper in aqua
fortis commixed, gave a green colour, but no visible motion in the parts.
Note, that the dissolusion of the gold, was twelve parts water, to one part
body: and of the copper was six parts water, to one part body.

Oil of almonds commixed with spirit of wine, severeth, and the spirit
of wine remaineth on the top, and the oil in the bottom.

Gold dissolved commixed with spirit of wine, a dram of each, doth com-
mix, and no other apparent alteration.

Quick-silver dissolved with gold dissolved, a dram of each, doth turn to
a mouldy liquor, black, and like smith's water.

Note: the dissolusion of the gold was twelve parts water ut supra, and
one part metal: that of water was two parts, and one part metal.

Spirit of wine and quick-silver commixed, a dram of each, at the first
shewed a white milky substance at the top, but soon after mingled.

Oil of vitriol commixed with oil of cloves, a dram of each, turneth
into a red dark colour; and a substance thick almost like pitch: and upon
the first motion gathereth an extrem heat, not to be endured by touch.

Dissolution of gold, and oil of vitriol commixed, a dram of each,
gathereth a great heat at the first, and darkneth the gold, and maketh a
thick yellow.

Spirit of wine, and oil of vitriol, a dram of each, hardly mingle; the
oil of vitriol going to the bottom, and the spirit of wine lying above in a
milky substance. It gathereth also a great heat, and a sweetness in the taste.

Oil of vitriol, and dissolusion of quick-silver, a dram of each, maketh
an extreme fire, and casteth up a very gross fume, and after casteth down
a white kind of curds, or sands; and on the top a slimish substance, and
gathereth a great heat.

Oil of sulphur, and oil of cloves commixed, a dram of each, turn into
a thick and red coloured substance; but no such heat as appear'd in the
commixture with the oil of vitriol.

Oil of petroleum, and spirit of wine, a dram of each, intermingle other-
wise than by agitation, as wine and water do; and the petroleum remaineth
on the top.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

Oil of vitriol and petroleum, a dram of each, turn into a mouldy substance, and gathereth some warmth; there residing a black cloud in the bottom, and a monitory thick oil on the top.

Spirit of wine, and red wine vinegar, one ounce of each, at the first fall, one of them remaineth above, but by agitation they mingle.

Oil of vitriol, and oil of almonds, one ounce of each, mingle not; but the oil of almonds remaineth above.

Spirit of wine and vinegar, an ounce of each, commixed, do mingle, without any apparent separation, which might be in respect of the colour.

Dissolution of iron, and oil of vitriol, a dram of each, do first put a milky substance into the bottom, and after incorporate into a mouldy substance.

Spirit of wine commixed with milk, a third part spirit of wine, and two parts milk, coagulateth little, but mingleth; and the spirit swims not above.

Milk and oil of almonds mingled, in equal portions, do hardly incorporate, but the oil cometh above, the milk being poured in last; and the milk appeareth in some drops or bubbles.

Milk one ounce, oil of vitriol a scruple, doth coagulate; the milk at the bottom, where the vitriol goeth.

Dissolution of gum tragacanth, and oil of sweet almonds, do not commingle, the oil remaining on the top till they be stirred, and make the mucilage somewhat more liquid.

Dissolution of gum tragacanth one ounce and a half, with half an ounce of spirit of wine, being commixed by agitation, make the mucilage more thick.

The white of an egg with spirit of wine, doth take the egg into clots as if it began to poch.

One ounce of blood, one ounce of milk, do easily incorporate.

Spirit of wine doth curdle the blood.

One ounce of whey unclarified, one ounce of oil of vitriol, make no apparent alteration.

One ounce of blood, one ounce of oil of almonds, incorporate not, but the oil swims above.

Three quarters of an ounce of wax being dissolved upon the fire, and one ounce of oil of almonds put together and stirred, do not so incorporate, but that when it is cold, the wax gathereth and swims upon the top of the oil.

One ounce of oil of almonds cast into an ounce of sugar seething, fever presently, the sugar shooting towards the bottom.

A catalogue of bodies, attractive and not attractive, together with experimental observations about attraction.

These following bodies draw: amber, jet, diamond, sapphire, carbuncle, iris, the gem opale, amethyst, brijollina, crystal, clear glass, glass of antimony, divers flowers from mines, sulphur, maftick, hard sealing-wax, the harder rosin, arfenick.

These following bodies do not draw: smaragd, achates, cornelius, pearl, jasper, chaledonius, alabafter, porphyr, coral, marble, touchstone, haematis, or blood-stone; smyris, ivory, bones, ebon-tree, cedar, cypres, pitch, softer rosin, camphire, galbanum, ammoniack, storax, benjoin, load-stone, asphaltum (a).

(a) The drawing of iron excepted.
PHYSIOLOGICAL REMAINS.

These bodies, gold, silver, brass, iron, draw not, though never so finely polished.

In winter, if the air be sharp and clear, *sial gemmeum*, roch alum, and *lapis specularis*, will draw.

These following bodies are apt to be drawn, if the mass of them be small: chaff, woods, leaves, stones, all metals leaved, and in the mine; earth, water, oil.

*Si fiat verforium* ex metallo aliquo, more indicis magnetici, & fini alteri apponatur succinum, leniter fricatum, verforium convertit se.

*Lapis specularis*, vitrum, electrica caetera, si urantur, aut torreantur, non trahunt.

*bacillum* ferreum candens, flamma, candela ardens, carbo ignitus, ad mota fuitucis aut verforis, non trahunt.

*Succinum* in majore mole, si fuerit politum, allicit, licet non fricatum; si in minore, aut impurius, fine frictione non trahit.

*Crystallus*, *succinum*, *rubinum*, vitrum, electrica caetera, si urantur, aut torreantur, non trahunt.


*Vapidus* aër succino, &c. afflatus, vel ab ore, vel ab æere humidiore, virtutem trahendi suffocat.

Si charta aut linteum interponatur inter succinum & paleam, non fit motus aut attracțio.

*Succinum* aut electrica calefacta ex radiis solis, non expergescitur ad trahendum, ficuit ex frictione.

*Succinum* fricatum, & radiis solis expostum diuitius vires trahendi retinet, nec tam cito eas deponit ac si in umbra positus esset.

*Fervor* ex speculo comburentem succino, &c. conciliatus, non juvat ad trahendum.

*Sulphur* accensum, & cera dura inflammata, non trahunt.

*Succinum* cum citiflime a frictione, fuctucae vel verforio apponitur, optime trahit.

*Virtus* electrica viget in retentione ad tempus, non minus quam in attracione prima.

*Flamma* apposito succino intra orbem activitatis non trahitur.

*Gutta* aquae admotu succino trahitur in conum. Electrica, si durius africentur, impeditur attracțio.

*Quae* aegre alliciunt in claro coelo, in cristfo non movent.

*Aqua* impośita succino virtutem trahendi suffocat, licet iplam aquam trahat.

*Sarca* ita succino circumdatum, ut tangat, attracțione tollit; sed interpośitum ut non tangat, non omnino tollit.

*Oleum* succino apposito motum non impedit; nec succinum digito oleo madefacto fricatum, vires trahendi perdit.


*Quae* flammeae approximant, licet propinqua dilatantia, a succino non trahuntur.

*Fumum* extincla lucerna succinum, &c. trahit. Fumus ubi exit & crassus eft, fortius trahit succinum; cum ascenderit, & rario fit, debilius. Corpus ab electricis attracțum non manifesto alteratur, sed tantum incumbit.

Vol. III.
MEDICAL REMAINS.

Grains of youth.

TAKE of nitre four grains, of ambergris three grains, of orrice-powder two grains, of white poppy-seed the fourth part of a grain, of saffron half a grain, with water of orange-flowers, and a little tragacanth; make them into small grains, four in number. To be taken at four a-clock, or going to bed.

Preferring ointments.

TAKE of deer's-fuet one ounce, of myrrh six grains, of saffron five grains, of bay-fault twelve grains, of Canary wine of two years old, a spoonful and a half. Spread it on the inside of your shirt, and let it dry, and then put it on.

A purge familiar for opening the liver.

TAKE rhubarb two drams, agarick trochifcat one dram and a half, steep them in claret wine burnt with mace; take of wormwood one dram, steep it with the rest, and make a mass of pills, with syrup. aceti. simplex. But drink an opening broth before it, with succory, fennel, and smallage roots, and a little of an onion.

Wine for the spirits.

TAKE gold perfectly refined three ounces, quench it six or seven times in good claret wine; add of nitre six grains for two draughts: add of saffron prepared three grains, of ambergris four grains, pass it through an hippocratis bag, wherein there is a dram of cinnamon gros beaten, or, to avoid the dimming of the colour, of ginger. Take two spoonfuls of this to a draught of fresh claret wine.

The preparing of saffron.

TAKE six grains of saffron, steep'd in half parts of wine and rose-water, and a quarter part vinegar; then dry it in the sun.

Wine against adverse melancholy, preserving the senses and the reason.

TAKE the roots of bugloss well scraped and cleansed from their inner pith, and cut them into small slices; steep them in wine of gold extinguished ut supra, and add of nitre three grains, and drink it ut supra, mixed with fresh wine: the roots must not continue steeped above a quarter of an hour; and they must be changed thrice.
Medical Remains.

Breakfast preservative against the gout and rheums.

To take once in the month at least, and for two days together, one grain of calamine in my ordinary broth.

The preparation of garlic.

Take garlic four ounces, boil it upon a soft fire in claret wine, for half an hour. Take it out, and steep it in vinegar; whereto add two drams of cloves, then take it forth, and keep it in a glass for use.

The artificial preparation of damask roses for smell.

Take roses, pull their leaves, then dry them in a clear day in the hot sun; then their smell will be as gone. Then cram them into an earthen bottle, very dry and sweet, and stop it very close; they will remain in smell and colour both longer, than those that are otherwise dried. Note, the first drying, and close keeping upon it, preventeth all putrefaction, and the second spirit cometh forth, made of the remaining moisture not dissipated.

A restorative drink.

Take of Indian maize half a pound, grind it not too small, but to the fineness of ordinary meal, and then bolt and scarce it, that all the husky part may be taken away. Take of eryngium roots three ounces, of dates as much, of enula two drams, of mace three drams, and brew them with ten shilling beer to the quantity of four gallons: and this do, either by decocting them in a potte of wort, to be after mingled with the beer, being new tapped, or otherwise infuse it in the new beer in a bag. Use this familiarly at meals.

Against the wast of the body by heat.

Take sweet pomegranates, and strain them lightly, not pressing the kernel, into a glass; where put some little of the peel of a citron, and two or three cloves, and three grains of amber-grise, and a pretty deal of fine sugar. It is to be drunk every morning whilst pomegranates last.

Mehuzalem water. Against all afinity and torrefaction of inward parts; and all adusion of the blood, and generally against the dryness of age.

Take crevifes very new, q.s. boil them well in claret wine; of these take only the shells, and rub them very clean, especially on the inside, that they may be thoroughly cleansed from the meat. Then wash them three or four times in fresh claret wine, heated: still changing the wine, till all the fish-taste be quite taken away. But in the wine wherein they are washed, steep some tops of green romeray; then dry the pure shell throughly, and bring them to an exquisite powder. Of this powder take three drams. Take also pearl, and steep them in vinegar twelve hours, and dry off the vinegar; of this powder also three drams. Then put the shell powder and pearl powder together, and add to them of ginger one scruple, and of white poppy seed half a scruple, and steep them in spirit of wine (wherein six grains of saffron have been dissolved) seven hours. Then upon a gentle heat, vapour away all the spirit of wine, and dry the powder against the sun without fire. Add to it of nitre one dram, of amber-grise one scruple and a half; and so keep this powder for use in a clean glass. Then
Then take a pottle of milk, and slice in it of fresh cucumbers, the inner pith only (the rind being pared off) four ounces, and draw forth a water by distillation. Take of claret wine a pint, and quench gold in it four times. Of the wine, and of the water of milk, take of each three ounces, of the powder one scruple, and drink it in the morning; stir up the powder when you drink, and walk upon it.

A catalogue of astringents, openers, and cordials, instrumental to health.

A S T R I N G E N T S.

Red rose, black-berry, myrtle, plantane, flower of pomegranate, mint, aloes well washed, myrobalanes, floes, agrestia fraga, matthich, myrrh, saffron, leaves of rosemary, rhubarb received by infusion, cloves, service-berries, corua, wormwood, bole armeniack, sealed earth, cinquefoil, tincture of steel, fanguis draconis, coral, amber, quinces, spikenard, galls, alume, bloodstone, mummy, amomum, galangal, cypres, ivy, ppyllum, houleek, allow, mullein, vine, oak-leaves, lignum aloes, red Sanders, mulberry, medlars, flowers of peach trees, pomegranates, pears, palmule, pith of kernels, purfain, acacia, laudamum, tragacanth, thus obi bani, comfrey, shepherd's-purse, polygonium.

Astringents (both hot and cold) which corroborate the parts, and which confirm and refresh such of them as are loose or languishing.

Rosemary, mint, especially with vinegar, cloves, cimamon, cardamom, lign-aloes, rose, myrtle, red Sanders, cotonea, red wine, chalybeat wine, fivefinger grass, plantane, apples of cypresse, berberries, fraga, service-berries, cornels, ribes, four pears, rambeia.

Astringents styptic, which by their styptic virtue may stay fluxes.

Sloes, acacia, rind of pomegranates infused, at least three hours, the styptic virtue not coming forth in lesser time. Alume, galls, juice of allow, syrup of unripe quinces, balauJia, the whites of eggs boiled hard in vinegar.

Astringents, which by their cold and earthy nature, may stay the motion of the humours tending to a flux.

Sealed earth, fanguis draconis, coral, pearls, the shell of the fish daôlys.

Astringents, which by the thickness of their substance, stay as if it were the thin humours, and thereby stay fluxes.

Rice, beans, millet, cauls, dry cheese, fresh goats milk.

Astringents, which by virtue of their glutinous substance, restrain a flux, and strengthen the looser parts.

Karabe (a), matthich, spodium, hartthorn, frankincense, dried bulls pifte, gum tragacanth.

Astringents purgative, which having by their purgative, or expulsive power, thrust out the humours, leave behind them astringitive virtue.

Rhubarb, especially that which is toasted against the fire; myrobalanes, tartar, tamarinds, (an Indian fruit like green damascenes.)

(a) Perhaps he meant the fruit of Karâbê.
MEDICAL REMAINS.

Astringent; which do very much suck and dry up the humours, and thereby stay fluxes.

Rust of iron, crocus martis, ashes of spices.

Astringents, which by their nature do dull the spirits, and lay asleep the expulsive virtue, and take away the acrimony of all humours.

Laudanum, mithridate, diaeordium, diacodium.

Astringents, which by cherishing the strength of the parts, do comfort and confirm their retentive power.

A stomacher of scarlet cloth: whelps, or young healthy boys, applied to the stomach: hippocratic wines, so they be made of austere materials.

Openers:

Succory, endive, betony, liverwort, petrofnorum, smallage, asparagus, roots of grass, dodder, tamarilk, juncus odoratus, laca, cappuris, wormwood, chamaeptis, fumaria, scurvy-grass, eringo, nettle, ireos, elder, hyssop, arilofolcbia, gentian, cofus, fenel-root, maiden-hair, harts-tongue, daffodilly, astrum, farfaprilla, faflafraas, acorns, abrenonum, aloes, agamic, rhubarb infused, onions, garlic, bolder, squila, bow-bread, Indian nard, Celtic nard, bark of laurel tree, bitter almonds, holy thistle, camomile, gun-powder, fows (mille pedes) ammoniac, man's urine, rue, park leaves (vitex) centuary, lupines, chamadrys, forstum, ammos, biftort, camphire, daucus.

Cordials.

Flowers of basil royal, flores carophyllati, flowers of buglofs and borage, rind of citron, orange flowers, rosemary, and its flowers, saffron, musk, amber, folium, (i.e. nardi folium) balm-gentle, pimpernel, gems, gold, generous wines, fragrant apples, rofe, rofa mossbata, cloves, lign-aloes, mace, cinnamon, nutmeg, cardamom, galangal, vinegar, kermes berry, berba mossbata, betony, white sanders, camphire, flowers of heliotrope, peny-royal, scordium, opium corrected, white pepper, naphturium, white and red bean, caftum dulce, daefylyus, pine, fig, egg shell, vinum mauthicum, ginger, kidneys, oifers, crevisies, (or river crabs) seed of nettle, oil of sweet almonds, jezaminum oleum, asparagus, bulbous roots, onions, garlic, erica, daucus seed, eringo, filer montanus, the smell of musk, cynethi odor, caraway seed, flower of pulis, anisef, pellitory, anointing of the testicles with oil of elder, in which pellitory hath been boil'd, cloves with goats milk, olibanum.

An extrafi by the lord Bacon, for his own use, out of the book of the prolongation of life, together with some new advices in order to health.

1. Once in the week, or at least in the fortnight, to take the water of mithridate distilled, with three parts to one, or strawberry water to allay it; and some grains of nitre and saffron, in the morning between meals.

2. To continue my broth with nitre; but to interchange it every other two days, with the juice of pomegranates expressed, with a little cloves, and rind of citron.
MEDICAL REMAINS.

3. To order the taking of the maceration (a), as followeth.
   To add to the maceration fix grains of cremor tartari, and as much enula.
   To add to the oxymel some infusion of fenel roots in the vinegar, and
   four grains of angelica seed, and juice of lemons, a third part to the vinegar.
   To take it not so immediately before supper; and to have the broth specially
   made with barley, rosemery, thyme, and crefes.
   Sometimes to add to the maceration three grains of tartar, and two of
   enula, to cut the more heavy and viscous humours; left rhubarb work only
   upon the lightest.
   To take sometimes the oxymel before it, and sometimes the Spanifeh ho­
   ney simple.

4. To take once in the month at least, and for two days together, a grain
   and a half of cafror in my broth, and breakfast.

5. A cooling clyfter to be used once a month, after the working of the
   maceration is settled.

   Take of barley water, in which the roots of buglofs are boiled, three
   ounces, with two drams of red fanders, and two ounces of raisins of the
   sun, and one ounce of dactyles, and an ounce and a half of caricks; let
   it be strained, and add to it an ounce and a half of syrup of violets: let a
   clyfter be made. Let this be taken (with veil) in the aforesaid decoction.

6. To take every morning the fume of lign-aloes, rosemery and bays
dried, which I use; but once in a week to add a little tobacco, without
otherwise taking it in a pipe.

7. To appoint every day an hour, ad afeelus intentionales & janos. Qu.
   de particulari.

8. To remember masticatories for the mouth.

9. And orange-flower water to be smelt to, or snuffed up.

10. In the third hour, after the fun is rifen, to take in air from some
    high and open place, with a ventilation of rofæ mycbatae, and fresh violets;
    and to stir the earth, with infusion of wine and mint.

11. To use ale with a little enula campana, carduus, germander, fage, an­
    gelica seed, crefes of a middle age, to beget a robust heat.

12. Mithridate thrice a year.

13. A bit of bread dip in vino odorate, with syrup of dry rofes, and
    a little amber, at going to bed.

14. Never to keep the body in the same posture above half an hour at
    a time.

15. Four precepts. To break off custom. To shake off spirits ill dis­
    posed. To meditate on youth. To do nothing against a man's genius.

16. Syrup of quinces for the mouth of the stomach. Enquire concern­
    ing other things useful in that kind.

17. To use once during supper time, wine in which gold is quenched,

18. To use anointing in the morning lightly with oil of almonds, with
    salt and saffron, and a gentle rubbing.

19. Ale of the second infusion of the vine of oak.

20. Methusalem water, of pearls and shells, of crabs, and a little chalk.

21. Ale of raisins, dactyles, potatoes, pistachios, honey, tragacanth, maftick.

22. Wine with swines flesh, or harts flesh.

23. To drink the firft cup at supper hot, and half an hour before supper
    something hot and aromatis'd.

(a) Vina. Of rhubarb infused into a draught of white-wine and beer, mingled together, for the space
of half an hour, once in fix or seven days. See the lord Bacon's life by Dr. Rawley, towards the end.

24. Cha-
24. Chalybeats, four times a year.
25. Pilulae ex tribus, once in two months, but after the mass has been macerated in oil of almonds.
26. Heroic desires.
27. Bathe of the feet once in a month, with lye ex fale nigro, camomile, sweet marjoram, fennel, sage, and a little aqua vitae.
28. To provide always an apt breakfast.
29. To beat the flesh before roasting of it.
30. Macerations in pickles.
31. Agitation of beer by ropes, or in wheel-barrows.
32. That diet is good which makes lean, and then renews. Consider of the ways to effect it.

Medical receipts of the lord Bacon.

His lordship's usual receipt for the gout, to which he refers Nat. Hist.

Cent. I. N. 60. p. 16.

1. The poultis.

Take of manchet about three ounces, the crumb only thin cut; let it be boiled in milk till it grow to a pulp. Add in the end a dram and a half of the powder of red roses; of saffron ten grains; of oil of roses an ounce; let it be spread upon a linen cloth, and applied lukewarm, and continued for three hours space.

2. The bath or fomentation.

Take of sage leaves half a handful; of the root of hemlock sliced six drams; of briony roots half an ounce; of the leaves of red roses two puggs; let them be boiled in a pottle of water, wherein steel hath been quenched, till the liquor come to a quart. After the straining, put in half a handful of bay salt. Let it be used with scarlet cloth, or scarlet wool, dipped in the liquor hot, and so renewed seven times; all in the space of a quarter of an hour, or little more.

3. The plaster.

Take Emplafrum diacalcites, as much as is sufficient for the part you mean to cover. Let it be dissolved with oil of roses, in such a consistence as will stick; and spread upon a piece of holland, and applied.

His lordship's broth and fomentation for the stone.

The broth.

Take one dram of eryngium roots, cleansed and sliced; and boil them together with a chicken. In the end, add of elder flowers, and marigold flowers together, one pugil, of angelica seed half a dram, of raisins of the sun stoned fifteen, of roemary, thyme, mace, together, a little.

In six ounces of this broth, or thereabouts, let there be dissolved of white cementor tertari three grains.

Every third or fourth day, take a small toast of manchet, dipped in oil of sweet almonds new drawn, and sprinkled with a little loaf sugar. You may make the broth for two days, and take the one half every day. If you find the stone to stir, forbear the toast for a course or two. The intention of

Vol. III. Gg this
this broth is, not to void, but to undermine the quarry of the stones in the kidneys.

The fomentation.

Take of leaves of violets, mallows, pellitory of the wall, together, one handful; of flowers of camomile and melilot, together one pugil; the root of marshmallows one ounce; of anis and fennel-seeds together, one ounce and a half; of flax-seed two drams. Make a decoction in spring water.

The second receipt, shewing the way of making a certain ointment, which his lordship called, unguentum fragrans five Romanum; the fragrant or Roman unguent.

Take of the fat of a deer half a pound; of oil of sweet almonds two ounces: let them be set upon a very gentle fire, and stirr’d with a flick of juniper till they are melted. Add of root of flower-de-luce powdered, damask roses powdered together, one dram; of myrrh dissolved in rose-water half a dram; of cloves half a scruple; of civet four grains; of musk six grains; of oil of mace expressed one drop; as much of rose water as sufficeth to keep the unguent from being too thick. Let all these be put together in a glass, and set upon the embers for the space of an hour, and stirr’d with a flick of juniper.

Note; that in the confection of this ointment, there was not used above a quarter of a pound, and a tenth part of a quarter of deer’s suet: and that all the ingredients, except the oil of almonds, were doubled when the ointment was half made, because the fat things seemed to be too predominant.

The third receipt. A manus Christi for the stomach.

Take of the best pearls very finely pulveriz’d one dram; of sal nitre one scruple; of tartar two scruples; of ginger and galangal together, one ounce and a half; of calamus, root of emula campana, nutmeg, together, one scruple and a half; of amber sixteen grains; of the best musk ten grains; with rose water and the finest sugar, let there be made a manus Christi.

The fourth receipt. A secret for the stomach.

Take lignum aloes in gross shavings, steep them in sack, or alicant, changed twice, half an hour at a time, till the bitterness be drawn forth. Then take the shavings forth, and dry them in the shade, and beat them to an excellent powder. Of that powder, with the syrup of citrons, make a small pill, to be taken before supper.
NEW ATLANTIS.
A WORK Unfinished.

TO THE READER.

THIS fable my lord devised, to the end that he might exhibit therein, a model or description of a college, instituted for the interpreting of nature, and the producing of great and marvellous works, for the benefit of men; under the name of Solomon's house, or the college of the six days works. And even so far his lordship hath proceeded, as to finish that part. Certainly the model is more vast and high, than can possibly be imitated in all things; notwithstanding most things therein are within men's power to effect. His lordship thought also in this present fable, to have composed a frame of laws, or of the best state or mould of a common-wealth; but foreseeing it would be a long work, his desire of collecting the natural history diverted him, which he preferred many degrees before it.

This work of the new *Atlantis* (as much as concerneth the *English* edition) his lordship designed for this place; in regard it hath so near affinity (in one part of it) with the preceding natural history.

W. Rawley.

Vol. III.
NEW ATLANTIS.

We failed from Peru (where we had continued by the space of one whole year) for China and Japan, by the south sea, taking with us victuals for twelve months; and had good winds from the east, though soft and weak, for five months space and more. But then the wind came about, and settled in the west for many days, so as we could make little or no way, and were sometimes in purpose to turn back. But then again there arose strong and great winds from the south, with a point east, which carried us up (for all that we could do) towards the north: by which time our victuals failed us, though we had made good spare of them. So that finding our selves in the midst of the greatest wilderness of waters in the world, without victual, we gave our selves for lost men, and prepared for death. Yet we did lift up our hearts and voices to God above, who shewed his wonders in the deep; beseeching him of his mercy, that as in the beginning he discovered the face of the deep, and brought forth dry land; so he would now discover land to us, that we might not perish. And it came to pass, that the next day about evening, we saw within a kenning before us, towards the north, as it were thick clouds, which did put us in some hope of land; knowing how that part of the south sea was utterly unknown; and might have islands or continents, that hitherto were not come to light. Wherefore we bent our course thither, where we saw the appearance of land all that night; and in the dawning of the next day, we might plainly discern that it was a land, flat to our sight, and full of boscage, which made it shew the more dark. And after an hour and a half's sailing, we entered into a good haven, being the port of a fair city; not great indeed, but well built, and that gave a pleasant view from the sea: and we thinking every minute long till we were on land, came close to the shore, and offered to land. But straightways we saw divers of the people with bastons in their hands, (as it were) forbidding us to land; yet without any cries or fiercenes, but only as warning us off, by signs that they made. Whereupon being not a little discomforted, we were advising with our selves what we should do. During which time there made forth to us a small boat, with about eight persons in it, whereof one of them had in his hand a tipstaff of a yellow cane, tipped at both ends with blue, who made aboard our ship, without any shew of distrust at all. And when he saw one of our number present himself somewhat afore the rest, he drew forth a little scrole of parchment (somewhat yellower than our parchment, and shining like the leaves of writing tables, but otherwise soft and flexible) and delivered it to our foremost man. In which scrole were written in ancient Hebrew, and in ancient Greek, and in good Latin of the school, and in Spanish, these words; Land ye not, none of you, and provide to be gone, from this coast, within sixteen days, except you have farther time given you: mean while, if you want fresh water, or victual,
NEW ATLANTIS.

viCtual, or help for your sick, or that your ship needeth repair, write down your wants, and you shall have that which belongeth to mercy. This cerole was signed with a stamp of cherubims wings, not spread, but hanging downwards, and by them a cross. This being delivered, the officer returned, and left only a servant with us to receive our answer. Consulting hereupon amongst ourselves, we were much perplexed. The denial of landing, and hastily warning us away, troubled us much; on the other side, to find that the people had languages, and were so full of humanity, did comfort us not a little. And above all, the sign of the cross to that instrument was to us a great rejoicing, and as it were a certain preface of good. Our answer was in the Spanish tongue; That for our ship it was well; for we had rather met with calms and contrary winds, than any tempest. For all sick they were many, and in very ill case; so that if they were not permitted to land, they ran in danger of their lives. Our other wants we set down in particular; adding, that we had some little store of merchandize, which if it pleased them to deal for, it might supply our wants, without being chargeable unto them. We offered for some reward in piaules unto the servant, and a piece of crimson velvet to be presented to the officer: but the servant took them not, nor would scarce look upon them; and so left us, and went back in another little boat which was sent for him.

About three hours after we had dispatched our answer, there came towards us a person (as it seemed) of place. He had on him a gown with wide sleeves, of a kind of water chamblet, of an excellent azure colour, far more glossy than ours; his under apparel was green, and so was his hat, being in the form of a turban, daintily made, and not so huge as the Turkish turbs; and the locks of his hair came down below the brims of it. A reverend man was he to behold. He came in a boat, gilt in some part of it, with four persons more only in that boat; and was followed by another boat, wherein were some twenty. When he was come within a flight of our ship, signs were made to us, that we should send forth some to meet him upon the water, which we presently did in our ship-boat, sending the principal man amongst us save one, and four of our number with him. When we were come within six yards of their boat, they called to us to stay, and not to approach farther, which we did. And thereupon the man, whom I before described, stood up, and with a loud voice in Spanish, asked, are ye Christians? We answered, we were; fearing the less, because of the cross we had seen in the subscription. At which answer the said person lift up his right hand towards heaven, and drew it softly to his mouth, (which is the gesture they use when they thank God) and then said: If ye will swear (all of you) by the merits of the Saviour, that ye are no pirates; nor have shed blood lawfully nor unlawfully within forty days past; ye may have licence to come on land. We said, we were all ready to take that oath. Whereupon one of those that were with him, being (as it seemed) a notary, made an entry of this act. Which done, another of the attendants of the great person, which was with him in the same boat, after his lord had spoken a little to him, said aloud; My lord would have you know, that it is not of pride, or greatness, that he cometh not aboard your ship; but for that, in your answer, you declare, that you have many sick amongst you, he was warned by the conservator of health of the city, that he should keep a distance. We bowed our selves towards him, and answered, we were his humble servants; and accounted for great honour, and singular humanity towards us, that which was already done; but hoped well, that
the nature of the sickness of our men was not infectious. So he returned; and a while after came the notary to us aboard our ship; holding in his hand a fruit of that country, like an orange, but of colour between orange-tawny and scarlet, which cast a most excellent odour. He used it (as it seemeth) for a preservative against infection. He gave us our oath; by the name of Jesu, and his merits: and after told us, that the next day by six of the clock in the morning we should be sent to, and brought to the strangers house, (so he called it,) where we should be accommodated of things, both for our whole, and for our sick. So he left us; and when we offered him some pistolets, he smiling, said; he must not be twice paid for one labour: meaning (as I take it) that he had a salary sufficient of the state for his service. For (as I after learned) they call an officer that taketh rewards, twice paid.

The next morning early, there came to us the same officer that came to us at first with his cane, and told us, he came to conduct us to the strangers house; and that he had prevented the hour, because we might have the whole day before us, for our business. For (said he) if you will follow my advice, there shall first go with me some few of you, and see the place, and how it may be made convenient for you; and then you may send for your sick, and the rest of your number, which ye will bring on land. We thanked him, and said, that this care, which he took of desolate strangers, God would reward. And six of us went on land with him: and when we were on land, he went before us, and turned to us, and said; he was but our servant, and our guide. He led us through three fair streets; and all the way we went, there were gathered some people on both sides, standing in a row; but in so civil a fashion, as if it had been, not to wonder at us, but to welcome us; and divers of them, as we passed by them, put their arms a little abroad; which is their gesture, when they bid any welcome.

The strangers house is a fair and spacious house, built of brick, of somewhat a bluer colour than our brick; and with handsome windows, some of glass, some of a kind of cambrick oiled. He brought us first into a fair parlour above stairs, and then asked us, what number of persons we were? And how many sick? We answered, we were in all (sick and whole) one and fifty persons, whereof our sick were seventeen. He desired us to have patience a little, and to stay till he came back to us, which was about an hour after; and then he led us to see the chambers, which were provided for us, being in number nineteen: They having cast it (as it seemeth) that four of those chambers, which were better than the rest, might receive four of the principal men of our company, and lodge them alone by themselves; and the other fifteen chambers were to lodge us, two and two together. The chambers were handsome and cheerful chambers, and furnished civilly. Then he led us to a long gallery, like a dorture, where he shewed us all along the one side (for the other side was but wall and window) seventeen cells, very neat ones, having partitions of cedar wood. Which gallery and cells, being in all forty, (many more than we needed,) were instituted as an infirmary for sick persons. And he told us, that as any of our sick waxed well, he might be removed from his cell to a chamber: for which purpose there were set forth ten spare chambers, besides the number we spake of before. This done, he brought us back to the parlour, and lifting up his cane a little, (as they do when they give any charge or command,) said to us, ye are to know that the custom of the land requireth, that after this day and to-morrow, (which we give you for removing your people from your ship,) you are to keep within doors for three
three days. But let it not trouble you, nor do not think your selves restrained, but rather left to your rest and ease. You shall want nothing, and there are fix of our people appointed to attend you, for any business you may have abroad. We gave him thanks, with all affection and respect, and said; God surely is manifested in this land. We offered him twenty pippolos; but he smiled, and only said; what? twice paid! And so he left us. Soon after our dinner was served in; which was right good viands, both for bread and meat: better than any collegiate diet, that I have known in Europe. We had also drink of three sorts, all wholesome and good; wine of the grape; a drink of grain, such as is with us our ale, but more clear: and a kind of cyder made of a fruit of that country; a wonderful pleasing and refreshing drink. Besides, there were brought in to us great store of those scarlet oranges for our sick; which (they said) were an assured remedy for sickness taken at sea. There was given us also, a box of small grey or whitish pills, which they wished our sick to take, one of the pills every night before sleep; which (they said) would hasten their recovery. The next day, after that our trouble of carriage, and removing of our men, and goods out of our ship, was somewhat settled and quiet, I thought good to call our company together; and when they were assembled, said unto them; my dear friends, let us know our selves, and how it standeth with us. We are men cast on land, as Jonas was, out of the whale's belly, when we were as buried in the deep: and now we are on land, we are but between death and life; for we are beyond both the old world and the new; and whether ever we shall see Europe, God only knoweth. It is a kind of miracle hath brought us hither: and it must be little less that shall bring us hence. Therefore in regard of our deliverance past, and our danger present and to come, let us look up to God, and every man reform his own ways. Besides we are come here amongst a christian people, full of piety and humanity: let us not bring that confusion of face upon our selves, as to shew our vices, or unworthines before them. Yet there is more: for they have by commandment, (though in form of courtesy) cloystor'd us within these walls for three days: who knoweth, whether it be not to take some taste of our manners and conditions? And if they find them bad, to banish us straightways; if good, to give us farther time. For these men, that they have given us for attendance, may withal have an eye upon us. Therefore for God's love, and as we love the weale of our souls and bodies, let us so behave our selves, as we may be at peace with God, and may find grace in the eyes of this people. Our company with one voice thanked me for my good admonition, and promised me to live soberly and civilly, and without giving any the least occasion of offence. So we spent our three days joyfully, and without care, in expectation of what would be done with us, when they were expired. During which time, we had every hour joy of the amendment of our sick; who thought themselves cast into some divine pool of healing; they mended so kindly, and so fast.

The morrow after our three days were past, there came to us a new man that we had not seen before, clothed in blue as the former was, save that his turban was white, with a small red cross on the top. He had also a tip-pee of fine linen. At his coming in he did bend to us a little, and put his arms abroad. We of our parts saluted him in a very lowly and submissive manner; as looking that from him we should receive sentence of life or death. He desired to speak with some few of us; whereupon fix of us only stayed, and the rest avoided the room. He said; I am by office governor
of this house of strangers, and by vocation I am a Christian priest; and therefore am come to you, to offer you my service, both as strangers, and chiefly as Christians. Some things I may tell you, which I think you will not be unwilling to hear. The state hath given you licence to stay on land for the space of six weeks: and let it not trouble you if your occasions ask farther time, for the law in this point is not precise; and I do not doubt but my self shall be able to obtain for you such farther time as may be convenient. Ye shall also understand, that the strangers house is at this time rich, and much beforehand; for it hath laid up revenue these thirty seven years; for so long it is since any stranger arrived in this part: and therefore take ye no care; the state will defray you all the time you stay; neither shall you stay one day the less for that. As for any merchandize you have brought, ye shall be well used, and have your return either in merchandize, or in gold and silver: for to us it is all one. And if you have any other request to make, hide it not. For ye shall find, we will not make your countenance to fall by the answer ye shall receive. Only this I must tell you, that none of you must go above a karan, (that is with them a mile and an half) from the walls of the city without special leave.

We answered, after we had looked a while upon one another, admiring this gracious and parent-like usage; that we could not tell what to say: for we wanted words to express our thanks; and his noble free offers left us nothing to ask. It seemed to us, that we had before us a picture of our salvation in heaven: for we that were a while since in the jaws of death, were now brought into a place, where we found nothing but consolations. For the commandment laid upon us, we would not fail to obey it, though it was impossible but our hearts should be inflamed to tread farther upon this happy and holy ground. We added; that our tongues should first cleave to the roofs of our mouths, ere we should forget, either his reverend person, or this whole nation, in our prayers. We also most humbly besought him to accept of us as his true servants, by as just a right as ever men on earth were bounden, laying and presenting, both our persons, and all we had at his feet. He said; he was a priest, and looked for a priest's reward; which was our brotherly love, and the good of our souls and bodies. So he went from us, not without tears of tenderness in his eyes; and left us also confused with joy and kindness, saying amongst our selves, that we were come into a land of angels, which did appear to us daily and prevent us with comforts which we thought not of, much less expected.

The next day about ten of the clock, the governor came to us again, and after salutations said familiarly; that he was come to visit us; and called for a chair, and sat him down: and we being some ten of us (the rest were of the meaner sort, or else gone abroad) sat down with him. And when we were set, he began thus: We of this island of Benfalem (for so they call it in their language) have this; that by means of our solitary situation, and of the laws of secrecy which we have for our travellers, and our rare admission of strangers; we know well most part of the habitable world, and are our selves unknown. Therefore because he that knoweth least is fittest to ask questions, it is more reason for the entertainment of the time, that ye ask me questions, than that I ask you. We answered; that we humbly thanked him, that he would give us leave so to do: and that we conceived by the taste we had already, that there was no worldly thing on earth more worthy to be known, than the state of that happy land. But above all (we said) since that we were met from the several ends of the world,
world, and hoped assuredly that we should meet one day in the kingdom of heaven (for that we were both parts of Christians:) we desired to know (in respect that land was so remote, and so divided by vast and unknown seas, from the land where our Saviour walked on earth) who was the Apostle of that nation, and how it was converted to the faith? It appeared in his face that he took great contentment in this our question: he said, ye knit my heart to you, by asking this question in the first place; for it sheweth that you first seek the kingdom of heaven; and I shall gladly and briefly satisfy your demand.

About twenty years after the ascension of our Saviour, it came to pass, that there was seen by the people of Retifli, (a city upon the eastern coast of our island) within night, (the night was cloudy and calm as it might be some miles in the sea, a great pillar of light; not sharp; but in form of a column, or cylinder, rising from the sea, a great way up towards heaven; and on the top of it was seen a large cross of light, more bright and resplendent than the body of the pillar. Upon which so strange a spectacle, the people of the city gathered apace together upon the sands to wonder; and so after put themselves into a number of small boats, to go nearer to this marvellous sight. But when the boats were come within (about) sixty yards of the pillar, they found themselves all bound, and could go no farther, yet so as they might move to go about, but might not approach nearer: so as the boats stood all as in a theater, beholding this light as an heavenly sign. It so fell out, that there was in one of the boats, one of the wise men of the society of Solomon's house; which house or college, (my good brethren) is the very eye of this kingdom; who having a while attentively and devoutly viewed and contemplated this pillar and cross, fell down upon his face; and then raising himself upon his knees, and lifting up his hands to heaven, made his prayer in this manner:

Lord God of heaven and earth; thou hast vouchsafed of thy grace, to those of our order, to know thy works of creation and the secrets of them; and to discern (as far as appertaineth to the generations of men) between divine miracles, works of nature, works of art, and impostures and illusions of all sorts. I do here acknowledge and testify before this people, that the thing we now see before our eyes, is thy finger, and a true miracle: And forasmuch as we learn in our books, that thou never workest miracles, but to a divine and excellent end, (for the laws of nature are thine own laws, and thou exceedest them not but upon great cause) we most humbly beseech thee to prosper this great sign, and to give us the interpretation and use of it in mercy; which thou dost in some part secretly promise, by sending it unto us.

When he had made his prayer, he presently found the boat he was in moveable and unbound; whereas all the rest remained still fast; and taking that for an assurance of leave to approach, he caused the boat to be softly, and with silence rowed towards the pillar. But ere he came near it, the pillar and cross of light brake up, and cast it self abroad, as it were into a monument of many stars; which also vanished soon after, and there was nothing left to be seen, but a small ark or chest of cedar, dry, and not wet at all with water, though it swam. And in the fore-end of it which was toward him, grew a small green branch of palm; and when the wise man had taken it with all reverence into his boat, it opened of it self, and there were found in it a book and a letter; both written in fine parchment, and wrapp'd in fhandes of linen. The book contained all the canonical books...
of the old and new Testament, according as you have them; (for we know
well what the churches with you receive,) and the Apocalypse itself; and
some other books of the new Testament, which were not at that time
written, were nevertheless in the book: And for the letter, it was in these
words:

I Bartholomew, a servant of the Highpriest, and Apostle of Jesus Christ, was
warned by an angel that appeared to me in a vision of glory, that I should
commit this ark to the floods of the sea. Therefore I do testify and declare,
unto that people where God hath ordained this ark to come to land, that in the
same day is come unto them salvation, and peace, and good-will, from the
Father, and from the Lord Jesus.

There was also in both these writings, as well the book, as the letter,
worth a great miracle, conform to that of the Apostles in the original gift of
tongues. For there being at that time in this land, Hebrews, Persians, and
Indians, besides the natives, every one read upon the book and letter, as if they
had been written in his own language. And thus was this land saved from
infidelity, (as the remain of the old world was from water) by an ark, through
the apocryphal and miraculous evangelium of S. Bartholomew. And here he
paused, and a messenger came, and called him forth from us. So this was all
that passed in that conference.

The next day the same governor came again to us immediately after
dinner, and excused himself, saying; that the day before he was called from
us somewhat abruptly, but now he would make us amends, and spend time
with us, if we held his company and conference agreeable: ye answered;
that we held it so agreeable and pleasing to us, as we both forgot
gdangers past, and fears to come, for the time we heard him speak; and that
we thought an hour spent with him, was worth years of our former life.
He bowed himself a little to us, and after we were set again, he said; well,
the questions are on your part. One of our number said, after a little
pause; that there was a matter we were no less desirous to know, than
fearful to ask, lest we might presume too far. But encouraged by his rare
humanity towards us, (that could scarce think our selves strangers, being his
vowed and professed servants) we would take the hardiness to propound
it: humbly beseeching him, if he thought it not fit to be answered, that
he would pardon it, though he rejected it. We said; we well observed
those his words, which he formerly spake, that this happy island where we
now stood, was known to few, and yet knew most of the nations of the world,
which we found to be true, considering they had the languages of
Europe, and knew much of our state and business; and yet we in Europe,
(withstanding all the remote discoveries and navigations of this last age)
ever heard any of the least inkling or glimpse of this island. This we
found wonderful strange; for that all nations have intercourse one of
another, either by voyage into foreign parts, or by strangers that come to
them: and though the traveller into a foreign country, doth commonly
know more by the eye, than he that stayeth at home can by relation of the
traveller; yet both ways suffice to make a mutual knowledge, in some de-
gree, on both parts. But for this island, we never heard tell of any ship of
their, that had been feen to arrive upon any shore of Europe; no, nor of
either the East or West Indies, nor yet of any ship of any other part of
the world, that had made return from them. And yet the marvel refted
not in this. For the situation of it, (as his lordship said) in the secret con-
clave of such a vast sea might cause it. But then, that they should have

knowledge
knowledge of the languages, books, affairs, of those that lie such a distance from them, it was a thing we could not tell what to make of; for that it seemed to us a condition and propriety of divine powers and beings, to be hidden and unseen to others, and yet to have others open, and as in a light to them. At this speech the governour gave a gracious smile, and said; that we did well to ask pardon for this question we now asked; for that it imported, as if we thought this land a land of magicians, that sent forth spirits of the air into all parts, to bring them news and intelligence of other countries. It was answered by us all, in all possible humbleness, but yet with a countenance taking knowledge, that we knew that he made it but merrily. That we were apt enough to think: there was something supernatural in this island, but yet rather as angelical than magical. But let his lordship know truly, what it was that made us tender and doubtful to ask this question, it was not any such conceit, but because, we remembered, he had given a touch in his former speech, that this land had laws of secrecy touching strangers. To this he said; you remember it aright; and therefore in that I shall say to you, I must refer some particulars, which it is not lawful for me to reveal; but there will be enough left to give you satisfaction. You shall understand (that which perhaps you will scarce think credible) that about three thousand years ago, or somewhat more, the navigation of the world (especially for remote voyages) was greater than at this day. Do not think with yourselves, that I know not how much it is increased with you within these three-score years: I know it well; and yet I say greater than now: whether it was, that the example of the ark, that saved the remnant of men from the universal deluge, gave men confidence to adventure upon the waters, or what it was, but such is the truth. The Phoenicians, and especially the Tyrians, had great fleets. So had the Carthaginians their colony, which is yet farther west. Toward the east, the shipping of AEgypt, and of Palestine, was likewise great. China also, and the great Atlantis, (that you call America) which have now but junkes and canoes, abounded then in tall ships. This island (as appeareth by faithful registers of those times) had then fifteen hundred strong ships, of great content. Of all this, there is with you sparing memory, or none; but we have large knowledge thereof. At that time, this land was known and frequented by the ships and vessels of all the nations beforenamed. And (as it cometh to pass) they had many times men of other countries, that were no sailors, that came with them; as Persians, Chaldaeans, Arabians; so as almost all nations of might and fame reported hither; of whom we have some ships and little tribes with us at this day. And for our own ships, they went sundry voyages, as well to your streights, which you call the pillars of Hercules, as to other parts in the Atlantick and Mediterranean seas; as to Pegasus, (which is the same with Cambalaine) and Quinzy, upon the oriental seas, as far as to the borders of the east Tartary. At the same time, and an age after, or more, the inhabitants of the great Atlantis did flourish. For though the narration and description which is made by a great man with you, that the descendents of Neptune planted there; and of the magnificent temple, palace, city and hill; and the manifold streams of goodly navigable rivers, which (as so many chains) environed the same site and temple; and the several degrees of ascent, whereby men did climb up to the same, as if it had been a scala coeli; be all poetical and
NEW ATLANTIS.

fabulous: yet so much is true, that the said country of Atlantis, as well that of Peru then called Coya, as that of Mexico then named Tyrambel, were mighty and proud kingdoms, in arms, shipping, and riches: so mighty, as at one time (or at least within the space of ten years) they both made two great expeditions; they of Tyrambel, through the Atlantic to the Mediterranean Sea; and they of Coya, through the South Sea upon this our island: and for the former of these, which was into Europe, the same author amongst you, (as it seemeth) had some relation from the AEgyptian priest, whom he citeth. For assuredly, such a thing there was. But whether it were the ancient Athenians that had the glory of the repulse, and resistance of those forces, I can say nothing: But certain it is, there never came back either ship, or man, from that voyage. Neither had the other voyage of those of Coya upon us, had better fortune, if they had not met with enemies of greater clemency. For the king of this island, (by name Altabin,) a wise man, and a great warrior; knowing well both his own strength, and that of his enemies: handled the matter so, as he cut off their land forces from their ships, and enticed both their navy, and their camp, with a greater power than theirs, both by sea and land; and compelled them to render themselves without striking stroke: and after they were at his mercy, contenting himself only with their oath, that they should no more bear arms against him, dismissed them all in safety. But the divine revenge overtook not long after those proud enterprises. For within less than the space of one hundred years, the great Atlantis was utterly lost and destroyed: not by a great earthquake, as your man faith, (for that whole tract is little subject to earthquakes;) but by a particular deluge, or inundation: those countries having, at this day, far greater rivers, and far higher mountains, to pour down waters, than any part of the old world. But it is true, that the same inundation was not deep; not past forty foot, in most places, from the ground: so that, although it destroyed man and beast generally, yet some few wild inhabitants of the woods escaped. Birds also were saved by flying to the high trees and woods. For as for men, although they had buildings in many places, higher than the depth of the water; yet that inundation, though it were shallow, had a long continuance; whereby they of the vale, that were not drowned, perished for want of food, and other things necessary. So as marvel you not at the thin population of America, nor at the rudeness and ignorance of the people; for you must account your inhabitants of America as a young people; younger a thousand years, at the least, than the rest of the world: for that there was so much time between the universal flood, and their particular inundation. For the poor remnant of human seed, which remained in their mountains, peopled their country again flowly, by little and little; and being simple and a savage people, (not like Noah and his sons, which was the chief family of the earth) they were not able to leave letters, arts, and civility to their posterity; and having likewise in their mountainous habitations been used, (in respect of the extreme cold of those regions,) to cloath themselves with the skins of tygers, bears, and great hairy goats, that they have in those parts; when after they came down into the valley, and found the intolerable heats which are there, and knew no means of lighter apparel, they were forced to begin the custom of going naked, which continueth at this day. Only they take great pride and delight in the feathers of birds; and this also they took from those their ancestors of the mountains, who were invited unto it, by the infinite flights of birds, that came up to the high grounds, while the waters flood below. So you
you see, by this main accident of time, we loft our traffic with the Americans, with whom, of all others, in regard they lay nearest to us, we had most commerce. As for the other parts of the world, it is most manifest, that in the ages following, (whether it were in respect of wars, or by a natural revolution of time,) navigation did every where greatly decay; and especially far voyages, (the rather by the use of galleys, and such vessels as could hardly brook the ocean) were altogether left and omitted. So then, that part of entercourse which could be from other nations to fail to us, you see how it hath long since ceased; except it were by some rare accident, as this of yours. But now of the cessation of that other part of entercourse, which might be by our failing to other nations, I must yield you some other cause. For I cannot say, (if I shall say truly) but our shipping, for number, strength, mariners, pilots, and all things that appertain to navigation, is as great as ever: and therefore why we should sit at home, I shall now give you an account by itself; and it will draw nearer, to give you satisfaction, to your principal question.

There reigned in this island, about nineteen hundred years ago, a king, whose memory of all others we most adore; not superstitiously, but as a divine instrument, though a mortal man; his name was Solomon: and we esteem him as the law-giver of our nation. This king had a large heart; inscrutable for good, and was wholly bent to make his kingdom and people happy. He therefore taking into consideration, how sufficient and substantial this land was, to maintain itself without any aid (at all) of the foreigner, being five thousand six hundred mile in circuit, and of rare fertility of soil in the greatest part thereof; and finding also the shipping of this country might be plentifully set on work, both by fishing, and by transportations from port to port, and likewise by failing unto some small islands that are not far from us, and are under the crown and laws of this state; and recalling into his memory, the happy and flourishing estate wherein this land then was; so as it might be a thousand ways altered to the worse, but scarce any one way to the better; though nothing wanted to his noble and heroic intentions, but only (as far as human foresight might reach) to give perpetuity to that, which was in his time so happily established. Therefore amongst his other fundamental laws of this kingdom, he did ordain, the interdicts and prohibitions, which we have touching entrance of strangers; which at that time (though it was after the calamity of America) was frequent; doubting novelties, and commixture of manners. It is true, the like law, against the admission of strangers without licence, is an ancient law in the kingdom of China, and yet continued in use: But there it is a poor thing; and hath made them a curious, ignorant, fearful, foolish nation. But our law-giver made his law of another temper. For first, he hath preferred all points of humanity, in taking order, and making provision for the relief of strangers distress'd, whereof you have tasted. At which speech (as reason was) we all rose up, and bowed ourselves. He went on. That king also still defiring to join humanity and policy together; and thinking it against humanity, to detain strangers here against their wills; and against policy that they should return, and discover their knowledge of this estate, he took this course: he did ordain, that of the strangers that should be permitted to land, as many (at all times) might depart as would; but as many as would stay, should have very good conditions, and means to live, from the state. Wherein he saw so far, that now in so many ages since the prohibition, we have memory, not of one ship that ever returned, and but
of thirteen persons only, at several times, that chose to return in our bottoms. What those few that returned, may have reported abroad, I know not: But you must think, whatever they have said, could be taken where they came but for a dream. Now for our travelling from hence into parts abroad, our law-giver thought fit altogether to restrain it. So is it not in China. For the Chinese fail where they will, or can; which sheweth, that their law of keeping out strangers, is a law of pusillanimity and fear. But this restraint of ours hath one only exception, which is admirable; preserving the good which cometh by communicating with strangers, and avoiding the hurt; and I will now open it to you. And here I shall seem a little to digress, but you will by and by find it pertinent. Ye shall understand, (my dear friends,) that amongst the excellent acts of that king, one above all other had the preheminence. It was the erection, and institution of an order, or society, which we call Solomon's house; the noblest foundation (as we think) that ever was upon the earth; and the lantern of this kingdom. It is dedicated to the study of the works and creatures of God. Some think it beareth the founder's name a little corrupted, as if it should be Solomona's house. But the records write it, as it is spoken. So as I take it to be denominate of the king of the Hebrews, which is famous with you, and no stranger to us; for we have some parts of his works, which with you are lost; namely, that natural history which he wrote of all plants, from the cedar of Libanus, to the moss that groweth out of the wall; and of all things that have life and motion. This maketh me think, that our king finding himself to symbolize in many things with that king of the Hebrews (which lived many years before him) honoured him with the title of this foundation. And I am the rather induced to be of this opinion, for that I find in ancient records, this order or society is sometimes called Solomon's house, and sometimes the college of the six days works; whereby I am satisfied, that our excellent king had learned from the Hebrews, that God had created the world, and all that therein is, within six days; and therefore he instituting that house for the finding out of the true nature of all things, (whereby God might have the more glory in the workmanship of them, and men the more fruit in the use of them,) did give it also that second name. But now to come to our present purpose. When the king had forbidden, to all his people, navigation into any part, that was not under his crown, he made nevertheless this ordinance; that every twelve years there should be set forth, out of this kingdom, two ships appointed to several voyages; that in either of these ships there should be a million of three of the fellows, or brethren of Solomon's house; whose errand was only to give us knowledge of the affairs and state of those countries to which they were design'd; and especially of the sciences, arts, manufactures, and inventions of all the world; and withal to bring unto us, books, instruments, and patterns, in every kind: that the ships, after they had landed the brethren, should return; and that the brethren should stay abroad till the new million. The ships are not otherwise fraught, than with store of victuals, and good quantity of treasure to remain with the brethren, for the buying of such things, and rewarding of such persons, as they should think fit. Now for me to tell you how the vulgar sort of mariners are contained from being discovered at land; and how they that must be put on shore for any time, colour themselves under the names of other nations; and to what places these voyages have been design'd; and what places of rendezvous are appointed for the new millions; and the like circumstances of the practick; I may not do it: neither is it much to your desire.
NEW ATLANTIS.

defire. But thus you see we maintain a trade, not for gold, silver, or jewels; nor for filks; nor for spices; nor any other commodity of matter; but only for God's first creature, which was light: to have light (I say) of the growth of all parts of the world. And when he had said this, he was silent; and so were we all. For indeed we were all astonied to hear so strange things so probably told. And he perceiving that we were willing to say somewhat, but had it not ready, in great courtsey took us off, and descended to ask us questions of our voyage and fortunes, and in the end concluded, that we might do well to think with ourselves, what time of stay we would demand of the state; and bade us not to scant our selves; for he would procure such time as we desired. Whereupon we all rose up and presented our selves to kiss the skirt of his tippet, but he would not suffer us; and took his leave. But when it came once amongst our people, that the state used to offer conditions to strangers that would stay, we had work enough to get any of our men to look to our ship; and to keep them from going presently to the governour to crave conditions. But with much ado we restrained them, till we might agree what course to take.

We took our selves now for free men, seeing there was no danger of our utter perdition; and lived most joyfully, going abroad, and seeing what was to be seen in the city and places adjacent, within our tether; and obtaining acquaintance with many of the city, not of the meanest quality; at whose hands we found such humanity, and such a freedom and desire to take strangers as it were into their bosom, as was enough to make us forget all that was dear to us in our own countries: and continually we met with many things, right worthy of observation and relation; as indeed, if there be a mirror in the world worthy to hold mens eyes, it is that country. One day there were two of our company bidden to a feast of the family, as they call it. A most natural, pious, and reverend custom it is, shewing that nation to be compounded of all goodness. This is the manner of it. It is granted to any man, that shall live to see thirty persons descended of his body alive together, and all above three years old, to make this feast, which is done at the cost of the state. The father of the family, whom they call the Tirjan, two days before the feast, taketh to him three of such friends as he liketh to chuse; and is assisted also by the governour of the city, or place, where the feast is celebrated; and all the persons of the family of both sexes are summoned to attend. These two days the Tirjan fitteth in consultation, concerning the good estate of the family. There, if there be any discord or suits between any of the family, they are compounded and appeased. There, if any of the family be diseased or decayed, order is taken for their relief, and competent means to live. There, if any be subject to vice, or take ill courses, they are reproved and cenfured. So likewise direction is given touching marriages, and the courses of life which any of them should take, with divers other the like orders and advices. The governour affizeth, to the end to put in execution, by his publick authority, the decrees and orders of the Tirjan, if they should be disobeyed; though that seldom needeth: such reverence and obedience they give to the order of nature. The Tirjan doth also then, ever chuse one man from amongst his sons, to live in the house with him: who is called ever after, the son of the vine. The reason will hereafter appear. On the feast-day, the father, or Tirjan, cometh forth after divine service into a large room where the feast is celebrated; which room hath an half pace
pace at the upper end. Against the wall, in the middle of the half pace, is a chair placed for him, with a table and carpet before it. Over the chair is a flate made round or oval, and it is of ivy; an ivy somewhat whiter than ours, like the leaf of a silver afp, but more shining; for it is green all winter. And the flate is curiously wrought with silver and filk of divers colours, broiding or binding in the ivy; and is ever of the work of some of the daughters of the family; and veiled over at the top with a fine net of filk and silver. But the substance of it is true ivy; whereof, after it is taken down, the friends of the family are devisous to have some leaf or sprig to keep. The Tirfan cometh forth with all his generation or lineage, the males before him, and the females following him; and if there be a mother, from whose body the whole lineage is descended, there is a traverse placed in a loft above on the right hand of the chair, with a privy door, and a carved window of glafs, leaded with gold and blue; where the fittest, but is not seen. When the Tirfan is come forth, he sitteth down in the chair; and all the lineage place themselves against the wall, both at his back, and upon the return of the half pace, in order of their years, without difference of sex, and stand upon their feet. When he is set, the room being always full of company, but well kept, and without disorder; after some pause there cometh in from the lower end of the room a taratan, (which is as much as an herald) and on either side of him two young lads; whereof one carrieth a scroll of their shining yellow parchment; and the other a cluster of grapes of gold, with a long foot or stalk. The herald and children are cloathed with mantles of sea-water green fattin; but the herald's mantle is fringed with gold, and hath a train. Then the herald with three courtesies, or rather inclinations, cometh up as far as the half pace; and there first taketh into his hand the scroll. This scroll is the king's charter, containing gift of revenue, and many privileges, exemptions, and points of honour, granted to the father of the family; and it is ever styled and directed, to such an one, our well-beloved friend and creditor: which is a title proper only to this case. For they say, the king is debtor to no man, but for propagation of his subjects: the seal set to the king's charter, is the king's image, imbosed or moulded in gold; and though such charters be expedited of course, and as of right, yet they are varied by discretion, according to the number and dignity of the family. This charter the herald readeth aloud; and while it is read, the father or Tirfan standeth up, supported by two of his sons, such as he chooseth. Then the herald mounteth the half pace, and delivereth the charter into his hand: and with that there is an acclamation by all that are present, in their language, which is thus much; happy are the people of Benjalem. Then the herald taketh into his hand from the other child, the cluster of grapes, which is of gold; both the stalk and the grapes. But the grapes are daintily enamelled; and if the males of the family be the greater number, the grapes are enamelled purple, with a little sun set on the top; if the females, then they are enamelled into a greensh yellow, with a crescent on the top. The grapes are in number as many as there are descendants of the family. This golden cluster the herald delivereth also to the Tirfan; who pretently delivereth it over to that son, that he had formerly chosen to be in the house with him: who beareth it before his father as an ensign of honour, when he goeth in publick ever after; and is thereupon called the son of the vine. After this ceremony ended, the father or Tirfan retireth; and after some time cometh forth again to dinner, where he sitteth
NEW ATLANTIS.

fitteth alone under the state as before; and none of his descendents fit with him, of what degree or dignity soever, except he happen to be of Solomon's house. He is served only by his own children, such as are male; who perform unto him all service of the table upon the knee; and the women only stand about him, leaning against the wall. The room below his half pace, hath tables on the sipes for the guests that are bidden; who are served with great and comely order; and towards the end of dinner (which in the greatest feasts with them, fitteth never above an hour and a half) there is an hymn sung, varied according to the invention of him that composeth it, (for they have excellent poesy;) but the subject of it is (always) the praises of Adam, and Noab, and Abraham; whereof the former two peopled the world, and the last was the father of the faithful: concluding ever with a thanksgiving for the nativity of our Saviour, in whose birth the births of all are only blessed. Dinner being done, the Tirfan retires again; and having withdrawn himself alone into a place, where he maketh some private prayers, he cometh forth the third time, to give the blessing; with all his descendents, who stand about him as at the first. Then he calleth them forth by one and by one, by name, as he pleaseth, though seldom the order of age be inverted. The person that is called, (the table being before removed:) kneeleth down before the chair, and the father layeth his hand upon his head, or her head, and giveth the blessing in these words: Son of Benjamin, (or daughter of Benjamin) thy father saith it; the man by whom thou hast breath and life speaketh the word; the blessing of the everlasting Father, the prince of peace, and the holy dove be upon thee, and make the days of thy pilgrimage good and many. This he saith to every of them; and that done, if there be any of his sons of eminent merit and virtue, (so they be not above two) he calleth for them again; and saith, laying his arm over their shoulders, they standing; Sons, it is well you are born, give God the praise, and persevere to the end. And withal delivereth to either of them a jewel, made in the figure of an ear of wheat, which they ever after wear in the front of their turban, or hat. This done, they fall to musick and dances, and other recreations, after their manner, for the rest of the day. This is the full order of that feast.

By that time fix or seven days were spent, I was fallen into straight acquaintance with a merchant of that city, whose name was Joabin. He was a Jew, and circumcised: for they have some few strips of Jews yet remaining among them, whom they leave to their own religion: Which they may the better do, because they are of a far differing disposition from the Jews in other parts. For whereas they hate the name of Christ, and have a secret inbred rancour against the people amongst whom they live; these (contrariwise) give unto our Saviour many high attributes, and love the nation of Benjamin extremely. Surely this man of whom I speak, would ever acknowledge that Christ was born of a virgin; and that he was more than a man; and he would tell how God made him ruler of the seraphims, which guard his throne; and they call him also the milken way, and the Eliah of the Messias; and many other high names; which though they be inferior to his divine Majesty, yet they are far from the language of other Jews. And for the country of Benjamin, this man would make no end of commending it: Being defirous by tradition among the Jews there, to have it believed, that the people thereof were of the generations of Abram, by another son, whom they call Nachoran; and that Moses by a secret cabala, ordained the laws of Benjamin which they now use; and that when the
NEW ATLANTIS.

Messis should come, and sit in his throne at Hierusalem, the king of Benjalem should sit at his feet, whereas other kings should keep a great distance. But yet setting aside these Jewish dreams, the man was a wise man, and learned, and of great policy, and excellently seen in the laws and customs of that nation. Amongst other discourses, one day I told him I was much affected with the relation I had from some of the company, of their custom in holding the feast of the family; for that (me-thought) I had never heard of a solemnity, wherein nature did so much prelude. And because propagation of families proceedeth from the nuptial copulation, I desired to know of him, what laws and customs they had concerning marriage; and whether they kept marriage well; and whether they were tied to one wife? For that where population is so much affected, and such as with them it seemed to be, there is commonly permission of plurality of wives. To this he said; you have reason for to commend that excellent institution of the feast of the family; and indeed we have experience, that those families that are partakers of the blessings of that feast, do flourish and prosper ever after in an extraordinary manner. But hear me now, and I will tell you what I know. You shall understand, that there is not under the heavens so chaste a nation as this of Benjalem; nor so free from all pollution or foulness. It is the virgin of the world. I remember I have read in one of your European books, of an holy hermit amongst you, that desired to see the spirit of fornication; and there appeared to him a little soul ugly Aethiope: but if he had desired to see the spirit of chastity of Benjalem, it would have appeared to him in the likeness of a fair beautiful cherubim. For there is nothing amongst mortal men more fair and admirable, than the chaste minds of this people. Know therefore that with them there are no ftews, no dissolute houses, no courtesans, nor any thing of that kind. Nay, they wonder (with detestation) at you in Europe, which permit such things. They say, ye have put marriage out of office: for marriage is ordained a remedy for unlawful concupiscence; and natural concupiscence feemeth as a spur to marriage. But when men have at hand a remedy more agreeable to their corrupt will, marriage is almost expelled. And therefore there are with you seen infinite men that marry not, but chuse rather a libertine and impure single life, than to be yoked in marriage; and many that do marry, marry late, when the prime and strength of their years is past. And when they do marry, what is marriage to them but a very bargain; wherein is sought all alliance, or portion, or reputation, with some desire (almost indifferent) of issue; and not the faithful nuptial union of man and wife, that was first instituted. Neither is it possible, that those that have cast away so basely so much of their strength, should greatly esteem children, (being of the same matter) as chaste men do. So likewise during marriage is the cafe much amended, as it ought to be if those things were tolerated only for necessity; no, but they remain still as a very affront to marriage. The haunting of those dissolute places, or resort to courtesans, are no more punished in married men than in bachelors. And the depraved custom of change, and the delight in meretricious imbracements, (where sin is turned into art) maketh marriage a dull thing, and a kind of imposition or tax. They hear you defend these things, as done to avoid greater evils; as avowaries, deflouiring of virgins, unnatural lust, and the like. But they say, this is a preposterous wisdom; and they call it Lot's offer, who to save his guests from abusing, offered his daughters: nay, they say farther, that there
there is little gained in this; for that the same vices and appetites do still remain and abound; unlawful lust being like a furnace, that if you stop the flames altogether it will quench; but if you give it any vent, it will rage; as for matrilineal love, they have no touch of it; and yet there are not so faithful and inviolate friendships in the world again as are there; and to speak generally, (as I said before) I have not read of any such chastity in any people as theirs. And their usual saying is, that whatsoever is unchaste cannot reverence himself: and they say, that the reverence of a man’s self, is, next religion, the chiefest bridle of all vices. And when he had said this, the good Jew paused a little; whereupon I far more willing to hear him speak on, than to speak myself; yet thinking it decent, that upon his pause of speech I should not be altogether silent, said only this; that I would say to him, as the widow of Sarepta said to Elias; that he was come to bring to memory our sins; and that I confess the righteousness of Jerusalem was greater than the righteousness of Europe. At which speech he bowed his head, and went on in this manner: they have also many wise and excellent laws touching marriage. They allow no polygamy. They have ordained that none do inter-marry, or contract, until a month be past from their first interview. Marriage without consent of parents they do not make void, but they mulct it in the inheritors: for the children of such marriages are not admitted to inherit above a third part of their parents inheritance. I have read in a book of one of your men, of a feigned commonwealth, where the married couple are permitted, before they contract, to see one another naked. This they dislike; for they think it a scorn to give a refusal after so familiar knowledge: but because of many hidden defects in men and women’s bodies, they have a more civil way: for they have near every town a couple of pools, (which they call Adam and Eve’s pools) where it is permitted to one of the friends of the man, and another of the friends of the woman, to see them severally bathe naked.

And as we were thus in conference, there came one that seemed to be a messenger, in a rich hue; that spake with the Jew: whereupon he turned to me and said; you will pardon me, for I am commanded away in haste. The next morning he came to me again joyful, as it seemed, and said; there is word come to the governor of the city, that one of the fathers of Solomon’s house will be here this day seven-night: we have seen none of them this dozen years. His coming is in state; but the cause of his coming is secret. I will provide you, and your fellows, of a good standing to see his entry. I thanked him, and told him, I was most glad of the news. The day being come, he made his entry. He was a man of middle stature and age, comely of person, and had an aspect as if he pitied men. He was clothed in a robe of fine black cloth, with wide sleeves and a cape. His under garment was of excellent white linen down to the foot, girt with a girdle of the same; and a faddon or tippet of the same about his neck. He had gloves that were curious, and set with stone; and shoes of peach-coloured velvet. His neck was bare to the shoulders. His hat was like a helmet, or Spanish Montera; and his locks curled below it decently: they were of colour brown. His beard was cut round, and of the same colour with his hair somewhat lighter. He was carried in a rich chariot without wheels litter-wise, with two horses at either end, richly trapped in blue velvet embroidered; and two footmen on each side in the like attire. The chariot was all of cedar, gilt and adorned...
with crystal; save that the fore-end had panels of sapphires, set in borders of gold, and the hinder-end the like of emeralds of the Peru colour. There was also a sun of gold, radiant upon the top, in the midst; and on the top before a small cherub of gold, with wings displayed. The chariot was covered with cloth of gold tissued upon blue. He had before him fifty attendants, young men all, in white fatten loose coats to the mid-leg, and stockings of blue silk; and shoes of blue velvet; with fine plumers of divers colours, set round like hat-bands. Next before the chariot went two men bare-headed, in linen garments down to the foot, girt, and shoes of blue velvet, who carried the one a crozier, the other a pastoral staff, like a sheep-hook; neither of them of metal, but the crozier of balm wood, the pastoral staff of cedar. Horsemens he had none, neither before nor behind his chariot: as it seemeth, to avoid all tumult and trouble. Behind his chariot went all the officers and principals of the companies of the city. He sat alone, upon cushions of a kind of excellent plush, blue; and under his foot curious carpets of filk of divers colours, like the Persian, but far finer. He held up his bare hand as he went, as blessing the people, but in silence. The street was wonderfully well kept; so that there was never any army had their men stand in better battle-array, than the people stood. The windows likewise were not crowded, but every one stood in them as if they had been placed. When the show was past, the Jew said to me; I shall not be able to attend you as I would, in regard of some charge the city hath laid upon me, for the entertaining of this great person. Three days after the Jew came to me again, and said: Ye are happy men; for the father of Solomon's house taketh knowledge of your being here, and commanded me to tell you, that he will admit all your company to his presence, and have private conference with one of you that ye shall choose: and for this hath appointed the next day after to-morrow. And because he meaneth to give you his blessing, he hath appointed it in the forenoon. We came at our day and hour, and I was chosen by my fellows for the private access. We found him in a fair chamber richly hanged, and carpeted under foot, without any degrees to the state; he was set upon a low throne richly adorned, and a rich cloth of state over his head, of blue fatten embroidered. He was alone, save that he had two pages of honour, on either hand one, finely attired in white. His under garments were the like that we saw him wear in the chariot; but instead of his gown, he had on him a mantle with a cape, of the same fine black, fastned about him. When we came in, as we were taught, we bowed low at our first entrance; and when we were come near his chair, he stood up, holding forth his hand ungloved, and in posture of blessing; and we every one of us stooped down, and kissed the hem of his tippet. That done, the rest departed, and I remained. Then he warned the pages forth of the room, and caused me to sit down beside him, and spake to me thus in the Spanish tongue.

God blest thee, my son; I will give thee the greatest jewel I have. For I will impart unto thee, for the love of God and men, a relation of the true state of Solomon's house. Son, to make you know the true state of Solomon's house, I will keep this order. First, I will set forth unto you the end of our foundation. Secondly, the preparations and instruments we have for our works. Thirdly, the several employments and functions whereunto our fellows are assigned. And fourthly, the ordinances and rites which we observe.
THE end of our foundation is the knowledge of causes, and secret motions of things; and the enlarging of the bounds of humane empire, to the effecting of all things possible.

The preparations and instruments are these. We have large and deep caves of several depths: the deepest are sunk six hundred fathom; and some of them are digged and made under great hills and mountains: so that if you reckon together the depth of the hill, and the depth of the cave, they are (some of them) above three miles deep. For we find that the depth of an hill, and the depth of a cave from the flat, is the same thing; both remote alike from the sun and heavens beams, and from the open air. These caves we call the lower region. And we use them for all coagulations, inductions, refrigerations, and conservations, of bodies. We use them likewise for the imitation of natural mines: and the producing also of new artificial metals, by compositions and materials which we use and lay there for many years. We use them also sometimes (which may seem strange) for curing of some diseases, and for prolongation of life, in some hermits that chuse to live there, well accommodated of all things necessary, and indeed live very long; by whom also we learn many things.

We have burials in several earths, where we put divers cements, as the Chinese do their porcelain. But we have them in greater variety, and some of them more fine. We also have great variety of compositions, and soils, for the making of the earth fruitful.

We have high towers; the highest about half a mile in height; and some of them likewise set upon high mountains: so that the vantage of the hill with the tower, is in the highest of them three miles at least. And these places we call the upper region; accounting the air between the high places and the low, as a middle region. We use these towers, according to their several heights and situations, for inflation, refrigeration, conservation, and for the view of divers meteors; as winds, rain, snow, hail, and some of the fiery meteors also. And upon them, in some places, are dwellings of hermits, whom we visit sometimes, and instruct what to observe.

We have great lakes both salt and fresh, whereof we have use for the fish and fowl. We use them also for burials of some natural bodies: for we find a difference in things buried in earth, or in air below the earth; and things buried in water. We have also pools, of which some do strain fresh water out of salt; and others by art do turn fresh water into salt. We have also some rocks in the midst of the sea; and some bays upon the shore for some works, wherein is required the air and vapour of the sea. We have likewise violent streams and cataracts, which serve us for many motions: and likewise engines for multiplying and enforcing of winds, to set also on going divers motions.

We have also a number of artificial wells and fountains, made in imitation of the natural springs and baths; as tincted upon vitriol, sulphur, steel, brass, lead, nitre, and other minerals. And again, we have little wells for infusions of many things, where the waters take the virtue quicker and better, than in vessels or basins. And amongst them we have a water, which we call water of paradise, being, by that we do to it, made very sovereign for health, and prolongation of life.

We have also great and spacious houses, where we imitate and demonstrate meteors; as snow, hail, rain, some artificial rains of bodies, and not of water, thunders, lightnings; also generations of bodies in air; as frogs, flies, and divers others.
NEW ATLANTIS.

WE have also certain chambers, which we call chambers of health, where we qualify the air as we think good and proper for the cure of divers diseases, and preservation of health.

WE have also fair and large baths, of several mixtures, for the cure of diseases, and the restoring of man's body from arefaction: and others, for the confirming of it in strength of sinews, vital parts, and the very juice and substance of the body.

WE have also large and various orchards and gardens, wherein we do not so much respect beauty, as variety of ground and soil, proper for divers trees and herbs: and some very spacious, where trees and berries are set, whereof we make divers kinds of drinks, besides the vineyards. In these we practice likewise all conclusions of grafting and inoculating, as well of wild trees as fruit trees, which produceth many effects. And we make (by art) in the same orchards and gardens, trees and flowers, to come earlier or later than their seasons; and to come up and bear more speedily, than by their natural course they do. We make them also by art greater much than their nature; and their fruit greater, and sweeter, and of differing taste, smell, colour, and figure, from their nature. And many of them we so order, as that they become of medicinal use.

WE have also means to make divers plants rise by mixtures of earths without seeds; and likewise to make divers new plants, differing from the vulgar; and to make one tree or plant turn into another.

WE have also parks and enclosures of all sorts of beasts and birds, which we use not only for view or rareness, but likewise for dissections and trials; that thereby may take light, what may be wrought upon the body of man. Wherein we find many strange effects; as continuing life in them, though divers parts, which you account vital, be perished, and taken forth; revivifying of some that seem dead in appearance; and the like. We try also all poisons, and other medicines upon them, as well of chirurgery as phywick. By art likewise, we make them greater or taller, than their kind is; and contrariwise dwarf them, and stay their growth: we make them more fruitful and bearing than their kind is; and contrariwise barren, and not generative. Also we make them differ in colour, shape, activity, many ways. We find means to make commixtures and copulations of divers kinds, which have produced many new kinds, and them not barren, as the general opinion is. We make a number of kinds of serpents, worms, flies, fishes, of putrefaction; whereof some are advanced (in effect) to be perfect creatures, like beasts, or birds; and have sexes, and do propagate. Neither do we this by chance, but we know beforehand, of what matter and commixture, what kind of those creatures, will arise.

WE have also particular pools, where we make trials upon fishes, as we have said before of beasts and birds.

WE have also places for breed and generation of those kinds of worms, and flies, which are of special use; such as are with you your silk-worms and bees.

I will not hold you long with recounting of our brew-houses, bake-houses and kitchens, where are made divers drinks, breads and meats, rare, and of special effects. Wines we have of grapes; and drinks of other juice, of fruits, of grains, and roots; and of mixtures with honey, sugar, manna, and fruits dried and decocted. Also of the tears or wounding of trees, and of the pulp of canes. And these drinks are of several ages, some to the age or half of forty years. We have drinks also brewed with several herbs, and
and roots, and spices; yea, with several fleshes, and white-meats; whereof some of the drinks are such as they are in effect meat and drink both: so that divers, especially in age, do desire to live with them, with little or no meat, or bread. And above all, we strive to have drinks of extreme thin parts; to infinuate into the body, and yet without all biting, sharpness, or fretting; insomuch as some of them put upon the back of your hand, will, with a little stay, pass through to the palm, and yet taste mild to the mouth. We have also waters which we ripen in that fashion, as they become nourishing; so that they are indeed excellent drink; and many will use no other. Breads we have of several grains, roots, and kernels; yea, and some of flesh, and fish, dried; with divers kinds of leavings and seasonings: so that some do extremely move appetites; some do nourish so, as divers do live of them, without any other meat; who live very long. So for meats, we have some of them so beaten, and made tender, and mortified, yet with-out all corrupting, as a weak heat of the stomach will turn them into good chylus, as well as a strong heat would meat otherwise prepared. We have some meats also, and breads, and drinks, which taken by men, enable them to fast long after; and some other, that used make the very flesh of men's bodies sensibly more hard and tough; and their strength far greater, than otherwise it would be.

We have dispensatories, or shops of medicines; wherein you may easily think, if we have such variety of plants and living creatures, more than you have in Europe, (for we know what you have,) the simples, drugs, and ingredients of medicines, must likewise be in so much the greater variety. We have them likewise of divers ages, and long fermentations. And for their preparations, we have not only all manner of exquisite distillations and separations, and especially by gentle heats and percolations through divers strainers, yea, and substances; but also exact forms of composition, whereby they incorporate almost as they were natural simples.

We have also divers mechanical arts, which you have not; and stuffs made by them; as papers, linen, silks, tissues; dainty works of feathers of wonderful lustre; excellent dyes, and many others: and shops likewise as well for such as are not brought into vulgar use amongst us, as for those that are. For you must know, that of the things before recited, many of them are grown into use throughout the kingdom; but yet, if they did flow from our invention, we have of them also for patterns and principals.

We have also furnaces of great diversities, and that keep great diversity of heats; fierce and quick; strong and constant; soft and mild; blown, quiet, dry, moist; and the like. But above all, we have heats in imitation of the sun's and heavenly bodies heat, that passes divers inequalities, and (as it were) orbs, progresses and returns, whereby we produce admirable effects. Besides, we have heats of dungs, and of bellies and maws of living creatures, and of their bloods and bodies; and of hays and herbs laid up moist; and such like. Instruments also which generate heat only by motion. And farther, places for strong inflations: and again, places under the earth, which by nature, or art, yield heat. These divers heats we use, as the nature of the operation, which we intend, requireth.

We have also perspective houses, where we make demonstrations of all lights and radiations; and of all colours; and out of things uncoloured and transparent, we can represent unto you all several colours: not in rain-bows, (as it is in gems and prisms,) but of themselves single. We represent also all multiplications of light, which we carry to great distance; and make so
NEW ATLANTIS.

sharp, as to discern small points and lines: also all colorations of light; all delusions and deceits of the light, in figures, magnitudes, motions, colours; all demonstrations of shadows. We find also divers means yet unknown to you, of producing of light, originally, from divers bodies. We procure means of seeing objects afar off; as in the heaven, and remote places; and represent things near as far off; and things afar off as near; making feigned distances. We have also helps for the light, far above spectacles and glasses in use. We have also glasses and means, to see small and minute bodies, perfectly and distinctly; as the shapes and colours of small flies and worms, grains, and flaws in gems, which cannot otherwise be seen; observations in urine and blood, not otherwise to be seen. We make artificial rain-bows, halo's, and circles about light. We represent also all manner of reflexions, refractions, and multiplications of visual beams of objects.

We have also precious stones of all kinds, many of them of great beauty, and to you unknown; crysals likewise; and glasses of divers kinds; and amongst them some of metals vitrificated, and other materials, besides those of which you make glass. Also a number of fossils, and imperfect minerals, which you have not. Likewise load-stones of prodigious virtue; and other rare stones, both natural and artificial.

We have also found-houses, where we practice and demonstrate all sounds, and their generation. We have harmonies which you have not, of quarter-sounds, and leffer slides of sounds. Divers instruments of musick likewise to you unknown, some sweeter than any you have; together with bells and rings that are dainty and sweet. We represent small sounds as great and deep; likewise great sounds, extenuate and sharp; we make divers tremblings and warblings of sounds, which in their original are entire. We represent and imitate all articulate sounds and letters, and the voices and notes of beasts and birds. We have certain helps, which set to the ear do further the hearing greatly. We have also divers strange and artificial echoes, reflecting the voice many times, and as it were tossing it: and some that give back the voice louder than it came, some thriller, and some deeper; yea, some rendering the voice, differing in the letters or articulate sound, from that they receive. We have also means to convey sounds in trunks and pipes, in strange lines and distances.

We have also perfume-houses, wherewith we join also practices of taste. We multiply smells, which may seem strange. We imitate smells, making all smells to breathe out of other mixtures than those that give them. We make divers imitations of taste likewise, so that they will deceive any man's taste. And in this house we contain also a confiture house; where we make all sweet-meats, dry and moist; and divers pleasant wines, milks, broths, and fallads, far in greater variety than you have.

We have also engine-houses, where are prepared engines and instruments for all sorts of motions. There we imitate and practice to make swifter motions than any you have, either out of your muskets, or any engine that you have; and to make them, and multiply them more easily, and with small force, by wheels, and other means: and to make them stronger and more violent than yours are; exceeding your greatest cannons and basilisks. We represent also ordinance and instruments of war, and engines of all kinds: and likewise new mixtures and compositions of gun-powder, wild-fires burning in water, and unquenchable. Also fire-works of all variety both for pleasure and use. We imitate also flights of birds; we have some degrees of flying in the air; we have ships and boats for going
NEW ATLANTIS.

ing under water, and brooking of seas; also swimming-girdles and supporters. We have divers curious clocks, and other like motions of return, and some perpetual motions: we imitate also motions of living creatures, by images of men, beasts, birds, fishes, and serpents; we have also a great number of other various motions, strange for equality, fineness, and subtility.

We have also a mathematical house, where are represented all instruments, as well of geometry as astronomy, exquisitely made.

We have also houses of deceits of the senses; where we represent all manner of feats of jugling, false apparitions, impostures, and illusions; and their fallacies. And surely you will easily believe, that we that have so many things truly natural, which induce admiration, could in a world of particulars deceive the senses, if we would disguise those things; and labour to make them seem more miraculous. But we do hate all impostures and lies: insomuch as we have severely forbidden it to all our fellows, under pain of ignominy and fines, that they do not shew any natural work or thing, adorned or swelling; but only pure as it is, and without all affectation of strangeness.

These are (my son) the riches of Solomon's house.

For the several employments and offices of our fellows; we have twelve that fall into foreign countries, under the names of other nations, (for our own we conceal;) who bring us the books, and abstractions, and patterns of experiments of all other parts. These we call merchants of light.

We have three that collect the experiments which are in all books; these we call depredators.

We have three that collect the experiments of all mechanical arts; and also of liberal sciences; and also of practices which are not brought into arts. These we call mystery men.

We have three that try new experiments; such as themselves think good: These we call pioneers or miners.

We have three that draw the experiments of the former four into titles, and tables, to give the better light for the drawing of observations and axioms out of them. These we call compilers.

We have three others that do execute the experiments so directed, and report them. These we call inoculators.

Lastly, we have three that raise the former discoveries by experiments; into greater observations, axioms, and aphorisms. These we call interpreters of nature.

We have also, as you must think, novices and apprentices, that the succession of the former employed men do not fail; besides a great number of servants and attendants, men and women. And this we do also: we have
have consultations, which of the inventions and experiences which we have discovered, shall be published, and which not: and take all an oath of secrecy, for the concealing of those which we think fit to keep secret: though some of those we do reveal sometimes to the state, and some not.

For our ordinances and rites: we have two very long and fair galleries: in one of these we place patterns and samples of all manner of the more rare and excellent inventions: in the other we place the statues of all principal inventors. There we have the statue of your Columbus, that discovered the West-Indies: also the inventor of ships: your monk that was the inventor of ordnance, and of gun-powder: the inventor of music: the inventor of letters: the inventor of printing: the inventor of observations of astronomy: the inventor of works in metal: the inventor of glass: the inventor of silk of the worm: the inventor of wine: the inventor of corn and bread: the inventor of sugars: and all these by more certain tradition than you have. Then have we divers inventors of our own of excellent works; which since you have not seen, it were too long to make descriptions of them; and besides, in the right understanding of those descriptions, you might easily err. For upon every invention of value, we erect a statue to the inventor, and give him a liberal and honourable reward. These statues are, some of brass; some of marble and touchstone; some of cedar, and other special woods gilt and adorned; some of iron; some of silver; some of gold.

We have certain hymns and services which we say daily, of laud and thanks to God for his marvellous works: and forms of prayers, imploring his aid and blessing for the illumination of our labours; and the turning of them into good and holy uses.

Lastly, we have circuits or visits of divers principal cities of the kingdom; where, as it cometh to pass, we do publish such new profitable inventions as we do think good. And we also declare natural divinations of diseases, plagues, swarms of hurtful creatures, scarcity, tempests, earthquakes, great inundations, comets, temperature of the year, and divers other things; and we give counsel thereupon what the people shall do for the prevention and remedy of them.

And when he had said this, he stood up: and I, as I had been taught, kneeled down; and he laid his right hand upon my head, and said; God bless thee, my son, and God bless this relation which I have made. I give thee leave to publish it for the good of other nations; for we here are in God's bosom, a land unknown. And so he left me; having assigned a value of about two thousand ducats, for a bounty to me and my fellows. For they give great largesse where they come upon all occasions.

The rest was not perfected.

Magnalia
Magnalia naturae, praecipue quoad usus humanos.

THE prolongation of life: the restitution of youth in some degree: the retardation of age: the curing of diseases counted incurable: the mitigation of pain: more easy and less loathsome purgings: the increasing of strength and activity: the increasing of ability to suffer torture or pain: the altering of complexions: and fatnes and leanness: the altering of features: the increasing and exalting of the intellectual parts: versions of bodies into other bodies: making of new species: transplanting of one species into another: instruments of destruction, as of war and poison: exhilaration of the spirits, and putting them in good disposition: force of the imagination, either upon another body, or upon the body itself: acceleration of time in maturation: acceleration of time in clarifications: acceleration of putrefaction: acceleration of decoction: acceleration of germination: making rich composites for the earth: impressions of the air, and raising of tempests: great alteration: as in induration, emollietion, &c. turning crude and watry substances into oily and unctuous substances: drawing of new foods out of substances not now in use: making new threads for apparel; and new stuffs, such as are paper, glass, &c. natural divinations: deceptions of the senses: greater pleasures of the senses: artificial minerals and cements.
A COLLECTION OF APOPHTHEGMS NEW and OLD.

His lordship’s preface.

JULIUS CAESAR did write a collection of apophthegms, as appears in an epistle of Cicero; so did Macrobius a consular man. I need say no more for the worth of a writing of that nature. It is pity Caesar’s book is lost: for I imagine they were collected with judgment and choice; whereas that of Plutarch and Stobaeus, and much more the modern ones, draw much of the dregs. Certainly they are of excellent use. They are mucrones verborum, pointed speeches. The words of the wise are as goads, saith Solomon. Cicero prettily calleth them salinas, salt-pits, that you may extract salt out of, and sprinkle it where you will. They serve to be interlaced in continued speech. They serve to be recited upon occasion of themselves. They serve if you take out the kernel of them, and make them your own. I have for my recreation amongst more serious studies, collected some few of them (a): therein fanning the old, not omitting any, because they are vulgar, (for many vulgar ones are excellent good;) nor for the meanness of the person, but because they are dull and flat; and adding many new, that otherwise would have died.

(a) This collection his lordship made out of his memory, without turning any book.
A COLLECTION OF APOPHTHEGMS NEW and OLD.

1. Queen Elizabeth, the morrow of her coronation; (it being the custom to release prisoners, at the inauguration of a prince,) went to the chapel; and in the great chamber, one of her courtiers, who was well known to her, either out of his own motion, or by the instigation of a wiser man, presented her with a petition; and before a great number of courtiers, besought her with a loud voice, that now this good time, there might be four or five principal prisoners more released: those were the four Evangelists and the apostle St. Paul, who had been long shut up in an unknown tongue, as it were in prison; so as they could not converse with the common people. The Queen answered very gravely, that it was best first to enquire of them, whether they would be released or no.

2. Queen Anne Bullen, at the time when she was led to be beheaded in the Tower, called one of the King's privy chamber to her, and said unto him, commend me to the king, and tell him, that he hath been ever constant in his course of advancing me; from a private gentlewoman he made me a marchioness; and from a marchioness a queen; and now, that he hath left no higher degree of earthly honour, he intends to crown my innocency with the glory of martyrdom.

3. His majesty James the first, king of Great Britain, having made unto his parliament an excellent and large declaration, concluded thus; I have now given you a clear mirrour of my mind; use it therefore like a mirrour, and take heed how you let it fall, or how you foil it with your breath.

4. A great officer in France was in danger to have lost his place; but his wife, by her suit and means making, made his peace; whereupon a pleasant fellow said, that he had been cruel'd, but that he saved himself upon his horns.

5. His majesty said to his parliament at another time, finding there were some caufel's jealousies sown amongst them; that the king and his people, (wherof the parliament is the reprezentative body,) were as husband and wife; and therefore, that of all other things, jealousy was between them most pernicious.

6. His
6. His majesty, when he thought his council might note in him some variety in businesse, though indeed he remained constant, would say, that the sun many times shineth watery; but it is not the sun which causeth it, but some cloud rising betwixt us and the sun: and when that is scattered, the sun is as it was, and comes to his former brightness.

7. His majesty, in his answer to the book of the cardinal of Bouveroux, (who had in a grave argument of divinity, sprinkled many witty ornaments of poesy and humanity,) faith; that these flowers were like blue, and yellow, and red flowers in the corn, which make a pleasant shew to those that look on, but they hurt the corn.

8. Sir Edward Coke being vehement against the two provincial counsels of Wales, and the north, faid to the king; there was nothing there but a kind of confusion and hotch-potch of justice: one while they were a star-chamber; another while a king's-bench; another, a common-pleas; another, a commission of oyer and terminer. His majesty anfwered; why, Sir Edward Coke, they be like houses in progress, where I have not, nor can have, such distinct rooms of state, as I have here at Whitehall, or at Hampton-court.

9. The commissiioners of the treasury moved the King for the relief of his estate, to disafforeft some fores of his, explaining themselves of such fores as lay out of the way, not near any of the king's houses, nor in the course of his progress; whereof he should never have use nor pleasure. Why, (faith the king,) do you think that Solomon had use and pleasure of all his three hundred concubines?

10. His majesty, when the committees of both houses of parliament presented unto him the instrument of union of England and Scotland, was merry with them; and amongst other pleasant speeches, shewed unto them the laird of Lawrefton a Scotchman, who was the tallest and greatest man that was to be seen, and faid; well, now we are all one, yet none of you will be, but here is one Scotchman greater than any Englishman, which was an ambiguous speech; but it was thought he meant it of himself.

11. His majesty would faid to the lords of his council when they faie upon any great matter, and came from council in to him, well, you have fet, but what have you hatched?

12. When the arch-duke did raise his siege from the Grave, the then secretary came to queen Elizabeth. The queen (having first intelligence thereof,) faid to the secretary, wote you what? The arch-duke is rifen from the grave. He anfwered; what, without the trumpet of the arch-angel? The queen replied, yes; without the sound of trumpet.

13. Queen Elizabeth was importuned much by my lord of Essex, to supply divers great offices that had been long void: the queen anfwered nothing to the matter; but rofe up on the sudden, and faid; I am fure my office will not be long void. And yet at that time there was much speech of troubles, and divisions about the crown, to be after her deceafe: but they all vaniied; and king James came in, in a profound peace.

14. The council did make remonfiance unto queen Elizabeth, of the continual conspiracies against her life; and namely, that a man was lately taken, who stood ready in a very dangerous and fupicious manner to do the deed: and they shewed her the weapon, wherewith he thought to have acted it. And therefore they advised her, that she should go lefs abroad to take the air, weakly attended, as the ufed. But the queen anfwered; that she had rather be dead, than put in custody.

15. The
A POPHTHEGMS.

15. THE lady Paget, that was very private with queen Elizabeth, declared herself much against the match with monsieur. After monsieur's death, the queen took extreme grief, (at least as she made show) and kept in within her bed-chamber, and one ante-chamber for three weeks space, in token of mourning: at last she came forth into the privy-chamber, and admitted her ladies to have access unto her; and amongst the rest, my lady Paget presented herself, and came to her with a smiling countenance. The queen bent her brows, and seemed to be highly displeased, and said to her; madam, you are not ignorant of my extreme grief, and do you come to me with a countenance of joy? My lady Paget answered; alas, if it please your majesty, it is impossible for me to be absent from you three weeks, but that when I see you, I must look cheerfully. No, no, (said the queen, not forgetting her former aversion to the match) you have some other conceit in it, tell me plainly. My lady answered, I must obey you; it is this. I was thinking how happy your majesty was, you married not monsieur; for seeing you take such thought for his death, being but your friend; if he had been your husband, sure it would have cost you your life.

16. HENRY the fourth of France his queen was young with child; count Soiffons, that had his expectation upon the crown, when it was twice or thrice thought that the queen was with child before, said to some of his friends, that it was but with a pillow. This had some ways come to the king's ear; who kept it till such time as the queen waxed great: then he called the count of Soiffons to him, and said, laying his hand upon the queen's belly; cousin, is this a pillow? The count of Soiffons answered; yes, sir, it is a pillow for all France to sleep upon.

17. KING Henry the fourth of France was so punctual of his word, after it was once passed, that they called him the king of the faith.

18. THE said king Henry the fourth was moved by his parliament to a war against the protestants: he answered, yes, I mean it; I will make every one of you captains; you shall have companies assigned you. The parliament observing whereunto his speech tended, gave over, and deserted his motion.

19. QUEEN Elizabeth was wont to say, upon the commission of sales, that the commissioners used her like strawberry-wives, that layed two or three great strawberies at the mouth of their pot, and all the rest were little ones; so they made her two or three good prizes of the first particulars, but fell straightways.

20. QUEEN Elizabeth used to say of her instructions to great officers, that they were like to garments, strait at the first putting on, but did by and by wear loose enough.

21. A great officer at court, when my lord of Essex was first in trouble; and that he, and those that dealt for him, would talk much of my lord's friends, and of his enemies, answer'd to one of them; I will tell you, I know but one friend and one enemy my lord hath; and that one friend is the queen, and that one enemy is himself.

22. THE book of deposing king Richard the second, and the coming in of Henry the fourth, supposed to be written by doctor Hayward, who was committed to the Tower for it, had much incensed queen Elizabeth; and she asked Mr. Bacon, being then of her council learned, whether there were any treason contained in it? Who intending to do him a pleasure, and to take off the queen's bitterness with a merry conceit, answer'd; no, madam, for treason I cannot deliver opinion that there is any, but very much felony: the queen
APOPHTHEGMS.

queen apprehending it gladly, asked, how? and wherein? Mr. Bacon answered, because he had stolen many of his sentences and conceits out of Cornelius Tacitus.

23. Queen Elizabeth being to resolve upon a great officer, and being by some, that canvass'd for others, put in some doubt of that person, whom she meant to advance, called for Mr. Bacon; and told him, she was like one with a lantern seeking a man, and seemed unsatisfied in the choice she had of a man for that place. Mr. Bacon answered her, that he had heard that in old time, there was usually painted on the church walls the day of doom, and God sitting in judgment, and saint Michael by him, with a pair of balances; and the soul, and the good deeds in the one balance; and the faults, and the evil deeds in the other: and the soul's balance went up far too light. Then was our lady painted with a great pair of beads, who cast them into the light balance, and brought down the scale: so he said; place and authority, which were in her majesty's hands to give, were like our lady's beads, which though men, through any imperfections, were too light before, yet when they were cast in, made weight competent.

24. Queen Elizabeth was dilatory enough in suits, of her own nature; and the lord treasurer Burleigh being a wise man, and willing therein to feed her humour, would say to her; madam, you do well to let suitors stay; for I shall tell you, bis dat, qui cito dat; if you grant them speedily, they will come again the sooner.

25. Sir Nicolas Bacon, who was keeper of the great seal of England, when queen Elizabeth, in her progress, came to his house at Gorbamby, and said to him; my lord, what a little house have you gotten? answered her; madam, my house is well, but it is you that have made me too great for my house.

26. There was a conference in parliament, between the lords house, and the house of commons, about a bill of accountants, which came down from the lords to the commons; which bill prayed, that the lands of accountants, whereof they were seized when they entered upon their office, might be liable to their arrears to the queen. But the commons desirable, that the bill might not look back to accountants that were already, but extend only to accountants hereafter. But the lord treasurer said; why, I pray you, if you had lost your purse by the way, would you look forwards, or would you look back? The queen hath lost her purse.

27. The lord keeper, Sir Nicolas Bacon, was asked his opinion by my lord of Leicesther, concerning two persons whom the queen seemed to think well of: by my troth, my lord, (said he) the one is a grave counsellor; the other is a proper young man; and so he will be as long as he lives.

28. My lord of Leicesther, favourite to queen Elizabeth, was making a large chase about Cornbury park; meaning to enclose it with posts and rails; and one day was casting up his charge what it would come to. Mr. Goldingham, a free spoken man, stood by, and said to my lord; methinks your lordship goeth not the cheapest way to work. Why, Goldingham, said my lord? Marry, my lord, said Goldingham, count you but upon the posts, for the country will find you nailing.

29. The lord-keeper, Sir Nicholas Bacon, was asked his opinion by queen Elizabeth, of one of these monopoly licences? And he answered, madam, will you have me speak the truth? Licentia omnes deteriores fumus: we are all the worse for licences.

30. My
APOPHTHEGMS.

30. My lord of Essex, at the succour of Roan, made twenty-four knights, which at that time was a great number. Divers of those gentlemen were of weak and small means; which when queen Elizabeth heard, she said; my lord might have done well to have built his alms-house, before he made his knights.

31. The deputies of the reformed religion, after the massacre which was at Paris upon Saint Bartholomew's day, treated with the king and queen-mother, and some other of the council, for a peace. Both sides were agreed upon the articles. The question was, upon the security for the performance. After some particulars propounded and rejected, the queen-mother said, why, is not the word of a king sufficient security? One of the deputies answered; no, by Saint Bartholomew, madam.

32. There was a French gentleman, speaking with an English, of the law Salique; that women were excluded from inheriting the crown of France. The English said; yes, but that was meant of the women themselves, not of such males as claimed by women. The French gentleman said, where do you find that gloss? The English answered, I'll tell you, Sir, look on the backside of the record of the law Salique, and there you shall find it indorsed: implying, there was no such thing as the law Salique, but that it is a mere fiction.

33. A friar of France, being in an earnest dispute about the law Salique, would needs prove it by scripture; citing that verse of the gospel; lilia agri non laborant, neque nent; the lilies of the field do neither labour nor spin: applying it thus; that the flower-de-luces of France cannot descend, neither to the distaff, nor to the spade; that is, not to a woman, nor to a peasant.

34. When peace was renewed with the French in England, divers of the great counsellors were presented from the French with jewels: the lord Henry Howard, being then earl of Northampton, and a counsellor, was omitted. Whereupon the king said to him, my lord, how happens it that you have not a jewel as well as the rest? My lord answered, according to the fable in Aesop; non sum gallus, itaque non reperi gemmam.

35. The same earl of Northampton, then lord privy seal, was asked by king James openly at the table, where commonly he entertained the king with discourse; the king asked him upon the sudden; my lord, have you not a desire to see Rome? My lord privy seal answered; yes indeed, Sir. The king said, and why? My lord answered; because if it please your majesty, it was the seat of the greatest monarchy, and the seminary of the bravest men of the world, whilst it was heathen: and then, secondly, because afterwards it was the see of so many holy bishops in the primitive church, most of them martyrs. The king would not give it over, but said; and for nothing else? My lord answered; yes, if it please your majesty, for two things more: the one to see him, who they say hath so great a power to forgive other men their sins, to confess his own sins upon his knees before a chaplain or priest: and the other to hear antichrist say his creed.

36. Sir Nicolas Bacon being appointed a judge for the northern circuit, and having brought his trials that came before him to such a pass, as the passing of sentence on malefactors, he was by one of the malefactors mightily importuned for to save his life; which when nothing that he had said did avail, he at length defired his mercy on the account of kindred. Prithee, said my lord judge, how came that in? Why, if it please you, my lord, your name is Bacon, and mine is Hog, and in all ages Hog and Bacon have been.
so near kindred, that they are not to be separated. Ay, but replied judge Bacon, you and I cannot be kindred, except you be hanged; for Hog is not Bacon until it be well hanged.

37. Two scholars and a country man travelling upon the road, one night lodged all in one inn, and supped together, where the scholars thought to have put a trick upon the country man, which was thus; the scholars appointed for supper two pigeons, and a fat capon, which being ready, was brought up, and they having set down, the one scholar took up one pigeon, the other scholar took the other pigeon, thinking thereby that the country man should have fate still, until that they were ready for the carving of the capon; which he perceiving, took the capon and laid it on his trencher, and thus said, daintily contrived, every man a bird.

38. Jack Roberts was desired by his tailor, when the reckoning grew somewhat high, to have a bill of his hand. Roberts said, I am content, but you must let no man know it. When the tailor brought in the bill, he tore it as in choler, and said to him, you use me not well, you promised me that no man should know it, and here you have put in, Be it known unto all men by these presents.

39. Sir Walter Rawleigh was wont to say of the ladies of Queen Elizabeth's privy chamber, and bed chamber, that they were like witches, they could do hurt, but they could do no good.

40. There was a minister deprived for inconformity, who said to some of his friends, that if they deprived him, it should cost an hundred men's lives. The party understood it, as if being a turbulent fellow, he would have moved sedition, and complained of him; whereupon being convicted and opposed upon that speech, he said his meaning was, that if he lost his benefice he would practice physic, and then he thought he should kill an hundred men in time.

41. Secretary Bourn's son kept a gentleman's wife in Shropshire, who lived from her husband with him; when he was weary of her, he caused her husband to be dealt with to take her home, and offered him five hundred pounds for reparation; the gentleman went to Sir H. Sidney, to take his advice upon this offer, telling him, that his wife promised now a new life; and to tell him truth, five hundred pounds would come well with him; and besides that sometimes he wanted a woman in his bed. By my troth, said Sir Henry Sidney, take her home, and take the money; then whereas other cuckolds wear their horns plain, you may wear yours gilt.

42. When Rabelais, the great jester of France, lay on his death-bed, and they gave him the extreme unction, a familiar friend of his came afterwards, and asked him how he did? Rabelais answered, even going my journey, they have greased my boots already.

43. Mr. Bromley solicitor, giving in evidence for a deed, which was impeached to be fraudulent, was urged by the counsellor on the other side with this presumption, that in two former suits when title was made, that deed was passed over in silence, and some other conveyance stood upon: Mr. Justice Catiline taking in with that side, asked the solicitor, I pray thee, Mr. solicitor, let me ask you a familiar question; I have two geldings in my stable; I have divers times business of importance, and still I fend forth one of my geldings, and not the other; would you not think I set him aside for a jade? No, my lord, said Bromley, I would think you spared him for your own saddle.

44. Thales, as he looked upon the stars, fell into the water; whereupon
it was after said, that if he had looked into the water he might have seen
the stars, but looking up to the stars he could not see the water.

45. A man and his wife in bed together, the towards the morning pretended
her fell to be ill at ease, desiring to lie on her husband's side, so the good
man to please her came over her, making some short stay in his passage o-
ver, where she had not long lain, but desired to lie in her old place again;
quoth he, how can i: be effected? she answered, come over me again. i had
rather, said he, go a mile and a half about.

46. A thief being arraigned at the bar for stealing a mare, in his plead-
ing urged many things in his own behalf, and at last nothing availing, he
told the bench, the mare rather stole him, than he the mare; which in
brief he thus related; that palling over several grounds about his lawful
occasions, he was pursued close by a fierce mastiff dog, and so was forced
to save himself by leaping over a hedge, which being of an agile body he
affected; and in leaping, a mare standing on the other side of the hedge,
leaped upon her back, who running furiously away with him, he could not
by any means stop her, until he came to the next town, in which town
the owner of the mare lived, and there was he taken, and here ar-
raigned.

47. Master Mason of Trinity college, sent his pupil to another of the
fellows, to borrow a book of him, who told him, I am loth to lend
my books out of my chamber, but if it please thy tutor to come and read
upon it in my chamber, he shall as long as he will. It was winter, and
some days after the same fellow sent to Mr. Mason to borrow
his bellows; but Mr. Mason said to his pupil, I am loth to lend my bellows out of my
chamber, but if thy tutor would come and blow the fire in my
chamber, he shall as long as he will.

48. A notorious rogue being brought to the bar, and knowing his case
to be desperate, instead of pleading, he took to himself the lib-
ty of jetting, and thus said, I charge you in the king's name, to seize and take away
that man (meaning the judge) in the red gown, for I go in danger of my life
because of him.

49. In Flanders, by accident, a Flemijh tiler fell from the top of a house
upon a Spaniard, and killed him, though he escaped himself: the next of the
blood prosecuted his death with great violence, and when he was offered
pecuniary recompence, nothing would serve him but lex talionis; where-
upon the judge said to him, that if he did urge that sentence, it must be,
that he should go up to the top of the house, and then fall down upon
the tiler.

50. A rough-hewn seaman, being brought before a wife juf-t-as for some
misdemeanour, was by him sent away to prifon, and being somewhat
refractory after he heard his doom, insomuch as he would not stir a foot
from the place where he stood, saying, it was better to stand where he was,
than go to a worse place: The justice thereupon to shew the strength of
his learning, took him by the shoulder, and said, thou shalt go nugas nugas,
instead of nolens volens.

51. Francis the first of France, used for his pleasure sometimes to go
disguised: so walking one day in the company of the cardinal of Bourbon
near Paris, he met with a peafant with a new pair of shoes upon his arm:
so he called unto him, and said; by our lady, thefe be good shoes, what
did they cost thee? The peafant said, guess; the king said, I think some five
sols. Saith the peafant, you have lyed, but a carbus. What, villain, said the
APOPHTHEGMS.

cardinal of Bourbon, thou art dead, it is the king. The peasant replied; the devil take him of you and me, that knew so much.

52. There was a young man in Rome, that was very like Augustus Caesar; Augustus took knowledge of him, and sent for the man, and asked him, was your mother never at Rome? He answered; no, sir, but my father was.

53. A physician advised his patient that had sore eyes, that he should abstain from wine; but the patient said, I think rather, sir, from wine and water; for I have often marked it in blue eyes, and I have seen water come forth, but never wine.

54. A debauch'd seaman being brought before a justice upon the account of swearing, was by the justice commanded to depose his fine in that behalf provided, which was two shillings; he thereupon plucking out of his pocket a half crown, asked the justice what was the rate he was to pay for cursing; the justice told him, six-pence: quoth he then, a pox take you all for a company of knaves and fools, and there's half a crown for you, I will never stand changing of money.

55. Augustus Caesar was invited to supper by one of his old friends, that had conversed with him in his less fortunes, and had but ordinary entertainment; whereupon at his going away, he said, I did not know that you and I were so familiar.

56. Agathocles, after he had taken Syracuse, the men whereof, during the siege, had in a bravery spoken of him all the villainy that might be, sold the Syracusians for Davids, and said; now if you use such words of me, I will tell your masters of you.

57. Dionysius the elder, when he saw his son in many things very inordinate, said to him, did you ever know me do such things? His son answered, no, but you had not a tyrant to your father; the father replied, no, nor you, if you take these courses, will have a tyrant to your son.

58. Callisthenes the philosopher, that followed Alexander's court, and hated the king, being asked by one, how one should become the famous man in the world, answered, by taking away him that is.

59. Agesilaus, when one told him there was one did excellently counterfeit a nightingale, and would have had him heard him, said; why, I have heard the nightingale herself.

60. A great nobleman, upon the complaint of a servant of his, laid a citizen by the heels, thinking to bend him to his servant's desire; but the fellow being stubborn, the servant came to his lord, and told him, your lordship I know hath gone as far as you may, but it works not; for yonder fellow is more perverse than before. Said my lord, let's forget him a while, and then he will remember himself.

61. One came to a cardinal in Rome, and told him, that he had brought his lordship a dainty white palfry, but he fell lame by the way. Saith the cardinal to him, I'll tell thee what thou shalt do; go to such a cardinal, and such a cardinal, naming him half a dozen cardinals, and tell them as much; and so whereas by thy horse, if he had been found, thou couldst have pleased but one, with thy lame horse thou mayest please half a dozen.

62. A witty rogue coming into a lace-shop, said, he had occasion for some lace; choice whereof being chewed him, he at last pitch'd upon one pattern, and asked them, how much they would have for so much as would reach from ear to ear, for so much he had occasion for. They told him for so much: so some few words passing between them, he at last agreed, and told down his money.
money for it, and began to measure on his own head, thus saying; one ear is here, and the other is nailed to the pillory in Bristol, and I fear you have not so much of this lace by you at present as will perfect my bargain: therefore this piece of lace shall suffice at present in part of payment, and provide the rest with all expedition.

63. IPHICRATES the Athenian, in a treaty that he had with the Lacedaemonians for peace, in which question was about security for observing the same, said; the Athenians would not accept of any security, except the Lacedaemonians did yield up unto them those things, whereby it might be manifest, that they could not hurt them if they would.

64. EURIPIDES would say of persons that were beautiful, and yet in some years, in fairest bodies not only the spring is pleasant, but also the autumn.

65. THERE was a captain sent to an exploit by his general with forces that were not likely to achieve the enterprise; the captain said to him, sir, appoint but half so many; why, faith the general? The captain answered; because it is better fewer die than more.

66. THERE was a harbinger who had lodged a gentleman in a very ill room, who expostulated with him somewhat rudely; but the harbinger carelessly said; you will take pleasure in it when you are out of it.

67. THERE is a Spanife adage, love without end hath no end; meaning, that if it were begun not upon particular ends it would last.

68. A woman being suspected by her husband for dishonesty, and being by him at last press'd very hard about it, made him quick answer, with many protestations, that she knew no more of what he said, than the man in the moon. Now the captain of the ship called the moon, was the very man she so much loved.

69. DEMOSTHENES when he fled from the battle, and that it was reproached to him, said, that he that flies might fight again.

70. GONSAI'VO would say, the honour of a soldier ought to be of a strong web; meaning, that it should not be so fine and curious, that every little disgrace should catch and stick in it.

71. An apprentice of London being brought before the chamberlain by his master for the sin of incontinency, even with his own mistress, the chamberlain thereupon gave him many Christian exhortations; and at last he mentioned and press'd the chastity of Joseph, when his mistress tempted him with the like crime of incontinency. Ay, sir, said the apprentice; but if Joseph's mistress had been as handsome as mine is, he could not have forborne.

72. BIAS gave in precept, love as if you should hereafter hate; and hate as if you should hereafter love.

73. CINEAS was an excellent orator and statesman, and principal friend and counsellor to Pyrrhus; and falling in inward talk with him, and discerning the king's endless ambition; Pyrrhus opened himself unto him, that he intended first a war upon Italy, and hoped to achieve it: Cineas asked him, sir, what will you do then? Then, faith he, we will attempt Sicily. Cineas said, well, sir, what then? Said Pyrrhus, if the gods favour us, we may conquer Africa and Carthage. What then, sir, faith Cineas? Nay then, faith Pyrrhus, we may take our rest, and sacrifice and feast every day, and make merry with our friends. Alas, sir, said Cineas, may we not do so now without all this ado?
74. **Lamia** the courtezan had all power with **Demetrius** king of **Macedon**, and by her instigations he did many unjust and cruel acts; whereupon **Ly-**

**Ph-setin**us said, that it was the first time that ever he knew a whore play in a tragedy.

75. **One** of the **Romans** said to his friend, what think you of one who was taken in the act and manner of adultery? The other answered, marry, I think he was snow at dispatch.

76. **Epaminondas**, when his great friend and colleague in war was suitor to him to pardon an offender, denied him; afterwards, when a concubine of his made the same suit, he granted it to her: when **Pelopidas** seemed to take unkindly, he said; such suits are to be granted to whores, but not to personages of worth.

77. **Thales** being asked when a man should marry, said; young men not yet, old men not at all.

78. A company of scholars going together to catch conies, carried one scholar with them, which had not much more wit than he was born with; and to him they gave in charge, that if he saw any, he should be silent, for fear of fearing of them. But he no sooner espied a company of rabbits before the rest, but he cried aloud, **ecce multi cuniculi**, which in **English** signifies, behold many conies; which he had no sooner said, but the conies ran to their burrows: and he being checked by them for it, answered, who the devil would have thought that the rabbits understood **Latin**?

79. A Welshman being at a fections-house, and seeing the prisoners hold up hands at the bar, related to some of his acquaintance there, that the judges were good fortune-tellers; for if they did but look upon their hands, they could certainly tell whether they should live or die.

80. **Solon** compared the people unto the sea, and orators and counsellors to the winds; for that the sea would be calm and quiet, if the winds did not.

81. **Socrates** was pronounced by the oracle of **Delphos**, to be the wisest man of **Greece**, which he would put from himself ironically, saying, there would be nothing in him to verify the oracle except this, that he was not wise and knew it; and others were not wise, and knew it not.

82. **Socrates**, when there was shewed him the book of **Heraclitus** the obscure, and was asked his opinion of it, answered; those things which I understand were excellent, I imagine so were those I understood not; but they require a diver of **Delos**.

83. **Bion** asked an envious man that was very sad, what harm had befallen unto him, or what good had befallen unto another man.

84. **Stilpo** the philosopher, when the people flocked about him, and that one said to him, the people come wondering about you, as if it were to see some strange beast: no, faith he, it is to see a man which **Diogenes** sought with his lanthorn at noon-day.

85. A man being very jealous of his wife, insomuch that which way soever she went, he would be prying at her heels; and the being so grieved thereat, in plain terms told him, that if he did not for the future leave off his proceedings in that nature, she would graft such a pair of horns upon his head, that should hinder him from coming out of any door in the house.

86. A citizen of **London** passing the streets very hastily, came at last where some stop was made by carts: and some gentlemen talking together, who knew him, where being in some passion that he could not suddenly pass; one

APOPHTHEGMS.
A P O P H T H E G M S.

one of them in this wife spoke unto him; that others had passed by, and there was room enough, only they could not tell whether their horns were so wide as his.

87. A tinker passing Cheapside with his usual tone, have you any work for a tinker? An apprentice standing at a door opposite to a pillory there set up, called the tinker, with an intent to put a jest upon him, and told him, that he should do very well if he would stop those two holes in the pillory; to which the tinker answered, that if he would but put in his head and ears a while in that pillory, he would bestow both brass and nails upon him to hold him in, and give him his labour into the bargain.

88. A young maid having married an old man, was observed on the day of marriage to be somewhat moody, as if she had eaten a dish of chums, which one of her bridesmen observing, bid her be cheary; and told her moreover, that an old horse would hold out as long, and as well as a young one, in travel. To which she answered, stroking down her belly with her hand; but not in this road, sir.

89. There was in Oxford a cowardly fellow that was a very good archer; he was abused grodly by another, and moaned himself to sir Walter Rawleigh, then a scholar, and ask'd his advice, what he should do to repair the wrong that had been offered him; Rawleigh answered, why challenge him at a match of shooting.

90. Whitehead, a grave divine, was much esteemed by queen Elizabeth, but not preferred, because he was against the government of bishops, he was of a blunt sfoical nature; he came one day to the queen, and the queen happened to say to him, I like thee the better, Whitehead, because thou livest unmarried. He answered, in troth, madam, I like you the worse for the same cause.

91. Doctor Laud laid, that some hypocrites, and seeming mortified men, that held down their heads like bulrushes, were like the little images that they place in the very bowing of the vaults of churches, that look as if they held up the church, but are but puppets.

92. A nobleman of this nation, famoously known for his mad tricks, on a time having taken physic, which he perceiving that it began well to work, called up his man to go for a chirurgeon presently, and to bring his instruments with him. The chirurgeon comes in all speed; to whom my lord related, that he found himself much addicted to women, and therefore it was his will, that the cause of it might be taken away, and therefore commanded him forthwith to prepare his instruments ready for to geld him: so the chirurgeon forthwith prepares accordingly, and my lord told him that he would not see it done, and therefore that he should do his work the back way: so both parties being contented, my lord makes ready, and holds up his a—; and when he perceives the chirurgeon very near him, he lets fly full in his face; which made the chirurgeon step back, but coming presently on again; hold, hold, faith my lord, I will better consider of it, for I see the retentive faculty is very weak at the approach of such keen instruments.

93. There was a curst page that his master whipt naked, and when he had been whipt, would not put on his cloaths; and when his master bad him, take them you, for they are the hangman's fees.

94. There was a lady of the weft countrey, that gave great entertainment at her house to most of the gallant gentlemen thereabouts, and amongt others, sir Walter Rawleigh was one. This lady, though otherwise a flately dame, was a notable good housewife; and in the morning be-
times, she called to one of her maids that look’d to the swine, and asked, are the pigs served? Sir Walter Rawleigh’s chamber was full by the lady’s, so as he heard her; a little before dinner, the lady came down in great state into the great chamber, which was full of gentlemen; and as soon as Sir Walter Rawleigh set eye upon her; Madam, faith he, are the pigs served? The lady answered; You know best whether you have had your breakfast.

95. There were fishermen drawing the river at Chelfey: Mr. Bacon came thither by chance in the afternoon, and offered to buy their draught; they were willing. He asked them what they would take? They asked, thirty shillings. Mr. Bacon offered them ten. They refused it. Why then, faith Mr. Bacon, I will be only a looker on. They drew and caught nothing. Saith Mr. Bacon, Are not you mad fellows now, that might have had an angel in your purse, to have made merry withal, and to have warmed you throughly, and now you must go home with nothing. Ay but, faith the fishermen, we had hope then to make a better gain of it. Saith Mr. Bacon, well my master, then I’ll tell you, hope is a good breakfast, but it is a bad supper.

96. A lady walking with Mr. Bacon in Gray’s-Inn walks, asked him, whose that piece of ground lying next under the walls was? He answered, theirs. Then she asked him, if those fields beyond the walks were theirs too? He answered, yes, madam, those are ours, as you are ours, to look on, and no more.

97. His lordship, when he was newly made lord keeper, was in Gray’s-Inn walks with sir Walter Rawleigh; one came and told him, that the earl of Exeter was above. He continued upon occasion still walking a good while. At last when he came up, my lord of Exeter met him, and said; My lord, I have made a great venture, to come up so high stairs, being a gouty man. His lordship answered; Pardon me, my lord, I have made the greatest venture of all; for I have ventured upon your patience.

98. When sir Francis Bacon was made the king’s attorney, sir Edward Coke was put up from being lord chief justice of the common pleas, to be lord chief justice of the king’s bench; which is a place of greater honour, but of less profit; and withal was made privy councilor. After a few days, the lord Coke meeting with the king’s attorney, saith unto him; Mr. attorney, this is all your doing: It is you that have made this sir. Mr. attorney answered; Ah, my lord! your lordship all this while hath grown in breadth; you must needs now grow in height, or else you would be a monster.

99. One day queen Elizabeth told Mr. Bacon, that my lord of Essex, after great protestation of penitence and affection, fell in the end, but upon the suit of renewing his farm of sweet wines. He answered; I read that in nature, there be two kinds of motions or appetites in sympathy; the one as of iron, to the adamant for perfection; the other as of the vine, to the stake for sustentation; that her majesty was the one, and his suit the other.

100. Mr. Bacon, after he had been vehement in parliament against depopulation and inclosures; and that soon after the queen told him, that she had referred the hearing of Mr. Mills’s cause, to certain counsellors and judges; and asked him how he liked of it? Answered; Oh madam! my mind is known; I am against all inclosures, and especially against inclosed justice.
A P O P H T H E G M S.

101. When Sir Nicolas Bacon the lord keeper lived, every room in Gorhambury was served with a pipe of water from the ponds, distant about a mile off. In the life-time of Mr. Antony Bacon, the water ceased. After whose death, his lordship coming to the inheritance, could not recover the water without infinite charge: when he was lord chancellor, he built Verulam house, close by the pond-yard, for a place of privacy, when he was called upon, to dispatch any urgent business. And being asked, why he built that house there; his lordship answered, that since he could not carry the water to his house, he would carry his house to the water.

102. When my lord president of the council came first to be lord treasurer, he complained to my lord chancellor of the troublesome place, for that the exchequer was so empty. The lord chancellor answered; my lord, be of good cheer, for now you shall see the bottom of your business at the first.

103. When his lordship was newly advanced to the great seal, Gondomar came to visit him. My lord said; that he was to thank God and the king for that honour; but yet, so he might be rid of the burden, he could very willingly forbear the honour: and that he formerly had a desire, and the same continued with him still, to lead a private life. Gondomar answered; that he would tell him a tale, of an old rat that would needs leave the world: and acquainted the young rats, that he would retire into his hole; and spend his days solitarily; and would enjoy no more comfort; and commanded them upon his high displeasure, not to offer to come in unto him. They forbore two or three days; at last, one that was more hardy than the rest, incited some of his fellows to go in with him, and he would venture to see how his father did: for he might be dead. They went in, and found the old rat sitting in the midst of a rich Parmesan cheese. So he applied the fable after his witty manner.

104. Rabelais tells a tale of one that was very fortunate in compounding differences. His son undertook the said course, but could never compound any. Whereupon he came to his father, and asked him; what art he had to reconcile differences? He answered; he had no other but this; to watch when the two parties were much wearied, and their hearts were too great to seek reconcilement at one another's hands; then to be a means between them, and upon no other terms. After which the son went home; and prospered in the same undertakings.

105. Alonso Cartilio was informed by his steward of the greatness of his expense, being such as he could not hold out therewith. The bishop asked him, wherein it chiefly arose? His steward told him, in the multitude of his servants. The bishop bad him to make him a note of those that were necessary, and those that might be spared. Which he did. And the bishop taking occasion to read it before most of his servants, said to his steward; well, let these remain, because I have need of them; and these other also because they have need of me.

106. Mr. Marbury the preacher would say, that God was fain to do with wicked men, as men do with striking jades in a pasture, that cannot take them up, till they get them at a gate. So wicked men will not be taken up till the hour of death.

107. Pope Sixtus the fifth, who was a very poor man's son, and his father's house ill thatched, so that the sun came in, in many places, would sport with his ignobility, and say; that he was, nato di casa illustre, son of an illustrious house.
When the king of Spain conquered Portugal, he gave special charge to his lieutenant, that the soldiers should not spoil, lest he should alienate the hearts of the people: the army also suffered much scarcity of victual. Whereupon the Spanish soldiers would afterwards say; that they had won the king and kingdom on earth, as the kingdom of heaven used to be won; by fasting and abstaining from that which is another man's.

They feigned a tale of Sixtus quintus, whom they called size ace; that after his death he went to hell, and the porter of hell said to him; you have some reason to offer your self to this place, because you were a wicked man; but yet, because you were a pope, I have order not to receive you: you have a place of your own, purgatory, you may go thither. So he went away, and fought about a great while for purgatory, and could find no such place. Upon that he took heart, and went to heaven and knocked; and St. Peter asked, who was there? He said, Sixtus pope. Whereunto St. Peter said, why do you knock? you have the keys. Sixtus answered, it is true, but it is so long since they were given, as I doubt the wards of the lock be altered.

Charles king of Sweden, a great enemy of the Jesuits, when he took any of their colleges, he would hang the old Jesuits, and put the young to his mines, saying; that since they wrought so hard above ground, he would try how they could work under ground.

In chancery, at one time when the counsel of the parties set forth the boundaries of the land in question, by the plot; and the counsel of one part said, we lie on this side, my lord; and the counsel of the other part said, and we lie on this side: the lord chancellor Hatton stood up and said; if you lye on both sides, whom will you have me to believe?

Sir Edward Coke was wont to say, when a great man came to dinner to him, and gave him no knowledge of his coming; sir, since you rent me no word of your coming, you must dine with me; but if I had known of it in due time, I would have dined with you.

Pope Julius the third, when he was made pope, gave his hat unto a youth, a favourite of his, with great scandal. Whereupon at one time a cardinal that might be free with him, said modestly to him; what did your holiness see in that young man, to make him cardinal? Julius answered, what did you see in me to make me pope?

The same Julius, upon like occasion of speech, why he should bear so great affection to the same young man, would say; that he found by astrology, that it was the youth's destiny to be a great prelate; which was impossible except himself were pope. And therefore that he did raise him, as the driver on of his own fortune.

Sir Thomas More had only daughters at the first, and his wife did ever pray for a boy. At last she had a boy, which being come to man's estate, proved but simple. Sir Thomas said to his wife, thou prayedst so long for a boy, that he will be a boy as long as he lives.

Sir Fulk Grevil, afterwards lord Brooke, in parliament, when the house of commons in a great business, stood much upon precedents, said unto them; why do you stand so much upon precedents? The times hereafter will be good or bad. If good, precedents will do no harm; if bad, power will make a way where it finds none.

Sir Thomas More, on the day that he was beheaded, had a barber sent to him, because his hair was long; which was thought, would make him more
more communicated with the people. The barber came to him, and asked him, whether he would be pleased to be trim'd? In good faith, honest fellow, (faith fir Thomas) the king and I have a suit for my head; and till the title be cleared, I will do no cost upon it.

118. Stephen Gardiner bishop of Winchipfer, a great champion of the popifh religion, was wont to fay of the protestants who ground upon the scripture; that they were like pofts, that bring truth in their letters, and lyes in their mouths.

119. The former Sir Thomas More had sent him by a fuior in chancery, two filver flagons. When they were prefented by the gentleman's fervant, he faid to one of his men, have him to the cellar, and let him have of my beft wine: and turning to the fervant, faid; tell thy mafter, if he like it, let him not fpare it.

120. Michael Angelo the famous painter, painting in the pope's chapel the portraiture of hell and damned fouls, made one of the damned fouls fo like a cardinal that was his enemy, as every body at firft fight knew it. Whereupon the cardinal complained to pope Clement, humbly praying it might be defaced. The pope faid to him; why, you know very well, I have power to deliver a foul out of purgatory, but not out of hell.

121. There was an agent here for the Dutch, called Carroon; and when he ufed to move the queen for farther succours, and more men, my lord Henry Howard would fay; that he agreed well with the name of Charon, ferryman of hell; for he came full for more men, to increafe regnum umbrae.

122. They were wont to call referring to the matter in chancery, committing. My lord keeper Egerton, when he was mafter of the rolls, was wont to fay they黑白 had done that it should be committed.

123. They feigned a tale, principally againft doctors reports in the chancery; that fir Nicolas Bacon, when he came to heaven gate, was oppofed, touching an unjuft decree which had been made in the chancery. Sir Nicolas defired to fee the order, whereupon the decree was drawn up; and finding it to begin veneris, &c. why (faith he) I was then fitting in the starchamber; this concerns the mafter of the rolls, let him anfwer it. Soon after came the mafter of the rolls, Cordal; who died indeed a small time after fir Nicolas Bacon; and he was likewife stayed upon it: and looking into the order, he found, that upon the reading of a certificate of Dr. Gibfon, it was ordered, that his report should be decreed. And fo he put it upon Dr. Gibfon, and there it fluck.

124. Sir Nicolas Bacon, when a certain nimble-witted counfellor at the bar, who was forward to speake, did interrupt him often, faid unto him; there's a great difference betwixt you and me: a pain to me to speake, and a pain to you to hold your peace.

125. The fame fir Nicolas Bacon, upon bills exhibited to difcover where lands lay, upon proof, that they had a certain quantity of land, but could not fet it forth, was wont to fay; and if you cannot find your land in the contry, how will you have me find it in the chancery?

126. Mr. Howland, in conference with a young student, arguing a cafe, happened to fay, I would fay you but this quefion. The student prefently interrupted him, to give him an anfwer. Whereunto Mr. Howland gravely faid; nay, though I fay you a quefion, yet I did not mean you should anfwer me, I mean to anfwer my felf.
127. Pope Adrian the sixth was talking with the duke of Sefo, that Pasquil gave great scandal, and that he would have him thrown into the river; but Sefo answered; do it not, holy father, for then he will turn frog; and whereas now he chants but by day, he will then chant both by day and by night.

128. There was a gentleman in Italy that wrote to a great friend of his, whom the pope had newly advanced to be cardinal; that he was very glad of his advancement, for the cardinal's sake; but he was sorry that himself had lost a good friend.

129. There was a king of Hungary took a bishop in battle, and kept him prisoner: whereupon the Pope writ a monitory to him, for that he had broken the privilege of holy church, and taken his son. The king sent an embassage to him, and sent withal the armour wherein the bishop was taken, and this only in writing; Vide num haec juit velitis filii tui: Know now whether this be thy son's coat.

130. Sir Amyas Paulet, when he saw too much haste made in any matter, was wont to say; stay a while, that we may make an end the sooner.

131. A matter of the requests to queen Elizabeth had divers times moved for audience, and been put off. At last he came to the queen in a progress, and had on a new pair of boots. The queen, who loved not the smell of new leather, said to him; sly sloven, thy new boots stink. Madam, said he, it is not my new boots that stink; but it is the stale bills that I have kept so long.

132. At an act of the commencement, the answerer gave for his question, that an aristocracy was better than a monarchy. The replier, who was a dissolute man, did tax him that being a private bred man, he would give a question of state. The answerer said, that the replier did much wrong the privilege of scholars, who would be much straitened if they should give questions of nothing, but such things wherein they are practised: and added, we have heard your self dispute of virtue, which no man will say you put much in practice.

133. Queen Isabella of Spain used to say, whosoever hath a good preference, and a good fashion, carries continual letters of recommendation.

134. Alonso of Aragon was wont to say in commendation of age, that age appeared to be best in four things: old wood best to burn; old wine to drink; old friends to trust; and old authors to read.

135. It was said of Augustus, and afterward the like was said of Septimus Severus: both which did infinite mischief in their beginnings, and infinite good toward their ends; that they should either have never been born or never died.

136. Constantine the Great, in a kind of envy, himself being a great builder, as Trajan likewise was, would call Trajan parietaria, wall-flower, because his name was upon so many walls.

137. Alonso of Aragon was wont to say of himself, that he was a great necromancer, for that he used to ask counsel of the dead; meaning of books.

138. Ethelwold, bishop of Wincheseter, in a famine, sold all the rich vessels and ornaments of the church, to relieve the poor with bread; and said, there was no reason that the dead temples of God should be sumptuously furnished, and the living temples suffer penury.

139. Many men, especially such as affect gravity, have a manner after other men's speech to shake their heads. A great officer of this land would say
A P O P H T H E G M S.

140. After a great fight, there came to the camp of Conafaro the great captain, a gentleman, proudly horfed and armed: Diego de Mendoza, asked the great captain, who's this? Who answered; it is saint Ermin, who never appears but after the storm.

141. There was one that died greatly in debt; when it was reported in some company, where divers of his creditors casually were, that he was dead: one began to say; well, if he be gone, then he hath carried five hundred ducates of mine into the other world: and another said, and two hundred of mine: and a third spake of great sums of his. Whereupon one that was amongst them said; I perceive now, that though a man cannot carry any of his own with him into the next world, yet he may carry away that which is another man's.

142. Francis Carvajal, that was the great captain of the rebels of Peru, had often given the chase to Diego Centeno, a principal commander of the emperor's party: he was afterwards taken by the emperor's lieutenant Gafca, and committed to the custody of Diego Centeno, who used him with all possible courtesy; infomuch as Carvajal asked him; I pray, sir, who are you that use me with this courtesy? Centeno said; do not you know Diego Centeno? Carvajal answered; truly; sir, I have been so used to see your back, as I knew not your face.

143. There was a merchant died that was very far in debt, his goods and household-stuff were set forth to sale. A stranger would needs buy a pillow there, saying; this pillow sure is good to sleep upon, since he could sleep that owed so many debts.

144. A lover met his lady in a close chair, the thinking to have gone unknown, he came and spake to her: she asked him, how did you know me? He said, because my wounds bleed arise; alluding to the common tradition, that the wounds of a body slain, will bleed arise upon the approach of the murtherer.

145. A gentleman brought music to his lady's window. She hated him, and had warned him often away: and when he would not desist, she threw stones at him: whereupon a gentleman said unto him that was in his company; what greater honour can you have to your music, than that those come about you, as they did to Orpheus?

146. Coranus the Spaniard, at a table at dinner, fell into an extolling his own father, saying; if he could have wish'd of God, he could not have chosen amongst men a better father. Sir Henry Savil said, what, not Abraham? Now Coranus was doubted to descend of a race of Jews.

147. Bresquet, jefer to Francis the first of France, did keep a calendar of fools, wherewith he did use to make the king sport; telling him ever the reason, why he put any one into his calendar. When Charles the fifth emperor, upon confidence of the noble nature of Francis passed through France, for the appeasing of the rebellion of Gaunt, Bresquet put him into his calendar. The king asked him the cause. He answered; because you having suffered at the hands of Charles the greatest bitterness that ever prince did from another, nevertheless he would trust his person into your hands. Why, Bresquet, said the king, what wilt thou say, if thou seest him pass back in as great safety, as if he marched through the midst of Spain? faith Bresquet; why then I will put him out, and put in you.
148. ARCHBISHOP Grindall was wont to say; that the physicians here in England were not good at the cure of particular diseases; but had only the power of the church to bind and loose.

149. COSMUS duke of Florence was wont to say of perfidious friends, that we read, that we ought to forgive our enemies; but we do not read that we ought our friends.

150. A papist being opposed by a protestant, that they had no scripture for images, answered, yes; for you read, that the people laid their flock in the streets, that the shadow of saint Peter might come upon them; and that a shadow was an image, and the obscurest of all images.

151. SIR Edward Dyer, a grave and wise gentleman, did much believe in Kelley the alchymist; that he did indeed the work, and did make gold, in form that he went into Germany, where Kelley then was, to inform himself fully thereof. After his return, he dined with my lord of Canterbury; where, at that time, was at the table Dr. Brown the physician. They fell in talk of Kelley. Sir Edward Dyer turning to the archbishop, said; I do assure your grace, that that I shall tell you is truth; I am an eye-witness thereof; and if I had not seen it, I should not have believed it. I saw Mr. Kelley, put of the base metal into the crucible; and after it was set a little upon the fire, and a very small quantity of the medicine put in, and stirred with a stick of wood, it came forth in great proportion, perfect gold; to the touch, to the hammer, and to the test. My lord archbishop said; you had need take heed what you say, Sir Edward Dyer, for here is an infidel at the board. Sir Edward Dyer said again pleasantly; I should have looked sooner in any place than at your grace's table. What say you Dr. Brown, said the archbishop? Dr. Brown answered, after his blunt and huddling manner; the gentleman hath spoken enough for me. Why, faith the archbishop, what hath he said? Marry, faith Dr. Brown, he said, he would not have believed it, except he had seen it; and no more will I.

152. DOCTOR John said, that in sickness there were three things that were material; the physician, the disease, and the patient: and if any two of these joined, then they get the victory; for, Ne Hercules quidem contra duos. If the physician and the patient join, then down goes the disease; for then the patient recovers; if the physician and the disease join; that is a strong disease; and the physician mistaking the cure, then down goes the patient; if the patient and the disease join, then down goes the physician, for he is discredited.

153. MR. Bettenham said; that virtuous men were like some herbs, and spices that give not out their sweet smell, till they be broken or crushed.

154. THERE was a painter became a physician; whereupon one said to him; you have done well; for before the faults of your work were seen, but now they are unseen.

155. THERE was a gentleman that came to the tilt all in orange-tawny, and ran very ill. The next day he came again all in green, and ran worse. There was one of the lookers on asked another; what is the reason that this gentleman changeth his colours? The other answered, sure, because it may be reported, that the gentleman in the green ran worse than the gentleman in the orange-tawny.

156. ZEILIM was the first of the Ottomans that did shave his beard, whereas his predecessors wore it long. One of his bashaws asked him, why he altered the custom of his predecessors? He answered, because you bashaws may not lead me by the beard, as you did them.

157. AENEAS
157. AENEAS Sylvius, that was pope Pius secundus, was wont to say; that the former popes did wisely to set the lawyers a work to debate, whether the donation of Constantine the Great to Sylvester, of St. Peter's patrimony, were good or valid in law or no? the better to slip over the matter in fact, whether there was ever any such thing at all or no.

158. The lord bishop Andrews, was asked at the first coming over of the archbishop of Spalato, whether he were a protestant or no? He answered, truly I know not; but I think he is a detestant; that was, of molition of Rome.

159. It was said amongst some of the grave prelates of the council of Trent, in which the school divines bare the sway; that the school-men were like the astronomers, who to save the phaenomena, framed to their conceit eccentrics, and epicycles, and a wonderful engine of orbs; though no such things were: so they to save the practice of the church, had devised a great number of strange positions.

160. AENEAS Sylvius would say; that the Christian faith and law, though it had not been confirmed by miracles, yet was worthy to be received for the honesty thereof.

161. Mr. Bacon would say, that it was in his business, as it is frequently in the ways: that the next way is commonly the foulest; and that if a man will go the fairest way, he must go somewhat about.

162. Mr. Bettenham, reader of Grays-Inn, used to say, that riches were like muck; when it lay upon a heap, it gave but a stench and ill odour; but when it was spread upon the ground, then it was cause of much fruit.

163. Cicero married his daughter to Dolabella; that held Caesar's party: Pompey had married Julia, that was Caesar's daughter. After, when Caesar and Pompey took arms one against the other; and Pompey had passed the seas, and Caesar poissest Italy; Cicero stayed somewhat long in Italy; but at last failed over to join with Pompey: who when he came to him, Pompey said, you are welcome, but where left you your son-in-law? Cicero answered, with your father-in-law.

164. Vespasian, and Titus his eldest son, were both absent from Rome, when the empire was cast upon Vespasian; Domitian his younger son was at Rome, who took upon him the affairs; and being of a turbulent spirit, made many changes; and displaced divers officers and governors of provinces, sending them successors. So when Vespasian returned to Rome, and Domitian came into his presence, Vespasian said to him; son, I looked when you would have sent me a successor.

165. Nero loved a beautiful youth, whom he used viciously, and called him wife: There was a senator at Rome that said secretly to his friend, it was pity Nero's father had not such a wife.

166. Galba succeeded Nero, and his age being despised; there was much licence and confusion in Rome during his empire; whereupon a senator said in full senate; it were better to live where nothing is lawful, than where all things are lawful.

167. Augustus Caesar did write to Livia, who was over- senisible of some ill words that had been spoken of them both; let it not trouble thee, my Livia, if any man speak ill of us; for we have enough that no man can do ill unto us.

168. Chilon said, that kings friends, and favourites, were like casting counters; that sometimes stood for one, sometimes for ten, sometimes for an hundred.
APOPHTHEGMS.

169. THEODOSIUS, when he was pressed by a suitor, and denied him; the suitor said, why, sir, you promised it. He answered; I said it, but I did not promise it, if it be unjust.

170. THE Romans, when they spoke to the people, were wont to style them ye Romans: when commanders in war spoke to their army, they styled them my soldiers. There was a mutiny in Caesar's army, and somewhat the soldiers would have had, yet they would not declare themselves in it, but only demanded a million or discharge; though with no intention it should be granted: but knowing, that Caesar had at that time great need of their service, thought by that means to wrench him to their other desires: whereupon with one cry they asked mission. Caesar after silence made; I for my part ye Romans; this title did actually speak them to be diminished: which voice they had no sooner heard, but they mutinied again; and would not suffer him to go on with his speech, until he had called them by the name of his soldiers, and so with that one word he appeased the sedition.

171. CAESAR would say of Sylla, for that he did resign his dictatorship; Sylla was ignorant of letters, he could not dictate.

172. SENECA said of Caesar, that he did quickly shew the sword, but never leave it off.

173. Diogenes begging, as divers philosophers then used, did beg more of a prodigal man, than of the rest which were present. Whereupon one said to him; see your baseness, that when you find a liberal mind, you will take most of him. No, said Diogenes, but I mean to beg of the rest again.

174. THEMISTOCLES, when an embassador from a mean estate did speak great matters; said to him, friend, thy words would require a city.

175. THEY would say of the duke of Guise, Henry; that he was the greatest usurer in France, for that he had turned all his estate into obligations. Meaning, that he had sold and oppignerated all his patrimony, to give large donatives to other men.

176. CAESAR Borgia, after long division between him and the lords of Romagna, fell to accord with them. In this accord there was an article, that he should not call them at any time all together in person. The meaning was, that knowing his dangerous nature, if he meant them treason, he might have opportunity to oppress them all together at once. Nevertheless, he used such fine art, and fair carriage, that he won their confidence to meet all together in counsel at Cinigaglia; where he murdered them all. This act, when it was related unto pope Alexander, his father, as a thing happy, but very perfidious; the pope said, it was they that broke their covenant first, in coming all together.

177. TITUS Quinctius was in the counsel of the Achaians, what time they deliberated, whether in the war then to follow, between the Romans and King Antiochus, they should confederate themselves with the Romans, or with King Antiochus? In that counsel the AEtolians, who incited the Achaians against the Romans, to disable their forces, gave great words, as if the late victory the Romans had obtained against Philip king of Macedon, had been chiefly by the strength and forces of the AEtolians themselves: and on the other side the embassador of Antiochus did extol the forces of his master; founding what an innumerable company he brought in his army; and gave the nations strange names; as Elymaeans, Caducians, and others.
A P O P H T H E G M S.

others. After both their harangues, Titus Quinctius, when he rose up, said; it was an easy matter to perceive what it was that had joined Antiochus and the AEtolians together; that it appear'd to be by the reciprocal lying of each, touching the other forces.

178. Plato was amorous of a young gentleman, whose name was Stella, that studied astronomy; and went oft in the clear nights to look upon the stars. Whereupon Plato wished himself heaven, that he might look upon Stella with a thousand eyes.

179. The Lacedaemonians were besieged by the Athenians in the port of Pyle, which was won, and some slain, and some taken. There was one said to one of them that was taken, by way of scorn; were they not brave men that lost their lives at the port of Pyle? He answered; certainly a Persian arrow is much to be set by, if it can chuse out a brave man.

180. Clodius was acquitted by a corrupt jury, that had palpably taken shares of money, before they gave up their verdict; they prayed of the senate a guard, that they might do their consciences, for that Clodius was a very seditious young nobleman. Whereupon all the world gave him for condemned. But acquitted he was. Catulus, the next day, seeing some of them that had acquitted him together, said to them; what made you ask of us a guard? Were you afraid your money should have been taken from you?

181. At the same judgment, Cicero gave in evidence upon oath: and when the jury, which consisted of fifty seven, had passed against his evidence, one day in the senate Cicero and Clodius being in altercation, Clodius upbraided him, and said; the jury gave you no credit. Cicero answered, five and twenty gave me credit; but there were two and thirty that gave you no credit, for they had their money beforehand.

182. Sir Henry Savil was asked by my lord of Essex, his opinion touching poets? He answered my lord; that he thought them the best writers, next to them that writ prose.

183. Diogenes having seen that the kingdom of Macedon, which before was contemptible and low, began to come aloft when he died, was asked, how he would be buried? He answered; with my face downward ~ for within a while the world will be turned upside down, and then I shall lie right.

184. Cato the elder was wont to say; that the Romans were like sheep; a man were better to drive a flock of them, than one of them.

185. When Lycurgus was to reform and alter the state of Sparta; in consultation one advised, that it should be reduced to an absolute popular equality: but Lycurgus said to him; sir, begin it in your own house.

186. Bion, that was an atheift, was shew'd in a port city, in a temple of Neptune, many tables of pictures, of such as had in tempests made their vows to Neptune, and were saved from shipwreck: and was ask'd, how say you now? Do you not acknowledge the power of the Gods? But faith he; Ay, but where are they painted that have been drowned after their vows?

187. Cicero was at dinner, where there was an ancient lady that spake of her own years, and said; she was but forty years old. One that sat by Cicero, rounded him in the ear, and said; the talks of forty years old, but she is far more out of question. Cicero answered him again; I must believe her, for I have heard her say so any time these ten years.

188. There was a soldier that vaunted before Julius Cæsar, of the hurts he had received in his face. Julius Cæsar knowing him to be but

Vol. III.  

N n 2
a coward, told him; you were best take heed next time you run away, how you look back.

189. There was a suitor to Vespasian, who to lay his suit fairer, said it was for his brother; whereas indeed it was for a piece of money. Some about Vespasian told the emperor, to cross him; that the party his servant spoke for, was not his brother; but that he did it upon a bargain. Vespasian sent for the party interested, and asked him; whether his mean employed by him was his brother or no? He durst not tell untruth to the emperor, and confessed he was not his brother. Whereupon the emperor said, this do, fetch me the money, and you shall have your suit discounted. Which he did. The courtier which was the mean, solicited Vespasian after about his suit: why, (faith Vespasian) I gave it last day to a brother of mine.

190. Vespasian asked of Apollonius; what was the cause of Nero's ruin? Who answered, Nero could tune the harp well, but in government he did always wind up the things too high, or let them down too low.

191. Dionysius the tyrant, after he was deposed and brought to Corinth, kept a school. Many used to visit him; and amongst others, one when he came in, opened his mantle and shook his clothes; thinking to give Dionysius a gentle scorn; because it was the manner to do so for them that came in to see him while he was tyrant. But Dionysius said to him; I prithee do so, rather when thou goest out, that we may see thou stealest nothing away.

192. Diogenes, one terrible frosty morning, came into the market-place, and stood naked, shaking, to shew his tolerance. Many of the people came about him pitying him: Plato passing by, and knowing he did it to be seen; said to the people as he went by; if you pity him indeed, let him alone to himself.

193. Aristippus was earnest suitor to Dionysius for some grant, who would give no ear to his suit. Aristippus fell at his feet, and then Dionysius granted it. One that stood by said afterwards to Aristippus; you a philosopher, and be so base as to throw your self at the tyrant's feet to get a suit. Aristippus answered; the fault is not mine, but the fault is in Dionysius, that carries his ears in his feet.

194. Solon when he wept for his son's death, and one said to him, weeping will not help; answered, alas therefore I weep, because weeping will not help.

195. The same Solon being asked; whether he had given the Athenians the best laws? answered, the best of those that they would have received.

196. One said to Aristippus; 'tis a strange thing, why men should rather give to the poor, than to philosophers. He answered, because they think themselves may sooner come to be poor, than to be philosophers.

197. Trajan would say of the vain jealousy of princes, that seek to make away those that aspire to their succession; that there was never king that did put to death his successor.

198. When it was represented to Alexander, to the advantage of Antipater, who was a firm and imperious man; that he only of all his lieutenants wore no purple, but kept the Macedonian habit of black; Alexander said, yea, but Antipater is all purple within.

199. Alexander used to say of his two friends, Craterus and Hephaestion; that Hephaestion loved Alexander, and Craterus loved the king.

200. It
A POPHTHEGMS.

200. It fell out so, that as Livia went abroad in Rome, there met her naked young men that were sporting in the streets, which Augustus went about severely to punish in them: but Livia spake for them, and said; it was no more to chate women, than so many statues.

201. Philip of Macedon was wish’d to banish one for speaking ill of him. But Philip answered; better he speak where we are both known, than where we are both unknown.

202. Lucullus entertained Pompey in one of his magnificent houses: Pompey said, this is a marvellous fair and stately house for the summer; but methinks it should be very cold for winter. Lucullus answered; do you not think me as wise as divers fowls are, to change my habitation in the winter season.

203. Plato entertained some of his friends at a dinner, and had in the chamber a bed, or couch, neatly and costily furnish’d. Diogenes came in, and got up upon the bed, and trampled it, saying; I trample upon the pride of Plato. Plato mildly answered, but with greater pride, Diogenes.

204. Pompey being commissioneer for sending grain to Rome in time of dearth, when he came to the sea, found it very tempestuous and dangerous; insomuch as those about him advis’d him by no means to embark; but Pompey said, it is of necessity that I go, not that I live.

205. Demosthenes was upbraided by Alcbinus, that his speeches did smell of the lamp. But Demosthenes said; indeed there is a great deal of difference between that which you and I do by lamp-light.

206. Demades the orator, in his age was talkative, and would eat hard: Antipater would fay of him, that he was like a sacrifice, that nothing was left of it but the tongue and the paunch.

207. Themistocles after he was banish’d, and had wrought himself in to great favour afterwards, so that he was honour’d and sumptuously fay’d, seeing his present glory, fay’d unto one of his friends; if I had not been undone, I had been undone.

208. Philo Judaeus faith, that the fene is like the sun; so the sun seals up the globe of heaven, and opens the globe of earth: so the fene doth obscure heavenly things, and reveals earthly things.

209. Alexander, after the battle of Granicum, had very great offers made him by Darius; consulting with his captains concerning them, Parmenio fay’d; fure I would accept of these offers, if I were as Alexander. Alexander answered; so would I, if I were as Parmenio.

210. Alexander was wont to fay, he knew himself to be mortal, chiefly by two things; sleep, and luft.

211. Augustus Caesar would fay, that he wonder’d that Alexander feared he should want work, having no more worlds to conquer: as if it were not as hard a matter to keep as to conquer.

212. Antigonus, when it was told him that the enemy had such volleys of arrows that they did hide the sun, fay’d; that falls out well, for it is hot weather, and so we shall fight in the shade.

213. Cato the elder being aged, buried his wife, and married a young woman. His fon came to him, and fay’d; fir, what have I offended, that you have brought a step-mother into your house? The old man answer’d; nay, quite contrary, fon; thou pleafest me so well, as I would be glad to have more such.

214. Crassus the orator had a fish which the Romans called Martiana, that he made very tame and fond of him; the fish died, and Crassus wept for it.
A P O P H T H E G M S.

One day falling in contention with Domitius in the senate, Domitius said, foolish Cralbus, you wept for your Muraena. Cralbus replied, that's more than you did for both your wives.

215. PHILIP, Alexander's father, gave sentence against a prisoner what time he was drowsy, and seemed to give small attention. The prisoner after sentence was pronounced, said, I appeal. The king somewhat stirred, said; to whom do you appeal? The prisoner answered; from Philip when he gave no ear, to Philip when he shall give ear.

216. There was a philosopher that disputed with Adrian the emperor, and did it but weakly. One of his friends that stood by, afterwards said unto him; methinks you were not like yourself last day) in argument with the emperor; I could have answered better my self. Why, said the philosopher, would you have me contend with him that commands thirty legions.

217. When Alexander passed into Asia, he gave large donatives to his captains, and other principal men of virtue; insomuch as Parmmio asked him; sir, what do you keep for your self? He answered, hope.

218. VESPASIAN set a tribute upon urine, Titus his son emboldened himself to speak to his father of it: and reprehended it as a thing indignd and fordid. Vespasian said nothing for the time; but a while after, when it was forgotten, sent for a piece of silver out of the tribute-money; and called to his son, bidding him to smell to it; and asked him, whether he found any offence? Who said, no: why so, said Vespasian again; yet this comes out of urine.

219. Nerva the emperor succeeded Domitian, who had been tyrannical; and in his time many noble houses were overthrown by false accusations; the instruments whereof were chiefly, Marcellus and Regulus. The emperor Nerva one night supped privately with some six or seven; amongst whom there was one that was a dangerous man; and began to take the like courses as Marcellus and Regulus had done. The emperor fell into discourse of the injustice and tyranny of the former time; and by name, of the two accusers; and said, what should we do with them, if we had them now? One of them that was at supper, and was a free-spoken senator, said; marry, they should sup with us.

220. There was one that found a great mass of money digged under ground in his grandfather's house; and being somewhat doubtful of the case, signified it to the emperor, that he had found such treasure. The emperor made a rescript thus; use it. He wrote back again; that the sum was greater than his estate or condition could use. The emperor wrote a new rescript; thus; abuse it.

221. JULIUS Caeser, as he passed by, was by acclamation of some that stood in the way, termed king, to try how the people would take it. The people threwed great murmur and displeased at it. Caeser finding where the wind stood, sighted it, and said; I am not king, but Caesar; as if they had mistaken his name. For rex was a surname amongst the Romans, as king is with us.

222. When Croesus, for his glory, shewed Solon his great treasures of gold, Solon said to him; if another king come that hath better iron than you, he will be master of all this gold.

223. ARISTIPPUS being reprehended of luxury, by one that was not rich, for that he gave six crowns for a small fish, answered; why, what would you have given? The other said, some twelve pence. Aristippus said again; and six crowns is no more with me.

224. Plato
A P O P H T H E G M S.

224. PLATO reprehended severely a young man for entering into a dissolute house. The young man said to him: why do you reprehend so sharply for so small a matter? Plato replied, but custom is no small matter.

225. ARCHIDAMUS, king of Lacedaemon, having received from Philip king of Macedon (after Philip had won the victory of Chaeronea, upon the Athenians) proud letters, wrote back to him; that if he measured his own shadow, he would find it no longer than it was before his victory.

226. PYRRHUS, when his friends congratulated to him his victory over the Romans, under the conduct of Fabricius, but with great slaughter of his own side, said to them again; yes, but if we have such another victory, we are undone.

227. PLATO was wont to say of his master Socrates, that he was like the apothecaries gall-pots; that had on the out-sides apes, and owls, and tyrants; but within, precious drugs.

228. ALEXANDER sent to Phocion a great present of money. Phocion said to the messenger; why dost the king send to me, and to none else? The messenger answered; because he takes you to be the only good man in Athens. Phocion replied; if he think so, pray let him suffer me to be so still.

229. At a banquet, where those that were called the seven wise men of Greece, were invited by the embassador of a barbarous king; the embassador related, that there was a neighbour mightier than his master, pick'd quarrels with him, by making impossible demands; otherwise threatening war; and now at that present had demanded of him, to drink up the sea. Whereunto one of the wise men said, I would have him undertake it. Why, faith the embassador, how shall he come off? Thus, (faith the wise man,) let that king first stop the rivers which run into the sea, which are no part of the bargain, and then your master will perform it.

230. At the same banquet, the embassador desired the seven, and some other wise men that were at the banquet, to deliver everyone of them some sentence or parable, that he might report to his king the wisdom of Graecia; which they did; only one was silent. Which the embassador perceiving, said to him; sir, let it not displease you; why do you say somewhat, that I may report? He answered, report to your lord, that there are of the Graecians that can hold their peace.

231. The Lacedaemonians had in custom to speak very short, which being an empire, they might do at pleasure: but after their defeat at Leuctra, in an assembly of the Graecians, they made a long invective against Epaminondas; who stood up, and said no more than this; I am glad we have brought you to speak long.

232. FABIUS Maximus being resolved to draw the war in length, still waited upon Hannibal's progress to curb him; and for that purpose he encamped upon the high ground: but Terentius his colleague fought with Hannibal, and was in great peril of overthrow; but then Fabius came down from the high grounds, and got the day. Whereupon Hannibal said; that he did ever think that the same cloud that hanged upon the hills, would at one time or other give a tempest.

233. HANNO the Carthaginian was sent commissioner by the state, after the second Carthaginian war, to supplicate for peace, and in the end obtained it: yet one of the sharper senators said, you have often broken with us the peace, whereunto you have been sworn; I pray, by what god will you swear?
swear? Hanno answered; by the same gods that have punished the former perjury so severely.

234. Caesar, when he first poissessed Rome, Pompey being fled, offered to enter the sacred treasury to take the moneys that were there stored: and Metellus, tribune of the people, did forbid him: and when Metellus was violent in it, and would not desist, Caesar turned to him, and said; presume no farther, or I will lay you dead. And when Metellus was with those words somewhat astonished, Caesar added; young man, it had been easier for me to do this, than to speak it.

235. CaIus Marius was general of the Romans against the Cimbers, who came with such a sea of people upon Italy. In the fight there was a band of the Cadurcians of a thousand, that did notable service; whereupon, after the fight, Marius did deniſon them all for citizens of Rome, though there was no law to warrant it. One of his friends did present it unto him; that he had transgresed the law, because that privilege was not to be granted, but by the people. Whereunto Marius answered; that for the noise of arms he could not hear the laws.

236. Pompey did conſummate the war against Sertorius, when Metellus had brought the enemy somewhat low. He did also conſummate the war against the fugitives, whom CaIus had before defeated in a great battel. So when Lucullus had had great and glorious victories against Mitridates and Tigranes; yet Pompey, by means his friends made, was sent to put an end to that war. Whereupon Lucullus taking indignation, as a disgrace offered to himſelf, said; that Pompey was a carrion crow, when others had strucken down the bodies, then Pompey came and preyed upon them.

237. Antisthenes being asked of one what learning was most necessary for man's life? Answered; to unlearn that which is nought.

238. Alexander visited Diogenes in his tub; and when he asked him, what he would desire of him? Diogenes answered; that you would stand a little aside, that the sun may come to me.

239. The same Diogenes, when mice came about him, as he was eating, said; I see, that even Diogenes nouriseth parasites.

240. Hiero visited by Pythagoras, ask'd him; of what condition he was? Pythagoras answered; sir, I know you have been at the Olympic games: yes, faith Hiero. Thither (faith Pythagoras) come some to win the prizes. Some come to sell their merchandize, because it is a kind of mart of all Greece. Some come to meet their friends, and to make merry; because of the great confluence of all sorts. Others come only to look on. I am one of them that come to look on; meaning it, of philosophy, and the contemplative life.

241. Heraclitus the obscure said; the dry light is the best foul: meaning, when the faculties intellectual are in vigour, not drenched, or as it were blooded by the affections.

242. One of the philosophers was asked; what a wise man differ'd from a fool? He answered, send them both naked to those that know them not, and you shall perceive.

243. There was a law made by the Romans, against the bribery and extortion of the governours of provinces. Cicero faith in a speech of his to the people; that he thought the provinces would petition to the state of Rome to have that law repealed. For (faith he) before the governours did bribe and extort, as much as was sufficient for themselves; but now they bribe
bribe and extort as much, as may be enough, not only for themselves, but for the judges, and jurors, and magistrates.

244. **Aristippus** falling in a tempest, shewed signs of fear. One of the seamen said to him, in an insulting manner; we that are plebeians are not troubled; you that are a philosopher, are afraid. **Aristippus** answered; that there is not the like wager upon it, for you to perish and for me.

245. **There** was an orator that defended a cause of **Aristippus**, and prevailed. Afterwards he asked **Aristippus**; now, in your dittresses, what, did Socrates do you good? **Aristippus** answered; thus, in making that which you said of me to be true.

246. **There** was an Epicurean vaunted, that divers of other sects of philosophers did after turn Epicureans; but there was never any Epicureans that turned to any other sect. Whereupon a philosopher that was of another sect, said; the reason was plain, for that cocks may be made capons, but capons could never be made cocks.

247. **Chilon** would say, that gold was tried with the touchstone, and men with gold.

248. **Simonides** being asked of *Hiero* what he thought of God? asked a seven-night's time to consider of it: and at the seven-night's end, he asked a fort-night's time; at the fort-night's end, a month. At which *Hiero* marvelling, *Simonides* answered; that the longer he thought upon the matter, the more difficult he found it.

249. A Spanish was cenfuring to a French gentleman the wont of devotion amongst the French; in that, whereas in Spain, when the sacrament goes to the sick, any that meets with it, turns back and waits upon it to the house whither it goes; but in France, they only do reverence, and pass by. But the French gentlemen answered him, there is reason for it; for here with us, Christ is secure amongst his friends; but in Spain there be so many Jews and Moravos, that it is not amiss for him to have a convoy.

250. Mr. *Popham*, (afterwards lord chief justice *Popham*) when he was speaker; and the house of commons had fate long, and done in effect nothing; coming one day to queen Elizabeth, the said to him; now, Mr. Speaker, what hath passed in the commons house? He answered, if it please your majesty, seven weeks.

251. *Themistocles* in his lower fortune was in love with a young gentleman who scorned him; but when he grew to his greatness, which was soon after, he sought him: *Themistocles* said; we are both grown wise, but too late.

252. Bion was falling, and there fell out a great tempest; and the mariners that were wicked and dissolute fellows, called upon the gods; but *Bion* said to them, peace, let them not know you are here.

253. The Turks made an expedition into *Perfia*; and because of the strait jaws of the mountains of Armenia, the bafhaw consulted which way they should get in. One that heard the debate said, here's much ado how you shall get in; but I hear no body take care how you should get out.

254. **Philip** king of *Macedon* maintained arguments with a musician in points of his art, somewhat peremptorily; but the musician said to him, God forbid, sir, your fortune were so hard, that you should know these things better than my self.

255. **Antalcidas**, when an Athenian said to him, ye Spartans are unlearned; said again, true, for we have learned no evil nor vice of you.
256. *Pace*, the bitter fool, was not suffered to come at queen *Elizabeth*, because of his bitter humour. Yet at one time, *some* persuaded the queen that he should come to her; undertaking for him, that he should keep within compass: so he was brought to her, and the queen said; come on *Pace*; now we shall hear of our faults. *Saith Pace*; I do not use to talk of that that all the town talks of.

257. *Bishop Latimer* said in a sermon at court, that he heard great speech that the king was poor; and many ways were propounded to make him rich: for his part he had thought of one way, which was, that they should help the king to some good office, for all his officers were rich.

258. *After* the defeat of *Cyrus* the younger, *Falinus* was sent by the king to the *Grecians*, (who had for their part rather victory than otherwise) to command them to yield their arms; which when it was denied, *Falinus* said to *Clearchus*; well then, the king lets you know, that if you remove from the place where you are now encamped, it is war: if you flay, it is truce. What shall I say you will do? *Clearchus* anfwered, it pleafeth us, as it pleafeth the king. *How is that?* *Falinus*. *Saith Cleharchus*, if we remove, war; if we flay, truce: and so would not difclofe his purpofe.

259. *Alcibiades* came to *Pericles*, and stayed a while ere he was admitted. *When* he came in, *Pericles* civilly excufed it, and *fai*d; *I was studying how to give mine account.* But *Alcibiades* faid to him, if you will be ruled by me, study rather how to give no account.

260. *Mendoza* that was vice-roy of *Peru*, was wont to fay, that the government of *Peru* was the best place that the king of *Spain* gave, *sive* it was somewhat too near *Madrid*.

261. *When Vespasian* pafTed from *Jewry*, to take upon him the empire, he went by *Alexandria*, where remained two famous philofophers, *Apollonius* and *Euphrates*. The emperor heard the difcourfe, touching matter of state, in the prefence of many. And when he was weary of them, he brake off, and in a secret derifion, finding their difcourfes but fpeculative, and not to be put in practice, faid; *Oh that I might govern wise men, and wife men govern me*.

262. *Cardinal Ximenes*, upon a mufier, which was taken againft the *Moors*, was fpoken to by a fervant of his to f tand a little out of the fmoke of the harquebufs; but he faid again, that that was his incenfe.

263. *Nero* was wont to fay of his maiter *Seneca*, that his ftyle was like mortar without lime.

264. *Augustus Caesar*, out of great indignation againft his two daughter, and *Posthumus Agrippa*, his grand-child; whereof the two fift were infamous, and the laft otherwife unworthy; would fay, that they were not his feed, but fome impofhumes that had broken from him.

265. A feaman coming before the judges of the admiralty for admittance into an office of a ship bound for the *Indies*, was by one of the judges much flighted, as an insufficient perfon for that office he foughed to obtain; the judge telling him, that he believed he could not fay the points of his compafs. The feaman anfwered; that he could fay them, under favour, better than he could fay his *Pater nofter*. The judge replied; that he would wager twenty shillings with him upon that. *The feaman* taking him up, it came to trial: and the feaman began, and faid all the points of his compafs very exactly; the judge likewife faid his *Pater nofter*; and when he had finifhed it, he required the wager according to agreement; because the feaman was
to say his compass better than he his Pater noster, which he had not performed. Nay, I pray sir, hold, (quoth the seaman) the wager is not finished; for I have but half done: and so he immediately said his compass backward very exactly; which the judge falling of in his Pater-noster, the seaman carried away the prize.

266. There was a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius by Scribonianus, examined in the senate; where Claudius sat in his chair, and one of his freed servants stood at the back of his chair. In the examination, that freed servant, who had much power with Claudius, very suavely, had almost all the words: and amongst other things, he asked in scorn one of the examinees, who was likewise a freed servant of Scribonianus; I pray sir, if Scribonianus had been emperor, what would you have done? He answered, I would have stood behind his chair and held my peace.

267. One was saying, that his great grand-father, and grand-father, and father, died at sea: said another that heard him; and I were as you, I would never come in bed. Why, (faith he) where did your great grand-father, and grand-father; and father die? He answered; where, but in their beds? He answered; and I were as you, I would never come in bed.

268. There was a dispute, whether great heads or little heads had the better wit? And one said, it must needs be the little; for that it is a maxim, Omne majus contine in je minus.

269. Sir Thomas More, when the counsel of the party pressed him for a longer day to perform the decree, said; take Saint Barnaby's-day, which is the longest day in the year. Now Saint Barnaby's-day was within few days following.

270. One of the fathers faith, that there is but this difference between the death of old men and young men; that old men go to death, and death comes to young men.

271. Cassius, after the defeat of Crassus by the Parthians, whose weapons were chiefly arrows, fled to the city of Charras; where he durst not stay any time, doubting to be pursued and besieged; he had with him an astrologer, who said to him; Sir, I would not have you go hence, while the moon is in the sign of Scorpio. Cassius answered, I am more afraid of that of Sagittarius.

272. Jason the Thessalian was wont to say, that some things must be done unjustly, that many things may be done justly.

273. Demetrius king of Macedon, would at times retire himself from business, and give himself wholly to pleasures. One of those his retirings; giving out that he was sick, his father Antigonus came on the sudden to visit him; and yet a fair dainty youth coming out of his chamber. When Antigonus came in; Demetrius said; Sir, the fever left me right now. Antigonus replied, I think it was he that I met at the door.

274. Cato maior would say, that wise men learned more by fools, than fools by wise men.

275. When it was said to Anaxagoras; the Athenians have condemned you to die; he said again, And nature them.

276. Alexander, when his father wished him to run for the prize of the race of the Olympian games, (for he was very swift) answered; he would, if he might run with kings.

277. Antigonus used often to go disguised, and to listen at the tents of his soldiers; and at a time heard some that spoke very ill of him. Whereupon...
APOPHTHEGMS.

upon he opened the tent a little, and said to them; if you would speak ill of me, you should go a little farther off.

278. Aristippus said; that those that studied particular sciences, and neglected philosophy; were like Penelope’s woers, that made love to the waiting woman.

279. The embassadors of Asia minor came to Antonius, after he had imposed upon them a double tax, and said plainly to him; that if he would have two tributes in one year, he must give them two feed-times, and two harvests.

280. An orator of Athens said to Demosthenes; the Athenians will kill you if they wax mad: Demosthenes replied, and they will kill you if they be in good sense.

281. Epictetus used to say; that one of the vulgar, in any ill that happens to him, blames others; a novice in philosophy blames himself; and a philosopher blames neither the one nor the other.

282. Caesar, in his book that he made against Cato, (which is lost) did write to shew the force of opinion and reverence, of a man that had once obtained a popular reputation; that there were some that found Cato drunk, and were ashamed instead of Cato.

283. There was a nobleman said of a great counsellor, that he would have made the worst farrier in the world; for he never praised horse, but he cloyed him: for he never commended any man to the king for service, or upon occasion of fute, or otherwise, but that he would come in, in the end, with a but; and drive in a nail to his disadvantage.

284. Diogenes called an ill phyfician, cock. Why? (faith he.) Diogenes answered; because when you crow, men ufe to rise.

285. There was a gentleman fell very sick, and a friend of his said to him; sureely, you are in danger; I pray fend for a phyfician. But the sick man answered; it is no matter, for if I die, I will die at leisure.

286. Cato the elder, what time many of the Romans had statues erected in their honour, was asked by one in a kind of wonder, why he had none? He answered, he had much rather men should ask and wonder why he had no statue, than why he had a statue.

287. A certain friend of Sir Thomas More’s, taking great pains about a book, which he intended to publifh, (being well conceited of his own wit, which no man elle thought worthy of commendation) brought it to Sir Thomas More to perufe it, and pafs his judgment upon it; which he did; and finding nothing therein worthy the press, he said to him with a grave countenance; that if it were in verfe it would be more worthy. Upon which words, he went immediately and turned it into verfe, and then brought it to Sir Thomas again; who looking thereon, said soberly; Yes marry, now it is somewhat; for now it is rhime; whereas before it was neither rhime nor reason.

288. Sir Henry Wotton used to say; that criticks were like brewers of noblemens clothes.

289. Hannibal said of Fabius Maximus, and of Marcellus, whereof the former waited upon him, that he could make no progres, and the latter had many sharp fights with him; that he feared Fabius like a tutor, and Marcellus like an enemy.

290. When king Edward the second was amongt his torturers, who hurried him to and fro, that no man should know where he was, they let him down upon a bank: and one time the more to disguise his face, shaved
APOPHTHEGMS.

shaved him, and washed him with cold water of a ditch by: the king said; Well, yet I will have warm water for my beard: and shed abundance of tears.

291. One of the seven was wont to say; that laws were like cobwebs; where the small flies were caught, and the great brake through.

292. Lewis the eleventh of France, having much abated the greatness and power of the peers, nobility, and court of parliament, would say, that he had brought the crown out of ward.

293. There was a cowardly Spanish soldier, that in a defeat the Moors gave, ran away with the forenoon. Afterwards when the army generally fled, this soldier was missing. Whereupon it was said by some, that he was slain. No sure (faith one) he is alive; for the Moors eat no hares flesh.

294. A gentleman that was punctual of his word, and loved the same in others; when he heard that two persons had agreed upon a meeting about serious affairs, at a certain time and place; and that the one party failed in the performance, or neglected his hour; would usually say of him, he is a young man then.

295. Anacharsis would say, concerning the popular estates of Graccia; that he wondered how at Athens wise men did propole, and fools dispose.

296. His lordship, when he had finished this collection of apophthegms, concluded thus: Come now all is well: they say, he is not a wise man that will lose his friend for another man's wit.

Apophthegms contained in the Original Edition in Octavo, (which later Copies have entirely suppressed) and which were printed in the last Folio Edition, but not in the proper place.

1. When Queen Elizabeth had advanced Raleigh, she was one day playing on the virginals, and my lord of Oxford, and another nobleman stood by. It fell out so, that the ledge, before the jacks, was taken away, so as the jacks were seen: my lord of Oxford, and the other nobleman smiled, and a little whispered. The queen marked it, and would needs know, what the matter was? My lord of Oxford answered; That they smiled to see, that when jacks went up, beads went down.

22. Sir Thomas More, (who was a man, in all his life-time, that had an excellent vein in jesting) at the very instant of his death, having a pretty long beard, after his head was upon the block, lift it up again, and gently drew his beard aside, and said; This hath not offended the king.

27. Demonax the philosopher, when he died, was asked touching his burial. He answered, Never take care for burying me, for flink will bury me. He that asked him, said again; Why, would you have your body left to dogs and ravens to feed upon? Demonax answered; Why, what great hurt is it, if having fought to do good, when I lived, to men; my body do some good to beasts, when I am dead?

30. Phocyon, the Athenian, (a Man of great severity, and no ways flexible to the will of the people) one day, when he spake to the People, in one part of his speech, was applauded: whereupon, he turned to one of his friends, and asked; What have I said amiss?
APOPHTHEGMS.

34. Bion was wont to say; That Socrates, of all the lovers of Alcibiades, only held him by the ears.
37. There was a philosopher about Tiberius, that looking into the nature of Caius, said of him; That he was more mingled with blood.
42. There was a bishop, that was somewhat a delicate person, and bathed twice a day. A friend of his said to him; My lord, why do you bathe twice a day? The bishop answered; Because I cannot conveniently bathe three.

89. When Sir Thomas More was lord chancellor, he did use, at mass, to sit in the chancel; and his lady in a pew. And because the pew stood out of sight, his gentleman usher, ever after service came to the lady's pew, and said; Madam, my lord is gone. So when the chancellor's place was taken from him, the next time they went to church, Sir Thomas himself came to his lady's pew, and said; Madam, my lord is gone.

104. A Graecian captain advising the confederates, that were united against the Lacedaemonians, touching their enterprise, gave opinion, that they should go directly upon Sparta, saying; That the state of Sparta was like rivers; strong when they had run a great way, and weak towards their head.

108. One was examined, upon certain scandalous words spoken against the king. He confessed them, and said; It is true, I spoke them, and if the wine had not failed, I had said much more.

110. Trajan would say, That the king's exchequer was like the spleen; for when that did fail, the whole body did pine.

113. Charles the bald, allowed one, whose name was Scottus, to sit at the table with him, for his pleasure. Scottus sat on the other side of the table. One time the king being merry with him, said to him; What is there between Scott and Sot? Scottus answered; The table only.

115. There was a marriage made between a widow of great wealth, and a gentleman of great house, that had no estate or means. Jack Roberts said; That marriage was like a black pudding; the one brought blood, and the other brought wheaten and oatmeal.

149. Croesus said to Cambyse, That peace was better than war; because in peace the sons did bury their fathers, but in wars the fathers did bury their sons.

154. Carvajal, when he was drawn to execution, being fourscore and five years old, and laid upon the hurdle, said; What! young in cradle, old in cradle!

161. Diogenes was asked in a kind of scorn; What was the matter, that philosophers haunted rich men, and not rich men philosophers? he answered; Because the one knew what they wanted, the other did not.

162. Demetrius, king of Macedon, had a petition offered him divers times by an old woman, and still answered; he had no leisure. Whereupon, the woman said aloud; Why then give over to be king.

175. There were two gentlemen, otherwise of equal degree, save that the one was of the ancienter house. The other, in courtesy, asked his hand to kiss; which he gave him; and he kissed it; but said withal, to right himself, by way of friendship, Well, I and you, against any two of them: putting himself first.

198. Themistocles would say of himself; That he was like a plane-tree, that in tempests men fled to him, and in fair weather, men were ever cropping his leaves.

200. Themistocles said of speech; That it was like Arras, that spread abroad images fair, but contracted is but like packs.
A P O P H T H E G M S.

211. Lycurgus would say of divers of the heroes of the heathen; That he wondered that men should mourn upon their days, for them, as mortal men, and yet sacrifice to them as gods.

213. There is an ecclesiastical writer of the papists, to prove antiquity of consecration, in the form that it now is, doth note, in very ancient times, even in the primitive times, amongst other foul flanders spread against the christians; one was; That they did adore the genitories of their priests. Which (he faith) grew from the posture of the confessor, and the priest in consecration: which is, that the confessor kneels down, before the priest sitting in a raised chair above him.

216. Fabricius, in conference with Pyrrhus, was tempted to revolt to him; Pyrrhus telling him, that he should be partner of his fortunes, and second perfon to him. But Fabricius answered, in a scorn, to such a motion; Sir, that would not be good for your self; for if the Epirotes once knew me, they will rather desire to be governed by me than by you.

221. Thales said; That life and death were all one. One that was present asked him; Why do not you die then? Thales said again; Because they are all one.

223. An AEgyptian priest having conference with Solon, said to him; You Graecians are ever children; you have no knowledge of antiquity, nor antiquity of knowledge.

227. Diogenes was one day in the market-place, with a candle in his hand, and being asked; What be fought? he said, He fought a man.

228. Bias being asked; How a man should order his life? answered; As if a man should live long, or die quickly.

229. Queen Elizabeth was entertained by my Lord Burleigh at Theobalds: and at her going away, my lord obtained of the Queen, to make seven knights. They were gentlemen of the country, of my lord's friends and neighbours. They were placed in a rank, as the queen should pass by the hall; and to win antiquity of knighthood, in order, as my lord favoured; though indeed the more principal gentlemen were placed lowest. The queen was told of it, and said nothing; but when she went along, she passed them all by, as far as the screen, as if she had forgot it: and when she came to the screen, she seemed to take herself with the manner, and said, I had almost forgot what I promised. With that she turned back, and knitted the lowest first, and so upward. Whereupon Mr. Stanhope of the privy-chamber, a while after told her; Your majesty was too fine for my lord Burleigh. She answered; I have but fulfilled the scripture; the first shall be last, and the last first.

235. Sir Fulke Grevill had much and private access to queen Elizabeth, which he used honourably, and did many men good, yet he would say merrily of himself; That be was like Robin Goodfellow; for when the maids shilt the milk-pans, or kept any racket, they would lay it upon Robin: so what takes, the ladies, about the queen, told her, or other bad offices that they did, they would put it upon him.

240. There was a politicke sermon, that had no divinity in it, was preached before the king. The king, as he came forth, said to Bishop Andrews; Call you this a sermon? the bishop answered; And it please your majesty, by a charitable construction, it may be a sermon.

244. Henry Noel would say; That courtiers were like fasting days; they were next the holy days, but in themselves, they were the most meagre days of the week.

247. Cato
APOPHTHEGMS.

247. Cato said; The best way, to keep good acts in memory, was to refresh them with new.

249. Aristippus said; He took money of his friends, not so much to use it himself, as to teach them how to bestow their money.

260. A trumpet said to Aristippus: That she was with child by him: he answered; You know that no more, than if you went through a hedge of thorns, you could say, this thorn prick'd me.

263. Democritus said; That truth did lie in profound pits, and when it was got, it needed much refining.

266. Diogenes said of a young man that danced daintily, and was much commended; The better, the worse.

271. There was a nobleman that was lean of visage, but immediately after his marriage he grew pretty plump and fat. One said to him; Your lordship doth contrary to other married men; for they at the first wax lean, and you wax fat. Sir Walter Raleigh stood by, and said; Why, there is no beef, that if you take him from the common, and put him into the federal, but he will wax fat.

272. Diogenes seeing one that was a bastard, casting stones among the people, bad him take heed, he hit not his father.

275. It was said by many concerning the canons of the council of Trent; That we are beholden to Aristotle for many articles of our faith.

Certain Apophthegms of the Lord Bacon's, first published in his Remains.

1. Plutarch said well, it is otherwise in a common-wealth of men than of bees: The hive of a city or kingdom is in best condition, when there is least of noise or buzz in it.

2. The same Plutarch said, of men of weak abilities set in great place, that they were like little statues set on great bases, made to appear the less by their advancement.

3. He said again; good fame is like fire. When you have kindled it, you may easily preserve it; but if once you extinguish it, you will not easily kindle it again; at least, not make it burn as bright as it did.

4. Queen Elizabeth seeing Sir Edward —— in her garden, look'd out at her window, and ask'd him in Italian, what does a man think of when he thinks of nothing? Sir Edward (who had not had the effect of some of the queen's grants so soon as he had hoped and desired) paused a little; and then made answer, Madam, he thinks of a woman's promise. The queen shrunk in her head, but was heard to say, Well, Sir Edward, I must not confute you. Anger makes dull men witty, but it keeps them poor.

5. When any great officer, ecclesiastical or civil, was to be made, the queen would inquire after the piety, integrity, learning of the man. And when she was satisfied in these qualifications, she would consider of his personage. And upon such an occasion she pleas'd once to say to me, Bacon, how can the magistrate maintain his authority when the man is despis'd?

6. In eighty eight, when the queen went from Temple-bar along Fleet-street, the lawyers were rank'd on one side, and the companies of the city on the other; said master Bacon to a lawyer that stood next him: Do but observe the courtiers; if they bow first to the citizens, they are in debt; if first to us, they are in law.

7. King
7. King James was wont to be very earnest with the countrygentlemen to go from London to their country houses. And sometimes he would say thus to them; Gentlemen, at London, you are like ships at sea, which they like nothing; but in your country villages, you are like ships in a river, which look like great things.

8. Soon after the death of a great officer, who was judged no advancer of the king's matters; the king said to his solicitor Bacon, who was his kinsman; Now tell me truly, what say you of your cousin that is gone? Mr. Bacon answered, Sir, since your majesty doth charge me, I'll e'en deal plainly with you, and give you such a character of him, as if I were to write his story. I do think he was no fit councilor to make your affairs better: but yet he was fit to have kept them from growing worse. The king said, On my soul, man, in the first thou speakest like a true man, and in the latter like a kinsman.

9. King James, as he was a prince of great judgment, so he was a prince of a marvellous pleasant humour; and there now come into my mind two instances of it. As he was going through Lusen by Greenwich, he ask'd what town it was? They said Lusen. He ask'd a good while after, what town is this we are now in? They said, still 'twas Lusen. On my soul, said the king, I will be king of Lusen.

10. In some other of his progresses, he ask'd how far 'twas to a town whose name I have forgotten. They said, six miles. Half an hour after he ask'd again. One said six miles and an half. The king alighted out of his coach, and crept under the shoulder of his led horse. And when some ask'd his majesty what he meant? I must talk, said he, for yonder town is shy, and flies me.

11. Count Gondomar sent a complement to my lord St. Alban, wishing him a good Easter. My lord thank'd the messenger, and said, he could not at present requite the count better than in returning him the like; that he wished his lordship a good Pasover.

12. My lord chancellor Elsmere, when he had read a petition which he disliked, would say; What, you would have my hand to this now? And the party answering, yes: he would further, Well, so you shall; nay, you shall have both my hands to it. And so would, with both his hands, tear it in pieces.

13. Sir Francis Bacon was wont to say of an angry man who suppressed his passion, that he thought worse than he spake: and of an angry man that would chide, that he spake worse than he thought.

14. He was wont also to say, that power in an ill man, was like the power of a black witch; he could do hurt, but no good with it. And he would add, that the magicians could turn water into blood, but could not turn the blood again to water.

15. When Mr. Attorney Coke, in the exchequer, gave high words to Sir Francis Bacon, and stood much upon his higher place; Sir Francis said to him, Mr. Attorney, the less you speak of your own greatness, the more I shall think of it; and the more, the less.

16. Sir Francis Bacon coming into the earl of Arundel's garden, where there were a great number of ancient statues of naked men and women, made a stand, and as astonished, cried out, the resurrection.

17. Sir Francis Bacon (who was always for moderate counsels) when one was speaking of such a reformation of the church of England, as would in effect make it no church; said thus to him, Sir, the subject we talk of is the eye.
A P O P H T H E G M S.

eye of England; and if there be a speck or two in the eye, we endeavour to take them off; but he were a strange oculist who would pull out the eye.

18. The same Sir Francis Bacon was wont to say, that those who left useful studies for useless scholastic speculations, were like the Olympick game-players, who abstain'd from necessary labours, that they might be fit for such as were not to.

19. He likewise often used this comparison: (a) the empirical philosophers are like to pismires; they only lay up and use their store. The rationalists are like to spiders; they spin all out of their own bowels. But give me a philosopher, who like the bee hath a middle faculty, gathering from abroad, but digesting that which is gathered by his own virtue.

20. The same St. Alban, who was not over-hasty to raise theories, but proceeded slowly by experiments, was wont to say to some philosophers, who would not go his pace; Gentlemen, nature is a labyrinth, in which the very haste you move with, will make you lose your way.

21. The same lord, when he spoke of the Dutchmen, used to say, that we could not abandon them for our safety, nor keep them for our profit. And sometimes he would express the same sense in this manner; we hold the Belgic lion by the ears.

22. The same lord, when a gentleman seem'd not much to approve of his liberality to his retinue, said to him; Sir, I am all of a piece; if the head be lifted up, the inferior parts of the body must too.

23. The lord Bacon was wont to commend the advice of the plain old man at Buxton that told bequoms: a proud lazy young fellow came to him for a bequom upon trust; to whom the old man said; Friend, hast thou no money? borrow of thy back, and borrow of thy belly, they'll ne'er ask thee again, I shall be dunning thee every day.

24. Jack Weeks said of a great man (just then dead) who pretended to some religion, but was none of the best livers; Well, I hope he is in heaven. Every man thinks as he wishes; but if he be in heaven, 'twere pity it were known.

(a) See the substance of this in Nov. Org. Vol. I. & inter Cogitata & Vis. Vol. II.

ORN A-
ORNAMENTA RATIONALIA:

OR

ELEGANT SENTENCES,

Some made, others collected by the Lord BACON; and by him put under the abovesaid title.

Collected out of the Mimi of Publius, and published in the

Remains:

1. Leator, quanto in arte est melior, tanto est nequior: a gamester, the greater matter he is in his art, the worse man he is.

2. Arcum, intenso frangit; animum, remissio: much bending breaks the bow; much unbending, the mind.

3. Bis vincit, qui se vincit in victoria: he conquers twice, who upon victory overcomes himself.

4. Cum vitia profint, peccat, qui recte facit: if vices were upon the whole matter profitable, the virtuous man would be the sinner.

5. Bene dormit, qui non sentit, quod male dormiat: he sleeps well, who feels not that he sleeps ill.

6. Deliberare utilia, mora est tutissima: to deliberate about useful things, is the safest delay.

7. Dolor decrecit, ubi quo crescat non babet: the flood of grief decreaseth, when it can swell no higher.

8. Etiam innocentes cogit mentiri dolor: pain makes even the innocent man a liar.

9. Etiam celeritas in defiderio, mora est: in desire, swiftness it self is delay.

10. Etiam capillus unus babet umbrae suam: the smallest hair casts a shadow.

11. Fidem qui perdit, quo se forcat in reliquum? he that has lost his faith, what has he left to live on?

12. Formosa facies muta commendatio est: a beautiful face is a silent commendation.

13. Fortuna nimium quem foveat, fluitum facit: fortune makes him a fool, whom she makes her darling.

14. Fortuna obesse nulli contenta est semel: fortune is not content to do a man but one ill turn.

15. Facit gratum fortuna, quem nemo videt: the fortune which no body sees, makes a man happy and unenvied.

Vol. III. [0 0] 16. Heu!
ORNAMENTA RATIONALIA.

16. **Heu! quam miserum est ab illo laedi, de quo non posis queri!:** O! what a miserable thing 'tis to be hurt by such a one of whom 'tis in vain to complain.

17. **Homo toties moritur quoties amittit suis:** a man dies as often as he loses his friends.

18. **Haereditis fletus sub persona rifus est:** the tears of an heir are laughter under a vizard.

19. **Iucundum nihil est, nisi quod reficit varietas:** nothing is pleasant, to which variety does not give a relish.

20. **Invidiam ferre, aut fortis, aut felix potest:** he may bear envy, who is either courageous or happy.

21. **In malis sperare bonum, nisi innocens, nemo potest:** none but a virtuous man can hope well in all circumstances.

22. **In vindicando, criminafors est celeritas:** in taking revenge, the very haste we make is criminal.

23. **In calamitate rifer etiam inuria est:** when men are in calamity, if we do not laugh we offend.

24. **Improve Neptunum accusat, qui iterum naufragium facit:** he accuses Neptune unjustly, who makes shipwreck a second time.

25. **Multa minatur, qui uni facit injuriam:** he that injures one, threatens an hundred.

26. **Mora amnis ingrata est, sed facit sapientiam:** all delay is ungrateful, but we are not wise without it.

27. **Mori est felicis antequam mortem invocet:** happy he who dies ere he calls for death to take him away.

28. **Malus ubi bonum se simulat, tunc est peffimus:** an ill man is always ill; but he is then worst of all, when he pretends to be a saint.

29. **Magno cum periculo custoditur, quod multis placet:** lock and key will scarce keep that secure, which pleases every body.

30. **Male vivunt qui se semper viiuros putant:** they think ill, who think of living always.

31. **Male secum agit aeger, medicum qui haeRedem facit:** that sick man does ill for himself, who makes his physician his heir.

32. **Multos timere debet, quem multi timent:** he of whom many are afraid, ought himself to fear many.

33. **Nulla tam bona est fortuna, de qua nil posis queri:** there's no fortune so good, but it bates an ace.

34. **Pars beneficis est, quod petitur, si bene neges:** 'tis part of the gift, if you deny genteely what is asked of you.

35. **Timidis vocat se cautum, parcum fordidus:** the coward calls himself a wary man; and the mifer says, he is frugal.

36. **O vita! miJero longa, felici brevis:** O life! an age to him that is in misery; and to him that is happy, a moment.

_A collection of sentences out of some of the writings of the lord Bacon._

1. **It is a strange desire which men have, to seek power and lose liberty.**

2. **Children increase the cares of life; but they mitigate the remembrance of death.**

3. **Round**
3. Round dealing is the honour of man's nature; and a mixture of falsehood is like alloy in gold and silver, which may make the metal work the better, but it embaseth it.

4. Death opened the gate to good fame, and extinguisheth envy.

5. Schism, in the spiritual body of the church, is a greater scandal than a corruption in manners: as, in the natural body, a wound or solution of continuity, is worse than a corrupt humour.

6. Revenge is a kind of wild justice, which the more a man's nature runs to, the more ought law to weed it out.

7. He that studieth revenge, keepeth his own wounds green.

8. Revengeful persons live and die like witches: Their life is mischievous, and their end is unfortunate.

9. It was an high speech of Seneca, (after the manner of the Stoicks,) that the good things which belong to prosperity, are to be wish'd; but the good things which belong to adversity, are to be admired.

10. He that cannot see well, let him go softly.

11. If a man be thought secret, it inviteth discovery; as the more close air sucketh in the more open.

12. Keep your authority wholly from your children, not so your purse.

13. Men of noble birth are noted to be envious towards new men when they rise. For the distance is alter'd; and it is like a deceit of the eye, that when others come on, they think themselves go back.

14. That envy is most malignant which is like Cain's, who envied his brother, because his sacrifice was better accepted, when there was no body but God to look on.

15. The lovers of great place are impatient of privateness, even in age, which requires the shadow: like old townsmen that will be still sitting at their street-door, though there they offer age to scorn.

16. In evil, the best condition is, not to will; the next, not to can.

17. In great place, ask counsel of both times: of the ancient time, what is best; and of the latter time, what is fittest.

18. As in nature things move more violently to their place, and calmly in their place: So virtue in ambition is violent; in authority, settled and calm.

19. Boldness in civil business, is like pronunciation in the orator of Demosthenes; the first, second, and third thing.

20. Boldness is blind: wherefore 'tis ill in counsel, but good in execution. For in counsel it is good to see dangers, in execution not to see them, except they be very great.

21. Without good-nature, man is but a better kind of vermin.

22. God never wroght miracle to convince atheifm, because his ordinary works convince it.

23. The great atheists indeed are hypocrites, who are always handling holy things, but without feeling; so as they must needs be cauterized in the end.

24. The matter of superstition is the people. And in all superstition, wise men follow fools.

25. In removing superstitions, care would be had, that (as it far eth in ill purgations) the good be not taken away with the bad; which commonly is done, when the people is the physician.
296 **ORNAMENTA RATIONALIA.**

26. He that goeth into a country before he hath some entrance into the language, goeth to school, and not to travel.

27. It is a miserable state of mind (and yet it is commonly the case of kings) to have few things to desire, and many things to fear.

28. Depression of the nobility may make a king more absolute, but less safe.

29. All precepts concerning kings, are, in effect, comprehended in these remembrances; remember thou art a man; remember thou art God's vicegerent: The one bridleth their power, and the other their will.

30. Things will have their first or second agitation: If they be not tossed upon the arguments of counsel, they will be tossed upon the waves of fortune.

31. The true composition of a counsellor, is rather to be skill'd in his master's business than his nature; for then he is like to advise him, and not to feed his humour.

32. Private opinion is more free, but opinion before others is more reverend.

33. Fortune is like a market, where many times if you slay a little the price will fall.

34. Fortune sometimes turneth the handle of the bottle, which is easy to be taken hold of; and after the belly, which is hard to grasp.

35. Generally it is good to commit the beginning of all great actions to Argus with an hundred eyes; and the ends of them to Briareus with an hundred hands; first to watch, and then to speed.

36. There is great difference betwixt a cunning man and a wise man. There be that can pack the cards, who yet can't play well; they are good in canvases and factions, and yet otherwise mean men.

37. Extreme self-lovers will set a man's house on fire, tho' it were but to roast their eggs.

38. New things, like strangers, are more admired, and less favour'd.

39. If were good that men, in their innovations, would follow the example of time itself, which indeed innovateth greatly, but quietly, and by degrees scarce to be perceived.

40. They that reverence too much old time, are but a scorn to the new.

41. The Spaniards and Spartans have been noted to be of small dispatch. *Mi venga la muerte de Spagna*; let my death come from Spain, for then it will be sure to be long a coming.

42. You had better take for business a man somewhat absurd, than over-formal.

43. Those who want friends to whom to open their griefs, are cannibals of their own hearts.

44. Number it self importeth not much in armies, where the people are of weak courage: For (as Virgil says) it never troubles a wolf how many the sheep be.

45. Let states, that aim at greatness, take heed how their nobility and gentry multiply too fast. In coppice woods, if you leave your fladdles too thick, you shall never have clean underwood, but shrubs and bushes.

46. A
A civil war is like the heat of a fever; but a foreign war is like the heat of exercise, and serveth to keep the body in health.

Suspicious among thoughts, are like bats among birds, they ever fly by twilight.

Base natures, if they find themselves once suspected, will never be true.

Men ought to find the difference between saltiness and bitterness. Certainly he that hath a satyrical vein, as he maketh others afraid of his wit, so he had need be afraid of others memory.

Discretion in speech is more than eloquence.

Men seem neither well to understand their riches, nor their strength: of the former they believe greater things than they should, and of the latter much less. And from hence certain fatal pillars have bounded the progress of learning.

Riches are the baggage of virtue; they cannot be spared, nor left behind, but they hinder the march.

Great riches have fold more men than ever they have bought out.

Riches have wings, and sometimes they fly away of themselves, and sometimes they must be let flying to bring in more.

He that defers his charity 'till he is dead, is (if a man weighs it right) rather liberal of another man's, than of his own.

Ambition is like choler, if it can move; it makes men active; if it be stopp'd, it becomes adverse, and makes men melancholy.

To take a soldier without ambition, is to pull off his spurs.

Some ambitious men feem as screens to princes in matters of danger and envy. For no man will take such parts, except he be like the field dove, that mounts and mounts, because he cannot see about him.

Princes and states should chuse such ministers as are more sensible of duty than rising; and should discern a busy nature from a willing mind.

A man's nature runs either to herbs or weeds; therefore let him seasonably water the one, and destroy the other.

If a man look sharply and attentively, he shall see fortune; for tho' she be blind, she is not invisible.

Usury bringeth the treasure of a realm or state into few hands: for the usurer being at certainties, and others at uncertainties; at the end of the game, most of the money will be in the box.

Beauty is best in a body that hath rather dignity of presence, than beauty of aspect. The beautiful prove accomplish'd, but not of great spirit; and study, for the most part, rather behaviour than virtue.

The best part of beauty, is that which a picture cannot express.

He who builds a fair house upon an ill foot, commits himself to prison.

If you will work on any man, you must either know his nature and fashions, and so lead him; or his ends, and so persuade him; or his weaknesses and disadvantages, and so awe him; or those that have interest in him, and so govern him.

Costly followers (among whom we may reckon those who are in fortune in suits) are not to be liked; left while a man maketh his train longer, he maketh his wings shorter.

Fame is like a river that beareth up things light and swollen, and doth not things weighty and solid.
ORNAMENTA RATIONALIA.

69. SENECA faith well, that anger is like rain, which breaks it self upon that it falls.

70. EXCUSATIONS, cessions, modesty it self well govern'd, are but arts of ostentation.

71. HIGH treason is not written in ice; that when the body relenteth, the impression should go away.

72. THE best governments are always subject to be like the fairest crystals, wherein every icicle or grain is seen, which in a fouler stone is never perceived.

73. HOLLOW church papists are like the roots of nettles, which themselves fling not; but yet they bear all the flinging leaves.

ESSAYS
ESSAYS
OR
COUNSELS,
CIVIL and MORAL.

To Mr. Anthony Bacon his dear Brother.

Loving and beloved brother, I do now like some that have an orchard ill neighboured, that gather their fruit before it is ripe, to prevent stealing. These fragments of my conceits were going to print; to labour the stay of them had been troublesome, and subject to interpretation; to let them pass had been to adventure the wrong they might receive by untrue copies, or by some garnishment which it might please any that should set them forth to bestow upon them. Therefore I held it best discretion to publish them myself, as they passed long ago from my pen, without any further disgrace than the weakness of the author. And as I did ever hold, there might be as great a vanity in retiring and withdrawing men's conceits (except they be of some nature) from the world, as in obtruding them; so in these particulars I have played myself the inquisitor, and find nothing to my understanding in them contrary or injurious to the state of religion, or manners, but rather (as I suppose) medicinal. Only I disliked now to put them out, because they will be like the late new halfpence, which though the silver were good, yet the pieces were small. But since they would not stay with their master, but would needs travel abroad, I have preferred them to you that are next myself; dedicating them, such as they are, to our love, in the depth whereof (I assure you) I sometimes with your infirmities transacted upon my self, that her majesty might have the service of so active and able a mind; and I might be with excuse confined to these contemplations and studies, for which I am fittest: so commend I you to the preservation of the divine Majesty.

From my chamber at Grays-Inn,
this 30th of January 1597.

Your entire loving brother,

FRAN. BACON.
DEDICATION.

To my loving brother Sir John Constable Kt.

My last essays I dedicated to my dear brother, Mr. Anthony Bacon, who is with God. Looking amongst my papers this vacation, I found others of the same nature: which if I my self shall not suffer to be lost, it seemeth the world will not, by the often printing of the former. Missing my brother, I found you next; in respect of bond both of near alliance, and of straight friendship and society, and particularly of communication in studies: wherein I must acknowledge my self beholden to you. For as my business found rest in my contemplations, so my contemplations ever found rest in your loving conference and judgment. So wishing you all good, I remain,

Your loving brother and Friend,

1612.

FRA. BACON.

TO THE

Right honourable, my very good lord, the duke of Buckingham, his grace, lord high admiral of England.

EXCELLENT LORD,

SOLOMON says, a good name is as a precious ointment; and I assure my self such will your grace’s name be with posterity. For your fortune and merit both have been eminent: And you have planted things that are like to last. I do now publish my essays; which, of all my other works have been most current: for that, as it seems, they come home to mens business and bosoms. I have enlarged them both in number and weight; so that they are indeed a new work. I thought it therefore agreeable to my affection and obligation to your grace, to prefix your name before them both in English and in Latin: For I do conceive, that the Latin volume of them, (being in the universal language) may last as long as books last. My dedication I dedicated to the king: my history of Henry the seventh, (which I have now also translated into Latin) and my portions of Natural History, to the prince: and these I dedicate to your grace; being of the best fruits, that by the good increase which God gives to my pen and labours, I could yield. God lead your grace by the hand.

Your grace’s most obliged and faithful Servant,

FR. ST. ALBAN.

ESSAYS
I. Of truth.

What is truth? said jesting Pilate; and would not stay for an answer. Certainly there be that delight in giddines; and count it a bondage to fix a belief; affecting free-will in thinking, as well as in acting. And though the sects of philosophers of that kind be gone, yet there remain certain discoursing wits, which are of the same veins, though there be not so much blood in them, as was in those of the ancients. But it is not only the difficulty and labour which men take in finding out of truth; nor again, that when it is found, it imposes upon mens thoughts; that doth bring lies in favour: but a natural, though corrupt love of the lie itself. One of the later school of the Graecians examineth the matter, and is at a stand to think what should be in it, that men should love lies; where neither they make for pleasure, as with poets; nor for advantage, as with the merchant; but for the lie's sake. But I cannot tell: this same truth is a naked and open day-light, that doth not shew the masques, and mummeries, and triumphs of the world, half so stately and daintily, as candle-lights. Truth may perhaps come to the price of a pearl, that sheweth best by day: but it will not rise to the price of a diamond or carbuncle, that sheweth best in varied lights. A mixture of a lie doth ever add pleasure. Doth any man doubt, that if there were taken out of mens minds, vain opinions, flattering hopes, false valuations, imaginations as one would, and the like; but it would leave the minds of a number of men, poor shrunked things; full of melancholy and indisposition, and unpleasing to themselves? One of the fathers in great severity, called poesy, *vivum daemonum*; because it filleth the imagination, and yet it is but with the shadow of a lie. But it is not the lie that passeth through the mind, but the lie that finketh in, and setteth in it, that doth the hurt, such as we spake of before. But howsoever these things are thus in mens depraved judgments and affections, yet truth, which only doth judge it self, teacheth, that the enquiry of truth, which is the love-making, or wooing of it; the knowledge of truth, which is the presence of it; and the belief of truth, which is the enjoying of it; is the sovereign good of humane nature. The first creature of God, in the works of the days, was the light of the sense; the last was the light of reason; and his sabbath work ever since, is the illumination of his Spirit. First he breathed light upon the face of the matter, or *chaos*; then he breathed light into the face of man; and still he breatheth and impireth light into the face of his chosen. The poet that beautified the sect, that was otherwise inferior to the rest, faith yet excellently well: it is a pleasure to stand upon the shore, and to see ships toit upon the sea: a pleasure to stand in the window of a castle, and to see
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

a battle, and the adventures thereof below: but no pleasure is comparable to the standing upon the vantage ground of truth: (a hill not to be commanded, and where the air is always clear and serene;) and to see the errors, and wanderings, and misfits, and tempests, in the vale below: so always that this prospect be with pity, and not with swelling or pride. Certainly, it is heaven upon earth, to have a man's mind move in charity, rest in providence, and turn upon the poles of truth.

To pass from theological and philosophical truth, to the truth of civil business; it will be acknowledged, even by those that practice it not, that clear and round dealing is the honour of man's nature; and that mixture of falsehood, is like alloy in coin of gold and silver; which may make the metal work the better, but it embaseth it. For these winding and crooked courses are the goings of the serpent; which goeth basely upon the belly, and not upon the feet. There is no vice that doth so cover a ill, as to be found false and perfidious. And therefore Montaigne saith prettily, when he enquired the reason, why the word of the lie should be such a disgrace, and such an odious charge? Saith he, if it be well weighed, to say that a man lyeth, is as much as to say, that he is brave towards God, and a coward towards men. For a lie faces God, and shrinks from man. Surely the wickedness of falsehood, and breach of faith, cannot possibly be so highly expressed, as in that it shall be the last peal, to call the judgments of God upon the generations of men: It being foretold, that when Christ cometh, he shall not find faith upon earth.

II. Of death.

Men fear death, as children fear to go in the dark: and as that natural fear in children is increased with tales, so is the other. Certainly, the contemplation of death, as the wages of sin, and passage to another world, is holy and religious; but the fear of it, as a tribute due unto nature, is weak. Yet in religious meditations, there is sometimes mixture of vanity, and of superstition. You shall read in some of the friars books of mortification, that a man should think with himself, what the pain is, if he have but his finger's end pressed, or tortured; and thereby imagine what the pains of death are, when the whole body is corrupted and dissolved; when many times death passeth with less pain, than the torture of a limb: for the most vital parts are not the quickest of sense. And by him that spake only as a philosopher, and natural man, it was well said; pompa mortis magis terret, quam mors ipsa. Groans, and convulsions, and a discoloured face, and friends weeping, and blacks, and obsequies, and the like, shew death terrible. It is worthy the observing, that there is no passion in the mind of man so weak, but it mates and masters the fear of death: and therefore death is no such terrible enemy, when a man hath so many attendants about him, that can win the combat of him. Revenge triumphs over death; love flights it; honour aspireth to it; grief sigheth to it; fear pre-occupareth it; nay, we read, after Otho the emperor had slain himself, pity (which is the tenderest of affections) provoked many to die, out of mere compassion to their sovereign, and as the truest sort of followers. Nay, Seneca adds, nescie nefs and fatiety; cogita quamdiu eadem faceris; mori velis, non tantum fortis, aut miser, sed etiam fadidus potest. A man would die, though he were neither valiant nor miserable, only upon a weariness to do the same thing so oft over and over. It is no less worthy to observe, how little alteration in good spirits, the approaches of death make; for they appear to be the same.
fame men till the last infant. Augustus Cæsar died in a complement; Livia, conjugi nostri memori, vivis & vale. Tiberius in diffimulation; as Tacitus faith of him; jam Tiberium vires & corpus, non diffimulatio, defe-rebant. Vespanian in a jeft; fitting upon the stool; ut puto Deus fio. Galba with a sentence; fcri, fi ex re fit populi Romani; holding forth his neck. Septimius Severus in dispatch; adeo, fi quid mihi reflat agendum; and the like. Certainly the Stoicks befowed too much cost upon death, and by their great preparations made it appear more fearful. Better, faith he, qui finem vitae extremum inter munera ponat nature. It is as natural to die, as to be born; and to a little infant, perhaps, the one is as painful as the other. He that dies in an earnest purfuit, is like one that is wounded in hot blood; who, for the time, scarce feels the hurt; and therefore a mind fixt and bent upon somewhat that is good, doth avert the dolours of death: but above all, believe it, the sweetest canticle is, nunc dimittis; when a man hath obtained worthy ends and expectations. Death hath this also; that it openeth the gate to good fame, and extinguisheth envy; —Extinctus amabitur idem.

III. Of unity in religion.

Religion being the chief band of humane society, it is a happy thing; when it self is well contained within the true band of unity. The quarrels and divisions about religion were evils unknown to the heathen. The reason was, because the religion of the heathen confifted rather in rites and ceremonies, than in any constant belief. For you may imagine what kind of faith theirs was, when the chief doctors and fathers of their church were the poets. But the true God hath this attribute; that he is a jealous God; and therefore his worship and religion will endure no mixture, nor partner. We shall therefore speak a few words concerning the unity of the church; what are the fruits thereof; what the bounds; and what the means.

The fruits of unity (next unto the well-pleasing of God, which is all in all) are two; the one towards those that are without the church; the other towards those that are within. For the former; it is certain, that heresies and schisms are of all others the greatest scandals; yea more than corruption of manners. For as in the natural body, a wound or solution of continuity, is worse than a corrupt humour; so in the spiritual. So that nothing doth so much keep men out of the church, and drive men out of the church, as breach of unity: and therefore, whensoever it cometh to that pass, that one faith, ecce in desertio; another faith, ecce in penetralibus; that is, when some men seek Christ in the conventicles of heretics, and others in an outward face of a church, that voice had need continually to sound in mens ears, nolite exire; go not out. The doctor of the Gentiles (the propriety of whose vocation drew him to have a special care of those without) faith; if an heathen come in, and hear you speak with several tongues, will be not say that you are mad? And certainly, it is little better, when atheifts, and prophane persons, do hear of so many discordant and contrary opinions in religion; it doth avert them from the church, and maketh them to fit down in the chair of the fcorers. It is but a light thing to be vouch'd in so serious a matter, but yet it expresseth well the deformity. There is a master of scoffing; that in his catalogue of books of a feigned library, sets down this title of a book; the Morris-dance of Heretics. For indeed every sect of them hath a diverfe posture or cringe by them-
themselves, which cannot but move derision in worldlings and depraved politicians, who are apt to contemn holy things.

As for the fruit towards those that are within, it is peace; which contains infinite blessings: it effectueth faith; it kindleth charity; the outward peace of the church distilleth into peace of conscience; and it turneth the labours of writing and reading of controversies, into treaties of mortification and devotion.

Concerning the bonds of unity; the true placing of them importeth exceedingly. There appear to be two extremes. For to certain zealots all speech of pacification is odious. Is it peace, Jehu? What hast thou to do with peace? turn thee behind me. Peace is not the matter, but following and party. Contrariwise, certain Laodiceans, and lukewarm persons, think they may accommodate points of religion by middle-ways, and taking part of both, and witty reconciliations; as if they would make an arbitrement between God and man. Both these extremes are to be avoided which will be done, if the league of Christians, penned by our Saviour himself, were in the two cross clauses thereof, soundly and plainly expounded: he that is not with us is against us: and again; he that is not against us is with us: that is, if the points fundamental, and of substance in religion, were truly discerned and distinguished, from points not merely of faith, but of opinion, order, or good intention. This is a thing may seem to many, a matter trivial, and done already; but if it were done less partially, it would be embraced more generally.

Of this I may give only this advice, according to my small model. Men ought to take heed of rending God's church by two kinds of controversies. The one is, when the matter of the point controverted is too small and light, not worth the heat and strife about it, kindled only by contradiction. For, as it is noted by one of the fathers, Christ's coat indeed had no seam; but the church's vesture was of divers colours: whereupon he: faith, in veste varietas fit, sciffura non fit; they be two things, unity and uniformity. The other is, when the matter of the point controverted is great; but it is driven to an over-great subtlety and obscurity; so that it becometh a thing rather ingenious than substantial. A man that is of judgment and understanding, shall sometimes hear ignorant men differ, and know well within himself, that those which so differ mean one thing, and yet they themselves would never agree. And if it come so to pass in that distance of judgment which is between man and man; shall we not think that God above, that knows the heart, doth not discern that frail men, in some of their contempulations, intend the same thing, and accepteth of both? The nature of such controversies is excellently expressed by St. Paul, in the warning and precept that he giveth concerning the same, devita profanas vocum nositates, et oppositiones falsi nominis scientiae. Men create oppositions which are not; and put them into new terms so fixed, as whereas the meaning ought to govern the term, the term in effect governeth the meaning. There be also two false peace, or unities; the one when the peace is grounded but upon an implicit ignorance; for all colours will agree in the dark: the other, when it is pieced up upon a direct admission of contraries in fundamental points. For truth and falsehood, in such things, are like the iron and clay in the toes of Nebuchadnezzar's image; they may cleave, but they will not incorporate.

Concerning the means of procuring unity; men must beware, that in the procuring or muniting of religious unity, they do not disolve and deface the laws.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

laws of charity, and of humane society. There be two swords amongst Christians, the spiritual and temporal; and both have their due office and place in the maintenance of religion. But we may not take up the third sword, which is Mahomet's sword, or like unto it; that is, to propagate religion by wars, or by fanguinary persecutions, to force conceptions; except it be in cases of overt scandal, blasphemy, or intermixture of practice against the state; much less to nourish seditions; to authorize conspiracies and revolutions; to put the sword into the peoples hands, and the like, tending to the subversion of all government, which is the ordinance of God. For this is but to dash the first table against the second; and so to consider men as Christians, as we forget that they are men. Lucretius the poet, when he beheld the act of Agamemnon, that could endure the sacrificing of his own daughter, exclaimed;

*Tantum religio potuit suadere malum.*

What would he have said, if he had known of the massacre in France, or the powder-treason of England? He would have been seven times more epicure and atheist than he was; for as the temporal sword is to be drawn with great circumspection, in cases of religion, so it is a thing monstrous to put it into the hands of the common people. Let that be left unto the anabaptists, and other furies. It was great blasphemy, when the devil said, I will ascend and be like the Highest; but it is greater blasphemy to perforate God, and bring him in saying; I will defend, and be like the prince of darknes. And what is it better to make the cause of religion to descend to the cruel and execrable actions of murdering princes, butchery of people, and subversion of states, and governments? Surely, this is to bring down the Holy Ghost, instead of the likeness of a dove, in the shape of a vulture or raven; and to set, out of the bark of a Christian church, a flag of a bark of pirates and assassins. Therefore it is most necessary, that the church by doctrine and decree; princes by their sword; and all learnings, both christian and moral, as by their mercury rod; do damn and send to hell, for ever those facts and opinions, tending to the support of the same, as hath been already in good part done. Surely in counsel, concerning religion, that counsel of the Apostle would be prefixed; *Ira hominis non implet jussitiam Dei.* And it was a notable observation of a wise father, and no less ingenuously confessed; that those which held and persuaded prejudice of confciences, were commonly interested therein themselves, for their own ends.

IV. Of revenge.

Revenge is a kind of wild justice, which the more man's nature runs to, the more ought law to weed it out. For as for the first wrong, it doth but offend the law; but the revenge of that wrong, putteth the law out of office. Certainly in taking revenge, a man is but even with his enemy; but in passing it over, he is superior: for it is a prince's part to pardon. And Solomon, I am sure, faith, *it is the glory of a man to pass by an offence.* That which is past is gone and irrevocable, and wise men have enough to do with things present and to come: therefore they do but trifle with themselves, that labour in past matters. There is no man doth a wrong for the wrong's fake; but thereby to purchase himself profit, or pleasure, or honour, or the like. Therefore why should I be angry with a man for loving himself better than me? And if any man should do wrong, mere...
ly out of ill nature, why? Yet it is but like the thorn, or bryar, which prick
and scratch, because they can do no other. The most tolerable sort of re-
venge, is for those wrongs which there is no law to remedy: but then let a
man take heed the revenge be such, as there is no law to punish; else a
man's enemy is still before-hand, and it is two for one. Some, when they take
revenge, are desirous the party should know when it cometh: this is the
more generous. For the delight seemeth to be not so much in doing the
hurt, as in making the party repent: but base and crafty cowards are like
the arrow that lieth in the dark. Caenius duke of Florence, had a desperate
saying against perfidious or neglecting friends, as if those wrongs were un-
pardonable. You shall read (faith he) that we are commanded to forgive
our enemies; but you never read, that we are commanded to forgive our
friends. But yet the spirit of Job was in a better tune; shall we (faith he)
take good at God's hands, and not be content to take evil also? And so of
friends in a proportion. This is certain, that a man that studieth revenge,
keeps his own wounds green, which otherwise would heal, and do well.
Publick revenges are for the most part fortunate; as that for the death of
Caesar; for the death of Pertinax; for the death of Henry the third of
France; and many more: but in private revenges it is not so; nay rather,
vindicative persons live the life of witches; who as they are mischievous,
so end they unfortunate.

V. Of adversity.

It was an high speech of Seneca, (after the manner of the Stoicks) that
the good things which belong to prosperity are to be wished, but the good
things that belong to adversity are to be admired: Bona rerum secundarum
optabilia, adversarum mirabilia. Certainly if miracles be the command
over nature, they appear most in adversity. It is yet a higher speech of his
than the other, (much too high for a heathen,) it is true greatness'
meet only to be admired in one the frailty of a man, and the security of a God: Vere magnus ba-
bere fragilitatem hominis, securitatem Dei. This would have done better in
poesy, where transcendencies are more allowed. And the poets indeed have
been busy with it; for it is in effect the thing which is figured in that
strange fiction of the ancient poets, which seemeth not to be without
mystery; nay, and to have some approach to the state of a Christian: That Her-
cules, when he went to unbind Prometheus (by whom humane nature is re-prefented) failed the length of the great ocean in an earthen pot or pitcher;
lively describing Christian resolution, that faileth in the frail barque of the
soul through the waves of the world. But to speak in a mean: The virtue
of prosperity, is temperance; the virtue of adversity, is fortitude; which in
morals is the more heroic virtue. Prosperity is the blessing of the Old Te-
stament; adversity is the blessing of the New, which carrieth the greater
benediction, and the clearer revelation of God's favour. Yet, even in the
Old Testament, if you listen to David's harp, you shall hear as many herc-
ulike airs as carols: and the pencil of the Holy Ghost hath labour'd more in
describing the afflictions of Job, than the felicities of Solomon. Prosperity
is not without many fears and disaffections; and adversity is not without com-
forts and hopes. We see in needle-works and embroideries, it is more plea-
sing to have a lively work upon a sad and solemn ground, than to have a
dark and melancholy work upon a lightsome ground: judge therefore of the
pleasure of the heart by the pleasure of the eye. Certainly virtue is like
precious
precious odours, most fragrant when they are incens’d, or crush’d; for
prosperity doth best discover vice, but adversity doth best discover virtue.

VI. Of simulation and dissimulation.

Dissimulation is but a faint kind of policy, or wisdom; for it asketh
a strong wit, and a strong heart, to know when to tell truth, and to do it. Therefore it is the weaker sort of politicians that are the great diffem­blers.

Tacitus saith, Livia forted well with the arts of her husband, and dif­simulation of her son; attributing arts or policy to Augustus, and dissimula­tion to Tiberius. And again, when Mucianus encourageth Vespasian to take
arms against Vitellius, he faith; we rise not against the piercing judgment of
Augustus, nor the extreme caution or closeness of Tiberius: these properties
of arts or policy, and dissimulation or closeness, are indeed habits and fa­
culties several, and to be distinguished. For if a man have that penetration
of judgment as he can discern what things are to be laid open, and what to
be secreted, and what to be chewed at half lights, and to whom and when,
(which indeed are arts of state, and arts of life, as Tacitus well calleth them)
to him, a habit of dissimulation, is a hinderance and a poorness. But if a
man cannot obtain to that judgment, then it is left to him, generally, to be
close and a dissimulaker. For where a man cannot choose, or vary in particu­
lar, there it is good to take the safest and wariest way in general; like the
going softly by one that cannot well see. Certainly the ablest men that ever
were, have had all an openness and frankness of dealing, and a name
of certainty and veracity; but then they were like horses well managed; for
they could tell passing well, when to stop or turn: and at such times, when
they thought the case indeed required dissimulation, if then they used it, it
came to pass, that the former opinion spread abroad of their good faith and
cleanness of dealing, made them almost invisible.

There be three degrees of this hiding and veiling of a man’s self. The
first closeness, reservation and secrecy, when a man leaveth himself without
observation, or without hold to be taken, what he is. The second dissimula­
tion in the negative, when a man lets fall signs and arguments, that he is
not that he is. And the third dissimulation in the affirmative, when a man
industriously and expressly feigns and pretends to be that he is not.

For the first of these, secrecy: it is indeed the virtue of a confessor; and
affuredly the secret man heareth many confessions; for who will open him­
self to a blab or a babbler; but if a man be thought secret, it inviteth dis­
covery; as the more close air sucketh in the more open: and as in confe­
sion the revealing is not for worldly use, but for the ease of a man’s heart;
so secret men come to the knowledge of many things in that kind; while
men rather discharge their minds, than impart their minds. In few words,
mysteries are due to secrecy. Befides, (to say truth) nakedness is uncomely,
as well in mind as in body; and it addeth no small reverence to mens man­
ners and actions, if they be not altogether open. As for talkers and futile
persons, they are commonly vain and credulous withal. For he that talk­
eh what he knoweth, will alfo talk what he knoweth not. Therefore set
it down, that an habit of secrecy is both politick and moral. And in this
part it is good, that a man’s face give his tongue leave to speak. For the
discovery of a man’s self, by the tracts of his countenance, is a great weak­
nesses and betraying; by how much, it is many times more marked and be­
lieved than a man’s words.

Vol. III.

For
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

For the second, which is dissimulation; it followeth many times upon secrecy, by a necessity: so that he that will be secret must be a dissimulator in some degree. For men are too cunning to suffer a man to keep an indifferent carriage between both, and to be secret, without swaying the balance on either side. They will so beset a man with questions, and draw him on, and pick it out of him, that without an absurd silence, he must show an inclination one way; or if he do not, they will gather as much by his silence, as by his speech. As for equivocations, or oracular speeches, they cannot hold out long. So that no man can be secret, except he give himself a little scope of dissimulation; which is as it were but the skirts or train of secrecy.

But for the third degree, which is simulation and false profession; that I hold more culpable and less politick, except it be in great and rare matters. And therefore a general custom of simulation, (which is this last degree) is a vice rising either of a natural fallenss, or fearfulness; or of a mind that hath some main faults; which because a man must needs disguise, it maketh him practise simulation in other things, lest his hand should be out of use.

The great advantages of simulation and dissimulation are three. First to lay asleep opposition, and to surprize. For where a man's intentions are published, it is an alarm to call up all that are against them. The second is, to referve to a man's self a fair retreat: for if a man engage himself by a manifest declaration, he must go through, or take a fall. The third is, the better to discover the mind of another. For to him that opens himself, men will hardly shew themselves adverse; but will (fair) let him go on, and turn their freedom of speech, to freedom of thought. And therefore it is a good shrewd proverb of the Spaniard, tell a lye and find a truth. As if there were no way of discovery but by simulation. There be also three disadvantages to set it even. The first, that simulation and dissimulation commonly carry with them a shew of fearfulness, which in any business doth spoil the feathers of round flying up to the mark. The second, that it puzzleth and perplexeth the conceits of many, that perhaps would otherwise co-operate with him; and makes a man walk, almost alone, to his own ends. The third and greatest is, that it depriveth a man of one of the most principal instruments for action; which is trust and belief. The best composition and temperature is, to have openness in fame and opinion; secrecy in habit; dissimulation in seasonable use; and a power to feign, if there be no remedy.

VII. Of parents and children.

The joys of parents are secret; and so are their griefs and fears: they cannot utter the one, nor they will not utter the other. Children sweeten labours; but they make misfortunes more bitter: they increase the cares of life, but they mitigate the remembrance of death. The perpetuity by generation is common to beasts; but memory, merit, and noble works, are proper to men: and surely a man shall see the noblest works and foundations have proceeded from childless men; which have sought to express the images of their minds, where those of their bodies have failed: so the care of posterity is most in them that have no posterity. They that are the first raisers of their houses, are most indulgent towards their children; beholding them as the continuance, not only of their kind, but of their work; and so both children and creatures.
THE difference in affection of parents towards their several children, is many times unequal; and sometimes unworthy; especially in the mother; as Solomon faith; a wife for rejoiceth the father; but an ungracious son flames the mother. A man shall see where there is a house full of children, one or two of the eldest respected, and the young'eft made wantons; but in the midst, some that are as it were forgotten, who many times nevertheless prove the best. The illiberality of parents in allowance towards their children, is an harmful error; makes them base; acquaints them with shifts; makes them fort with mean company; and makes them surfeit more when they come to plenty: and therefore the proof is best when men keep their authority towards their children, but not their purse. Men have a foolish manner (both parents, and schoolmasters, and servants) in creating and breeding an emulation between brothers during childhood, which many times forthwith to discord when they are men, and disturbeth families. The Italians make little difference between children and nephews, or near kinfolks; but so they be of the lump they care not, though they pass not through their own body. And, to say truth, in nature it is much a like matter; insomuch that we see a nephew sometimes resembeth an uncle, or a kinsman, more than his own parent; as the blood happens. Let parents choose betimes the vocations and courses they mean their children should take; for then they are most flexible; and let them not too much apply themselves to the disposition of their children, as thinking they will take best to that which they have most mind to. It is true, that if the affection or aptness of the children be extraordinary, then it is good not to cross it; but generally the precept is good, optimum elige, suave & facile illud faciet confuetudo. Younger brothers are commonly fortunate, but seldom or never where the elder are disinherited.

VIII. Of marriage and a single life.

He that hath wife and children, hath given hostages to fortune; for they are impediments to great enterprizes, either of virtue or mischief. Certainly, the best works, and the greatest merit for the publick, have proceeded from the unmarried, or childless men; which both in affection and means have married and endowed the publick. Yet it were great reason, that those that have children, should have greatest care of future times; unto which they know they must transmit their dearest pledges. Some there are, who though they lead a single life, yet their thoughts do end with themselves, and account future times impertinences. Nay, there are some other, that account wife and children but as bills of charges. Nay more, there are some foolish rich covetous men, that take a pride in having no children, because they may be thought so much the richer. For perhaps they have heard some talk, such a one is a great rich man; and another except to it, yea, but he hath a great charge of children: as if it were an abatement to his riches. But the most ordinary cause of a single life is liberty; especially in certain self-pleasing, and humorous minds, which are so sensible of every restraint, as they will go near to think their girdles and garters to be bonds and shackles. Unmarried men are best friends, best masters, best servants, but not always best subjects; for they are light to run away; and almost all fugitives are of that condition. A single life doth well with churchmen: for charity will hardly water the ground, where it must first fill a pool. It is indifferent for judges and magistrates: for if they be facile and corrupt, you shall have a servant five times worse than a wife.
wife. For soldiers, I find the generals commonly in their huts, put men in mind of their wives and children. And I think the despising of marriage among the Turks, maketh the vulgar soldiers more base. Certainly, wife and children are a kind of discipline of humanity: and single men, though they be many times more charitable, because their means are less exhaust; yet on the other side, they are more cruel and hard-hearted, (good to make severe inquisitors) because their tenderness is not so oft called upon. Grave natures, led by custom, and therefore constant, are commonly loving husbands; as was said of Ulysses, _etulam juam practulit immortalitati_. Chaste women are often proud and sordid, as presuming upon the merit of their chastity. It is one of the best bonds, both of chastity and obedience, in the wife, if she think her husband wise; which the less he will never do, if she find him jealous. Wives are young men's mistresses; companions for middle age; and old men's nurses. So as a man may have a quarrel to marry when he will. But yet he who is reputed one of the wise men, that made answer to the question, when a man should marry? A young man not yet, an elder man not at all. It is often seen, that bad husbands have very good wives; whether it be, that it raiseth the price of their husbands kindness when it comes; or that the wives take a pride in their patience. But this never fails, if the bad husbands were of their own choosing, against their friends content; for then they will be sure to make good their own folly.

IX. Of envy.

There be none of the affections which have been noted to fascinate or bewitch, but love and envy. They both have vehement willies; they frame themselves readily into imaginations and suggestions: and they come easily into the eye; especially upon the presence of the objects; which are the points that conduce to fascination, if any such thing there be. We see likewise, the scripture calleth envy, an evil eye: and the astrologers call the evil influences of the stars, evil aspects; so that still there seemeth to be acknowledged in the act of envy, an ejaculation, or irradiation of the eye. Nay, some have been so curious, as to note, that the times when the stroke or percussion of an envious eye doth most hurt, are, when the party envied is beheld in glory or triumph; for that sets an edge upon envy: and besides, at such times, the spirits of the person envied do come forth most into the outward parts, and do meet the blow.

But leaving these curiosities, (though not unworthy to be thought on in fit place) we will handle, what persons are apt to envy others; what persons are most subject to be envied themselves; and what is the difference between publick and private envy.

A man that hath no virtue in himself, ever envieth virtue in others. For men's minds will feed upon their own good, or upon others evil; and who wanteth the one, will prey upon the other; and who is out of hope to attain to another's virtue, will seek to come at even hand, by deprecating another's fortune.

A man that is busy and inquisitive, is commonly envious: for to know much of other men's matters cannot be, because all that ado may concern his own estate: therefore it must needs be, that he taketh a kind of play-pleasure in looking upon the fortunes of others; neither can he that mindeth but his own business, find much matter for envy. For envy is a gadding passion,
passion, and walketh the streets, and doth not keep home: *Non est curiosis, quin idem sit malevolum.*

*Men* of noble birth are noted to be envious towards new men when they rise; for the distance is altered; and it is like a deceit of the eye, that when others come on, they think themselves go back.

*Deformed* persons and eunuchs, and old men and bastards, are envious: for he that cannot possibly mend his own case, will do what he can to impair another's; except these defects light upon a very brave and herculean nature, which thinketh to make his natural wants part of his honour: in that it should be said, that an eunuch or a lame man did such great matters; affecting the honour of a miracle, as it was in *Narjes* the eunuch, and *Ageilius* and *Tamberlane*, that were lame men.

The *same* is the case of men that rise after calamities and misfortunes; for they are as men fallen out with the times; and think other men's harms a redemption of their own sufferings.

They that desire to excel in too many matters, out of levity and vain-glory, are ever envious, for they cannot want work; it being impossible, but many, in some one of those things, should surpass them. Which was the character of *Adrian* the emperor, that mortally envied poets, and painters, and artificers, in works wherein he had a vein to excel.

Lastly, near kinsfolks, and fellows in office, and those that have been bred together, are more apt to envy their equals when they are raised. For it doth upbraid unto them their own fortunes; and pointeth at them, and cometh oftener into their remembrance, and incurreth likewise more into the note of others; and envy ever redoubleth from speech and fame. *Cain's* envy was the more vile and malignant towards his brother *Abel*, because, when his sacrifice was better accepted, there was no body to look on. Thus much for those that are apt to envy.

Concerning those that are more or less subject to envy: First, persons of eminent virtue, when they are advanced, are least envied. For their fortune feemeth but due unto them; and no man envieth the payment of a debt, but rewards, and liberality rather. Again, envy is ever joined with the comparing of a man's self; and where there is no comparison, no envy; and therefore kings are not envied, but by kings. Nevertheless it is to be noted, that unworthy persons are most envied at their first coming in, and afterwards overcome it better; whereas contrariwise, persons of worth and merit are most envied, when their fortune continueth long. For by that time, though their virtue be the same, yet it hath not the same lustre; for fresh men grow up that darken it.

Persons of noble blood are least envied in their rising; for it feemeth but right done to their birth: besides, there feemeth not much added to their fortune; and envy is as the sun-beams, that beat hotter upon a bank or steep rising round, than upon a flat. And for the same reason, those that are advanced by degrees, are least envied than those that are advanced suddenly, and *per saltum*.

Those that have joined with their honour, great travels, cares, or perils, are least subject to envy: for men think that they earn their honours hardly, and pity them sometimes; and pity ever healeth envy: wherefore you shall observe, that the more deep and sober sort of politic persons, in their greatnes, are ever bemoaning themselves what a life they lead, chanting a *quanta patimur*; not that they feel it so, but only to abate the edge of envy. But this is to be understood of business that is laid upon men, and not such
such as they call unto themselves: for nothing increaseth envy more, than an unnecessary and ambitious ingrossing of business; and nothing doth extinguish envy more, than for a great person to preserve all other inferior officers in their full rights and preeminencies of their places: for by that means there be so many screens between him and envy.

Above all, those are most subject to envy, which carry the greatness of their fortunes in an insolent and proud manner; being never well but while they are shewing how great they are, either by outward pomp, or by triumphing over all opposition or competition: whereas wise men will rather do sacrifice to envy, in suffering themselves, sometimes of purpose to be crossed, and overborn in things that do not much concern them. Notwithstanding so much is true; that the carriage of greatness, in a plain and open manner, (so it be without arrogancy and vain-glory,) doth draw less envy, than if it be in a more crafty and cunning fashion. For in that course a man doth but disavow fortune, and seemeth to be conscious of his own want in worth, and doth but teach others to envy him.

Lastly, to conclude this part; as we said in the beginning, that the act of envy had somewhat in it of witchcraft, so there is no other cure of envy, but the cure of witchcraft: and that is, to remove the lot (as they call it) and to lay it upon another. For which purpose, the wiser sort of great persons bring in ever upon the stage, somebody upon whom to derive the envy that would come upon themselves; sometimes upon ministers and servants; sometimes upon colleagues and associates, and the like: and for that turn, there are never wanting some persons of violent and undertaking natures, who so they may have power and business, will take it at any cost.

Now to speak of publick envy. There is yet some good in publick envy, whereas in private there is none. For publick envy is as an ostracism, that eclipseth men when they grow too great: and therefore it is a bridle also to great ones, to keep them within bounds.

This envy, being in the Latin word invidia, goeth in the modern languages by the name of discontentment; of which we shall speak in handling sedition. It is a disease, in a state, like to infection: for as infection spreadeth upon that which is found, and tainteth it; so when envy is gotten once into a state, it traduceth even the best actions thereof, and turneth them into an ill odour; and therefore there is little won by intermingling of plausible actions: for that doth argue but a weakness and fear of envy, which hurteth so much the more, as it is likewise usual in infections; which if you fear them, you call them upon you.

This publick envy feemeth to beat chiefly upon principal officers or ministers, rather than upon kings and states themselves. But this is a sure rule, that if the envy upon the minister be great, when the cause of it in him is small; or if the envy be general in a manner upon all the ministers of an estate, then the envy (though hidden) is truly upon the state it self. And so much of publick envy or discontentment, and the difference thereof from private envy, which was handled in the first place.

We will add this in general touching the affection of envy; that of all other affections, it is the most importune and continual: for of other affections, there is occasion given but now and then; and therefore it was well said, Invidia fetlos dies non agit: for it is ever working upon some or other. And it is also noted, that love and envy do make a man pine, which other affections do not, because they are not so continual. It is also the vilest affection, and...
and the most depraved; for which cause it is the proper attribute of the devil, who is called, the envious man, that soweth tares among the wheat by night. As it always cometh to pass, that envy worketh subtly, and in the dark; and to the prejudice of good things, such as is the wheat.

X. Of love.

The stage is more beholden to love, than the life of man. For as to the stage, love is even matter of comedies, and now and then of tragedies; but in life it doth much mischief, sometimes like a fire, sometimes like a fury. You may observe, that amongst all the great and worthy persons, (whereof the memory remaineth, either ancient or recent,) there is not one that hath been transported to the mad degree of love; which shews, that great spirits, and great business, do keep out this weak passion. You must except nevertheless Marcus Antonius the half partner of the empire of Rome, and Appius Claudius the decemvir and law-giver; whereof the former was indeed a voluptuous man, and inordinate; but the latter was an affure and wise man: and therefore it seems (though rarely) that love can find entrance, not only into an open heart, but also into a heart well fortified, if watch be not well kept. It is a poor saying of Epicurus; Satis gnum alter alteri theatrum sumus: As if man, made for the contemplation of heaven, and all noble objects, should do nothing but kneel before a little idol, and make himself subject, though not of the mouth, (as beasts are) yet of the eye, which was given him for higher purposes. It is a strange thing to note the excess of this passion; and how it braves the nature and value of things by this, that the speaking in a perpetual hyperbole, is comely in nothing but in love: neither is it merely in the phrase; for whereas it hath been well said, that the arch flatterer, with whom all the petty flatterers have intelligence, is a man's self; certainly the lover is more. For there was never proud man thought so absurdly well of himself, as the lover doth of the person loved; and therefore it was well said, that it is impossible to love, and to be wise. Neither doth this weakness appear to others only, and not to the party loved, but to the loved most of all; except the love be reciprocal. For it is a true rule, that love is ever rewarded either with the reciprocal, or with an inward and secret contempt: by how much the more men ought to beware of this passion, which loseth not only other things, but it self. As for the other losses, the poet's relation doth well figure them; that he that esteemeth too much of amorous affection, quitted both riches and wisdom. This passion hath its floods in the very times of weakness, which are, great prosperity, and great adversity; though this latter hath been less observed which times kindle love, and make it more fervent, and therefore shew it to be the child of folly. They do best, who, if they cannot but admit love, yet make it keep quarter; and sever it wholly from their serious affairs and actions of life: for if it check once with business, it troubleth mens fortunes, and maketh men that they can no ways be true to their own ends. I know not how, but martial men are given to love: I think it is, but as they are given to wine; for perils, commonly ask to be paid in pleasures. There is in man's nature a secret inclination and motion towards love of others, which if it be not spent upon some one, or a few, doth naturally spread it self towards many, and maketh men become humane and charitable; as it is seen sometime in friars. Nuptial love maketh mankind; friendly love perfecteth it; but wanton love corrupteth and embaseth it.

VOL. III.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

XI. Of great place.

Men in great place are thrice servants; servants of the sovereign or state; servants of fame; and servants of business: So as they have no freedom, neither in their persons, nor in their actions, nor in their times. It is a strange desire, to seek power and to lose liberty; or to seek power over others, and to lose power over a man's self. The rising unto place is laborious; and by pains men come to greater pains; and it is sometimes base, and by indignities men come to dignities. The standing is slippery, and the regress is either a downfall, or at least an eclipse, which is a melancholy thing. Cum non sit, qui fueris, non esse, cur velis vivere? Nay, retire men cannot when they would; neither will they when it were reason: but are impatient of private evils, even in age and sickness, which require the shadow: like old townsmen, that will be still sitting at their street door, though thereby they offer age to scorn. Certainly great persons had need to borrow other men's opinions to think themselves happy; for if they judge by their own feeling, they cannot find it: but if they think with themselves what other men think of them, and that other men would fain be as they are, then they are happy as it were by report, when perhaps they find the contrary within. For they are the first that find their own griefs; though they be the last that find their own faults. Certainly men in great fortunes are strangers to themselves, and while they are in the puzzle of business, they have no time to tend their health either of body or mind. Illo morti gravis incubat, qui notus nimis omnibus, ignotus moritur sibi. In place there is licence to do good and evil; whereof the latter is a curse; for in evil the best condition is not to will; the second not to can. But power to do good, is the true and lawful end of aspiring. For good thoughts, (though God accept them) yet towards men are little better than good dreams: except they be put in act; and that cannot be without power and peace; as the vantage and commanding ground. Merit and good works is the end of man's motion; and conscience of the same, is the accomplishment of man's rest. For if a man can be partaker of God's theater, he shall likewise be partaker of God's rest. Et conversus Deus, ut uxor operare, quae fecerunt manus sua, vidit quod omnia essent bona nimis; and then the sabbath. In the discharge of thy place, set before thee the best examples; for imitation is a globe of precepts. And after a time set before thee thine own example; and examine thy self strictly, whether thou didst not best at first. Neglect not also the examples of those, that have carried themselves ill in the same place: not to set off thy self by taxing thy memory; but to direct thy self what to avoid. Reform therefore, without bravery or scandal of former times and persons; but yet let it down to thy self, as well to create good precedents, as to follow them. Reduce things to the first institution, and observe wherein and how they have degenerated; but yet ask counsel of both times; of the ancient time what is best; and of the latter time what is fittest. Seek to make thy course regular; that men may know before hand what they may expect: but be not too positive and peremptory; and express thy self well when thou digestest from thy rule. Preferve the right of thy place, but fix not questions of jurisdiction: and rather assume thy right in silence, and de facto, than voice it with claims and challenges. Preferve likewise the rights of inferior places; and think it more honour to direct in chief, than to be busy in all. Embrace and invite helps and advices, touching the execution of thy place: and do not drive away such as bring thee
thee information, as medlers; but accept of them in good part. The vi­
es of authority are chiefly four; delays, corruption, roughness, and facility. For delays; give easy access; keep times appointed; go through with that which is in hand; and interlace not business but of necessity. For corruption; do not only bind thine own hands, or thy servants hands, from taking, but bind the hands of suitors also from offering. For integrity used doth the one; but integrity professed, and with a manifest detestation of bribery, doth the other: And avoid not only the fault, but the suspicion. Whoev­er is found variable, and changeth manifestly without manifest cause, giveth suspicion of corruption. Therefore always when thou changest thine opinion or course, profess it plainly, and declare it, together with the rea­sons that move thee to change; and do not think to steal it. A servant, or a favourite, if he be inward, and no other apparent cause of esteem, is commonly thought but a by-way to close corruption. For roughness; it is a needless cause of discontent; severity breedeth fear, but roughness breedeth hate. Even reproofs from authority ought to be grave, and not taunting. As for facility, it is worse than bribery. For bribes come but now and then; but if importunity, or idle respects lead a man, he shall never be without. So Solomon saith; to respect persons is not good; for such a man will transgress for a piece of bread. It is most true that was anciently spoken, a place sheweth the man: and it sheweth some to the better, and some to the worse; omnium confen fugi; capax imperii, nisi imperasit, faith Tacitus of Galba: but of Vespasian he faith; folus imperantium Vespasianus mutatus in melius. Though the one was meant of sufficiency, the other of manners and affection. It is an assured sign of a worthy and generous spirit, whom honour amends. For honour is, or should be the place of virtue: and as in nature things move violently to their place; and calmly in their place; so virtue in ambition is violent, in authority settled and calm. All rising to great place, is by a winding stair; and if there be factions, it is good to side a man's self whilst he is in the rising; and to balance himself when he is placed. Use the memory of thy predecessor fairly and tenderly; for if thou dost not, it is a debt will sure be paid when thou art gone. If thou have colleagues, respect them, and rather call them when they look not for it, than exclude them when they have reason to look to be called. Be not too sensible, or too remembering of thy place in conversation, and private answers to suitors; but let it rather be said, when he sits in place he is another man.

XII. Of boldness.

It is a trivial grammar school text, but yet worthy a wise man's con­
sideration. Question was asked of Demosthenes, what was the chief part of an orator? He answered, action. What next? action. What next again? action. He said it that knew it best; and had by nature himself no advan­tage in that he commended. A strange thing, that that part of an orator, which is but superficial, and rather the virtue of a player, should be placed so high above those other noble parts of invention, elocution, and the rest: nay almost alone, as if it were all in all. But the reason is plain. There is in humane nature generally, more of the fool than of the wise; and there­fore those faculties by which the foolish part of mens minds is taken, are most potent. Wonderful like is the case of boldness in civil busines; what first? Boldness. What second and third? Boldness. And yet boldness is a child of ignorance and baseness, far inferior to other parts. But neverthe­
E S S A Y S  C I V I L  A N D  M O R A L.

... it doth fascinate, and bind hand and foot, those that are either shallow in judgment, or weak in courage, which are the greatest part; yea, and prevail with wise men at weak times: therefore we see it hath done wonders in popular states, but with senates and princes less; and more ever upon the first entrance of bold persons into action, than soon after; for boldness is an ill keeper of promise. Surely, as there are mountebanks for the natural body, so are there mountebanks for the politic body: men that undertake great cures, and perhaps have been lucky in two to three experiments, but want the grounds of science, and therefore cannot hold out: nay, you shall see a bold fellow many times do Mahomet's miracle. Mahomet made the people believe that he would call an hill to him, and from the top of it offa up his prayers for the observers of his law. The people assembled: Mahomet call'd the hill to come to him again and again; and when the hill stood still he was never a whit abashed, but said; if the hill will not come to Mahomet, Mahomet will go to the hill. So these men, when they have promised great matters, and failed most shamefully, yet (if they have the perfection of boldness) they will but flite it over; and make a turn, and no more ado. Certainly to men of great judgment, bold persons are a sport to behold; nay, and to the vulgar also, boldness hath somewhat of the ridiculous: for if absurdity be the subject of laughter, doubt you not but great boldness is seldom without some absurdity: especially it is a sport to see when a bold fellow is out of countenance, for that puts his face into a most shrunk and wooden posture, as needs it must; for in bashfulness the spirits do a little go and come; but with bold men, upon like occasion, they stand at a stay; like a stake at chess, where it is no mate, but yet the game cannot stir: but this last were fitter for a satyr, than for a serious observation. This is well to be weighed, that boldness is ever blind; for it seeth not dangers and inconveniences: therefore it is ill in counsel, good in execution: so that the right use of bold persons is, that they never command in chief, but be seconds, and under the direction of others. For in counsel, it is good to see dangers; and in execution not to see them, except they be very great.

XIII. Of goodness, and goodness of nature.

I take goodness in this sense, the affecting of the weal of men, which is that the Graeciens call Philanthropia; and the word humanity (as it is used) is a little too light to express it. Goodness I call the habit, and goodness of nature the inclination. This of all virtues and dignities of the mind is the greatest, being the character of the Deity; and without it man is a buffy, mischievous, wretched thing, no better than a kind of vermin. Goodness answers to the theological virtue charity, and admits no excess but error. The desire of power in excess caused the angels to fall; the desire of knowledge in excess caused man to fall; but in charity there is no excess; neither can angel or man come in danger by it. The inclination to goodness is imprinted deeply in the nature of man; insomuch, that if it incline not towards men, it will take unto other living creatures; as it is seen in the Turks, a cruel people, who nevertheless are kind to beasts, and give alms to dogs and birds: insomuch as Busbecius reporteth, a Christian boy in Constantiopolis had like to have beenstoned for gagging, in a waggishnes, a long-billed fowl. Errors indeed in this virtue of goodness or charity, may be committed. The Italians have an ungracious proverb; Tanto buon che val niente; so good, that he is good for nothing. And one of the doctors of Italy,
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

Italy, Nicholas Machiavel, had the confidence to put in writing, almost in plain terms, that the Christian faith had given up good men in prey to tho\'se that are tyrannical and unjust: which he spake, because indeed there was never law, or fact, or opinion, did so much magnify goodness, as the Christian religion doth: therefore to avoid the scandal, and the danger both, it is good to take knowledge of the errors of an habit to excellent. Seek the good of other men, but be not in bondage to their faces, or fancies; for that is but facility or foolishness, which taketh an honest mind prisoner. Neither give thou Aesop's cock a gem, who would be better pleased, and happier if he had a barley corn. The example of God teacheth the lesson truly; be

sendeth his rain, and maketh his sun to shine upon the just and the unjust; but he doth not rain wealth, nor shine honour and virtues upon men equally: common benefits are to be communicated with all, but peculiar benefits with choice. And beware, how in making the portraiture thou breakest the pattern, for divinity maketh the love of ourselves the pattern; the love of our neighbours but the portraiture: Sell all thou hast, and give it to the poor, and follow me. But fell not all thou hast, except thou come and follow me; that is, except thou have a vocation, wherein thou mayest do as much good with little means as with great: for otherwise, in feeding the streams, thou dryest the fountain. Neither is there only a habit of goodness directed by right reason; but there is in some men, even in nature, a disposition towards it; as on the other side there is a natural malignity. For there be, that in their nature do not affect the good of others. The lighter sort of malignity turneth but to a crookedness, or sordousness, or aptness to oppose, or difficulty, or the like; but the deeper sort to envy, and mere mischief. Such men, in other men's calamities, are as it were in season, and are ever on the loading part; not so good as the dogs that licked Lazarus sores, but like flies that are still buzzing upon any thing that is raw; Misantropi, that make it their practice to bring men to the bough, and yet have never a tree for the purpose in their gardens, as Timon had: such dispositions are the very errors of humane nature, and yet they are the fittest timber to make great politics of; like to knee timber that is good for ships that are ordained to be toiled, but not for building houses that shall stand firm. The parts and signs of goodness are many. If a man be gracious and courteous to strangers, it shews he is a citizen of the world, and that his heart is no island cut off from other lands, but a continent that joins to them. If he be compassionate towards the afflictions of others, it shews that his heart is like the noble tree that is wounded itself, when it gives the balm. If he easily pardons and remits offences, it shews that his mind is planted above injuries, so that he cannot be shot. If he be thankful for small benefits, it shews that he weighs mens minds, and not their trash. But above all, if he have St. Paul's perfection, that he would with to be an anathema from Christ, for the salvation of his brethren, it shews much of a divine nature, and a kind of conformity with Christ himself.

XIV. Of a king.

1. A king is a mortal god on earth, unto whom the living God hath lent his own name as a great honour; but withal told him, he should die like a man, left he should be proud and flatter himself, that God hath with his name imparted unto him his nature also.

2. Of all kind of men, God is the least beholden unto them; for he doth most for them, and they do ordinarily least for him.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

3. A king that would not feel his crown too heavy for him, must wear it every day; but if he think it too light, he knoweth not of what metal it is made.

4. He must make religion the rule of government, and not to balance the scale; for he that casteth in religion only to make the scales even, his own weight is contained in those characters, _Mene, mene, tekel, upharjin_, he is found too light, his kingdom shall be taken from him.

5. And that king that holds not religion the best reason of state, is void of all piety and justice, the supporters of a king.

6. He must be able to give counsel himself, but not to rely thereupon; for though happy events justify their counsels, yet it is better that the evil event of good advice be rather imputed to a subject than a sovereign.

7. He is the fountain of honour, which should not run with a waste pipe, left the courtiers fell the water, and then (as papists say of their holy wells) it loses the virtue.

8. He is the life of the law, not only as he is _lex loquens_ himself, but because he animateth the dead letter, making it active towards all his subjects, _praemio & poena._

9. A wise king must do less in altering his laws than he may; for new government is ever dangerous. It being true in the body politic, as in the corporal, that _omnis mutatio periculis_; and though it be the better, yet it is not without a fearful apprehension; for he that changeth the fundamental laws of a kingdom, thinketh there is no good title to a crown, but by conquest.

10. A king that letteth to sale seats of justice, oppresseth the people; for he teacheth his judges to sell justice; and _precio parata precio venditur iustitia._

11. _Bounty_ and magnificence are virtues very regal, but a prodigal king is nearer a tyrant than a parsimonious; for store at home draweth not his contemplations abroad; but want supplieth it self of what is next, and many times the next way: a king herein must be wise, and know what he may justly do.

12. That king which is not feared, is not loved; and he that is well seen in his craft, must as well study to be feared as loved; yet not loved for fear, but feared for love.

13. Therefore, as he must always re semble him whose great name he beareth, and that as in manifesting the sweet influence of his mercy on the severe froke of his justice sometimes, so in this not to suffer a man of death to live; for besides that the land doth mourn, the restraint of justice towards sin, doth more retard the affection of love, than the extent of mercy doth enflame it; and sure where love is _ill_ bestowed, fear is quite lost.

14. His greatest enemies are his flatterers; for though they ever speak on his side, yet their words still make against him.

15. The love which a king oweth to a weal publick, should not be restrained to any one particular; yet that his more special favour do reflect upon some worthy ones, is somewhat necessary, because there are few of that capacity.

16. He must have a special care of five things, if he would not have his crown to be but to him _infelix felicitas._

First, that _simulata janétitas_ be not in the church; for that is _duplex iniquitas._

Secondly,
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

SECONDLY, that *inutilis aequitas* fit not in the chancery; for that is *inepta misericordia*.

THIRDLY, that *utilis iniquitas* keep not the exchequer; for that is *crudele latrocinium*.

FOURTHLY, that *fidelis temeritas* be not his general; for that will bring but *feram poenitentiam*.

FIFTHLY, that *infidelis prudentia* be not his general; for that is *anguis sub viridi herba*.

To conclude; as he is of the greatest power, so he is subject to the greatest cares, made the servant of his people, or else he were without a calling at all.

He then that honoureth him not is next an atheist, wanting the fear of God in his heart.

XV. Of nobility.

We will speak of nobility first as a portion of an estate, then as a condition of particular persons. A monarchy, where there is no nobility at all, is ever a pure and absolute tyranny; as that of the Turks: for nobility tempers sovereignty, and draws the eyes of the people somewhat aside from the line royal. But for democracies they need it not; and they are commonly more quiet, and less subject to sedition, than where there are stirps of nobles; for men's eyes are upon the business, and not upon the persons: or if upon the persons, it is for the business sake, as fittest, and not for flags and pedigree. We see the Switzers last well, notwithstanding their diversity of religion, and of cantons: for utility is their bond, and not respect.

The United Provinces of the Low Countries, in their government, excel for where there is an equality, the consultations are more indifferent, and the payments and tributes more cheerful. A great and potent nobility addeth majesty to a monarch, but diminiseth power; and putteth life and spirit into the people, but presseth their fortune. It is well when nobles are not too great for sovereignty, nor for justice; and yet maintained in that height, as the insolvency of inferiors may be broken upon them, before it come on too fast upon the majesty of kings. A numerous nobility causeth poverty and inconvenience in a state, for it is a surcharge of expense; and besides, it being of necessity that many of the nobility fall in time to be weak in fortune, it maketh a kind of disproportion between honour and means.

As for nobility in particular persons: It is a reverend thing to see an ancient castle or building not in decay; or to see a fair timber tree found and perfect; how much more to behold an ancient noble family, which hath stood against the waves and weathers of time? for new nobility is but the act of power, but ancient nobility is the act of time. Those that are first raised to nobility, are commonly more virtuous, but less innocent, than their descendents; for there is rarely any rising, but by a commixture of good and evil arts: but it is reason the memory of their virtues remain to their posterity, and their faults die with themselves. Nobility of birth commonly abateth industry; and he that is not industrious, envieth him that is. Besides, noble persons cannot go much higher; and he that standeth at a stay, when others rise, can hardly avoid motion of envy. On the other side, nobility extinguisheth the passive envy from others towards them, because they are in possession of honour. Certainly kings that have able men of their nobility, shall find ease in employing them, and a better slide into their business: for people naturally bend to them, as born in some sort to command.

XVI. Of
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

XVI. Of seditions and troubles.

Shepherds of people had need know the kalendars of tempefts in state; which are commonly greatest when things grow to equality; as natural tempefts are greatest about the aequinocia. And as there are certain hollow blafs of wind, and secret swellings of seas, before a tempeft, so are there in states:

— Ille etiam caecos inferire tumulus
   Saepe monet, fraudesque & operta tumescre bella.

Libels, and licentious discourses against the state, when they are frequent and open; and in like fort false news often running up and down to the disadvantage of the state, and hastily embraced, are amongst the signs of troubles. Virgil giving the pedigree of fame, faith, she was sister to the giants.

Iam terra parent, ira irritata deorum,
Extremam (ut perhibent) Cœo Enceladique sororem
Propagat. ———— AEneid. IV. 177.

As if names were the reliques of seditions past: but they are no less indeed the preludes of seditions to come. Howsoever he noteth it right, that seditious tumults, and seditious names, differ no more, but as brother and sister, masculine and feminine; especially if it come to that, that the best actions of a state, and the most plausible, and which ought to give greatest contentment, are taken in ill sense and traduced: for that shews the envy great, as Tacitus faith; confata magna invidia, feu bene, feu male, gêba premunt. Neither doth it follow, that because these names are a sign of troubles, that the suppressing of them with too much severity, should be a remedy of troubles. For the despising of them many times checks them best; and the going about to stop them, doth but make a wonder long-lived. Also that kind of obedience which facitus speaketh of, is to be held suspected; Erant in officio, fed tamen qui malent mandata imperantium interpretari, quam exequi; disputing, excusing, cavilling upon mandates and directions, is a kind of shaking off the yoke, and assay of disobedience: especielly if in those disputings, they which are for the direction, speak fearfully and tenderly; and those that are against it, audaciously. Also, as Macbiavel noteth well, when princes that ought to be common parents, make themselves as a party, and lean to a side, it is as a boat that is overthrown by uneven weight on the one side: as was well seen in the time of Henry the third of France; for first, himself entred league for the extirpation of the protestants; and presently after the same league was turned upon him self. For when the authority of princes is made but an accessory to a cause; and that there be other hands that tie faster than the band of sovereignty, kings begin to be put almoft out of possession. Also, when discords, and quarrels, and factions, are carried openly and audaciously, it is a sign the reverence of government is loft. For the motions of the greatest persons in a government, ought to be as the motions of the planets under primum mobile, (according to the old opinion;) which is, that every of them is carried swiftly by the highest motion, and soily in their own motion. And therefore when great ones in their own particular motion move violently, and as Tacitus expresseth it well, liberti, quam ut imperantium meneissent; it is a sign the orbs are out of frame. For reverence
ence is that wherewith princes are girt from God, who threatneth the dis-solvung thereof; *forsam cingula regum.*

So when any of the four pillars of government are mainly shaken, or weakned, (which are religion, justice, counsel and treasure,) men had need to pray for fair weather. But let us pas from this part of predictions, (concerning which, nevertheless, more light may be taken from that which followeth,) and let us speak first of the materials of seditions; then of the motives of them; and thirdly of the remedies.

Concerning the materials of sedition. It is a thing well to be considered: for the surest way to prevent seditions, (if the times do bear it,) is to take away the matter of them. For if there be fuel prepared, it is hard to tell whence the spark shall come, that shall set it on fire. The matter of seditions is of two kinds; much poverty and much discontentment. It is certain, so many overthrown states, so many votes for troubles. *Lucan* noteth well the state of *Rome,* before the civil war;

> *Hinc usura vorax, rapidumque in tempore foenus,*
> *Hinc concius fides, & multis utile bellum.*

This same *multis utile bellum,* is an assured and infallible sign, of a state disposed to seditions and troubles. And if this poverty and broken estate in the better sort, be joined with a want and necessity in the mean people, the danger is imminent and great. For the rebellions of the belly are the worst. As for discontentments, they are in the politic body, like to humours in the natural, which are apt to gather a preternatural heat, and to enflame. And let no prince measure the danger of them, by this; whether they be just, or unjust; for that were to imagine people to be too reasonable; who do often spurn at their own good: not yet by this; whether the griefs whereupon they rise, be in fact great or small. For they are the most dangerous discontentments, where the fear is greater than the feeling. *Dolendi modus, timendi non item.* Besides, in great oppressions, the same things that provoke the patience, do withal mate the courage: but in fears it is not so. Neither let any prince or state be secure concerning discontentments, because they have been often, or have been long, and yet no peril hath ensued; for as it is true that every vapour, or fume, doth not turn into a storm; so it is nevertheless true, that storms, though they blow over divers times, yet may fall at last; and as the Spanish proverb noteth well, the cord breaketh at the least by the weakest pull.

The causes and motives of seditions are, innovation in religion, taxes, alterations of laws and customs, breaking of privileges, general oppression, advancement of unworthy persons, strangers, earths, disbanded soldiers, factions grown desperate: And whatsoever in offending people, joineth and knitteth them in a common cause.

For the remedies, there may be some general preservatives, whereof we will speak; as for the just cure, it must answer to the particular disease: and so be left to counsel, rather than rule.

The first remedy or prevention, is to remove by all means possible, that material cause of sedition, whereof we speak; which is want and poverty in the estate. To which purpose, serveth the opening, and well balancing of trade; the cherishing of manufactures; the banishing of idleness; the repressing of waste and excess by sumptuary laws; the improvement and husbanding of the soil, the regulating of prices of things vendible; the moderating of taxes and tributes, and the like. Generally it is to be foreseen,
that the population of a kingdom (especially if it be not mown down by wars) do not exceed the flock of the kingdom, which should maintain them. Neither is the population to be reckoned, only by number: for a smaller number, that spend more, and earn less, do wear out an estate, sooner than a greater number that live lower, and gather more. Therefore the multiplying of nobility, and other degrees of quality, in an over proportion, to the common people, doth speedily bring a state to necessity: and so doth likewise an overgrown Clergy; for they bring nothing to the stock; and in like manner, when more are bred scholars, than preferments can take off.

It is likewise to be remembered, that forasmuch as the increase of any estate must be upon the foreigner, (for whatsoever is somewhere gotten is somewhere lost) there be but three things which one nation feltheth unto another; the commodity as nature yieldeth it; the manufacture; and the vesture or carriage. So that if these three wheels go, wealth will flow as in a spring tide. And it cometh many times to pass, that materiam superabit opus; that the work and carriage is sooner worth than the material, and enricheth a state more; as is notably seen in the Low-Country men, who have the best mines above ground in the world.

Above all things good policy is to be used, that the treasure and moneys in a state, be not gathered into few hands. For otherwise a state may have a great stock and yet starve. And money is like muck, not good except it be spread. This is done chiefly by supprieving, or at the least, keeping a strait hand upon the devouring trades of usury, ingroffing, great pasturages, and the like.

For removing discontentments, or at least, the danger of them, there is in every state (as we know) two portions of subjects, the nobles, and the commonalty. When one of these is discontent, the danger is not great; for common people are of slow motion, if they be not excited by the greater fort; and the greater fort are of small strength, except the multitude be apt and ready to move of themselves. Then is the danger, when the greater fort do but wait for the troubling of the waters amongst the meaner, that then they may declare themselves. The poets feign, that the reft of the Gods would have bound Jupiter; which he hearing of, by the counsel of Pallas, sent for Briareus with his hundred hands to come in to his aid. An emblem no doubt to shew, how safe it is for monarchs to make sure of the good will of common people.

To give moderate liberty, for griefs and discontentments to evaporate, (so it be without too great insolency or bravery) is a safe way. For he that turneth the humours back, and maketh the wound bleed inwards, endangereth malign ulcers and pernicious impostumations.

The part of Epimetheus might well become Prometheus, in the case of discontentments, for there is not a better provision against them. Epimetheus, when griefs and evils flew abroad, at last shut the lid, and kept hope in the bottom of the vessel. Certainly the politic and artificial nourishing and entertaining of hopes, and carrying men from hopes to hopes, is one of the best antidotes against the poison of discontentments. And it is a certain sign of a wise government and proceeding, when it can hold mens hearts by hopes, when it cannot by satisfaction: and when it can handle things in such manner, as no evil shall appear fo peremptory, but that it hath some outlet of hope; which is the least hard to do, because both particular persons and
and factions are apt enough to flatter themselves, or at least to brave that which they believe not.

Also, the forethought and prevention that there be no likely or fit head, whereunto discontented persons may resort, and under whom they may join, is a known but an excellent point of caution. I understand a fit head, to be one that hath greatness and reputation; that hath confidence with the discontented party, and upon whom they turn their eyes; and that is thought discontented in his own particular; which kind of persons are either to be won and reconciled to the state, and in a just and true manner; or to be fronted with some other of the same party that may oppose them, and so divide the reputation. Generally, the dividing and breaking of all factions and combinations that are adverse to the state, and setting them at distance, or at least distrust amongst themselves, is not one of the worst remedies. For it is a desperate case, if those that hold with the proceeding of the state, be full of discord and faction; and those that are against it be entire and united.

I have noted, that some witty and sharp speeches which have fallen from princes, have given fire to seditions. Caesar did himself infinite hurt in that speech; Sylla necevit literas, non potuit dixere: for it did utterly cut off that hope which men had entertained, that he would at one time or other give over his dictatorship. Galba undid himself by that speech; legi a fe militem, non emi: for it put the soldiers out of hopes of the donative. Probus likewise by that speech, si vexero, non opus erit amplius Romano imperio militia; a speech of great despair for the soldiers; and many the like. Surely, princes had need in tender matter and ticklish times to beware what they say; especially in these short speeches which fly abroad like darts, and are thought to be shot out of their secret intentions. For as for large discourses, they are flat things, and not so much noted.

Lastly, let princes against all events, not be without some great person, one, or rather more, of military valour near unto them, for the repressing of seditions in their beginnings. For without that, there useth to be more trepidation in court upon the first breaking out of troubles, than were fit. And the state runneth the danger of that which Tacitus saith, atque animorum fuit, ut peffimum facinus auderent pauci, plures vellet, omnes patserentur. But let such military persons be assured and well reputed of, rather than factious and popular; holding also good correspondence with the other great men in the state; or else the remedy is worse than the disease.

XVII. Of atheism.

I had rather believe all the fables in the legend, and the Talmud, and the Alcoran, than that this universal frame is without mind. And therefore God never wrought miracle to convince atheism, because his ordinary works convince it. It is true, that a little philosophy inclineth man's mind to atheism; but depth in philosophy bringeth mens minds about to religion: for while the mind of man looketh upon second causes scattered, it may sometimes rest in them and go no farther; but when it beholdeth the chain of them confederate and linked together, it must needs fly to Providence and Deity. Nay even that school which is most accused of atheism, doth most demonstrate religion: that is, the school of Leucippus, and Democritus, and Epicurus. For it is a thousand times more credible, that four mutable elements, and one immutable fifth essence duly and eternally placed, need no God; than that an army of infinite small portions, or seeds unplaced,
should have produced this order and beauty without a divine marshal. The
scripture faith, The fool bath said in his heart, there is no God: it is not
said, the fool bath thought in his heart. So as he rather faith it by rote to
himself, as that he would have, than that he can thoroughly believe it, or be
perused of it. For none deny there is a God, but those for whom it maketh
that there were no God. It appeareth in nothing more, that atheism is rather
in the lip than in the heart of man, than by this; that atheists will ever be talk­
ing of that their opinion, as if they fainted in it within themselves, and would
be glad to be strengthened by the consent of others: nay more, you shall
have atheists strive to get disciples, as it faireth with other sects; and, which
is most of all, you shall have of them that will suffer for atheism, and not
reecant: whereas if they did truly think that there were no such thing as
God, why should they trouble themselves? Epicurus is charged, that he did
but dillemble for his credit's sake, when he affirmed, there were blessed na­
tures, but such as enjoyed themselves without having respect to the govern­
ment of the world. Wherein they say he did temporize, though in secret
he thought there was no God. But certainly he is traduced; for his words
are noble and divine: Non deos vulgi negare profanum; sed vulgi opiniones
diss applicare profanum. Plato could have said no more. And although
he had the confidence to deny the administration, he had not the power to
deny the nature. The Indians of the west, have names for their particular
gods, though they have no name for God: as if the heathens should have
had the names Jupiter, Apollo, Mars, &c. but not the word, Deus: which
shews, that even those barbarous people have the notion, though they have
not the latitude and extent of it. So that against atheists, the very laughters
take part with the very subtlest philosophers. The contemplative atheist
is rare; a Diogoras, a Bion, a Lucian perhaps, and some others; and yet
they seem to be more than they are; for that all that impugn a received
religion, or superstition, are by the adverse part branded with the name of
atheists. But the great atheists indeed are hypocrites; which are ever
handling holy things, but without feeling; so as they must needs be cau­
tered in the end. The causes of atheism are; divisions in religion, if
they be many; for any one main division addeth zeal to both sides; but
many divisions introduce atheism. Another is, scandal of priests; when it
is come to that which S. Bernard faith, non est jam dicere, ut populus, sic
facerdos: quia nec sic populus, ut facerdos. A third is, custom of profane
 scoffing in holy matters; which doth by little and little deface the reverence
of religion. And lastly, learned times, especially with peace and prosperity:
for troubles and adversities do more bow mens minds to religion. They that deny a God, destroy man's nobility: for certainly man is of kin
to the beasts by his body; and if he be not of kin to God by his spirit, he
is a base and ignoble creature. It destroys likewise magnanimity, and the
raising of humane nature: for take an example of a dog, and mark what
a generosity and courage he will put on, when he finds himself maintained
by a man; who to him is instead of a God, or melior natura: which cou­
rage is manifestly such, as that creature without that confidence of a better
nature than his own could never attain. So man, when he refeth and
affureth himself upon divine protection and favour, gathereth a force and
faith, which humane nature in itself could not obtain: Therefore as
atheism is in all respects hateful, so in this, that it depriveth humane na­
ture of the means to exalt itself above humane frailty. As it is in particu­
lar persons, so it is in nations: never was there such a state for magnani­
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

mity as Rome; of this state hear what Cicero faith: *Quam volumus, licet, pa-
tres conscripti; nos amemus, tamen nec numero Hispanos, nec robore Gallos, nec
calliditatem Poenos, nec artibus Graecos, nec denique hoc ipso hujus gentis & ter-
rue domestico nativoque fenfu Italos ipfos & Latinos; sed pietate, ac religione,
achte bac una sapientia, quod dorum immortallum numine, omnia regi, gu-
bernarique perfpereximus, omnes gentes nationisque superfavitius.

XVIII. Of superstition.

It were better to have no opinion of God at all, than such an opinion
as is unworthy of him: for the one is unbelief, the other is contumely:
certainly superstition is the reproach of the Deity. Plutarch faith well
to that purpose: surely (faith he) I had rather a great deal men should say
there was no such man at all as Plutarch, than that they should say, that
there was one Plutarch, that would eat his children as soon as they were
born; as the poets speak of Saturn. And as the contumely is greater to-
wards God, so the danger is greater towards men. Atheism leaves a man
to fene, to philosophy, to natural piety, to laws, to reputation; all which
may be guides to an outward moral virtue, though religion were not; but
superstition dismounts all these, and erecteth an absolute monarchy in the
minds of men. Therefore atheism did never perturb states; for it makes
men wary of themselves, as looking no farther: and we see the times in-
clined to atheism (as the time of Augustus Caes} were civil times. But
superstition hath been the confusion of many states; and bringeth in a new
primum mobile, that ravisheth all the spheres of government. The master
of superstition is the people; and in all superstition wise men follow fools;
and arguments are fitted to practice in a reverfed order. It was gravely
said by some of the prelates in the council of Trent, where the doctrine
of the schoolmen bare great sway; that the schoolmen were like astrono-
mers, which did feign eccentrics and epicycles, and such engines of orbs,
to save the phaenomena, though they knew there were no such thing; and
in like manner, that the schoolmen had framed a number of subtle and intricate axioms and theorems, to save the practice of the church. The
causes of superstition are: pleasing and fenfual rites and ceremonies: excess
of outward and pharisaical holiness: over-great reverence of traditions,
which cannot but load the church: the stratagems of prelates for their own
ambition and lucre: the favouring too much of good intentions, which
openeth the gate to conceits and novelities: the taking an aim at divine
matters by humane, which cannot but breed mixture of imaginations: and
lastly, barbarous times, especially joined with calamities and disaffters. Su-
perstition without a vail is a deformed thing: for as it addeth deformity
to an ape to be fo like a man; so the similitude of superstition to religion,
makes it the more deformed. And as wholesome meat corrupteth to little
worms; so good forms and orders corrupt into a number of petty obser-
vances. There is a superstition in avoiding superstition; when men think to
do best, if they go farther from the superstition formerly received: there-
fore care would be had, that (as it farceth in ill purings) the good be not
taken away with the bad, which commonly is done when the people is the
reformer.

XIX. Of travel.

Travel in the younger fort is a part of education; in the elder a part
of experience. He that travellereth into a countrey before he hath some
entrance
entrance into the language, goeth to school, and not to travel. That young men travel under some tutor, or grave servant, I allow well; so that he be such a one that hath the language, and hath been in the country before; whereby he may be able to tell them what things are worthy to be seen in the country where they go, what acquaintances they are to seek, what exercises or discipline the place yieldeth. For else young men shall go hooded, and look abroad little. It is a strange thing, that in sea-voyages where there is nothing to be seen but sky and sea, men should make diaries; but in land travel, wherein so much is to be observed, for the most part they omit it; as if chance were fitter to be registred than observation. Let diaries therefore be brought in use. The things to be seen and observed are: the courts of princes, especially when they give audience to ambassadors; the courts of justice while they sit and hear causes; and so of consistories ecclesiastic: the churches and monasteries, with the monuments which are therein extant: the walls and fortifications of cities and towns; and so the havens and harbours, antiquities and ruins, libraries, colleges, disputations, and lectures, where any are; shipping and navies; houses, and gardens of flate and pleasure near great cities; armories, arsenals, magazines, exchanges, burthes, ware-houses, exercises of horsemanship, fencing, training of soldiers, and the like; comedies, such whereunto the better sort of persons do resort, treasuries of jewels and robes, cabinets and rarities: and to conclude, whatsoever is memorable in the places where they go. After all which, the tutors or servants ought to make diligent enquiry. As for triumphs, masks, feasts, weddings, funerals, capital executions, and such news, men need not to be put in mind of them; yet are they not to be neglected. If you will have a young man to put his travels into a little room, and in short time to gather much, this you must do: first, as was said, he must have some entrance into the language before he goeth. Then he must have such a servant, or tutor, as knoweth the country, as was likewise said. Let him carry with him also some card or book describing the country where he travelleth, which will be a good key to his enquiry. Let him keep also a diary. Let him not stay long in one city or town, more or less as the place deserveth, but not long: nay, when he stayeth in one city or town, let him change his lodging from one end and part of the town to another, which is a great adamant of acquaintance. Let him seek after himself from the company of his country-men, and diet in such places where there is good company of the nation where he travelleth. Let him upon his moves from one place to another, procure recommendation to some person of quality residing in the place whither he removeth; that he may use his favour in those things he desireth to see or know. Thus he may abridge his travel with much profit. As for the acquaintance which is to be sought in travel, that which is most of all profitable, is acquaintance with the secretaries and employ'd men of ambassadors; for so in travelling in one country he shall suck the experience of many. Let him also see and visit eminent persons in all kinds, which are of great name abroad; that he may be able to tell how the life agreeeth with the same. For quarrels, they are with care and discretion to be avoided: they are commonly for misfortunes, healths, place, and words. And let a man beware how he keepeth company with cholericke and quarrelsome persons; for they will engage him into their own quarrels. When a traveller returneth home, let him not leave the countries where he hath travelled altogether behind him; but maintain a correspondence by letters, with those of his acquaintance which
which are of most worth. And let his travel appear rather in his discourse, than in his apparel or gesture; and in his discourse, let him be rather advised in his answers, than forward to tell stories: and let it appear that he doth not change his country manners for those of foreign parts; but only pricks in some flowers of that he hath learned abroad, into the customs of his own country.

XX. Of empire.

It is a miserable state of mind to have few things to desire, and many things to fear: and yet that commonly is the case of kings, who being at the highest, want matter of desire, which makes their minds more languishing: and have many representations of perils and shadows, which make their minds the less clear. And this is one reason also of that effect which the scripture speaketh of, that the king's heart is inscrutable. For multitude of jealousies, and lack of some predominant desire, that should mar the mind and put in order all the rest, maketh any man's heart hard to find or found. Hence it comes likewise, that princes many times make themselves desires, and set their hearts upon toys; sometimes upon a building; sometimes upon erecting of an order; sometimes upon the advancing of a person; sometimes upon obtaining excellency in some art, or feat of the hand; as Nero for playing on the harp; Domitian for certainty of the hand with the arrow; Commodus for playing at fence; Caracalla for driving chariots, and the like. This seemeth incredible unto those that know not the principle; that the mind of man is more cheered and refreshed by profiting in small things, than by standing at a stay in great. We see also that kings that have been fortunate conquerors in their first years, it being not possible for them to go forward infinitely, but that they must have some check or arrest in their fortunes; turn in their latter years to be superflitious and melancholy: as did Alexander the Great, Dioclesian, and in our memory Charles the fifth, and others: for he that is used to go forward, and findeth a stop, falleth out of his own favour, and is not the thing he was.

To speak now of the true temper of empire: it is a thing rare and hard to keep; for both temper and distemper consist of contraries. But it is one thing to mingle contraries, another to interchange them. The answer of Apollonius to Vespasian, is full of excellent instruction: Vespasian asked him, what was Nero's overthrow? He answered, Nero could touch and smile the harp well, but in government sometimes he used to wind the pins too high, sometimes let them down too low. And certain it is that nothing destroyeth authority so much, as the unequal and untimely interchange of power pressed too far, and relaxed too much.

This is true, that the wisdom of all these latter times in princes affairs, is rather fine deliveries, and shiftings of dangers and mischiefs, when they are near; than solid and grounded courses to keep them aloof. But this is but to try matters with fortune: and let men beware, how they neglect, and suffer matter of trouble to be prepared; for no man can forbid the spark, nor tell whence it may come. The difficulties in princes busines, are many and great; but the greatest difficulty, is often in their own mind. For it is common with princes (faith Tacitus) to will contradictories. Sunt plerumque regum voluntates vehementes, & inter se contrariæ. For it is the olimcim of power, to think to command the end, and yet not to endure the means.
Kings have to deal with their neighbours, their wives, their children; their prelates or clergy, their nobles, their second nobles or gentlemen; their merchants; their commons, and their men of war; and from all these arise dangers, if care and circumspection be not used.

First for their neighbours, there can no general rule be given (the occasions are so variable,) save one, which ever holdeth: which is, that princes do keep due sentinel, that none of their neighbours do overgrow so, (by encrease of territory, by embracing of trade, by approaches, or the like) as they become more able to annoy them, than they were, and this is generally the work of standing councils, to foresee, and to hinder it.

During that triumvirate of kings, king Henry the eighth of England, Francis the first, king of France, and Charles the fifth emperor, there was such a watch kept, that none of the three could win a palm of ground, but the other two would straightways balance it, either by confederation, or if need were by a war: and would not, in any wise, take up peace at interest. And the like was done by that league (which, Guicciardine saith, was the security of Italy) made between Ferdinando king of Naples, Lorenzo Medices, and Ludovicus Sforza, potentates, the one of Florence, the other of Milan. Neither is the opinion of none of the school-men to be received, that a war cannot justly be made, but upon a precedent injury, or provocation. For there is no question; but a just fear of an imminent danger, though there be no blow given, is a lawful cause of a war.

For their wives, there are cruel examples of them. Livia is infamed for the poisoning of her husband: Roxolana, Solyman’s wife, was the destruction of that renowned prince, Sultan Mustapha; and otherwise troubled his house and succession: Edward the second of England, his queen, had the principal hand in the deposing and murdering of her husband. This kind of danger is then to be feared, chiefly, when the wives have plots for the raising of their own children; or else that they be advoctresses.

For their children: the tragedies, likewise of the dangers for them, have been many: and generally, the entring of the fathers into suspicion of their children, hath been very unfortunate. The destruction of Mustapha, (that we named before) was so fatal to Solyman’s line, as the succession of the Turks from Solyman, until this day, is suspected to be untrue, and of strange blood; for that Selimus the second was thought to be supposititious. The destruction of Cripus, a young prince of rare talents, by Constantinus the great, his father, was in like manner fatal to his house, for both Constantinus and Constance, his sons, died violent deaths; and Constantius his other son did little better; who died indeed of sickness, but after that Julianus had taken arms against him. The destruction of Demetrius, son to Philip the second of Macedon, turned upon the father, who died of repentance. And many like examples there are; but few or none where the fathers had good by such destruction, except it were where the sons were up in open arms against them; as was Selimus the first against Bajazet; and the three sons of Henry the second king of England.

For their prelates, when they are proud and great, there is also danger from them: as it was in the times of Anjelmus and Thomas Becket, archbishops of Canterbury, who with their crostiers did almost try it with the king’s sword; and yet they had to deal with stout and haughty kings, William Rufus, Henry the first, and Henry the second. The danger is not from that
that state, but where it hath a dependence of foreign authority; or where the churchmen come in, and are elected, not by the collation of the king, or particular patrons, but by the people.

For their nobles; to keep them at a distance it is not amis; but to deprive them, may make a king more absolute, but less safe; and less able to perform any thing that he desires. I have noted it in my history of king Henry the seventh of England, who depressed his nobility; whereupon it came to pass that his times were full of difficulties and troubles: for the nobility, though they continued loyal unto him, yet did they not co-operate with him in his business. So that in effect he was fain to do all things himself.

For their second nobles; there is not much danger from them, being a body dispersed. They may sometimes discourse high, but that doth little hurt: besides, they are a counterpoize to the higher nobility, that they grow not too potent: and lastly, being the most immediate in authority with the common people, they do best temper popular commotions.

For their merchants, they are Vena porta; and if they flourish not, a kingdom may have good limbs, but will have empty veins, and nourish little. Taxes and imposts upon them, do seldom good to the king's revenue, for that that he wins in the hundred, he loseth in the shire; the particular rates being increased, but the total bulk of trading rather decreased.

For their commons, there is little danger from them, except it be where they have great and potent heads; or where you meddle with the point of religion, or their customs or means of life.

For their men of war, it is a dangerous state where they live and remain in a body, and are used to donatives, whereof we see examples in the janizaries and pretorian bands of Rome; but trainings of men, and arming them in several places, and under several commanders, and without donatives, are things of defence and no danger.

Princes are like to heavenly bodies, which cause good or evil times; and which have much veneration, but no rest. All precepts concerning kings are in effect comprehended in these two remembrances: memento quod es homo; and memento quod es Deus, or vice Dei: the one bridleth their power, and the other their will.

XXI. Of counsel.

The greatest trust between man and man, is the trust of giving counsel. For in other confidences, men commit the parts of life; their lands, their goods, their children, their credit, some particular affair; but to such as they make their counsellors, they commit the whole: by how much the more they are obliged to all faith and integrity. The wisest princes need not think it any diminution to their greatness, or derogation to their sufficiency, to rely upon counsel. God himself is not without: but hath made it one of the great names of his blessed son, the counsellor. Solomon hath pronounced, that in counsel is stability. Things will have their first or second agitation; if they be not tossed upon the arguments of counsel, they will be tossed upon the waves of fortune; and be full of inconstancy, doing and undoing, like the reeling of a drunken man. Solomon's son found the force of counsel, as his father saw the necessity of it. For the beloved kingdom of God was first rent and broken by ill counsel; upon which counsel there are set for our instruction, the two marks, whereby bad counsel is
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

for ever best discerned: that it was young counsel for the persons, and violent counsel for the matter.

The ancient times do set forth in figure, both the incorporation and inseparable conjunction of counsel with kings; and the wife and politic use of counsel by kings: the one, in that they say Jupiter did marry Metis, which signifieth counsel; whereby they intend, that sovereignty is married to counsel: the other in that which followeth, which was thus: they say, after Jupiter was married to Metis, she conceived by him, and was with child, but Jupiter suffered her not to stay till she brought forth, but eat her up; whereby he became himself with child, and was delivered of Pallas armed out of his head. Which monstrous fable containeth a secret of empire; how kings are to make use of their council of state: that first, they ought to refer matters unto them, which is the first begetting or impregnation; but when they are elaborate, moulded, and shaped in the womb of their counsel, and grow ripe and ready to be brought forth; that then they suffer not their counsel to go through with the resolution and direction, as if it depended on them; but take the matter back into their own hands, and make it appear to the world, that the decrees and final directions (which because they come forth with prudence and power, are resembled to Pallas armed) proceeded from themselves: and not only from their authority, but (the more to add reputation to themselves) from their head and device.

Let us now speak of the inconveniences of counsel, and of the remedies. The inconveniences that have been noted in calling and using counsel, are three. First, the revealing of affairs, whereby they become less secret. Secondly, the weakening of the authority of princes, as if they were less of themselves. Thirdly, the danger of being unfaithfully counselled, and more for the good of them that counsel, than of him that is counselled. For which inconveniences, the doctrine of Italy, and practice of France, in some kings times, hath introduced cabinet counsels; a remedy worse than the disease.

As to secrecy, princes are not bound to communicate all matters with all counsellors, but may extract and select. Neither is it necessary, that he that consulteth what he should do, should declare what he will do. But let princes beware, that the unsecreting of their affairs comes not from themselves. And as for cabinet counsels, it may be their motto; plenus marium sium: one futile person, that maketh it his glory to tell, will do more hurt, than many that know it their duty to conceal. It is true, there be some affairs which require extreme secrecy, which will hardly go beyond one or two persons besides the king: neither are those counsels unprofitable; for besides the secrecy, they commonly go on constantly in one spirit of direction without distraction. But then it must be a prudent king, such as is able to grind with a hand-mill; and those inward counsellors had need also be wise men, and especially true and trusty to the king's ends; as it was with king Henry the seventh of England, who in his greatest business imparted himself to none, except it were to Morton and Fox.

For weakening of authority; the fable sheweth the remedy. Nay, the majority of kings is rather exalted than diminished, when they are in the chair of counsel; neither was there ever prince bereaved of his dependences by his counsel, except where there hath been either an over-greatness in one counsellor, or an over-strict combination in divers; which are things soon found and holpen.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

For the last inconvenience, that men will counsel with an eye to themselves; certainly, non invenit fidem super terram, is meant of the nature of times, and not of all particular persons. There be, that are in nature, faithful and sincere, and plain and direct; not crafty and involved: let princes, above all draw to themselves such natures. Besides, counsellors are not commonly so united, but that one counsellor keepeth sentinel over another; so that if any do counsel out of faction or private ends, it commonly comes to the king's ear. But the best remedy is, if princes know their counsellors, as well as their counsellors know them:

Principis est virtus maxima nofse fios.

And on the other side, counsellors should not be too speculative into their sovereign's person. The true composition of a counsellor, is rather to be skilful in their matter's busines, than in his nature; for then he is like to advise him, and not to feed his humour. It is of singular use to princes, if they take the opinions of their counsel both separately and together: for private opinion is more free, but opinion before others is more reverend. In private, men are more bold in their own humours; and in comfort, men are more obnoxious to others humours; therefore it is good to take both: and of the inferior sort, rather in private, to preserve freedom; of the greater rather in comfort, to preserve respect. It is in vain for princes to take counsel concerning matters, if they take no counsel likewise concerning persons: for all matters are as dead images; and the life of the execution of affairs, reflect in the good choice of persons. Neither is it enough to consult concerning persons, secundum genera, as in an idea or mathematical description, what the kind and character of the person should be; for the greatest errors are committed, and the most judgment is shewn, in the choice of individuals. It was truly said, optimi consiliarii mortui; books will speak plain, when counsellors blush. Therefore it is good to be conversant in them, specially the books of such as themselves have been actors upon the stage.

The counsels at this day, in most places, are but familiar meetings; where matters are rather talked on, than debated: and they run too swift to the order or act of counsel. It were better, that in causes of weight, the matter were propounded one day, and not spoken to till the next day; in nofse consilium. So was it done in the commissioun of union, between England and Scotland; which was a grave and orderly assembly. I commend set days for petitions: for both it gives the suitors more certainty for their attendance; and it frees the meetings for matters of estate, that they may hoc agere. In choice of committees, for ripening business for the counsel, it is better to choose indifferent persons, than to make an indifferency, by putting in those that are strong on both sides. I commend also standing commissions; as for trade, for treasure, for war, for suits, for some provinces: for where there be divers particular counsels, and but one counsel of estate, (as it is in Spain) they are, in effect, no more than standing commissions; save that they have greater authority. Let such as are to inform counsels out of their particular professions, (as lawyers, sea-men, mint-men, and the like) be first heard before committees; and then, as occasion serves, before the counsel. And let them not come in multitude, or in a tribunitious manner; for that is, to clamour counsel is not to inform them. A long table and a square table, or seats about the wall, seem things of form, but are things of substance; for at a long table,
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

Table, a few at the upper end, in effect, fly all the business; but in the other form, there is more use of the counsellors opinions, that sit lower. A king when he presides in council, let him beware how he opens his own inclination too much, in that which he propoundeth: for the counsellors will but take the wind of him; and instead of giving free counsel, give him a song of placebo.

XXII. Of delays.

Fortune is like the market, where many times if you can stay a little, the price will fall. And again, it is sometimes like Sibylla's offer, which at first offereth the commodity at full, then consumeth part and part, and still holdeth up the price. For occasion (as it is in the common verfe) turneth a bald noddle, after the hath presented her locks in front, and no hold taken; or at least turneth the handle of the bottle first to be received, and after the belly, which is hard to clap. There is surely no greater wisdom, than well to time the beginnings and onsets of things. Dangers are no more light, if they once seem light; and more dangers have deceived men, than forced them. Nay, it were better to meet some dangers half way, though they come nothing near, than to keep too long a watch upon their approaches; for if a man watch too long, it is odds he will fall asleep. On the other side, to be deceived with too long shadows, (as some have been when the moon was low, and shone on their enemies back) and so to shoot off before the time; or to teach dangers to come on, by over-carly buckling towards them, is another extreme. The ripeness or unripeness of the occasion, (as we said) must ever be well weighed; and generally it is good to commit the beginnings of all great actions, to Argos with his hundred eyes; and the ends to Briareus with his hundred hands: first to watch, and then to speed. For the helmet of Pluto, which maketh the politick man go invisible, is secrecy in the counsel, and celerity in the execution. For when things are once come to the execution, there is no secrecy comparable to celerity; like the motion of a bullet in the air, which flieth so swift as it outruns the eye.

XXIII. Of cunning.

We take cunning for a sinister or crooked wisdom. And certainly there is great difference between a cunning man, and a wise man; not only in point of honesty, but in point of ability. There be that can pack the cards, and yet cannot play well; so there are some that are good in canvasses and factions, that are otherwise weak men. Again, it is one thing to understand persons, and another thing to understand matters; for many are perfect in mens humours, that are not greatly capable of the real part of business; which is the constitution of one that hath studied men more than books. Such men are fitter for practice than for counsel; and they are good but in their own ally: turn them to new men, and they have left their aim; so as the old rule, to know a fool from a wise man, Mitte ambos nudos ad ignotos, & eidebis, doth scarce hold for them. And becaufe these cunning men are like haberdashers of small wares, it is not amiss to set forth their shop.

It is a point of cunning, to wait upon him with whom you speak with your eye; as the Jesuits give it in precept: for there be many wise men that have secret hearts and transparent countenances. Yet this would be done
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

done with a demure abasing of your eye sometimes, as the Jesuits also do use.

Another is, that when you have any thing to obtain of present dispatch, you entertain and amuse the party with whom you deal with some other discourse; that he be not too much awake to make objections. I knew a counsellor and secretary, that never came to queen Elizabeth of England with bills to sign, but he would always first put her into some discourse of estate, that she might the less mind the bills.

The like surprize may be made by moving things, when the party is in haste, and cannot stay, to confer advisedly of that is moved.

If a man would crofs a business, that he doubts some other would handomely and effectually move, let him pretend to wish it well, and move it himself in such sort as may foil it.

The breaking off in the midst of that one was about to say, as if he took himself up, breeds a greater appetite in him with whom you confer, to know more.

And because it works better when any thing seemeth to be gotten from you by question, than if you offer it of your self, you may lay a bait for a question, by shewing another village and countenance than you are wont; to the end, to give occasion for the party to ask what the matter is of the change; as Nebemias did, and I had not before that time been had before the king.

In things that are tender and displeasing, it is good to break the ice by some whose words are of less weight, and to reserve the more weighty voice to come in as by chance, so that he may be asked the question upon the other's speech: As Narcissus did, in relating to Claudius the marriage of Messalina and Silius.

In things that a man would not be seen in himself, it is a point of cunning to borrow the name of the world; as to say, the world says, or, there is a speech abroad.

I knew one, that when he wrote a letter, he would put that which was most material in the postscript, as if it had been a by-matter.

I knew another, that when he came to have speech, he would pass over that that he intended most; and go forth, and come back again, and speak of it as of a thing that he had almost forgot.

Some procure themselves to be surprized, at such times as it is like the party that they work upon, will suddenly come upon them: and to be found with a letter in their hand, or doing somewhat which they are not accustomed; to the end they may be appoised of those things, which of themselves they are defirous to utter.

It is a point of cunning, to let fall those words in a man's own name, which he would have another man learn and use, and thenceupon take advantage. I knew two that were competitors for the secretary's place in queen Elizabeth's time, and yet kept good quarter between themselves, and would confer one with another upon the busines; and the one of them said, that to be a secretary in the declination of a monarchy, was a ticklish thing, and that he did not affect it: the other strait caught up those words, and discoursed with divers of his friends, that he had no reason to desire to be secretary in the declination of a monarchy. The first man took hold of it, and found means it was told the queen; who hearing of a declination of a monarchy, took it so ill, as the would never after hear of the other's suit.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

There is a cunning which we in England call, the turning of the cat in the pan; which is, when that which a man says to another, he lays it as if another had said it to him; and so to say, it is not easy when such a matter passed between two, to make it appear from which of them it first moved and began.

It is a way that some men have, to glance and dart at others, by justifying themselves by negatives; as to say, this I do not: as Tigellinus did towards Burrhus, je non diversas spes, sed incoluitatem imperatoris simpliciter speverare.

Some have in readiness so many tales and stories, as there is nothing they would insinuate, but they can wrap it into a tale; which serveth both to keep themselves more in guard, and to make others carry it with more pleasure.

It is a good point of cunning, for a man to shape the answer he would have in his own words and propositions; for it makes the other party stick the less.

It is strange how long some men will lie in wait to speak somewhat they desire to say; and how far about they will fetch, and how many other matters they will beat over to come near it; it is a thing of great patience, but yet of much use.

A sudden, bold, and unexpected question, doth many times surprize a man, and lay him open. Like to him, that having changed his name, and walking in Paul's, another suddenly came behind him and called him by his true name, whereat straightways he looked back.

But these small wares and petty points of cunning are infinite, and it were a good deed to make a list of them; for that nothing doth more hurt in a state, than that cunning men pass for wise.

But certainly some there are that know the reforts and falls of business, that cannot sink into the main of it; like a house that hath convenient stairs and entries, but never a fair room. Therefore you shall see them find out pretty loose in the conclusion, but are no ways able to examine or debate matters. And yet commonly they take advantage of their inability, and would be thought wits of direction. Some build rather upon the abusing of others, and (as we now say) putting tricks upon them, than upon foundness of their own proceedings. But Solomon saith, Prudens advertit ad greffus fios: stultus divertit ad dolos.

XXIV. Of wisdom for a man's self.

An ant is a wise creature for itself: but it is a shrewd thing in an orchard or garden. And certainly men that are great lovers of themselves waffle the publick. Divide with reason between self-love and society; and be so true to thy self, as thou be not false to others; especially to thy king and country. It is a poor center of a man's actions, himself. It is right earth. For that only stands fast upon his own center; whereas all things that have affinity with the heavens, move upon the center of another which they benefit. The referring of all to a man's self, is more tolerable in a sovereign prince, because themselves are not only themselves, but their good and evil is at the peril of the publick fortune. But it is a desperate evil in a servant to a prince, or a citizen in a republick. For whatsoever affairs pass such a man's hands, he crooketh them to his own ends: which must needs be often eccentric to the ends of his master or state. Therefore let princes or states chuse such servants as have not this mark; except they mean their service should
should be made but the accessory. That which maketh the effect more pernicious is, that all proportion is lost: it were disproportion enough for the servant's good, to be preferred before the master's; but yet it is a greater extreme, when a little good of the servant, shall carry things against a great good of the master's. And yet that is the case of bad officers, treasurers, embausadors, generals, and other false and corrupt servants; which set a bias upon their bowl of their own petty ends and envies, to the overthrow of their masters great and important affairs. And for the most part, the good such servants receive, is after the model of their own fortune; but the hurt they fell for that good, is after the model of their masters fortune. And certainly it is the nature of extreme self-lovers, as they will set an house on fire, and it were but to roast their eggs: and yet these men many times hold credit with their masters, because their study is but to please them, and profit themselves: and for either respect they will abandon the good of their affairs.

Wisdom for a man's self, is in many branches thereof a depraved thing. It is the wisdom of rats, that will be sure to leave a house somewhat before it fall. It is the wisdom of the fox, that thrusts out the badger, who dug and made room for him. It is the wisdom of crocodiles, that shed tears when they would devour. But that which is specially to be noted is, that those which (as Cicero says of Pompey) are, fui amantes jine riviali, are many times unfortunate. And whereas they have all their time sacrificed to themselves, they become in the end themselves sacrifices to the inconstancy of fortune, whose wings they thought by their self-will to have pinioned.

XXV. Of innovations.

As the births of living creatures at first are ill shapen; so are all innovations which are the births of time. Yet notwithstanding as those that first bring honour into their family, are commonly more worthy than most that succeed: so the first precedent (if it be good) is seldom attained by imitation. For ill, to man's nature, as it stands perverted, hath a natural motion strongest in continuance: but good, as a forced motion, strongest at first. Surely every medicine is an innovation, and he that will not apply new remedies, must expect new evils; for time is the greatest innovator: and if time of course alter things to the worse, and wisdom and counsel shall not alter them to the better, what shall be the end? It is true, that what is settled by custom, though it be not good, yet at least it is fit. And those things which have long gone together, are, as it were, confederate within themselves: whereas new things piece not so well; but though they help by their utility, yet they trouble by their inconformity. Besides, they are like strangers, more admired, and less favoured. All this is true if time stood still; which contrariwise moveth so round, that a froward retention of custom is as turbulent a thing, as an innovation; and they that reverence too much old times are but a scorn to the new. It were good therefore, that men in their innovations would follow the example of time itself, which indeed innovateth greatly, but quietly and by degrees scarce to be perceived: for otherwise whatsoever is new is unlooked for; and ever it mends some, and pairs other; and he that is holpen takes it for a fortune, and thanks the time; and he that is hurt, for a wrong, and imputeth it to the author. It is good also not to try experiments in fates, except the necessity be urgent, or the utility evident; and well to beware that it be the reformation that draweth
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

on the change; and not the desire of change that pretendeth the reformation. And lastly, that the novelty, though it be not rejected, yet be held for a suspect: and as the scripture faith, That we make a stand upon the ancient way, and then look about us, and discover what is the strait and right way, and so to walk in it.

XXVI. Of dispatch.

AFFECTED dispatch is one of the most dangerous things to business that can be. It is like that which the physicians call predigestion, or hafty digestion; which is sure to fill the body full of crudities, and secret feeds of diseases. Therefore measure not dispatch by the times of sitting, but by the advancement of the busineses. And as in races, it is not the large stride, or high lift, that makes the speed; so in busineses, the keeping close to the matter, and not taking of it too much at once, procureth dispatch. It is the care of some, only to come off speedily for the time; or to contrive some false periods of business, because they may seem men of dispatch. But it is one thing to abbreviate by contracting, another by cutting off; and busineses so handled at several sittings or meetings, goeth commonly backward and forward in an unsteady manner. I knew a wise man that had it for a by-word, when he saw men haften to a conclusion, say a little, that we may make an end the sooner.

On the other side, true dispatch is a rich thing. For time is the measure of business, as money is of wares: and business is bought at a dear hand, where there is small dispatch. The Spartans and Spaniards have been noted to be of small dispatch: Mi venga la muerte de Spagna; let my death come from Spain; for then it will be sure to be long in coming.

Give good hearing to those that give the first information in business; and rather direct them in the beginning, than interrupt them in the continuance of their speeches: for he that is put out of his own order, will go forward and backward, and be more tedious while he waits upon his memory, than he could have been if he had gone on in his own course. But sometimes it is seen, that the moderator is more troublesome than the actor.

.Iterations are commonly los of time: but there is no such gain of time, as to iterate often the state of the question; for it chafeth away many a frivolous speech as it is coming forth. Long and curious speeches are as fit for dispatch, as a robe or mantle with a long train is for race. Prefaces, and passages, and excusations, and other speeches of reference to the person, are great waistes of time; and though they seem to proceed of modesty, they are bravery. Yet beware of being too material, when there is any impediment or obstruction in mens wills; for preoccupation of mind ever requireth preface of speech; like a fomentation to make the unguent enter.

Above all things, order, and distribution, and singling out of parts, is the life of dispatch; so as the distribution be not too subtile: for he that doth not divide, will never enter well into business; and he that divideth too much, will never come out of it clearly. To chufe time, is to save time; and an unseasonable motion is but beating the air. There be three parts of busineses; the preparation, the debate or examination, and the perfection. Whereof, if you look for dispatch, let the middle only be the work of many, and the first and last the work of few. The proceeding upon somewhat conceived in writing, doth for the moft part facilitate dispatch: for
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

for though it should be wholly rejected, yet that negative is more pregnant of direction, than an indefinite; as affes are more generative than duf.

XXVII. Of seeming wise.

It hath been an opinion, that the French are wiser than they seem; and the Spaniards seem wiser than they are. But howsoever it be between nations, certainly it is so between man and man. For as the Apostle faith of godliness, having a show of godliness, but denying the power thereof; so certainly there are in points of wisdom and sufficiency, that do nothing or little very solemnly; magno conatu nugas. It is a ridiculous thing, and fit for a fatur to perons of judgment, to fee what shifts these formalists have, and what prospectives to make superficies to seem body that hath depth and bulk. Some are so close and referred, as they will not shew their wares but by a dark light; and seem always to keep back somewhat; and when they know within themselves, they speak of that they do not well know, would nevertheless seem to others, to know of that which they may not well speak. Some help themselves with countenance and gesture, and are wise by signs; as Cicero faith of Pijo, that when he answered him, he fetched one of his brows up to his forehead, and bent the other down to his chin: respondes, altero ad frontem jublato, altero ad mentum depresso supercilio, crudelitatem tibi non placere. Some think to bear it by speaking a great word, and being peremptory; and go on, and take by admittance that which they cannot make good. Some, whatever is beyond their reach, will seem to despise or make light of it as impertinent or curious; and so would have their ignorance seem judgment. Some are never without a difference, and commonly by amusing men with a subtility, blanch the matter; of whom A.Gellius faith, hominem delirum, qui verborum minulis rerum frangit pondera. Of which kind also, Plato in his Protagoras bringeth in Prodicus in scorn, and maketh him make a speech that consisteth of distinctions from the beginning to the end. Generally such men in all deliberations find ease to be of the negative side, and affect a credit to object and foretell difficulties: for when propositions are denied, there is an end of them; but if they be allowed, it requireth a new work: which false point of wisdom is the bane of godliness. To conclude, there is no decaying merchant, or inward beggar, hath so many tricks to uphold the credit of their wealth, as these empty persons have to maintain the credit of their sufficiency. Seeming wise men may make shift to get opinion; but let no man chule them for employment, for certainly you were better take for business a man somewhat absurd, than over-formal.

XXVIII. Of friendship.

It had been hard for him that spake it, to have put more truth and untruth together, in few words, than in that speech; whosoever is delighted in solitude, is either a wild beast, or a god. For it is most true, that a natural and secret hatred, and averation towards society, in any man, hath somewhat of the savage beast: but it is most untrue, that it should have any character at all of the divine nature, except it proceed, not out of a pleasure in solitude, but out of a love and desire to sequester a man's self for a higher conversation: such as is found to have been falsely and feignedly, in some of the heathen; as Epimenides the Candiuan, Numa the Roman, Epavedes the Sicilian, and Apollonius of Tyana; and truly and really, in divers of the ancient hermits, and holy fathers of the church. But little do men perceive
perceive what solitude is, and how far it extendeth. For a crowd is not company, and faces are but a gallery of pictures; and talk but a tinkling cymbal, where there is no love. The Latin adage meeteth with it a little; *magna civitas, magna solitudo*; because in a great town friends are scatter ed, so that there is not that fellowship, for the most part, which is in less neighbourhoods. But we may go farther, and affirm most truly, that it is a mere and miserable solitude, to want true friends, without which the world is but a wilderness. And even in this sense also of solitude, whoever in the frame of his nature and affections is unfit for friendship, he taketh it of the beast, and not from humanity.

A principal fruit of friendship, is the ease and discharge of the fulness of the heart, which passions of all kinds do cause and induce. We know divers of stoppings and suffocations, are the most dangerous in the body; and it is not much otherwise in the mind: you may take farzta to open the liver; fleel to open the spleen; flower of sulphur for the lungs; *caustorem* for the brain; but no receipt openeth the heart but a true friend, to whom you may impart griefs, joys, fears, hopes, suspicions, counsels, and whatsoever lieth upon the heart, to oppress it, in a kind of civil shift or confusion.

It is a strange thing to observe, how high a rate great kings and monarchs do set upon this fruit of friendship, whereof we speak; so great, as they purchase it many times at the hazard of their own safety and greatnes. For princes, in regard of the distance of their fortune, from that of their subjects and servants, cannot gather this fruit, except (to make themselves capable thereof) they raise some persons to be as it were companions, and almost equals to themselves; which many times forteth to inconvenience. The modern languages give unto such persons the name of favourites, or privadoes; as if it were matter of grace or conversation: but the Roman name attaineth the true use and cause thereof; naming them *particps cura-rum*; for it is that which tieth the knot. And we see plainly, that this hath been done, not by weak and passionate princes only, but by the wisest and most politic that ever reigned, who have oftentimes joined to themselves some of their servants, whom both themselves have called friends, and allowed others likewise to call them in the same manner, using the word which is received between private men.

L. Sylla, when he commanded Rome, raised Pompey (after surnamed the great) to that height, that Pompey vaunted himself for Sylla's over-match. For when he had carried the confulsiphip for a friend of his, against the pursuit of Sylla, and that Sylla did a little resent thereat, and began to speak great, Pompey turned upon him again, and in effect bad him be quiet; for that more men adored the sun rising, than the sun setting. With Julius Cae sar, Decimus Brutus had obtained that interest, as he let him down in his testament, for heir in remainder after his nephew. And this was the man that had power with him, to draw him forth to his death. For when Cæsar would have discharged the senate, in regard of some ill presages, and specially a dream of Calpurnia; this man lifted him gently by the arm out of his chair, telling him, he hoped he would not dismiss the senate, till his wife had dream'd a better dream. And it seemeth, his favour was so great, as Antonius in a letter, which is recited verbatim, in one of Cicero's Philippicks, called him *venefica*, witch; as if he had enchanted Cæsar. Augustus called Agrippa (though of mean birth) to that height, as when he consulted with Mecaenas about the marriage of his daughter Julia, Mecaenas took
took the liberty to tell him, that he must either marry his daughter to A- grippa, or take away his life; there was no third way, he had made him so great. With Tiberius Caesar, Sejanus had ascended to that height, as they two were termed and reckoned, as a pair of friends. Tiberius in a letter to him faith; haec pro amicitia noftra non occultavi: And the whole senate dedicated an altar to friendship, as to a goddess, in respect of the great dearness of friendship between them two. The like or more was between Septimius Severus and Plantianus. For he forced his eldest son to marry the daughter of Plantianus; and would often maintain Plantianus, in doing affronts to his son; and did write also in a letter to the senate, by these words; I love the man so well, as I will have him over-live me. Now if these princes had been as a Trajan, or a Marcus Aurelius, a man might have thought that this had proceeded of an abundant goodness of nature; but being men so wise, of such strength and severity of mind, and so extreme lovers of themselves, as all these were; it proved most plainly, that they found their own felicity (though as great as ever happened to mortal men) but as an half piece, except they might have a friend to make it entire; and yet, which is more, they were princes, that had wives, sons, nephews; and yet all these could not supply the comfort of friendship.

It is not to be forgotten what Comminius observeth, of his first master duke Charles the Hardy, namely, that he would communicate his secrets with none; and least of all, those secrets which troubled him most. Whereupon he goeth on, and faith; that towards his latter time, that closeness did impair, and a little perish his understanding. Surely Comminius might have made the same judgment also, if it had pleased him, of his second master Lewis the eleventh, whose closeness was indeed his tormenter. The parable of Pythagoras is dark, but true; cor ne edite, eat not the heart. Certainly, if a man would give it a hard phrase, those that want friends to open themselves unto, are cannibals of their own hearts. But one thing is most admirable, (wherewith I will conclude this first fruit of friendship) which is, that this communicating of a man's self to his friend, works two contrary effects; for it redoubleth joys, and cutteth griefs in halves. For there is no man that imparteth his joys to his friend, but he joyeth the more; and no man that imparteth his griefs to his friend, but he grieveth the less. So that it is in truth of operation upon a man's mind, of like virtue, as the alchemists use to attribute to their stone, for man's body; that it worketh all contrary effects, but still to the good and benefit of nature. But yet, without praying in aid of alchemists, there is a manifest image of this in the ordinary course of nature. For in bodies, union strengtheneth and cherisheth any natural action; and, on the other side, weakeneth and dullefeth any violent impression; and even so is it of minds.

The second fruit of friendship, is healthful and sovereign for the understanding, as the first is for the affections. For friendship maketh indeed a fair day in the affections, from storms and tempests; but it maketh daylight in the understanding, out of darknesse and confusion of thoughts: neither is this to be understood only of faithful counsel, which a man receiveth from his friend; but before you come to that, certain it is, that whoever hath his mind fraught with many thoughts, his wits and understanding do clarify and break up in the communicating and discoursing with another; he tosseth his thoughts more easily, he marshalleth them more orderly; he seeth how they look when they are turned into words; finally, he waxeth wiser than himself; and that more by an hour's discourse, than by a V O L .  III. U 2  d a y ' s
day's meditation. It was well said by Themistocles to the king of Persia, that speech was like cloth of Arras, opened and put abroad, whereby the imagery doth appear in figure; whereas in thoughts they lie but as in packs. Neither is this second fruit of friendship, in opening the understanding, restrained only to such friends, as are able to give a man council, (they indeed are best;) but even, without that, a man learneth of himself, and bringeth his own thoughts to light, and wheteth his wits as against a stone, which it self cuts not. In a word; a man were better relate himself to a statue, or picture, than to suffer his thoughts to pass in smother.

And now, to make this second fruit of friendship compleat, that other point which lieth more open, and falleth within vulgar observation; which is faithful counsel from a friend. Heraclitus saith well in one of his enigmas, dry light is ever the best. And certain it is, that the light that a man receiveth by counsel from another, is drier and purer, than that which cometh from his own understanding and judgment; which is ever infused and drenched in his affections and customs. So as there is as much difference between the counsel that a friend giveth, and that a man giveth himself, as there is between the counsel of a friend, and of a flatterer. For there is no such flatterer as is a man's self; and there is no such remedy against flattery of a man's self, as the liberty of a friend. Counsel is of two sorts; the one concerning manners, the other concerning business. For the first, the best preparative to keep the mind in health, is the faithful admonition of a friend. The calling of a man's self to a strict account, is a medicine sometimes too piercing and corrosive. Reading good books of morality, is a little flat and dead. Observing our faults in others, is sometimes improper for our case: But the best receipt (best, I say, to work, and best to take) is the admonition of a friend. It is a strange thing to behold what errors; and extreme absurdities many (especially of the greater sort) do commit, for want of a friend to tell them of them; to the great damage both of their fame and fortune. For, as St. James saith, they are as men that look sometimes into a glass, and presently forget their own shape and favour: as for business, a man may think if he will, that two eyes see no more than one; or that a gamester seeth always more than a looker on; or that a man in anger, is as wise as he that hath said over the four and twenty letters; or that a musket may be shot off, as well upon the arm, as upon a reft; and such other fond and high imaginations, to think himself all in all. But when all is done, the help of good counsel is that which fetteth business strait. And if any man think, that he will take counsel, but it shall be by pieces; asking counsel in one business of one man, and in another business of another man; it is as well (that is to say, better perhaps than if he asked none at all;) but he runneth two dangers: one, that he shall not be faithfully counselled; for it is a rare thing, except it be from a perfect and entire friend, to have counsel given, but such as shall be bowed and crooked to some ends which he hath that giveth it. The other, that he shall have counsel given, hurtful and unsafe, (though with good meaning) and mixt partly of mischief, and partly of remedy: even as if you would call a physician that is thought good for the cure of the disease you complain of, but is unacquainted with your body; and therefore may put you in way for a present cure, but overthroweth your health in some other kind, and so cure the disease and kill the patient. But a friend that is wholly acquainted with a man's estate, will beware byfurthering any present business, how he dasheth upon
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

... upon other inconvenience. And therefore rest not upon scattered counsels; they will rather distract and mislead, than settle and direct.

After these two noble fruits of friendship, (peace in the affections, and support of the judgment) followeth the last fruit, which is like the pomegranate, full of many kernels; I mean aid, and bearing a part in all actions and occasions. Here the best way to represent to life the manifold use of friendship, is to cast and see how many things there are which a man cannot do himself; and then it will appear that it was a sparing speech of the ancients to say, that a friend is another himself: for that a friend is far more than himself. Men have their time, and die many times in desire of some things which they principally take to heart; the bestowing of a child, the finishing of a work, or the like. If a man have a true friend, he may rest almost secure, that the care of those things will continue after him. So that a man hath as it were two lives in his desires. A man hath a body, and that body is confined to a place; but where friendship is, all offices of life are as it were granted to him and his deputy: For he may exercise them by his friend. How many things are there, which a man cannot, with any face or comeliness, say or do himself? A man can scarce allege his own merits with modesty, much less extol them: a man cannot sometimes brook to supplicate or beg; and a number of the like. But all these things are graceful in a friend's mouth, which are blushing in a man's own. So again, a man's person hath many proper relations, which he cannot put off. A man cannot speak to his son, but as a father; to his wife, but as a husband; to his enemy, but upon terms: whereas a friend may speak as the case requires, and not as it sorts with the person. But to enumerate these things were endless: I have given the rule, where a man cannot suitly play his own part; if he have not a friend, he may quit the stage.

XXIX. Of expence.

Riches are for spending; and spending for honour and good actions. Therefore extraordinary expence must be limited by the worth of the occasion: for voluntary undoing may be as well for a man's country, as for the kingdom of heaven. But ordinary expence ought to be limited by a man's estate, and governed with such regard as it be within his compass; and not subject to deceit and abuse of servants; and ordered to the best show, that the bills may be less than the estimation abroad. Certainly if a man will keep but of even hand, his ordinary expences ought to be but to the half of his receipts. And if he think to wax rich, but to the third part. It is no balanefs for the greatest, to descend and look into their own estate. Some forbear it, not upon negligence alone, but doubting to bring themselves into melancholy, in respect they shall find it broken. But wounds cannot be cured without searching. He that cannot look into his own estate at all, had need both chuse well those whom he employeth, and change them often: for new are more timorous, and less subtle. He that can look into his estate but seldom, it behoveth him to turn all to certainties. A man had need, if he be plentiful in some kind of expence, to be as saving again in some other. As if he be plentiful in diet, to be saving in apparel: if he be plentiful in the hall, to be saving in the stable: and the like. For he that is plentiful in expences of all kinds, will hardly be preferred from decay. In clearing of a man's estate, he may as well hurt himself in being in too sudden, as in letting it run on too long: For haughty felling is commonly as disadvantageable as interest. Besides, he that clears at once will relapse; for...
for finding himself out of straits, he will revert to his customs: but he
that cleareth by degrees induceth a habit of frugality, and gaineth as well
upon his mind as upon his estate. Certainly, who hath a state to re-
pair, may not despise small things: and commonly, it is les dishonourable
to abridge petty charge, than to stoop to petty gettings. A man ought
warily to begin charges, which once begun will continue; but in matters
that return not, he may be more magnificent.

XXX. Of the true greatness of kingdoms and estates.

The speech of Themistocles the Athenian, which was haughty and arro-
gant in taking so much to himself, had been a grave and wise observation
and cenfure, applied at large to others. Defiring at a feast to touch a lute,
he said, he could not fiddle, but yet he could make a small town a great
city. These words (holpen a little with a metaphor) may express two dif-
fering abilities, in those that deal in busines of estate. For if a true survey
be taken of counsellors and statesmen, there may be found (though rarely)
those, which can make a small state great, and yet cannot fiddle: as on the
other side, there will be found a great many that can fiddle very cunningly,
but yet are so far from being able to make a small state great, as their gift lieth
the other way: to bring a great and flourishing estate to ruin and decay. And
certainly those degenerate arts and shifts, whereby many counsellors and
governours gain both favour with their masters, and effimation with the
vulgar, deserve no better name than fiddling; being things rather pleasing
for the time, and graceful to themselves only, than tending to the weal and
advancement of the estate which they serve. There are also (no doubt)
counsellors and governours which may be held sufficient, ( negotiis pares)
able to manage affairs, and to keep them from precincts and manifest in-
conveniences; which nevertheless are far from the ability to raise and
amplify an estate, in power, means, and fortune. But be the workmen
what they may be, let us speak of the work; that is, the true greatness
of kingdoms and estates; and the means thereof. An argument fit for
great and mighty princes to have in their hand; to the end, that neither
by over-measuring their forces, they lose themselves in vain enterprises;
nor on the other side by under-valuing them, they descend to fearful and
puflilannious counsels.

The greatness of an estate in bulk and territory, doth fall under mea-
sure; and the greatness of finances and revenue doth fall under computa-
tion. The population may appear by musiers; and the number and
greatness of cities and towns by cards and maps. But yet there is not any
thing amongst civil affairs more subject to error, than the right valuation
and true judgment concerning the power and forces of an estate. The
kingdom of heaven is compared, not to any great kernel or nut, but to a
grain of mustard-feed: which is one of the least grains, but hath in it a
property and spirit hastily to get up and spread. So are there stales, great
in territory, and yet not apt to enlarge or command; and some that have
but a small dimension of item, and yet apt to be the foundation of great
monarchies.

Walled towns, stor'd arsenals and armories, goodly races of horse,
chariots of war, elephants, ordnance, artillery, and the like: all this is but
a sheep in a lion's skin, except the breed and disposition of the people be
stout and warlike. Nay, number (it self) in armies, importeth not much,
where the people is of weak courage: for (as Virgil faith) it never troubles a
wolf
wolf how many the sheep be. The army of the Persians, in the plains of Arbela, was such a vast sea of people, as it did somewhat afohnish the commanders in Alexander's army; who came to him therefore, and wish'd him to set upon them by night; but he answered, he would not pilfer the victory: and the defeat was easy. When Tigranes the Armenian, being encamped upon a hill with four hundred thousand men, discovered the army of the Romans, being not above fourteen thousand marching towards him; he made himself merry with it, and said, yonder men are too many for an ambaifage, and too few for a fight. But before the sun set, he found them enow to give him the chase, with infinite slaughter. Many are the examples of the great odds between number and courage: so that a man may truly make a judgment, that the principal point of greatness in any state, is to have a race of military men. Neither is money the finews of war, (as it is trivially said,) where the finews of mens arms, in base and effeminate people, are failing. For Solon {aid well to Croesus, (when in ofientation he fhewed him his gold,) Sir, if any other come that hath better iron than you, he will be master of all this gold. Therefore let any prince or state think soberly of his forces, except his militia of natives be of good and valiant soldiers. And let princes, on the other side, that have subjects of martial disposition, know their own strength; unless they be otherwife wanting unto themselves. As for mercenary forces, (which is the help in this cafe) all examples tell, that whatfoever estate or prince doth reft upon them, he may spread his feathers for a time, but he will mew them soon after.

The blessing of Judah and Ijachar will never meet; that the same people, or nation, should be both the lion's whelp, and the aš between burthens. Neither will it be, that a people over-laid with taxes should ever become valiant and martial. It is true, that taxes levied by consent of the estate, do abate mens courage less; as it hath been seen notably in the exercises of the Low Countries; and in some degree, in the subsidies of England. For you must note, that we fpeak now of the heart, and not of the purse. So that although the same tribute and tax, laid by consent, or by imposing, be all one to the purse, yet it works diversly upon the courage. So that you may conclude, that no people, over-charged with tribute, is fit for empire.

Let states that aim at greatness, take heed how their nobility and gentlemen do multiply too fast: for that maketh the common subject grow to be a peafant, and base swain, driven out of heart, and in effect but a gentleman's labourer. Even as you may fee in coppice woods; if you leave your staddles too thick, you shall never have clean underwood, but thrushes and bullies. So in countries, if the gentlemen be too many, the commons will be base; and you will bring it to that, that not the hundred poll will be fit for an helmet; especially as to the infantry, which is the nerve of an army: and so there will be great population, and little strength. This, which I speak of, hath been no where better seen, than by comparing of England and France; whereof England, though far lefs in territory and population, hath been (neverthelefs) an overmatch; in regard the middle people of England make good soldiers, which the peafants of France do not. And herein the device of king Henry the seventh, (whereof I have spoken largely in the history of his life) was profound and admirable; in making farms, and houses of husbandry, of a standard; that is, maintained with such a proportion of land unto them, as may breed a subject to live in convenient plenty, and no servile condition; and to keep the plough in the hands of the
the owners, and not mere hirelings. And thus indeed you shall attain to 
Virgil's character, which he gives to ancient Italy:

— Terra potens armis atque glebae.

Neither is that state (which for any thing I know, is almost peculiar to Eng-
land, and hardly to be found anywhere else, except it be perhaps in Po-
land) to be passed over; I mean the state of free servants, and attendants:
upon noblemen and gentlemen, which are no ways inferior unto the yeo-
manry for arms: and therefore out of all question, the splendour and magni-
ficence, and great retinues, and hospitality of noblemen and gentlemen,
received into custom, doth much conduce unto martial greatness: whereas, 
contrariwise, the close and reserved living of noblemen and gentlemen, caus-
feth a penury of military forces.

By all means it is to be procured, that the trunk of Nebuchadnezzar's

tree of monarchy be great enough to bear the branches of the boughs:
that is, that the natural subjects of the crown or state, bear a sufficient pro-
portion to the strange subjects that they govern. Therefore all states, that
are liberal of naturalization towards strangers, are fit for empire. For to
think that an handful of people can, with the greatest courage and policy in
the world, embrace too large extent of dominion, it may hold for a time,
but it will fail suddenly. The Spartans were a nice people in point of na-
turalization; whereby, while they kept their compass, they stood firm; but
when they did spread, and their boughs were become too great for their
stems, they became a windfalls upon the sudden. Never any state was, in
this point, so open to receive strangers into their body, as were the Ro-
mans; therefore it Forted with them accordingly, for they grew to the
greatest monarchy. Their manner was to grant naturalization, (which
they called jus civitatis) and to grant it in the highest degree, that is, not
only jus commercii, jus connubii, jus hereditatis; but also, jus suffragii, and
jus honorum: and this not to singular persons alone, but likewise to whole
families; yea, to cities, and sometimes to nations. Add to this, their custom
of plantation of colonies, whereby the Roman plant was removed into the
soil of other nations: and putting both constitutions together, you will say,
that it was not the Romans that spread upon the world, but it was the
world that spread upon the Romans; and that was the sure way of great-
ness. I have marvelled sometimes at Spain, how they clap and contain so
large dominions, with so few natural Spaniards: But sure, the whole com-
pas of Spain is a very great body of a tree, far above Rome and Sparta at
the first. And besides, though they have not had that usage, to naturalize
liberally, yet they have that which is next to it: that is, to employ, al-
most indifferently, all nations, in their militia of ordinary soldiers; yea, and
sometimes in their highest commands. Nay, it seemeth at this instant, they
are sensible of this want of natives; as by the pragmatical sanction, now
published, appeareth.

It is certain, that sedentary and within-door arts, and delicate manufac-
tures, (that require rather the finger than the arm) have in their nature a
contrariety to a military disposition. And generally all warlike people are a
little idle, and love danger better than travail: neither must they be too
much broken of it, if they shall be preferred in vigour. Therefore it was
great advantage in the ancient states of Sparta, Athens, Rome, and others,
that they had the use of slaves, which commonly did rid those manufactures.
But that is abolished, in greatest part, by the christian law. That which
cometh
cometh nearlest to it, is, to leave those arts chiefly to strangers, (which for
that purpose are the more eazy to be received) and to contain the prin-
cipal bulk of the vulgar natives within those three kinds; tillers of
the ground, free servants, and handycraftsmen, of strong and manly arts; as
smiths, masons, carpenters, &c. not reckoning soldiers.

But above all, for empire and greatness, it importeth most; that a nation
do profess arms as their principal honour, study and occupation. For the
things which we formerly have spoken of, are but habilitations towards
arms: and what is habilitation without intention and act? Romulus, after
his death, (as they report or feign) sent a present to the Romans, that above
all they should intend arms, and then they should prove the greatest empire
of the world. The fabric of the state of Sparta was wholly (though not
wily) framed and composed, to that scope and end. The Persians and
Macedonians had it for a time. The Gauls, Germans, Goths, Saxons, Nor-
mans, and others, had it for a time. The Turks have it at this day, though
in great declination. Of Christian Europe they that have it, are in effect
only the Spaniards. But it is so plain, that every man profieth in that he moft
intendeth, that it needeth not to be stood upon. It is enough to point at it;
that no nation which doth not directly profess arms, may look to have
greatness fall into their mouths. And on the other side, it is a moft cer-
tain oracle of time, that those states that continue long in that profession,
(as the Romans and Turks principally have done) do wonders: And those
that have professed arms but for an age, have notwithstanding commonly
attained that greatness in that age, which maintained them long after, when
their profession and exercise of arms hath grown to decay.

Incident to this point is, for a state to have those laws or customs,
which may reach forth unto them just occasions (as may be pretended) of
war. For there is that justice imprinted on the nature of men, that they
enter not upon wars (whereof so many calamities do ensue) but upon
some, at the least specious, grounds and quarrels. The Turk hath at hand,
for cause of war, the propagation of his law or feast, a quarrel that he
may always command. The Romans, though they esteemed the extending
the limits of their empire to be great honour to their generals, when it was
done; yet they never rested upon that alone to begin a war. First therefore,
let nations that pretend to greatness have this, that they be sensible of
wrongs, either upon borderers, merchants, or politick ministers; and that
they fit not too long upon a provocation. Secondly, let them be presses,
and ready to give aids and succours to their confederates; as it ever was with
the Romans: insomuch, as if the confederate had leagues defensive with
divers other states, and upon invasion offered, did implore their aids sever-
ally, yet the Romans would ever be the foremost, and leave it to none other to
have the honour. As for the wars, which were anciently made on the beh-
alf of a kind of party, or tacit conformity of estate, I do not see how
they may be well justified; as when the Romans made a war for the liber-
ty of Graecia; or when the Lacedaemonians and Athenians made wars, to set
up or pull down democracies and oligarchies: Or when wars were made by
foreigners, under the pretence of justice, or protection, to deliver the sub-
jects of others from tyranny and oppression, and the like. Let it suffice,
that no estate expect to be great that is not awake, upon any just occasion
of arming.

No body can be healthful without exercise, neither natural body, nor po-
litick: and certainly, to a kingdom or estate, a just and honourable war is
the true exercise. A civil war, indeed, is like the heat of a fever; but a foreign war is like the heat of exercise, and serveth to keep the body in health. For in a slothful peace, both courages will effeminate, and manners corrupt. But howsoever it be for happiness; without all question, for greatnes, it maketh, to be still, for the most part, in arms: and the strength of a veteran army, (though it be a chargeable busines) always on foot, is that which commonly giveth the law; or at least the reputation amongst all neighbour states, as may well be seen in Spain, which hath had, in one part or other, a veteran army, almost continually, now by the space of fix-score years.

To be master of the sea, is an abridgment of a monarchy. Cicero writing to Atticus, of Pompey his preparation against Caesar, faith, Conflium Pompeii plane Themislocleum est; putat enim, qui mari potitur, eum rerum potiri. And without doubt Pompey had tired out Caesar, if upon vain confidence he had not left that way. We see the great effects of battels by sea. The battel of Actium decided the empire of the world. The battel of Lepanto arrested the greatnes of the Turk. There be many examples, where sea fights have been final to the war; but this is, when princes or states have fet up their reft upon the battels. But thus much is certain, that he that commands the sea is at great liberty, and may take as much and as lit­tle of the war, as he will. Whereas those that be strongest by land, are many times, nevertheless, in great straits.

Surely, at this day, with us of Europe, the vantage of strength at sea (which is one of the principal dow­ries of this kingdom of Great Britain) is great: both because most of the kingdoms of Europe are not merely inland, but girt with the sea, most part of their compass; and because the wealth of both Indies seems in great part but an accessory to the command of the seas.

The wars of latter ages feem to be made in the dark, in respect of the glory and honour which reflected upon men, from the wars in ancient time. There be now, for martial encouragement, some degrees and orders of chivalry, which nevertheless are conferred promiscuously upon soldiers, and no soldiers, and some remembrance perhaps upon the efcutcheon, and some hospitals for maimed soldiers, and such like things. But in ancient times, the trophies erected upon the place of the victory; the funeral laudatives and monuments for those that died in the wars; the crowns and garlands personal; the style of emperor, which the great kings of the world after borrowed; the triumphs of the generals upon their return; the great dona­tives and largesses upon the disbanning of the armies, were things able to enflame all mens courages: but above all, that of the triumph, amongst the Romans, was not pageants or gaudery, but one of the wifef and noblest institutions that ever was. For it contained three things; honour to the general; riches to the treasury out of the spoils; and donatives to the army. But that honour, perhaps, were not fit for monarchies; except it be in the person of the monarch himself, or his sons; as it came to pafs, in the times of the Roman emperors, who did impropriate the actual triumphs to themselves and their sons, for such wars as they did achieve in person; and left only, for wars achieved by subjects, some triumphal garments and ensigns to the general.

To conclude: no man can, by care taking, (as the scripture faith) add a cubit to his stature, in this little model of a man's body: but in the great frame of kingdoms, and commonwealths, it is in the power of princes, or estates, to add amplitude and greatnes to their kingdoms. For by introducing such
such ordinances, constitutions and customs as we have now touched, they
may few greatness to their posterity and succession. But these things are
commonly not observed, but left to take their chance.

XXXI. Of regiment of health.

There is a wisdom in this beyond the rules of physic: a man's own ob-
ervation, what he finds good of, and what he finds hurt of, is the best
physick to preserve health. But it is a safer conclusion to say, this agreeth
not well with me, therefore I will not continue it; than this, I find no
offence of this, therefore I may use it. For strength of nature in youth
pasleth over many excesses, which are owing a man till his age. Discern
of the coming on of years, and think not to do the same things still; for
age will not be defied. Beware of sudden change in any great point of
diet, and if necessity enforce it, fit the reft to it. For it is a secret both in
nature and state, that it is safer to change many things than one. Examine
thy customs of diet, sleep, exercise, apparel, and the like; and try in any
thing thou shalt judge hurtful, to discontinue it by little and little; but so,
as if thou dost find any inconvenience by the change, thou come back to it
again: for it is hard to distinguish that which is generally held good and
wholesome, from that which is good particularly, and fit for thine own
body. To be free-minded, and cheerfully disposed at hours of meat, and
of sleep, and of exercise, is one of the best precepts of long lasting. As for the
passions and studies of the mind, avoid envy, anxious fears, anger fretting
inwards, subtle and knotty inquisitions, joys and exhilarations in excess,
sadness not communicated. Entertain hopes, mirth rather than joy, vari-
dy of delights, rather than surfeit of them; wonder and admiration, and
therefore novelities; studies that fill the mind with splendid and illustrious
objects, as histories, fables, and contemplations of nature. If you fly phy-
sick in health altogether, it will be too strange for your body when you
shall need it. If you make it too familiar, it will work no extraordinary
effect when sickness cometh. I commend rather some diet for certain se-
asons, than frequent use of physic, except it be grown into a custom. For
those diets alter the body more, and trouble it less. Despife no new acci-
dent in your body, but ask opinion of it. In sickness, respect health prin-
cipally; and in health, action. For those that put their bodies to endure
in health, may in most sicknesses which are not very sharp, be cured only
with diet, and rendering. Celsus could never have spoken it as a physician,
had he not been a wise man withal; when he giveth it for one of the
great precepts of health and lasting, that a man do vary and interchange
contraries; but with an inclination to the more benign extreme. Use fast-
ing and full eating, but rather full eating; watching and sleep, but rather
sleep; sitting and exercise, but rather exercise; and the like. So shall na-
ture be cherished, and yet taught masteries. Physicians are some of them
so pleasing and conformable to the humour of the patient, as they press not
the true cure of the diseafe; and some other are fo regular in proceeding ac-
cording to art for the diseafe, as they respect not sufficiently the condition
of the patient. Take one of a middle temper; or if it may not be found
in one man, combine two of either sort; and forget not to call as well the
best acquainted with your body, as the best reputed of for his faculty.

XXXII. Of suspicion.

Suspicions amongst thoughts, are like bats amongst birds, they ever fly
Vol. III. X x 2
by
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

by twilight. Certainly they are to be repressed, or at the least well guarded: for they cloud the mind, they lose friends, and they check with business, whereby business cannot go on currently and constantly. They dispose kings to tyranny, husbands to jealousy, wife men to irresolution and melancholy. They are defects, not in the heart but in the brain; for they take place in the stoutest natures; as in the example of Henry the seventh of England; there was not a more suspicious man, nor a more stout, and in such a composition they do small hurt. For commonly they are not admitted but with examination, whether they be likely or no? But in fearful natures they gain ground too fast. There is nothing makes a man suspect much, more than to know little; and therefore men should remedy suspicion, by procuring to know more, and not to keep their suspicions in smother. What would men have? Do they think those they employ and deal with are saints? Do they not think they will have their own ends, and be truer to themselves than to them? Therefore there is no better way to moderate suspicions, than to account upon such suspicions as true, and yet to bridle them as false, for so far a man ought to make use of suspicions, as to provide, as if that should be true that he suspects, yet it may do him no hurt. Suspicions that the mind of it self gathers, are but buzzes; but suspicions that are artificially nourished, and put into mens heads by the tales and whisperings of others, have stings. Certainly the best mean to clear the way in this same wood of suspicions, is frankly to communicate them with the party that he suspects; for thereby he shall be sure to know more of the truth of them than he did before; and withal shall make that party more circumspect, not to give farther cause of suspicion. But this would not be done to men of base natures: for they, if they find themselves once suspected, will never be true. The Italian says, Sospetto licentia fide; as if suspicion did give a passport to faith; but it ought rather to kindle it to discharge it self.

XXXIII. Of discourse.

Some in their discourse desire rather commendation of wit, in being able to hold all arguments, than of judgment in discerning what is true; as if it were a praise to know what might be said, and not what should be thought. Some have certain common places and themes, wherein they are good and want variety: which kind of poverty is for the most part tedious, and, when it is once perceived, ridiculous. The honourablest part of talk is to give the occasion; and again to moderate and pass to same... what else, for then a man leads the dance. It is good in discourse, and speech of conversation, to vary, and intermingle speech of the present occasion with arguments; tales with reasons; asking of questions, with telling of opinions; and jest with earnest: for it is a dull thing to tire, and as we say now, to jade any thing too far. As for jest, there be certain things which ought to be privileged from it; namely, religion, matters of state, great persons, any man's present business of importance, and any case that deserves pity. Yet there be some that think their wits have been asleep, except they dart out somewhat that is piquant, and to the quick: that is a vein which would be bridled;

Parce puer stimulis, & fortius utere loris.

And generally men ought to find the difference between flantness and bitterness. Certainly he that hath a satyrical vein, as he maketh others afraid of
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

cf his wit, so he had need be afraid of others memory. He that questioneth much shall learn much; and content much, but especially if he apply his questions to the skill of the persons whom he asketh: for he shall give them occasion to please themselves in speaking, and himself shall continually gather knowledge. But let his questions not be troublesome, for that is fit for a poore. And let him be sure to leave other men their turns to speak. Nay, if there be any that would reign, and take up all the time, let him find means to take them off, and bring others on; as musicians use to do with those that dance too long galliards. If you dissemble sometimes your knowledge of that you are thought to know, you shall be thought another time to know that you know not. Speech of a man's self ought to be seldom, and well chosen. I knew one was wont to say in scorn, he must needs be a wise man he speaks so much of himself: and there is but one case wherein a man may commend himself with good grace, and that is in commending virtue in another; especially if it be such a virtue whereunto himself pretender. Speech of touch towards others, should be sparingly used: for discourse ought to be as a field, without coming home to any man. I knew two noblemen of the west part of England, whereof the one was given to scoff, but kept ever royal cheer in his house; the other would ask of those that had been at the other's table, tell truly, was there never a stout or dry blow given? To which the guest would answer; such and such a thing passed. The lord would say, I thought he would mar a good dinner. Discretion of speech is more than eloquence; and to speak agreeably to him with whom we deal, is more than to speak in good words, or in good order. A good continued speech, without a good speech of interlocution, shews slovenness: and a good reply, or second speech, without a good settled speech, sheweth slowness and weakness. As we see in beasts, that those that are weakest in the course, are yet nimblest in the turn; as it is betwixt the greyhound and the hare. To use too many circumstances are one come to the matter, is wearisome; to use none at all is blunt.

XXXIV. Of plantations.

Plantations are amongst ancient, primitive, and heroical works. When the world was young, it begat more children; but now it is old, it begets fewer: for I may justly account new plantations to be the children of former kingdoms. I like a plantation in a pure soil; that is, where people are not transplanted to the end to plant in others. For else it is rather an extirpation, than a plantation. Planting of countries, is like planting of woods; for you must make account to lose almost twenty years profit, and expect your recompence in the end. For the principal thing that hath been the destruction of most plantations, hath been the base and hasty drawing of profit in the first years. It is true, speedy profit is not to be neglected, as far as may stand with the good of the plantation, but no farther. It is a shameful and unblest thing, to take the scum of people, and wicked condemned men, to be the people with whom you plant; and not only so, but it spoileth the plantation; for they will ever live like rogues, and not fall to work, but be lazy, and do mischief, and spend victuals, and be quickly weary, and then certify over to their country, to the discredit of the plantation. The people wherewith you plant, ought to be gardeners, ploughmen, labourers, smiths, carpenters, joiners, fishermen, fowlers, with some few apothecaries, surgeons, cooks and bakers. In a country of plantation,
plantation, first look about what kind of victual the country yields of its own hand; as chestnuts, walnuts, pine-apples, olives, dates, plumbs, cherries, wild honey, and the like, and make use of them. Then consider what victual, or esculent things there are, which grow speedily, and within the year; as parsnips, carrots, turnips, onions, radishes, artichokes of Jerusalem, maize, and the like. For wheat, barley, and oats, they ask too much labour; but with peas and beans you may begin; both because they ask less labour, and because they serve for meat, as well as for bread. And of rice likewise cometh a great increase, and it is a kind of meat. Above all, there ought to be brought store of biscuit, oatmeal, flour, meal, and the like, in the beginning, till bread may be had. For beasts or birds, take chiefly such as are least subject to diseases, and multiply safest: as swine, goats, cocks, hens, turkeys, geese, house-doves, and the like. The victual in plantations, ought to be expended almost as in a besieged town; that is, with certain allowance. And let the main part of the ground employed to gardens or corn, be to a common stock; and to be laid in, and stored up, and then delivered out in proportion; besides some spots of ground that any particular person will manage for his own private. Consider likewise what commodities the soil where the plantation is doth naturally yield, that they may some way help to defray the charge of the plantation: so it be not, as was said, to the untimely prejudice of the main business; as it hath fared with tobacco in Virginia. Wood commonly aboundeth but too much; and therefore timber is fit to be one. If there be iron ore, and streams whereupon to set the mills; iron is a brave commodity where wood aboundeth. Making of bay-salt, if the climate be proper for it, would be put in experience. Growing silk likewise, if any be, is a likely commodity. Pitch and tar, where store of firs and pines are, will not fail. So drugs, and sweet woods, where they are, cannot but yield great profit. Soap ashes likewise, and other things that may be thought of. But moil not too much under ground, for the hope of mines is very uncertain, and useful to make the planters lazy in other things. For government, let it be in the hands of one afoiled with some counsel: and let them have commission to exercise martial laws with some limitation. And above all, let men make that profit of being in the wilderness, as they have God always, and his service, before their eyes. Let not the government of the plantation depend upon too many counsellors and undertakers, in the country that planteth, but upon a temperate number; and let those be rather noblemen and gentlemen, than merchants; for they look ever to the present gain. Let there be freedoms from custom, till the plantation be of strength: and not only freedom from custom, but freedom to carry their commodities where they may make their best of them, except there be some special cause of caution. Cram not in people, by sending too fast, company after company; but rather hearken how they waste, and send supplies proportionably; but so as the number may live well in the plantation, and not by surcharge be in penury. It hath been a great endangering to the health of some plantations, that they have built along the sea and rivers, in marshy and unwholesome grounds. Therefore though you begin there to avoid carriage, and other like discomforts; yet build still rather upwards from the streams, than along. It concerneth likewise the health of the plantation, that they have good store of salt with them, that they may use it in their victuals when it shall be necessary. If you plant where savages are, do not only entertain them with trifles and jingles; but use them justly.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

juftly and graciously, with sufficient guard nevertheless: and do not win their favour by helping them to invade their enemies, but for their defence it is not amis. And send oft of them over to the country that plants, that they may see a better condition than their own, and commend it when they return. When the plantation grows to strength, then it is time to plant with women, as well as with men; that the plantation may spread into generations; and not be ever pieced from without. It is the sinfulleft thing in the world, to forfake or deftitute a plantation once in forwardness: for besides the dihonour, it is the guiltines of blood of many commiserable perfons.

XXXV. Of riches.

I cannot call riches better than the baggage of virtue. The Roman word is better, *impedimenta.* For as the baggage is to an army, so are riches to virtue. It cannot be spared, nor left behind, but it hindreth the march; yes, and the care of it, sometimes, looth or disturbeth the victory: of great riches there is no real use, except it be in the distribution; the reft is but conceit. So faith Solomon; where much is, there are many to consume it; and what hath the owner, but the fight of it with bis eyes? The personal fruition in any man, cannot reach to feel great riches: there is a custody of them; or a power of dole and donative of them; or a fame of them; but no fold use to the owner. Do you not fee what feigned princes are set upon little stones and rarities? And what works of ostentation are undertaken, becaufe there might seem to be some use of great riches? But then you will say they may be of ufe, to buy men out of dangers or troubles. As Solomon faith, riches are as a strong hold, in the imagination of the rich man. But this is excellently expreffed, that it is in imagination, and not always in fact. For certainly great riches have fold more men than they have bought out. Seek not proud riches, but such as thou mayst get juftly, ufe soberly, distribute cheerfully, and leave contentedly; yet have no abstrac nor ftrict contempt of them: But diftinguith, as Cicero faith well of Rabirius Poil­bunus; *in studio rei amplificandae, apparebat, non avaritiae praedam, fed in­frumentum bonitati quaeri.*

Hearken alfo to Solomon, and beware of hafty gathering of riches: *Qui sese 5. ad devitias, non erit infons.* The poets feign, that when Plutus (which is riches) is fent from Jupiter, he limps, and goes flowly; but when he is fent from Pluto he runs, and is swift of foot: meaning, that riches gotten by good means and juft labour, pace now­ly; but when they come by the death of others, (as by the courfe of inheritance, teftaments, and the like,) they come tumbling upon a man. But it might be applied likewise to Pluto, taking him for the devil. For when riches come from the devil, (as by fraud, and oppression, and unjuft means,) they come upon speed. The ways to enrich are many, and moft of them foul. Parsimony is one of the beft, and yet is not innocent: for it with­holdeth men from works of liberality and charity. The improvement of the ground is the moft natural obtaining of riches; for it is our great mo­ther's bleffing, the earth; but it is flow. And yet, where men of great wealth do floop to husbandry, it multiplyeth riches exceedingly. I knew a nobleman in England that had the greatest audits of any man in my time; a great graifer, a great sheep mafter, a great timber man, a great collier, a great cornmafter, a great lead ma­n; and fo of iron, and a number of the like points of husbandry: fo as the earth seemed a fea to him, in respect of the
the perpetual importation. It was truly observed by one, that himself came very hardly to a little riches, and very easily to great riches. For when a man's flock is come to that, that he can expect the prime of markets, and overcome those bargains, which for their greatness are few men's money, and be partner in the industries of younger men, he cannot but encrease mainly. The gains of ordinary trades and vocations are honest, and furthered by two things, chiefly, by diligence, and by a good name for good and fair dealing: but the gains of bargains are of a more doubtful nature, when men should wait upon others necessity; broke by servants and instruments to draw them on; put off others cunningly that would be better chapmen, and the like practices, which are crafty and naught: As for the chopping of bargains, when a man buys, not to hold, but to sell over again, that commonly grindeth double, both upon the seller, and upon the buyer. Sharings do greatly enrich, if the hands be well chosen that are trusted. Usury is the certainest means of gain, though one of the worst, as that whereby a man doth eat his bread in ludore alioni; and besides, doth plough upon Sundays. But yet certain though it be, it hath flaws: for that the scriveners and brokers do value unfound men, to serve their own turn. The fortune, in being the first in an invention, or in a privilege, doth cause sometimes a wonderful overgrowth in riches; as it was with the first sugar man in the Canaries. Therefore, if a man can play the true logician, to have as well judgment as invention, he may do great matters, especially if the times be fit. He that relieeth upon gains certain, shall hardly grow to great riches. And he that puts all upon adventures, doth oftentimes break, and come to poverty: it is good therefore to guard adventures with certainties that may uphold losses. Monopolies, and co-emption of wares for resale, where they are not restrained, are great means to enrich; especially if the party have intelligence what things are like to come into request, and so fore himself before-hand. Riches gotten by service, though it be of the best rise, yet when they are gotten by flattery, feeding humours, and other servile conditions, they may be placed amongst the worst. As for fishing for testaments and executorships, (as Tacitus faith of Seneca, Testamenta & orbos tangquam indagine capi,) it is yet worse; by how much men submit themselves to meaner person's, than in service. Believe not much them, that seem to despise riches; for they despise them that despair of them; and none worse when they come to them. Be not penny-wise; riches have wings, and sometimes they fly away of themselves, sometimes they must be set flying to bring in more. Men leave their riches either to their kindred, or to the publick: and moderate portions prosper best in both. A great estate left to an heir, is as a lure to all the birds of prey round about, to seize on him, if he be not the better stablished in years and judgment. Likewise glorious gifts and foundations, are like sacrifices without falt; and but the painted sepulchres of arms, which soon will putrefy and corrupt inwardly. Therefore measure not thine advancements by quantity, but frame them by measure; and defer not charities till death. For certainly, if a man weigh it rightly, he that doth so, is rather liberal of another man's, than of his own.

XXXVI. Of prophecies.

I mean not to speak of divine prophecies, nor of heathen oracles, nor of natural predictions; but only of prophecies that have been of certain memory,
ry, and from hidden causes. Said the Pythonissa to Saul; To-morrow thou and thy son shall be with me. Virgil hath these verses from Homer:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{At domus AEneas cum detis dominabitur oris,} \\
&\text{Et nati natorum, & qui nascentur ab illis.} \\
&\text{AEneid. iii. 97.}
\end{align*}
\]

A prophecy, as it seems, of the Roman empire. Seneca the tragedian hath these verses:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{------ Venient annis} \\
&\text{Saecula feris, quibus oceanus} \\
&\text{Vincula rerum laxet, & ingens} \\
&\text{Pateat tellus, Tiphsyque novus} \\
&\text{Detegat orbes; nec sit terris} \\
&\text{Ultima Thule.}
\end{align*}
\]

A prophecy of the discovery of America. The daughter of Polycrates dreamed, that Jupiter bathed her father, and Apollo anointed him: And it came to pass, that he was crucified in an open place, where the sun made his body run with sweat, and the rain washed it. Philip of Macedon dreamed, he sealed up his wife's belly; whereby he did expound it, that his wife should be barren: But Aristander the soothsayer told him, his wife was with child, because men do not seal vessels that are empty. A phantasm that appeared to M. Brutus in his tent, said to him; Philippis iterum me videbis. Tiberius said to Galba, Tu quoque, Galba, degvlabis imperium. In Vespasian's time there went a prophecy in the east, that those that should come forth of Judaea, should reign over the world; which though it may be was meant of our Saviour, yet Tacitus expounds it of Vespasian. Domitian dreamed, the night before he was slain, that a golden head was growing out of the nape of his neck: and indeed the succession that followed him, for many years, made golden times. Henry the sixth of England, said of Henry the seventh, when he was a lad, and gave him water; this is the lad that shall enjoy the crown for which we strive. When I was in France, I heard from one Dr. Pena, that the queen mother, who was given to curious arts, caused the king her husband's nativity to be calculated under a false name; and the astrologer gave a judgment, that he should be killed in a duel; at which the queen laughed, thinking her husband to be above challenges and duels: but he was slain, upon a course at tilt, the splinters of the staff of Montgomery going in at his bever. The trivial prophecy, which I heard when I was a child, and queen Elizabeth was in the flower of her years, was;

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{When hempe is spun,} \\
&\text{England's done.}
\end{align*}
\]

Whereby it was generally conceived, that after the princes had reigned, which had the principal letters of that word hempe, (which were Henry, Edward, Mary, Philip, and Elizabeth) England should come to utter confusion: which, thanks be to God, is verified only in the change of the name, for that the king's style is now no more of England, but of Britain. There was also another prophecy before the year of eighty eight, which I do not well understand.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

There shall be seen upon a day,  
Between the haugh and the May,  
The black fleet of Norway,  
When that that is come and gone,  
England build boyes of lime and stone,  
For after wars shall you have none.

It was generally conceived to be meant of the Spanish fleet that came in eighty eight. For that the king of Spain’s surname, as they say, is Norway.

The prediction of Regiomontanus,

Oederemus octavus mirabilis annus:

was thought likewise accomplished, in the sending of that great fleet, being the greatest in strength, though not in number, of all that ever swam upon the sea. As for Cleon’s dream, I think it was a jest: It was, that he was devoured of a long dragon; and it was expounded of a maker of sausages, that troubled him exceedingly. There are numbers of the like kind; especially if you include dreams, and predictions of astrology. But I have let down these few only of certain credit, for example. My judgment is, that they ought all to be despised, and ought to serve but for winter talk by the fire-side. Though when I say despised, I mean it as for belief; for otherwise, the spreading or publishing them, is in no sort to be despised; for they have done much mischief. And I see many severe laws made to suppress them: That that hath given them grace, and fame credit, consisteth in three things: first, that men mark when they hit, and never mark when they miss; as they do, generally, also of dreams. The second is, that probable conjectures, or obscure traditions, many times, turn themselves into prophecies: while the nature of man, which coveteth divination, thinks it no peril to foretell that, which indeed they do but collect; as that of Seneca’s verse. For so much was then subject to demonstration, that the globe of the earth had great parts beyond the Atlantick, which might be probably conceived not to be all sea: and adding thereto, the tradition of Plato’s Timaeus, and his Atlanticus, it might encourage one to turn it to a prediction. The third and last, (which is the great one) is, that almost all of them, being infinite in number, have been impostures, and by idle and crafty brains, merely contrived and feigned, after the event past.

XXXVII. Of ambition.

Ambition is like choler, which is an humour that maketh men active, earnest, full of alacrity and stirring, if it be not flopped. But if it be flopped, and cannot have its way, it becometh adult, and thereby malign and venomous. So ambitious men, if they find the way open for their rising, and still get forward, they are rather busy than dangerous; but if they be check’d in their desires, they become secretly discontent, and look upon men and matters with an evil eye, and are all pleasing when things go backward; which is the worst property in a servant of a prince or state. Therefore it is good for princes, if they use ambitious men, to handle it so, as they be still progressive, and not retrograde; which, because it cannot be without inconvenience, it is good not to use such natures at all. For if they rise not with their service, they will take order to make their service fall with them. But since we have said, it were good not to use men of ambitious natures, except it be upon necessity, it is fit we speak, in what cases, they
they are of necessity. Good commanders in the wars must be taken, be
they never so ambitious: for the use of their service dispenses with the
rest; and to take a soldier without ambition, is to pull off his spurs. There
is also great use of ambitious men, in being scribes to princes, in matters of
danger and envy: for no man will take that part, except he be like a seceded
dove, that mounts and mounts, because he cannot see about him. There
is use also of ambitious men, in pulling down the greatness of any sub-
ject that over-tops: as Tiberius used Macro in the pulling down of Seja-
nus. Since therefore they must be used in such cases, there reflect to speak,
how they are to be bridled, that they may be less dangerous. There is less
danger of them, if they be of mean birth, than if they be noble; and if they
be rather harsh of nature, than gracious and popular; and if they be rather
new raised, than grown cunning and fortified in their greatness. It is
counted by some a weakness in princes to have favourites; but it is, of all
others, the best remedy against ambitious great ones. For when the way of
pleasuring and displeasing lieth by the favourite, it is impossible any other
should be over-great. Another means to curb them, is to balance them by
others as proud as they. But then there must be some middle counsellors to
keep things fedly; for without that balance, the ship will roll too much,
At the least, a prince may animate and inure some meaner persons, to be as
it were scourges to ambitious men. As for the having of them obnoxious
to ruin, if they be of fearful natures, it may do well: but if they be stout
and daring, it may precipitate their designs, and prove dangerous. As for the
pulling of them down, if the affairs require it, and that it may not be done
without safety suddenly, the only way is, the interchange continually of favours
and disgraces, whereby they may not know what to expect, and be as it
were in a wood. Of ambitions, it is less harmful the ambition to prevail
in great things, than that other to appear in every thing; for that breeds
confusion, and mars business: but yet it is less danger to have an ambitious
man stiring in business, than great in dependences. He that seeketh to be
eminent amongst able men, hath a great task; but that is ever good for
the publick. But he that plots to be the only figure amongst ciphers, is the
decay of a whole age. Honour hath three things in it: the vantage ground
to do good; the approach to kings and principal persons; and the raising
of a man's own fortunes. He that hath the best of these intentions, when
he aspireth, is an honest man: and that prince that can discern of these inten-
tions in another that aspireth, is a wise prince. Generally let princes and
states chuse such ministers as are more sensible of duty, than of ruling; and
such as love business rather upon conscience, than upon bravery; and let
them discern a busy nature from a willing mind.

XXXVIII. Of masques and triumphs.

These things are but toys to come amongst such serious observations.
But yet since princes will have such things, it is better they should be
graced with elegance, than daubed with cost. Dancing to song, is a thing
of great state and pleasure. I understand it: that the song be in quire,
placed aloft, and accompanied with some broken musique: and the ditty
fitted to the device. Acting in song, especially in dialogues, hath an ex-
reme good grace; I say acting, not dancing; (for that is a mean and vulgar
thing) and the voices of the dialogue would be strong and manly, (a base;
and a tenor; no treble) and the ditty high and tragical; not nice or dainty.
Several quires placed one over another, and taking the voice by
VOL. III.

Y y 2
catcher:
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

catches anthem-wife, give great pleasure. Turning dances into figure, is a childish curiosity. And generally let it be noted, that these things which I here set down, are such as do naturally take the sense, and not respect petty wondertments. It is true, the alterations of scenes, so it be quietly and without noise, are things of great beauty and pleasure; for they feed and relieve the eye before it be full of the same object. Let the scenes abound with light, especially coloured and varied: and let the masquers, or any other that are to come down from the scene, have some motions upon the scene it fell before their coming down. For it draws the eye strangely, and makes it with great pleasure to desire to see that it cannot perfectly discern. Let the songs be loud and cheerful, and not chirpings or pulings. Let the music likewise be sharp and loud, and well placed. The colours that shew best by candle-light, are white, carnation, and a kind of sea-water green; and ouches, or spangs, as they are of no great cost, so they are of most glory. As for rich embroidery, it is loth and not discerned. Let the suits of the masquers be graceful, and such as become the person when the vizards are off: not after examples of known attires; turks, soldiers, mariners, and the like. Let anti-masques not be long; they have been commonly of fools, satyrs, baboons, wild men, anticats, beasts, spirits, witches, ethiopians, pygmies, turquets, nymphs, rusticks, cupids, statues, moving, and the like. As for angels, it is not comical enough to put them in anti-masques; and anything that is hideous, as devils, giants, is on the other side as unfit: but chiefly, let the music of them be recreative, and with some strange changes. Some sweet odours suddenly coming forth without any drops falling, are in such a company as there is steam and heat, things of great pleasure and refreshment. Double masques, one of men, another of ladies, addeth state and variety. But all is nothing except the room be kept clear and neat.

For jousts, and tourneys, and barriers, the glories of them are chiefly in the chariots, wherein the challengers make their entry; especially if they be drawn with strange beasts; as lions, bears, camels, and the like: or in the devices of their entrance, or in bravery of their liveries; or in the goodly furniture of their horses and armour. But enough of these toys.

XXXIX. Of nature in men.

Nature is often hidden, sometimes overcome, seldom extinguished. Force maketh nature more violent in the return; doctrine and discourse maketh nature less importune: but custom only doth alter and subdue nature. He that seeketh victory over his nature, let him not set himself too great, nor too small talks; for the first will make him dejected by often failing; and the second will make him a small proceeder, though by often prevailings. And at the first, let him practice with helps, as swimmers do with bladders or rushers: but after a time, let him practice with disadvantages, as dancers do with thick shoes. For it breeds great perfection, if the practice be harder than the use. Where nature is mighty, and therefore the victory hard, the degrees had need be, first to stay and arrest nature in time; like to him that would say over the four and twenty letters when he was angry: then to go less in quantity; as if one should, in forbearing wine, come from drinking healths, to a draught at a meal; and lastly, to discontinue altogether. But if a man have the fortitude and resolution to enfranchise himself at once, that is the best:

Optimus
Neither is the ancient rule amis, to bend nature as a wand to a contrary extreme, whereby to set it right: understanding it where the contrary extreme is no vice. Let not a man force a habit upon himself with a perpetual continuance, but with some intermission. For both the pause reinforces the new onset; and if a man that is not perfect, be ever in practice, he shall as well practise his errors as his abilities, and induce one habit of both: and there is no means to help this but by seasonable intermission. But let not a man trust his victory over his nature too far; for nature will lie buried a great time, and yet revive upon the occasion or temptation. Like as it was with Æsop's damsel, turned from a cat to a woman, who sat very demurely at the board's end; till a mouse ran before her. Therefore let a man either avoid the occasion altogether, or put himself often to it, that he may be little moved with it. A man's nature is best perceived in private; for there is no assurance in passion; for that putteth a man out of his precepts, and in a new case or experiment, for there custom leaveth him. They are happy men, whose natures fort with their vocations; otherwise they may say, mutilum incola fuit anima mea: when they converse in those things they do not assure. In studies, whatsoever a man commandeth upon himself, let him set hours for it; but whatsoever is agreeable to his nature, let him take no care for any set times: for his thoughts will fly to it of themselves; so as the spaces of other business or studies will suffice. A man's nature runs either to herbs, or weeds: therefore let him seasonably water the one, and destroy the other.

MENs thoughts are much according to their inclination; their discourse and speeches according to their learning and infused opinions; but their deeds are after as they have been accustomed: And therefore, as Machiavel well noteth, (though in an evil-favoured instance) there is no trusting to the force of nature, nor to the bravery of words; except it be corroborate by custom. His instance is, that for the achieving of a desperate conspiracy; a man should not rest upon the fierceness of any man's nature, or his resolute undertakings; but take such an one as hath had his hands formerly in blood. But Machiavel knew not of a friar Clement, nor a Ravillac, nor a Jaureguy, nor a Baltazar Gerard: yet his rule holdeth still, that nature, nor the engagement of words, are not so forcible as custom. Only superstition is now so well advanced, that men of the first blood, are as firm as butchers by occupation: and voluntary resolution is made equipollent to custom, even in matter of blood. In other things, the predominancy of custom is everywhere visible; insomuch as a man would wonder to hear men profess, protest, engage, give great words, and then do just as they have done before: as if they were dead images, and engines moved only by the wheels of custom. We see also the reign or tyranny of custom what it is. The Indians (I mean the sect of their wife men) lay themselves quietly upon a fack of wood, and so sacrifice themselves by fire. Nay, the wives strive to be burned with the corps of their husbands. The lads of Sparta of ancient time, were wont to be scourged upon the altar of Diana, without so much as queching. I remember in
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

the beginning of queen Elizabeth's time of England, an Irish rebel condemned, put up a petition to the deputy, that he might be hanged in a with, and not in an halter, because it had been so used with former rebels. There be monks in Russia, for penance, that will fit a whole night in a vessel of water, till they be engaged with hard ice. Many examples may be put of the force of custom, both upon mind and body. Therefore since custom is the principal magistrate of man's life; let men by all means endeavour to obtain good customs. Certainly custom is most perfect, when it beginneth in young years: this we call education, which is, in effect, but an early custom. So we see in languages, the tongue is more pliant to all expressions and sounds, the joints are more supple to all sorts of activity and motions, in youth than afterwards. For it is true, the late learners cannot so well take the ply, except it be in some minds that have not suffered themselves to fix, but have kept themselves open and prepared to receive continual amendment, which is exceeding rare. But if the force of custom simple and separate, be great; the force of custom copulate and conjoined, and collegiate, is far greater. For there example teacheth, company conforteth, emulation quickeneth, glory raiseth: so as in such places the force of custom is in its exaltation. Certainly the great multiplication of virtues upon human nature, reflecth upon societies well ordained and disciplined. For commonwealths and good governments do nourish virtue grown, but do not much mend the seeds. But the misery is, that the most effectual means are now applied to the ends least to be desired.

XLI. Of fortune.

It cannot be denied but outward accidents conduce much to fortune: favour, opportunity, death of others, occasion fitting virtue. But chiefly, the mould of a man's fortune is in his own hands. Faber quisque fortunae sua; faith the poet. And the most frequent of external causes is, that the folly of one man is the fortune of another. For no man prospereth so suddenly as by others errors. Serpens nifi serpientem comederit non fit draco. Overt and apparent virtues bring forth praise; but there be secret and hidden virtues that bring forth fortune: Certain deliveries of a man's self, which have no name. The Spanish name, deemboultura, partly expresseth them: when there be not fônds, nor reslivenes in a man's nature; but that the wheels of his mind keep way with the wheels of his fortune. For so Livy (after he had described Cato Major in these words; in illa viro, tantum robor corporis & animi fuit, ut quacunque loco natus esset, fortunam sibi facturus videretur;) falleth upon that that he had, versâtie ingenium. Therefore if a man look sharply and attentively, he shall see fortune: for though the be blind, yet the is not invisible. The way of fortune is like the milky way in the sky; which is a meeting or knot of a number of small stars, not seen afunder, but giving light together. So are there a number of little, and scarce discerned virtues, or rather faculties and customs, that make men fortunate. The Italians note some of them, such as a man would little think. When they speake of one that cannot do amiss, they will throw in into his other conditions, that he hath Poco di matto. And certainly there be not two more fortunate properties, than to have a little of the fool, and not too much of the honest. Therefore extreme lovers of their country, or masters, were never fortunate, neither can they be. For when a man placeth his thoughts without himself, he goeth not his own way. And hasty fortune maketh an enterprizer and remover, (the French hath
hath it better, entreprenant, or remuant;) but the exercièd fortune maketh the able man. Fortune is to be honoured and respected, and it be but for her daughters, confidence and reputation. For those two felicity breAth: the first within a man’s self; the latter, in others towards him. All wise men, to decline the envy of their own virtues, use to ascribe them to providence and fortune; for so they may the better assume them: and besides, it is greatness in a man to be the care of the higher powers. So Cæsar said to the pilot in the tempest, Caesarem portas, & fortunam ejus. So Sylla chose the name of felix, and not of magnus: And it hath been noted, that those that ascribe openly too much to their own wisdom and policy, end unfortunate. It is written, that Timotheus the Athenian, after he had, in the account he gave to the state of his government, often interlaced this speech, and in this fortune had no part; never prospered in any thing he undertook afterwards. Certainly there be, whose fortunes are like Homer’s verses, that have a slide and easiness more than the verses of other poets: as Plutarch faith of Timoleon’s fortune, in respect of that of Agesilaus, or Epaminondas. And that this should be, no doubt it is much in a man’s self.

XLII. Of usury.

Many have made witty invectives against usury. They say, that it is pity the devil should have God’s part, which is the tithe. That the usurer is the greatest sabbath-breaker, because his plough goeth every sunday. That the usurer is the drone that Virgil speaketh of:

Ignavum fucos pecus a praefepibus arcent.

That the usurer breaketh the first law that was made for mankind after the fall; which was, in jadore vultus tui comedes panem tuum; not, in jadore vultus alieni. That usurers should have orange-tawney bonnets, because they do judaize. That it is against nature, for money to beget money, and the like. I say this only, that usury is a conceffium propter duritiem cordis: for since there must be borrowing and lending, and men are so hard of heart as they will not lend freely, usury must be permitted. Some others have made suspicious and cunning propositions of banks, discovery of estates, and other inventions. But few have spoken of usury usefully. It is good to set before us the incommodities and commodities of usury; that the good may be either weighed out, or culled out; and warily to provide, that while we make forth to that which is better, we meet not with that which is worse.

The incommodities of usury are: first, that it makes fewer merchants. For were it not for this lazy trade of usury, money would not lie still, but would in great part be employed upon merchandizing; which is the vena portae of wealth in a state. The second, that it makes poor merchants. For as a farmer cannot husband his ground so well, if he sit at a great rent; so the merchant cannot drive his trade so well, if he sit at great usury. The third is incident to the other two; and that is, the decay of customs of kings or states, which ebb or flow with merchandizing. The fourth, that it bringeth the treasure of a realm or state into a few hands. For the usurer being at certainties, and others at uncertainties, at the end of the game most of the money will be in the box; and ever a state flourished, when wealth is more equally spread. The fifth, that it beats down the price of land: for the employment of money is chiefly either merchandizing,
dizing, or purchasing; and usury way-lays both. The sixth, that it doth
dull and damp all industries, improvements, and new inventions, wherein
money would be stirring, if it were not for this flug. The last, that it
is the canker and ruin of many mens estates, which in process of time
breeds a publick poverty.

On the other side, the commodities of usury are: first, that howsoever
usury in some respect hindereth merchandizing, yet in some other it advan-
ceth it: for it is certain that the greatest part of trade is driven by young
merchants, upon borrowing at interest; so as if the usurer either call in;
or keep back his money, there will ensue presently a great stand of trade.
The second is, that were it not for this easy borrowing upon interest, mens
necessities would draw upon them a most sudden undoing; in that they
would be forced to sell their means (be it lands or goods) far under foot;
and so whereas usury doth but gnaw upon them, bad markets would swal-
low them quite up. As for mortgaging, or pawning, it will little mend
the matter; for either men will not take pawns without use; or if they do,
they will look precisely for the forfeiture. I remember a cruel moneyed
man in the country, that would say; the devil take this usury, it keeps us
from forfeitures of mortgages and bonds. The third and last is, that it is
a vanity to conceive, that there would be ordinary borrowing without
profit; and it is impossible to conceive the number of inconveniences that will
ensue, if borrowing be cramped. Therefore to speak of the abolishing of
usury is idle. All states have ever had it in one kind or rate, or other. So
as that opinion must be sent to Utopia.

To speak now of the reformation and reglement of usury; how the dis-
commodities of it may be best avoided, and the commodities retained: It
appears by the balance, of commodities and discommodities of usury, two
things are to be reconciled. The one, that the tooth of usury be grinded,
that it bite not too much: the other, that there be left open a means to
invite moneyed men to lend to the merchants, for the continuing and quick-
ing of trade. This cannot be done, except you introduce two several sorts
of usury, a less and a greater. For if you reduce usury to one low rate, it
will ease the common borrower, but the merchant will be to seek for mo-
ney. And it is to be noted, that the trade of merchandize being the most
lucrative, may bear usury at a good rate; other contracts not so.

To serve both intentions, the way would be briefly thus. That there be
two rates of usury; the one free and general for all; the other under licence
only to certain persons, and in certain places of merchandizing. First there-
fore let usury in general be reduced to five in the hundred; and let that
rate be proclaimed to be free and current; and let the state shut it self out,
to take any penalty for the same. This will preserve borrowing from any
general stop or dryness. This will ease infinite borrowers in the country.
This will in good part raise the price of land, because land purchased at
sixteen years purchase, will yield fix in the hundred and somewhat more,
whereas this rate of interest yields but five. This by like reason will en-
courage and edge industrious and profitable improvements; because many
will rather venture in that kind, than take five in the hundred, especially
having been used to greater profit. Secondly, let there be certain persons
licensed to lend to known merchants, upon usury at a high rate; and let it
be with the cautions following. Let the rate be even with the merchant
himself, somewhat more easy than that he used formerly to pay: for by
that means all borrowers shall have some ease by this reformation, be he
merchant.
 merchant or whosoever. Let it be no bank, or common flock, but every man be master of his own money. Not that I altogether mislike banks, but they will hardly be brooked in regard of certain suspicions. Let the state be answered some small matter for the licence, and the rest left to the lender: for if the abatement be but small, it will no whit discourage the lender. For he, for example, that took before ten or nine in the hundred, will sooner descend to eight in the hundred, than give over this trade of usury: and go from certain gains, to gains of hazard. Let these licensed lenders be in number indefinite, but restrained to certain principal cities and towns of merchandizing: for then they will be hardly able to colour other mens moneys in the country; so as the licence of nine, will not suck away the current rate of five: For no man will lend his moneys far off, nor put them into unknown hands.

If it be objected, that this doth in a sort authorize usury, which before was in some places but permiffive: the answer is, that it is better to mitigate usury by declaration, than to suffer it to rage by connivance.

XLIII. Of youth and age.

A MAN that is young in years, may be old in hours, if he have lost no time. But that happeneth rarely. Generally youth is like the first cogitations, not so wise as the second. For there is a youth in thoughts, as well as in ages. And yet the invention of young men, is more lively than that of old; and imaginations stream into their minds better, and as it were more divinely. Natures that have much heat, and great and violent defires and perturbations, are not ripe for action, till they have passed the meridian of their years: as it was with Julius Caesar, and Septimius Severus. Of the latter of whom it is said, juventutem egit, erroribus, imo furoribus plenam. And yet he was the ablest emperor, almost, of all the list. But reposed natures may do well in youth: as it is seen in Augustus Caesar, Caesius duke of Florence, Gaston de Foix, and others. On the other side, heat and vivacity in age, is an excellent composition for business. Young men are fitter to invent than to judge; fitter for execution than for counsel; and fitter for new projects, than for settled businesses. For the experience of age, in things that fall within the compass of it, directeth them; but in new things, abufeth them. The errors of young men are the ruin of business; but the errors of aged men amount but to this; that more might have been done, or sooner. Young men, in the conduct and manage of actions, embrace more than they can hold, stir more than they can quiet; fly to the end, without consideration of the means and degrees; pursue some few principles which they have chanced upon absurdly; care not to innovate, which draws unknown inconveniences; use extreme remedies at first; and that which doubleth all errors, will not acknowledge or retract them; like an unready horse, that will neither stop nor turn. Men of age object too much, consult too long, adventure too little, repent too soon, and seldom drive business home to the full period; but content themselves with a mediocrity of success. Certainly it is good to compound employments of both; for that will be good for the present, because the virtues of either age may correct the defects of both: and good for succession, that young men may be learners, while men in age are actors: and lastly, good for external accidents, because authority followeth old men, and favour and popularity youth. But for the moral part, perhaps youth will have the preeminence, as age hath for the politic. A certain Rabbin upon the

Vol. III.
text, your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams; inferreth, that young men are admitted nearer to God, than old; because vision is a clearer revelation than a dream. And certainly, the more a man drinketh of the world, the more it intoxicateth; and age doth profit rather in the powers of understanding, than in the virtues of the will and affections. There be some have an over-early ripeness in their years, which fadeth betimes; these are first, such as have brittle wits, the edge whereof is soon turned; such as was Hermogenes the rhetorician, whose books are exceeding subtile; who afterwards waxed stupid. A second sort is of those that have some natural dispositions, which have better grace in youth than in age: such as is a fluent and luxuriant speech; which becomes youth well, but not age. So Tully faith of Hortensius; idem manebat, neque idem decebat. The third is of such as take too high a strain at the first; and are magnificent, more than tract of years can uphold. As was Scipio Africanus, of whom Livy faith in effect; ultima primis cederebat.

XLIV. Of beauty.

VIRTUE is like a rich stone, best plain set: and surely virtue is best in a body that is comely, though not of delicate features; and that hath rather dignity of presence, than beauty of aspect. Neither is it almost seen, that very beautiful persons are otherwise of great virtue. As if nature were rather busy not to err, than in labour to produce excellency. And therefore they prove accomplished, but not of great spirit; and rudely rather behaviour than virtue. But this holds not always; for Augustus Caesar, Titus Vespasianus, Philip le Belle of France, Edward the fourth of England, Alcibiades of Athens, Ismael the sophy of Persia, were all high and great spirits; and yet the most beautiful men of their times. In beauty, that of favour is more than that of colour; and that of decent and gracious motion more than that of favour. That is the best part of beauty, which a picture cannot express; no nor the first sight of the life. There is no excellent beauty, that hath not some strangeness in the proportion. A man cannot tell, whether Apelles, or Albert Durer, were the more trifer; whereof the one would make a personage by geometrical proportions: the other, by taking the best parts out of divers faces, to make one excellent. Such personages, I think, would please no body but the painter that made them. Not but I think a painter may make a better face than ever was; but he must do it by a kind of felicity, (as a musician that maketh an excellent air in music) and not by rule. A man shall see faces, that if you examine them part by part, you shall never find a good; and yet altogether do well. If it be true, that the principal part of beauty is in decent motion, certainly it is no marvel, though persons in years seem many times more amiable; pulchrorum autem pud obtinerit: for no youth can be comely but by pardon, and considering the youth, as to make up the comeliness. Beauty is as summer-fruits, which are easy to corrupt, and cannot last: and for the most part, it makes a dissolute youth, and an age a little out of countenance: but yet certainly again, if it light well, it maketh virtues shine, and vices blush.

XLV. Of deformity.

DEFORMED persons are commonly even with nature; for as nature hath done ill by them, so do they by nature; being for the most part (as the scripture faith) void of natural affection; and so they have their revenge of nature. Certainly there is a consent between the body and the mind, and
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

where nature errth in the one, the ventureth in the other. *Ubi peccat in uno, perilitatur in altero*. But because there is in man an election touching the frame of his mind, and a necessity in the frame of his body, the stars of natural inclination are sometimes obscured by the fun of discipline and virtue: therefore it is good to consider of deformity, not as a sign which is more deceivable, but as a cause which seldom faileth of the effect. Whosoever hath any thing fixed in his person that doth induce contempt, hath also a perpetual spur in himself, to rescue and deliver himself from scorn; therefore all deformed persons are extreme bold. First, as in their own defence, as being exposed to scorn; but in process of time by a general habit. Also it stirreth in them industry, and especially of this kind, to watch and observe the weakness of others, that they may have somewhat to repay. Again, in their superiors, it quencheth jealousy towards them, as persons that they think they may at pleasure despise: and it layeth their competitors and emulators asleep; as never believing they should be in possibility of advancement, till they see them in possession. So that upon the matter in a great wit, deformity is an advantage to rising. Kings in ancient times, (and at this present in some countries) were wont to put great trust in eunuchs, because they that are envious towards all, are more obnoxious and officious towards one. But yet their trust towards them, hath rather been as to good spials, and good whisperers, than good magistrates and officers. And much like is the reason of deformed persons. Still the ground is, they will, if they be of spirit, seek to free themselves from scorn; which must be either by virtue or malice. And therefore let it not be marvelled, if sometimes they prove excellent persons; as was Agelius, Zanger the son of Solomon, AEjop, Gafea president of Peru; and Socrates may go like-wise amongst them; with others.

XLVI. Of building.

Houses are built to live in, and not to look on; therefore let use be preferred before uniformity, except where both may be had. Leave the goodly fabricks of houses for beauty only, to the enchanted palaces of the poets: who build them with small cost. He that builds a fair house upon an ill seat, committeth himself to prison. Neither do I reckon it an ill seat only, where the air is unwholesome, but likewise where the air is unequal; as you shall see many fine seats, set upon a knap of ground, environed with higher hills round about it, whereby the heat of the sun is pent in, and the wind gathereth as in troughs; so as you shall have, and that suddenly, as great divinity of heat and cold, as if you dwelt in several places. Neither is it ill air only that maketh an ill seat; but ill ways, ill markets; and, if you will consult with Momus; ill neighbours. I speak not of many more; want of water, want of wood, shade, and shelter; want of fruitfulness, and mixture of grounds of several natures; want of prospect; want of level grounds; want of places at some near distance, for sports of hunting, hawking, and races; too near the sea, too remote; having the commodity of navigable rivers, or the discommodity of their overflowing; too far off from great cities, which may hinder business; or too near them, which lurketh all provisions, and maketh every thing dear; where a man hath a great living laid together, and where he is scanty: all which, as it is impossible perhaps to find together, so it is good to know them, and think of them, that a man may take as many as he can: and if he have several dwellings, that he fort them so, that what he wanteth in the one, he may find in the other. *Lucullus*.
answered *Pompey* well, who when he saw his stately galleries and rooms, so large and lightsome in one of his houses, said, surely an excellent place for summer, but how do you in winter? *Lucullus* answered, why do you not think me as wise as some fowls are, that ever change their abode towards the winter?

To pass from the seat to the house itself, we will do as *Cicero* doth in the orator’s art, who writes books *De Oratore*, and a book he entitles *Orator*: wherein the former delivers the precepts of the art, and the latter the perfection. We will therefore describe a princely palace, making a brief model thereof. For it is strange to see, now in *Europe*, such huge buildings as the *Vatican* and *Escurial*, and some others be, and yet scarce a very fair room in them.

First therefore I say you cannot have a perfect palace, except you have two several sides; a side for the banquet, as is spoken of in the book of *Hecater*; and a side for the household: the one for feasts and triumphs, and the other for dwelling. I understand both these sides to be not only returns, but parts of the front; and to be uniform without, though severally partitioned within; and to be on both sides of a great and stately tower, in the midst of the front; that, as it were, joineth them together on either hand. I would have on the side of the banquet, in front, one only goodly room above stairs, of some forty foot high; and under it, a room for a dressing or preparing place, at times of triumphs. On the other side, which is the household side, I wish it divided at the first into a hall and a chapel, (with a partition between,) both of good state and bigness; and those not to go all the length, but to have at the farther end a winter and a summer parlour, both fair: and under these rooms a fair and large cellar sunk under ground; and likewise some privy kitchens, with butteries and pantries, and the like. As for the tower, I would have it two stories, of eighteen foot high a-piece, above the two wings; and goodly leads upon the top, railed with statues interpofed; and the same tower to be divided into rooms, as shall be thought fit. The stairs likewise to the upper rooms, let them be upon a fair open newel, and finely railed in, with images of wood, cast into a brass colour; and a very fair landing place at the top. But this to be, if you do not point any of the lower rooms for a dining-place of servants; for otherwise you shall have the servants dinner after your own; for the cream of it will come up as in a tunnel: and so much for the front. Only I understand the height of the first stairs to be sixteen foot, which is the height of the lower room.

Beyond this front is there to be a fair court, but three sides of it of a far lower building than the front. And in all the four corners of that court fair stair-cases cast into turrets on the outside, and not within the row of buildings themselves: but those towers are not to be of the height of the front, but rather proportionable to the lower building. Let the court not be paved, for that shriketh up a great heat in summer, and much cold in winter: but only some side alleys, with a crofe, and the quarters to graze, being kept thorn, but not too near thorn. The row of return on the banquet side, let it be all stately galleries; in which galleries, let there be three, or five, fine cupola’s, in the length of it, placed at equal distance; and fine coloured windows of several works. On the household side, chambers of presence, and ordinary entertainments, with some bed-chambers; and let all three sides be a double house, without throw lights on the sides, that you may have rooms from the sun, both for forenoon and afternoon. Cast it also~
also, that you may have rooms both for summer and winter; shady for summer, and warm for winter. You shall have sometimes fair houses so full of glass, that one cannot tell where to become to be out of the sun, or cold. For imbowed windows, I hold them of good use; (in cities indeed, upright do better, in respect of the uniformity towards the street;) for they be pretty retiring places for conference; and besides, they keep both the wind and sun off; for that which would strike almost through the room, doth scarce pass the window. But let them be but few, four in the court, on the sides only.

Beyond this court, let there be an inward court of the same square and height, which is to be environed with the garden on all sides: and in the inside, cloistered on all sides, upon decent and beautiful arches, as high as the first story: on the under story, towards the garden, let it be turned to a grotto, or place of shade or embellishment: and only have opening and windows towards the garden, and be level upon the floor, no whit sunk under ground, to avoid all dampishness. And let there be a fountain, or some fair work of statues, in the midst of this court; and to be paved as the other court was. These buildings to be for privy lodgings on both sides, and the end for privy galleries: whereof you must foresee, that one of them be for an infirmary, if the prince or any special person should be sick, with chambers, bed-chamber, antecamera and recamera, joining to it. This upon the second story. Upon the ground story, a fair gallery, open, upon pillars; and upon the third story likewise, an open gallery upon pillars, to take the prospect and freshness of the garden. At both corners of the farther side, by way of return, let there be two delicate or rich cabinets, daintily paved, richly hanged, glazed with crystalline glasses, and a rich cupola in the midst; and all other elegance that may be thought upon. In the upper gallery too, I wish that there may be, if the place will yield it, some fountains running in divers places from the wall, with some fine avoidances. And thus much for the model of the palace; save that you must have, before you come to the front, three courts: a green court plain, with a wall about it: a second court of the same, but more garnished, with little turrets, or rather embellishments upon the wall; and a third court, to make a square with the front, but not to be built, nor yet enclosed with a naked wall, but enclosed with terraces leaded aloft, and fairly garnished on the three sides; and cloister'd on the inside with pillars, and not with arches below. As for offices, let them stand at distance, with some low galleries to pass from them to the palace itself.

XLVII. Of gardens.

God Almighty first planted a garden: and indeed it is the purest of human pleasures. It is the greatest refreshment to the spirits of man; without which, buildings and palaces are but gross handy-works: and a man shall ever see, that when ages grow to civility and elegance, men come to build stately, sooner than to garden finely; as if gardening were the greater perfection. I do hold it, in the royal ordering of gardens, there ought to be gardens for all the months in the year: in which, severally, things of beauty may be then in season. For December and January, and the latter part of November, you must take such things as are green all winter; holy; ivy; bays; juniper; cypress trees; yew; pine-apple trees; fir trees; rosemary; lavender; periwinkle, the white, the purple, and the blue; germander; flags; orange trees; lemon trees, and myrtles, if they be flowered; and
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

and sweet marjoram warm set. There followeth, for the latter part of January and February, the mezeleon tree, which then blossoms; coccus vernus, both the yellow and the grey; primroses; anemones; the early tulip; hyacinthus orientalis; chamomis; fritillaria. For March there come violets, especially the single blue, which are the earliest; the yellow daffidil; the daisy; the almond tree in blossom; the peach tree in blossom; the cornelian tree in blossom; sweet-brier. In April follow the double white violet; the wall-flower; the flockgilliflower; the cowslip, flower-de-luces; and lilies of all natures; rofenary-flowers; the tulip; the double piony; the pale daffidil; the French honeyfuckle; the cherry tree in blossom; the damascan and plumb trees in blossom; the white thorn in leaf; the lilach tree. In May and June come pinks of all sorts; especially the blu£h pink, rofes of all kinds, except the musk, which comes later; honeyfuckles; strawberries; buglos; cumbolue; the French marygold; fos Africanus; cherry tree in fruit; ribes; figs in fruit; rasps; vine flowers; lavender in flowers; the sweet fattyrian, with the white flower; berba mycaria; lilium convallium; the apple tree in blossom. In July come gilliflowers of all varieties; musk rofes; the lime tree in blossom; early pears, and plumbs in fruit, gennitings, codlins. In August come plumbs of all sorts in fruit; pears; apricots, berberries; fiblers, muskelons; monks-hoods, of all colours. In September come grapes; apples; poppey of all colours; peaches; melo-cotones; nec­tarines; cornelians; wardens; quinces. In October, and the beginning of November, come services; medlars; bullaces; roses cut or removed, to come late; holyoaks, and such like. These particulars are for the climate of London: but my meaning is perceived, that you may have ver perpetuum, as the place affords.

And because the breath of flowers is far sweeter in the air, (where it comes and goes, like the warbling of musick,) than in the hand, therefore nothing is more fit for that delight, than to know what be the flowers and plants that do beft perfume the air. Rofes damask and red, are fast flowers of their smells; so that you may walk by a whole row of them, and find nothing of their sweetnefs; yea, though it be in a morning’s dew. Bays likewise yield no smell, as they grow; rofenary little; nor sweet marjoram. That which above all others, yields the sweeteft smell in the air, is the violet; especially the white double violet, which comes twice a year; about the middle of April, and about Bartholomew-tide. Next to that is the musk-rose; then the strawberry leaves dying, with a moft excellent cordial smell. Then the flower of the vines; it is a little duft, like the duft of a bent, which grows upon the cluster, in the frift coming forth: then sweet-brier, then wall-flowers, which are very delightful, to be set under a par­lour, or lower chamber window. Then pinks and gilliflowers, especially the matted pink and clove-gillifower: then the flowers of the lime tree: then the honeyfuckles, so they be somewhat afar off. Of bean-flowers I speak not, because they are field flowers: But those which perfume the air moft delightfully, not passed by as the reft, but being trodden upon and cru§hed, are three: that is, burnet, wild thyme, and water mints. Therefore you are to set whole alleys of them, to have the pleafure when you walk or tread.

For gardens, (speaking of thofe which are indeed prince-like, as we have done of buildings) the contents ought not well to be under thirty acres of ground, and to be divided into three parts; a green in the entrance; a heath or defert in the going forth! and the main garden in the midft; besides alleys on both fides. And I like well, that four acres of ground be af­figned
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

signed to the green, six to the heath, four and four to either side, and twelve to the main garden. The green hath two pleafures; the one, becaufe nothing is more pleasant to the eye, than green grass kept finely horn; the other, becaufe it will give you a fair alley in the midfl; by which you may go in front upon a flately hedge, which is to inclofe the garden. But becaufe the alley will be long, and in great heat of the year or day, you ought not to buy the shade in the garden, by going in the fun through the green; therefore you are, of either side the green, to plant a covert alley, upon carpenter's work, about twelve foot in height, by which you may go in shade into the garden. As for the making of knots or figures, with divers coloured earths, that they may lie under the windows of the house, on that side which the garden stands, they be but toys; you may fee as good sights, many times, in tarts. The garden is beft to be square, encompassed on all the four sides with a flately arched hedge: the arches to be upon pillars of carpenter's work, of some ten foot high, and fix foot broad: and the spaces between, of the fame dimenfion with the breadth of the arch. Over the arches, let there be an entire hedge, of some four foot high, framed alto upon carpenter's work; and upon the upper hedge, over every arch, a little turret, with a belly enough to receive a cage of birds: and over every space, between the arches, some other little figure, with broad plates of round colour'd glafs, gilt, for the fun to play upon. But this hedge I intend to be raifed upon a bank, not steep, but gently slope, of some fix foot, set all with flowers. Alto I underfland, that this square of the garden shou'd not be the whole breadth of the ground, but to leave on either side ground enough for diversity of fide alleys; unto which, the two covert alleys of the green may deliver you: but there muft be no alleys with hedges at either end of this great enclofure; not at the hither end, for letting your profpeft upon this fair hedge from the green; nor at the farther end, for letting your profpeft from the hedge, through the arches, upon the heath.

For the ordering of the ground within the great hedge, I leave it to variety of device; advising nevertheless, that whatever form you caft it into, first it be not too bufy, or full of work: wherein I, for my part, do not like images cut out in juniper or other garden stuff; they be for children. Little low hedges round, like welts, with some pretty pyramids, I like well; and in some places, fair columns upon frames of carpenter's work, I would also have the alleys spacious and fair. You may have clofer alleys upon the fide grounds, but none in the main garden. I with alto, in the very middle, a fair mount, with three accents and alleys, enough for four to walk a-breaft; which I would have to be perfef circles, without any bul-warks or embofments; and the whole mount to be thirty foot high; and some fine banqueting house, with some chimneys neatly caft, and without too much glafs.

For fountains, they are a great beauty and refreshment; but pools marr all, and make the garden unwholefome, and full of flies and frogs. Foun- tains I intend to be of two natures: the one that fprikleth or fpouteth water; the other a fair receipt of water, of some thirty or forty foot square, but without fith, or flime, or mud. For the firft, the ornaments of images gilt, or of marble, which are in use, do well: but the main matter is fo to convey the water, as it never flay either in the bowls, or in the cifterns; that the water be never by reft discoloured, green or red, or the like; or gather any moifenefs or putrefaction. Besides that, it is to be cleansed every day
day by the hand. Also some steps up to it, and some fine pavement about it doth well. As for the other kind of fountain, which we may call a bathing pool, it may admit much curiosity and beauty, wherewith we will not trouble our selves; as, that the bottom be finely paved, and with images: the sides likewise; and withal embellished with coloured glasses, and such things of lustre; encompassed also with fine rails of low statues. But the main point is the same which we mentioned in the former kind of fountain; which is, that the water be in perpetual motion, fed by a water higher than the pool, and delivered into it by fair spouts, and then discharged away under ground by some equality of bores, that it stay little. And for fine devices of arching water without spilling, and making it rise in several forms (of feathers, drinking glasses, canopies, and the like) they be pretty things to look on, but nothing to health and sweetness.

For the heath, which was the third part of our plot, I wish it to be framed as much as may be to a natural wildness. Trees I would have none in it, but some thickets made only of sweet-briar and honey-fuckle, and some wild vine amongst; and the ground set with violets, straw-berries, and primroses. For these are sweet and proper in the shade. And these to be in the heath here and there, not in any order. I like also little heaps, in the nature of mole-hills, (such as are in wild heaths) to be set, some with wild thyme, some with pinks, some with germander, that gives a good flower to the eye, some with periwinkle, some with violets, some with straw-berries, some with cowslips, some with daisies, some with red roses, some with Lilium convallium, some with sweet-williams red, some with bears-foot, and the like low flowers, being withal sweet and sightly. Part of which heaps to be with standards of little buffets, stuck upon their top, and part without. The standards to be roses, juniper, holly, berberries, (but here and there, because of the smell of their blossoms) red currants, goolberries, rosemaries, bays, sweet briar, and such like. But these standards to be kept with cutting, that they grow not out of course.

For the side grounds, you are to fill them with variety of alleys, private, to give a full shade; some of them wherethoever the sun be. You are to frame some of them likewise for shelter, that when the wind blows sharp, you may walk as in a gallery. And these alleys must be likewise hedged at both ends, to keep out the wind; and these closer alleys must be ever finely gravelled, and no grass, because of going wet. In many of these alleys likewise, you are to set fruit-trees of all sorts; as well upon the walls as in ranges. And this would be generally observed, that the borders wherein you plant your fruit trees, be fair and large, and low, and not steep; and set with fine flowers, but thin and sparingly, lest they deceive the trees. At the end of both the side grounds, I would have a mound of some pretty height, leaving the wall of the inclosure breath high, to look abroad into the fields.

For the main garden, I do not deny but there should be some fair alleys, ranged on both sides with fruit-trees, and some pretty tufts of fruit-trees, and arbours with seats, set in some decent order; but these to be by no means set too thick, but to leave the main garden so as it be not close, but the air open and free. For as for shade, I would have you rest upon the alleys of the side grounds, there to walk, if you be disposed, in the heat of the year or day; but to make account, that the main garden is for the more temperate parts of the year; and in the heat of summer, for the morning and the evening, or overcast days.
For aviaries, I like them not, except they be of that largeness, as they may be turfed, and have living plants and bushes set in them; that the birds may have more scope, and natural nestling, and that no foulness appear in the floor of the aviary. So I have made a platform of a princely garden, partly by precept, partly by drawing; not a model, but some general lines of it; and in this I have spared for no cost. But it is nothing for great princes, that for the most part taking advice with workmen, with no less cost, set their things together; and sometimes add statues, and such things, for state and magnificence, but nothing to the true pleasure of a garden.

XLVIII. Of negotiating.

It is generally better to deal by speech, than by letter; and by the mediation of a third, than by a man's self. Letters are good, when a man would draw an answer by letter back again; or when it may serve for a man's justification, afterwards to produce his own letter; or where it may be in danger to be interrupted, or heard by pieces. To deal in person is good, when a man's face breedeth regard, as commonly with inferiors; or in tender cases, where a man's eye upon the countenance of him with whom he speaketh, may give him a direction how far to go: and generally where a man will reserve to himself liberty, either to disavow, or to expound. In choice of instruments, it is better to chuse men of a plainer sort, that are like to do that that is committed to them, and to report back again faithfully the success; than those that are cunning to contrive out of other men's business, somewhat to grace themselves; and will help the matter in report for satisfaction fake. Use also such persons as affect the business wherein they are employed, for that quickeneth much; and such as are fit for the matter; as bold men for exposition, fair-spoken men for persuasion, crafty men for inquiry and observation, froward and absurd men for business that doth not well bear out itself. Use also such as have been lucky, and prevailed before in things wherein you have employed them; for that breeds confidence, and they will strive to maintain their prescription. It is better to found a person with whom one deals afar off, than to fall upon the point at first; except you mean to surprize him by some short question. It is better dealing with men in appetite, than with those that are where they would be. If a man deal with another upon conditions, the start of first performance is all; which a man cannot reasonably demand, except either the nature of the thing be such which must go before; or else a man can persuade the other party, that he shall still need him in some other thing; or else that he be counted the honester man. All practice is to discover, or to work. Men discover themselves in trust, in passion, at unawares, and of necessity, when they would have somewhat done, and cannot find an apt pretext. If you would work any man, you must either know his nature and fashions, and so lead him; or his ends, and so persuade him; or his weaknes and disadvantages, and so awe him; or those that have interest in him, and so govern him. In dealing with cunning persons, we must ever consider their ends to interpret their speeches; and it is good to say little to them, and that which they least look for. In all negotiations of difficulty, a man may not look to sow and reap at once; but must prepare business, and so ripen it by degrees.
XLIX. Of followers and friends.

Costly followers are not to be liked; left while a man maketh his train longer, he make his wings shorter. I reckon to be costly, not them alone which charge the purse, but which are wearisome and importune in suits. Ordinary followers ought to challenge no higher conditions than countenance, recommendation, and protection from wrongs. Factious followers are worse to be liked, which follow not upon affection to him with whom they range themselves, but upon discontentment conceived against some other: whereupon commonly ensueth that ill intelligence that we many times see between great personages. Likewise glorious followers, who make themselves as trumpets of the commendation of those they follow, are full of inconvenience; for they taint business through want of secrecy; and they export honour from a man, and make him a return in envy. There is a kind of followers likewise, which are dangerous, being indeed espials; which enquire the secrets of the house, and bear tales of them to others. Yet such men many times are in great favour; for they are officious, and commonly exchange tales. The following by certain sates of men answerable to that which a great person himself professeth, (as of soldiers to him that hath been employed in the wars, and the like) hath ever been a thing civil, and well taken even in monarchies; so it be without too much pomp or popularity. But the most honourable kind of following, is to be followed as one that apprehendeth to advance virtue and desert in all sorts of persons. And yet where there is no eminent odds in sufficiency, it is better to take with the more passable, than with the more able. And besides, to speak truth in base times, active men are of more use than virtuous. It is true, that in government, it is good to use men of one rank equally: for to countenance some extraordinarily, is to make them insolent, and the rest discontent; because they may claim a due. But contrariwise in favour, to use men with much difference and election is good; for it maketh the persons preferred more thankful, and the rest more officious; because all is of favour. It is good discretion not to make too much of any man at the first; because one cannot hold out that proportion. To be governed (as we call it) by one, is not safe; for it shews softness, and gives a freedom to scandal and disreputation; for those that would not cenfure, or speak ill of a man immediately, will talk more boldly of those that are so great with them, and thereby wound their honour. Yet to be distracted with many is worse; for it makes men to be of the last impression, and full of change. To take advice of some few friends is ever honourable; for lookers on many times see more than gamblers; and the vale best discoveth the hill. There is little friendship in the world, and least of all between equals, which was wont to be magnified. That that is, is between superior and inferior, whose fortunes may comprehend, the one the other.

L. Of suitors.

Many ill matters and projects are undertaken; and private suits do prejudice the publick good. Many good matters are undertaken with bad minds; I mean not only corrupt minds, but crafty minds, that intend not performance. Some embrace suits, which never mean to deal effectually in them; but if they see there may be life in the matter by some other mean, they will be content to win a thank, or take a second reward, or at least
to make use in the mean time of the suitor's hopes. Some take hold of suits, only for an occasion to cross some other; or to make an information, whereof they could not otherwise have apt pretext; without care what become of the suit when that turn is served: or generally, to make other men's business a kind of entertainment to bring in their own. Nay, some undertake suits, with a full purpose to let them fall; to the end to gratify the adverse party or competitor. Surely there is in some sort a right in every suit; either a right of equity, if it be a suit of controversy; or a right of desert, if it be a suit of petition. If affection lead a man to favour the wrong side in justice, let him rather use his countenance to compound the matter, than to carry it. If affection lead a man to favour the less worthy in desert, let him do it without depraving or disabling the better deserves.

In suits which a man doth not well understand, it is good to refer them to some friend of trust and judgment, that may report whether he may deal in them with honour; but let him choose well his referendaries, for else he may be led by the nose. Suitors are so distraught with delays and abuses, that plain dealing in denying to deal in suits at first, and reporting the success barely, and in challenging no more thanks than one hath deserved, is grown not only honourable, but also gracious. In suits of favour, the first coming ought to take little place; so far forth consideration may be had of his trust, if intelligence of the matter could not otherwise have been had but by him, advantage be not taken of the note, but the party left to his other means; and in some sort recompened for his discovery. To be ignorant of the value of a suit is simplicity; as well as to be ignorant of the right thereof, is want of conscience. Secrecy in suits is a great means of obtaining; for voicing them to be in forwardness, may discourage some kind of suitors; but doth quicken and awake others. But timing of the suit is the principal: Timing, I say, not only in respect of the person that should grant it, but in respect of those which are like to cross it. Let a man in the choice of his mean, rather choose the fittest mean, than the greatest mean: and rather them that deal in certain things, than those that are general. The reparation of a denial, is sometimes equal to the first grant; if a man shew himself neither dejected nor discontented. Iniquum petas, ut aequum feras; is a good rule, where a man hath strength of favour: but otherwise a man were better rife in his suit; for he that would have ventured at first to have loft the suitor, will not in the conclusion lose both the suitor and his own former favour. Nothing is thought so easy a request to a great person, as his letter; and yet, if it be not in a good cause, it is so much out of his reputation. There are no worse instruments than these, general contrivers of suits; for they are but a kind of poison and infection to public proceedings.

LI. Of Studies.

Studies serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability. Their chief use for delight, is in privateness and retiring; for ornament, is in discourse; and for ability, is in the judgment and disposition of business. For expert men can execute, and perhaps judge of particulars, one by one; but the general counsels, and the plots and marshalling of affairs, come best from those that are learned. To spend too much time in studies, is sloth; to use them too much for ornament, is affectation; to make judgment wholly by their rules, is the humour of a scholar. They perfect nature, and are perfected by experience: for natural abilities are like natural plants, that need pruning by VOL. III. A a a 2 study,
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

Study; and studies themselves do give forth directions too much at large, except they be bounded in by experience. Crafty men contemn studies; simple men admire them, and wise men use them; for they teach not their own use; but that is a wisdom without them, and above them, won by observation. Read not to contradict and confute; nor to believe and take for granted; nor to find talk and discourse; but to weigh and consider. Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and digested: that is, some books are to be read only in parts; others to be read, but not curiously; and some few to be read wholly, and with diligence and attention. Some books also may be read by deputy, and extracts made of them by others; but that would be only in the least important arguments, and the meaner sort of books: else distilled books are like common distilled waters, flashy things. Reading maketh a full man; conference a ready man; and writing an exact man. And therefore if a man write little, he had need have a great memory; if he confer little, he had need have a present wit; and if he read little, he had need have much cunning, to seem to know that he doth not. Histories make men wise; poets witty; the mathematick subtle; natural philosophy deep; moral, grave; logic and rhetoric, able to contend: Abruut studia in mores. Nay, there is no stond or impediment in the wit, but may be wrought out by fit studies; like as diseases of the body may have appropriate exercises: bowling is good for the ftone and reins; shooting for the lungs and breath; gentle walking for the stomach; riding for the head; and the like. So if a man's wit be wandering, let him study the mathematicks; for in demonstrations, if his wit be called away never so little, he must begin again: if his wit be not apt to distinguish or find differences, let him study the schoolmen; for they are Cyni Satires. If he be not apt to beat over matters, and to call up one thing, to prove and illustrate another, let him study the lawyers cases: so every defect of the mind may have a special receipt.

LII. Of faction.

Many have an opinion not wise; that for a prince to govern his estate; or for a great person to govern his proceedings, according to the respect of factions, is a principal part of policy; whereas contrariwise, the chiefest wisdom is, either in ordering those things which are general, and wherein men of several factions do nevertheless agree, or in dealing with correspondence to particular persons, one by one. But I say not, that the consideration of factions is to be neglected. Mean men, in their rising, must adhere; but great men, that have strength in themselves, were better to maintain themselves indifferent and neutral. Yet even in beginners, to adhere so moderately, as he be a man of the one faction, which is most passable with the other, commonly giveth best way. The lower and weaker faction is the firmer in conjunction: and it is often seen, that a few that are stiff, do tire out a greater number that are more moderate. When one of the factions is extinguiished, the remaining subdivideth: as the faction between Lucullus, and the rest of the nobles of the senate (which they called optimates) held out a while against the faction of Pompey and Caeser: But when the senate's authority was pulled down, Caeser and Pompey soon after brake. The faction or party of Antonius and Octavianus Caeser, against Brutus and Caius, held out likewise for a time: but when Brutus and Caius were overthrown, then soon after Antonius and Octavianus brake and subdivided. These examples are of wars, but the same holdeth in private factions.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

 faults. And therefore those that are seconds in factions, do many times, when the faction subdivideth, prove principals; but many times also they prove cyphers and casthee’d; for many a man’s strength is in opposition; and when that faileth, he groweth out of use. It is commonly seen, that men once placed, take in with the contrary faction to that, by which they enter: thinking belike that they have the first sure, and now are ready for a new purchase. The traitor in faction lightly goeth away with it; for when matters have stuck long in balancing, the winning of some one man casteth them, and he gettheth all the thanks. The even carriage between two factions, proceedeth not always of moderation, but of a trueness to a man’s self, with end to make ufe of both. Certainly in Italy, they hold it a little suspeét in popes, when they have often in their mouth Padre commune: and take it to be a sign of one, that meaneth to refer all to the greatness of his own house. Kings had need beware how they side themselves, and make themselves as of a faction or party; for leagues within the state are ever pernicious to monarchies; for they raise an obligation, paramount to obligation of sovereignty, and make the king, tanquam unus ex nobis; as was to be seen in the league of France. When factions are carried too high, and too violently, it is a sign of weakness in princes, and much to the prejudice both of their authority and business. The motions of factions, under kings, ought to be like the motions (as the astronomers speake) of the inferior orbs; which may have their proper motions, but yet are quietly carried by the higher motion of primum mobile.

LIII. Of ceremonies and respect.

He that is only real, had need have exceeding great parts of virtue; as the stone had need to be rich, that is set without foil; but if a man mark it well, it is in praise and commendation of men, as it is in gettings and gains. For the proverb is true, that light gains make heavy purses; for light gains come thick, whereas greats come but now and then. So it is true, that small matters win great commendation, because they are continually in use, and in note; whereas the occasion of any great virtue cometh but on festivals: therefore it doth much add to a man’s reputation, and is, (as queen Isabella said) like perpetual letters commendatory, to have good forms: to attain it, it almost sufficeth not to despise them; for so shall a man observe them in others; and let him truth himself with the rest. For if he labour too much to express them, he shall lose their grace; which is to be natural and unaffected. Some mens behaviour is like a verse, wherein every syllable is measured: how can a man comprehend great matters, that breaketh his mind too much to small observations? Not to use ceremonies at all, is to teach others not to use them again, and diminisheth respect to himself; especially they be not to be omitted to strangers, and formal natures: but the dwelling upon them, and exalting them above the moon, is not only tedious, but doth diminish the faith and credit of him that speake. And certainly there is a kind of conveying of effectual and imprinting passages, amongst complements, which is of singular use, if a man can hit upon it. Amongst a man’s peers, a man shall be sure of familiarity; and therefore it is good a little to keep state. Amongst a man’s inferiors, one shall be sure of reverence; and therefore it is good a little to be familiar. He that is too much in any thing, so that he giveth another occasion of society, maketh himself cheap. To apply one’s self to others is good; so it be with demonstration, that a man doth it upon regard, and not upon facility.
ESSAYS CIVIL AND MORAL.

lity. It is a good precept, generally in seconding another, yet to add some-
what of one's own; as if you will grant his opinion, let it be with some di-
finition; if you will follow his motion, let it be with condition; if you al-
low his counsel, let it be with alleging farther reason. Men had need be-
ware how they be too perfect in complements; for be they never so suffi-
cient otherwise, their enviers will be sure to give them that attribute, to the
disadvantage of their greater virtues. It is loss also in business, to be too
full of respect, or to be too curious in observing times and opportunities:
Solomon faith; He that considereth the wind, shall not sow; and be that look-
eth to the clouds, shall not reap. A wise man will make more opportunities
than he finds. Mens behaviour should be like their apparel; not too straight
or point device, but free for exercise or motion.

LIV. Of praise.

Praise is the reflection of virtue: but it is as the glass or body, which
giveth the reflection. If it be from the common people, it is commonly
false and nought; and rather followeth vain persons, than virtuous; for the
common people understand not many excellent virtues: the lowest virtues
draw praise from them; the middle virtues work in them astonishment, or
admiration; but of the highest virtues, they have no sense or perceiving at
all: but shews, and species virtutibus familiis, serve with them. Certainly
fame is like a river, that beareth up things light and swim, and
drowns things weighty and solid: but if perrons of quality and judgment
concur, then it is (as the scripture faith) Nomen bonum inftar unguenti fia-
grantis. It filleth all round about, and will not easily away: for the odours
of ointments, are more durable than those of flowers. There be so
many false points of praise, that a man may justly hold it a suspect. Some
praises proceed merely of flattery; and if he be an ordinary flatterer, he will
have certain common attributes, which may serve every man; if he be a
cunning flatterer, he will follow the arch-flatterer, which is a man's self: and
wherein a man thinketh best of himself, therein the flatterer will uphold him
most: but if he be an impudent flatterer, look wherein a man is conscious to
himself, that he is most defective, and is most out of countenance in himself,
that will the flatterer entitle him to perforce, spretia confidentia. Some praises
come of good wishes and respects, which is a form due in civility to kings and
great persons, laudando praecipere; when by telling men what they are, they
reprefent to them what they fhould be. Some men are praised maliciously to
their hurt, thereby to flir envy and jealousy towards them; peffimum genus
inimicorum laudantium; infomuch as it was a proverb amongst the Grecians,
that, he that was praised to his hurt, fhould have a push rife upon his nose:
as we fay, that a blifter will rife upon one's tongue, that tells a lye. Cer-
tainly moderate praise, used with opportunity, and not vulgar, is that which
doth the good. Solomon faith, be that praifeth bis friend aloud, rifting early,
it fhall be to him no better than a cursed. Too much magnifying of man or
matter, doth irritate contradiction, and procure envy and scorn. To praise a
man's self cannot be decent, except it be in rare cafes: but to praise a man's
office or profession, he may do it with good grace, and with a kind of mag-
nanimity. The cardinals of Rome, which are theologues, and friers, and
schoolmen, have a phrase of notable contempt and scorn, towards civil bu-
iness; for they call all temporal business, of wars, embaifages, judicature, and
other employments, shirrie, which is under-sheriffes, as if they were but
matters for under-sheriffs and catchpoles; though many times those under-
sheriffes
fervanties do more good than their high speculations. St. Paul, when he boafts of himself, he doth oft intertwine, I speak like a fool; but speaking of his calling, he faith, magnificabo apostolatum meum.

LV. Of vain-glory.

It was prettily devis'd of AEsop: The fly fate upon the axle-tree of the chariot wheel, and said, what a duft do I raise? So are there some vain persons, that whatsoever goeth alone, or moveth upon greater means, if they have never so little hand in it, they think it is they that carry it. They that are glorious, must needs be factious; for all bravery stands upon comparisons. They must needs be violent, to make good their own vaunts: neither can they be secret, and therefore not effectual; but according to the French proverb, beaucoup de bruit, peu de fruit: much brute, little fruit. Yet certainly there is use of this quality in civil affairs: where there is an opinion, and fame to be created, either of virtue or greatness, these men are good trumpeters. Again, as Titus Livius noteth, in the case of Antiochus and the Aetolians, there are sometimes great effects of cross lies; as if a man that negotiates between two princes, to draw them to join in a war against the third, doth extol the forces of either of them, above measure, the one to the other; and sometimes, he that deals between man and man, raiseth his own credit with both, by pretending greater interest than he hath in either. And in these, and the like kinds, it often falls out, that somewhat is produced of nothing; for lies are sufficient to breed opinion, and opinion brings on subsistence. In military commanders and soldiers, vain-glory is an essential point; for as iron sharpens iron, so by glory one courage sharpeneth another: In cases of great enterprise, upon charge and adventure, a composition of glorious natures doth put life into business; and those that are of solid and sober natures, have more of the ballast than of the fail. In fame of learning, the flight will be slow, without some feathers of ostentation: Qui de commendanda gloria libros scribunt, nomen suum inscribunt. Socrates, Aristotle, Galen, were men full of ostentation. Certainly vain-glory helpeth to perpetuate a man's memory; and virtue was never so beholden to human nature, as it received its due at the second hand. Neither had the fame of Cicero, Seneca, Plinius secundus, born her age so well, if it had not been joined with some vanity in themselves: like unto varnish, that makes ceilings not only fine, but last. But all this while, when I speak of vain-glory, I mean not of that property that Tacitus doth attribute to Mucianus; omnium, quae dixerat, feceratque, arte quadam ostentator: for that proceeds not of vanity, but of natural magnanimity and discretion: and in some persons, is not only comely, but gracious. For excusations, cessions, modesty it self well governed, are but arts of ostentation. And amongst those arts there is none better, than that which Plinius secundus speaketh of; which is to be liberal of praise and commendation to others, in that wherein a man's self hath any perfection. For faith Pliny very witly; in commending another, you do your self right; for he that you commend is either superior to you, in that you commend, or inferior. If he be inferior, if he be to be commended, you much more. If he be superior, if he be not to be commended, you much less glorious. Men are the scorn of wise men; the admiration of fools; the idols of parasites; and the slaves of their own vaunts.

LVI. Of
LVI. Of honour and reputation.

The winning of honour is but the revealing of a man's virtue and worth, without disadvantage. For some in their actions do woo and affect honour and reputation; which sort of men are commonly much talked of, but inwardly little admired. And some, contrariwise, darken their virtue in the shew of it; so as they be undervalued in opinion. If a man perform that which hath not been attempted before, or attempted and given over; or hath been achieved, but not with so good circumstance; he shall purchase more honour, than by effecting a matter of greater difficulty, or virtue, wherein he is but a follower. If a man so temper his actions, as in some one of them he doth content every faction or combination of people, the musick will be the fuller. A man is an ill husband of his honour, that entereth into any action, the failing wherein may disgrace him more, than the carrying of it through can honour him. Honour that is gained and broken upon another, hath the quickest reflection, like diamonds cut with facets. And therefore let a man contend to excel any competitors of his in honour, in out-shooting them, if he can, in their own bow. Discreet followers and servants help much to reputation: omnis fama a domesticiis emanat. Envy, which is the canker of honour, is best extinguished, by declaring a man's self in his ends, rather to seek merit than fame; and by attributing a man's successes rather to divine providence and felicity, than to his own virtue or policy. The true marshalling of the degrees of sovereign honour, are these. In the first place are conditores imperiorum; founders of states and commonwealths; such as were Romulus, Cyrus, Caesar, Ottoman, Ithmael. In the second place are legislatores, law-givers, which are also called second founders, or perpetui principes, because they govern by their ordinances, after they are gone: such were Lycurgus, Solon, Justinian, Edgar, Alphonjs of Castile, the wife, that made the Siete patri das. In the third place are liberatores, or salvatores; such as compound the long miseries of civil wars, or deliver their countries from servitude of strangers or tyrants; as Augustus Caesar, Vespasianus, Aurelianus, Theodosius, King Henry the seventh of England, king Henry the fourth of France. In the fourth place are propagatores, or propagatores imperii, such as in honourable wars enlarge their territories, or make noble defence against invaders. And in the last place, are patres patriae, which reign justly, and make the times good, wherein they live. Both which last kinds need no examples, they are in such number. Degrees of honour in subjects are; first, partidpes curarum, those upon whom princes do discharge the greatest weight of their affairs; their right hands, as we call them. The next are, duces belli, great leaders; such as are princes lieutenants, and do them notable services in the wars. The third are gratiosi, favourites; such as exceed not this scantling; to be solace to the sovereign, and harmless to the people: and the fourth, negotiis pares; such as have great places under princes, and execute their places with sufficiency. There is an honour like-wise, which may be ranked amongst the greatest, which happeneth rarely. That is, of such as sacrifice themselves to death or danger, for the good of their country; as was M. Regulus, and the two Decii.

LVII. Of judicature.

Judges ought to remember, that their office is jus dicere, and not jus dare; to interpret law, and not to make law, or give law. Else will it be like
like the authority claimed by the church of Rome; which under pretext of exposition of scripture, doth not stick to add and alter; and to pronounce that which they do not find; and by shew of antiquity to introduce novelty. Judges ought to be more learned than witty; more reverend than plausible; and more advised than confident. Above all things, integrity is their portion and proper virtue. Cursed (faith the law) be he that removeth the land-mark. The miller of a mere-stone is to blame: But it is the unjust judge that is the capital remover of land-marks, when he deneth amis of lands and property. One foul sentence doth more hurt, than many foul examples. For these do but corrupt the stream; the other corrupteth the fountain. Judges ought to be more learned than witty; more reverend than plausible; and more advised than confident. Above all things, integrity is their portion and proper virtue. Cursed (faith the law) be he that removeth the land-mark. The miller of a mere-stone is to blame: But it is the unjust judge that is the capital remover of land-marks, when he deneth amis of lands and property. One foul sentence doth more hurt, than many foul examples. For these do but corrupt the stream; the other corrupteth the fountain.

First, for the causes or parties that sue. There be (faith the scripture) that turn judgment into wormwood; and surely there be also that turn it into vinegar: for injustice maketh a bitter, and delays make it four. The principal duty of a judge, is to suppress force and fraud; whereof force is the more pernicious when it is open; and fraud when it is close and disguised. Add thereto contentious suits, which ought to be spewed out as the surfeit of courts. A judge ought to prepare his way to a just sentence, as God u[eth to prepare his way by raising valleys, and taking down hills: so when there appeareth on either side an high hand, violent prosecution, cunning advantages taken, combination, power, great counsel, then is the virtue of a judge seen, to make inequality equal; that he may plant his judgment as upon an even ground.

Secondly, for the advocates and counsel that plead: patience and gravity of hearing is an essential part of justice; and an over-speaking judge is no well-tuned cymbal. It is no grace to a judge, first to find that which he might have heard in due time from the bar; or to shew quickness of conceit in cutting off evidence or counsel too short; or to prevent information by questions, though pertinent. The parts of a judge in hearing are thus; to direct the evidence; to moderate length, repetition, or impertinency of speech; to recapitulate, select, and collate, the material points of that which hath been said; and to give the rule or sentence. Whatsoever is above thefe, is too much; and proceedeth either of glory and willingness to speak, or of impatience to hear, or of shortness of memory, or of want of a stayed and equal attention. It is a strange thing to see, that the boldness of advocates
should prevail with judges; whereas they should imitate God in whose feet they fit; who refpefheth the presumptuous, and giveth grace to the meek. But it is more strange, that judges should have noted favourites, which cannot but cause multiplication of fees, and suspicion of by-ways. There is due from the judge to the advocate, some commendation and gracing where causes are well handled, and fair pleaded; especially towards the side which obtaineth not; for that upholds in the client the reputation of his counsel, and beats down in him the conceit of his cause. There is likewise due to the publick a civil reprehension of advocates, where there appeareth cunning counsel, gross neglect, flight information, indifcreet pleading, or an over-bold defence. And let not the counsel at the bar chop with the judge, nor wind himself into the handling of the cause anew, after the judge hath declared his sentence: but on the other side, let not the judge meet the cause half way; nor give occasion to the party to say, his counsellor's proofs were not heard.

Thirdly, for that which concerns clerks and ministers. The place of justice is a hallowed place; and therefore not only the bench, but the footpace and precincts, and purport thereof, ought to be preserved without scandal and corruption. For certainly, grapes (as the scripture faith) will not be gathered of thorns or briers: neither can justice yield her fruit with sweetness, amongst the briars and brambles of catching and polluting clerks and ministers. The attendants of courts are subject to four bad instruments. First, certain persons that are sowers of suits; which make the court swell, and the country pine. The second sort, is of those that engage courts in quarrels of jurisdiction, and are not truly amici curiae, but parasiti curiae; in puffing a court up beyond her bounds, for their own scraps and advantage. The third sort, is of those that may be accounted the left hands of courts; persons that are full of nimble and finister tricks and shifts, whereby they pervert the plain and direct courses of courts, and bring justice into oblique lines and labyrinths. And the fourth is, the poller and exacter of fees; which justifies the common resemblance of the courts of justice to the bull, wherunto while the sheep flies for defence in weather, he is sure to lose part of the fleece. On the other side, an ancient clerk, skilful in precedents, wary in proceeding, and understanding in the business of the court, is an excellent finger of a court, and doth many times point the way to the judge himself.

Fourthly, for that which may concern the sovereign and estate. Judges ought above all to remember the conclusion of the Roman twelve tables; fiius populi suprema lex; and to know that laws, except they be in order to that end, are but things captious, and oracles not well inspired. Therefore it is an happy thing in a state, when kings and states do often consult with judges; and again, when judges do often consult with the king and state: the one, when there is matter of law intervent in business of state; the other, when there is some consideration of state, intervent in matter of law. For many times, the things deduced to judgment may be meum and tuum, when the reason and consequence thereof may trench to point of estate: I call matter of estate, not only the parts of sovereignty, but whatsoever introduceth any great alteration, or dangerous precedent; or concerneth manifestly any great portion of people. And let no man weakly conceive, that just laws, and true policy, have any antipathy; for they are like the spirits and finevs, that one moves with the other. Let judges also remember, that Solomon's throne was supported by lions on both sides; let
let them be lions, but yet lions under the throne; being circumspect that they do not check or oppose any points of sovereignty. Let not judges also be so ignorant of their own right, as to think there is not left to them as a principal part of their office, a wise use and application of laws. For they may remember what the Apostle faith of a greater law than theirs; *Nos fcinimus quia lex bona est, modo quis ea utatur legitime.*

LVIII. Of anger.

To seek to extinguih anger utterly, is but a bravery of the Stoicks. We have better oracles: *Be angry, but sin not. Let not the sun go down upon your anger.* 'Anger must be limited and confined, both in race and in time. We will first speak, how the natural inclination and habit, to be angry, may be attempted and calmed. Secondly, how the particular motions of anger may be reprieved, or at least refrained from doing mischief. Thirdly, how to raise anger, or appease anger in another.

For the first, there is no other way but to meditate and ruminate well upon the effects of anger, how it troubles man's life. And the best time to do this, is to look back upon anger when the fit is throughly over. Seneca faith well; that anger is like rain, which breaks it self upon that it falls. The scripture exhorteth us, to possess our souls in patience. Whosoever is out of patience, is out of possession of his soul. Men must not turn bees;

--- *Animasque in vulnere ponunt.*

A NG E R is certainly a kind of bafeness; as it appears well in the weakness of those subjects in whom it reigns; children, women, old folks, sick folks. Only men must beware, that they carry their anger rather with scorn than with fear; so that they may seem rather to be above the injury than below it. Which is a thing easily done, if a man will give law to himself in it.

For the second point, the causes and motives of anger are chiefly three. First, to be too sensible of hurt; for no man is angry that feels not himself hurt: and therefore tender and delicate persons must needs be oft angry. They have so many things to trouble them, which more robust natures have little sense of. The next is, the apprehension and construction of the injury offered to be, in the circumstances thereof, full of contempt. For contempt is that which putteth an edge upon anger, as much or more than the hurt itself. And therefore when men are ingenious in picking out circumstances of contempt, they do kindle their anger much. Lastly, opinion of the touch of a man's reputation, doth multiply and sharpen anger.

Wherein the remedy is, that a man should have, as Confaec was wont to say, *telam bonar is crasfereim.* But in all refrainings of anger, it is the best remedy to win time; and to make a man's self believe, that the opportunity of his revenge is not yet come: but that he foresees a time for it, and so to still himself in the mean time, and reserve it.

To contain anger from mischief, though it take hold of a man, there be two things whereof you must have special caution. The one, of extreme bitterness of words, especially if they be aculeate and proper: for *communia maledicta* are nothing so much: and again, that in anger a man reveal no secrets; for that makes him not fit for society. The other, that you do not peremptorily break off, in any busines, in a fit of anger: but howsoever you shew bitterness, do not act any thing that is not revocable.

For raising and appeasing anger in another; it is done chiefly by flushing of times. When men are frowardest and worst disposed, to incense them.
them. Again, by gathering (as was touched before) all that you can find out to aggravate the contempt: and the two remedies are by the contraries. The former to take good times, when first to relate to a man an angry business: for the first impression is much. And the other is, to fever, as much as may be, the construction of the injury, from the point of contempt: imputing it to misunderstanding, fear, passion, or what you will.

LIX. Of vicissitude of things.

Solomon faith, there is no new thing upon the earth: So that as Plato had an imagination, that all knowledge was but remembrance; so Solomon giveth his sentence, that all novelty is but oblivion. Whereby you may see, that the river of Lethe runneth as well above ground, as below. There is an abstruse astrologer, that faith, if it were not for two things that are constant; (the one is, that the fixed stars ever stand at like distance one from another, and never come nearer together, nor go farther afar: the other, that the diurnal motion perpetually keepeth time;) no individual would last one moment. Certain it is, that the matter is in a perpetual flux, and never at a stay. The great winding-sheets that bury all things in oblivion, are two: deluges, and earthquakes. As for conflagrations, and great droughts, they do not merely dispeople but destroy. Phaeton's car went but a day. And the three years drought, in the time of Elish, was but particular, and left people alive. As for the great burnings by lightnings, which are often in the West-Indies, they are but narrow. But in the other two destructions, by deluge and earthquake, it is farther to be noted, that the remnant of people which hap to be reserved, are commonly ignorant and mountainous people, that can give no account of the time past: So that the oblivion is all one, as if none had been left. If you consider well of the people of the West-Indies, it is very probable that they are a newer, or younger people, than the people of the old world: and it is much more likely, that the destruction that hath heretofore been there, was not by earthquakes, (as the Egyptian priest told Solon, concerning the island of Atlantis, that it was swallow'd by an earthquake;) but rather, that it was defolated by a particular deluge; for earthquakes are seldom in those parts: but on the other side, they have such pouring rivers, as the rivers of Asia, and Africa, and Europe, are but brooks to them. Their Andes likewise, or mountains, are far higher than those with us; whereby it seems, that the remnants of generation of men, were, in such a particular deluge, sav'd. As for the observation that Machiavel hath, that the jealousy of sects doth much extinguish the memory of things; traducing Gregory the Great, that he did what in him lay, to extinguish all heathen antiquities; I do not find that those zeal's do any great effects, nor last long: as it appeared in the succession of Sabinius, who did revive the former antiquities.

The vicissitude or mutations, in the superior globe, are no fit matter for this present argument. It may be Plato's great year, if the world should last so long, would have some effect, not in renewing the state of like individuals, (for that is the fume of those, that conceive the celestial bodies have more accurate influences upon these things below, than indeed they have,) but in gros. Comets, out of question, have likewise power and effect, over the gros and mass of things: but they are rather gazed upon, and waited upon in their journey, than wisely observed in their effects; especially in their respective effects; that is, what kind of comet, for magnitude,
There is a toy, which I have heard, and I would not have it given over, but waited upon a little. They say it is observed in the Low Countries, (I know not in what part) that every five and thirty years, the same kind and fure of years and weathers, comes about again: as great froft, great wet, great droughts, warm winters, summers with little heat, and the like; and they call it the prime. It is a thing I do the rather mention, because, computing backwards, I have found some concurrence.

But to leave these points of nature, and to come to men. The greatest vicissitude of things amongst men, is the vicissitude of sects and religions: for those orbs rule in men's minds most. The true religion is built upon the rock; the rest are tossed upon the waves of time. To speak therefore of the causes of new sects, and to give some counsel concerning them, as far as the weakness of human judgment can give stay to so great revolutions:

When the religion formerly received is rent by discords; and when the holiness of the professors of religion is decayed and full of scandal; and withal the times be stupid, ignorant, and barbarous, you may doubt the springing up of a new sect; if then also there should arise any extravagant and strange spirit to make himself author thereof: all which points held when Mahomet published his Law. If a new sect have not two properties, fear it not; for it will not spread. The one is the supplanting, or the opposing of authority established: for nothing is more popular than that. The other is the giving licence to pleasures and a voluptuous life. For as for speculative heresies (such as were in ancient times the Arians, and now the Arminians) though they work mightily upon men's wits, yet they do not produce any great alterations in states; except it be by the help of civil occasions. There be three manner of plantations of new sects: by the power of signs and miracles; by the eloquence and wisdom of speech and persuasion; and by the sword. For martyrs, I reckon them amongst miracles; because they seem to exceed the strength of human nature: and I may do the like of superlative and admirable holiness of life. Surely there is no better way to stop the rising of new sects and schisms; than to reform abuses; to compound the smaller differences; to proceed mildly, and not with sanguinary persecutions; and rather to take off the principal authors, by winning and advancing them, than to enraged them by violence and bitterness.

The changes and vicissitude in wars are many: but chiefly in three things; in the feats or stages of the war; in the weapons; and in the manner of the conduct. Wars, in ancient time, seemed more to move from east to west: for the Persians, Assyrians, Arabians, Tartars, (which were the invaders) were all eastern people. It is true, the Gauls were western; but we read but of two incursions of their: the one to Gallo-Graecia, the other to Rome. But east and west have no certain points of heaven, and no more have the wars, either from the east or west, any certainty of observation; but north and south are fixed: and it hath seldom or never been seen, that the far southern people have invaded the northern, but contrarywise; whereby it is manifest, that the northern tract of the world, is in nature the more martial region: be it in respect of the stars of that hemisphere, or of the great continents that are upon the north; whereas the south part, for aught that is known, is almost all sea; or (which is most apparent)
of the cold of the northern parts, which is that, which without aid of discipline, doth make the bodies hardeifi, and the courage weartest.

Upon the breaking and shivering of a great state and empire, you may be sure to have wars. For great empires, while they stand, do enervate and destroy the forces of the natives, which they have subdued, relying upon their own protecting forces: and then when they fail also, all goes to ruin, and they become a prey. So was it in the decay of the Roman empire, and likewise in the empire of Almaine, after Charles the Great, every bird taking a feather; and were not unlike to befall to Spain, if it should break. The great accessions and unions of kingdoms, do likewise stir up wars. For when a state grows to an over-power, it is like a great flood, that will be sure to overflow. As it hath been seen in the states of Rome, Turkey, Spain, and others. Look when the world hath fewest barbarous people, but such as commonly will not marry or generate, except they know means to live; (as it is almost every where at this day, except Tartary,) there is no danger of inundations of people: but when there be great shoals of people, which go on to populate, without foreseeing means of life and sustentation, it is of necessity, that once in an age or two, they discharge a portion of their people upon other nations; which the ancient northern people were wont to do by lot; casting lots, what part should stay at home, and what should seek their fortunes. When a warlike state grows soft and effeminate, they may be sure of a war. For commonly such states are grown rich in the time of their degenerating; and so the prey inviteth, and their decay in valour encourageth a war.

As for the weapons, it hardly falleth under rule and observation; yet we see, even they have returns and vicissitudes. For certain it is, that ordnance was known in the city of the Ovidraces in India; and was that which the Macedonians called thunder and lightening, and magic. And it is well known, that the use of ordnance hath been in China above two thousand years. The conditions of weapons, and their improvement are, first, the fetching afar off; for that outruns the danger; as it is seen in ordnance and muskets. Secondly, the strength of the percussion; wherein likewise ordnance do exceed all inventions, and ancient inventions. The third is, the commodious use of them; as that they may serve in all weathers; that the carriage may be light and manageable; and the like.

For the conduct of the war: at the first, men rested extremely upon number: they did put the wars likewise upon main force and valour, pointing days for pitched fields, and so trying it out, upon an even match: and they were more ignorant in ranging and arraying their battles. After they grew to rest upon number, rather competent than vast; they grew to advantages of place, cunning diversions, and the like: and they grew more skilful in the ordering of their battles.

In the youth of a state, arms do flourish; in the middle age of a state, learning; and then both of them together for a time: in the declining age of a state, mechanical arts and merchandize. Learning hath its infancy, when it is but beginning, and almost childish: then its youth, when it is luxuriant and juvenile: then its strength of years, when it is solid and reduced: and lastly, its old age, when it waxeth dry and exhaust. But it is not good to look too long upon these turning wheels of vicissitude, lest we become giddy. As for the philology of them, that is but a circle of tales, and therefore not fit for this writing.
LX. A fragment of an essay on fame.

The poets make fame a monster. They describe her in part finely and elegantly; and in part gravely and sententiously. They say, look how many feathers she hath, so many eyes she hath underneath; so many tongues; so many voices; she pricks up so many ears.

This is a flourish: there follow excellent parables; as that she gathereth strength in going; that she goeth upon the ground, and yet hideth her head in the clouds. That in the day-time she sitteth in a watch-tower, and flieth most by night: that she minglith things done, with things not done: and that she is a terror to great cities. But that which passeth all the rest is, they do recount that the earth, mother of the giants, that made war against Jupiter, and were by him destroyed, thereupon in anger brought forth fame; for certain it is, that rebels figured by the giants and feditious names and libels, are but brothers and sisters; masculine and feminine. But now if a man can tame this monster, and bring her to feed at the hand, and govern her, and with her fly other ravening fowl, and kill them, it is somewhat worth. But we are infected with the style of the poets. To speak now in a sad and serious manner; there is not in all the politicks a place less handled, and more worthy to be handled, than this of fame. We will therefore speak of these points: What are false names; and what are true names; and how they may be best discerned; how names may be sown and raised; how they may be spread and multiplied; and how they may be checked and laid dead. And other things concerning the nature of fame. Fame is of that force, as there is scarcely any great action wherein it hath not a great part, especially in the war. Muscius undid Vitellius by a name that he scattered; that Vitellius had in purpose to remove the legions of Syria into Germany, and the legions of Germany into Syria; whereupon the legions of Syria were infinitely inflamed. Julius Caesar took Pompey unprovided, and laid asleep his industry and preparations, by a name that he cunningly gave out; how Caesar's own soldiers loved him not; and being wearied with the wars, and laden with the spoils of Gaul, would for sake him as soon as he came into Italy. Livia settled all things for the succession of her son Tiberius, by continual giving out, that her husband Augustus was upon recovery and amendment. And it is an usual thing with the bathaws, to conceal the death of the Great Turk from the janizaries and men of war, to save the sacking of Constantinople, and other towns, as their manner is. Themistocles made Xerxes, king of Persia, poft space out of Gracccia, by giving out that the Graecians had a purpose to break his bridge of ships which he had made athwart the Hellespont. There be a thousand such like examples, and the more they are, the less they need to be repeated, because a man meeteth with them everywhere: therefore let all wise governours have as great a watch and care over names, as they have of the actions and designs themselves.

The rest was not finished.
A FRAGMENT.
OF THE
COLOURS
OF
GOOD and EVIL.

In deliberatives, the point is, what is good, and what is evil; and of
good, what is greater, and of evil, what is less.

So that the persuader's labour is, to make things appear good or
evil, and that in higher or lower degree, which as it may be per­
formed by true and solid reasons, so it may be represented also by co­
lours, popularities and circumstances, which are of such force, as they sway
the ordinary judgment either of a weak man, or of a wise man, not fully
and considerately attending and pondering the matter. Besides their power
to alter the nature of the subject in appearance, and so to lead to error, they
are of no less use to quicken and strengthen the opinions and persuasions
which are true; for reasons plainly delivered, and always after one manner,
especially with fine and fastidious minds, enter but heavily and dully:
whereas if they be varied, and have more life and vigour put into them by
these forms and insinuations, they cause a stronger apprehension, and many
times suddenly win the mind to a resolution. Lastly, to make a true and
safe judgment, nothing can be of greater use and defence to the mind, than
the discovering and reprehension of these colours, shewing in what cases
they hold, and in what they deceive: which as it cannot be done but out
of a very universal knowledge of the nature of things, so being performed,
it so cleareth man's judgment and election, as it is the less apt to slide into
any error.
A table of the colours, or appearances of good and evil, and their degrees, as places of persuasion and diffusion, and their several fallacies, and the elenches of them.

1. Cui caeterae partes vel sectae secundas unanimitas deferant, cum singulae principatum sibi vindicent, melior reliquis videtur. Nam primas quaeque ex zelo videtur sumere, secundas autem ex vero & merito tribuere.

So Cicerò went about to prove the sect of Academicks, which suspended all affiliation, for to be the best; for, faith he, ask a Stoick which philopophy is true, he will prefer his own. Then ask him, which approaching next the truth, he will confess the Academicks. So deal with the Episture, that will scarce endure the Stoick to be in sight of him, so soon as he hath placed himself, he will place the Academicks next him.

So if a prince took divers competitors to a place, and examined them severally, whom next themselves they would rarest commend, it were like the ablest man should have the most second voices.

The fallax of this colour happeneth oft in respect of envy, for men are accustomed after themselves and their own fashion, to incline unto them which are softest, and are least in their way, in despeight and derogation of them that hold them hardest to it. So that this colour of meliority and preheminence is a sign of enervation and weakness.

2. Cujus excellentia vel exuperantia melior, id toto genere melius.

Appertaining to this, are the forms: let us not wander in generalities: let us compare particular with particular, &c. This appearance, though it seem of strength, and rather logical than rhetorical, yet is very oft a fallax.

Sometime because some things are in kind very casual, which if they escape prove excellent; so that the kind is inferior, because it is so subject to peril, but that which is excellent being proved is superior, as the blossom of March, and the blossom of May, whereof the French verse goeth:

Burgeon de Mars enfans de Paris,
Si un ejbape, il en vaut dix.

So that the blossom of May is generally better than the blossom of March; and yet the best blossom of March is better than the best blossom of May.

Sometimes because the nature of some kinds is to be more equal, and more indifferent, and not to have very distant degrees, as hath been noted in the warmer climates, the people are generally more wise, but in the northern climate, the wits of chief are greater. So in many armies, if the matter should be tried by duel between two champions, the victory should go on the one side, and yet if it be tried by the grofs, it would go on the other side: for excellencies go as it were by chance, but kinds go by a more certain nature; as by discipline in war.

Lastly; Many kinds have much refuse, which countervail that which they have excellent, and therefore generally metal is more precious than stone; and yet a diamond is more precious than gold.
3. *Quod ad veritatem refertur majus est quam quod ad opinionem.* Modus autem & probatio ejus quod ad opinionem pertinet haec est: *quod quis si clam putaret fore facturus non esset.*

So the Epicures say of the Stoicks felicity placed in virtue: That it is like the felicity of a player, who if he were left of his auditory and their applause, he would straight be out of heart and countenance; and therefore they call virtue *bonum theatrale*: but of riches the poet said:

*Populus me jubilat,*

*At mihi plaudo.*

And of pleasure,

*Grata sub imo*

*Gaudia corde premens, vulnus simulante pudorem.*

The fallax of this colour is somewhat subtle, though the answer to the example be ready, for virtue is not chosen *propter auram popularem.* But contrariwise, *maxime omnium teipsum reverere;* so as a virtuous man will be virtuous *in solitudine,* and not only *in theatro,* though percafe it will be more strong by glory and fame, as an heat which is doubled by reflexion: but that denieth the supposition, it doth not reprehend the fallax, whereof the reprehension is a law, that virtue (such as is joined with labour and conflict) would not be chosen but for fame and opinion, yet it followeth not that the chief motive of the election should not be real and for itself, for fame may be only *causa impulsiua,* and not *causa constituens,* or *efficient.*

As if there were two horses, and the one would do better without the spur than the other: but again, the other with the spur would far exceed the doing of the former, giving him the spur also; yet the latter will be judged to be the better horse, and the former as to say, *tuth,* the life of this horse is but in the spur, will not serve as to a wise judgment: for since the ordinary instrument of horsemanship is the spur, and that it is no matter of impediment or burden, the horse is not to be recounted the les of, which will not do well without the spur, but rather the other is to be reckoned a delicacy than a virtue; so glory and honour are the spurs to virtue: and although virtue would languish without them, yet since they be always at hand to attend virtue, virtue is not to be said the les chosen for itself, because it needeth the spur of fame and reputation: and therefore that position, *nota ejus rei quod propter opinionem & non propter veritatem eligitur,* haec est; *quod quis si clam putaret fore facturus non esset,* is reprehended.

4. *Quod rem integram servat bonum, quod sine receptu esset malum: Nam si recipere non posse impotentiae genus esset, potentia autem bonum.*

HEREOF *ÆEsop* framed the fable of the two frogs, that consulted together in the time of drought, (when many plashes that they had repaired to were dry) what was to be done; and the one propounded to go down into a deep well, because it was like the water would not fail there; but the other answered, *yea,* but if it do fail, how shall we get up again? And the reason is, that human actions are so uncertain and subject to perils, as that seemeth the best course which hath most passages out of it. Appertaining to this persuasion, the forms are: you shall engage yourself on the other side, *non tantum, quantum voles fames ex fortuna,* &c. you shall keep the matter in your own hand. The reprehension of it is, that proceeding and resolving in all actions
COLOURS OF GOOD AND EVIL.

actions is necessafy. For as he faith well, not to resolve, is to resolve; and many times it breeds as many necessafities, and engagefh as far in some other forf, as to resolve. So it is but the covetous man’s difafe, translated in power, for the covetous man will enjoy nothing, becaufe he have his full flore and posfibility to enjoy the more; fo by this reafon a man fhould execute nothing, becaufe he fhould be fill indifferent, and at liberty to execute any thing. Befides, neceffity and this fame jacefa est alea, hath many times an advantage, because it awaketh the powers of the mind, and ftrengthenth endeavour; caeteris pares neceffitate certe superiores eflis.

5. Quod ex pluribus confiat & divifibilibus est majus quam quod ex paucioribus, & magis unum : nam omnia per partes confiderata magnorum videntur ; quare & pluralitas partium magnitudinem prae fent : fortius autem operatur pluralitas partium fi ordo abfent ; nam inducit simulitudinem infinitis, & impedit comprehenfionem.

This colour feemeth palpable, for it is not plurality of parts without majority of parts, that maketh the total greater; yet nevertheless it often carries the mind away, yea, it deceiveth the fenfe; as it feemeth to the eye a shorter diftance of way, if it be all dead and continued, than if it have trees or buildings, or any other marks whereby the eye may divide it. So when a great moneyed man hath divided his cheffs, and coins, and bags, he feemeth to himfelf richer than he was; and therefore a way to amplify any thing is, to break it, and to make anatomy of it in several parts, and to examine it according to several circumstances. And this maketh the greater fhew if it be done without order, for confusion maketh things mutter more; and befides, what is fet down by order and division, doth demonstrate that nothing is left out or omitted, but all is there; whereas if it be without order, both the mind comprehendeth lefs that which is fet down; and befides, it leaveth a fufpicion, as if more might be faid than is expreffed. This colour deceiveth, if the mind of him that is to be perfuaded, do of itfelf over-conceive, or prejudge of the greatnefs of any thing; for then the breaking of it will make it feem lefs, because it maketh it to appear more ac­cording to the truth: and therefore if a man be in ficknefs or pain, the time will feem longer without a clock or hour-glafs, than with it; for the mind doth value every moment, and then the hour doth rather fum up the mo­ments, than divide the day. So in a dead plain the way feemeth the longer, because the eye hath preconceived it fhorter than the truth; and the frustrating of that maketh it feem longer than the truth. Therefore if any man have an over-great opinion of any thing, then if another think by breaking it into feveral confiderations, he fhall make it feem greater to him, he will be deceived; and therefore in fuch cases it is not fafe to divide, but to extol the entire still in general. Another cafe wherein this colour deceiveth, is, when the matter broken or divided is not comprehended by the fenfe, or made at once in refpect of the diftracting or scattering of it; and being en­tire, and not divided, is comprehended: as an hundred pounds in heaps of five pounds, will fhew more than in one gros heap, fo as the heaps be all upon one table to be feen at once, otherwife not: as flowers growing scattered in divers beds, will fhew more than if they did grow in one bed, fo as all thofe beds be within a plot, that they be object to view at once, other­wise not: And therefore men, whose living lieth together in one fhire, are commonly counted greater landed than thoſe whose livings are difperfed, though it be more, becaufe of the notice and comprehenfion. A third cafe

Vol. III, C c c 2

wherein
COLOURS OF GOOD AND EVIL.

wherein this colour deceiveth, and it is not so properly a cause or reprehension, as it is a counter colour, being in effect as large as the colour itself; and that is, omnis compositor indigentiae cujusdam in singulis videtur esse particeps, because if one thing would serve the turn, it were ever best, but the defect and imperfections of things hath brought in that help to piece them up; as it is said, Martba, Martba, attendis ad plurima, numm sufficit. So likewise hereupon AEfop framed the fable of the fox and the cat; whereas the fox bragged what a number of shifts and devices he had to get from the hounds, and the cat said he had but one, which was to climb a tree, which in proof was better worth than all the rest; whereof the proverb grew, multa novit vulpes, sed felis unum magnum. And in the moral of this fable it comes likewise to pass, that a good true friend is a better help at a pinch, than all the stratagems and policies of a man’s own wit. So it falleth out to be a common error in negotiating, whereas men have many reasons to induce or persuade, they commonly to utter and use them all at once, which weakneth them. For it argueth, as was said, a neediness in every of the reasons by itself, as if one did not trust to any of them, but fled from one to another, helping himself only with that: Et quae non profunt singula, multa juvant. Indeed in a set speech in an assembly, it is expected a man should use all his reasons in the case he handleth, but in private persuasions it is always a great error. A fourth case wherein this colour may be reprehended, is in respect of that same vis unita fortior, according to the tale of the French king, that when the emperor’s embassador had recited his master’s style at large, which consisteth of many countries and dominions; the French king willed his chancellor, or other minister, to repeat over and over as many times as the other had recited the several dominions; intending it was equivalent with them all, and more compacted and united. There is also appertaining to this colour another point, why breaking of a thing doth help it, not by way of adding a new of magnitude unto it, but a note of excellency and rarity; whereof the forms are, where you find such a concurrence? Great, but not compleat; for it seem to make any thing in his kind greater than ordinary, than to make a strange composition. Yet if it be narrowly considered, this colour will be reprehended or encountered, by imputing to all excellencies in compositions a kind of poverty, or at least a casualty or jeopardy; for from that which is excellent in greatness, somewhat may be taken, or there may be a decay, and yet sufficiently left; but from that which hath his price in composition if you take away any thing, or any part do fail, all is disgrace.

6. Cujus privatio bona, malum; cujus privatio mala, bonum.

The forms to make it conceived, that that was evil which was changed for the better, are, that in hell thinks there is no other heaven. Satis quercus, Acorns were good till bread was found, &c. And of the other side, the forms to make it conceived, that that was good which was changed for the worse are, bona magis carendo quam fruendo sentimus: bona a tergo formoffina: good things never appear in their full beauty, till they turn their back, and be going away, &c. The reprehension of this colour is, that the good or evil which is removed, may be esteemed good or evil comparatively, and not positively or simply. So that if the privation be good, it follows not the former condition was evil, but less good; for the flower or blossom is a positive good, although the remove of it to give place to the fruit, be a comparative good. So in the tale of AEfop, when the old fading
COLOURS OF GOOD AND EVIL.

A fainting man in the heat of the day cast down his burden, and called for death; and when death came to know his will with him, said, it was for nothing but to help him up with his burden again. It doth not follow, that because death, which was the privation of the burden, was ill, therefore the burden was good. And in this part, the ordinary form of *malo necessarium* aptly reprehendeth this colour; for *privatio malii necessarii est mala*, and yet that doth not convert the nature of the necessary evil, but it is evil.

Again, it cometh sometimes to pass, that there is an equality in the change of privation, and as it were a *dilemma boni*, or a *dilemma mali*: so that the corruption of the one good, is a generation of the other. *Sorti pater aequus utrique est*: and contrary, the remedy of the one evil, is the occasion and commencement of another, as in Scylla and Charybdis.

7. *Quod bono vicium bonium, quod a bono remotum, malum.*

Such is the nature of things, that things contrary, and distant in nature and quality, are also sever'd and disjoined in place; and things like and confenting in quality, are placed, and as it were quartered together: for partly in regard of the nature, to spread, multiply, and infect in similitude; and partly in regard of nature to break, expel, and alter that which is disagreeable and contrary, most things do either associate, and draw near to themselves the like, or at least assimilate to themselves that which approacheth near them, and do also drive away, chase and exterminate their contraries. And that is the reason commonly yielded, why the middle region of the air should be coldest, because the sun and stars are either hot by direct beams, or by reflection. The direct beams heat the upper region, the reflected beams from the earth and seas, heat the lower region. That which is in the midst, being farthest distant in place from these two regions of heat, are most distant in nature, that is coldest, which is that they term cold or hot *per antiperiflasin*: that is, environing by contraries: which was pleasantly taken hold of by him that said, an honest man in these days, must needs be more honest than in ages heretofore, *propter antiperiflasin*, because the shutting of him in the midst of contraries, must needs make the honesty stronger and more compact in itself. The reprehension of this colour is: first many things of amplitude in their kind, do as it were engrofs to themselves all, and leave that which is next them most destitute, as the shoots or underwood, that grow near a great and spread tree, is the most pined and shrubby wood of the field, because the great tree doth deprive and deceive them of sap and nourishment; so he faith well, *divitis servi maxime servi*: and the comparison was pleasant of him, that compared courtiers attendant in the courts of princes without great place or office, to sauing-days, which were next the holy-days, but otherwise were the leanest days in all the week.

Another reprehension is, that things of greatness and predominancy, though they do not extenuate the things adjoining in substance, yet they drown them and obscure them in shew and appearance; and therefore the astronomers say, that whereas in all other planets conjunction is the perfectest amity; the sun contrariwise is good by aspect, but evil by conjunction.

A third reprehension is, because evil approacheth to good sometimes for concealment, sometimes for protection; and good to evil for conversion and reformation. So hypocrisy *draweth near to religion for covert*, and hiding...
COLOURS OF GOOD AND EVIL.

It self; saepe late vitium proximitate boni; and sanctuary men, which were commonly inordinate men and malefactors, were wont to be nearest to priesfs and prelates, and holy men; for the majesty of good things is such, as the confines of them are reverend. On the other side, our Saviour charged with nearnefs of publicans and rioters, said, the physician approacheth the sick, rather than the whole.

8. Quod quis culpa sua contraxit, magus malum: quod ab externis imponitur, minus malum.

The reason is, because the sting and remorse of the mind accusing it self, doubleth all adversity: contrariwise, the considering and recording inwardly, that a man is clear and free from fault, and just imputation, doth temper outward calamities. For if the will be in the senfe, and in the conscience both, there is a gemination of it; but if evil be in the one, and comfort in the other, it is a kind of compensation: so the poets in tragedies do make the most passionate lamentation, and those that forerun final despair, to be accusing, questioning, and torturing of a man’s life.

Seque unum clamat causamque caputque malorum.

And contrariwise, the extremities of worthy persons have been annihilated in the consideration of their own good deserving. Besides, when the evil cometh from without, there is left a kind of evaporation of grief, if it come by human injury, either by indignation, and meditating of revenge from our selves, or by expecting of fore-conceiving, that Nemejis and retribution will take hold of the authors of our hurt; or if it be by fortune or accident, yet there is left a kind of expostulation against the divine powers.

Atque deos atque astra vocat crudelia mater.

But where the evil is derived from a man’s own fault, there all strikes deadly inwards, and suffocateth. The reprehension of this colour is, first in respect of hope, for reformation of our faults is in nostra potestate; but amendment of our fortune simply, is not. Therefore Demosthenes, in many of his orations, faith thus to the people of Athens: That which having regard to the time past, is the worce point and circumstance of all the rest; that as to the time to come is the best: what is that? Even this, that by your sloth, irresolution and misgovernment, your affairs are grown to this declination and decay. For had you used and ordered your means and forces to the best, and done your parts every way to the full, and notwithstanding your matters should have gone backward in this manner as they do, there had been no hope left of recovery or reparation; but since it hath been only by our own errors, &c. So Epictetus in his degrees faith, the state of man is to accuse external things, better than that to accuse a man’s self, and best of all to accuse neither.

Another reprehension of this colour, is in respect of the well bearing of evils, wherewith a man can charge no body but himself, which maketh them the less.

Leve fit quod bene fertur omnes.

And therefore many natures that are either extremely proud, and will take no fault to themselves, or else very true, and cleaving to themselves (when they see the blame of any thing that falls out ill must light upon themselves) have no other shift but to bear it out well, and to make the least of it; for as we see when sometimes a fault is committed, and before
it be known who is to blame, much ado is made of it; but after, if it appear to be done by a son, or by a wife, or by a near friend, then it is light made of: so much more when a man must take it upon himself. And therefore it is commonly seen, that women that marry husbands of their own chusing against their friends consents, if they be never so ill used, yet you shall seldom see them complain, but set a good face on it.

9. Quod opera & virtute nostra partum est, majus bonum; quod ab alieno beneficio vel ab indulgentia fortunae delatum est, minus bonum.

The reasons are first the future hope, because in the favours of others, or the good winds of fortune, we have no state or certainty; in our endeavours or abilities we have. So as when they have purchased us one good fortune, we have them as ready and better edged, and inured to procure another.

The forms be: you have won this by play, you have not only the water, but you have the receipt, you can make it again if it be lost, &c. Next, because these properties which we enjoy by the benefit of others, carry with them an obligation which seemeth a kind of burden, whereas the other which derive from ourselves are like the freest patents, ab quae aliquo inde reddendo; and if they proceed from fortune or providence, yet they seem to touch us secretly with the reverence of the divine powers; whose favours we taste, and therefore work a kind of religious fear and restraint; whereas in the other kind, that comes to pass which the prophet speaketh, laetantur & exultant, immolant plagis suis, & sacrificant reti suo.

Thirdly, because that which cometh unto us without our own virtue; yielded not that commendation and reputation; for actions of great felicity may draw wonder; but praise less; as Cicero said to Cæsar, quaem remur, habemus; quae aliove inde reddendo; and if he proceed from fortune or providence, yet for they seem to touch us secretly with the reverence of the divine powers, whose favours we taste, and therefore work a kind of religious fear and restraint; whereas in the other kind, that comes to pass which the prophet speaketh, laetantur & exultant, immolant plagis suis, & sacrificant reti suo.

Fourthly, because that which cometh unto us without our own virtue, yielded not that commendation and reputation; for actions of great felicity may draw wonder; but praise less; as Cicero said to Cæsar, Quae mi-remur, habemus; quae laudemus, expectamus.

Fifthly, because the purchases of our own industry are joined commonly with labour and strife, which gives an edge and appetite, and makes the fruition of our desires more pleasant. Suavis cibus a venatu.

On the other side, there be four counter colours to this colour, rather than reprehensions, because they be as large as the colour itself; first because felicity seemeth to be a character of the favour and love of the divine powers, and accordingly worketh both confidence in ourselves, and respect and authority from others. And this felicity extendeth to many casual things, whereunto the care or virtue of man cannot extend, and therefore seemeth to be a larger good; as when Cæsar said to the sailor, Caesarem portas & fortunam ejus; if he had said, & virtutem ejus, it had been small comfort against a tempest, otherwise than if it might seem upon merit to induce fortune.

Next, whatsoever is done by virtue and industry, seems to be done by a kind of habit and art, and therefore open to be imitated and followed; whereas felicity is imitable: so we generally see, that things of nature seem more excellent than things of art, because they be imitable: for, quod imitable est, potest alias vulgatum est.

Thirdly, felicity commendeth those things which come without our own labour; for they seem gifts, and the other seems penniworths: whereupon Plutarch faith elegantly of the acts of Timoleon, who was so fortunate, compared with the acts of Ageillus and Ephaminondas; that they were like Homer’s verses, they ran so easily and so well. And therefore it is the word we
we give unto poetry, terming it a happy vein, because facility seemeth ever to come from happiness.

Fourthly, This same praeter quem, vel praeter expextatum, doth increase the price and pleasure of many things, and this cannot be incident to those things that proceed from our own care and compacts.

10. Gradus privationis major videtur quam gradus diminutionis; & rursum gradus inceptionis major videtur quam gradus incrementi.

It is a position in the mathematicks, that there is no proportion between somewhat and nothing, therefore the degree of nullity and quiddity or act, seemeth larger than the degrees of increase and decrease; as to a monoculus it is more to lose one eye, than to a man that hath two eyes. So if one have lost divers children, it is more grief to him to lose the last, than all the rest; because he is spes gregis. And therefore Sibylla when she brought her three books, and had burned two, did double the whole price of both the other, because the burning of that had been gradus privationis, and not diminutionis. This colour is reprehended first in those things, the use and service whereof, resteth in sufficiency, competency, or determinate quantity: as if a man be to pay one hundred pounds upon a penalty, it is more to him to want twelve pence, than after that twelve pence supposed to be wanting, to want ten shillings more; so the decay of a man's estate seemeth to be most touched in the degree, when he first grows behind, more than afterwards, when he proves nothing worth. And hereof the common forms are, fera in fundo parsimonia, and as good never a whit, as never the better, &c.

It is reprehended also in respect of that notion, corruptio unius generatio alterius: so that gradus privationis is many times less matter, because it gives the cause and motive to some new course. As when Demosthenes reprehended the people, for hearkening to the conditions offered by king Philip, being not honourable nor equal, he saith they were but elements of their wealth and weakness, which if they were taken away, necessity would teach them stronger resolutions. So doctor Hector was wont to say to the dames of London, when they complained they were they could not tell how, but yet they could not endure, to take any medicine, he would tell them, their way was only to be sick, for then they would be glad to take any medicine.

Thirdly, This colour may be reprehended, in respect that the degree of decrease is more sensitive than the degree of privation, for in the mind of man gradus diminutionis may work a wavering between hope and fear, and so keep the mind in suspense, from settling and accommodating in patience and resolution; hereof the common forms are, better eye out, than always ake; make or mar, &c.

For the second branch of this colour, it depends upon the same general reason: hence grew the common place of extolling the beginning of every thing: dimidium fæci qui bene coepit habet. This made the astrologers so idle as to judge of a man's nature and destiny, by the constellation of the moment of his nativity, or conception. This colour is reprehended, because many inceptions are but as Epicurus termeth them, tentamenta, that is, imperfect offers and essays, which vanish and come to no substance without an iteration; so as in such cases the second degree seemeth the worthiest, as the body-horse in the cart, that draweth more than the fore-horse: hereof the common forms are, the second blow makes the fray, the second word makes
makes the bargain; \textit{alter malo principium dedit, alter modum abstulit, \\ &c.} Another reprehension of this colour is in respect of desatigation, which makes perseverance of greater dignity than inception, for chance or instinct of nature may cause inception; but settled affection, or judgment, maketh the continuance.

\textbf{Thirdly}, this colour is reprehended in such things, which have a natural course and inclination, contrary to an inception. So that the inception is continually evacuated and gets no start, but there becometh \textit{prima inception}, as in the common form, \textit{non progredi est regredi, qui non proficit deficit}, running against the hill; rowing against the stream, \\ &c. For if it be with the stream or with the hill, then the degree of inception is more than all the rest.

\textbf{Fourthly}, this colour is to be understood of \textit{gradus inceptionis a potentia ad actum}, comparatus cum gradu ab actu ad incrementum. For otherwise, \textit{major videtur gradus ab impotentia, ad potentiam; quam a potentia ad actum}. 

\textbf{COLOURS OF GOOD AND EVIL.} 393
THE
HISTORY
OF THE
REIGN
OF
KING HENRY VII.

Vol. III. D d d 2
TO THE

Most Illustrious and most Excellent

PRINCE CHARLES,

Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, Earl of Chester, &c.

IT MAY PLEASE YOUR HIGHNESS,

In part of my acknowledgment to your highness, I have endeavoured to do honour to the memory of the last king of England, that was ancestor to the king your father, and yourself; and was that king to whom both unions may in a sort refer: that of the roses being in him consummate, and that of the kingdoms by him begun: besides, his times deserve it. For he was a wise man, and an excellent king; and yet the times were rough, and full of mutations, and rare accidents. And it is with times, as it is with ways: Some are more up-hill and down-hill, and some are more flat and plain; and the one is better for the liver, and the other for the writer. I have not flattered him, but took him to life as well as I could, sitting so far off, and having no better light. It is true, your highness hath a living pattern, incomparable, of the king your father: But it is not amiss for you also to see one of these ancient pieces. God preserve your highness.

Your highness most humble

and devoted servant,

FRANCIS ST. ALBAN.

THE
After that Richard the third of that name, king in fact only, but tyrant both in title and regiment, and so commonly termed and reputed in all times since, was by the divine revenge, favouring the design of an exile-man, overthrown and slain at Bosworth-field: There succeeded in the kingdom the earl of Richmond, thence-forth styled Henry the seventh. The king immediately after the victory, as one that had been bred under a devout mother, and was in his nature a great observer of religious forms, caused Te Deum laudamus to be solemnly sung in the presence of the whole army upon the place, and was himself with general applause, and great cries of joy, in a kind of military election, or recognition, saluted king. Mean while the body of Richard, after many indignities and reproaches (the dregs and obsequies of the common people towards tyrants) was obscurely buried. For though the king of his nobleness gave charge unto the friars of Leicester to see an honourable interment to be given to it, yet the religious people themselves (being not free from the humours of the vulgar) neglected it: wherein nevertheless they did not then incur any man's blame or censure: No man thinking any ignominy or contumely unworthy of him, that had been the executioner of king Henry the sixth (that innocent prince) with his own hands; the contriver of the death of the duke of Clarence his brother; the murderer of his two nephews, (one of them his lawful king in the present, and the other in the future, failing of him) and vehemently suspected to have been the imposter of his wife, thereby to make vacant his bed, for a marriage within the degrees forbidden. And although he were a prince in military virtue approved, jealous of the honour of the English nation, and likewise a good law-maker, for the ease and solace of the common people;
people; yet his cruelties and parricides, in the opinion of all men, weighed down his virtues and merits; and in the opinion of wise men, even those virtues themselves were conceived to be rather feigned and affected things to serve his ambition, than true qualities ingenerate in his judgment or nature. And therefore it was noted by men of great understanding (who seeing his after-acts, looked back upon his former proceedings) that even in the time of king Edward his brother, he was not without secret trains and mines to turn envy and hatred upon his brother's government; as having an expectation and a kind of divination, that the king, by reason of his many disorders, could not be of long life, but was like to leave his sons of tender years; and then he knew well, how easy a step it was, from the place of a protector, and first prince of the blood, to the crown. And that out of this deep root of ambition it sprung, that as well at the treaty of peace that passed between Edward the fourth, and Lewis the eleventh of France, concluded by interview of both kings at Piqueny, as upon all other occasions, Richard then duke of Gloucester stood ever upon the side of honour, raising his own reputation to the disadvantage of the king his brother, and drawing the eyes of all (especially of the nobles and soldiers) upon himself; as if the king by his voluptuous life and mean marriage, were become effeminate and less sensible of honour, and reason of state, than was fit for a king. And as for the politic and wholesome laws which were enacted in his time, they were interpreted to be but the brocage of an usurper, thereby to woo and win the hearts of the people, as being conscious to himself, that the true obligations of sovereignty in him failed, and were wanting. But king Henry, in the very entrance of his reign, and the instant of time when the kingdom was cast into his arms, met with a point of great difficulty, and knotty to solve, able to trouble and confound the wisest king in the newness of his estate; and so much the more, because it could not endure a deliberation, but must be at once deliberated and determined. There were fallen to his lot, and concurrent in his person, three several titles to the imperial crown. The first, the title of the lady Elizabeth, with whom, by precedent pact with the party that brought him in, he was to marry. The second, the ancient and long disputed title (both by plea and arms) of the house of Lancaster, to which he was inheritor in his own person. The third, the title of the sword or conquest, for that he came in by victory of battle, and that the king in possession was slain in the field. The first of these was fairest, and most like to give contentment to the people, who by two and twenty years reign of king Edward the fourth, had been fully made capable of the clearness of the title of the white rose or house of York; and by the mild and plausible reign of the same king toward his latter time, were become affectionate to that line. But then it lay plain before his eyes, that if he relied upon that title, he could be but a king at courtesy, and have rather a matrimonial than a regal power; the right remaining in his queen, upon whose decease, either with issue or without issue, he was to give place, and be removed. And though he should obtain by parliament to be continued, yet he knew there was a very great difference between a king that holdeth his crown by a civil act of estates, and one that holdeth it originally by the law of nature, and descent of blood. Neither wanted there even at that time secret rumours and whisperings (which afterwards gathered strength and turned to great troubles) that the two young sons of king Edward the fourth, or one of them, (which were said to be destroy'd in the Tower,) were not indeed murthered, but conveyed secretly away, and
and were yet living: which if it had been true, had prevented the title of the lady Elizabeth. On the other side, if he stood upon his own title of the house of Lancaster, inherent in his person, he knew it was a title condemned by parliament, and generally prejudged in the common opinion of the realm, and that it tended directly to the disinheritance of the line of York, held then the indubitable heirs of the crown. So that if he should have no issue by the lady Elizabeth, which should be descendents of the double line, then the ancient flames of discord and intestine wars upon the competition of both houses, would again return and revive.

As for conquest, notwithstanding sir William Stanley, after some acclamations of the soldiers in the field, had put a crown of ornament (which Richard wore in the battle, and was found amongst the spoils) upon king Henry's head, as if there were his chief title; yet he remembered well upon what conditions and agreements he was brought in; and that to claim as conqueror, was to put as well his own party as the rest, into terror and fear; as that which gave him power of dissolving of laws, and disposing of mens fortunes and estates, and the like points of absolute power, being in themselves so harsh and odious, as that William himself, commonly called the conqueror, howsoever he used and exercised the power of a conqueror to reward his Normans, yet he forbore to use that claim in the beginning, but mixed it with a titular pretence, grounded upon the will and designation of Edward the Confessor. But the king, out of the greatness of his own mind, presently cast the die; and the inconveniences appearing unto him on all parts, and knowing there could not be any interregnum, or suspension of title, and preferring his affection to his own line and blood, and liking that title best which made him independent; and being in his nature and constitution of mind not very apprehensive or forewarning of future events afar off, but an entertainer of fortune by the day; resolved to rest upon the title of Lancaster as the main, and to use the other two, that of marriage, and that of battle, but as supporters the one to appease secret discontent, and the other to beat down open murmur and dispute; not forgetting that the same title of Lancaster had formerly maintained a possession of three descendents in the crown; and might have proved a perpetuity, had it not ended in the weakness and inability of the last prince. Whereupon the king presently that very day, being the two and twentieth of August, assumed the style of king in his own name, without mention of the lady Elizabeth at all, or any relation thereunto. In which course he ever after persevered; which did spin him a thread of many seditions and troubles. The king full of these thoughts, before his departure from Leicester, dispatched sir Robert Willoughby to the castle of Sheriff-Hutton in Yorkshire, where were kept in safe custody, by king Richard's commandment, both the lady Elizabeth, daughter of king Edward, and Edward Plantagenet, son and heir to George duke of Clarence. This Edward was by the king's warrant delivered from the constable of the castle, to the hand of sir Robert Willoughby; and by him with all safety and diligence conveyed to the tower of London, where he was shut up close prisoner. Which act of the king's (being an act merely of policy and power) proceeded not so much from any apprehension he had of doctor Shaw's tale at Paul's crofs, for the bastardling of Edward the fourth's issue; in which case this young gentleman was to succede, (for that false was ever exploded) but upon a settled disposition to deprive all eminent persons of the line of York. Wherein still the
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

the king, out of strength of will, or weakness of judgment, did use to shew a little more of the party, than of the king.

For the lady Elizabeth, she received also a direction to repair with all convenient speed to London, and there to remain with the queen dowager her mother; which accordingly she soon after did, accompanied with many noblemen and ladies of honour. In the mean season the king set forwards by easy journeys to the city of London, receiving the acclamations and applause of the people as he went, which indeed were true and unfeigned, as might well appear in the very demonstrations and fulness of the cry. For they thought generally, that he was a prince as ordained and sent down from heaven, to unite and put to an end the long dissensions of the two houses; which although they had had in the times of Henry the fourth, Henry the fifth, and a part of Henry the sixth, on the one side, and the times of Edward the fourth on the other, lucid intervals and happy pauses; yet they did ever hang over the kingdom, ready to break forth into new perturbations and calamities: And as his victory gave him the knee, so his purpose of marriage with the lady Elizabeth, gave him the heart; so that both knee and heart did truly bow before him.

He on the other side with great wisdom, (not ignorant of the affections and fears of the people) to disperse the conceit and terror of a conquest, had given order, that there should be nothing in his journey like unto a warlike march or manner; but rather like unto the progress of a king in full peace and assurance.

He entered the city upon a Saturday, as he had also obtained the victory upon a Saturday; which day of the week, first upon observation, and after upon memory and fancy, he accounted and chose as a day prosperous unto him.

The mayor and companies of the city received him at Shoreditch; whence with great and honourable attendance, and troops of noblemen, and persons of quality, he entered the city; himself not being on horseback, or in any open chair, or throne, but in a close chariot, as one that having been sometime an enemy to the whole state, and a proscribed person, chose rather to keep state, and strike a reverence into the people, than to fawn upon them.

He went first into Saint Paul's church, where not meaning that the people should forget too soon that he came in by battle, he made offer- tory of his standards; and had orisons and Te Deum again sung, and went to his lodging prepared in the bishop of London's palace, where he stayed for a time.

During his abode there, he assembled his council, and other principal persons, in presence of whom he did renew again his promise, to marry with the lady Elizabeth. This he did the rather, because having at his coming out of Britain given artificially, for serving of his own turn, some hopes, in case he obtained the kingdom, to marry Anne, inheretress to the duchy of Britain, whom Charles the eighth of France soon after married; it bred some doubt and suspicion amongst divers that he was not sincere, or at least not fixed in going on with the match of England so much desired: which conceit also, though it were but talk and discourse, did much afflict the poor lady Elizabeth herself. But howsoever he both truly intended it, and desired also it should be so believed, (the better to extinguish envy and contradiction to his other purposes;) yet was he resolved in himself not to proceed to the consummation thereof, till his coronation, and a

Vol. III. E e e parliament
parliament were past. The one, left a joint coronation of himself and his queen might give any countenance of participation of title; the other, left in the entailing of the crown to himself, which he hoped to obtain by parliament, the votes of the parliament might any ways reflect upon her.

About this time in autumn, towards the end of September, there began and reigned in the city and other parts of the kingdom, a disease then new: which of the accidents and manner thereof, they called the sweating sickness. This disease had a swift course, both in the sick body, and in the time and period of the lasting thereof; for they that were taken with it, upon four and twenty hours escaping, were thought almost assured. And as to the time of the malice and reign of the disease ere it ceased; it began about the one and twentieth of September, and cleared up before the end of October, insomuch as it was no hindrance to the king's coronation, which was the last of October; nor (which was more) to the holding of the parliament, which began but seven days after. It was a pestilent fever, but (as it seemeth) not seated in the veins or humours, for that there followed no carbuncle, no purple or livid spots, or the like, the mass of the body being not tainted; only a malign vapour flew to the heart, and seized the vital spirits; which stirred nature to strive to send it forth by an extreme sweat. And it appeared by experience, that this disease was rather a surprise of nature, than obstinate to remedies, if it were in time looked unto. For if the patient were kept in an equal temper, both for clothes, fire, and drink, moderately warm, with temperate cordials, whereby nature's work was neither irritated by heat, nor turned back by cold, he commonly recovered. But infinite persons died suddenly of it, before the manner of the cure and attendance was known. It was conceived not to be an epidemic disease, but to proceed from a malignity in the constitution of the air, gathered by the predispositions of seasons; and the speedy cessation declared as much.

On Simon and Jude's eve, the king dined with Thomas Bourchier, archbishop of Canterbury and cardinal; and from Lambeth went by land over the bridge to the tower, where the morrow after he made twelve knights bannerets. But for creations he dispensed them with a sparing hand. For notwithstanding a field so lately fought, and a coronation so near at hand, he only created three: Jack earl of Pembroke, (the king's uncle) was created duke of Bedford; Thomas the lord Stanley, (the king's father in law) earl of Derby; and Edward Courtney earl of Devon; though the king had then nevertheless a purpose in himself to make more in time of parliament; bearing a wife and decent respect to distribute his creations, some to honour his coronation, and some his parliament.

The coronation followed two days after, upon the thirty first day of October, in the year of our Lord 1485; at which time Innocent the eighth was pope of Rome; Frederick the third emperors of Almain; and Maximilian his son newly chosen king of the Romans; Charles the eighth king of France; Ferdinand and Isabella king and queen of Spain; and James the third king of Scotland: with all which kings and states, the king was at that time in good peace and amity. At which day also (as if the crown upon his head had put perils into his thoughts) he did institute, for the better security of his person, a band of fifty archers, under a captain, to attend him, by the name of yeomen of his guard: and yet that it might be thought to be rather a matter of dignity, after the imitation of that he had known abroad, than any matter of diffidence appropriate to his own cafe, he made it to be
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

be understood for an ordinance not temporary, but to hold in succession for ever after.

The seventh of November the king held his parliament at Westminster, which he had summoned immediately after his coming to London. His ends in calling a parliament, (and that so speedily) were chiefly three; first, to procure the crown to be entailed upon himself. Next, to have the attainders of all his party (which were in no small number) reversed, and all acts of hostility by them done in his quarrel, remitted and discharged; and on the other side, to attain by parliament the heads and principals of his enemies. The third, to calm and quiet the fears of the rest of that party by a general pardon; not being ignorant in how great danger a king stands from his subjects, when most of his subjects are conscious in themselves, that they stand in his danger. Unto these three special motives of a parliament was added, that he as a prudent and moderate prince made this judgment, that it was fit for him to hasten to let his people see, that he meant to govern by law, howsoever he came in by the sword; and fit also to remit them to know him for their king, whom they had so lately talked of as an enemy, or banished man. For that which concerned the entailing of the crown; (more than that he was true to his own will, that he would not endure any mention of the lady Elizabeth, no not in the nature of special entail;) he carried it otherwise with great wisdom and measure. For he did not press to have the act penned by way of declaration or recognition of right; as on the other side, he avoided to have it by new law or ordinance, but chose rather a kind of middle way, by way of establishment, and that the inheritance of the crown should rest, remain, and abide in the king, &c. which words might equally be applied; that the crown should continue to him: but whether as having former right to it, (which was doubtful) or having it then in fact and possession (which no man denied) was left fair to interpretation either way. And again, for the limitation of the entail, he did not press it to go farther than to himself and to the heirs of his body, not speaking of his right heirs; but leaving that to the law to decide: so as the entail might seem rather a personal favour to him and his children, than a total disinherison to the house of York. And in this form was the law drawn and passed. Which statute he procured to be confirmed by the pope's bull the year following, with mention nevertheless (by way of recital) of his other titles, both of descent and conquest. So as now the wreath of three, was made a wreath of five; for to the three first titles of the two houses, or lines, and conquest, were added two more, the authorities parliamentary and papal.

The king likewise in the reversal of the attainders of his partakers, and discharging them of all offences incident to his service and succour, had his will; and acts did pass accordingly. In the passage whereof, exception was taken to divers persons in the house of commons, for that they were attainted, and thereby not legal, nor habilitate to serve in parliament, being disabled in the highest degree; and that it should be a great incongruity to have them to make laws, who themselves were not inlaw. The truth was, that divers of those which had in the time of king Richard been strongest, and most declared for the king's party, were returned knights and burgesses for the parliament; whether by care or recommendation from the state, or the voluntary inclination of the people: many of which had been by Richard the third attainted by outlawries, or otherwise. The king was somewhat troubled with this: For though it had a grave and specious...
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

shew, yet it reflected upon his party. But wisely not shewing himself at all moved therewith, he would not understand it but as a case in law, and willed the judges to be advised thereupon; who for that purpose were forthwith assembled in the exchequer-chamber (which is the counsel-chamber of the judges:) and upon deliberation they gave a grave and safe opinion and advice, mixed with law and convenience; which was, that the knights and burgesses attainted by the course of law, should forbear to come into the house, till a law were passed for the reversal of their attainders.

It was at that time incidently moved among the judges in their consultation, what should be done for the king himself, who likewise was attainted? But it was with unanimous consent resolved, that the crown takes away all defects and flaws in blood: and that from the time the king did assume the crown, the fountain was cleared, and all attainders and corruption of blood discharged. But nevertheless, for honour's sake, it was ordained by parliament, that all records wherein there was any memory, or mention of the king's attainder, should be defaced, cancelled, and taken off the file.

But on the part of the king's enemies there were by parliament attainted, the late duke of Gloucester, calling himself Richard the third; the duke of Norfolk, the earl of Surrey, viscount Lovel, the lord Ferrars, the lord Zouch, Richard Ratcliffe, William Catesby, and many others of degree and quality. In which bills of attainders, nevertheless there were contained many just and temperate clauses, savings and provisos, well shewing and fore-tokening the wisdom, sway, and moderation of the king's spirit of government. And for the pardon of the rest, that had stood against the king, the king, upon a second advice, thought it not fit it should pass by parliament, the better (being matter of grace) to implore the thanks to himself: using only the opportunity of a parliament time, the better to diffuse it into the veins of the kingdom. Therefore during the parliament, he published his royal proclamation, offering pardon and grace of restitution, to all such as had taken arms, or been participant of any attempts against him; so as they submitted themselves to his mercy by a day, and took the oath of allegiance and fidelity to him. Whereupon many came out of sanctuary, and many more came out of fear, no less guilty than those that had taken sanctuary.

As for money or treasure, the king thought it not seasonable, or fit to demand any of his subjects at this parliament; both because he had received satisfaction from them in matters of so great importance, and because he could not remunerate them with any general pardon, being prevented therein by the coronation pardon, passed immediately before: but chiefly, for that it was in every man's eye, what great forfeitures and confiscations he had at that present to help himself; whereby those casualties of the crown might in reason spare the purses of the subjects; especially in a time when he was in peace with all his neighbours. Some few laws passed at that parliament, almost for form sake: amongst which there was one, to reduce aliens, being made denizens, to pay strangers customs; and another, to draw to himself the feizures and compositions of Italians goods, for not employment, being points of profit to his coffers, whereof from the very beginning he was not forgetful; and had been more happy at the latter end, if his early providence (which kept him from all necessity of exacting upon his people) could likewise have tempered his nature therein. He added, during parliament, to his former creations, the innoblement or advancement in
in nobility of a few others; the lord Chandois of Britain, was made earl of Bath; Sir Giles Daubeney, was made lord Daubeney; and Sir Robert Willoughby, lord Brook.

The king did also with great nobleness and bounty (which virtues at that time had their turns in his nature) restore Edward Stafford (eldest son to Henry duke of Buckingham, attainted in the time of king Richard) not only to his dignities, but to his fortunes and possessions, which were great: to which he was moved also by a kind of gratitude, for that the duke was the man that moved the first stone against the tyranny of king Richard, and indeed made the king a bridge to the crown upon his own ruins. Thus the parliament broke up.

The parliament being dissolved, the king sent forthwith money to redeem the marquis Dorset, and Sir John Bourchier, whom he had left as his pledges at Paris, for money which he had borrowed, when he made his expedition for England. And therefore he took a fit occasion to send the lord treasurer and master Bray (whom he used as counsellor) to the lord mayor of London, requiring of the city a preft of six thousand marks: but after many parleys, he could obtain but two thousand pounds; which he was moved also by a kind of gratitude, for that the duke was the man that moved the first stone against the tyranny of king Richard, and indeed made the king a bridge to the crown upon his own ruins.

Thus the parliament broke up.

The parliament being dissolved, the king sent forthwith money to redeem the marquis Dorset, and Sir John Bourchier, whom he had left as his pledges at Paris, for money which he had borrowed, when he made his expedition for England. And therefore he took a fit occasion to send the lord treasurer and master Bray (whom he used as counsellor) to the lord mayor of London, requiring of the city a preft of six thousand marks: but after many parleys, he could obtain but two thousand pounds; which he was moved also by a kind of gratitude, for that the duke was the man that moved the first stone against the tyranny of king Richard, and indeed made the king a bridge to the crown upon his own ruins.

Thus the parliament broke up.

The parliament being dissolved, the king sent forthwith money to redeem the marquis Dorset, and Sir John Bourchier, whom he had left as his pledges at Paris, for money which he had borrowed, when he made his expedition for England. And therefore he took a fit occasion to send the lord treasurer and master Bray (whom he used as counsellor) to the lord mayor of London, requiring of the city a preft of six thousand marks: but after many parleys, he could obtain but two thousand pounds; which he was moved also by a kind of gratitude, for that the duke was the man that moved the first stone against the tyranny of king Richard, and indeed made the king a bridge to the crown upon his own ruins.

Thus the parliament broke up.

The parliament being dissolved, the king sent forthwith money to redeem the marquis Dorset, and Sir John Bourchier, whom he had left as his pledges at Paris, for money which he had borrowed, when he made his expedition for England. And therefore he took a fit occasion to send the lord treasurer and master Bray (whom he used as counsellor) to the lord mayor of London, requiring of the city a preft of six thousand marks: but after many parleys, he could obtain but two thousand pounds; which he was moved also by a kind of gratitude, for that the duke was the man that moved the first stone against the tyranny of king Richard, and indeed made the king a bridge to the crown upon his own ruins.

Thus the parliament broke up.
be a summer well spent to visit those parts, and by his presence and application of himself, to reclaim and rectify those humours. But the king, in his account of peace and calms, did much over-cast his fortunes, which proved for many years together full of broken seas, tides and tempests. For he was no sooner come to Lincoln, where he kept his Easter, but he received news, that the lord Lovel, Humphrey Stafford, and Thomas Stafford, (who had formerly taken sanctuary at Colchester) were departed out of sanctuary, but to what place, no man could tell: Which advertisement the king deplored, and continued his journey to York. At York there came fresh and more certain advertisement, that the lord Lovel was at hand with a great power of men, and that the Staffords were in arms in Worcestershire, and had made their approaches to the city of Worcester, to assault it. The king, as a prince of great and profound judgment, was not much moved with it; for that he thought it was but a rag or remnant of Bosworth-field, and had nothing in it of the main party of the house of York. But he was more doubtful of the raising of forces to resist the rebels, than of the resistance itself; for that he was in a core of people, whose affections he suspected. But the action enduring no delay, he did speedily levy and send against the lord Lovel, to the number of three thousand men, ill armed, but well assured, (being taken some few out of his own train, and the rest out of the tenants and followers of such as were safe to be trusted) under the conduct of the duke of Bedford. And as his manner was to send his pardons rather before the sword than after, he gave commission to the duke to proclaim pardon to all that would come in: which the duke, upon his approach to the lord Lovel’s camp, did perform. And it fell out as the king expected; the heralds were the great ordnance. For the lord Lovel, upon proclamation of pardon, mistrusting his men, fled into Lancashire, and lurking for a time with Sir Thomas Broughton, after failed over into Flanders to the lady Margaret. And his men, forsaken of their captain, did presently submit themselves to the duke. The Staffords likewise, and their forces, hearing what had happened to the lord Lovel (in whose success their chief trust was) despaired, and dispersed. The two brothers taking sanctuary at Cumnham, a village near Abingdon; which place, upon view of their privilege in the king’s bench, being judged no sufficient sanctuary for traitors, Humphrey was executed at Tylbury; and Thomas, as being led by his elder brother, was pardoned. So this rebellion proved but a blast, and the king having by this journey purged a little the dregs and leaven of the northern people, that were before in no good affection towards him, returned to London.

In September following, the queen was delivered of her first son, whom the king (in honour of the British race, of which himself was) named Arthur, according to the name of that ancient worthy king of the Britains, in whose acts there is truth enough to make him famous, besides that which is fabulous. The child was strong and able, though he was born in the eighth month, which the physicians do prejudice. Therefore we shall make our judgment upon the things themselves, as they give light one to another, and (as we can) dig truth out of the mine. The king was green in his estate; and contrary to his own opinion and de-
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

...fert both, was not without much hatred throughout the realm. The root of all, was the discountenancing of the house of York, which the general body of the realm still affected. This did alienate the hearts of the subjects from him daily more and more, especially when they saw, that after his marriage, and after a son born, the king did nevertheless not so much as proceed to the coronation of the queen, not vouchsafing her the honour of a matrimonial crown; for the coronation of her was not till almost two years after, when danger had taught him what to do. But much more when it was spread abroad, (whether by error, or the cunning of malecontents) that the king had a purpose to put to death Edward Plantagenet closely in the tower: whole case was so nearly parallel'd with that of Edward the fourth's children, in respect of the blood, like age, and the very place of the tower, as it did refresh and reflect upon the king a most odious resemblance, as if he would be another king Richard. And all this time it was still whispered every where, that at least one of the children of Edward the fourth was living: Which bruit was cunningly fomented by such as desired innovation. Neither was the king's nature and customs greatly fit to difperse these mists; but contrariwise, he had a fashion rather to create doubts than assurance. Thus was fuel prepared for the spark: The spark that afterwords kindled such a fire and combustion, was at the first contemptible.

There was a subtile prieft called (a) Richard Simon, that lived in Oxford, and had to his pupil a baker's son, named Lambert Simnell, of the age of some fifteen years, a comely youth, and well favoured, not without some extraordinary dignity, and grace of aspect. It came into this prieft's fancy, (hearing what men talked, and in hope to raife himfelf to fome great bishoprick) to caufe this lad to counterfeit and perfonate the fecond fon of Edward the fourth, supposed to be murdered; and afterward (for he changed his intention in the manage) the lord Edward Plantagenet, then prisoner in the tower, and accordingly to frame him and infiruct him in the part he was to play. This is that which (as was touched before) seemeth scarce credible; not that a false perfon fhould be afumed to gain a kingdom, for it hath been seen in ancient and late times; nor that it fhould come into the mind of fuch an abjeCt fellow, to enterprize fo great a matter; for high conceits do sometimes come streaming into the imaginations of bafe perrons; especially when they are drunk with news, and talk of the people. But here is that which hath no appearance: That this prieft being utterly unacquainted with the true person, according to whose pattern he fhould shape his counterfeit, fhould think it possible for him to infiruct his player, either in gelfure and fafions, or in recounting paft matters of his life and education; or in fift anfwers to quefitions, or the like, any ways to come near the refemblance of him whom he was to reprefent. For this lad was not to perforate one, that had been long before taken out of his cradle, or conveyed away in his infancy, known to few; but a youth, that till the age almost of ten years, had been brought up in a court where infinite eyes had been upon him. For king Edward touched with remOle of his brother the duke of Clarence's death, would not indeed restore his fon (of whom we fpeak) to be duke of Clarence, but yet created him earl of Warwick, reviving his honour on the mother's fide, and ufed him honourably

(a) The prieft's name was William Sirmond, and the youth was the fon of . . . . . . . an organ-maker in Oxford, as the prieft declared before the whole convocation of the clergy at Lambeth, Feb. 17. 1486. Vide P2. Mason, f. 32. Nis. Sancroft.
during his time, though Richard the third afterwards confined him. So that it cannot be, but that some great person that knew particularly and familiarly Edward Plantagenet, had a hand in the business, from whom the priest might take his aim. That which is most probable, out of the preceding and subsequent acts, is, that it was the queen dowager, from whom this action had the principal source and motion. For certain it is, she was a busy negotiating woman, and in her withdrawing chamber had the fortunate conspiracy for the king against king Richard the third been hatched; which the king knew, and remembered perhaps but too well; and was at this time extremely discontent with the king, thinking her daughter (as the king handled the matter) not advanced, but depressed; and none could hold the book so well to prompt and instruct this stage-play, as she could. Nevertheless it was not her meaning, nor no more was it the meaning of any of the better and eager sort that favoured this enterprise, and knew the secret, that this disguised idol should possess the crown; but at his peril to make way to the overthrow of the king; and that done, they had their several hopes and ways. That which doth chiefly fortify this conjecture is, that as soon as the matter brake forth in any strength, it was one of the king's first acts to cloister the queen dowager in the nunnery of Bermondsey, and to take away all her lands and estate; and this by a close council, without any legal proceeding, upon far fetched pretences; that she had delivered her two daughters out of sanctuary to king Richard, contrary to promise. Which proceeding being even at that time taxed for rigorous and undue, both in matter and manner, makes it very probable there was some greater matter against her, which the king upon reason of policy, and to avoid envy, would not publish. It is likewise no small argument that there was some secret in it, and some suppressing of examinations; for that the priest Simon himself, after he was taken, was never brought to execution: no not so much as to publick trial (as many clergymen were upon less treasons;) but was only shut up close in a dungeon. Add to this, that after the earl of Lincoln (a principal person of the house of York) was slain in Stokrfield, the king opened himself to some of his council, that he was sorry for the earl's death, because by him (he said) he might have known the bottom of his danger.

But to return to the narration itself: Simon did first instruct his scholar for the part of Richard duke of York, second son to king Edward the fourth; and this was at such time as it was voiced, that the king purposed to put to death Edward Plantagenet prisoner in the tower, whereat there was great murmur. But hearing soon after a general bruith, that Plantagenet had escaped out of the tower, and thereby finding him so much beloved amongst the people, and such rejoicing at his escape, the cunning priest changed his copy, and chose now Plantagenet to be the subject his pupil should personate, because he was more in the present speech and votes of the people; and it pleased better, and followed more close and handsomely, upon the bruith of Plantagenet's escape. But yet doubting that there would be too near looking, and too much perspective into his disguise, if he should shew it here in England; he thought good (after the manner of scenes in stage-plays and mafs) to shew it afar off; and therefore failed with his scholar into Ireland, where the affection to the house of York was most in height. The king had been a little improvident in the matters of Ireland, and had not removed officers and counsellors, and put in their places, or at least intermingled persons, of whom he stood assured, as he should
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

should have done, since he knew the strong bent of that country towards the house of York; and that it was a ticklish and unsettled state, more easy to receive dittemperes and mutations, than England was. But trusting to the reputation of his victories and successes in England, he thought he should have time enough to extend his cares afterwards to that second kingdom.

Wherefore through this neglect, upon the coming of Simon with his pretended Plantagenet into Ireland, all things were prepared for revolt and sedition, almost as if they had been set and plotted beforehand. Simon’s first address was to the lord Thomas Fitz-Gerard, earl of Kildare, and deputy of Ireland; before whose eyes he did cast such a sight (by his own inclination, and by the carriage of his youth, that expressed a natural princely behaviour) as joined perhaps with some inward vapours of ambition and affection in the earl’s own mind, left him fully posseffed, that it was the true Plantagenet. The earl presently communicated the matter with some of the nobles, and others there, at the first secretly; but finding them of like affection to himself, he suffered it of purpose to vent and pass abroad; because they thought it not safe to resolve, till they had a taste of the people’s inclination. But if the great ones were in forwardness, the people were in fury, entertaining this airy body or phantasm with incredible affection; partly, out of their great devotion to the house of York; partly out of a proud humour in the nation, to give a king to the realm of England. Neither did the party in this heat of affection, much trouble themselves with the attainder of George duke of Clarence; having newly learned by the king’s example, that attainders do not interrupt the conveying of title to the crown. And as for the daughters of king Edward the fourth, they thought king Richard had said enough for them; and took them to be but as of the king’s party, because they were in his power, and at his disposing. So that with marvellous consent and applause, this counterfeit Plantagenet was brought with great solemnity, to the castle of Dublin, and there saluted, served, and honoured as king; the boy becoming it well, and doing nothing that did bewray the bafeless of his condition. And within a few days after he was proclaimed king at Dublin, by the name of king Edward the sixth; there being not a sword drawn in king Henry his quarrel.

The king was much moved with this unexpected accident when it came to his ears, both because it struck upon that thing which ever he most feared, as also because it was flung in such a place, where, he could not with safety transfer his own person to suppers it. For partly through natural valour, and partly through an universal suspicion, (not knowing whom to trust) he was ever ready to wait upon all his achievements in person. The king therefore first called his counsel together at the charter-house at Shire, which counsel was held with great secrecy, but the open decrees thereof, which presently came abroad, were three.

The first was, that the queen dowager, for that she, contrary to her pact and agreement with those that had concluded with her concerning the marriage of her daughter Elizabeth with king Henry, had nevertheless delivered her daughters out of sanctuary into king Richard’s hands, should be cloistered in the nunnery of Bermomdel, and forfeit all her lands and goods.

The next was, that Edward Plantagenet, then close prisoner in the tower, should be in the most publick and notorious manner that could be devised, shewed unto the people; in part to discharge the king of the envy of that opinion and bruit, how he had been put to death privily in the tower;
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

tower; but chiefly to make the people see the levity and imposture of the proceedings of Ireland, and that their Plantagenet was indeed but a puppet or a counterfeit.

The third was, that there should be again proclaimed a general pardon to all that would reveal their offences, and submit themselves by a day. And that this pardon should be conceived in so ample and liberal a manner, as no high-treason (no not against the king's own person) should be excepted. Which though it might seem strange, yet was it not so to a wise king, that knew his greatest dangers were not from the least-, treasons, but from the greatest. These resolutions of the king and the council were immediately put in execution. And first, the queen dowager was put into the monastery of Bermondsey, and all her estates seized into the king's hands: whereat there was much wondering; that a weak woman, for the yielding to the menaces and promises of a tyrant, after such a distance of time, (wherein the king had shewed no displeasure nor alteration) but much more after so happy a marriage between the king and her daughter, blessed with issue male, should, upon a sudden mutability or disclosure of the king's mind, be so severely handled.

This lady was amongst the examples of great variety of fortune. She had first from a distressed suitor, and desolate widow, been taken to the marriage-bed of a batchelor-king, the goodliest personage of his time; and even in his reign she had endured a strange eclipse by the king's flight, and temporary depriving from the crown. She was also very happy, in that she had by him fair issue; and continued his nuptial love (helping herself by some obsequious bearing and diffembling of his pleasures) to the very end. She was much affectionate to her own kindred, even unto faction; which did stir great envy in the lords of the king's side, who counted her blood a disparagement to be mingled with the king's. With which lords of the king's blood, joined also the king's favourite, the lord Hastings; who, notwithstanding the king's great affection to him, was thought at times, through her malice and spleen, not to be out of danger of falling. After her husband's death she was matter of tragedy, having lived to see her brother beheaded, and her two sons depoised from the crown, bastard in their blood, and cruelly murdered. All this while nevertheless she enjoyed her liberty, estate, and fortunes: But afterwards again, upon the rise of the wheel, when she had a king to her son in law, and was made grandmother to a grandchild of the best sex; yet was she (upon dark and unknown reasons, and no less strange pretences) precipitated and banished the world into a nunnery; where it was almost thought dangerous to visit her, or see her; and where not long after the ended her life: but was by the king's commandment buried with the king her husband at Windsor. She was foundress of Queen's college in Cambridge. For this act the king sustained great obloquy, which nevertheless (besides the reason of estate) was somewhat sweetened to him by a great confiscation.

About this time also, Edward Plantagenet was upon a Sunday brought throughout all the principal streets of London, to be seen of the people. And having passed the view of the streets, was conducted to Paul's church in solemn procession, where great store of people were assembled. And it was provided also in good fashion, that divers of the nobility, and others of quality, (especially of those that the king most suspected, and knew the person of Plantagenet best) had communication with the young gentleman by the way, and entertained him with speech and discourse; which did in effect...
effect mar the pageant in Ireland with the subjects here, at least with so many, as out of error, and not out of malice, might be misled. Nevertheless, in Ireland, (where it was too late to go back) it wrought little or no effect. But contrariwise, they turned the imposture upon the king; and gave out, that the king to defeat the true inheritor, and to mock the world, and blind the eyes of simple men, had tricked up a boy in the likeness of Edward Plantagenet, and shewed him to the people; not sparing to profane the ceremony of a procession, the more to countenance the fable.

The general pardon likewise near the same time came forth; and the king therewithal omitted no diligence, in giving strict order for the keeping of the ports, that fugitives, malecontents, or suspected persons, might not pass over into Ireland and Flanders.

Meanwhile the rebels in Ireland had sent privy messengers both into England, and into Flanders, who in both places had wrought effects of no small importance. For in England they won to their party John earl of Lincoln, son of John de la Pool duke of Suffolk, and of Elizabeth, king Edward the fourth's eldest sister. This earl was a man of great wit and courage, and had his thoughts highly raised by hopes and expectations for a time: for Richard the third had a resolution, out of his hatred to both his brethren, king Edward, and the duke of Clarence, and their lines, (having had his hand in both their bloods) to disable their issues upon false and incompetent pretexts; the one of attainder, the other of illegitimation: and to design this gentleman (in case himself should die without children) for inheritor of the crown. Neither was this unknown to the king, who had secretly an eye upon him. But the king having tasted of the envy of the people for his imprisonement of Edward Plantagenet, was doubtful to heap up any more distastes of that kind, by the imprisonement of de la Pool also; the rather thinking it policy to conserve him as a rival unto the other.

The earl of Lincoln was induced to participate with the action of Ireland, not lightly upon the strength of the proceedings there, which was but a bubble, but upon letters from the lady Margaret of Burgundy, in whose succours and declaration for the enterprise, there seemed to be a more solid foundation, both for reputation and forces. Neither did the earl refrain the business, for that he knew the pretended Plantagenet to be but an idol. But contrariwise, he was more glad it should be the false Plantagenet, than the true; because the false being sure to fall away of himself, and the true to be made sure of by the king, it might open and pave a fair and prepared way to his own title. With this resolution he failed secretly into Flanders, where a little before arrived the lord Lovel, leaving a correspondence here in England with sir Thomas Broughton, a man of great power and dependances in Lancashire. For before this time, when the pretended Plantagenet was first received in Ireland, secret messengers had been also sent to the lady Margaret, advertising her what had passed in Ireland, imploring succours in an enterprize (as they said) so pious and just, and that God had so miraculously prospered the beginning thereof; and making offer, that all things should be guided by her will and direction, as the sovereign patrons and protectors of the enterprise. Margaret was second sister to king Edward the fourth, and had been second wife to Charles, surnamed the Hardy, duke of Burgundy; by whom, having no children of her own, she did with singular care and tenderness intend the education of Philip and Margaret, grandchildren to her former husband; which won her great love and authority among the Dutch. This princess (having the spirit of a man,
and malice of a woman) abounding in treasure, by the greatnes of her dower, and her provident government, and being childles, and without any nearer care, made it her design and enterprize, to see the majesty royal of England once again replaced in her house; and had set up king Henry as a mark, at whose overthrow all her actions should aim and shoot; insomuch as all the councils of his succeeding troubles came chiefly out of that quiver. And the bare such a mortal hatred to the house of Lancaster, and personally to the king, as she was no ways mollified by the conjunction of the houses in her niece's marriage, but rather hated her niece, as the means of the king's ascent to the crown, and assurance therein. Wherefore with great violence of affection she embraced this overture. And upon counsel taken with the earl of Lincoln, and the lord Level, and some other of the party, it was resolved with all speed, the two lords, aslifted with a regiment of two thousand Almains, being choice and veteran bands, under the command of Martin Swart, (a valiant and experimented captain) should pass over into Ireland to the new king; hoping, that when the action should have the face of a received and settled regality (with such a second person as the earl of Lincoln, and the conjunction and reputation of foreign succours) the fame of it would embolden and prepare all the party of the confederates and malecontents within the realm of England, to give them assistance when they should come over there. And for the person of the counterfeit, it was agreed, that if all things succeeded well, he should be put down, and the true Plantagenet received; wherein nevertheless the earl of Lincoln had his particular hopes. After they were come into Ireland, and that the party took courage, by seeing themselves together in a body, they grew very confident of success; conceiving and discoursing amongst themselves, that they went in upon far better cards to overthrow king Henry, than king Henry had to overthrow king Richard. And that if there were not a sword drawn against them in Ireland, it was a sign the swords in England would be soon sheathed, or beaten down. And first, for a bravery upon this accession of power, they crowned their new king in the cathedral church of Dublin; who formerly had been but proclaimed only; and then state in council what should farther be done. At which council, though it were proposed by some, that it were the best way to establish themselves first in Ireland, and to make that the seat of the war, and to draw king Henry thither in person, by whose absence they thought there would be great alterations and commotions in England; yet because the kingdom there was poor, and they should not be able to keep their army together, nor pay their German soldiers, and for that also the sway of the Irishmen, and generally of the men of war, which (as in such cases of popular tumults is usual) did in effect govern their leaders, was eager, and in affection to make their fortunes upon England; it was concluded with all possible speed to transport their forces into England. The king in the mean time, who at the first when he heard what was done in Ireland, though it troubled him, yet thought he should be well enough able to scatter the Irish as a flight of birds, and rattle away this swarm of bees with their king; when he heard afterwards that the earl of Lincoln was embarked in the action, and that the lady Margaret was declared for it; he apprehended the danger in a true degree as it was, and saw plainly that his kingdom must again be put to the stake, and that he must fight for it. And first he did conceive, before he understand of the earl of Lincoln's falling into Ireland out of Flanders, that he should be assailed both upon the east parts of the kingdom of England,
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

land, by some impression from Flanders; and upon the north-west out of Ireland. And therefore having ordered musters to be made in both parts, and having provisionally designed two generals, 'Jasper earl of Bedford,' and 'John earl of Oxford,' (meaning himself also to go in person where the affairs should most require it) and nevertheless not expecting any actual invasion at that time, (the winter being far on) he took his journey himself towards Suffolk and Norfolk, for the confirming of those parts. And being come to St. Edmond's-bury, he understood, that Thomas marquis Dorset (who had been one of the pledges in France) was hastening towards him, to purge himself of some accusations which had been made against him. But the king, though he kept an ear for him, yet was the time so doubtful, that he sent the earl of Oxford to meet him, and forthwith to carry him to the tower; with a fair message nevertheless, that he should bear that disgrace with patience, for that the king meant not his hurt, but only to preserve him from doing hurt, either to the king's service, or to himself; and that the king should always be able (when he had cleared himself) to make him reparation.

From St. Edmond's-bury he went to Norwich, where he kept his Christmas. And from thence he went in a manner of pilgrimage to Walthingham, where he visited our lady's church, famous for miracles, and made his prayers and vows for help and deliverance. And from thence he returned by Cambridge to London. Not long after the rebels, with their king, (under the leading of the earl of Lincoln, the earl of Kildare, the lord Lovel, and colonel Swart) landed at Poole rey in Lancashire; whither there repaired to them Sir Thomas Broughton, with some small company of English. The king by that time (knowing now the storm would not divide, but fall in one place) had levied forces in good number; and in person (taking with him his two designed generals, the duke of Bedford, and the earl of Oxford) was come on his way towards them as far as Coventry, whence he sent forth a troop of light horsemen for discovery, and to intercept some stragglers of the enemies, by whom he might the better understand the particulars of their progress and purposes, which was accordingly done; though the king otherwife was not without intelligence from espials in the camp.

The rebels took their way toward York, without spoiling the country; or any act of hostility, the better to put themselves into favour of the people, and to pacify their king: who (no doubt, out of a princely feeling) was sparing, and compassionate towards his subjects; but their snow-ball did not gather as it went: for the people came not in to them; neither did any rise or declare themselves in other parts of the kingdom for them, which was caused partly by the good taste that the king had given his people of his government, joined with the reputation of his felicity; and partly for that it was an odious thing to the people of England, to have a king brought in to them upon the shoulders of Irish and Dutch, of which their army was in subsance compounded. Neither was it a thing done with any great judgment on the party of the rebels, for them to take their way towards York: considering that howsoever those parts had formerly been a nursey of their friends; yet it was there, where the lord Lovel had so lately disbanded, and where the king's presence had a little before qualified discontent. The earl of Lincoln deceived of his hopes of the countries concourre unto him, (in which case he would have temporized) and seeing the business past retraict, resolved to make on where the king was, and to give him battle, and then upon marched towards Newark, thinking to have surprized
surprized the town. But the king was somewhat before this time come to Nottingham, where he called a council of war, at which was consulted whether it were best to protract time, or speedily to set upon the rebels. In which council the king himself (who's continual vigilance did stick in sometimes causeless suspicions, which few else knew) inclined to the accelerating a battle: but this was presently put out of doubt, by the great aids that came in to him in the instant of this consultation, partly upon missives, and partly voluntaries, from many parts of the kingdom.

The principal persons that came then to the king's aid, were the earl of Shrewsbury, and the lord Strange of the nobility; and of knights and gentlemen, to the number of at least three-score and ten persons, with their companies, making in the whole, at the least, fix thousand fighting men, besides the forces that were with the king before. Whereupon the king, finding his army so bravely re-inforced, and a great alacrity in all his men to fight; was confirmed in his former resolution, and marched speedily, so as he put himself between the enemies camp and Newark; being loth their army should get the commodity of that town.

The earl nothing dismay'd, came forwards that day unto a little village called Stoke, and there encamp'd that night, upon the brow or hanging of a hill. The king the next day presented him battle upon the plain, the fields there being open and spacious. The earl courageously came down, and joined battle with him. Concerning which battle, the relations that are left unto us are so naked and negligent, (though it be an action of so recent memory) as they rather declare the success of the day, than the manner of the fight. They say, that the king divided his army into three battails; whereof the vanguard only, well strengthened with wings, came to fight. That the fight was fierce and obstinate, and lasted three hours, before the victory inclined either way; save that judgment might be made, but that the king's vanguard of itself maintained fight against the whole power of the enemies, (the other two battails remaining out of action) what the success was like to be in the end.

That Martin Swart with his Germans perform'd bravely, and so did those few English that were on that side; neither did the Irish fail in courage or fierceness; but being almost naked men, only armed with darts and skains, it was rather an execution than a fight upon them; insomuch as the furious slaughter of them was a great discouragement and appellation to the rest; that there died upon the place all the chieftains; that is, the earl of Lincoln, the earl of Kildare, Francis lord Lovel, Martin Swart, and sir Thomas Broughton; all making good the fight, without any ground given. Only of the lord Lovel there went a report, that he fled and swam over Trent on horseback, but could not recover the farther side, by reason of the steepness of the bank, and so was drowned in the river. But another report leaves him not there, but that he lived long after in a cave or vault. The number that was slain in the field, was of the enemies part four thousand at the least; and of the king's part, one half of his vanguard, besides many hurt, but none of name. There were taken prisoners, amongst others, the counterfeit Plantagenet, (now Lambert Simnell again) and the crafty prieft his tutor. For Lambert, the king would not take his life, both out of magnanimity, taking him but as an image of wax, that others had tempered and moulded: and likewise out of wildom, thinking that if he suffer'd death, he would be forgotten too soon; but being kept alive, he would be a continual spectacle, and a kind of remedy against the like enchantments of people in time to come. For which cause he was taken into service in his court.
court to a base office in his kitchen; so that (in a kind of mattacina of human fortune) he turned a broach, that had worn a crown; whereas fortune commonly doth not bring in a comedy or farce after a tragedy. And afterwards he was preferred to be one of the king's falconers. As to the priest, he was committed close prisoner, and heard of no more; the king loving to seal up his own dangers.

After the battle the king went to Lincoln, where he caused supplications and thanksgivings to be made for his deliverance and victory. And that his devotions might go round in circle, he sent his banner to be offered to our lady of Walsingham, where before he made his vows. And thus delivered of this so strange an engine, and new invention of fortune, he returned to his former confidence of mind, thinking now that all his misfortunes had come at once. But it fell out unto him according to the speech of the common people in the beginning of his reign, that said, it was a token he should reign in labour, because his reign began with a sickness of sweat. But howsoever the king thought himself now in a haven, yet such was his wisdom, as his confidence did seldom darken his foresight, especially in things near hand. And therefore awakened by so fresh and unexpected dangers, he enter'd into due consideration, as well how to weed out the partakers of the former rebellion, as to kill the seeds of the like in time to come: and withal to take away all shelters and harbours for discontented persons, where they might hatch and foster rebellions, which afterwards might gather strength and motion. And first, he did yet again make a progress from Lincoln to the northern parts, though it were indeed rather an itinerary circuit of justice, than a progress. For all along as he went, with much severity and strict inquisition, partly by martial law, and partly by commission, were punished, the adherents and aiders of the late rebels. Not all by death, (for the field had drawn much blood) but by fines and ransoms, which spared life, and raised treasure. Amongst other crimes of this nature, there was diligent enquiry made of such as had raised and dispersed a bruit and rumour, a little before the field fight, that the rebels had the day; and that the king's army was overthrown, and the king fled. Whereby it was supposed that many succours, which otherwise would have come to the king, were cunningly put off, and kept back. Which charge and accusation, though it had some ground, yet it was industriously embraced and put on by divers, who having been in themselves not the best affected unto the king's part, nor forward to come to his aid, were glad to apprehend this colour to cover their neglect and coldness, under the pretence of such discouragements. Which cunning nevertheless the king would not understand, though he lodged it, and noted it in some particulars, as his manner was.

But for the extirpating of the roots and causes of the like commotions in time to come, the king began to find where his shoe did wring him, and that it was his depresting of the house of York that did rinkle and fest the affections of his people. And therefore being now too wise to ditch in perils any longer, and willing to give some contentment in that kind, (at least in ceremony) he resolved at last to proceed to the coronation of his queen. And therefore at his coming to London, where he enter'd in state, and in a kind of triumph, and celebrated his victory with two days of devotion, (for the first day he repaired to Paul's, and had the hymn of Te Deum sung, and the morrow after he went in procession, and heard the sermon at the cross) the queen was with great solemnity crowned at Westminster.
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

minister, the five and twentieth of November, in the third year of his reign, which was about two years after the marriage; like an old christening, that had stayed long for godfathers. Which strange and unusual distance of time, made it subject to every man's note, that it was an act against his stomach, and put upon him by necessity and reason of state. Soon after, to show that it was now fair weather again, and that the imprisonment of Thomas marquis of Dorset, was rather upon suspicion of the time, than of the man, he, the said marquis, was set at liberty, without examination, or other circumstance. At that time also the king sent an ambassador unto pope Innocent, signifying unto him this his marriage; and that now (like another Æneas) he had passed through the floods of his former troubles and travels, and was arrived unto a safe haven: and thanking his holiness that he had honoured the celebration of his marriage with the presence of his ambassador; and offering both his person, and the forces of his kingdom, upon all occasions, to do him service.

The ambassador making his oration to the pope, in the presence of the cardinals, did so magnify the king and queen, as was enough to glut the hearers. But then he did again so extol and deify the pope, as made all that he had said in praise of his master and mistress seem temperate and passable. But he was very honourably entertained, and extremely much made on by the pope: Who knowing himself to be lazy and unprofitable to the Christian world, was wonderfully glad to hear that there were such echoes of him sounding in remote parts. He obtained also of the pope a very just and honourable bull, qualifying the privileges of sanctuary (where with the king had been extremely galled) in three points.

The first, that if any sanctuary man did by night, or otherwife, get out of sanctuary privily, and commit mischief and trespass, and then come in again, he should lose the benefit of sanctuary for ever after. The second, that howsoever the person of the sanctuary man was protected from his creditors, yet his goods out of sanctuary should not. The third, that if any took sanctuary for case of treason, the king might appoint him keepers to look to him in sanctuary.

The king also for the better securing of his estate against mutinous and malecontented subjects, (whereof he saw the realm was full) who might have their refuge into Scotland, which was not under key as the ports were; for that cause rather than for any doubt of hostility from those parts, before his coming to London (when he was at Newcastle) had sent a solemn embassage unto James the third king of Scotland, to treat and conclude a peace with him. The embassadors were, Richard Fox bishop of Exeter, and sir Richard Edgcumbe comptroller of the king's house, who were honourably received and entertained there. But the king of Scotland labouring of the same disease that king Henry did (though more mortal, as afterwards appeared) that is, discontented subjects, apt to rise and raise tumult, although in his own affection he did much desire to make a peace with the king; yet finding his nobles averse, and not daring to displease them, concluded only a truce for seven years; giving nevertheless promise in private, that it should be renewed from time to time during the two kings lives.

Hitherto the king had been exercised in settling his affairs at home. But about this time brake forth an occasion that drew him to look abroad, and to hearken to foreign business. Charles the eighth the French king, by the virtue and good fortune of his two immediate predecessors, Charles the seventh his grandfather, and Lewis the eleventh his father, received the kingdom
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

The kingdom of France in more flourishing and spread estate, than it had been of many years before; being redintegrated in those principal members, which anciently had been portions of the crown of France, and were afterward dissolved, so as they remained only in homage, and not in sovereignty, (being governed by absolute princes of their own,) Anjou, Normandy, Provence, and Burgundy. There remained only Britain to be reunited, and so the monarchy of France to be reduced to the ancient terms and bounds.

King Charles was not a little inflamed with an ambition to repurchase and reannex that duchy: Which his ambition was a wise and well weighed ambition; not like unto the ambitions of his succeeding enterprizes of Italy. For at that time being newly come to the crown, he was somewhat guided by his father's counsels, (counsels, not counsellors) for his father was his own counsellor, and had few able men about him. And that king (he knew well) had ever disdained the designs of Italy, and in particular had an eye upon Britain. There were many circumstances that did feed the ambition of Charles, with pregnant and apparent hopes of success. The duke of Britain old, and entered into a lethargy, and served with mercenary counsellors, father of two only daughters, the one sickly and not like to continue. King Charles himself in the flower of his age, and the subjects of France at that time well trained for war, both for leaders and soldiers; men of service being not yet worn out, since the wars of Lewis against Burgundy.

He found himself also in peace with all his neighbour princes. As for those that might oppose to his enterprise, Maximilian king of the Romans, his rival in the same defires, (as well for the duchy, as the daughter) feeble in means; and king Henry of England as well somewhat obnoxious to him for his favours and benefits, as busied in his particular troubles at home. There was also a fair and specious occasion offered him to hide his ambition, and to justify his warring upon Britain; for that the duke had received and succoured Lewis duke of Orleans, and other of the French nobility, which had taken arms against their king. Wherefore king Charles being resolved upon that war, knew well he could not receive any opposition so potent, as if king Henry should either upon policy of state, in preventing the growing greatness of France; or upon gratitude unto the duke of Britain, for his former favours in the time of his distress, espouse that quarrel, and declare himself in aid of the duke. Therefore he no sooner heard that king Henry was settled by his victory, but forthwith he sent embassadors unto him to pray his assistance, or at the least: that he would stand neutral. Which embassadors found the king at Leicester, and delivered their embassy to this effect: they first imparted unto the king the successes that their master had had a little before against Maximilian, in recovery of certain towns from him: which was done in a kind of privacy, and inwardness towards the king; as if the French king did not esteem him for an outward or formal confederate, but as one that had part in his affections and fortunes, and with whom he took pleasure to communicate his business. After this complement, and some gratulation for the king's victory, they fell to their errand; declaring to the king, that their master was enforced to enter into a just and necessary war with the duke of Britain, for that he had received and succoured those that were traitors, and declared enemies to his person and state. That they were no mean, distressed, and calamitous persons that fled to him for refuge, but of so great quality, as it was apparent that they came not thither to protect their own fortune, but to invade his; the head of them being the duke of Orleans, the first prince...
of the blood, and the second person of France. That therefore rightly to understand it, it was rather on their master's part a defensive war, than an offensive; as that that could not be omitted or forbear, if he tendred the conservation of his own estate; and that it was not the first blow that made the war invasive, (for that no wise prince would lay for) but the first provocation, or at least the first preparation. Nay, that this war was rather a suppression of rebels, than a war with a just enemy; where the case is, that his subjects, traitors, are received by the duke of Britain his homager. That king Henry knew well what went upon it in example, if neighbour princes should patronize and comfort rebels, against the law of nations and of leagues. Nevertheless that their master was not ignorant, that the king had been beholden to the duke of Britain in his adversity; as on the other side, they knew he would not forget also the readiness of their king, in aiding him when the duke of Britain, or his mercenary counsellors, failed him, and would have betrayed him; and that there was a great difference between the courtesies received from their master, and the duke of Britain: for that the duke's might have ends of utility and bargain; whereas their master's could not have proceeded but out of entire affection. For that if it had been measured by a politic line, it had been better for his affairs, that a tyrant should have reigned in England, troubled and hated, than such a prince, whose virtues could not fail to make him great and potent, whenever he came to be master of his affairs. But howsoever it stood for the point of obligation, which the king might owe to the duke of Britain, yet their master was well assured, it would not divert king Henry of England from doing that that was just, nor ever embark him in ill-grounded a quarrel. Therefore, since this war, which their master was now to make, was but to deliver himself from imminent dangers, their king hoped the king would shew the like affection to the conservation of their master's estate, as their master had (when time was) shewed to the king's acquisition of his kingdom. At the least, that according to the inclination which the king had ever professed of peace, he would look on, and stand neutral; for that their master could not with reason press him to undertake part in the war, being so newly settled, and recovered from intestine seditions. But touching the mystery of reannexing of the duchy of Britain to the crown of France, either by war or by marriage with the daughter of Britain; the embassadors bare aloof from it as from a rock, knowing that it made most against them. And therefore by all means declined any mention thereof, but contrariwise interlaced in their conference with the king, the assured purpose of their master to match with the daughter of Maximilian; and entertained the king also with some wandering discourses of their king's purpose, to recover by arms his right to the kingdom of Naples, by an expedition in person; all to remove the king from all jealousy of any design in these hither parts upon Britain, otherwise than for quenching of the fire, which he feared might be kindled in his own estate.

The king, after advice taken with his council, made answer to the embassadors: and first returned their complement, shewing he was right glad of the French king's reception of those towns from Maximilian. Then he familiarly related some particular passages of his own adventures and victory passed. As to the business of Britain, the king answered in few words; that the French king and the duke of Britain, were the two persons to whom he was most obliged of all men; and that he should think himself very unhappy, if things should go to between them, as he should not be able to acquit
acquit himself in gratitude towards them both; and that there was no means
for him as a Christian king, and a common friend to them, to satisfy all
obligations both to God and man, but to offer himself for a mediator of an
accord and peace between them; by which course he doubted not but their
king's estate and honour both, would be preferred with more safety and less
envy than by a war; and that he would spare no cost or pains, no so it were
to go on pilgrimage, for so good an effect: and concluded, that in this
great affair, which he took so much to heart, he would express himself
more fully by an embassy, which he would speedily dispatch unto the
French king for that purpose. And in this fort the French embassadors were
discharged: the king avoiding to understand any thing touching the reannex-
ing of Britain, as the embassadors had avoided to mention it; save that he
gave a little touch of it in the word envy. And so it was, that the king
was neither so shallow, nor so ill advertised, as not to perceive the inten-
tion of the French for the invetting himself of Britain. But first, he was
utterly unwilling (howsoever he gave out) to enter into war with France.
A fame of a war he liked well, but not an achievement; for the one he
thought would make him richer, and the other poorer; and he was pos-
sessed with many secret fears touching his own people, which he was
therefor loth to arm, and put weapons into their hands. Yet notwithstanding (as
a prudent and courageous prince) he was not so averse from a war, but that
he was resolved to chuse it, rather than to have Britain carried by France,
being so great and opulent a duchy, and situate so opportunely to annoy
England, either for coast or trade. But the king's hopes were, that partly
by negligence, commonly imputed to the French (especially in the court of
a young king) and partly by the native power of Britain it self, which was
not small; but chiefly in respect of the great party that the duke of Orleans
had in the kingdom of France, and thereby means to stir up civil troubles,
to divert the French king from the enterprise of Britain. And lastly, in
regard of the power of Maximilian, who was cor rival to the French
king in that pursuit, the enterprise would either bow to a peace, or break in it
self. In all which the king measured and valued things amis, as afterwards
appeared. He sent therefore forthwith to the French king, Christopher
Urfwick, his chaplain, a person by him much trusted and employed: chufing
him the rather, because he was a churchman, as best fortifying with an
embassy of pacification: and giving him also a commission, that if the
French king consented to treat, he would thence repair to the duke of Bri-
tain, and ripen the treaty on both parts. Urfwick made declaration to the
French king, much to the purpose of the king's answer to the French em-
assadors here, intilling also tenderly some overture of receiving to grace
the duke of Orleans, and some taste of conditions of accord. But the French
king on the other side proceeded not sincerely, but with a great deal of art
and dissimulation, in this treaty; having for his end to gain time, and so
put off the English succours under hope of peace, till he had got good
footing in Britain by force of arms. Wherefore he answered the embas-
dador, that he would put himself into the king's hands, and make him
arbitr of the peace; and willingly consented, that the embassador should
straightways pass into Britain, to signify this his consent, and to know the
duke's mind likewise; well foreseeing, that the duke of Orleans, by whom
the duke of Britain was wholly led, taking himself to be upon terms irre-
concilable with him, would admit of no treaty of peace. Whereby he
should in one, both generally abroad veil over his ambition, and win the

V o l . III.
G g g 2 repu-
reputation of just and moderate proceedings; and should withal endear himself in the affections of the king of England, as one that had committed all to his will: nay, and (which was yet more fine) make faith in him, that although he went on with the war, yet it should be but with his sword in his hand, to bend the stiffness of the other party to accept of peace; and so the king should take no umbrage of his arming and prosecution; but the treaty to be kept on foot to the very last instant, till he were master of the field.

Which grounds being by the French king wisely laid, all things fell out as he expected. For when the English ambassador came to the court of Britain, the duke was then scarcely perfect in his memory, and all things were directed by the duke of Orleans, who gave audience to the chaplain Urswick, and upon his embassage delivered, made answer in somewhat high terms: that the duke of Britain having been an host, and a kind of parent or foster-father to the king, in his tenderness of age, and weakness of fortune, did look for at this time from king Henry, (the renowned king of England) rather brave troops for his succours, than a vain treaty of peace. And if the king could forget the good offices of the duke done unto him aforetime; yet he knew well, he would in his wisdom consider of the future, how much it imported his own safety and reputation, both in foreign parts, and with his own people, not to suffer Britain (the old confederates of England) to be swallowed up by France, and so many good ports and strong towns upon the coast, be in the command of so potent a neighbour king, and so ancient an enemy. And therefore humbly desired the king to think of this business as his own; and therewith broke off, and denied any farther conference for treaty.

Urswick returned first to the French king, and related to him what had passed. Who finding things to fort to his desire, took hold of them, and said; that the ambassador might perceive now, that which he for his part partly imagined before. That considering in what hands the duke of Britain was, there would be no peace, but by a mix'd treaty of force and persuasion: and therefore he would go on with the one, and desired the king not to defist from the other. But for his own part, he did faithfully promise to be still in the king's power, to rule him in the matter of peace. This was accordingly represented unto the king by Urswick at his return, and in such a fashion, as if the treaty was in no sort desperate, but rather stayed for a better hour, till the hammer had wrought, and beat the party of Britain more pliant. Whereupon there passed continually packets and dispatches between the two kings, from the one out of desire, and from the other out of dissimulation, about the negotiation of peace. The French king mean while invaded Britain with great forces, and distrest the city of Nantz with a straight siege, and (as one, who though he had no great judgment, yet had that, that he could dissimble home) the more he did urge the prosecution of the war, the more he did at the same time, urge the solicitation of the peace. Infomuch as during the siege of Nantz, after many letters and particular meffages, the better to maintain his dissimulation, and to refresh the treaty; he sent Bernard D'Aubigney (a person of good quality) to the king, earnestly to desire him, to make an end of the business howsoever.

The king was no less ready to revive and quicken the treaty; and thereupon sent three commissioners, the abbot of Abingdon, Sir Richard Tunstal,
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

At this time the lord Woodvil(e (uncle to the queen) a valiant gentleman, and desirous of honour, sued to the king that he might raise some power of volunteers under-hand, and without licence or passport, (wherein the king might any ways appear) go to the aid of the duke of Britain. The king denied his request, (or at least seemed so to do) and laid strict commandment upon him, that he should not stir, for that the king thought his honour would suffer therein, during a treaty, to better a party. Nevertheless this lord (either being unruly, or out of conceit that the king would not inwardly dislike that, which he would not openly avow) failed secretly over into the isle of Wight, whereof he was governour, and levied a fair troop of four hundred men, and with them passed over into Britain, and joined himself with the duke’s forces. The news thereof, when it came to the French court, put divers young bloods into such a fury, as the English embassadors were not without peril to be outraged. But the French king, both to preserve the privilege of embassadors, and being conscious to himself, that in the business of peace, he himself was the greater disturber of the two, forbade all injuries of fact or word, against their persons or followers. And presently came an agent from the king, to purge himself touching the lord Woodville’s going over; using for a principal argument, to demonstrate that it was without his privity, for that the troops were so small, as neither had the face of a succour by authority, nor could much advance the Britain affairs. To which message, although the French king gave no full credit, yet he made fair weather with the king, and seemed satisfied. Soon after the English embassadors returned, having two of them been likewise with the duke of Britain, and found things in no other terms than they were before. Upon their return, they informed the king of the state of the affairs; and how far the French king was from any true meaning of peace; and therefore he was now to advise of some other course: Neither was the king himself led all this while with credulity merely, as was generally supposed: but his error was not so much facility of belief, as an ill measuring of the forces of the other party.

For (as was partly touched before) the king had cast the business thus with himself. He took it for granted in his own judgment, that the war of Britain, in respect of the strength of the towns, and of the party, could not speedily come to a period. For he conceived, that the councils of a war, that was undertaken by the French king, then childless, against an heir apparent of France, would be very faint and slow. And besides, that it was not possible, but that the state of France should be embroiled with some troubles and alterations in favour of the duke of Orleans. He conceived likewise, that Maximilian, king of the Romans, was a prince war-like and potent; who (he made account) would give succours to the Britains roundly. So then judging it would be a work of time, he laid his plot, how he might best make use of that time, for his own affairs. Wherein first he thought to make his vantage upon his parliament; knowing that they being affectionate unto the quarrel of Britain, would give treaure largely: Which treaure, as a noise of war might draw forth, to a peace succeeding might coffer up. And because he knew his people were hot upon the business, he chose rather to seem to be deceived, and lulled asleep by the French, than to be backward in himself; considering his subjects were not so fully capable of the reasons of state, which made him hold back. Wherefore
fore to all these purposes he saw no other expedient, than to set and keep
on foot a continual treaty of peace, laying it down, and taking it up again,
as the occurrence required. Besides, he had in consideration the point of
honour, in bearing the blessed person of a pacificator. He thought likewise
to make use of the envy that the French king met with, by occasion of this
war of Britain, in strengthening himself with new alliances; as namely,
that of Ferdinand of Spain, with whom he had ever a content even in na-
ture and customs; and likewise with Maximilian, who was particularly in-
terested. So that in substance he promised himself money, honour, friends,
and peace in the end. But those things were too fine to be fortunate, and
succeed in all parts; for that great affairs are commonly too rough and
stubborn to be wrought upon by the finer edges, or points of wit. The king
was likewise deceived in his two main grounds.

For although he had reason to conceive that the council of France would be wary to put the king into
a war against the heir apparent of France; yet he did not consider that
Charles was not guided by any of the principal of the blood or nobility, but
by mean men, who would make it their master-piece of credit and favour,
to give venturous councils, which no great or wise man durst, or would,
And for Maximilian, he was thought then a greater matter than he was;
his unstable and neccessitous courses being not then known.

After consultation with the embassadors, who brought him no other
news than he expected before, (though he would not seem to know it till
then,) he presently summoned his parliament, and in open parliament pro-
pounded the cause of Britain to both houses, by his chancellor Morton
archbishop of Canterbury, who spoke to this effect.

My lords and masters, the king's grace, our sovereign lord, hath com-
manded me to declare unto you the causes that have moved him at this
time to summon this his parliament; which I shall do in few words, cra-
ving pardon of his grace, and you all, if I perform it not as I would.

His grace doth first of all let you know, that he retaineth in thankful
memory the love and loyalty shewed to him by you, at your last meeting, in
establishment of his royalty; freeing and discharging of his partakers, and
confiscation of his traitors and rebels; more than which could not come
from subjects to their sovereign, in one action. This he taketh so well at
your hands, as he hath made it a resolution to himself, to communicate with
so loving and well approved subjects, in all affairs that are of publick nature,
at home and abroad.

Two therefore are the causes of your present assembling: the one, a fo-
 reign busines; the other, matter of government at home.

The French king (as no doubt ye have heard) maketh at this present
hot war upon the duke of Britain. His army is now before Nantz, and
holdeth it straitly besieged, being the principal city (if not in ceremony and
preeminence, yet in strength and wealth) of that duchy. Ye may guess
at his hopes, by his attempting of the hardest part of the war first. The
cause of this war he knoweth best. He allegeth the entertaining and suc-
couring of the duke of Orleans, and some other French lords, whom the
king taketh for his enemies. Others divine of other matters. Both parts
have, by their embassadors, divers times prayed the king's aids: the French
king's aids, or neutrality; the Britains aids simply; for so their case require-
their. The king, as a Christiant prince, and blest son of the holy church,
hath offered himself as a mediator, to treat of peace between them. The

French
French king yielded to treat, but will not stay the prosecution of the war. The Britains, that desire peace most, harken to it least; not upon confidence or firmness, but upon distrust of true meaning, seeing the war goes on. So as the king, after as much pains and care to effect a peace, as ever he took in any business, not being able to remove the prosecution on the one side, nor the distrust on the other, caused by that prosecution, hath let fall the treaty; not repenting of it, but despairing of it now, as not likely to succeed. Therefore by this narrative you now understand the state of the question, whereupon the king prayeth your advice; which is no other, but whether he shall enter into an auxiliary and defensive war for the Britains against France?

And the better to open your understandings in this affair, the king hath commanded me to say somewhat to you from him, of the persons that do intervene in this business; and somewhat of the consequence thereof, as it hath relation to this kingdom, and somewhat of the example of it in general: making nevertheless no conclusion or judgment of any point, until his grace hath received your faithful and politic advice.

First, for the king our sovereign himself, who is the principal person you are to eye in this business; his grace doth profess, that he truly and constantly desireth to reign in peace. But his grace faith, he will neither buy peace with dishonour, nor take it up at interest of danger to ensue; but shall think it a good change, if it please God to change the inward troubles and seditions, wherewith he hath been hitherto exercised, into an honourable foreign war. And for the other two persons in this action, the French king, and the duke of Britain, his grace doth declare unto you, that they be the men unto whom he is of all other friends and allies most bounden: the one having held over him his hand of protection from the tyrant; the other having reach'd forth unto him his hand of help, for the recovery of his kingdom. So that his affection toward them in his natural person, is upon equal terms. And whereas you may have heard, that his grace was enforced to fly out of Britain into France, for doubts of being betrayed; his grace would not in any sort have that reflect upon the duke of Britain, in defacement of his former benefits; for that he is throughly informed, that it was but the practice of some corrupt persons about him, during the time of his sickness, altogether without his consent or privity.

But howsoever these things do interest his grace in his particular; yet he knoweth well, that the higher bond that tyeth him to procure by all means the safety and welfare of his loving subjects, doth disinterest him of these obligations of gratitude, otherwise than thus; that if his grace be forced to make a war, he do it without passion or ambition.

For the consequence of this action towards this kingdom, it is much as the French king's intention is. For if it be no more, but to range his subjects to reason, who bear themselves stout upon the strength of the duke of Britain, it is nothing to us. But if it be in the French king's purpose, or if it should not be in his purpose, yet if it shall follow all one, as if it were fought, that the French king shall make a province of Britain, and join it to the crown of France: then it is worthy the consideration, how this may import England, as well in the increasement of the greatness of France, by the addition of such a country, that stretcheth his boughs unto our seas, as in depriving this nation, and leaving it naked of so firm and assured confederates, as the Britains have always been. For then it will come to pass, that whereas not long since this realm was mighty upon the continent, first
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

in territory, and after in alliance, in respect of Burgundy and Britain, which were confederates indeed, but dependent confederates; now the one being already cast, partly into the greatness of France, and partly into that of Auvernia, the other is like wholly to be cast into the greatness of France, and this island shall remain confined in effect within the salt waters, and girt about with the coast countries of two mighty monarchs.

For the example, it refeth likewise upon the same question, upon the French king's intent. For if Britain be carried and swallowed up by France, as the world abroad (apt to impute and construe the actions of princes to ambition) conceive it will; then it is an example very dangerous and universal, that the lesser neighbour estate should be devoured of the greater. For this may be the case of Scotland towards England; of Portugal towards Spain; of the smaller estates of Italy towards the greater; and of Germany; or as if some of you of the commons, might not live and dwell safely besides some of these great lords. And the bringing in of this example will be chiefly laid to the king's charge, as to him that was most interested, and most able to forbid it. But then on the other side, there is so fair a pretext on the French king's part, (and yet pretext is never wanting to power,) in regard the danger imminent to his own estate is such, as may make this enterprise seem rather a work of necessity than of ambition, as doth in reason correct the danger of the example. For that the example of that which is done in a man's own defence, cannot be dangerous; because it is in another's power to avoid it. But in all this business, the king remits himself to your grave and mature advice, whereupon he purpoeth to rely.

This was the effect of the lord chancellor's speech touching the cause of Britain; for the king had commanded him to carry it so, as to effect the parliament towards the business; but without engaging the king in any express declaration.

The chancellor went on:

For that which may concern the government at home, the king hath commanded me to say unto you; that he thinketh there was never any king (for the small time that he hath reigned) had greater and juster cause of the two contrary passions of joy and sorrow, than his grace hath. Joy, in respect of the rare and visible favours of Almighty God, in girding the imperial sword upon his side, and assisting the same his sword against all his enemies; and likewise in blessing him with so many good and loving servants and subjechts, which have never failed to give him faithful council, ready obedience, and courageous defence. Sorrow, for that it hath not pleased God to suffer him to sheath his sword, (as he greatly desired, otherwise than for administration of justice) but that he hath been forced to draw it so oft, to cut off traitorous, and disloyal subjechts, whom (it seems) God hath left (a few amongst many good) as the Canaanites amongst the people of Israel, to be thorns in their sides, to tempt and try them; though the end hath been always, (God's name be blessed therefore) that the destruction hath fallen upon their own heads.

Wherefore his grace faith; that he seeth that it is not the blood spilt in the field that will save the blood in the city; nor the marshal's sword that will fet this kingdom in perfect peace: but that the true way is, to stop the seeds of sedition and rebellion in their beginnings; and for that purpose
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

Purpofe to devife, confirm and quicken good and wholesome laws againft riots, and unlawful assemblies of people, and all combinations and confederacies of them, by liveries, tokens, and other badges of factious dependence; that the peace of the land may by these ordinances, as by bars of iron, be soundly bound in and strengthened, and all force both in court, country, and private houses, be suppreft. The care hereof, which so much concerneth your selves, and which the nature of the times doth instantly call for, his grace commends to your wifdoms.

And because it is the king's desire, that this peace, wherein he hopeth to govern and maintain you, do not bear only unto you leaves, for you to fit under the shade of them in safety; but also should bear you fruit of riches, wealth and plenty: Therefore his grace prays you to take into consideration matter of trade, as also the manufactures of the kingdom, and to repref the baflard and barren employment of moneys to uiury and unlawful exchanges; that they may be (as their natural ufe is) turned upon commerce, and lawful and royal trading. And likewise, that our people be fet on work in arts and handicrafts; that the realm may refi of it elf; that idlenefs be avoided, and the draining out of our treafure for foreign manufactures, stopped. But you are not to reft here only, but to provide farther, that whatsoever merchandize fhall be brought in from beyond the feas, may be employed upon the commodities of this land; whereby the kingdom's flock of treafure may be fure to be kept from being diminished, by any over-trading of the foreigner.

And lafly, because the king is well aflured, that you would not have him poor, that wishes you rich; he doubteth not but that you will have care, as well to maintain his revenues of cuftoms, and all other natures, as alfo to supply him with your loving aids, if the cafe fhall fo require. The rather, for that you know the king is a good husband, and but a steward in effeCt for the publick; and that what comes from you, is but as moisture drawn from the earth, which gathers into a cloud, and falls back upon the earth again. And you know well, how the kingdoms about you grow more and more in greatness, and the times are stirring; and therefore not fit to find the king with an empty purse. More I have not to say to you; and wish, that what hath been laid, had been better expref'sd: but that your wifdoms and good affections will supply. God blefs your doings.

It was no hard matter to dispose and affeft the parliament in this business; as well in refeCt of the emulation between the nations, and the envy at the late growth of the French monarchy; as in regard of the danger touffer the French to make their approaches upon England, by obtaining a goodly maritime province, full of fea-towns, and havens, that might do mischief to the English, either by invasion, or by interruption of traffick. The parliament was alfo moved with the point of oppreffion; for although the French seemed to speake reafon, yet arguments are ever with multitudes too weak for fufpicions. Wherefore they did advise the king, roundly to embrace the Britains quarrel, and to fend them speedy aids; and with much alacrity and forwardnes granted to the king a great rate of Subfdy, in contemplation of these aids. But the king, both to keep a decency towards the French king, to whom he profef himself to be obliged, and indeed deſirous rather to shew war, than to make it; fend new felemn embaffadors to intimate unto him the decree of his estates, and to iterate his motion, that the French would defift from hostility; or if war must follow, to defire
him to take it in good part, if at the motion of his people, who were sensible of the cause of the Britains as their ancient friends and confedrates, he did send them succours; with protestation nevertheless, that to save all treaties and laws of friendship, he had limited his forces to proceed in aid of the Britains, but in no wise to war upon the French, otherwise than as they maintained the possession of Britain. But before this formal embassage arrived, the party of the duke had received a great blow, and grew to manifest declination. For near the town of St. Alban in Britain, a battle had been given, where the Britains were overthrown, and the duke of Orleans, and the prince of Orange taken prisoners, there being slain on the Britains part six thousand men, and amongst them the lord Woodside, and almost all his soldiers, valiantly fighting. And of the French part, one thousand two hundred, with their leader James Galeot a great commander.

When the news of this battle came over into England, it was time for the king (who now had no subsistence to continue farther treaty, and saw before his eyes that Britain went so speedily for lost, contrary to his hopes; knowing also that with his people and foreigners both, he sustained no small envy and disreputation for his former delays) to dispatch with all possible speed his succours into Britain, which he did under the conduct of Robert lord Brook, to the number of eight thousand choice men, and well armed; who having a fair wind, in few hours landed in Britain, and joined themselves forthwith to those British forces that remained after the defeat, and marched straight on to find the enemy, and encamped safely by them. The French wisely husbanding the possession of a victory, and well acquainted with the courage of the English, especially when they are fresh, kept themselves within their trenches, being strongly lodged, and resolved not to give battle. But meantime, to harass and weary the English, they did upon all advantages set upon them with their light horse; wherein nevertheless they received commonly loss, especially by means of the English archers.

But upon these achievements Francis duke of Britain deceased; an accident that the king might easily have foreseen, and ought to have reckoned upon and provided for, but that the point of reputation, when news first came of the battle lost (that somewhat must be done) did overbear the reason of war.

After the duke's decease, the principal persons of Britain, partly bought, partly through faction, put all things into confusion; so as the English not finding head or body with whom to join their forces, and being in jealousy of friends, as well as in danger of enemies, and the winter begun, returned home five months after their landing. So the battle of St. Alban, the death of the duke, and the retire of the English succours, were (after some time) the causes of the loss of that duchy; which action some accounted as a blench of the king's judgment, but most but as the misfortune of his times.

But howsoever the temporary fruit of the parliament, in their aid and advice given for Britain, took not, nor prospered not; yet the lasting fruit of parliament, which is good and wholesome laws, did prosper, and doth yet continue to this day. For according to the lord chancellor's admonition, there were that parliament divers excellent laws ordained, concerning the points which the king recommended. Therefore, the authority of the star-chamber, which before subsisted by the ancient common laws of the realm, was confirmed in certain cases by act of
of parliament. This court is one of the fageft and nobleft institutions of this kingdom. For in the distribution of courts of ordinary justice, (besides the high court of parliament) in which distribution the king's-bench holdeth the pleas of the crown, the common-pleas pleas civil, the exchequer pleas concerning the king's revenue, and the chancery the Pretorian power for mitigating the rigour of law, in case of extremity, by the conscience of a good man; there was nevertheless always reserved a high and preeminent power to the king's counsel, in cases that might in example or consequence concern the state of the common-wealth; which if they were criminal, the council used to sit in the chamber called the star-chamber; if civil, in the white-chamber, or white-hall. And as the chancery had the Pretorian power for equity; so the star-chamber had the Censorian power for offences under the degree of capital. This court of star-chamber is compounded of good elements, for it consisteth of four kinds of persons, counsellors, peers, prelates, and chief judges. It discerneth also principally of four kinds of causes, forces, frauds, crimes various of stellionate, and the inchoations or middle acts towards crimes capital or heinous, not actually committed or perpetrated. But that which was principally aimed at by this act was force, and the two chief supports of force, combination of multitudes, and maintenance or headship of great persons.

From the general peace of the country, the king's care went on to the peace of the king's house, and the security of his great officers and counsellors. But this law was somewhat of a strange composition and temper. That if any of the king's servants under the degree of a lord, do conspire the death of any of the king's council, or lord of the realm, it is made capital. This law was thought to be procured by the lord chancellor, who being a stern and haughty man, and finding he had some mortal enemies in court, provided for his own safety; drowning the envy of it in a general law, by communicating the privilege with all other counsellors and peers, and yet not daring to extend it farther than to the king's servants in check-roll, left it should have been too harsh to the gentlemen, and other commons of the kingdom; who might have thought their ancient liberty, and the clemency of the laws of England invaded, if the will in any case of felony should be made the deed. And yet the reason which the act yieldeth, (that is to say, that he that conspireth the death of counsellors, may be thought indirectly, and by a mean, to conspire the death of the king himself) is indifferent to all subjects, as well as to servants in court. But it seemeth this sufficed to serve the lord chancellor's turn at this time. But yet he lived to need a general law, for that he grew afterwards as odious to the country, as he was then to the court.

From the peace of the king's house, the king's care extended to the peace of private houses and families. For there was an excellent moral law moulded thus; the taking and carrying away women forcibly, and against their will, (except female-wards and bond-women) was made capital. The parliament wisely and justly conceiving, that the obtaining of women by force into possession, (howsoever afterwards assent might follow by allurements) was but a rape drawn forth in length, because the seduction drew on all the rest.

There was made also another law for peace in general, and repressing of murders and manslaughter, and was in amendment of the common laws of the realm; being this: that whereas by the common law the king's suit in case of homicide, did expect the year and the day, allowed to the party's
party's suit by way of appeal; and that it was found by experience, that
the party was many times compounded with, and many times wearied
with the suit, so that in the end such suit was let fall, and by that time the mat-
ter was in a manner forgotten, and thereby prosecution at the king's suit by
indictment (which is ever best, flagrante crimine) neglected; it was ordain-
ed, that the suit by indictment might be taken as well at any time within
the year and the day, as after; not prejudicing nevertheless the party's
suit.

The king began also then, as well in wisdom as in justice, to pare a little
the privilege of clergy, ordaining, that clerks convict should be burned in
the hand; both because they might taste of some corporal punishment, and
that they might carry a brand of infamy. But for this good act's sake, the
king himself was after branded by Perkin's proclamation, for an execrable
breaker of the rites of holy church.

Another law was made for the better peace of the county; by which
law the king's officers and farmers were to forfeit their places and holds, in
case of unlawful retainer, or partaking in riots and unlawful assemblies.

These were the laws that were made for repressing of force, which those
times did chiefly require; and were so prudently framed, as they are found
fit for all succeeding times, and so continue to this day.

There were also made good and politic laws that parliament, against
usury, which is the bastard use of money; and against unlawful chievances
and exchanges, which is bastard usury; and also for the security of the
king's customs; and for the employment of the procedures of foreign com-
modities, brought in by merchant-strangers upon the native commodities
of the realm; together with some other laws of less importance.

But howsoever the laws made in that parliament did bear good and
wholesome fruit; yet the subsidy granted at the same time, bare a fruit that
proved harsh and bitter. All was inned at last into the king's barn, but it
was after a storm. For when the commissioners enter'd into the taxation of
the subsidy in Yorkshire, and the bishoprick of Durham; the people upon
a sudden grew into great mutiny, and said openly, that they had endured of
late years a thousand miseries, and neither could nor would pay the subsidy.
This (no doubt) proceeded not simply of any present necessity, but much
by reason of the old humour of those countries, where the memory of king
Richard was so strong, that it lay like lees in the bottom of men's
hearts; and if the vessel was but stirred, it would come up. And (no doubt) it was
partly also by the instigation of some factious male-contents, that bare prin-
cipal stroke amongst them. Hereupon the commissioners being somewhat
alarmed, deferred the matter unto the earl of Northumberland, who was
the principal man of authority in those parts. The earl forthwith wrote
unto the court, signifying to the king plainly enough in what flame he
found the people in those countries, and praying the king's direction.
The king wrote back peremptorily, that he would not have one penny abated, of
that which had been granted to him by parliament; both because it might
encourage other countries, to pray the like release or mitigation; and chief-
ly, because he would never endure that the base multitude should frustrate
the authority of the parliament, wherein their votes and consents were con-
cluded. Upon this dispatch from court, the earl assembled the principal
justices and freeholders of the country; and speaking to them in that im-
persious language, wherein the king had written to him, which needed not
(fave that an harsh business was unfortunately fallen into the hands of a
harsh
harsh man) did not only irritate the people, but make them conceive, by the stoutheartedness and haughtiness of delivery of the king's errand, that himself was the author or principal persuader of that council: whereupon the meaner sort routed together, and suddenly affailing the earl in his house, slew him, and divers of his servants. And rested not there, but creating for their leader Sir John Egremont, a factious person, and one that had of a long time born an ill talent towards the king; and being animated also by a base fellow, called John a Chamber, a very boute feu, who bore much sway amongst the vulgar and popular, enter'd into open rebellion; and gave out in flat terms, that they would go against king Henry, and fight with him for the maintenance of their liberties.

When the king was advertized of this new insurrection, (being almost a fever, that took him every year;) after his manner, little troubled therewith, he sent Thomas earl of Surrey (whom he had a little before not only released out of the tower, and pardoned, but also received to special favour) with a competent power against the rebels, who fought with the principal band of them, and defeated them, and took alive John a Chamber, their firebrand. As for Sir John Egremont, he fled into Flanders to the lady Margaret of Burgundy, whose palace was the sanctuary and receptacle of all traitors against the king. John a Chamber was executed at York in great state; for he was hanged upon a gibbet raised a stage higher in the midst of a square gallows, as a traitor paramount; and a number of his men that were his chief complices, were hanged upon the lower story round about him; and the rest were generally pardoned. Neither did the king himself omit his custom, to be first or second in all his war-like exploits, making good his word, which was usual with him when he heard of rebels, that he desisted but to see them. For immediately after he had sent down the earl of Surrey, he marched towards them himself in person. And although in his journey he heard news of the victory, yet he went on as far as York, to pacify and settle those Countries: and that done, returned to London, leaving the earl of Surrey for his lieutenant in the northern parts, and Sir Richard Tunstal for his principal commissioner, to levy the subsidy, whereof he did not remit a denier.

About the same time that the king lost so good a servant as the earl of Northumberland, he lost likewise a faithful friend and ally of James the third, king of Scotland, by a miserable disaster. For this unfortunate prince, after a long fmother of discontent, and hatred of many of his nobility and people, breaking forth at times into seditions and alterations of court, was at last disstrified by them, having taken arms, and surprized the person of prince James his son, partly by force, partly by threats, that they would otherwise deliver up the kingdom to the king of England, to shadow their rebellion, and to be the titular and painted head of those arms. Whereupon the king (finding himself too weak) sought unto king Henry, as also unto the pope, and the king of France, to compose those troubles between him and his subjects. The kings accordingly interpolated their mediation in a round and princely manner: not only by way of request and persuasion, but also by way of protestation and menace; declaring, that they thought it to be the common cause of all kings, if subjects should be suffer'd to give laws unto their sovereign; and that they would accordingly resent it, and revenge it. But the Rebels that had shaken off the greater yoke of obedience, had likewise cast away the lesser yoke of respect. And fury prevailing above fear, made answer; that there was no talking of peace, except the king would
would resign his crown. Whereupon (treaty of accord taking no place) it came to a battle at Bannockburn by Strivelin: in which battle the king transported with wrath and just indignation, inconsiderately fighting and precipitating the charge, before his whole numbers came up to him, was (notwithstanding the contrary express and strict commandment of the prince his son) slain in the pursuit, being fled to a mill, situate in the field, where the battle was fought.

As for the pope's embassy, which was sent by Adrian de Castelio an Italian legate, (and perhaps as those times were, might have prevailed more) it came too late for the embassy, but not for the embassador. For passing through England, and being honourably entertained, and received of king Henry, (who ever applied himself with much respect to the see of Rome,) he fell into great grace with the king, and great familiarity and friendship with Morton the chancellor: insomuch as the king taking a liking to him, and finding him to his mind, preferred him to the bishoprick of Hereford, and afterwards to that of Bath and Wells, and employed him in many of his affairs of state, that had relation to Rome. He was a man of great learning, wisdom, and dexterity in business of state; and having not long after ascended to the degree of cardinal, paid the king large tribute of his gratitude, in diligent and judicious advertisement of the occurrences of Italy. Nevertheless in the end of his time, he was partaker of the conspiracy, which cardinal Alphonso Petrucci, and some other cardinals, had plotted against the life of pope Leo. And this offence in itself so heinous, was yet in him aggravated by the motive thereof, which was not malice or discontent, but an aspiring mind to the papacy. And in this height of impiety there wanted not an intermixture of levity and folly; for that (as was generally believed) he was animated to expect the papacy, by a fatal mockery, the prediction of a south-fayer, which was, that one should succeed pope Leo, whose name should be Adrian, an aged man of mean birth, and of great learning and wisdom. By which character and figure he took himself to be described, though it were fulfilled of Adrian the Fleming, son of a Dutch brewer, cardinal of Tortoja, and preceptor unto Charles the fifth; the same that not changing his christian-name, was afterwards called Adrian the sixth.

But these things happened in the year following, which was the fifth of this king. But in the end of the fourth year the king had called again his parliament, not as it seemeth for any particular occasion of state: But the former parliament being ended somewhat suddenly, in regard of the preparation for Britain, the king thought he had not remunerated his people sufficiently with good laws, which evermore was his retribution for treature. And finding by the insurrection in the north, there was discontentment abroad, in respect of the subsidy, he thought it good to give his subjects yet farther contentment and comfort in that kind. Certainly his times for good commonwealths laws did excel. So as he may justly be celebrated for the best law-giver to this nation; after king Edward the first: for his laws (who so marks them well) are deep, and not vulgar; not made upon the spur of a particular occasion for the present, but out of providence of the future, to make the estate of his people still more and more happy; after the manner of the legislators in ancient and heroical times.

First therefore he made a law, suitable to his own acts and times: for as himself had in his person and marriage made a final concord, in the great suit and title for the crown; so by this law he settled the like peace and quiet in the private possessions of the subjects: ordaining, that if these thenceforth
HISTORY OF KING HENRY VII.

forth should be final, to conclude all strangers rights; and that upon fines levied, and solemnly proclaimed, the subject should have his time of watch for five years after his title accrued; which if he forepassed, his right should be bound for ever after; with some exception nevertheless of minors, married women, and such incompetent persons.

This statute did in effect but restore an ancient statute of the realm, which was itself also made but in affirmance of the common law. The alteration had been by a statute, commonly called the statute of non-claim, made in the time of Edward the third. And surely this law was a kind of prognostick of the good peace, which since his time hath (for the most part) continued in this kingdom until this day: for statutes of non-claim are fit for times of war, when mens heads are troubled, that they cannot intend their estate; but statutes, that quiet possessions, are fittest for times of peace, to extinguish suits and contentions, which is one of the banes of peace.

Another statute was made of singular policy, for the population apparently, and (if it be thoroughly considered) for the soldiery, and military forces of the realm.

Enclosures at that time began to be more frequent, whereby arable land (which could not be manured without people and families) was turned into pasture, which was easily rid by a few herdsmen, and tenances for years, lives, and at will (whereupon much of the yeomanry lived) were turned into demesnes. This bred a decay of people, and (by consequence) a decay of towns, churches, tithes, and the like. The king likewise knew full well, and in no wise forgot, that there ensued withal upon this a decay and diminution of subsidies and taxes; for the more gentlemen, ever the lower books of subsidies. In remedying of this inconvenience, the king’s wisdom was admirable, and the parliament’s at that time. Enclosures they would not forbid, for that had been to forbid the improvement of the patrimonny of the kingdom; nor tillage they would not compel, for that was to strive with nature and utility: but they took a course to take away depopulating enclosures, and depopulating pasturage, and yet not by that name, or by any imperious express prohibition, but by consequence. The ordinance was, that all houses of husbandry, that were used with twenty acres of ground and upwards, should be maintained and kept up for ever; together with a competent proportion of land to be used and occupied with them; and in no wise to be severed from them, as by another statute made afterwards in his successor’s time, was more fully declared: this upon forfeiture to be taken, not by way of popular action, but by seizure of the land it self, by the king and lords of the fee, as to half the profits, till the houses and land were restored. By this means the houses being kept up, did of necessity enforce a dweller; and the proportion of land for occupation being kept up, did of necessity enforce that dweller not to be a beggar or cottager, but a man of some subsance, that might keep hinds and servants, and set the plough on going. This did wonderfully concern the might and mannerhood of the kingdom, to have farms as it were of a standard, sufficient to maintain an able body out of penury, and did in effect amortize a great part of the lands of the kingdom unto the hold and occupation of the yeomanry or middle people, of a condition between gentlemen and cottagers or peasants. Now, how much this did advance the military power of the kingdom, is apparent by the true principles of war, and the examples of other kingdoms. For it hath been held by the general opinion of men of best judgment
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

ment in the wars, (howsoever some few have varied, and that it may receive some distinction of cafe,) that the principal strength of an army consists in the infantry or foot. And to make good infantry, it requireth men bred, not in a servile or indigent fashion, but in some free and plentiful manner. Therefore if a state run most to noblemen and gentlemen, and that the husbandmen and ploughmen be but as their workfolks and labourers, or else mere cottagers, (which are but housed beggars) you may have a good cavalry, but never good able bands of foot; like to coppice woods, that if you leave in them staddles too thick, they will run to bushes and briars, and have little clean under-wood. And this is to be seen in France and Italy, and some other parts abroad, where in effect all is noble or peafantry.

I speak of people out of towns, and no middle people; and therefore no good forces of foot: insomuch as they are enforced to employ mercenary bands of Switzers, and the like, for their battalions of foot. Whereby also it comes to pass, that those nations have much people, and few soldiers. Whereas the king saw that contrariwise it would follow, that England, though much les in territory, yet should have infinitely more soldiers of their native forces, than those other nations have. Thus did the king secretly sowe Hydras teeth; whereupon (according to the poet's fiction) should rise up armed men for the service of this kingdom.

The king also (having care to make his realm potent, as well by sea as by land) for the better maintenance of the navy, ordained, that wines and woads from the parts of Gascoign and Languedock, should not be brought but in English bottoms; bowing the ancient policy of this estate, from consideration of plenty to consideration of power. For that almost all the ancient statutes incite by all means merchant-strangers, to bring in all sorts of commodities; having for end cheapness, and not looking to the point of state concerning the naval power.

The king also made a statute in that parliament, monitory and minatory, towards justices of peace, that they should duly execute their office, inviting complaints against them, first to their fellow-justices, then to the justices of assize, then to the king or chancellor; and that a proclamation which he had published of that tenor, should be read in open sessions four times a year, to keep them awake. Meaning also to have his laws executed, and thereby to reap either obedience or forfeitures; (wherein towards his latter times he did decline too much to the left hand:) he did .

He made also laws for the correction of the mint, and counterfeiting of foreign coin current. And that no payment in gold should be made to any merchant stranger, the better to keep treasure within the realm, for that gold was the metal that lay in the least room.

He made also statutes for the maintenance of drapery, and the keeping of wool within the realm; and not only so, but for stinting and limiting the prices of cloth, one for the finer, and another for the coarser sort. Which I note, both because it was a rare thing to set prices by statute, especially upon our home commodities; and because of the wise model of this act, not prescribing prices, but stinting them not to exceed a rate; that the clothier might drape accordingly as he might afford.
Divers other good statutes were made that parliament, but these were the principal. And here I do desire those into whose hands this work shall fall, that they do take in good part my long insisting upon the laws that were made in this king’s reign. Whereof I have these reasons; both because it was the preeminent virtue and merit of this king, to whose memory I do honour; and because it hath some correspondence to my person; but chiefly, because (in my judgment) it is some defect even in the best writers of history, that they do not often enough summarily deliver and set down the most memorable laws that passed in the times whereof they writ, being indeed the principal acts of peace. For though they may be had in original books of law themselves; yet that informeth not the judgment of kings and counsellors, and persons of estate, so well as to see them described, and entered in the table and portraiture of the times.

About the same time, the king had a loan from the city of four thousand pounds; which was double to that they lent before, and was duly and orderly paid back at the day, as the former likewise had been: The king ever choosing rather to borrow too soon, than to pay too late, and so keeping up his credit.

Neither had the king yet cast off his cares and hopes touching Britain, but thought to master the occasion by policy, though his arms had been unfortunate; and to bereave the French king of the fruit of his victory. The sum of his design was, to encourage Maximilian to go on with his suit, for the marriage of Anne, the heir of Britain, and to aid him to the consummation thereof. But the affairs of Maximilian were at that time in great trouble and combustion, by a rebellion of his subjects in Flanders, especially those of Bruges and Gaunt, whereof the town of Bruges (at such time as Maximilian was there in person) had suddenly armed in tumult, and slain some of his principal officers, and taken himself prisoner, and held him in durance, till they had enforced him and some of his counsellors, to take a solemn oath to pardon all their offences, and never to question and revenge the same in time to come. Nevertheless Frederick the emperor would not suffer this reproach and indignity offered to his son, to pass, but made sharp wars upon Flanders, to reclaim and chastise the rebels. But the lord Ravenstein, a principal person about Maximilian, and one that had taken the oath of abolition with his master, pretending the religion thereof, but indeed upon private ambition, and (as it was thought) instigated and corrupted from France, forsook the emperor and Maximilian his lord, and made himself an head of the popular party, and seized upon the towns of Ipres and Sluice, with both the castles; And forthwith sent to the lord Cordes, governor of Picardy under the French king, to desire aid; and to move him, that he, on the behalf of the French king, would be protector of the united towns, and by force of arms reduce the rest. The lord Cordes was ready to embrace the occasion, which was partly of his own setting, and sent forthwith greater forces, than it had been possible for him to raise on the sudden, if he had not looked for such a summons before in aid of the lord Ravenstein and the Flemings, with instructions to invest the towns between France and Bruges. The French forces besieged a little town called Dixmude, where part of the Flemish forces joined with them. While they lay at this siege, the king of England, upon pretence of the safety of the English pale about Calais, but in truth being loth that Maximilian should become contemptible, and thereby be shaken off by the states of Britain about this marriage, sent over the lord Morley with a thousand men, unto the
the lord D'Aubigny, then deputy of Calice, with secret instructions to aid Maximilian, and to raise the Siege of Dixmude. The lord D'Aubigny (giving it out that all was for the strengthening of the English marches) drew out of the garrisons of Calice, Hammes and Guines, to the number of a thousand men more. So that with the fresh succours that came under the conduct of the lord Morley, they made up to the number of two thousand, or better. Which forces joining with some companies of Almains, put themselves into Dixmude, not perceived by the enemies; and passing through the town with some reinforcement, (from the forces that were in the town) assailed the enemies camp negligently guarded, as being out of fear; where there was a bloody fight, in which the English and their partakers obtained the victory, and flew to the number of eight thousand men, with the loss on the English part of a hundred or thereabouts; amongst whom was the lord Morley. They took also their great ordnance, with much rich spoil, which they carried to Newport; whence the lord D'Aubigny returned to Calice, leaving the hurt men and some other voluntaries in Newport. But the lord Cordes being at Ipswich with a great power of men, thinking to recover the loss and disgrace of the fight at Dixmude, came presently on, and sat down before Newport, and besieged it; and after some days siege, he resolved to try the fortune of an assault. Which he did one day, and succeeded therein so far, that he had taken the principal tower and fort in that city, and planted upon it the French banner. Whence nevertheless they were presently beaten forth by the English, by the help of some fresh succours of archers, arriving by good fortune (at the instant) in the haven of Newport. Whereupon the lord Cordes discouraged, and measuring the new succours (which were small) by the success, (which was great) levied his siege. By this means matters grew more exasperate between the two kings of England and France, for that in the war of Flanders, the auxiliary forces of French and English were much blooded one against another. Which blood rankled the more, by the vain words of the lord Cordes, that declared himself an open enemy of the English, beyond that that appertained to the present service; making it a common by-word of his, that he would be content to lie in hell seven years, so he might win Calice from the English.

The king having thus upheld the Reputation of Maximilian, advised him now to press on his marriage with Britain to a conclusion. Which Maximilian accordingly did, and so far forth prevailed, both with the young lady, and with the principal persons about her, as the marriage was consummated by proxy, with a ceremony at that time in these parts new. For she was not only publicly contracted, but fled as a bride, and solemnly bedded; and after she was laid, there came in Maximilian's embassador with letters of procuration, and in the presence of sundry noble personages, men and women, put his leg (stript naked to the knee) between the espousal sheets; to the end, that that ceremony might be thought to amount to a consummation and actual knowledge. This done, Maximilian (whose property was to leave things then when they were almost come to perfection, and to end them by imagination; like ill archers, that draw not their arrows up to the head; and who might as easily have bedded the lady himself, as to have made a play and disguise of it) thinking now all assured, neglected for a time his farther proceeding, and intended his wars. Mean while the French king (consulting with his divines, and finding that this pretended consummation was rather an invention of court, than any ways valid by the laws of the church) went more really to work, and by secret instruments and
and cunning agents, as well matrons about the young lady as counsellors, first sought to remove the point of religion and honour out of the mind of the lady herself, wherein there was a double labour. For Maximilian was not only contracted unto the lady, but Maximilian's daughter was likewise contracted to king Charles. So as the marriage halted upon both feet, and was not clear on either side. But for the contract with king Charles, the exception lay plain and fair; for that Maximilian's daughter was under years of consent, and so not bound by law, but a power of disagreement left to either part. But for the contract made by Maximilian with the lady herself, they were harder driven: having nothing to allege, but that it was done without the consent of her sovereign lord king Charles, whose ward and client she was, and he to her in place of a father; and therefore it was void and of no force for want of such consent. Which defect (they said) though it would not evacuate a marriage after cohabitation, and actual consummation; yet it was enough to make void a contract. For as for the pretended consummation, they made sport with it, and said: that it was an argument that Maximilian was a widower, and a cold woer, that could content himself to be a bridegroom by deputy, and would not make a little journey to put all out of question. So that the young lady, wrought upon by these reasons, finely insinuated by such as the French king (who spared for no rewards or promises) had made on his side; and allured likewise by the present glory and greatness of king Charles, (being also a young king and a bachelor) and loth to make her country the seat of a long and miserable war; secretly yielded to accept of king Charles. But during this secret treaty with the lady, the better to save it from blases of opposition and interruption, king Charles resorting to his wonted arts, and thinking to carry the marriage as he had carried the wars, by entertaining the king of England in vain belief, sent a solemn embassage by Francis lord of Luxemburgh, Charles Marignian, and Robert Gaguion, general of the order of the bonne-hommes of the Trinity, to treat a peace and league with the king; accoupling it with an article in the nature of a request, that the French king might with the king's good-will (according unto his right of seigniory and tutelage) dispose of the marriage of the young duchess of Britain, as he should think good; offering by a judicial proceeding, to make void the marriage of Maximilian by proxy. Also all this while the better to amuse the world, he did continue in his court and custody the daughter of Maximilian, who formerly had been sent unto him, to be bred and educated in France; not dismissing or renvoying her, but contrariwise professing and giving out strongly, that he meant to proceed with that match. And that for the duchess of Britain, he desired only to preserve his right of seigniory, and to give her in marriage to some such ally as might depend upon him.

When the three commissioners came to the court of England, they delivered their embassage unto the king, who remitted them to his council; where some days after they had audience, and made their proposition by the prior of the Trinity (who though he were third in place, yet was held the best speaker of them) to this effect.

My lords, the king our master, the greatest and mightiest king that reigned in France since Charles the Great, (whose name he beareth) hath nevertheless thought it no disparagement to his greatness at this time to propound a peace; yes, and to pray a peace with the king of England. For which purpose he hath sent us his commissioners, instructed and enabled with full
and ample power to treat and conclude; giving us farther in charge, to open in some other business the secrets of his own intentions. These be indeed the precious love tokens between great kings, to communicate one with another the true state of their affairs, and to pass by nice points of honour, which ought not to give law unto affection. This I do assure your lordships; it is not possible for you to imagine the true and cordial love that the king our master beareth to your sovereign, except you were near him as we are. He useth his name with so great respect; he remembereth their first acquaintance at Paris with so great contentment; nay, he never speaks of him, but that presently he falls into discourse of the miseries of great kings, in that they cannot converse with their equals, but with servants. This affection to your king's person and virtues, God hath put into the heart of our master, no doubt for the good of Christendom, and for purposes yet unknown to us all. For other root it cannot have, since it was the same to the earl of Richmond, that it is now to the king of England. This is therefore the first motive that makes our king to desire peace and league with your sovereign: good affection, and somewhat that he finds in his own heart. This affection is also armed with reason of estate. For our king doth in all candor and frankness of dealing open himself unto you; that having an honourable, yea, and an holy purpose, to make a voyage and war in remote parts, he considereth that it will be of no small effect, in point of reputation to his enterprise, if it be known abroad that he is in good peace with all his neighbour princes, and especially with the king of England, whom for good causes he esteemeth most.

But now (my lords) give me leave to use a few words to remove all scruples and misunderstandings, between your sovereign and ours, concerning some late actions; which if they be not cleared, may perhaps hinder this peace. To the end, that for matters past, neither king may conceive unkindness of other, nor think the other conceiveth unkindness of him. The late actions are two; that of Britain, and that of Flanders. In both which it is true, that the subjects of both kings have encounter'd and stricken, and the ways and inclinations also of the two kings, in respect of their confederates and allies, have fevered.

For that of Britain, the king your sovereign knoweth best what hath passed. It was a war of necessity on our master's part. And though the motives of it were sharp and piquant as could be, yet did he make that war rather with an olive-branch, than a laurel-branch in his hand, more desiring peace than victory. Besides, from time to time he sent (as it were) blank papers to your king, to write the conditions of peace. For though both his honour and safety went upon it, yet he thought neither of them too precious to put into the king of England's hands. Neither doth our king on the other side make any unfriendly interpretation, of your king's sending of succours to the duke of Britain; for the king knoweth well, that many things must be done of kings for satisfaction of their people; and it is not hard to discern what is a king's own. But this matter of Britain is now (by the act of God) ended and passed; and (as the king hopeth) like the way of a ship in the sea, without leaving any impression in either of the kings minds; as he is sure for his part it hath not done in his.

For the action of Flanders: as the former of Britain was a war of necessity, so this was a war of justice; which with a good king is of equal necessity with danger of estate, for else he should leave to be a king. The subjects of Burgundy are subjects in chief to the crown of France, and their
duke the homager and vassal of France. They had wont to be good subjects, howsoever Maximilian hath of late distemper'd them. They fled to the king for justice and deliverance from oppreffion. Justice he could not deny; purchase he did not seek. This was good for Maximilian, if he could have seen it in people mutinied, to arrest fury, and prevent defpair. My lords, it may be this I have said is needless, fave that the king our master is tender in any thing, that may but glance upon the friendliip of England. The amity between the two kings (no doubt) stands entire and inviolate: and that their subjects swords have clashed, it is nothing unto the publick peace of the crowns; it being a thing very usual in auxiliary forces of the beft and faireft confederates, to meet and draw blood in the field. Nay, many times there be aids of the fame nation on both fides, and yet it is not (for all that) a kingdom divided in it felf.

It refeth (my lords) that I impart unto you a matter, that I know your lordships all will much rejoice to hear; as that which importeth the Chriſtan commonweal more, than any action that hath happened of long time. The king our master hath a purpofe and determination, to make war upon the kingdom of Naples; being now in the poſfession of a baftard slip of Ar­ragon, but appertaining unto his majesty, by clear and undoubted right; which if he should not by juft arms feek to recover, he could neither acquit his honour nor answer it to his people. But his noble and chriſtian thoughts refet not here: for his refolution and hope is, to make the reconqueft of Naples, but as a bridge to transport his forces into Graecia; and not to fpare blood or treafure (if it were to the impawning of his crown, and difpeo­ping of France) till either he hath overthrown the empire of the Ottomans, or taken it in his way to paradise. The king knoweth well, that this is a design that could not arise in the mind of any king, that did not steadfastly look up unto God, whose quarrel this is, and from whom cometh both the will and the deed. But yet it is agreeable to the perfon that he beareth (though unworthy) of the thrice Chriſtan king, and the eldeſt fon of the church. Whereunto he is alfo invited by the example (in more ancient time) of king Henry the fourth of England, (the first renowned king of the house of Lancaster; ancestor, though not progenitor to yourking) who had a purpofe towards the end of his time, as you know better, to make an expedition into the Holy­land; and by the example alfo (prefent before his eyes) of that honourable and religious war which the king of Spain now maketh, and hath almoft brought to perfection, for the recovery of the realm of Granada from the Moors. And although this enterprize may feem vaft and unmeafured, for the king to attempt that by his own forces, wherein heretofore a conjunction of moft of the Chriſtian princes hath found work enough; yet his majesty wisely conferereth, that sometimes smaller forces being united under one command, are more effectual in proof, (though not fo promi­fing in opinion and fame,) than much greater forces, variouſly compounded by affocations and leagues, which commonly in a fhort time after their be­ginnings, turn to diffociations and divifions. But, my lords, that which is as a voice from heaven, that calleth the king to this enterprize, is a rent at this time in the house of the Ottomans. I do not fay but there hath been brother againſt brother in that house before, but never any that had refuge to the arms of the Chriſtians, as now hath Gemes, (brother unto Bajazet that reigneth) the far braver man of the two, the other being between a monk and a philofopher, and better read in the Alcoran and Averroes, than able to wield the scepter of fo war-like an empire. This therefore is the king
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

king our master's memorable and heroical resolution for an holy war. And because he carrieth in this the person of a Christian soldier, as well as of a great temporal monarch, he beginneth with humility, and is content for this cause, to beg peace at the hands of other Christian kings. There remaineth only rather a civil request, than any essentiel part of our negotiation, which the king maketh to the king your sovereign. The king (as all the world knoweth) is lord in chief of the duchy of Britain. The marriage of the heir belongeth to him as guardian. This is a private patrimonial right, and no business of estate: yet nevertheless (to run a fair course with your king, whom he desires to make another himself, and to be one and the same thing with him) his request is, that with the king's favour and consent, he may dispose of her in marriage, as he thinketh good, and make void the intruded and pretended marriage of Maximilian, according to justice. This (my lords) is all that I have to say, desiring your pardon for my weakness in the delivery.

Thus did the French embassadors, with great show of their king's affection, and many sugar'd words, seek to addulce all matters between the two kings, having two things for their ends; the one to keep the king quiet till the marriage of Britain was past; and this was but a summer fruit, which they thought was almost ripe, and would be soon gathered. The other was more lasting; and that was to put him into such a temper, as he might be no disturbance or impediment to the voyage for Italy. The lords of the council were silent; and said only, that they knew the embassadors would look for no answer, till they had reported to the king; and so they rose from council. The king could not well tell what to think of the marriage of Britain. He saw plainly: the ambition of the French king was, to impatrimonize himself of the duchy; but he wondered he would bring into his house a litigious marriage, especially considering who was his successor. But weighing one thing with another he gave Britain for lost; but resolved to make his profit of this business of Britain, as a quarrel for war; and that of Naples, as a wrench and mean for peace; being well advertised, how strongly the king was bent upon that action. Having therefore conferred divers times with his council, and keeping himself somewhat close, he gave direction to the chancellor, for a formal answer to the embassadors, and that he did in the presence of his council. And after calling the chancellor to him apart, bid him speak in such language, as was fit for a treaty that was to end in a breach; and gave him also a special caveat, that he should not use any words to discourage the voyage for Italy. Soon after the embassadors were sent for to the council, and the lord chancellor spake to them in this fort:

My lords embassadors, I shall make answer by the king's commandment, unto the eloquent declaration of you my lord prior, in a brief and plain manner. The king forgetteth not his former love and acquaintance with the king your master: but of this there needeth no repetition. For if it be between them as it was, it is well; if there be any alteration, it is not words that will make it up.

For the business of Britain, the king findeth it a little strange, that the French king maketh mention of it as matter of well-deferving at his hand: for that deferving was no more, but to make him his instrument to surprize one of his best confederates. And for the marriage the king would not
not meddle in it, if your master would marry by the book, and not by the sword.

For that of Flanders, if the subjects of Burgundy had appealed to your king as their chief lord, at first by way of supplication, it might have had a show of justice: but it was a new form of process, for subjects to imprison their prince first, and to flay his officers, and then to be complainants. The king faith, that sure he is, when the French king and himself sent to the subjects of Scotland, (that had taken arms against their king) they both spake in another style, and did in princely manner signify their detestation of popular attentates upon the person or authority of princes. But my lords embassadors, the king leaveth these two actions thus: that on the one side, he hath not received any manner of satisfaction from you concerning them; and on the other, that he doth not apprehend them so deeply, as in respect of them, to refuse to treat of peace, if other things may go hand in hand. As for the war of Naples, and the design against the Turk; the king hath commanded me expressly to say, that he doth with all his heart, to his good brother the French king, that his fortunes may succeed, according to his hopes, and honourable intentions. And whencsoever he shall hear that he is prepared for Graecia, as your master is pleased now to say, that he beggeth a peace of the king, so the king will then beg of him a part in that war.

But now my lords embassadors, I am to propound unto you somewhat on the king's part: the king your master hath taught our king what to say and demand. You say (my lord prior) that your king is resolved to recover his right to Naples, wrongfully detained from him. And that if he should not thus do, he could not acquit his honour, nor answer it to his people. Think (my lords) that the king our master faith the same thing over again to you, touching Normandy, Guienne, Anjou, yea, and the kingdom of France itself. I cannot express it better than in your own words. If therefore the French king shall consent, that the king our master's title to France, (at least tribute for the same) be handled in the treaty, the king is content to go on with the rest, otherwise he refuseth to treat.

The embassadors being somewhat abashed with this demand, answered in some heat; that they doubted not, but the king their sovereign's sword would be able to maintain his scepter: and they assured themselves, he neither could nor would yield to any diminution of the crown of France, either in territory or regality: but howsoever they were too great matters for them to speak of, having no commission. It was replied, that the king looked for no other answer from them, but would forthwith send his own embassadors to the French king. There was a question also asked at the table; whether the French king would agree to have the disposing of the marriage of Britain with an exception and exclusion, that he should not marry her himself? To which the embassadors answered; that it was so far out of their king's thoughts, as they had received no instructions touching the same. Thus were the embassadors diffmiffed, all save the prior; and were followed immediately by Thomas earl of Ormond, and Thomas Goldenston prior of Chrift-church in Canterbury, who were presently sent over into France. In the mean space Lionel bishop of Concordia was sent as nuncio from pope Alexander the sixth to both kings, to move a peace between them. For pope Alexander finding himself pent and lock'd up, by a league and association of the principal states of Italy, that he could not make his way for the advancement
advancement of his own house, (which he immoderately thirsted after) was
defirous to trouble the waters in Italy, that he might fish the better; casing
the net, not out of faint Peter's, but out of Borgia's bark. And doubting
left the fears from England might stay the French king's voyage into Italy,
dispatched this bishop, to compose all matters between the two kings, if he
could: who first repaired to the French king, and finding him well inclined,
(as he conceived) took on his journey towards England, and found the Eng­
lis h embassadors at Calais, on their way towards the French king. After
some conference with them, he was in honourable manner transported over
into England, where he had audience of the king. But notwithstanding
he had a good ominous name to have made a peace, nothing followed:
for in the mean time the purpose of the French king to marry the duchess,
could be no longer diffembled. Wherefore the English embassadors (find­
ing how things went) took their leave and returned. And the prior alfo
was warned from hence to depart out of England. Who when he turned
his back (more like a pedant than an embassador) dispersed a bitter libel,
in Latin verse, against the king; unto which the king (though he had no­
thing of a pedant) was yet content to cause an answer to be made in like
verse; and that as speaking in his own person, but in a style of scorn and
sport. About this time also was born the king's second son Henry, who af­
terwards reigned. And soon after followed the solemnization of the mar­
rriage between Charles and Anne duchess of Britain, with whom he received
the duchy of Britain as her dowry, the daughter of Maximilian being a
little before sent home. Which when it came to the ears of Maximilian,
(who would never believe it till it was done, being ever the principal in
deceiving himself, though in this the French king did very handsonly se­
cend it,) in tumbling it over and over in his thoughts, that he should at
one blow (with such a double scorn) be defeated, both of the marriage of
his daughter and his own, (upon both which he had fixed high imagina­
tions,) he lost all patience, and casting off the respects fit to be continued
between great kings, even when their blood is hottest, and most rifen,) fell
to bitter invectives against the person and actions of the French king. And
(by how much he was the less able to do, talking so much the more) spake
all the injuries he could devise of Charles, saying; that he was the most
perfidious man upon the earth, and that he had made a marriage com­
pounded between an advowtry and a rape; which was done (he said) by the
just judgment of God; to the end that (the nullity thereof being so ap­
parent to all the world) the race of so unworthy a person might not reign in
France. And forthwith he sent embassadors as well to the king of Eng­
land, as to the king of Spain, to incite them to war, and to treat a league off­
ensive against France, promising to concur with great forces of his own.
Hereupon the king of England (going nevertheless his own way,) called a
parliament, it being the seventh year of his reign; and the first day of op­
ening thereof (flying under his cloth of state) spake himself unto his
lords and commons, in this manner:

My lords, and you the commons, when I purposed to make a war in
Britain by my lieutenant, I made declaration thereof to you by my chan­
celler. But now that I mean to make a war upon France in person, I will
declare it to you my self. That war was to defend another man's right, but
this is to recover our own; and that ended by accident, but we hope this
shall end in victory.
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

The French king troubles the Christian world: that which he hath is not his own, and yet he seeketh more. He hath invested himself of Britain; he maintaineth the rebels in Flanders; and he threateneth Italy. For our selves, he hath proceeded from diffimulation, to negligence; and from negligence, to contumely. He hath affailed our confederates: he denieth our tribute: in a word, he seeks war: so did not his father, but fought peace at our hands; and so perhaps will he, when good counsel or time shall make him see as much as his father did.

Meanwhile, let us make his ambition our advantage; and let us not stand upon a few crowns of tribute, or acknowledgment, but (by the favour of Almighty God) try our right for the crown of France itself; remembering that there hath been a French king prisoner in England, and a king of England crowned in France. Our confederates are not diminished. Burgundy is in a mightier hand than ever, and never more provoked. Britain cannot help us, but it may hurt them. New acquisitions are more burdens than strength. The malecontents of his own kingdom have not been base, popular, nor titulary impostors, but of an higher nature. The king of Spain (doubt ye not) will join with us, not knowing where the French king's ambition will stay. Our holy father the pope likes no Tramontanes in Italy. But howsoever it be, this matter of confederates, is rather to be thought on, than reckoned on. For God forbid but England should be able to get reafon of France without a second.

At the battles of Creffy, Poitiers, Agencourt, we were of our selves. France hath much people, and few soldiers. They have no stable bands of foot. Some good horse they have; but those are forces which are least fit for a defensive war, where the actions are in the assailant's choice. It was our discords only that lost France; and (by the power of God) it is the good peace which we now enjoy, that will recover it. God hath hitherto blessed my sword. I have in this time that I have reigned, weeded out my bad subjects, and tryed my good. My people and I know one another, which breeds confidence: And if there should be any bad blood left in the kingdom, an honourable foreign war will vent it, or purify it. In this great business, let me have your advice and aid. If any of you were to make his son knight, you might have aid of your tenants by law. This concerns the knighthood and spurs of the kingdom, whereof I am father; and bound not only to seek to maintain it, but to advance it: but for matter of treasure, let it not be taken from the poorest fort, but from those to whom the benefit of the war may redound. France is no wilderness; and I, that profess good husbandry, hope to make the war (after the beginnings) to pay itself. Go together in God's name, and lose no time; for I have called this parliament wholly for this cause.

Thus spake the king; but for all this, though he shewed great forwardness for a war, not only to his parliament and court, but to his privy council likewise, (except the two bishops and a few more;) yet notwithstanding in his secret intentions, he had no purpose to go through with any war upon France. But the truth was, that he did but traffick with that war, to make his return in money. He knew well, that France was now entire and at unity with itself, and never so mighty many years before. He saw by the taste that he had of his forces sent into Britain, that the French knew well enough how to make war with the English, by not putting things to the hazard of a battel, but wearing them by long sieges of towns, and strong V O L. III. K k k fortified
fortified encampings. James the third of Scotland, (his true friend and confederate) gone; and James the fourth (that had succeeded) wholly at the devotion of France, and ill affected towards him. As for the conjunctions of Ferdinando of Spain, and Maximilian, he could make no foundation upon them. For the one had power, and not will; and the other had will, and not power. Besides that, Ferdinando had but newly taken breath from the war with the Moors; and merchandised at this time with France, for the restoring of the counties of Rousillon and Perpignan oppugnated to the French. Neither was he out of fear of the discontent and ill blood within the realm; which having used always to repress and appease in person, he was loth they should find him at a distance beyond sea, and engaged in war. Finding therefore the inconveniences and difficulties in the prosecution of a war, he cast with himself how to compass two things. The one, how by the declaration and inchoation of a war to make his profit. The other, how to come off from the war with saving of his honour. For profit, it was to be made two ways; upon his subjects for the war, and upon his enemies for the peace; like a good merchant, that maketh his gain both upon the commodities exported, and imported back again. For the point of honour, wherein he might suffer for giving over the war; he considered well, that as he could not trust upon the aids of Ferdinando and Maximilian for supports of war; so the impudence of the one, and the double proceeding of the other, lay fair for him for occasions to accept of peace. These things he did wisely foresee, and did as artificially conduct, whereby all things fell into his lap as he desired.

For as for the parliament, it presently took fire, being affectionate (of old) to the war of France; and desirous at first to repair the dishonour they thought the king sustained by the loss of Britain. Therefore they advised the king (with great alacrity) to undertake the war of France. And although the parliament consisted of the first and second nobility (together with principal citizens and townsmen) yet worthily and justly respecting more the people (whose deputies they were) than their own private persons, and finding by the lord chancellor’s speech the king’s inclination that way; they consented that commissioners should go forth for the gathering and levying of a benevolence from the more able sort. This tax (called a benevolence) was devised by Edward the fourth, for which he sustained much envy. It was abolished by Richard the third by act of parliament, to ingratiate himself with the people; and it was now revived by the king, but with consent of parliament, for so it was not in the time of king Edward the fourth. But by this way he raised exceeding great sums. Infomuch as the city of London (in those days) contributed nine thousand pounds and better; and that chiefly levied upon the wealthier sort. There is a tradition of a dilemma, that bishop Morton the chancellor used, to raise up the benevolence to higher rates; and some called it his fork, and some his crotch. For he had couched an article in the instructions to the commissioners who were to levy the benevolence; that if they met with any that were sparing, they should tell them, that they must needs have, because they laid up; and if they were spenders, they must needs have, because it was seen in their port and manner of living. So neither kind came amiss.

This parliament was merely a parliament of war; for it was in substance but a declaration of war against France and Scotland, with some statutes conducing thereunto; as the severe punishing of mort-pays, and keeping back of soldiers wages in captains. The like severity for the departure of
of soldiers without licence; strengthening of the common law in favour of protections, for those that were in the king's service; and the setting the gate open and wide, for men to sell or mortgage their lands without fines for alienation, to furnish themselves with money for the war; and lastly, the voiding of all Scottifh men out of England. There was also a statute for the dispersing of the standard of the exchequer throughout England; thereby to size weights and measures; and two or three more of less importance.

After the Parliament was broken up, (which lasted not long) the king went on with his preparations for the war of France; yet neglected not in the mean time the affairs of Maximilian for the quieting of Flanders, and restoring him to his authority amongst his subjects. For at that time the lord of Ravenstein, being not only a subject rebelled, but a servant revolted, (and so much the more malicious and violent, by the aid of Bruges and Gaunt) had taken the town and both the castles of Sluice; as we said before.

And having (by the commodity of the haven) gotten together certain ships and barks, fell to a kind of piratical trade; robbing and spoiling, and taking prisoners the ships and vessels of all nations that passed along that coast, towards the mart of Antwerp, or into any part of Brabant, Zeeland, or Friesland; being ever well victualled from Picardy, besides the commodity of victuals from Sluice, and the country adjacent, and the avail of his own Prizes. The French assisted him still under-hand; and he likewise (as all men do that have been of both sides) thought himself not safe, except he depended upon a third Person.

There was a small town some two miles from Bruges towards the sea, called Dam; which was a fort and approach to Bruges; and had a relation also to Sluice. This town the king of the Romans had attempted often (not for any worth of the town in itself, but because it might choke Bruges, and cut it off from the sea) and ever failed. But therewith the duke of Saxony came down into Flanders, taking upon him the person of an umpire, to compose things between Maximilian and his subjects; but being (indeed) fast and affured to Maximilian. Upon this pretext of neutrality and treaty, he repaired to Bruges; desiring of the states of Bruges, to enter peaceably into their town, with a retinue of some number of men of arms fit for his estate; being somewhat (as he said) the better to guard him in a country that was up in arms: and bearing them in hand, that he was to communicate with them of divers matters of great importance for their good. Which having obtained of them, he sent his carriages and harbingers before him, to provide his Lodging. So that his men of war entered the city in good array, but in peaceable manner, and he followed. They that went before enquired still for inns and lodgings, as if they would have rested there all night; and so went on till they came to the gate that leadeth directly towards Dam; and they of Bruges only gazed upon them, and gave them passage. The captains and inhabitants of Dam also suspected no harm, from any that passed through Bruges; and discovering forces afar off, supposed they had been some succours that were come from their friends, knowing some dangers towards them. And so perceiving nothing but well till it was too late, suffered them to enter their town. By which kind of flight, rather than stratagem, the town of Dam was taken, and the town of Bruges shrewdly blockt up, whereby they took great discouragement.

Vol. III. K k k 2
The duke of Saxony having won the town of Dam, sent immediately to the king to let him know, that it was Sluice chiefly, and the lord Ravenstein, that kept the rebellion of Flanders in life: and if it pleased the king to besiege it by sea, he also would besiege it by land, and so cut out the core of those wars.

The king willing to uphold the authority of Maximilian, (the better to hold France in awe) and being likewise sued unto by his merchants, for that the seas were much infested by the barks of the lord Ravenstein; sent straightways Sir Edward Poynings, a valiant man, and of good service, with twelve ships, well furnished with soldiers and artillery, to clear the seas, and to besiege Sluice on that part. The Englishmen did not only coop up the lord Ravenstein, that he stirred not, and likewise hold in trait siege the maritime part of the town; but also assailed one of the castles, and renewed the assault so for twenty days space (issuing still out of their ships at the ebb) as they made great slaughter of them of the castle; who continually fought with them to repulse them, though of the English part also were slain a brother of the earl of Oxford's, and some fifty more.

But the siege still continuing more and more strict, and both the castles (which were the principal strength of the town) being distrest, the one by the duke of Saxony, and the other by the English; and a bridge of boats, which the lord Ravenstein had made between both castles, whereby succours and relief might pass from the one to the other, being on a night set on fire by the English; he despairing to hold the town, yielded (at the last) the castles to the English, and the town to the duke of Saxony, by composition. Which done, the duke of Saxony and Sir Edward Poynings, treated with them of Bruges, to submit themselves to Maximilian their lord; which after some time they did, paying (in some good part) the charge of the war, whereby the Almaine and foreign succours were dismissed. The example of Bruges, other of the revolted towns followed; so that Maximilian grew to be out of danger, but (as his manner was to handle matters) never out of necessity. And Sir Edward Poynings (after he had continued at Sluice some good while till all things were settled) returned unto the king, being then before Bologna.

Somewhat about this time came letters from Ferdinando and Isabella, king and queen of Spain; signifying the final conquest of Granada from the Moors; which action in itself so worthy, king Ferdinand (whose manner was never to lose any virtue for the shewing) had expressed and displayed in his letters at large, with all the particularities and religious puncto's and ceremonies, that were observed in the reception of that city and kingdom: Shewing amongst other things, that the king would not by any means in person enter the city, until he had first aloof seen the cross set up upon the greater tower of Granada, whereby it became Christian ground. That likewise before he would enter, he did homage to God above, pronouncing by an herald from the height of that tower, that he did acknowledge to have recovered that kingdom by the help of God Almighty, and the glorious Virgin, and the virtuous Apostle saint James, and the holy father Innocent the eighth, together with the aids and services of his prelates, nobles, and commons. That yet he stirred not from his camp, till he had seen a little army of martyrs, to the number of seven hundred and more Christians (that had lived in bonds and servitude, as slaves to the Moors) pass before his eyes, singing a psalm for their redemption; and that he had given tribute unto God, by alms and relief extended to them all, for his admission.
admission into the city. These things were in the letters, with many more ceremonies of a kind of holy oftentation.

The king ever willing to put himself into the comfort or quire of all religious actions, and naturally affecting much the king of Spain, (as far as one king can affect another) partly for his virtues, and partly for a counterpoise to France; upon the receipt of these letters, sent all his nobles and prelates that were about the court, together with the mayor and aldermen of London, in great solemnity to the church of Paul's; there to hear a declaration from the lord chancellor, now cardinal. When they were assembled, the cardinal standing upon the uppermost step, or half-pace before the quire, and all the nobles, prelates, and governors of the city at the foot of the stairs, made a speech to them; letting them know, that they were assembled in that consecrate place, to sing unto God a new song. For that (said he) these many years the Christians have not gained new ground or territory upon the Infidels, nor enlarged and set farther the bounds of the Christian world. But this is now done by the prowess and devotion of Ferdinando and Isabella, king and queen of Spain; who have (to their immortal honour) recovered the great and rich kingdom of Granada, and the populous and mighty city of the same name from the Moors, having been in possession thereof by the space of seven hundred Years and more: For which, this assembly and all Christians are to render laud and thanks unto God, and to celebrate this noble act of the king of Spain; who in this is not only victorious, but apostolical, in the gaining of new provinces to the Christian faith. And the rather, for that this victory and conquest is obtained without much effusion of blood. Whereby it is to be hoped, that there shall be gained not only new territory, but infinite souls to the church of Christ, whom the Almighty (as it seems) would have live to be converted. Herewithal he did relate some of the most memorable particulars of the war and victory.

Immediately after the solemnity, the king kept his May day at his palace of Shene, now Richmond. Where, to warm the blood of his nobility and gallants against the war, he kept great triumphs of jousting and tourney, during all that month. In which space it fell out, that Sir James Parker, and Hugh Vaughan, (one of the king's gentlemen usherers) having had a controversy touching certain arms that the king at arms had given Vaughan, were appointed to run some courses one against another. And by accident of a faulty helmet that Parker had on, he was stricken into the mouth at the first course, so that his tongue was born unto the hinder part of his head, in such fort, that he died presently upon the place. Which because of the controversy precedent, and the death that followed, was accounted amongst the vulgar as a combat or trial of right. The king towards the end of this summer, having put his forces, wherewith he meant to invade France, in readiness, (but so as they were not yet met or mustered together) sent Ursweck (now made his Almoner) and Sir John Risley, to Maximilian, to let him know that he was in arms, ready to pass the seas into France, and did but expect to hear from him, when and where he did appoint to join with him, according to his promise made unto him by Countebalt his embassador.

The English embassadors having repaired to Maximilian, did find his power and promise at a very great distance; he being utterly unprovided of men, money, and arms, for any such enterprise. For Maximilian having neither
neither wing to fly on, for that his patrimony of Austria was not in his hands (his Father being then living:) and on the other side, his matrimonial territories of Flanders were partly in dowry to his mother-in-law, and partly not serviceable, in respect of the late rebellions; was thereby deftite of means to enter into war. The embassadors saw this well, but wisely thought fit to advertise the King thereof, rather than to return themselves, till the king’s farther pleasure were known. The rather, for that Maximilian himself spake as great as ever he did before, and entertained them with dilatory answers; so as the formal part of their embassage might well warrant and require their farther stay. The king hereupon (who doubted as much before, and faw through his business from the beginning) wrote back to the embassadors, commending their discretion in not returning, and willing them to keep the state wherein they found Maximilian as a Secret, till they heard farther from him: and mean while went on with his voyage royal for France, suppressing for a time this advertisement touching Maximilian’s poverty and disability.

By this time was drawn together a great and puissant army into the city of London; in which were Thomas marquis Dorfet, Thomas earl of Arundel, Thomas earl of Derby, George earl of Shrewsbury, Edmund earl of Suffolk, Edward earl of Devonshire, George earl of Kent, the earl of Essex, Thomas earl of Ormond, with a great number of barons, knights, and principal gentlemen; and amongst them Richard Thomas, much noted for the brave troops that he brought out of Wales. The army rising in the whole to the number of five and twenty thousand foot, and fifteen hundred horfe; over which the king (confinant in his accustomed trust and employment) made Jasper duke of Bedford, and John Earl of Oxford, generals under his own perfon. The ninth of September, in the eighth Year of his reign, he departed from Greenwich towards the fea; all men wondering that he took that season (being so near winter) to begin the war; and some thereupon gathering, it was a sign that the war would not be long. Nevertheless the king gave out the contrary, thus; that he intending not to make a summer business of it, but a resolute war (without term prefixed) until he had recovered France; it skilled not much when he began it, especially having Calais at his back, where he might winter, if the reason of the war so required. The fixth of October he embarked at Sankwicb; and the fame day took land at Calais, which was the rendezvous, where all his forces were assigned to meet. But in this his journey towards the sea-fide, (wherein for the caufe that we shall now speak of, he hovered so much the longer) he had received letters from the lord Cordes, who the hotter he was againft the English in time of war, had the more credit in a negociation of peace; and besides was held a man open and of good faith. In which letters there was made an overture of peace from the French king, with fuch conditions as were somewhat to the king’s taste; but this was carried at the first with wonderful secrecy. The king was no sooner come to Calais, but the calm winds of peace began to blow. For first, the English embassadors returned out of Flanders from Maximilian, and certified the king, that he was not to hope for any aid from Maximilian, for that he was altogether unprovided. His will was good, but he lacked money. And this was made known and spread through the army. And although the English were therewithal nothing dismayed, and that it be the manner of soldiery, upon bad news to speak the more bravely; yet nevertheless it was a kind of preparative to a peace. Instantly in the neck of this (as the king had laid it) came news, that
that Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain, had concluded a peace with king Charles; and that Charles had restored unto them the counties of Rousillon and Perpignan, which formerly were mortgaged by John king of Aragon (Ferdinando's father) unto France, for three hundred thousand crowns; which debt was also upon this peace by Charles clearly released. This came also handomely to put upon the peace; both because so potent a confederate was fallen off, and because it was a fair example of a peace bought; so as the king should not be the sole merchant in this peace. Upon these airs of peace, the king was content that the bishop of Exeter, and the lord D'Aubigny (governour of Calais) should give a meeting unto the lord Cordes, for the treaty of a peace. But himself nevertheless and his army, the fifteenth of October, removed from Calais, and in four days march fate him down before Boloign.

During this siege of Boloign, (which continued near a month) there passed no memorable action, nor accident of war; only Sir John Savage, a valiant captain, was slain, riding about the walls of the town, to take a view. The town was both well fortified, and well manned; yet it was disfressed, and ready for an assault. Which if it had been given, (as was thought) would have cost much blood; but yet the town would have been carried in the end. Mean while a peace was concluded by the commissioiners, to continue for both the kings lives. Where there was no article of importance; being in effect rather a bargain than a treaty. For all things remained as they were, save that there should be paid to the king seven hundred and forty five thousand dukects in present, for his charges in that journey; and five and twenty thousand crowns yearly, for his charges sustained in the aids of the Britains. For which annual, though he had Maximilian bound before for those charges; yet he counted the alteration of the hand, as much as the principal debt. And besides, it was left somewhat indeﬁnitely when it should determine or expire; which made the English esteem it as a tribute carried under fair terms. And the truth is, it was paid both to the king, and to his son king Henry the eighth, longer than it could continue upon any computation of charges. There was also assigned by the French king, unto all the king's principal counfellors, great pensions, besides rich gifts for the present. Which whether the king did permit, to save his own purse from rewards, or to communicate the envy of a business, that was displeasing to his people, was diversly interpreted. For certainly the king had no great fancy to own this peace. And therefore a little before it was concluded, he had underhand procured some of his best captains and men of war, to advise him to a peace under their hands, in an earnest manner, in the nature of a supplication. But the truth is, this peace was welcome to both kings. To Charles, for that it aﬂured unto him the possession of Britain, and freed the enterprize of Naples. To Henry, for that it filled his coffers; and that he forefaw at that time a storm of inward troubles coming upon him, which presently after brake forth. But it gave no less discontent to the nobility, and principal persons of the army, who had many of them sold or engaged their estates upon the hopes of the war. They fluck not to say, that the king cared not to plume his nobility and people, to feather himself. And some made themselves merry with that the king had said in parliament; that after the war was once begun, he doubted not but to make it pay itself; saying, he had kept promise.

Having risen from Boloign, he went to Calais, where he stayed some time. From whence also he wrote letters, (which was a courtesy that he sometimes
sometimes used) to the mayor of London, and the aldermen his brethren; half bragging what great sums he had obtained for the peace; knowing well that full coffers of the king is ever good news to London. And better news it would have been, if their benevolence had been but a loan. And upon the seventeenth of December following he returned to Welfminsters, where he kept his Chrifmas.

Soon after the king's return, he fent the order of the garter to Alphonfo duke of Calabria, eldeft fon to Ferdinando king of Naples. An honour fought by that prince to hold him up in the eyes of the Italians; who expecting the arms of Charles, made great accompt of the amity of England for a bridle to France. It was received by Alphonfo with all the ceremony and pomp that could be devised, as things use to be carried that are intended for opinion. It was fent by Urfwick; upon whom the king bestowed this embafTage to help him after many dry employments.

At this time the king began again to be haunted with fprites, by the magick and curious arts of the lady Margaret; who raifed up the ghost of Richard duke of York, fecond fon to king Edward the fourth, to walk and vex the king. This was a finer counterfeit from than Lambert Simnel; better done, and worn upon greater hands; being graced after with the wearing of a king of France, and a king of Scotland, not of a duchefs of Burgundy only. And for Simnel, there was not much in him, more than, that he was a handfome boy, and did not shame his robes. But this youth (of whom we are now to fpeak) was fuch a mercurial, as the like hath seldom been known; and could make his own part, if at any time he chance to be out. Wherefore this being one of the strangest examples of a perfonation, that ever was in elder or later times; it deferveth to be discovered, and related at the full. Although the king's manner of iliewing things by pieces, and by dark lights, hath so muffied it, that it hath left it almoft as a myfiery to this day.

The lady Margaret, (whom the king's friends called Juno, because she was to him as Juno was to AEneas, stirring both heaven and hell to do him mischief) for a foundation of her particular practices against him, did continually, by all means poiffible, nourifh, maintain and divulge the flying opinion, that Richard duke of York (fecond fon to Edward the fourth) was not murdered in the tower (as was given out) but faved alive. For that thoie that were employed in that barbarous fact, having destroyed the elder brother, were fticken with remorfe and compaffion towards the younger, and fet him privily at liberty to feek his fortune. This lure {he cast abroad, thinking that this fame and belief (together with the fresh example of Lambert Simnel) would draw at one time or other some birds to strike upon it. She used likewise a farther diligence, not committing all to chance: For she had some secret espials (like to the Turks commiffioners for chil­dren of tribute) to look abroad for handfome and graceful youths, to make Plantagenets, and dukes of York. At the laft she did light on one, in whom all things met as one would wiish, to serve her turn for a counterfeit of Richard duke of York.

This was Perkin Warbeck, whose adventures we shall now describe. For first, the years agreed well. Secondly, he was a youth of fine favour and shape. But more than that, he had fuch a crafty and bewitching fashion, both to move pity, and to induce belief, as was like a kind of fafcination and inchantment to thoie that faw him or heard him. Thirdly, he had been from his childhood fuch a wanderer; or (as the king called him) such
a land-loper, as it was extreme hard to hunt out his neft and parents. Neither again could any man, by company or converting with him, be able to fay or detect well what he was; he did fo flit from place to place. Lastly, there was a circumftance (which is mentioned by one that wrote in the fame time) that is very likely to have made somewhat to the matter; which is, that king Edward the fourth was his godfather. Which, as it is somewhat fuspicious, for a wanton prince to become goffip in fo mean a houfe, and might make a man think, that he might indeed have in him some bafe blood of the houfe of York; fo at the leaft (though that were not) it might give the occasion to the boy, in being called king Edward's god-foh, or perhaps in fport king Edward's fon, to entertain fuch thoughts into his head. For tutor he had none (for aught that appears) as Lambert Simnel had, until he came unto the lady Margaret, who inftucted him.

Thus therefore it came to pafs: there was a town-f-man of Tourna; that had born office in that town, whose name was John Osbeck, a convert Jew, married to Katharine de Faro, whose bufinefs drew him to live for a time with his wife at London, in king Edward the fourth's days. During which time he had a fon by her, and being known in court, the king either out of a'religious noblenefs, becaufe he was a convert, or upon fome private acquaintance, did him the honour as to be godfather to his child, and named him Peter. But afterwards, proving a dainty and effeminate youth, he was commonly called by the diminutive of his name, Peter-kin, or Perkin. For as for the name of Warbeck, it was given him when they did but guefs at it, before examinations had been taken. But yet he had been fo much talked on by that name, as it stuck by him after his true name of Osbeck was known. While he was a young child, his parents returned with him to Tourna. Then was he placed in a houfe of a kinfman of his, called John Stanbeck, at Antwerp, and fo roved up and down between Antwerp and Tourna, and other towns of Flanders, for a good time; living much in English company, and having the English tongue perfecf. In which time, being grown a comely youth, he was brought by fome of the efpiats of the lady Margaret, into her preffence. Who viewing him well, and feeing that he had a face and perfonage that would bear a noble fortune; and finding him otherwife of a fine spirit, and winning behaviour; thought fhe had now found a curious piece of marble, to carve out an image of a duke of York. She kep him by her a great while, but with extream fecrecy. The while fhe inftucted him by many cabinet conferen­ces. Firft, in princely behaviour and gelifure; teaching him how he fhould keep fiate, and yet with a mode fentfe of his misfortunes. Then fhe informed him of all the circumftances and particulars that concerned the perfon of Richard duke of York, which he was to act: describing unto him the perfonages, lineaments, and features of the king and queen his pretended parents; and of his brother, and fifters, and divers others, that were neareft him in his childhood; together with all paffages, fome fecret, fome common, that were fit for a child's memory, until the death of king Edward. Then fhe added the particulars of the time from the king's death, until he and his brother were committed to the tower, as well during the time he was abroad, as while he was in fanctuary. As for the times while he was in the tower, and the manner of his brother's death, and his own escape; fhe knew they were things that a very few could controll. And therefore fhe taught him only to tell a smooth and likely tale of thofe matters; warning him not to vary from it. It was agreed likewise between them,
them, what account he should give of his peregrination abroad, intermixing many things which were true, and such as they knew others could testify, for the credit of the rest; but still making them to hang together with the part he was to play. She taught him likewise how to avoid fundry cautious and tempting questions, which were like to be asked of him. But in this she found him of himself to nimble and shifting, as the truedest man to his own wit and readiness; and therefore laboured the less in it. Lastly, she raised his thoughts with some present rewards, and farther promises; setting before him chiefly the glory and fortune of a crown, if things went well, and a sure refuge to her court, if the worst should fall. After such time as she thought he was perfect in his lesson, she began to cast with herself from what coast this blazing star should first appear, and at what time it must be upon the horizon or Ireland; for there had the like meteor strong influence before. The time of the apparition to be, when the king should be engaged into a war with France. But well she knew, that whatsoever should come from her, would be held suspected. And therefore, if he should go out of Flanders immediately into Ireland, the might be thought to have some hand in it. And besides, the time was not yet ripe; for that the two kings were then upon terms of peace. Therefore she wheel'd about; and to put all suspicion afar off, and loth to keep him any longer by her, (for that she knew secrets are not long-liv'd) she sent him unknown into Portugal, with the lady Brampton, an English lady, that embarked for Portugal at that time; with some Privado of her own, to have an eye upon him, and there he was to remain, and to expect her farther directions. In the mean time, she omitted not to prepare things for his better welcome and accepting, not only in the kingdom of Ireland, but in the court of France. He continued in Portugal about a year; and by that time the king of England called his parliament, (as hath been said) and had declared open war against France. Now did the sign reign, and the constellation was come, under which Perkin should appear. And therefore he was straight sent unto by the duchess to go for Ireland, according to the first desigment. In Ireland he did arrive at the town of Cork. When he was thither come, his own tale was, (when he made his confession afterwards) that the Irishmen finding him in some good clothes, came flocking about him, and bare him down that he was the duke of Clarence that had been there before. And after, that he was Richard the third's base son. And lastly, that he was Richard duke of York, second son to Edward the fourth. But that he (for his part) renounced all these things, and offered to swear upon the holy Evangelists, that he was no such man; still at last they forced it upon him, and made him swear nothing, and so forth. But the truth is, that immediately upon his coming into Ireland, he took upon him the said person of the duke of York, and drew unto him accomplices and partakers, by all the means he could devise. Insomuch as he wrote his letters unto the earls of Desmond and Kildare, to come in to his aid, and of his party; the originals of which letters are yet extant.

Some what before this time, the duchess had also gained unto her a near serviant of king Henry's own, one Stephen Friol, his secretary for the French tongue; an active man, but turbulent and discontented. This Friol had fled over to Charles the French king, and put himself into his service, at such time as he began to be in open enmity with the king. Now king Charles, when he understood of the person and attempts of Perkin, (ready of himself to embrace all advantages against the king of England, instigated
gated by Frion, and formerly prepared by the Lady Margaret) forthwith dispatched one Lucas, and this Frion, in the nature of embassadors, to Perkin; to advertise him of the king's good inclination to him, and that he was resolved to aid him, to recover his right against King Henry, an usurper of England, and an enemy of France; and wished him to come over unto him at Paris. Perkin thought himself in heaven, now that he was invited by so great a king in so honourable a manner. And imparting unto his friends in Ireland for their encouragement, how fortune called him, and what great hopes he had, sailed presently into France. When he was come to the court of France, the king received him with great honour; saluted, and styled him by the name of the duke of York; lodged him, and accommodated him in great state. And the better to give him the representation and the countenance of a prince, assigned him a guard for his person, whereof the lord Conregall was captain. The courtiers likewise (though it be ill mocking with the French) applied themselves to their king's bent, seeing there was reason of state for it. At the same time there repaired unto Perkin, divers Englishmen of quality; sir George Nevile, sir John Taylor, and about one hundred more; and amongst the rest, this Stephen Frioll, of whom we spake, who followed his fortune both then and for a long time after, and was indeed his principal counsellor and instrument in all his proceedings. But all this on the French king's part was but a trick, the better to bow king Henry to peace. And therefore upon the first grain of incense, that was sacrificed upon the altar of peace at Bologn, Perkin was smocked away. Yet would not the French king deliver him up to king Henry, (as he was laboured to do) for his honour's sake, but warned him away, and dismissed him. And Perkin on his part was as ready to be gone, doubting he might be caught up under hand. He therefore took his way into Flanders, unto the duchess of Burgundy; pretending that having been variously tossed by fortune, he directed his course thither as to a safe harbour; no ways taking knowledge that he had ever been there before, but as if that had been his first address. The duchess on the other part, made it as new and strange to see him; pretending (at the first) that she was taught and made wise by the example of Lambert Simnel, how the did admit of any counterfeit stuff; though even in that (the said) she was not fully satisfied. She pretended at the first (and that was ever in the presence of others) to pose him and sift him, thereby to try whether he were indeed the very duke of York, or no. But seeming to receive full satisfaction by his answers, she then signified her self to be transported with a kind of astonishment, mixt of joy and wonder, at his miraculous deliverance; receiving him as if he were risen from death to life: and inferring, that God, who had in such wonderful manner preserved him from death, did likewise reserve him for some great and prosperous fortune. As for his dismission out of France, they interpreted it not, as if he were detected or neglected for a counterfeit deceiver; but contrariwise that it did shew manifestly unto the world, that he was some great matter; for that it was his abandoning that (in effect) made the peace; being no more but the sacrificing of a poor distressful prince, unto the utility and ambition of two mighty monarchs. Neither was Perkin for his part wanting to himself, either in gracious and princely behaviour, or in ready and apposite answers, or in contenting and caressing those that did apply themselves unto him, or in pretty scorn and disdain to those that seemed to doubt of him; but in all things did notably acquit himself; inomuch as it was generally
believed, (as well amongst great persons, as amongst the vulgar) that he was indeed duke Richard. Nay, himself, with long and continual counterfeiting, and with oft telling a lie, was turned by habit almost into the thing he seemed to be; and from a liar, to a believer. The duchess therefore (as in a case out of doubt) did him all princely honour, calling him always by the name of her nephew, and giving him the delicate title of the white rose of England; and appointed him a guard of thirty persons, heralders, clad in a party-coloured livery of murrey and blue, to attend his person. Her court likewise, and generally the Dutch and strangers, in their usage towards him, expressed no less respect.

The news hereof came blazing and thundering over into England, that the duke of York was sure alive. As for the name of Perkin Warbeck, it was not at that time come to light, but all the news ran upon the duke of York; that he had been entertained in Ireland, bought and sold in France, and was now plainly avowed, and in great honour in Flanders. These names took hold of divers; in some upon discontent; in some upon ambition; in some upon levity and desire of change; and in some few upon confidence and belief, but in most upon simplicity; and in divers, out of dependence upon some of the better sort, who did in secret favour and nourish these bruits. And it was long e'er these rumours of novelty had begotten others of scandal and murmur against the king, and his government; taxing him for a great taxer of his people, and disconterner of his nobility. The loss of Britain, and the peace with France, were not forgotten. But chiefly they fell upon the wrong that he did his queen, in that he did not reign in her right. Wherefore they said, that God had now brought to light a masculine branch of the house of York, that would not be at his court, howsoever he did depress his poor lady. And yet (as it fareth in things which are current with the multitude, and which they affect) these names grew so general, as the authors were lost in the generality of speakers. They being like running weeds, that have no certain root; or like footsteps up and down, impossible to be traced: but after a while these ill rumours drew to an head, and settled secretly in some eminent persons; which were Sir William Stanley lord chamberlain of the king's household, the lord Fitzwalter, Sir Simon Mountfort, Sir Thomas Trowates: these enter'd into a secret conspiracy to favour duke Richard's title. Nevertheless none engaged their fortunes in this business openly, but two; Sir Robert Clifford, and master William Barley, who failed over into Flanders, sent indeed from the party of the conspirators here, to understand the truth of those things that passed there, and not without some help of monies from hence; provisionally to be delivered, if they found and were satisfied, that there was truth in these pretences. The person of Sir Robert Clifford (being a gentleman of fame and family) was extremely welcome to the lady Margaret. Who after the had conference with him, brought him to the sight of Perkin, with whom he had often speech and discourse. So that in the end, won either by the duchess to affect, or by Perkin to believe, he wrote back into England, that he knew the person of Richard duke of York, as well as he knew his own; and that this young man was undoubtedly he. By this means all things grew prepared to revolt and sedition here, and the conspiracy came to have a correspondance between Flanders and England.

The king on his part was not asleep; but to arm or levy forces yet, he thought would but shew fear, and do this idol too much worship. Nevertheless the ports he did shut up, or at least kept a watch on them, that none should
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

Should pass to or fro that was suspected: but for the rest, he chose to work by countermine. His purposes were two; the one, to lay open the abuse; the other, to break the knot of the conspirators. To detect the abuse, there were but two ways; the first, to make it manifest to the world that the duke of York was indeed murdered; the other, to prove that were he dead or alive, yet Perkin was a counterfeiter. For the first, thus it stood. There were but four persons that could speak upon knowledge, to the murder of the duke of York; the first, Sir James Tirrel (the employed man from King Richard) John Dighton, and Miles Forrest his servants (the two butchers or tormentors) and the priest of the tower that buried them. Of which four, Miles Forrest and the priest were dead, and there remained alive only Sir James Tirrel and John Dighton. These two the king caused to be committed to the tower, and examined touching the manner of the death of the two innocent princes. They agreed both in a tale, (as the king gave out) to this effect: that King Richard having directed his warrant for the putting of them to death, to Brackenbury the lieutenant of the tower, was by him refused. Whereupon the king directed his warrant to Sir James Tirrel, to receive the keys of the tower from the lieutenant (for the space of a night) for the king's special service. That Sir James Tirrel accordingly repaired to the tower by night, attended by his two servants aforesaid, whom he had chosen for that purpose. That himself stood at the staircase, and sent these two villains to execute the murder. That they smothered them in their bed; and that done, called up their master to see their naked dead bodies, which they had laid forth. That they were buried under the stairs, and some stones cast upon them. That when the report was made to King Richard, that his will was done, he gave Sir James Tirrel great thanks, but took exception to the place of their burial, being too base for them that were king's children. Whereupon another night, by the king's warrant renewed, their bodies were removed by the priest of the tower, and buried by him in some place, which (by means of the priest's death soon after) could not be known. Thus much was then delivered abroad, to be the effect of those examinations: but the king, nevertheless, made no use of them in any of his declarations; whereby (as it seems) those examinations left the business somewhat perplexed. And as for Sir James Tirrel, he was soon after beheaded in the tower yard, for other matters of treason. But John Dighton (who it seemeth spake best for the king) was forthwith set at liberty, and was the principal means of divulging this tradition. Therefore this kind of proof being left so naked, the king used the more diligence in the latter, for the tracing of Perkin. To this purpose he sent abroad into several parts, and especially into Flanders, divers secret and nimble scouts and spies, some feigning themselves to fly over unto Perkin, and to adhere unto him; and some under other pretences, to leach, search, and discover all the circumstances and particulars of Perkin's parents, birth, person, travels up and down; and in brief, to have a journal (as it were) of his life and doings. He furnished these his employed men liberally with money, to draw on and reward intelligences; giving them also in charge, to advertize continually what they found, and nevertheless still to go on. And ever as one advertisement and discovery called up another, he employed other new men, where the business did require it. Others he employed in a more especial nature and trust, to be his pioneers in the main countermine. These were directed to intinmate themselves into the familiarity and confidence of the principal persons of the party in Flanders, and so to learn what
what associates they had, and correspondents, either here in England, or abroad; and how far every one engaged, and what new ones they meant afterwards to try or board. And as this for the persons, so for the actions themselves, to discover to the bottom (as they could) the utmost of Perkin's and the conspirators, their intentions, hopes, and practices. These latter best-trusted spies had some of them farther instructions, to practice and draw off the best friends and servants of Perkin, by making remonstrance to them, how weakly his enterprise and hopes were built, and with how prudent and potent a king they had to deal; and to reconcile them to the king, with promise of pardon and good conditions of reward. And (above the rest) to assail, sap, and work into the constancy of Sir Robert Clifford; and to win him (if they could) being the man that knew most of their secrets, and who being won away, would most appall and discourage the rest, and in a manner break the knot.

There is a strange tradition; that the king being lost in a wood of suspicions, and not knowing whom to trust, had both intelligence with the confessors and chaplains of divers great men; and for the better credit of his espials abroad with the contrary side, did use to have them cursed at Paul's, (by name) amongst the bead-roll of the king's enemies, according to the custom of those times. These espials plied their charge so roundly, as the king had an anatomy of Perkin alive; and was likewise well informed of the particular correspondent conspirators in England, and many other mysteries were revealed; and Sir Robert Clifford in especial won to be assured to the king, and industrious and officious for his service. The king therefore (receiving a rich return of his diligence, and great satisfaction touching a number of particulars) first divulged and spread abroad the imposture and juggling of Perkin's person and travels, with the circumstances thereof, throughout the realm: not by proclamation, (because things were yet in examination, and so might receive the more or the less) but by court-fames, which commonly print better than printed proclamations. Then he thought it also time to send an embassage unto arch-duke Philip into Flanders, for the abandoning and dismissing of Perkin. Herein he employed Sir Edward Poyning, and Sir William Warham, doctor of the canon law. The arch-duke was then young, and governed by his council: before whom the embassadors had audience; and doctor Warham spake in this manner:

My lords, the king our master is very sorry, that England and your country here of Flanders, having been counted as man and wife for so long time; now this country of all others should be the stage, where a base counterfeit should play the part of a king of England; not only to his grace's disquiet and dishonour, but to the scorn and reproach of all sovereign princes. To counterfeit the dead image of a king in his coin, is an high offence by all laws; but to counterfeit the living image of a king in his person, exceedeth all falsifications, except it should be that of a Matronet, or an Antichrist, that counterfeit divine honour. The king hath too great an opinion of this sage council, to think that any of you is caught with this fable, (though way may be given by you to the passion of some) the thing in itself is so improbable. To set testimonies aside of the death of Duke Richard, which the king hath upon record, plain and infallible, (because they may be thought to be in the king's own power) let the thing testify for itself. Sense and reason no power can command. Is it possible (trow
(trow you) that king Richard should damn his soul, and soul his name with so abominable a murder, and yet not mend his cause? Or do you think, that men of blood (that were his instruments) did turn to pity in the midst of their execution? Whereas in cruel and savage beasts, and men also, the first draught of blood doth yet make them more fierce and enraged. Do you not know, that the bloody executioners of tyrants, do go to such errands with an halter about their neck; so that if they perform not, they are sure to die for it? And do you think that these men would hazard their own lives, for sparing another's? Admit they should have saved him; what should they have done with him? Turn him into London streets, that the watchmen, or any passenger that should light upon him, might carry him before a justice, and so all come to light? Or should they have kept him by them secretly? That surely would have required a great deal of care, charge, and continual fears. But (my lords) I labour too much in a clear business. The king is so wise, and hath so good friends abroad, as now he knoweth duke Perkin from his cradle. And because he is a great prince, if you have any good poet here, he can help him with notes to write his life; and to parallel him with Lambert Simnel, now the king's falconer. And therefore (to speak plainly to your lordships) it is the strangest thing in the world, that the lady Margaret, (excuse us if we name her, whose malice to the king is both causeless and endless) should now when she is old, at the time when other women give over child-bearing, bring forth two such monsters; being not the births of nine or ten months, but of many years. And whereas other natural mothers bring forth children weak, and not able to help themselves; she bringeth forth tall striplings, able soon after their coming into the world to bid battle to mighty kings. My lords, we stray unwillingly upon this part. We would to God, that lady would once taste the joys which God Almighty doth serve up unto her, in beholding her niece to reign in such honour, and with so much royal issue, which she might be pleased to account as her own. The king's request unto the arch-duke, and your lordships, might be; that according to the example of king Charles, who hath already discarded him, you would banish this unworthy fellow out of your dominions. But because the king may justly expect more from an ancient confederate, than from a new reconciled enemy; he maketh his request unto you to deliver him up into his hands: Pirates and impostors of this sort, being fit to be accounted the common enemies of mankind, and no ways to be protected by the law of nations.

After some time of deliberation, the embassadors received this short answer:

That the arch-duke, for the love of king Henry, would in no sort aid or assist the pretended duke, but in all things conserve the amity he had with the king: But for the duchess dowager, she was absolute in the lands of her dowry, and that he could not lett her to dispose of her own.

The king, upon the return of the embassadors, was nothing satisfied with this answer. For well he knew, that a patrimonial dowry carried no part of sovereignty, or command of forces. Besides, the embassadors told him plainly, that they saw the duchess had a great party in the arch-duke's counsell; and that howsoever it was carried in a course of connivance, yet the arch-duke underhand gave aid and furtherance to Perkin. Wherefore
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

(partly out of courage, and partly out of policy) the king forthwith banished all Flemings (as well their persons as their wares) out of his kingdom; commanding his subjects likewise (and by name his merchants adventurers) which had a residence in Antwerp, to return; translating the mart (which commonly followed the English cloth) unto Calais; and embargoed also all farther trade for the future. This the king did, being sensible in point of honour, not to suffer a pretender to the crown of England, to affront him so near at hand, and he to keep terms of friendship with the country where he did set up. But he had also a farther reach: for that he knew well, that the subjects of Flanders drew so great commodity from the trade of England, as by this embargo they would soon wax weary of Perkin; and that the tumults of Flanders had been so late and frequent, as it was no time for the prince to displease the people. Nevertheless for form's sake, by way of requital, the arch-duke did likewise banish the English out of Flanders; which in effect was done to his hand.

The king being well advertized, that Perkin did more trust upon friends and partakers within the realm, than upon foreign arms, thought it behoved him to apply the remedy where the disease lay; and to proceed with severity against some of the principal conspirators here within the realm; thereby to purge the ill humours in England, and to cool the hopes in Flanders. Wherefore he caused to be apprehended (almost at an instant) John Ratcliffe, lord Fitzwalter, sir Simon Mountfort, sir Thomas Thwaite, William D'Aubigney, Robert Ratcliffe, Thomas Crofson, and Thomas Askew. All these were arraigned, convicted, and condemned for high treason, in adhering and promising aid to Perkin. Of these the lord Fitzwalter was conveyed to Calais, and there kept in hold, and in hope of life, until soon after (either impatient or betrayed) he dealt with his keeper to have escaped, and thereupon was beheaded. But sir Simon Mountfort, Robert Ratcliffe, and William D'Aubigney, were beheaded immediately after their condemnation. The rest were pardoned, together with many others, clerks and laicks, amongst which were two Dominican friars, and William Worlesy dean of Paul's; which latter sort passed examination, but came not to public trial.

The lord chamberlain at that time was not touched; whether it were that the king would not suffer too many humours at once, but (after the manner of good physicians) purge the head last; or that Clifford (from whom most of these discoveries came) reserved that piece for his own coming over; signifying only to the king in the mean time, that he doubted there were some greater ones in the business, whereof he would give the king farther account when he came to his presence.

Upon Alhallow day even, being now the tenth year of the king's reign, the king's second son Henry was created duke of York; and as well the duke, as divers others, noblemen, knights-bachelors, and gentlemen of quality, were made knights of the Bath according to the ceremony. Upon the morrow after twelfth-day, the king removed from Westminster, (where he had kept his Christmas) to the tower of London. This he did soon as he had advertisement that sir Robert Clifford (in whose booth or budget most of Perkin's secrets were laid up) was come into England. And the place of the tower was chosen to that end, that if Clifford should accuse any of the great ones, they might without suspicion, or noise, or sending abroad of warrants, be presently attached; the court and prison being within the circumference of one wall. After a day or two, the king drew unto him a selected council
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

council, and admitted Clifford to his presence; who first fell down at his
feet, and in all humble manner craved the king’s pardon; which the king
then granted, though he were indeed secretly aflured of his life before.
Then commanded to tell his knowledge, he did amongst many others (of
himself, not interrogated) impeach Sir William Stanley, the lord chamberlain
of the king’s household.

The king seemed to be much amazed at the naming of this lord, as if he
had heard the news of some strange and fearful prodigy. To hear a man
that had done him service of so high a nature, as to save his life, and set
the crown upon his head; a man, that enjoyed by his favour and advance-
ment, so great a fortune both in honour and riches; a man, that was tied
unto him in so near a band of alliance, his brother having married the
king’s mother; and lastly, a man, to whom he had committed the trust
of his person, in making him his chamberlain: That this man, no ways
disgraced, no ways discontent, no ways put in fear, should be false unto
him. Clifford was required to say over again and again, the particulars of
his accusation; being warned, that in a matter so unlikely, and that concern-
ed so great a servant of the king’s, he should not in any wife go too far. But
the king finding that he did sadly and constantly, (without hesitation or vary-
ing, and with those civil protestations that were fit) stand to that that he had
said, offering to justify it upon his soul and life; he caused him to be
removed. And after he had not a little bemoaned himself unto his council
there present, gave order that Sir William Stanley should be restrained in his
own chamber where he lay before, in the square tower: And the next day
he was examined by the lords. Upon his examination he denied little of
that wherewith he was charged, nor endeavoured much to excuse or exte-
nuate his fault: So that (not very wisely) thinking to make his offence less
likely, professed unto his council, and admitted that he had committed
himself, not interrogated) impeach Sir Robert Clifford and him, he had said, that if he were sure that that young man were

Vol. III. M m m

king
king Edward's son, he would never bear arms against him. This case seems somewhat an hard case, both in respect of the conditional, and in respect of the other words. But for the conditional, it seemeth the judges of that time (who were learned men, and the three chief of them of the privy council) thought it was a dangerous thing to admit if's and ands, to qualify words of treason; whereby every man might express his malice, and blanch his danger. And it was like to the case (in the following times) of Elizabeth Barton, the holy maid of Kent; who had said, that if king Henry the eighth did not take Katharine his wife again, he should be deprived of his crown, and die the death of a dog. And infinite cases may be put of like nature; which (it seemeth) the grave judges taking into consideration, would not admit of treasons upon condition. And as for the positive words, that he would not bear arms against king Edward's son; though the words seem calm, yet it was a plain and direct over-ruling of the king's title, either by the line of Lancaster, or by act of parliament: Which (no doubt) pierced the king more, than if Stanley had charged his lance upon him in the field. For if Stanley would hold that opinion, that a son of king Edward had still the better right, he being so principal a person of authority and favour about the king, it was to teach all England to say as much. And therefore (as those times were) that speech touched the quick. But some writers do put this out of doubt; for they say, that Stanley did expressly promise to aid Perkin, and sent him some help of treasure.

Now for the motive of his falling off from the king; it is true, that at Bosworth field the king was beset, and in a manner inclosed round about by the troops of king Richard, and in manifest danger of his life; when this Stanley was sent by his brother, with three thousand men to his rescue, which he performed so, that king Richard was slain upon the place. So as the condition of mortal men is not capable of a greater benefit, than the king received by the hands of Stanley; being like the benefit of Christ, at once to save and crown. For which service the king gave him great gifts, made him his counsellor and chamberlain; and (somewhat contrary to his nature) had winked at the great spoils of Bosworth field, which came almost wholly to this man's hands, to his infinite enriching. Yet nevertheless blown up with the conceit of his merit, he did not think he had received good measure from the king, at least: not pressing down, and running over, as he expected. And his ambition was so exorbitant and unbounded, as he became suitor to the king for the earldom of Chester: which ever being a kind of appenage to the principality of Wales, and using to go to the king's son, his suit did not only end in a denial, but in a dissatisfaction. The king perceiving thereby, that his desires were intemperate, and his cogitations vaft and irregular, and that his former benefits were but cheap, and lightly regarded by him. Wherefore the king began not to brook him well. And as a little leaven of new dissatisfaction, doth commonly sour the whole lump of former merits; the king's wit began now to fuggeft unto his passion, that Stanley at Bosworth field, though he came time enough to save his life, yet he stayed long enough to endanger it. But yet having no matter against him, he continued him in his places until this his fall.

After him was made lord chamberlain, Giles lord D'Aubigny, a man of great sufficiency and valour; the more because he was gentle and moderate.

There was a common opinion, that sir Robert Clifford (who now was become the state informer) was from the beginning an emissary and spy of the
the king's; and that he fled over into Flanders with his consent and privity. But this is not probable; both because he never recovered that degree of grace, which he had with the king before his going over; and chiefly, for that the discovery which he had made touching the lord chamberlain, (which was his great service) grew not from any thing he learnt abroad, for that he knew it well before he went.

These executions (and especially that of the lord chamberlain's, which was the chief strength of the party, and by means of Sir Robert Clifford, who was the most inward man of trust amongst them) did extremely quail the design of Perkin, and his complices, as well through discouragement as difficulty. So that they were now (like sand without lime) ill bound together; especially as many as were English, who were at a gaze, looking strange one upon another, not knowing who was faithful to their side; but thinking, that the king (what with his baits, and what with his nets) would draw them all unto him that were any thing worth. And indeed it came to pass, that divers came away by the thread, sometimes one, and sometimes another. Barley (that was joint commissioner with Clifford) did hold out one of the longer, till Perkin was far won; yet made his peace at the length.

But the fall of this great man, being in so high authority and favour (as was thought) with the king; and the manner of carriage of the business, as if there had been secret inquisition upon him for a great time before; and the cause for which he suffered, which was little more than for saying in effect, that the title of York was better than the title of Lancaster; which was the case almost of every man (at the least in opinion;) was matter of great terror amongst all the king's servants and subjects; inasmuch as no man almost thought himself secure, and men durst scarce converse or talk one with another, but there was a general diffidence everywhere: Which nevertheless made the king rather more absolute, than more safe. For bleeding inwards, and strangles soon, and oppresses most.

Hereupon presently came forth swarms and volleys of libels, (which are the gusts of liberty of speech restrained, and the females of sedition) containing bitter invectives and flanders against the king, and some of the council: For the contriving and dispersing whereof (after great diligence of enquiry) five mean persons were caught up and executed.

Mean while the king did not neglect Ireland, being the soil where these mushrooms and upstart weeds (that spring up in a night) did chiefly prosper. He sent therefore from hence (for the better settling of his affairs there) commissioners of both robes, the prior of Lanthony, to be his chancellor in that kingdom; and Sir Edward Poynings, with a power of men, and a martial commissioon, together with a civil power of his lieutenant, with a clausre, that the earl of Kildare, then deputy, should obey him. But the wild Irish (who were the principal offenders) fled into the woods and bogs, after their manner; and those that knew themselves guilty in the pale fled to them. So that Sir Edward Poynings was enforced to make a wild chase upon the wild Irish: Where (in respect of the mountains and fastnesses) he did little good. Which (either out of a suspicious melancholy upon his bad success, or the better to save his service from disgrace) he would needs impute unto the comfort that the rebels should receive underhand from the earl of Kildare; every light supicion growing upon the earl, in respect of the Kildare that was in the action of Lambert Simnel, and slain at Stokefield. Wherefore he caused the earl to be apprehended, and

Vol. III. M m m 2
fent into England; where, upon examination, he cleared himself so well, as he was replaced in his government. But Poynings (the better to make compensation of the meagerness of his service in the wars by acts of peace) called a parliament; where was made that memorable act, which at this day is called Poynings’s law, whereby all the statutes of England were made to be of force in Ireland: For before they were not, neither are any now in force in Ireland, which were made in England since that time; which was the tenth year of the king.

About this time began to be discovered in the king that disposition, which afterward nourished and whet on by bad counsellors and ministers, proved the blot of his times; which was the course he took to crush treasure out of his subjects purses, by forfeitures upon penal laws: At this men did flartle the more at this time, because it appeared plainly to be in the king’s nature, and not out of his necessity, he being now in float for treasure: For that he had newly received the peace-money from France, the benevolence-money from his subjects, and great casualties upon the confiscations of the lord chamberlain, and divers others. The first noted case of this kind, was that of Sir William Capel, alderman of London; who upon sundry penal laws, was condemned in the sum of seven and twenty hundred pounds, and compoundéd with the king for sixteen hundred: And yet after, Empfon would have cut another chop out of him, if the king had not died in the Instant.

The summer following, the king, to comfort his mother, (whom he did always tenderly love and revere) to make demonstration to the world, that the proceedings against Sir William Stanley (which was imposed upon him by necessity of state) had not in any degree diminished the affection he bare to Thomas his Brother, went in progress to Latbam, to make merry with his mother and the earl, and lay there divers days.

During this progress, Perkin Warbeck finding that time and temporizing, which (whilst his practices were covert, and wrought well in England) made for him; did now, when they were discovered and defeated, rather make against him, (for that when matters once go down the hill, they fly not without a new force) resolved to try his adventure in some exploit upon England; hoping still upon the affections of the common people towards the house of York. Which body of common people he thought was not to be practiced upon, as persons of quality are; but that the only practice upon their affections, was to set up a standard in the field. The place where he should make his attempt, he chose to be the coast of Kent. The king by this time was grown to such a height of reputation for cunning and policy, that every accident and event that went well, was laid and imputed to his foresight, as if he had set it before: as in this particular of Perkin’s design upon Kent. For the world would not believe afterwards, but the king having secret intelligence of Perkin’s intention for Kent, (the better to draw it on) went of purpose into the north afar off, laying an open side unto Perkin, to make him come to the close, and so to trip up his heels, having made sure in Kent before hand.

But so it was, that Perkin had gathered together a power of all nations, neither in number, nor in the hardiness and courage of the persons, contemptible, but in their nature and fortunes to be feared, as well of friends as enemies; being bankrupts, and many of them felons, and such as lived by rapine. These he put to sea, and arrived upon the coast of Sandwich, and Deal in Kent, about July.
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

THERE he cast anchor, and to prove the affections of the people, sent some of his men to land, making great boasts of the power that was to follow. The Kentish men perceiving, that Perkin was not followed by any English of name or account, and that his forces confisted but of strangers born, and most of them base people and free-booters, fitter to spoil a coast, than to recover a kingdom; resorting unto the principal gentlemen of the country, professed their loyalty to the king, and desired to be directed and commanded for the best of the king's service. The gentlemen entering into consultation, directed some forces in good number to shew themselves upon the coast; and some of them to make signs to entice Perkin's followers to land, as if they would join with them; and some others to appear from some other places, and to make semblance as if they fled from them, the better to encourage them to land. But Perkin, (who by playing the prince, or else taught by secretary Frion, had learned thus much; that people under command, do use to consult, and after to march in order, and rebels contrariwise run upon an head together in confusion) considering the delay of time, and observing their orderly, and not tumultuary arming, doubted the worst. And therefore the wily youth would not set one foot out of his ship, till he might see things were sure. Wherefore the king's forces perceiving, that they could draw on no more than those that were formerly landed, let upon them and cut them in pieces, e'er they could fly back to their ships. In which skirmish (besides those that fled and were slain) there were taken about an hundred and fifty persons. Which, for that the king thought, that to punish a few for example was gentleman's pay; but for rashal-people, they were to cut off every man, especially in the beginning of an enterprize; and likewise for that he saw, that Perkin's forces would now consist chiefly of such rabble and scum of desperate people, he therefore hanged them all for the greater terror. They were brought to London all railed in ropes, like a team of horses in a cart, and were executed some of them at London and Wapping, and the rest at divers places upon the sea-coast of Kent, Sussex and Norfolk, for sea-marks, or light-houses, to teach Perkin's people to avoid the coast. The king being advertised of the landing of the rebels, thought to leave his progress. But being certified the next day, that they were partly defeated, and partly fled, he continued his progress, and sent Sir Richard Guildford into Kent in message; who calling the countrey together, did much commend from the king their fidelity, manhood, and well handling of that service; and gave them all thanks, and (in private) promised reward to some particulars.

Upon the sixteenth of November, (this being the eleventh year of the king) was holden the serjeants feast at Ely place, there being nine serjeants of that call. The king to honour the feast, was present with his queen at the dinner; being a prince that was ever ready to grace and countenance the professors of the law; having a little of that, that as he governed his subjects by his laws, so he governed his laws by his lawyers.

This year also the king entered into league with the Italian potentates for the defence of Italy against France. For king Charles had conquered the realm of Naples, and loft it again, in a kind of felicity of a dream. He passed the whole length of Italy without resistance; so that it was true which pope Alexander was wont to say, that the Frenchmen came into Italy with chalk in their hands, to mark up their lodgings, rather than with swords to fight. He likewise entered and won (in effect) the whole kingdom of Naples it self, without striking stroke. But presently thereupon he did commit and
and multiply so many errors, as was too great a task for the best fortune to overcome. He gave no contentment to the barons of Naples, of the faction of the Angevines; but scattered his rewards according to the mercenary appetites of some about him. He put all Italy upon their guard, by the seizing and holding of Ofria, and the protecting of the liberty of Pisa, which made all men suspect, that his purposes looked farther than his title of Naples. He fell too soon at difference with Ludovico Sforza, who was the man that carried the keys which brought him in and shut him out. He neglected to extingush some relics of the war. And lastly, in regard of his easy passage through Italy without resistance, he enter'd into an overmuch despising of the arms of the Italians; whereby he left the realm of Naples at his departure so much the less provided. So that not long after his return, the whole kingdom revolted to Ferdinand the younger, and the French were quite driven out. Nevertheless Charles did make both great threats, and great preparations to re-enter Italy once again. Wherefore at the instance of divers of the states of Italy, (and especially of pope Alexander) there was a league concluded between the said pope, Maximilian king of the Romans, Henry king of England, Ferdinand and Isabella king and queen of Spain, (for so they are constantly placed in the original treaty throughout) Augustino Barbodico duke of Venice, and Ludovico Sforziduke of Milan, for the common defence of their states: Wherein though Ferdinand of Naples was not named as principal, yet (no doubt) the kingdom of Naples was tacitly included, as a fee of the church.

There died also this year Cecile duchess of York, mother to king Edward the fourth, at her castle of Barkhamsted, being of extreme years, and who had lived to see three princes of her body crowned, and four murdered. She was buried at Foderingham, by her husband.

This year also the king called his parliament, where many laws were made of a more private and vulgar nature, than ought to detain the reader of an history. And it may be justly suspected by the proceedings following, that as the king did excel in good common-wealth laws, so nevertheless he had (in secret) a design to make use of them, as well for collecting of treasure, as for correcting of manners; and so meaning thereby to harrow his people, did accumulate them the rather.

The principal law that was made this parliament, was a law of a strange nature; rather just than legal; and more magnanimous than provident. This law did ordain; that no person that did assist in arms, or otherwise, the king for the time being, should after be impeached therefore, or attainted, either by the course of the law, or by act of parliament. But if any such act of attainder did happen to be made, it should be void and of none effect; for that it was agreeable to reason of estate, that the subject should not enquire of the justness of the king's title, or quarrel; and it was agreeable to good conscience, that (whatsoever the fortune of the war were) the subject should not suffer for his obedience. The spirit of this law was wonderful pious and noble, being like in matter of war, unto the spirit of David in matter of plague; who said, If I have sinned, strike me; but what have these sheep done? Neither wanted this law parts of prudent and deep foresight: For it did the better take away occasion for the people to buy themselves to pry into the king's title; for that howsoever it fell, their safety was already provided for. Besides, it could not but greatly draw unto him the love and hearts of the people, because he seemed more careful for them than for himself. But yet nevertheless it did take off from his party that
that great tie and spur of necessity, to fight and go victors out of the field; considering their lives and fortunes were put in safety and protected, whether they stood to it, or ran away. But the force and obligation of this law was in it felt illusory, as to the latter part of it, by a precedent act of parliament to bind or frustrate a future. For a supreme and absolute power cannot conclude it self, neither can that which is in nature revocable be made fixed, no more than if a man should appoint or declare by his will, that if he made any latter will it should be void. And for the case of the act of parliament, there is a notable precedent of it in king Henry the eighth's time; who doubting he might die in the minority of his son, procured an act to pass, that no statute made during the minority of the king, should bind him or his successors, except it were confirmed by the king under his great seal, at his full age. But the first act that passed in king Edward the sixth's time, was an act of repeal of that former act; at which time nevertheless the king was minor. But things that do not bind, may satisfy for the time.

There was also made a shooing or under-propping act for the benevolence; to make the sums which any person had agreed to pay, and nevertheless were not brought in, to be leviable by course of law. Which act did not only bring in the arrears, but did indeed countenance the whole business, and was pretended to be made at the desire of those that had been forward to pay.

In this parliament also was made that good law, which gave the attaint upon a false verdict between party and party, which before was a kind of evangely, and irremediable. It extends not to causes capital, as well because they are for the most part at the king's suit; as because in them (if they be followed in course of indictment) there passeth a double jury, the indictors, and the tryers; and no not twelve men, but four and twenty. But it seemeth that was not the only reason; for this reason holdeth not in the appeal. But the great reason was, lest it should tend to the discouragement of jurors in cases of life and death; if they should be subject to suit and penalty, where the favour of life maketh against them. It extendeth not also to any suit, where the demand is under the value of forty pounds; for that in such cases of petty value, it would not quit the charge, to go about again.

There was another law made against a branch of ingratitude in women; who having been advanced by their husbands, or their husbands' ancestors, should alien, and thereby seek to defeat the heirs, or those in remainder, of the lands, whereunto they had been so advanced. The remedy was, by giving power to the next, to enter for a forfeiture.

There was also enacted that charitable law, for the admission of poor suitors in forma pauperis, without fee to counsel, attorney or clerk, whereby poor men became rather able to vex, than unable to sue. There were divers other good laws made that parliament, as we said before; but we still observe our manner, in selecting out those, that are not of a vulgar nature.

The king this while, though he sat in parliament, as in full peace, and seemed to account of the deigns of Perkin, (who was now returned into Flanders,) but as a may-game; yet having the composition of a wise king, (flout without, and apprehensive within,) had given order for the watching of beacons upon the coasts, and erecting more where they stood too thin, and had a careful eye where this wandering cloud would break. But Perkin advised
advised to keep his fire (which hitherto burned as it were upon green wood) alive with continual blowing; failed again into Ireland, whence he had formerly departed, rather upon the hopes of France, than upon any unreadynes or discouragement he found in that people. But in the space of time between, the king's diligence and Poyning's commission had so settled things there, as there was nothing left for Perkin, but the blustering affections of wild and naked people. Wherefore he was advised by his council, to seek aid of the king of Scotland, a prince young and valorous, and in good terms with his nobles and people, and ill affected to king Henry. At this time also both Maximilian and Charles of France began to bear no good will to the king: the one being displeased with the king's prohibition of commerce with Flanders; the other holding the king for suspect, in regard of his late entry into league with the Italians. Wherefore, besides the open aids of the duchesses of Burgundy, which did with sails and oars put on and advance Perkin's designs, there wanted not some secret tides from Maximilian and Charles, which did further his fortunes: insomuch as they, both by their secret letters and messages, recommended him to the king of Scotland.

Perkin therefore coming into Scotland upon those hopes, with a well-appointed company, was by the king of Scots (being formerly well prepared) honourably welcomed, and soon after his arrival admitted to his presence, in a solemn manner: for the king received him in state in his chamber of presence, accompanied with divers of his nobles. And Perkin well attended, as well with those that the king had sent before him, as with his own train, enter'd the room where the king was, and coming near to the king, and bowing a little to embrace him, he retired some paces back, and with a loud voice (that all that were present might hear him) made his declaration in this manner:

High and mighty king, your grace, and these your nobles here present, may be pleased benignly to bow your ears, to hear the tragedy of a young man, that by right ought to hold in his hand the ball of a kingdom; but by fortune is made himself a ball, tossed from misery to misery, and from place to place. You see here before you the spectacle of a Plantagenet, who hath been carried from the nursery to the sanctuary; from the sanctuary, to the direful prison; from the prison, to the hand of the cruel tormentor; and from that hand, to the wide wilderness (as I may truly call it;) for so the world hath been to me. So that he that is born to a great kingdom, hath not ground to set his foot upon, more than this where he now standeth, by your princely favour. Edward the fourth, late king of England, (as your grace cannot but have heard,) left two sons, Edward, and Richard duke of York, both very young. Edward the eldest succeeded their father in the crown, by the name of king Edward the fifth: but Richard duke of Gloucester, their unnatural uncle, first thirsting after the kingdom, through ambition, and afterwards thirsting for their blood, out of desire to secure himself, employed an instrument of his (confident to him, as he thought) to murder them both. But this man that was employed to execute that execrable tragedy, having cruelly slain king Edward, the eldest of the two, was moved partly by remorse, and partly by some other mean, to save Richard his brother; making a report nevertheless to the tyrant, that he had performed his commandment for both brethren. This report was accordingly believed, and published generally: So that the world hath been possed,
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

possessed of an opinion, that they both were barbarously made away; tho' ever truth hath some sparks that fly abroad, until it appear in due time, as this hath had. But Almighty God, that stopped the mouth of the lion, and saved little Joah from the tyranny of Athaljah, when he massacred the king's children; and did save Isaac, when the hand was stretched forth to sacrifice him; preferred the second brother. For I myself, that stand here in your presence, am that very Richard duke of York, brother of that unfortunate prince king Edward the fifth, now the most rightful surviving heir male to that victorious and most noble Edward of that name the fourth, late king of England. For the manner of my escape, it is fit it should pass in silence, or (at least) in a more secret relation; for that it may concern some alive, and the memory of some that are dead. Let it suffice to think, that I had then a mother living, a queen, and one that had expected daily such a commandment from the tyrant, for the murdering of her children. Thus in my tender age escaping by God's mercy out of London, I was secretly conveyed over sea: Where, after a time, the party that had me in charge (upon what new fears, change of mind, or practice, God knoweth) suddenly forsook me. Whereby I was forced to wander abroad, and to seek mean conditions for the sustaining of my life. Wherefore distracted between several passions, the one of fear to be known, left the tyrant should have a new attempt upon me; the other of grief and disdain to be unknown, and to live in that base and servile manner that I did; I resolved with myself to expect the tyrant's death, and then to put myself into my sister's hands, who was next heir to the crown. But in this season it happened one Henry Tudor, son to Edmund Tudor earl of Richmond, to come from France and enter into the realm, and by subtle and foul means to obtain the crown of the same, which to me rightfully appertained: So that it was but a change from tyrant to tyrant. This Henry, my extreme and mortal enemy, so soon as he had knowledge of my being alive, imagined and wrought all the subtle ways and means he could, to procure my final destruction: For my mortal enemy hath not only falsely surmised me to be a feigned person, giving me nick-names, so abusing the world; but also, to defer and put me from entry into England, hath offered large sums of money to corrupt the princes and their ministers, with whom I have been retained; and made importune labours to certain servants about my person, to murder or poison me, and others to forfake and leave my righteous quarrel, and to depart from my service, as Sir Robert Clifford, and others. So that every man of reason may well perceive, that Henry, calling himself king of England, needed not to have bestowed such great sums of treasure, nor so to have bufièd himself with importune and incessant labour and industry, to compass my death and ruin, if I had been such a feigned person. But the truth of my cause being so manifest, moved the most Christian king Charles, and the lady duchess dowager of Burgundy my most dear aunt, not only to acknowledge the truth thereof, but lovingly to assist me. But it semeth that God above (for the good of this whole island, and the knitting of these two kingdoms of England and Scotland in a strict concord and amity, by so great an obligation) hath referred the placing of me in the imperial throne of England, for the arms and succours of your grace. Neither is it the first time that a king of Scotland hath supported them that were bereft and spoiled of the kingdom of England, as of late (in fresh memory) it was done in the person of Henry the sixth. Wherefore, for that your grace hath given clear signs, that you are in no noble quality inferior to your royal ancestors;
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

Ancestors; I, so distressed a prince, was hereby moved to come and put myself into your royal hands, desiring your assistance to recover my kingdom of England; promising faithfully to bear myself towards your grace no otherwise, than if I were your own natural brother; and will upon the recovery of mine inheritance, gratefully do you all the pleasure that is in my utmost power.

After Perkin had told his tale, king James answered bravely and wisely; that whatsoever he were, should not repent him of putting himself into his hands. And from that time forth, though there wanted not some about him, that would have perjured him, that all was but an illusion; yet notwithstanding, either taken by Perkin’s amiable and alluring behaviour, or inclining to the recommendation of the great princes abroad, or willing to take an occasion of a war against king Henry, he entertained him in all things, as became the person of Richard duke of York; embraced his quarrel; and (the more to put it out of doubt, that he took him to be a great prince, and not a representation only) he gave consent, that this duke should take to wife the lady Katharine Gordon, daughter to the earl of Huntley, being a near kinswoman to the king himself, and a young virgin of excellent beauty and virtue.

Not long after the king of Scots in person, with Perkin in his company, enter’d with a great army (though it consisted chiefly of borderers, being raised somewhat suddenly) into Northumberland. And Perkin, for some time before him as he went, caused to be published a (a) proclamation of this tenor following, in the name of Richard duke of York, true inheritor of the crown of England.

It hath pleased God, who putteth down the mighty from their seat, and exalteth the humble, and suffereth not the hopes of the just to perish in the end, to give us means at the length to swell our selves armed unto our lieges and people of England. But far be it from us to intend their hurt or damage, or to make war upon them, otherwise than to deliver our self and them from tyranny and oppression. For our mortal enemy Henry Tudor, a false usurper of the crown of England, (which to us by natural and lineal right appertaineth) knowing in his own heart our undoubted right, (we being the very Richard duke of York, younger son, and now surviving heir male of the noble and victorious Edward the fourth, late king of England) hath not only deprived us of our kingdom, but likewise by all foul and wicked means fought to betray us, and bereave us of our life. Yet if his tyranny only extended itself to our person, (although our royal blood teacheth us to be sensible of injuries) it should be less to our grief. But this Tudor, who boafteth himself to have overthrown a tyrant, hath ever since his first entrance into his usurped reign, put little in practice, but tyranny and the feats thereof.

For king Richard, our unnatural uncle, although desire of rule did blind him, yet in his other actions (like a true Plantagenet) was noble and loved the honour of the realm, and the contentment and comfort of his nobles and people. But this our mortal enemy (agreeable to the meaneris of his birth) hath trodden under foot the honour of this nation; selling our best

(a) The original of this proclamation remaineth with Sir Robert Cotton, a worthy preceiver and treasurer of rare antiquities: from whole manuscripts I have had much light for the furnishing of this work.
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

confederates for money, and making merchandize of the blood, estates, and fortunes of our peers and subjects, by feigned wars, and dishonourable peace, only to enrich his coffers. Nor unlike hath been his hateful misgovernment, and evil deportments at home. First, he hath (to fortify his false quarrel) caused divers nobles of this our realm (whom he held suspect and stood in dread of) to be cruelly murdered; as our cousin sir William Stanley, lord chamberlain, sir Simon Montfort, sir Robert Ratcliffe, William D'Aubigny, Humphrey Stafford, and many others; besides such as have dearly bought their lives with intolerable ransoms: Some of which nobles are now in the sanctuary. Also he hath long kept, and yet keepeth in prison, our right entirely well-beloved cousin, Edward, son and heir to our uncle duke of Clarence, and others; with-holding from them their rightful inheritance, to the intent they should never be of might and power, to aid and assist us at our need, after the duty of their legiances. He also married by compulsion certain of our sisters, and also the sister of our said cousin the earl of Warwick, and divers other ladies of the royal blood, unto certain of his kinsmen and friends of simple and low degree; and putting a-part all well-disposed nobles, he hath none in favour and trust about his person, but bishop Fox, Smith, Bray, Lovel, Oliver King, David Owen, Rifeley, Turberville, Tiler, Cholmley, Empson, James Hobart, John Cut, Garth, Henry Wyatt, and such other caitiffs and villains of birth, which by subtile inventions, and pilling of the people, have been the principal finders, occasioners, and counsellors of the mis-rule and mischief now reigning in England.

We remembering these premisses, with the great and execrable offences daily committed, and done by our forefaid great enemy, and his adherents, in breaking the liberties and franchises of our mother the holy church, upon pretences of wicked and heathenish policy, to the high displeasure of Almighty God, besides the manifold treasons, abominable murders, manslaughters, robberies, extortions, the daily pilling of the people by dimes, taxes, tallages, benevolences, and other unlawful impositions, and grievous exactions, with many other heinous effects, to the likely destruction and defolation of the whole realm: shall by God's grace, and the help and assistance of the great lords of our blood, with the counsel of other said persons, fee that the commodities of our realm be employed to the most advantage of the same; the intercourse of merchandise betwixt realm and realm, to be minifred and handled as shall more be to the common-weal and prosperity of our subjects; and all such dimes, taxes, tallages, benevolences, unlawful impositions, and grievous exactions, as be above rehearsed, to be foredone and laid apart, and never from henceforth to be called upon, but in such cases as our noble progenitors, kings of England, have of old time been accustomed to have the aid, succour, and help of their subjects, and true liege-men.

And farther, we do out of our grace and clemency, hereby as well publish and promise to all our subjects remission and free pardon of all by-past offences whatsoever, against our person and estate, in adhering to our said enemy, by whom (we know well) they have been misled, if they shall within time convenient submit themselves unto us. And for such as shall come with the foremost to assist our righteous quarrel, we shall make them so far partakers of our princely favour and bounty, as shall be highly for the comfort of them and theirs, both during their life, and after their death: As also we shall by all means which God shall put into our hands, demean our selves to give royal contentment to all degrees and estates of our
our people, maintaining the liberties of holy church in their entire, preferring the honours, privileges, and preeminences of our nobles, from contempt or disparagement, according to the dignity of their blood. We shall also unyoke our people from all heavy burdens and endurances, and confirm our cities, boroughs, and towns, in their charters and freedoms, with enlargement where it shall be deserved; and in all points give our subjects cause to think, that the blessed and debonair government of our noble father king Edward (in his last times) is in us revived.

And forasmuch as the putting to death, or taking alive of our said mortal enemy, may be a mean to stay much effusion of blood, which otherwise may ensue, if by compulsion or fair promises he shall draw after him any number of our subjects to resist us, which we desire to avoid, (though we be certainly informed, that our said enemy is purposed and prepared to fly the land, having already made over great masses of the treasure of our crown, the better to support him in foreign parts) we do hereby declare, that whoever shall take or distress our said enemy, (though the party be of never so mean a condition) he shall be by us rewarded with a thousand pound in money, forthwith to be laid down to him, and an hundred marks by the year of inheritance; besides that he may otherwise merit, both toward God, and all good people, for the destruction of such a tyrant.

Lastly, we do all men to wit, and herein we take also God to witnesse, that whereas God hath moved the heart of our dearest cousin, the king of Scotland, to aid us in person in this our righteous quarrel; it is altogether without any pact or promise, or so much as demand of any thing that may prejudice our crown or subjects: but contrariwise, with promise on our said cousin's part, that whensoever he shall find us in sufficient strength to get the upper hand of our enemy, (which we hope will be very suddenly) he will forthwith peaceably return into his own kingdom; contenting himself only with the glory of so honourable an enterprize, and our true and faithful love and amity: which we shall ever (by the grace of Almighty God) so order, as shall be to the great comfort of both kingdoms.

But Perkin's proclamation did little edify with the people of England; neither was he the better welcome for the company he came in. Wherefore the king of Scotland seeing none came in to Perkin, nor none stirred any where in his favour, turned his enterprize into a road; and wasted and destroyed the country of Northumberland with fire and sword. But hearing that there were forces coming against him, and not willing that they should find his men heavy and laden with booty, he returned into Scotland with great spoils, deferring farther prosecution till another time. It is said, that Perkin acting the part of a prince handomely, when he saw the Scotish fell to waste the country, came to the king in a passionatemanner, making great lamentation, and desired, that that might not be the manner of making the war; for that no crown was so dear to his mind, that he should find his men heavy and laden with booty, he returned into Scotland with great spoils, deferring farther prosecution till another time. It is said, that Perkin acting the part of a prince handomely, when he saw the Scotish fell to waste the country, came to the king in a passionatemanner, making great lamentation, and desired, that that might not be the manner of making the war; for that no crown was so dear to his mind, as that he desired to purchase it with the blood and ruin of his country. Whereunto the king answered half in sport, that he doubted much he was careful for that that was none of his, and that he should be too good a Steward for his enemy, to save the country to his use.

By this time, being the eleventh year of the king, the interruption of trade between the English and the Flemish, began to pinch the merchants of both nations very sore: which moved them by all means they could devise, to affect and dispose their sovereigns respectively, to open the intercourse
courfe again; wherein time favoured them. For the Arch-duke and his council began to see, that Perkin would prove but a runagate, and citizen of the world; and that it was the part of children to fall out about babies. And the king on his part, after the attempts upon Kent and Northumberland, began to have the business of Perkin in less estimation; so as he did not put it to account in any consultation of state. But that that moved him most, was, that being a king that loved wealth and treasure, he could not endure to have trade fick, nor any obstruction to continue in the gatevein, which disperfeth that blood. And yet he kept state so far, as first to be fought unto. Wherein the merchant-adventurers likewise, (being a strong company at that time, and well underfet with rich men, and good order) did hold out bravely; taking off the commodities of the kingdom, though they lay dead upon their hands for want of vent. At the last, commiffioners met at London to treat: On the king's part, bishop Fox lord privy seal, vicount Wells, Kendal prior of saint John's, Warham master of the rolls, who began to gain much upon the king's opinion; Urswick, who was almost ever one; and Rifeley: On the arch-duke's part, the lord Bevers his admiral, the lord Verufl president of Flanders, and others. These concluded a perfect treaty, both of amity and intercourfe, between the king and the arch-duce; containing articles both of state, commerce, and free fishing. This is that treaty which the Flemings call at this day intercurfus magnum; both becaufe it is more compleat than the precedent treaties of the third and fourth year of the king; and chiefly, to give it a difference from the treaty that followed in the one and twentieth year of the king, which they call intercurfus malus. In this treaty, there was an express article against the reception of the rebels of either prince by other; purporting, that if any such rebel should be required, by the prince whole rebel he was, of the prince confederate, that forthwith the prince confederate should by proclamation command him to avoid the countrey: which if he did not within fifteen days, the rebel was to stand proscribed, and put out of protection. But nevertheless in this article Perkin was not named; neither perhaps contained, becaufe he was no rebel. But by this means his wings were clipt of his followers that were English. And it was expressly comprifed in the treaty, that it should extend to the territories of the duchefs dowager. After the intercourfe thus restored, the English merchants came again to their manfion at Antwerp, where they were received with proceffion and great joy.

The winter following, being the twelfth year of his reign, the king called again his parliament: where he did much exaggerate both the malice, and the cruel predatory war lately made by the king of Scotland: That that king, being in amity with him, and no ways provoked, should fo burn in hatred towards him, as to drink of the lees and dregs of Perkin's intoxification, who was every where else detected and discarded: And that when he perceived it was out of his reach to do the king any hurt, he had turn'd his arms upon unarmed and unprovided people, to spoil only and depopulate, contrary to the laws both of war and peace: Concluding that he could neither with honour, nor with the safety of his people, to whom he did owe protection, let pass these wrongs unrevenged. The parliament understood him well, and gave him a subsidy, limited to the sum of one hundred and twenty thousand pounds, besides two fifteens: For his wars were always to him as a mine of treasure, of a strange kind of ore; iron at the top, and gold and silver at the bottom. At this parliament (for that there
there had been so much time spent in making laws the year before, and for that it was called purposely in respect of the Scotch war) there were no laws made to be remembered. Only there passed a law, at the suit of the merchant-adventurers of England, against the merchant-adventurers of London, for monopolizing and exacting upon the trade: which it seemeth they did a little to save themselves, after the hard time they had sustained by want of trade. But those innovations were taken away by parliament.

But it was fatal to the king to fight for his money; and though he avoided to fight with enemies abroad, yet he was still enforced to fight for it with rebels at home: For no sooner began the subsidy to be levied in Cornwall, but the people there began to grudge and murmur. The Cornish being a race of men, stout of stomach, mighty of body and limb, and that lived hardly in a barren country, and many of them could (for a need) live underground, that were tanners. They muttered extremely, that it was a thing not to suffer, that for a little stir of the Scots, soon blown over, they should be thus grinded to power with payments: and said it was for them to pay that had too much, and lived idly. But they would eat their bread that they got with the sweat of their brows, and no man should take it from them. And as in the tides of people once up, there want not commonly stirring winds to make them more rough; so this people did light upon two ringleaders, or captains of the rout. The one was Michael Joseph, a blacksmith or farrier of Bodmin, a notable talking fellow, and no less desirous to be talked of. The other was Thomas Flammock, a lawyer, that by telling his neighbours commonly upon any occasion that the law was on their side, had gotten great sway among them. This man talked learnedly, and as if he could tell how to make a rebellion, and never break the peace. He told the people, that subsidies were not to be granted, nor levied in this case; that is, for wars of Scotland: For that the law had provided another course, by service of escuage, for those journeys; much less when all was quiet, and war was made but a pretence to poll and pill the people. And therefore that it was good that they should not stand like sheep before the shearsers, but put on harness, and take weapons in their hands. Yet to do no creature hurt; but go and deliver the king a strong petition, for the laying down of those grievous payments, and for the punishment of those that had given him that counsel; to make others beware how they did the like in time to come. And said, for his part he did not see how they could do the duty of true Englishmen, and good liege-men, except they did deliver the king from such wicked ones, that would destroy both him and the country. Their aim was at archbishop Morton, and sir Reginald Bray, who were the king's spies in this envy.

After that these two, Flammock and the blacksmith, had by joint and several prattlings, found tokens of consent in the multitude, they offered themselves to lead them, until they should hear of better men to be their leaders, which they said would be e'er long: Telling them farther, that they would be but their servants, and first in every danger; but doubted not but to make both the west-end and the east-end of England to meet in so good a quarrel; and that all (rightly understood) was but for the king's service. The people upon these seditious instigations, did arm, (most of them with bows, and arrows, and bills, and such other weapons of rude and country people) and forthwith under the command of their leaders, (which in such cases is ever at pleasure) marched out of Cornwall through Devonshire,
flire, unto Taunton in Somersetteshire, without any slaughter, violence, or spoil of the country. At Taunton they killed in fury an officious and eager commissioner for the subsidy, whom they called the provost of Perin. Thence they marched to Wells, where the lord Audley (with whom their leaders had before some secret intelligence) a nobleman of an ancient family, but unquiet and popular, and aspiring to ruin, came in to them, and was by them (with great gladness and cries of joy) accepted as their general; they being now proud that they were led by a nobleman. The lord Audley led them on from Wells to Salisbury, and from Salisbury to Winchester.

Thence the foolish people, who (in effect) led their leaders, had a mind to be led into Kent, fancying that the people there would join with them; contrary to all reason or judgment, considering the Kentish men had shewed great loyalty and affection to the king so lately before. But the rude people had heard Flammock say, that Kent was never conquered, and that they were the freest people of England. And upon these vain noises, they looked for great matters at their hands, in a cause which they conceited to be for the liberty of the subject. But when they were come into Kent, the country was so well settled, both by the king's late kind usage towards them, and by the credit and power of the earl of Kent, the lord Abergavenny, and the lord Cobham, as neither gentleman nor yeoman came in to their aid; which did much damp and dismay many of the simpler sort; insomuch as divers of them did secretly fly from the army, and went home: but the sturdier sort, and those that were most engaged, stood by it, and rather waxed proud, than failed in hopes and courage. For as it did somewhat appall them, that the people came not into them; so it did no less encourage them, that the king's forces had not set upon them, having marched from the west unto the east of England. Wherefore they kept on their way, and encamped upon Blackheath, between Greenwich and Eltham; threatening either to bid battle to the king, (for now the seas went higher than to Morton and Bray) or to take London within his view; imagining with themselves, there to find no less fear than wealth.

But to return to the king. When first he heard of this commotion of the Cornish men occasioned by the subsidy, he was much troubled therewith; not for it itself, but in regard of the concurrence of other dangers that did hang over him at that time. For he doubted lest a war from Scotland, a rebellion from Cornwall, and the practices and conspiracies of Perkin and his partakers, would come upon him at once: Knowing well, that it was a dangerous triplicity to a monarchy, to have the arms of a foreigner, the discontent of subjects, and the title of a pretender to meet. Nevertheless the occasion took him in some part well provided. For as soon as the parliament had broken up, the king had presently raised a powerful army to war upon Scotland. And king James of Scotland likewise on his part, had made great preparations, either for defence, or for new affailing of England. But as for the king's forces, they were not only in preparation, but in readiness presently to set forth, under the conduct of D'Aubigney the lord chamberlain. But as soon as the king understood of the rebellion of Cornwall, he stayed those forces, retaining them for his own service and safety. But therewithal he dispatched the earl of Surrey into the north, for the defence and strength of those parts, in case the Scots should stir. But for the course he held towards the rebels, it was utterly differing from his former custom and practice; which was ever full of forwardness and celerity to make head against them, or to set upon them as soon as ever they were in action.
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

action. This he was wont to do. But now, besides that he was attempered by years, and less in love with dangers, by the continued fruition of a crown; it was a time when the various appearance to his thoughts of perils of several natures, and from divers parts, did make him judge it his best and surest way, to keep his strength together in the seat and center of his kingdom: According to the ancient Indian emblem, in such a swelling season, to hold the hand upon the middle of the bladder, that no side might rise. Besides, there was no necessity put upon him to alter his counsel. For neither did the rebels spoil the country, in which case it had been dishonour to abandon his people: neither on the other side did their forces gather or increase, which might have driven him to precipitate and affail them before they grew too strong. And lastly, both reason of estate and war seemed to agree with this course: For that insurrections of base people are commonly more furious in their beginnings. And by this means also he had them the more at advantage, being tired and harassed with a long march; and more at mercy, being cut off far from their country, and therefore not able by any sudden flight to get or retreat, and to renew the troubles.

When therefore the rebels were encamped on Blackheath upon the hill, whence they might behold the city of London, and the fair valley about it; the king knowing well, that it stood him upon, by how much the more he had hitherto protracted the time in not encountering them, by so much the sooner to dispatch with them, that it might appear to have been no coldness in fore-flowing, but wisdom in choosing his time; resolved with all speed to assault them, and yet with that providence and surety, as should leave little to venture or fortune. And having very great and puissant forces about him, the better to master all events and accidents, he divided them into three parts; the first was led by the earl of Oxford in chief, assisted by the earls of Essex and Suffolk. These noblemen were appointed, with some cornets of horse, and bands of foot, and good store of artillery, wheeling about to put themselves beyond the hill where the rebels were encamped; and to belet all the skirts and descents thereof, except those that lay towards London; thereby to have these wild beasts (as it were) in a toil. The second part of his forces (which were those that were to be most in action, and upon which he relied most for the fortune of the day) he did assign to be led by the lord chamberlain, who was appointed to set upon the rebels in front, from that side which is toward London. The third part of his forces (being likewise great and brave forces) he retained about himself, to be ready upon all events to restore the fight, or consummate the victory; and mean while to secure the city. And for that purpose he encamped in person in stout George's fields, putting himself between the city and the rebels. But the city of London (especially at the first) upon the near encamping of the rebels, was in great tumult: As it useth to be with wealthy and populous cities, especially those which being for greatness and fortune queens of their regions; who seldom fee out of their windows, or from their towers, an army of enemies. But that which troubled them most, was the conceit, that they dealt with a rout of people, with whom there was no composition or condition, or orderly treating, if need were; but likely to be bent altogether upon rapine and spoil. And although they had heard that the rebels had behaved themselves quietly and modestly by the way as they went; yet they doubted much that would not last, but rather make them more hungry, and more in appetite to fall upon spoil in the end. Wherefore there was great running to and fro of people, some to the gates, some to
to the walls, some to the water-side; giving themselves alarms and panic
fears continually. Nevertheless both Tate the lord mayor, and Shaw and
Haddon the sheriffs, did their parts stoutly and well, in arming and order-
ing the people. And the king likewise did adjourn some captains of experience
in the wars, to advise and assist the citizens. But soon after, when they un-
derstood that the king had so ordered the matter, that the rebels must win
three battles, before they could approach the city, and that he had put his
own person between the rebels and them, and that the great care was, ra-
ther how to impound the rebels that none of them might escape, than that
any doubt was made to vanquish them; they grew to be quiet and out of
fear. The rather, for the confidence they reposed (which was not small) in
the three leaders, Oxford, Essex, and D'Aubigny; all men well famed and
loved amongst the people. As for Jasper duke of Bedford, whom the king
used to employ with the rest in his wars, he was then sick, and died soon
after.

It was the two and twentieth of June, and a Saturday, (which was the
day of the week the king fancied,) when the battle was fought; though the
king had by all the art he could devise, given out a false day, as if he pre-
pared to give the rebels battle on the Monday following, the better to find
them unprovided, and in disarray. The lords that were appointed to circle
the hill, had some days before planted themselves (as at the receipt) in
places convenient. In the afternoon, towards the decline of the day, (which
was done the better to keep the rebels in opinion that they should not fight
that day,) the lord D'Aubigny marched on towards them, and first beat some
troops of them from Deptford-bridge, where they fought manfully: but
being in no great number were soon driven back, and fled up to their main at-
demy upon the hill. The army at that time hearing of the approach of the
king's forces, were putting themselves in array, not without much confu-
asion. But neither had they placed upon the first high ground towards the
bridge, any forces to second the troops below, that kept the bridge; neither
had they brought forwards their main battle, (which stood in array far into
the heath) near to the ascent of the hill. So that the earl with his forces
mounted the hill, and recovered the plain without resistance. The lord
D'Aubigny charged them with great fury: insomuch as it had like (by acci-
dent) to have branded the fortune of the day. For by inconsiderate for-
wardness in fighting in the head of his troops, he was taken by the rebels,
but immediately rescued and delivered. The rebels maintained the fight for
a small time, and for their persons shewed no want of courage; but being
ill armed, and ill led, and without horse or artillery, they were with no
great difficulty cut in pieces, and put to flight. And for their three leaders,
the lord Audley, the blacksmith, and Flammock, (as commonly the captains
of commotions are but half-couraged men) suffered themselves to be taken
alive. The number slain on the rebels part were some two thousand men;
their army amounting (as it is said) unto the number of sixteen thousand.
The rest were (in effect) all taken; for that the hill (as was said) was en-
compassed with the king's forces round about. On the king's part there
died about three hundred, most of them shot with arrows, which were re-
ported to be of the length of a tailor's yard; so strong and mighty a bow
the Cornish-men were said to draw.

The victory thus obtained, the king created divers bannerets, as well upon
Blackheath, where his lieutenant had won the field, (whither he rode in
person to perform the said creation) as in St. George's Fields, where his own
VOL. III.
perion had been encamped. And for matter of liberality, he did (by open edict) give the goods of all the prisoners unto those that had taken them, either to take them in kind, or compound for them, as they could. After matter of honour and liberality, followed matter of severity and execution. The lord Audley was led from Newgate to Towerhill, in a paper coat painted with his own arms; the arms revered, the coat torn, and at Towerhill beheaded. Flammock and the blacksmith were hanged, drawn and quartered at Tyburn: the blacksmith taking pleasure upon the hurdle (as it seemeth by words that he uttered) to think that he should be famous in after-times. The king was once in mind to have sent down Flammock and the blacksmith to have been executed in Cornwall, for the more terror: but being advertised that the country was yet unquiet and boiling, he thought better not to irritate the people farther. All the rest were pardoned by proclamation, and to take out their pardons under seal, as many as would. So that more than the blood drawn in the field, the king did satisfy himself with the lives of only three offenders, for the expiation of this great rebellion.

It was a strange thing to observe the variety and inequality of the king's executions and pardons: and a man would think it at the first, a kind of lottery or chance. But looking into it more nearly, one shall find there was reason for it, much more, perhaps, than after so long a distance of time, we can now discern. In the Kentish commotion, (which was but an handful of men) there were executed to the number of one hundred and fifty: but in this so mighty a rebellion but three. Whether it were that the king could not to irritate the people farther. All the rest were pardoned by proclamation, and to take out their pardons under seal, as many as would. So that more than the blood drawn in the field, the king did satisfy himself with the lives of only three offenders, for the expiation of this great rebellion.

After the Cornish men were defeated, there came from Calais to the king an honourable embassage from the French king, which had arrived at Calais a month before, and there was stayed in respect of the troubles, but honourably entertained and defrayed. The king, at their first coming, sent unto them, and prayed them to have patience, till a little smoke, that was raised in his country, were over, which would soon be: Slighting (as his manner was) that openly, which nevertheless he intended seriously. This embassage concerned no great affair, but only the prolongation of days for payment of monies, and some other particulars of the frontiers. And it was (indeed) but a wooing embassage, with good respects to entertain the king in good affection; but nothing was done, or handled, to the derogation of the king's late treaty with the Italians.

But during the time that the Cornish men were in their march towards London, the king of Scotland well advertised of all that passed, and knowing himself sure of war from England, whenever those tiffs were appeased, neglected not his opportunity: But thinking the king had his hands full, entered the frontiers of England again with an army, and besieged the castle of Norham in person, with part of his forces, sending the rest to forage the country. But Fox bishop of Durham, (a wise man, and one that could see through the present to the future,) doubting as much before, had caufed his castle of Norham to be strongly fortified, and furnished with all kind of munition: and had manned it likewise with a very great number of
of tall soldiers, more than for the proportion of the castle, reckoning rather upon a sharp assault, than a long siege. And for the country likewise, he had caused the people to withdraw their cattle and goods into fast places, that were not easy of approach; and sent in post to the earl of Surrey (who was not far off in Yorkshire) to come in diligence to the succour. So as the Scotch king both failed of doing good upon the castle, and his men had but a catching harvest of their spoils: And when he understood that the earl of Surrey was coming on with great forces, he returned back into Scotland. The earl finding the castle freed, and the enemy retired, pursued with all celerity into Scotland, hoping to have overtaken the Scotch king, and to have given him battel. But not attaining him in time, set down before the castle of Aton, one of the strongest places (then esteemed) between Berwick and Edinburgh, which in a small time he took. And soon after, the Scotch king retiring farther into his country, and the weather being extraordinary foul and stormy, the earl returned into England. So that the expeditions on both parts were (in effect) but a castle taken; and a castle disused; not answerable to the power of the forces, nor to the heat of the quarrel, nor to the greatness of the expectation.

Amongst these troubles, both civil and external, came into England from Spain, Peter Hialas, some call him Elias, (surely he was the forerunner of the good hap that we enjoy at this day: for his embassage set the truce between England and Scotland; the truce drew on the peace, the peace the marriage, and the marriage the union of the kingdoms) a man of great wisdom, and (as those times were) not unlearned; sent from Ferdinand and Isabella king and queen of Spain, unto the king, to treat a marriage between Katharine their second daughter, and prince Arthur. This treaty was by him set in a very good way, and almost brought to perfection. But it so fell out by the way, that upon some conference which he had with the king touching this business, the king (who had a great dexterity in getting suddenly into the bosom of embassadors of foreign princes, if he liked the men; in so much as he would many times communicate with them of his own affairs, yea, and employ them in his service) fell into discourse incidently: concerning the ending of the debates and differences with Scotland. For the king naturally did not love the barren wars with Scotland, though he made his profit of the noise of them. And he wanted not in the council of Scotland, those that would advise their king to meet him at the half way, and to give over the war with England, pretending to be good patriots, but indeed favouring the affairs of the king. Only his heart was too great to begin with Scotland for the motion of peace. On the other side, he had met with an ally of Ferdinand of Aragon, as fit for his turn as could be. For after that king Ferdinand had upon assured confidence of the marriage to succeed, taken upon him the person of a fraternal ally to the king, he would not let (in a Spanish gravity) to counsel the king in his own affairs. And the king on his part not being wanting to himself, but making use of every man's humours, made his advantage of this in such things as he thought either not decent, or not pleasant to proceed from himself, putting them off as done by the counsel of Ferdinand. Wherefore he was content that Hialas (as in a matter moved and advised from Hialas himself) should go into Scotland, to treat of a concord between the two kings. Hialas took it upon him, and coming to the Scotch king, after he had with much art brought king James to hearken to the more safe and quiet counsels, wrote unto the king, that he hoped that
peace would with no great difficulty cement and close, if he would send
some wise and temperate counsellor of his own, that might treat of the
conditions. Whereupon the king directed bishop Fox, (who at that time
was at his castle of Norham) to confer with Hials, and they both to treat
with some commissioners deputed from the Scots King. The commissio-
ners on both sides met. But after much dispute upon the articles and con-
ditions of peace, propounded upon either part, they could not conclude a
peace. The chief impediment thereof, was the demand of the king to
have Perkin delivered into his hands, as a reproach to all kings, and a per-
son not protected by the law of nations. The king of Scotland on the
other side peremptorily denied so to do, saying, that he (for his part) was no
competent judge of Perkin's title. But that he had received him as a sup-
pliant, protected him as a person fled for refuge, espoused him with his
kinswoman, and aided him with his arms, upon the belief that he was a
prince. And therefore that he could not now with his honour so unrip and
(in a fort) put a lye upon all that he had said and done before, as to deliver
him up to his enemies. The bishop likewise (who had certain proud in-
structions from the king, at the least in the front, though there were a
plain clause at the foot, that remitted all to the bishop's discretion, and re-
quired him by no means to break off in ill terms) after that he had failed
to obtain the delivery of Perkin, did move a second point of his instruc-
tions, which was, that the Scots king would give the king an interview in per-
son at Newcastle. But this being reported to the Scots king, his answer
was, that he meant to treat a peace, and not to go a begging for it. The
bishop also (according to another article of his instructions) demanded re-
sitution of the spoils taken by the Scots, or damages for the same. But the
Scots commissioners answered, that that was but as water spilt upon the
ground, which could not be gotten up again; and that the king's people
were better able to bear the loss, than their master to repair it. But in the
end (as persons capable of reason) on both sides they made rather a kind of
recess, than a breach of treaty, and concluded upon a truce for some months
following. But the king of Scotland, though he would not formally retract
his judgment of Perkin, wherein he had engaged himself so far, yet in his
private opinion, upon often speech with the Englishmen, and divers other
advertisements, began to suspect him for a counterfeit. Wherefore in a no-
blesse fashion he called him unto him, and recounted the benefits and favours
that he had done him in making him his ally, and in provoking a mighty
and opulent king by an offensive war in his quarrel, for the space of two
years together. Nay more, that he had refused an honourable peace,
whereof he had a fair offer, if he would have delivered him; and that to
keep his promise with him, he had deeply offended all his nobles and peo-
ple, whom he might not hold in any long discontent: And therefore re-
quired him to think of his own fortunes, and to chuse out some fitter place
for his exile. Telling him withal, that he could not say, but the English
had forsaken him before the Scots; for that upon two several trials, none
had declared themselves on his side. But nevertheless he would make good
what he said to him at his first receiving, which was, that he should not
repent him, for putting himself into his hands; for that he would not cast
him off, but help him with shipping and means to transport him where
he should desire. Perkin not deserting at all from his flange-like greatnes,
answered the king in few words, that he saw his time was not yet come;
but whatsoever his fortunes were, he should both think and speak honour of
the
the king. Taking his leave, he would not think on Flanders, doubting it was but hollow ground for him, since the treaty of the arch-duke concluded the year before; but took his lady, and such followers as would not leave him, and sailed over into Ireland.

This twelfth year of the king, a little before this time, pope Alexander (who loved best those princes that were farthest off, and with whom he had left to do) taking very thankfully the king's late entrance into league for the defence of Italy, did remunerate him with an hallowed sword and cap of maintenance, lent by his nuncio. Pope Innocent had done the like, but it was not received in that glory: for the king appointed the mayor and his brethren to meet the pope's orator at London bridge, and all the streets between the bridge foot and the palace of Paul's (where the king then lay) were garnished with the citizens, standing in their liveries. And the morrow after, (being Allhallows day) the king, attended with many of his prelates, nobles, and principal courtiers, went in procession to Paul's, and the cap and sword were born before him. And after the procession, the king himself remaining seated in the quire, the lord archbishop, upon the greece of the quire, made a long oration: setting forth the greatness and eminency of that honour which the pope (in these ornaments and ensigns of benediction) had done the king; and how rarely, and upon what high deserts, they used to be bestowed: And then recited the king's principal acts and merits, which had made him appear worthy in the eyes of his holiness, of this great honour.

All this while the rebellion of Cornwall, (whereof we have spoken) seem'd to have no relation to Perkin; save that perhaps Perkin's proclamation had fricken upon the right vein, in promising to lay down exactions and payments, and so had made them now and then have a kind thought on Perkin. But now these bubbles by much stirring began to meet, as they use to do upon the top of water. The king's lenity (by that time the Cornish rebels, who were taken and pardoned, and as it was said, many of them fold by them that had taken them, for twelve pence and two shillings a piece, were come down into their countrey) had rather imboldened them than reclaimed them; infomuch as they stuck not to say to their neighbours and countrymen, that the king did well to pardon them, for that he knew he should leave few subjects in England, if he hanged all that were of their mind: and began whetting and inciting one another to renew the commotion. Some of the subtlest of them hearing of Perkin's being in Ireland, found means to send to him to let him know, that if he would come over to them, they would serve him.

When Perkin heard this news, he began to take heart again, and advised upon it with his council, which were principally three; Herne a mercer, that had fled for debt; Skelton a tailor, and Astley a scrivener; for secretary Friou was gone. Thrice told him, that he was mightily overseen, both when he went into Kent, and when he went into Scotland; the one being a place so near London, and under the king's nose; and the other a nation so dilated with the people of England, that if they had loved him never so well, yet they would never have taken his part in that company. But if he had been so happy, as to have been in Cornwall at the first, when the people began to take arms there, he had been crowned at Welfminfter before this time. For these kings (as he had now experience) would fell poor princes for shoes. But he must rely wholly upon people; and therefore advised him to sail over with all possible speed into Cornwall: which accor-
having in his company four small barks, with some six score or seven score fighting men. He arrived in September at Whitsand-Bay, and forthwith came to Bodmin the blacksmith's town; where there assembled unto him to the number of three thousand men of the rude people. There he set forth a new proclamation, strouking the people with his promises, and humouring them with invectives against the king and his government. And as it fareth with smoke, that never loseth it felf till it be at the higheft; he did now before his end raise his style, entitling himfelf no more Richard duke of York, but Richard the fourth king of England. His council advifed him by all means to make himfelf maifter of some good walled town; as well to make his men find the sweetness of rich spoils, and to allure to him all loofe and loft people, by like hopes of booty; as to be a fure retreat to his forces, in cafe they should have any ill day, or unlucky chance in the field. Wherefore they took heart to them, and went on, and befieged the city of Exeter, the principal town for strength and wealth in thofe parts.

When they were come before Exeter, they forbore to ufe any force at the ftrift, but made continual shouts and outcries to terrify the inhabitants. They did likewise in divers places call and talk to them from under the walls, to join with them, and be of their party; telling them, that the king would make them another London, if they would be the first town that fhould acknowledge him. But they had not the wit to fend to them in any orderly fahion, agents, or choft men, to tempt them, and to treat with them. The citizens on their part fhewed themfelves stout and loyal subjects: neither was there fo much as any tumult or divifion amongft them, but all prepared themfeft for a valiant defence, and making good the town. For well they faw, that the rebels Were of no fuch number or power, that they needed to fear them as yet; and well they hoped, that before their numbers increafed, the king's succours would come in. And how­soever, they thought it the extreameft of evils, to put themfelves at the mer­cy of thofe hungry and diforderly people. Wherefore setting all things in good order within the town, they nevertheless let down with cords from several parts of the walls privily, feveral meffengers (that if one came to mifchance, another might pafs on) which fhould advertife the king of the fiate of the town, and implore his aid. Perkin alfo doubted, that succours would come e'er long; and therefore refolved to ufe his utmoft force to aflault the town. And for that purpofe having mounted scaling ladders in divers places upon the walls, made at the fame inftant an attempt to force one of the gates. But having no artillery nor engines, and finding that he could do no good by ramming with logs of timber, nor by the ufe of iron bars, and iron crows, and fuch other means at hand, he had no way left him but to fet one of the gates on fire, which he did. But the citizens well perceiving the danger, before the gate could be fully confumed, block­ed up the gate, and fome space about it on the inside, with faggots and other fuel, which they likewife fet on fire, and fo repulfed fire with fire. And in the mean time raised up rampiers of earth, and call up deep trench­es, to serve instead of wall and gate. And for the scaladoes, they had fo bad fuccefs, as the rebels were driven from the walls with the lofs of two hundred men.

The king, when he heard of Perkin's fiege of Exeter, made fport with it, and faid to them that were about him, that the king of rafe-hells was landed in the weft, and that he hoped now to have the honour to fee him, which
which he could never yet do. And it appeared plainly to those that were about the king, that he was indeed much joyed with the news of Perkin's being in English ground, where he could have no retreat by land; thinking now, that he should be cured of those privy stitches, which he had had long about his heart, and had sometimes broken his sleep in the midst of all his felicity. And to set all men's hearts on fire, he did by all possible means let it appear, that those that should now do him service to make an end of these troubles, should be no less accepted of him, than he that came upon the eleventh hour, and had the whole wages of the day. Therefore now (like the end of a play) a great number came upon the stage at once. He sent the lord chamberlain, and the lord B. wink, and six Rice ap Thomas, with expedite forces to speed to Exeter to the rescue of the town, and to spread the fame of his own following in person with a royal army. The earl of Devonshire, and his son, with the Carews, and the Fulfordes, and other principal persons of Devonshire, (uncalled from the court, but hearing that the king's heart was so much bent upon this service) made haste with troops that they had raised, to be the first that should succour the city of Exeter, and prevent the king's succours. The duke of Buckingham likewise, with many brave gentlemen, put themselves in arms, not staying either the king's or the lord chamberlain's coming on, but making a body of forces of themselves, the more to endure their merit; signifying to the king their readiness, and desiring to know his pleasure. So that according to the proverb, in the coming down, every faint did help.

Perkin hearing this thunder of arms, and preparations against him from so many parts, raised his siege, and marched to Taunton; beginning already to squint one eye upon the crown, and another upon the sanctuary. Though the Cornish men were become like metal often fired and quenched, churlish, and that would sooner break than bow; swearing and vowing not to leave him, till the uttermost drop of their blood were spilt. He was at his rising from Exeter between six and seven thousand strong, many having come unto him after he was set before Exeter, upon fame of so great an enterprise, and to partake of the spoil; though upon the raising of his siege some did slip away. When he was come near Taunton, he dissembled all fear, and seemed all the day to use diligence, in preparing all things ready to fight. But about midnight, he fled with three score horse to Bewley in the new forest, where he and divers of his company registred themselves sanctuary men, leaving his Cornish men to the four winds. But yet thereby eating them of their vow, and using his wonted compassion, not to be by when his subjects' blood should be spilt. The king, as soon as he heard of Perkin's fight, sent presently five hundred horse to pursue and apprehend him, before he should get either to the sea, or to that fame little island, called a sanctuary. But they came too late for the latter of these. Therefore all they could do, was to bet the sanctuary, and to maintain a strong watch about it, till the king's pleasure were farther known. As for the rest of the rebels, they (being detested of their head) without stroke stricken, submitted themselves unto the king's mercy. And the king, who commonly drew blood (as physicians do) rather to save life than to spill it, and was never cruel when he was secure; now he saw the danger was past, pardoned them all in the end, except some few desperate persons, which he referred to be executed, the better to set off his mercy towards the rest. There were also sent with all speed some horse to Saint Michael's mount in Cornwall, where the lady Katharine Gordon was left by her husband, whom
in all fortunes she entirely loved; adding the virtues of a wife, to the virtues of her sex. The king sent in the greater diligence, not knowing whether she might be with child, whereby the busines would not have ended in Perkin's person. When she was brought to the king, it was commonly said, that the king received her not only with compassion, but with affection; pity giving more impression to her excellent beauty. Wherefore comfort- ing her, (to serve as well his eye, as his fame) he sent her to his queen to remain with her; giving her very honourable allowance for the support of her estate, which she enjoyed both during the king's life, and many years after. The name of the White-rose (which had been given to her husband's false title) was continued in common speech to her true beauty.

The king went forwards on his journey, and made a joyful entrance into Exeter, where he gave the citizens great commendations and thanks; and taking the sword he wore from his side, he gave it to the mayor, and commanded it should be ever after carried before him. There also he caused to be executed some of the ring-leaders of the Cornish men, in sacrifice to the citizens, whom they had put in fear and trouble. At Exeter the king consulted with his council whether he should offer life to Perkin if he would quit the sanctuary, and voluntarily submit himself. The council were divided in opinion: some advised the king to take him out of sanctuary perforce, and to put him to death, as in a case of necessity, which in itself dispenses with consecrated places, and things: wherein they doubted not also but the king should find the pope tractable to ratify his deed, either by declaration, or (at least) by indulgence. Others were of opinion, (since all was now safe, and no farther hurt could be done) that it was not worth the exposing of the king to new scandal and envy. A third sort fell upon the opinion, that it was not possible for the king ever, either to satisfy the world well touching the imposture, or to learn out the bottom of the conspiracy, except by promise of life and pardon, and other fair means, he should get Perkin into his hands. But they did all in their preambles much bemoan the king's case, with a kind of indignation: that a prince of his high wisdom and virtue, should have been so long and so oft exercised and vexed with idols. But the king saith, that it was the vexation of God Almighty himself to be vexed with idols, and therefore that it was not to trouble any of his friends: and that for himself, he always despised them; but was grieved that they had put his people to such trouble and misery. But (in conclusion) he leaned to the third opinion, and sent some to deal with Perkin: Who seeing himself prisoner, and destitute of all hopes, having tried princes and people, great and small, and found all either false, faint, or unfortunate, did gladly accept of the condition. The king did also (while he was at Exeter) appoint the lord Darcy, and others commissioners, for the finding of all such as were of any value, and had any hand or partaking in the aid or comfort of Perkin, or the Cornish men, either in the field or in the flight.

These commissioners proceeded with such strictness and severity, as did much obscure the king's mercy in sparing of blood, with the bleeding of so much treasure. Perkin was brought unto the king's court, but not to the king's presence; though the king (to satisfy his curiosity) saw him sometimes out of a window, or in passage. He was in thew at liberty, but guarded with all care and watch that was possible, and willed to follow the king to London. But from his first appearance upon the stage, in his new person of a cyecophant or jugler, instead of his former person of a prince, all men
men may think how he was exposed to the derision, not only of the courtiers, but also of the common people, who flocked about him as he went along; that one might know afar off, where the owl was, by the flight of birds: some mocking, some wondering, some cursing, some prying and picking matter out of his countenance and gesture to talk of: So that the false honour and respects which he had so long enjoyed, was plentifully repaid in scorn and contempt. As soon as he was come to London, the king gave also the city the solace of this may-game: for he was conveyed leisurely on horseback (but not in any ignominious fashion) through Cheapside and Cornhill, to the tower; and from thence back again to Westminster, with the *chum of a thousand taunts and reproaches. But to amend the *Cum chore. show, there followed a little distance off Perkin, an inward counsellor of his, one that had been serjeant farrier to the king. This fellow, when Perkin took sanctuary, chose rather to take an holy habit, than an holy place, and clad himself like an hermit, and in that weed wander'd about the country, till he was discovered and taken. But this man was bound hand and foot upon the horse, and came not back with Perkin, but was left at the tower, and within few days after executed. Soon after, now that Perkin could tell better what himself was, he was diligently examined; and after his confession taken, an extract was made of such parts of them, as were thought fit to be divulged, which was printed and dispersed abroad: wherein the king did himself no right: for as there was a laboured tale of particulars, of Perkin's father and mother, and grandfure and grandmother, and uncles and cousins, by names and surnames, and from what places he travelled up and down; so there was little or nothing to purpose of any thing concerning his designs, or any practices that had been held with him; nor the duchess of Burgundy her self, (that all the world did take knowledge of, as the person, that had put life and being into the whole business,) so much as named or pointed at. So that men missing of that they looked for, looked about for they knew not what, and were in more doubt than before: but the king chose rather not to satisfy, than to kindle coals. At that time also it did not appear by any new examinations or commitments, that any other person of quality was discovered or accused, though the king's duesends made that a doubt dormant.

About this time a great fire in the night-time suddenly began at the king's palace of Shene, near unto the king's own lodgings, whereby a great part of the building was consumed, with much costly household-stuff, which gave the king occasion of building from the ground; that fine pile of Richmond which is now standing.

Somewhat before this time also, there fell out a memorable accident: There was one Sebastian Gabato, a Venetian, dwelling in Bristol, a man seen and expert in cosmography and navigation. This man seeing the successes, and emulating perhaps the enterprize of Christoper Columbus in that fortunate discovery towards the south-west, which had been by him made some fix years before, conceited with himself, that lands might likewise be discovered towards the north-west. And surely it may be he had more firm and pregnant conjectures of it, than Columbus had of this at the first. For the two great islands of the old and new world, being (in the shape and making of them) broad towards the north, and pointed towards the south; it is likely, that the discovery first began where the lands did nearest meet. And there had been before that time a discovery of some lands, which they took to be islands, and were indeed the continent of America, towards the north-west.
northwest. And it may be, that some relation of this nature coming afterwards to the knowledge of Columbus, and by him suppressed, (desirous rather to make his enterprise the child of his science and fortune, than the follower of a former discovery) did give him better assurance, that all was not sea, from the west of Europe and Africa unto Asia, than either Seneca's prophecy, or Plato's antiquities, or the nature of the tides and land-winds, and the like, which were the conjectures that were given out, whereupon he should have relied: though I am not ignorant, that it was likewise laid unto the casual and wind-beaten discovery (a little before) of a Spanish pilot, who died in the house of Columbus. But this Gabato bearing the king, in hand, that he would find out an island endued with rich commodities, procured him to man and victual a ship at Bristol, for the discovery of that island: with whom ventured also three small ships of London merchants, fraught with some gros and light wares, fit for commerce with barbarous people. He failed (as he affirmed at his return, and made a chart thereof,) very far westwards, with a quarter of the north, on the north side of Tierra de Labrador, until he came to the latitude of sixty seven degrees and a half, finding the seas still open. It is certain also, that the king's fortune had a tender of that great empire of the West-Indies. Neither was it a refusal on the king's part, but a delay by accident, that put by so great an acquittal: for Chriftophorus Columbus refused by the king of Portugal, (who would not embrace at once both east and west) employed his Brother Bartholomeus Columbus unto king Henry, to negotiate for his discovery: and it so fortunate, that he was taken by pirates at sea, by which accidental impediment he was long ere he came to the king: so long, that before he had obtained a capitulation with the king for his brother, the enterprise by him was atchieved, and so the West-Indies by providence were then reserved for the crown of Castile. Yet this sharpen'd the king so, that not only in this voyage, but again in the sixteenth year of his reign, and likewise in the eighteenth thereof, he granted forth new commissions for the discovery and inventing of unknown lands.

In this fourteenth year also (by God's wonderful providence, that boweth things unto his will, and hangeth great weights upon small wires) there fell out a trifling and untoward accident, that drew on great and happy effects. During the truce with Scotland, there were certain Scotch young gentlemen that came into Norham town, and there made merry with some of the English of the town: And having little to do, went sometimes forth, and would stand looking upon the castle. Some of the garifon of the castle, observing this their doing twice or thrice, and having not their minds purged of the late ill blood of hostility, either suspected them, or quarrelled them for spies: whereupon they fell at ill words, and from words to blows; so that many were wounded of either side, and the Scots men, (being strangers in the town) had the worst; insomuch as some of them were slain, and the rest made haste home. The matter being complained on, and often debated before the wardens of the marches of both sides, and no good order taken: the king of Scotland took it to himself, and being much kindled, sent a herald to the king to make protestation, that if reparation were not done, according to the conditions of the truce, his king did denounce war. The king (who had often tried fortune, and was inclined to peace) made answer, that what had been done, was utterly against his will, and without his privity: but if the garifon soldiers had been in fault, he would see them punished, and the truce in all points to be preserved. But this answer seemed
feemed to the Scottish king but a delay, to make the complaint breathe out with time; and therefore it did rather exasperate him, than satisfy him. Bishop Fox, understanding from the king that the Scottish king was still discontent and impatient, being troubled that the occasion of breaking of the truce should grow from his men, sent many humble and deprecatory letters to the Scottish king to appease him. Whereupon king James, mollified by the bishop’s submissive and eloquent letters, wrote back unto him, that though he were in part moved by his letters, yet he should not be fully satisfied, except he spake with him, as well about the compounding of the present differences, as about other matters that might concern the good of both kingdoms. The bishop advising first with the king, took his journey for Scotland. The meeting was at Melrose, an abbey of the Cistercians, where the king then abode. The king first roundly uttered unto the bishop his offence conceived, for the insolent breach of truce, by his men of Norham castle: whereunto bishop Fox made such an humble and smooth answer, as it was like oil into the wound, whereby it began to heal: and this was done in the presence of the king and his council. After, the king spake with the bishop apart, and opened himself unto him, saying, that these temporary truces and peace were soon made, and soon broken; but that he desired a strainer amity with the king of England, discovering his mind; that if the king would give him in marriage the lady Margaret his eldest daughter, that indeed might be a knot indissoluble. That he knew well what place and authority the bishop deservedly had with his master: therefore, if he would take the business to heart, and deal in it effectually, he doubted not but it would succeed well. The bishop answered soberly, that he thought himself rather happy than worthy, to be an instrument in such a matter, but would do his best endeavour. Wherefore the bishop returning to the king, and giving account what had passed, and finding the king more than well disposed in it, gave the king advice; first to proceed to a conclusion of peace, and then to go on with the treaty of marriage by degrees. Hereupon a peace was concluded, which was published a little before Christmas, in the fourteenth year of the king’s reign, to continue for both the kings lives, and the over-liver of them, and a year after. In this peace there was an article contained, that no English man should enter into Scotland, and no Scottish man into England, without letters commendatory from the kings of either nation. This at the first sight might seem a means to continue a strangeness between the nations; but it was done to lock in the borderers.

This year there was also born to the king a third son, who was christened by the name of Edmund, and shortly after died. And much about the same time came news of the death of Charles the French king, for whom there were celebrated solemn and princely obsequies.

It was not long but Perkin (who was made of quicksilver, which is hard to hold or imprison) began to stir. For deceiving his keepers, he took him to his heels, and made speed to the sea-coasts. But presently all corners were laid for him, and such diligent pursuit and search made, as he was fain to turn back, and get him to the house of Bethlehem, called the priory of Scone, (which had the privilege of sanctuary) and put himself into the hands of the prior of that monastery. The prior was thought an holy man, and much reverenced in those days. He came to the king, and befought the king for Perkin’s life only, leaving him otherwise to the king’s discretion. Many about the king were again more hot than ever, to have the king to
take him forth, and hang him. But the king, (that had an high stomach, and could not hate any that he despised) bid, take him forth, and set the knave in the stocks. And so promising the prior his life, he caused him to be brought forth. And within two or three days after, upon a scaffold set up in the palace court at Westminster, he was fettered and set in the stocks for a whole day. And the next day after, the like was done by him at the cross in Cheapside, and in both places he read his confession, of which we made mention before; and was from Cheapside conveyed and laid up in the tower. Notwithstanding all this, the king was (as was partly touched before) grown to be such a partner with fortune, as no body could tell what actions the one, and what the other owned. For it was believed generally, that Perkin was betrayed, and that this escape was not without the king's privy, who had him all the time of his flight in a line; and that the king did this, to pick a quarrel to him to put him to death, and to be rid of him at once: but this is not probable. For that the same instruments who observed him in his flight, might have kept him from getting into sanctuary.

But it was ordained, that this winding-ivy of a Plantagenet, should kill the true tree itself. For Perkin, after he had been a while in the tower, began to infinuate himself into the favour and kindness of his keepers, servants to the lieutenant of the tower sir John Digby, being four in number; Strangeways, Bleuet, Aftwood and long Roger. These varlets, with mountains of promises he fought to corrupt, to obtain his escape; but knowing well, that his own fortunes were made so contemptible, as he could feed no man's hopes, (and by hopes he must work, for rewards he had none) he had contrived with himself a vast and tragical plot; which was, to draw into his company Edward Plantagenet earl of Warwick, then prisoner in the tower; whom the weary life of a long imprisonment, and the often and renewing fears of being put to death, had sobered to take any impression of counsel for his liberty. This young prince he thought these servants would look upon, though not upon himself; and therefore after that by some message by one or two of them, he had taunted of the earl's content; it was agreed that these four should murder their master the lieutenant secretly in the night, and make their bezant of such money and portable goods of his, as they should find ready at hand, and get the keys of the tower, and presently let forth Perkin and the earl. But this conspiracy was revealed in time, before it could be executed. And in this again the opinion of the king's great wisdom did surcharge him with a sinister name, that Perkin was but his bait, to entrap the earl of Warwick. And in the very instant while this conspiracy was in working, (as if that also had been the king's industry) it was fatal, that there should break forth a counterfeit earl of Warwick, a cordwainer's son, whose name was Ralph Wilford; a young man taught and set on by an Augustin friar, called Patrick. They both from the parts of Suffolk, came forwards into Kent, where they did not only privily and underhand give out, that this Wilford was the true earl of Warwick, but also the friar finding some light credence in the people, took the boldness in the pulpit to declare as much, and to incite the people to come in to his aid. Whereupon they were both presently apprehended, and the young fellow executed, and the friar condemned to perpetual imprisonment. This also happening so opportunely, to represent the danger to the king's estate from the earl of Warwick, and thereby to colour the king's severity that followed; together with the madness of the friar so vainly and desperately
rately to divulge a treason, before it had gotten any manner of strength; and the saving of the friar's life, which nevertheless was (indeed) but the privilege of his order; and the pity in the common people (which if it run in a strong stream doth ever cast up scandal and envy) made it generally rather talked than believed, that all was but the king's device. But howsoever it were, hereupon Perkin (that had offended against grace now the third time) was at the last proceeded with, and by commissioners of oyer and terminer, arraigned at Westminster, upon divers treasons committed and perpetrated after his coming on land within this kingdom (for so the judges advised, for that he was a foreigner,) and condemned, and a few days after executed at Tyburn; where he did again openly read his confession, and take it upon his death to be true. This was the end of this little cockatrice of a king, that was able to destroy those that did not espie him first. It was one of the longest plays of that kind that hath been in memory, and might perhaps have had another end, if he had not met with a king both wise, stout and fortunate.

As for Perkin's three counsellors, they had registred themselves sanctuary-men when their master did; and whether upon pardon obtained, or continuance within the privilege, they came not to be proceeded with.

There were executed with Perkin, the mayor of Cork and his son, who had been principal abettors of his treasons. And soon after were likewise condemned eight other persons about the tower conspiracy, whereof four were the lieutenant's men: But of those eight, but two were executed. And immediately after was arraigned before the earl of Oxford, (then for the time high steward of England) the poor prince, the earl of Warwick; not for the attempt to escape simply (for that was not acted; and besides, the imprisonment not being for treason, the escape by law could not be treason) but for conspiring with Perkin to raise sedition, and to destroy the king: and the earl confessing the indictment, had judgment, and was shortly after beheaded on tower-hill.

This was also the end, not only of this noble and commiserable person Edward the earl of Warwick, eldest son to the duke of Clarence; but likewise of the line male of the Plantagenets, which had flourished in great royalty and renown, from the time of the famous king of England, king Henry the second. Howbeit it was a race often dipped in their own blood. It hath remained since only transplanted into other names, as well of the imperial line, as of other noble houses. But it was neither guilt of crime, nor reason of state, that could quench the envy that was upon the king for this execution: so that he thought good to export it out of the land, and to lay it upon his newly, Ferdinando king of Spain. For these two kings understanding one another at half a word, so it was that there were letters shewed out of Spain, whereby in the passages concerning the treaty of the marriage, Ferdinando had written to the king in plain terms, that he saw no assurance of his succession, as long as the earl of Warwick lived; and that he was loth to send his daughter to troubles and dangers. But hereby, as the king did in some part remove the envy from himself; so he did not observe, that he did withal bring a kind of malediction and infaunting upon the marriage, as an ill prognostick: Which in event so far proved true, as both prince Arthur enjoyed a very small time after the marriage, and the lady Katharine her self (a sad and a religious woman) long after, when king Henry the eighth his resolution of a divorce from her, was first made known to her, used some words, that she had not offended, but it was a judgment
This fifteenth year of the king, there was a great plague both in London and in divers parts of the kingdom. Wherefore the king, after often changing of places, (whether to avoid the danger of the ficknefs, or to give occasion of an interview with the archduke, or both) failed over with his queen to Calais. Upon his coming thither, the arch-duke fent an honourable embaffege unto him, as well to welcome him into thofe parts, as to let him know, that (if it pleafed him) he would come and do him reverence. But it was faid withal, that the king might be pleafed to appoint some place, that was out of any walled town or fortrefs, for that he had denied the fame upon like occasion to the French king: And though he faid he made a great difference between the two kings, yet he would be loth to give a precedent, that might make it after to be expected at his hands, by another whom he trufted lefs.

The king accepted of the courtefy, and admitted of his excufe, and appointed the place to be at Saint Peter's church without Calais. But withal he did vifit the arch-duke with embaffege fent from himfelf, which were the lord Saint John, and the fecretary; unto whom the arch-duke did the honour, as (going to mass at Saint Omer's) to fet the lord Saint John on his right hand, and the fecretary on his left, and fo to ride between them to church. The day appointed for the interview the king went on horfeback fome distance from Saint Peter's church, to receive the archduke: And upon their approaching, the archduke made hafte to light, and offered to hold the king's firrup at his alighting; which the king would not permit, but defcending from horfeback, they embraced with great affection; and withdrawing into the church to a place prepared, they had long conference, not only upon the confirmation of former treaties, and the freeing of commerce, but upon crofs marriages, to be had between the duke of York the king's second fon, and the arch-duke's daughter; and again between Charles the arch-duke's fon and heir, and Mary, the king's second daughter. But these blosfoms of unripe marriages, were but friendly wishes, and the airs of loving entertainment; though one of them came afterwards to conclusion in treaty, though not in effect. But during the time that the two princes converfed and communed together in the suburbs of Calais, the demonftrations on both fides were passing hearty and affectionate, especially on the part of the arch-duke: who (besides that he was a prince of an excellent good nature) being conscious to himself how drily the king had been ufed by his council in the matter of Perkin, did strive by all means to recover it in the king's affection. And having alfo his ears continually beaten with the councils of his father and father-in-law, who (in refpeét of their jealous hatred againil: the French king) did always advise the arch-duke to anchor himfelf upon the amity of king Henry of England; was glad upon this occasion to put in ure and practice their precepts, calling the king patron, and father, and protector, (thefe very words the king repeats, when he certified of the loving behaviour of the arch-duke to the city) and what elfe he could devife, to express his love and obfervance to the king. There came alfo to the king, the governour of Picardy, and the bailiff of Amiens, fent from Lewis the French king to do him honour, and to give him knowledge of his victory, and winning of the duchy of Milan. It feemeth the king was well pleafed with the honours he received from thofe parts, while he was at Calais; for he did himfelf certify all the news and occurrents of them in every particular from Calais, to the mayor.
mayor and aldermen of London, which (no doubt) made no small talk in the city. For the king, though he could not entertain the good-will of the citizens, as Edward the fourth did; yet by affability and other princely graces, did ever make very much of them, and apply himself to them.

This year also died John Morton, archbishop of Canterbury, chancellor of England, and cardinal. He was a wise man, and an eloquent, but in his nature harsh and haughty; much accepted by the king, but envied by the nobility, and hated of the people. Neither was his name left out of Perkin's proclamation for any good will, but they would not bring him in amongst the king's casting counters, because he had the image and superscription upon him of the pope, in his honour of cardinal. He went the king with secrecy and diligence, but chiefly because he was his old servant in his less fortunes: and also for that (in his affections) he was not without an inveterate malice against the house of York, under whom he had been in trouble. He was willing also to take envy from the king, more than the king was willing to put upon him: For the king cared not for subterfuges, but would stand envy, and appear in any thing that waste his mind; which made envy still grow upon him more universal, but less daring. But in the matter of exactions, time did after shew, that the bishop in feeding the king's humour, did rather temper it. He had been by Richard the third committed (as in custody) to the duke of Buckingham, whom he did secretly incite to revolt from king Richard. But after the duke was engaged, and thought the bishop should have been his chief pilot in the tempest, the bishop was gotten into the cock-boat, and fled over beyond seas. But whatsoever else was in the man, he deserveth a most happy memory, in that he was the principal mean of joining the two roses. He died of great years, but of strong health and powers.

The next year, which was the sixteenth year of the king, and the year of our Lord one thousand five hundred, was the year of jubilee at Rome. But pope Alexander, to save the hazard and charges of mens journeys to Rome, thought good to make over those graces by exchange, to such as would pay a convenient rate, seeing they could not come to fetch them. For which purpose was sent into England, Jasper Pons, a Spaniard, the pope's commissioneer, better chosen than were the commissioners of pope Leo afterwards employed for Germany; for he carried the busines with great wisdom, and semblance of holiness: Infomuch as he levied great sums of money within this land to the pope's use, with little or no scandal. It was thought the king shared in the money. But it appeareth by a letter which cardinal Adrian, the king's pensioner, wrote to the king from Rome some few years after, that this was not so. For this cardinal being to persuade pope Julius on the king's behalf, to expedite the bull of dispensation for the marriage between prince Henry and the lady Katharine, finding the pope difficult in granting thereof, doth use it as a principal argument concerning the king's merit towards that fee, that he had touched none of those deniers which had been levied by Pons in England. But that it might the better appear (for the satisfaction of the common people) that this was consecrate money, the same nuncio brought unto the king a brief from the pope, wherein the king was exhorted and summoned to come in person against the Turk: For that the pope (out of the care of an universal father) seeing almost under his eyes the successes and progesses of that great enemy of the faith, had had in the conclave, and with the assistance of the embassadours of foreign princes, divers consultations about an holy war, and a
general expedition of Christian princes against the Turk: wherein it was agreed and thought fit, that the Hungarians, Polonians, and Bohemians, should make a war upon Thracia; the French and Spaniards upon Graccia; and that the pope (willing to sacrifice himself in so good a cause) in person, and in company of the king of England, the Venetians, and such other states as were great in maritime power, would sail with a puissant navy through the Mediterranean unto Constantinople. And that to this end, his holiness had sent nuncio's to all Christian princes; as well for a cessation of all quarrels and differences amongst themselves, as for speedy preparations and contributions of forces and treasure for this sacred enterprise.

To this the king, (who understood well the court of Rome) made an answer rather solemn than serious: signifying, THAT no prince on earth should be more forward and obedient, both by his person, and by all his possible forces and fortunes, to enter into this sacred war, than himself. But that the distance of place was such, as no forces that he should raise for the seas, could be levied or prepared but with double the charge, and double the time, (at the least) that they might be from the other princes, that had their territories nearer adjoining. Besides, that neither the manner of his ships (having no galleys) nor the experience of his pilots and mariners, could be so apt for those seas as theirs. And therefore that his holiness might do well to move one of those other kings, who lay fitter for the purpose, to accompany him by sea. Whereby both all things would be sooner put in readiness, and with less charge, and the emulation and division of command, which might grow between those kings of France and Spain, if they should both join in the war by land upon Graeca, might be wisely avoided: And that for his part he would not be wanting in aids and contribution. Yet notwithstanding, if both these kings should refuse, rather than his holiness should go alone, he would wait upon him as soon as he could be ready: Always provided, that he might first see all differences of the Christian princes amongst themselves fully laid down and appeased, (as for his own part he was in none) and that he might have some good towns upon the coast in Italy, put into his hands, for the retreat and safeguard of his men.

WITH this answer Jasper Pons returned, nothing at all discontented: And yet this declaration of the king (as superficial as it was) gave him that reputation abroad, as he was not long after elected by the knights of Rhodes protector of their order; all things multiplying to honour, in a prince that hath gotten such high estimation for his wisdom and sufficiency.

THERE were thefe two last years some proceedings against heretics, which was rare in this king's reign, and rather by penances than by fire. The king had (though he were no good schoolman) the honour to convert one of them by dispute at Canterbury.

THIS year also, though the king were no more haunted with sprites, for that by the sprinkling, partly of blood, and partly of water, he had chased them away; yet nevertheless he had certain apparitions that troubled him, still shewing themselves from one region, which was the house of York. It came so to pass, that the earl of Suffolk, son to Elizabeth eldest sister to king Edward the fourth, by John Duke of Suffolk her second husband, and brother to John earl of Lincoln, that was slain at Stokesfield, being of an hafty and choleric disposition, had killed a man in his fury; whereupon the king gave him his pardon. But either willing to leave a cloud upon him, or the better to make him feel his grace, produced him openly to plead
plead his pardon. This wrought in the earl, as in a haughty stomach it
useth to do, for the ignominy printed deeper than the grace. Wherefore
he being discontent, fled secretly into Flanders, unto his aunt the duchess of
Burgundy. The king started at it. But being taught by troubles to use
fair and timely remedies, wrought so with him by messages, (the lady Marg­
et also growing, by often failing in her alchymy, weary of her experi­
ments; and partly, being a little sweetened, for that the king had not touch­
ed her name in the confession of Perkin) that he came over again upon
good terms, and was reconciled to the king.

In the beginning of the next year, being the seventeenth of the king, the
lady Katharine, fourth daughter of Ferdinando and Isabella, king and queen
of Spain, arrived in England at Plymouth the second of October, and was
married to prince Arthur in Paul's, the fourteenth of November following:
the prince being then about fifteen years of age, and the lady about eigh­
ten. The manner of her receiving, the manner of her entry into London,
and the celebrity of the marriage were performed with great and true mag­nificence, in regard of cost, show and order. The chief man that took the
care was bishop Fox, who was not only a grave counsellor for war or peace,
but also a good surveyor of works, and a good master of ceremonies, and
any thing else that was fit for the active part, belonging to the service of
the court or state of a great king. This marriage was almost seven years in
treaty, which was in part caused by the tender years of the marriage cou­
ple, especially of the prince; but the true reason was, that these two princes
being princes of great policy and profound judgment, stood a great time
looking one upon another's fortunes, how they would go; knowing well, that
in the mean time the very treaty itself gave abroad in the world a reputa­
tion of a strict conjunction and amity between them, which served on both
sides to many purposes, that their several affairs required, and yet they con­tinued still free. But in the end, when the fortunes of both the princes did
grow every day more and more prosperous and assured, and that looking all
about them, they saw no better conditions, they shut it up.

The marriage money the princes brought (which was turned over to
the king by act of renunciation) was two hundred thousand ducats: whereof
one hundred thousand were payable ten days after the solemnization, and
the other hundred thousand at two payments annual; but part of it to be in
jewels and plate, and a due course set down to have them justly and indif­
ferently prized. The jointure or advancement of the lady, was the third
part of the principality of Wales, and of the dukedom of Cornwall, and of
the earldom of Chester, to be after set forth in severalty: and in case she
came to be queen of England, her advancement was left indefinite, but
thus; that it should be as great, as ever any former queen of England had.

In all the devices and conceits of the triumphs of this marriage, there was
a great deal of astronomy: the lady being resembled to Helperus, and the
prince to Arcturus, and the old king Alphonus (that was the greatest astro­
nomer of kings, and was ancestor to the lady) was brought in, to be the
fortune-teller of the match; and whosoever had those toys in compiling,
they were not altogether pedantical: but you may be sure, that king Ar­
thur the Britain, and the descent of the lady Katharine from the house of
Lancaster, was in no wise forgotten. But (as it should seem) it is not good
to fetch fortunes from the stars: For this young prince (that drew upon him
at that time, not only the hopes and affections of his country, but the eyes
and expectation of foreigners) after a few months, in the beginning of

Vol. III. Q q q April,
April, deceased at Ludlow Castle, where he was sent to keep his reliance and court, as prince of Wales. Of this prince, in respect he died so young, and by reason of his father's manner of education, that did cast no great lucre upon his children, there is little particular memory: Only thus much remaineth, that he was very studious and learned, beyond his years, and beyond the custom of great princes.

There was a doubt ripped up in the times following, when the divorce of king Henry the eighth from the lady Katharine did so much busie the world, whether Arthur was bedded with his lady or no, whereby that matter in fact (of carnal knowledge) might be made part of the case. And it is true, that the lady her self denied it, or at least her council stood upon it, and would not blanch that advantage, although the plenitude of the pope's power of dispensing was the main question. And this doubt was kept long open, in respect of the two queens that succeeded, Mary and Elizabeth, whose legitimations were incompatible one with another, though their succession was settled by act of parliament. And the times that favour'd queen Mary's legitimation would have it believed, that there was no carnal knowledge between Arthur and Katharine. Not that they would seem to derogate from the pope's absolute power, to dispence even in that case; but only in point of honour, and to make the case more favourable and smooth: And the times that favour'd queen Elizabeth's legitimation, (which were the longer and the latter,) maintained the contrary. So much there remaineth in memory, that it was half a year's time between the creation of Henry prince of Wales, and prince Arthur's death, which was confirud to be, for to expect a full time, whereby it might appear, whether the lady Katharine were with child by prince Arthur, or no. Again, the lady her self procured a bull, for the better corroboration of the marriage, with a clause of (vel forfan cognitam) which was not in the first bull. There was given in evidence also, when the cause of the divorce was handled, a pleasant passage, which was; that in a morning prince Arthur, upon his up-rising from bed with her, called for drink, which he was not accustomed to do, and finding the gentleman of his chamber that brought him the drink to smi;e at it, and to note it, he said merrily to him; that he had been in the midst of Spain, which was an hot region, and his journey had made him dry; and that if the other had been in so hot a clime, he would have been dryer than he. Besides, the prince was upon the point of sixteen years of age when he died, and forward, and able in body.

The February following, Henry duke of York was created prince of Wales, and earl of Chester and Flint: for the dukedom of Cornwall devolved to him by statute. The king also being fast handed, and loth to part with a second dowry, but chiefly being affectionate both by his nature, and out of politic confiderations to continue the alliance with Spain, prevailed with the prince (though not without some reluctance, such as could be in those years, for he was not twelve years of age) to be contracted with the princely Katharine. The secret providence of God ordaining that marriage to be the occasion of great events and changes.

The same year were the espousals of James king of Scotland with the lady Margaret, the king's eldest daughter; which was done by proxy, and published at Paul's cross the five and twentieth of January, and Te Deum solemnly sung. But certain it is, that the joy of the city thereupon shewed, by ringing of bells and bonfires, and such other incense of the people, was more than could be expected, in a case of so great and fresh enmi-
ty between the nations, especially in London, which was far enough off from feeling any of the former calamities of the war: and therefore might be truly attributed to a secret instinct and inspiring, (which many times runneth not only in the hearts of princes, but in the pulse and veins of people,) touching the happiness thereby to ensue in time to come. This marriage was in August following consummated at Edinborough: the king bringing his daughter as far as Collinwood on the way, and then configning her to the attendance of the earl of Northumberland; who with a great troop of lords and ladies of honour, brought her into Scotland, to the king her husband.

This marriage had been in treaty by the space of almost three years, from the time that the king of Scotland did first open his mind to bishop Fox. The sum given in marriage by the king, was ten thousand pounds: and the jointure and advancement assured by the king of Scotland, was two thousand pounds a year, after king James his death, and one thousand pounds a year in present, for the lady's allowance or maintenance. This to be set forth in lands, of the best and most certain revenue. During the treaty, it is reported, that the king remitted the matter to his council; and that some of the table in the freedom of counsellors (the king being present) did put the case; that if God should take the king's two sons without issue, that then the kingdom of England would fall to the king of Scotland, which might prejudice the monarchy of England. Whereunto the king himself replied; that if that should be, Scotland would be but an accession to England, and not England to Scotland, for that the greater would draw the less: and that it was a safer union for England, than that of France. This passed as an oracle, and silenced those that moved the question.

The same year was fatal, as well for deaths as marriages, and that with equal temper. For the joys and feasts of the two marriages, were compensated with the mournings and funerals of prince Arthur, (of whom we have spoken) and of queen Elizabeth, who died in child-bed in the tower, and the child lived not long after. There died also that year sir Reginald Bray, who was noted to have had with the king the greatest freedom of any counsellor; but it was but a freedom the better to set off flattering. Yet he bare more than his just part of envy for the exactions.

At this time the king's estate was very prosperous, secured by the amity of Scotland, strengthened by that of Spain, cherished by that of Burgundy, all domestick troubles quenched, and all noise of war (like a thunder afar off) going upon Italy. Wherefore nature, which many times is happily contained and restrained by some bands of fortune, began to take place in the king; carrying (as with a strong tide) his affections and thoughts unto the gathering and heaping up of treasure. And as kings do more easily find instruments for their will and humour, than for their service and honour; he had gotten for his purpose, or beyond his purpose, two instruments, Empson and Dudley, (whom the people esteemed as his horse-leeches and shearers) bold men, and careles of fame, and that took toll of their master's grist. Dudley was of a good family, eloquent, and one that could put hateful busineses into good language. But Empson, that was the son of a sieve-maker, triumphed always upon the deed done, putting off all other respects whatsoever. These two persons being lawyers in science, and privy counsellors in authority, (as the corruption of the best things is the worst) turned law and justice into wormwood and rapine. For first, their manner was to cause divers subjects to be indicted of sundry crimes, and so...
neither did they (towards the end) observe so much as the half-face
of justice, in proceeding by indictment; but sent forth their precepts to at-
tach men, and convene them before themselves, and some others, at their
private houses, in a court of commissio
n; and there used to shuffle up a
summary proceeding by examination, without trial of jury; assailing to
themselves there, to deal both in pleas of the crown, and controversies
civil:

They did also use to enthrall and charge the subjects lands with ten-
tures in capite, by finding false offices, and thereby to work upon them for
wardships, livernes, premier feilds, and alienations, (being the fruits of
those tenures,) relating upon divers pretences and delays, to admit men to tran-
scend those false offices, according to the law. Nay, the king's wards, after
they had accomplished their full age, could not be suffered to have any
of their lands, without paying excessive fines, far exceeding all reasonable
rates. They did also vex men with informations of intrusion, upon scarce
colourable titles,

when men were outlawed in personal actions, they would not admit
them to purchase their charters of pardon, except they paid great and in-
tolerable sums standing upon the strict point of law, which upon out-
lawries giveth forfeiture of goods: nay, contrary to all law and custom they maintained the king ought to have the half of mens lands and rents,
during the space of full two years, for a pain in case of outlawry. They
would also ruffle with jurors, and enforce them to find as they would direct,
and (if they did not) convene them, imprison them, and fine them. The
these and many other courses, fitter to be buried than repeated, they
had of preying upon the people, both like tame hawks for their matter;
and like wild hawks for themselves; so much as they grew to great riches and
substance: but their principal working was upon penal laws, wherein
they spared none, great or small; nor considered whether the law were
possible or impossible, in use, or obsolete: but taken over all old and new
statutes, though many of them were made with intention rather of terror
than of rigour, having ever a rabble of promoters, questriders, and leading
jurors at their command, so as they could have any thing found either
for fact or valuation.

There remaineth to this day a report, that the king was on a time en-
tertained by the earl of Oxford (that was his principal servant both for
war and peace) nobly and sumptuously, at his castle at Henningham. And
at the king's going away, the earl's servants flood (in a family manner) in
their livery coats; with cognizances, ranged on both sides, and made the
king a-lane. The king called the earl to him, and said, My lord, I have
heard much of your hospitality, but I see it is greater than the speech:
These handsome gentlemen and yeomen, which I see on both sides of me,
are sure your mental servants. The earl smiled, and said, it may please your
grace that they were not for your sake; they are most of them my re-
tainers, that are come to do the service at such a time as this, and chiefly
of see your grace. The king flared a Little, and said, By my faith, my lord,
I thank you for my good cheer, but I may not endure to have my laws broken in my fight: my attorney must speak with you. And it is part of the report, that the earl compounded for no less than fifteen thousand marks. And to shew farther the king's extreme diligence, I do remember to have seen long since, a book of account of Empfon's, that had the king's hand almost to every leaf, by way of signing, and was in some places postilled in the margin, with the king's hand likewise, where was this remembrance:

ITEM. Received of such a one five marks, for a pardon to be procured; and if the pardon do not pass, the money to be repaid; except the party be some other ways satisfied.

And over against this Memorandum (of the king's own hand)

Otherwise satisfied.

Which I do the rather mention, because it shews in the king a nearness, but yet with a kind of justness. So these little sands and grains of gold and silver (as it seemeth) helped not a little to make up the great heap and bank.

But mean while (to keep the king awake) the earl of Suffolk having been too gay at prince Arthur's marriage, and sunk himself deep in debt, had yet once more a mind to be a knight-errant, and to seek adventures in foreign parts; and taking his brother with him, fled again into Flanders. That (no doubt) which gave him confidence, was the great murmur of the people against the king's government: and being a man of a light and rash spirit, he thought every vapour would be a tempest. Neither wanted he some party within the kingdom: For the murmur of people awakes the discontent of nobles; and again, that calleth up commonly some head of sedition. The king resorting to his wonted and tried arts, caused sir Robert Curfon, captain of the castle at Hammes, (being at that time beyond sea, and therefore less likely to be wrought upon by the king) to fly from his charge, and to feign himself a servant of the earl's. This knight, having infinuated himself into the secrets of the earl, and finding by him upon whom chiefly he had either hope or hold, advertised the king thereof in great secrecy: But nevertheless maintained his own credit and inward trust with the earl. Upon whose advertisements, the king attached William Courteny earl of Devonshire, his brother-in-law, married to the lady Katharine, daughter to king Edward the fourth; William de la Pole, brother to the earl of Suffolk; sir James Tirrel, and sir John Windham, and some other meaner persons, and committed them to custody. George lord Abergavenny, and sir Thomas Green, were at the same time apprehended; but as upon less suspicion, so in a freer restraint, and were soon after delivered. The earl of Devonshire being interred in the blood of York, that was rather feared than nocent; yet as one that might be the object of others plots and deligions, remained prifoner in the tower, during the king's life. William de la Pole was also long restrained, though not so straitly. But for sir James Tirrel (against whom the blood of the innocent princes, Edward the fifth, and his brother, did still cry from under the altar) and sir John Windham, and the other meaner ones, they were attainted and executed; the two knights beheaded. Nevertheless, to confirm the credit of Curfon (who belike had not yet done all his feats of activity) there was published at Paul's cross, about the time of the said executions, the pope's bull of excommunication
communication and curse, against the earl of Suffolke and sir Robert Curson; and some others by name; and likewise in general against all the abettors of the said earl: wherein it must be confessed, that heaven was made too much to bow to earth, and religion to policy. But soon after Curson (when he saw time) returned into England, and withal into wonted favour with the king, but worse fame with the people. Upon whose return the earl was much dismayed, and seeing himself destitute of hopes (the lady Margaret also by tract of time, and bad success, being now become cool in those attempts) after some wandering in France and Germany, and certain little projects, no better than squibs of an exiled man, being tired out, retired again into the protection of the arch-duke Philip in Flanders, who by the death of Isabella, was at that time king of Castile, in the right of Joan his wife.

This year (being the twentieth of his reign) the king called his parliament: wherein a man may easily guess how absolute the king took himself to be with his parliament, when Dudley that was so hateful was made speaker of the house of commons. In this parliament there were not made any statutes memorable touching publick government. But those that were, had still the stamp of the king’s wisdom and policy.

There was a statute made for the disannulling of all patents of lease or grant, to such as came not upon lawful summons to serve the king in his wars, against the enemies or rebels, or that should depart without the king’s licence; with an exception of several persons of the long robe: Providing nevertheless, that they should have the king’s wages from their house, till their return home again. There hath been the like made before for offices, and by this statute it was extended to lands. But a man may easily see by many statutes made in the king’s time, that the king thought it safest to assist martial law, by law of parliament.

Another statute was made, prohibiting the bringing in of manufactures of silk wrought by itself, or mixt with any other thread. But it was not of stuffs of whole piece (for that the realm had of them no manufacture in use at that time) but of knit silk, or texture of silk; as ribbands, laces, canils, points and girdles, &c. which the people of England could then well skill to make. This law pointed at a true principle; that where foreign materials are but superfluities, foreign manufactures should be prohibited. For that will either banish the superfluity, or gain the manufacture.

There was a law also of resumption of patents of goals, and the re-annexing of them to the sheriffwicks; privileged officers being no less an interruption of justice, than privileged places.

There was likewise a law to restrain the by-laws, or ordinances of corporations, which many times were against the prerogative of the king, the common law of the realm, and the liberty of the subject, being fraternities in evil. It was therefore provided, that they should not be put in execution, without the allowance of the chancellor, treasurer, and the two chief justices, or three of them, or of the two justices of circuit where the corporation was.

Another law was (in effect) to bring in the silver of the realm to the mint, in making all clipped, maimed, or impaired coins of silver, not to be current in payments; without giving any remedy of weight, but with an exception only of reasonable wearing, which was as nothing in respect of the uncertainty; and so (upon the matter) to set the mint on work, and to give way to new coins of silver, which should be then minted.
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

There likewise was a long statute against vagabonds, wherein two things may be noted; the one, the dislike the parliament had of goaling of them, as that which was chargeable, pestereous, and of no open example. The other, that in the statutes of this king’s time, (for this of the nineteenth year is not the only statute of that kind) there are ever coupled the punishment of vagabonds, and the forbidding of dice and cards, and unlawful games, unto servants and mean people, and the putting down and suppressing of alehouses, as strings of one root together, and as if the one were unprofitable without the other.

As for riot and retainers, there passed scarce any parliament in this time without a law against them; the king ever having an eye to might and multitude.

There was granted also that parliament a subsidy, both from the temporality and the clergy. And yet nevertheless, ere the year expired, there went out commissions for a general benevolence, though there were no wars, no fears. The same year the city gave five thousand marks, for confirmation of their liberties, a thing fitter for the beginnings of kings reigns than the latter ends. Neither was it a small matter that the mint gained upon the late statute, by the recoinage of groats and half-groats, now twelve-pences and six-pences. As for Empson and Dudley’s mills, they did work more than ever; so that it was a strange thing to see what golden showers poured down upon the king’s treasury at once. The last payments of the marriage-money from Spain; the subsidy; the benevolence; the recoinage; the redemption of the city’s liberties; the casualties: And this is the more to be marvelled at, because the king had then no occasions at all of wars or troubles. He had now but one son, and one daughter unbetrothed. He was wise; he was of an high mind; he needed not to make riches his glory; he did excel in so many things else: save that certainly avarice doth ever find in itself matter of ambition. Belike he thought to leave his son such a kingdom, and such a mass of treasure, as he might chuse his greatness where he would.

This year was also kept the serjeant’s feast, which was the second call in this king’s days.

About this time, Isabella queen of Castile deceased; a right noble lady, and an honour to her sex and times, and the corner-stone of the greatnesse of Spain that hath followed. This accident the king took not for news at large, but thought it had a great relation to his own affairs; especially in two points: the one for example, the other for consequence. First, he conceived that the case of Ferdinando of Aragon, after the death of queen Isabella, was his own case after the death of his own queen; and the case of Joan the heir unto Castile, was the case of his own son prince Henry. For if both of the kings had their kingdoms in the right of their wives, they descended to the heirs, and did not accrue to the husbands. And although his own case had both steel and parchment, more than the other (that is to say, a conquest in the field, and an act of parliament) yet notwithstanding that natural title of descent in blood, did (in the imagination even of a wise man) breed a doubt, that the other two were not safe nor sufficient. Wherefore he was wonderful diligent to enquire and observe what became of the king of Aragon, in holding and continuing the kingdom of Castile; and whether he did hold it in his own right; or as administrator to his daughter; and whether he were like to hold it in fact, or to be put out by his son in law. Secondly, he did revolve in his mind, that the state of Christendom
might by this late accident have a turn. For whereas before time, himself, with the conjunction of Aragon and Castile, (which then was one) and the amity of Maximilian and Philip his son the arch-duke, was far too strong a party for France; he began to fear, that now the French king (who had great interest in the affections of Philip the young king of Castile) and Philip himself, now king of Castile, (who was in ill terms with his father-in-law about the present government of Castile;) And thirdly, Maximilian Philip's father (who was ever variable, and upon whom the surest aim that could be taken was, that he would not be long as he had been left before) would, all three being potent princes, enter into some strait league and confederation amongst themselves: whereby though he should not be endangered, yet he should be left to the poor amity of Aragon. And whereas he had been heretofore a kind of arbiter of Europe, he should now go leis, and be over-topped by so great a conjunction. He had also (as it seems) an inclination to marry, and betheought him of some fit conditions abroad: and amongst others he had heard of the beauty and virtuous behaviour of the young queen of Naples, the widow of Ferdinando the younger, being then of matronal years of seven and twenty: By whose marriage he thought that the kingdom of Naples (having been a goal for a time between the king of Aragon, and the French king, and being but newly settled) might in some part be deposited in his hands, who was so able to keep the stakes. Therefore he sent in embassage or message, three confident persons, Francis Marfin, James Braybrooke, and John Stile, upon two several inquiries rather than negotiations. The one touching the person and condition of the young queen of Naples. The other touching all particulars of estate, that concerned the fortunes and intentions of Ferdinando. And because they may obserfe beft, who themfelves are obferved leaft, he thought that the kingdom of Naples (having been a goal for a time between the king of Aragon, and the French king, and being but newly settled) might in some part be deposited in his hands, who was so able to keep the stakes. Therefore he sent in embassage or message, three confident persons, Francis Marfin, James Braybrooke, and John Stile, upon two several inquiries rather than negotiations. The one touching the person and condition of the young queen of Naples. The other touching all particulars of estate, that concerned the fortunes and intentions of Ferdinando. And because they may observe best, who themselves are observed least, he sent them under colourable pretexts; giving them letters of kindness and compliment from Katharine the princess, to her aunt and niece, the old and young queen of Naples, and delivering to them also a book of new articles of peace; which notwithstanding it had been delivered unto doctor de Pujila, the lieger ambassador of Spain here in England, to be sent; yet for that the king had been long without hearing from Spain, he thought good those messengers, when they had been with the two queens, should likewise pass on to the court of Ferdinando, and take a copy of the book with them. The instructions touching the queen of Naples, were so curious and exquisite, being as articles whereby to direct a survey, or framing a particular of her person, for complexion, favour, feature, stature, health, age, custom, behaviour, conditions, and estate, as if the king had been young, a man would have judged him to be amorous: but being ancient, it ought to be interpreted, that fure he was very chaste, for that he meant to find all things in one woman, and to settle his affections without ranging. But in this match he was soon cooled, when he heard from his embassadors, that this young queen had had a goodly jointure in the realm of Naples, well answered during the time of her uncle Frederick; yes, and during the time of Lewis the French king, in whose division her revenue fell; but since the time that the kingdom was in Ferdinando's hands, all was assigned to the army and garrisons there, and she received only a pension or exhibition out of his coffers.

The other part of the enquiry had a grave and diligent return, informing the king at full of the present state of king Ferdinando. By this report it appeared to the king, that Ferdinando did continue the government of Castile.
Castile; as administrator unto his daughter Joan, by the title of queen Isabella's will, and partly by the custom of the kingdom, as he pretended. And that all mandates and grants were expedited in the name of Joan his daughter, and himself as administrator, without mention of Philip her husband. And that king Ferdinand, howsoever he did disjoin himself of the name of king of Castile, yet meant to hold the kingdom without account, and in absolute command.

It appeareth also, that he flattered himself with hopes, that king Philip would permit unto him the government of Castile during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.

In the same report also, the embassadors being mean men, and therefore the more free, did strike upon a string which was somewhat dangerous. For they declared plainly, that the people of Spain, both nobles and commons, were better affected unto the person of Ferdinand during his life; which he had laid his plot to work him unto, both by some counsellors of his about him, which Ferdinand had at his devotion, and chiefly by promise, that in case Philip gave not way unto it, he would marry some young lady, whereby to put him by the succession of Aragon and Granada, in case he should have a son. And lastly, by representing unto him that the government of the Burgundians, till Philip were by continuance in Spain, made as natural of Spain, would not be endured by the Spaniards. But in all those things (though wisely laid down and considered) Ferdinand failed; but that Pluto was better to him than Pallas.
the several coasts of England. And the ship wherein the king and queen were (with two other small barks only) torn, and in great peril to escape the fury of the weather, thrift into Weymouth. King Philip himself, having not been used (as it seems) to sea, all wearied and extreme sick, would needs land to refresh his spirits, though it was against the opinion of his council, doubting it might breed delay, his occasions requiring celerity.

The rumour of the arrival of a puissant navy upon the coast, made the country arm. And sir Thomas Trenchard, with forces suddenly raised, not knowing what the matter might be, came to Weymouth. Where understanding the accident, he did in all humbleness and humanity invite the king and queen to his house; and forthwith dispatched posts to the court. Soon after came sir John Carew likewise, with a great troop of men well armed; using the like humbleness and respects towards the king, when he knew the case. King Philip doubting that they, being but subjects, durst not let him pass away again without the king’s notice and leave, yielded to their entreaties to stay till they heard from the court. The king, as soon as he heard the news, commanded presently the earl of Arundel to go to visit the king of Castile, and let him understand that as he was very sorry for his mishap, so he was glad that he had escaped the danger of the seas, and likewife of the occasion himself had to do him honour; and desiring him to think himself as in his own land; and that the king made all haste possible to come and embrace him. The earl came to him in great magnificence, with a brave troop of three hundred horse; and (for more state) came by torch-light. After he had done the king’s message, king Philip seeing how the world went, the sooner to get away, went upon speed to the king at Wimijor, and his queen followed by easy journeys. The two kings at their meeting, used all the caresles and loving demonstrations that were possible. And the king of Castile said pleasantly to the king, that he was now punished, for that he would not come within his walled town of Calais when they met last. But the king answered, that walls and seas were nothing where hearts were open; and that he was here no otherwise but to be served. After a day or two’s refreshing, the kings entered into speech of renewing the treaty; the king saying, that though king Philip’s person were the same, yet his fortunes and state were raised: in which case a renovation of treaty was used amongst princes. But while these things were in handling, the king choosing a fit time, and drawing the king of Castile into a room, where they two only were private, and laying his hand civilly upon his arm, and changing his countenance a little from a countenance of entertainment, said to him, Sir, you have been saved upon my coast, I hope you will not suffer me to ‘wrack upon yours. The king of Castile asked him, what he meant by that speech? I mean it (faith the king) by that same harebrain wild fellow, my subject, the earl of Suffolk, who is protected in your country, and begins to play the fool, when all others are weary of it. The king of Castile answered, I had thought (sir) your felicity had been above those thoughts: but if it trouble you I will banish him. The king replied, those hornets were best in their nest, and worst then when they did fly abroad; and that his desire was to have him delivered to him. The king of Castile herewith a little confused, and in a study, said, that can I not do with my honour, and less with yours; for you will be thought to have used me as a prisoner. The king presently said, then the matter is at an end: for I will take that dishonour upon me, and so your honour is saved. The king of Castile, who had the king in great estimation,
tion, and besides remembered where he was, and knew not what use he might have of the king's amity, for that himself was new in his estate of Spain, and unsettled both with his father in law, and with his people, com­posing his countenance, said, Sir, you give law to me, but so will I to you. You shall have him, but (upon your honour) you shall not take his life. The king embracing him, said, agreed. Saith the king of Castile, neither shall it dislike you, if I send to him in such a fashion, as he may partly come with his own good will. The king said, it was well thought of; and if it pleased him, he would join with him, in sending to the earl a message to that purpose. They both sent severally, and mean while they continued feasting and pastimes. The king being (on his part) willing to have the earl sure before the king of Castile went; and the king of Castile being as willing to seem to be enforced. The king also, with many wise and excel­lent persuasions, did advise the king of Castile, to be ruled by the counsel of his father in law Ferdinando; a prince so prudent, so experienced, so fortunate. The king of Castile (who was in no very good terms with his said father in law) answered, that if his father in law would suffer him to govern his kingdoms, he should govern him.

There were immediately messengers sent from both kings, to recall the earl of Suffolk; who upon gentle words used to him was soon charmed, and willing enough to return; assured of his life, and hoping of his liberty. He was brought through Flanders to Calais, and thence landed at Dover, and with sufficient guard delivered and received at the tower of London. Mean­while king Henry (to draw out the time) continued his feastings and entertainments; and after he had received the king of Castile into the fraternity of the garter, and for a reciprocal had his son the prince admitted to the order of the golden fleece, he accompanied king Philip and his queen to the city of London; where they were entertained with the greatest magnificence and triumph, that could be upon no greater warning. And as soon as the earl of Suffolk had been conveyed to the tower, (which was the serious part) the jollities had an end, and the kings took leave. Nevertheless during their being here, they in substance concluded that treaty, which the Flemings term intercurfus malus, and bears date at Windsor; for that there be some things in it, more to the advantage of the English, than of them; especially, for that the free-fishing of the Dutch upon the coasts and seas of England, granted in the treaty of undecimo, was not by this treaty con­firmed. All articles that confirm former treaties being precifely and war­rily limited and confirmed to matter of commerce only, and not other­wise.

It was observed, that the great tempest which drove Philip into England, blew down the golden eagle from the spire of Paul's, and in the fall it fell upon a sign of the black eagle, which was in Paul's church-yard, in the place where the school-house now standeth, and batter'd it, and brake it down: which was a strange stooping of a hawk upon a fowl. This the people interpreted to be an ominous prognostick upon the imperial house, which was (by interpretation also) fulfilled upon Philip the emperor's son, not only in the present disfaster of the tempest, but in that that followed. For Philip arriving into Spain, and attaining the possession of the kingdom of Castile without resistance, (infomuch as Ferdinando, who had spake so great before, was with difficulty admitted to the speech of his son in law) ficken'd soon after, and deceas'd. Yet after such time, as there was an observation by the wiseft of that court, that if he had lived, his father would have gained

Vol. III. R r r 2
gained upon him in that sort, as he would have governed his councils and
defigns, if not his affections. By this all Spain returned into the power of
Ferdinando the eighth as it was before; the rather, in regard of the infirmity of
Joan his daughter, who loving her husband (by whom she had many chil-
dren) dearly well, and no less beloved of him, (howsoever her father to
make Philip ill-beloved of the people of Spain, gave out that Philip used
her not well) was unable in strength of mind to bear the grief of his de-
cease, and fell distracted of her wits. Of which malady her father was
thought no ways to endeavour the cure, the better to hold his regal power
in Castile. So that as the felicity of Charles the eighth was said to be a
dream; so the adversity of Ferdinando was said likewise to be a dream, it
passed over so soon.

About this time the king was desirous to bring into the house of Lanca-
ster celestial honour, and became suitor to pope Julius, to canonize king
Henry the sixth for a saint; the rather, in respect of that his famous predi-
cion of the king's own assumption to the crown. Julius referred the mat-
ter (as the manner is) to certain cardinals, to take the verification of his
holy acts and miracles: but it died under the reference. The general opi-
ion was, that pope Julius was too dear, and that the king would not come
to his rates. But it is more probable, that the pope (who was extremely
jealous of the dignity of the see of Rome, and of the acts thereof) knowing
that king Henry the sixth was reputed in the world abroad but for a sim-
ple man, was afraid it would but diminish the estimation of that kind of
honour, if there were not a distance kept between Innocents and saints.

The same year likewise there proceeded a treaty of marriage between the
king and lady Margaret duchess dowager of Savoy, only daughter to Maxi-
milian, and sister to the king of Castile, a lady wife, and of great good fame.
This matter had been in speech between the two kings at their meeting, but
was soon after refumed; and therein was employed for his first piece the king's
then chaplain, and after the great prelate Thomas Wolsey. It was in the end con-
cluded, with great and ample conditions for the king, but with promise de
futuro only. It may be the king was the rather induced unto it, for that he
heard more and more of the marriage to go on between his great friend
and ally Ferdinando of Aragon, and madam de Foix, whereby that king be-
gan to piece with the French king, from whom he had been always before
severed. So fatal a thing it is, for the greatest and straightest amities of
kings, at one time or other to have a little of the wheel: nay, there is a far-
ther tradition (in Spain, though not with us) that the king of Aragon, after
he knew that the marriage between Charles, the young prince of Castile,
and Mary the king's second daughter went roundly on; (which though it
was first moved by the king of Aragon, yet it was afterwards wholly ad-
vanced and brought to perfection by Maximilian, and the friends on that
side,) enter'd into a jealousy, that the king did aspire to the government of
Castilia, as administrator during the minority of his son in law; as if there
should have been a competition of three for that government; Ferdinando,
grandfather on the mother's side; Maximilian, grandfather on the father's
side; and king Henry, father in law to the young prince. Certainly it is
not unlike, but the king's government (carrying the young prince with him)
would have been perhaps more welcome to the Spaniards, than that of the
other two. For the nobility of Castilia, that so lately put the king of
Aragon in favour of king Philip, and had discovered themselves so far,
could not be but in a secret distrust and diftrust of that king. And as for
Maximilian,
Maximilian, upon twenty respects he could not have been the man. But this purpose of the king's seemeth to me (considering the king's safe courses, never found to be enterprising or adventurous) not greatly probable, except he should have had a desire to breathe warmer, because he had ill lungs. This marriage with Margaret was protracted from time to time, in respect of the infirmity of the king, who now in the two and twentieth of his reign began to be troubled with the gout: but the defluxion taking also into his breast, wasted his lungs, so that thrice in a year, (in a kind of return, and especially in the spring,) he had great fits and labours of the phthisick: nevertheless, he continued to intend business with as great diligence, as before in his health: yet so, as upon this warning, he did likewise now more seriously think of the world to come, and of making himself a faint, as well as king Henry the sixth; by treasure better employed, than to be given to pope Julius: for this year he gave greater alms than accustomed, and discharged all prisoners about the city, that lay for fees or debts under forty billings. He did also make haste with religious foundations; and in the year following (which was the three and twentieth) finished that of the Savoy. And hearing also of the bitter cries of his people against the oppressions of Dudley and Empfon, and their complices; partly by devout persons about him, and partly by publick sermons, (the preachers doing their duty therein,) he was touched with great remorse for the same. Nevertheless Empson and Dudley, though they could not but hear of these scruples in the king's conscience; yet, as if the king's soul and his money were in several offices, that the one was not to intermeddle with the other, went on with as great rage as ever. For the same three and twentieth year was there a sharp prosecution against Sir William Capel now the second time; and this was for matters of misgovernment in his mayality: The great matter being, that in some payments he had taken knowledge of false moneys, and did not his diligence to examine and beat it out, who were the offenders. For this and some other things laid to his charge, he was condemned to pay two thousand pounds; and being a man of stomach, and hardened by his former troubles, refused to pay a mite; and belike used some untoward speeches of the proceedings, for which he was sent to the tower, and there remained till the king's death. Knefworth likewife, that had been lately mayor of London, and both his sheriffs, were for abuses in their offices questioned, and imprisoned, and delivered, upon one thousand four hundred pounds paid. Hawis, an alderman of London, was put in trouble, and died with thought and anguish, before his business came to an end. Sir Lawrence Ailmer, who had likewise been mayor of London, and his two sheriffs, were put to the fine of one thousand pounds. And Sir Lawrence, for refusing to make payment, was committed to prison, where he layed till Empfon himself was committed in his place.

It is no marvel (if the faults were so light and the rates so heavy) that the king's treasure of store, that he left at his death, most of it in secret places, under his own key and keeping, at Richmond, amounted (as by tradition it is reported to have done) unto the sum of near eighteen hundred thousand pounds Sterling; a huge mass of money even for these times.

The last act of state that concluded this king's temporal felicity, was the conclusion of a glorious match between his daughter Mary, and Charles prince of Cafิle, afterwards the great emperor, both being of tender years: which treaty was perfected by bishop Fox, and other his commissioners at Calais,
Calais, the year before the king's death. In which alliance, it seemeth, he himself took so high contentment, as in a letter which he wrote thereupon to the city of London, (commanding all possible demonstrations of joy to be made for the same) he expresseth himself, as if he thought he had built a wall of braes about his kingdom: when he had for his sons-in-law, a king of Scotland, and a prince of Castile and Burgundy. So as now there was nothing to be added to this great king's felicity, being at the top of all worldly bliss, (in regard of the high marriages of his children, his great renown throughout Europe, and his scarce credible riches, and the perpetual constancy of his prosperous succession,) but an opportune death, to withdraw him from any future blow of fortune: which certainly (in regard of the great hatred of his people, and the title of his son, being then come to eighteen years of age, and being a bold prince, and liberal, and that gained upon the people by his very aspect and presence) had not been impossible to have come upon him.

To crown also the last year of his reign, as well as his first, he did an act of piety, rare, and worthy to be taken into imitation. For he granted forth a general pardon: as expecting a second coronation in a better kingdom. He did also declare in his will, that his mind was, that restitution should be made of those sums which had been unjustly taken by his officers.

And thus this Solomon of England (for Solomon also was too heavy upon his people in exactions) having lived two and fifty years, and thereof reigned three and twenty years, and eight months, being in perfect memory, and in a most blessed mind, in a great calm of a consuming sickness passed to a better world, the two and twentieth of April 1508, at his palace of Richmond, which himself had built.

This king (to speak of him in terms equal to his deserving) was one of the best sort of wonders; a wonder for wise men. He had parts (both in his virtues and his fortune) not so fit for a common place, as for observation. Certainly he was religious, both in his affection and observance. But as he could see clear (for those times) through superstition, so he would be blinded (now and then) by human policy. He advanced Church-men; he was tender in the privilege of sanctuaries, though they wrought him much mischief. He built and endowed many religious foundations, besides his memorable hospital of the Savoy: And yet was he a great alms-giver in secret; which shewed, that his works in publick were dedicated rather to God's glory, than his own. He professed always to love and seek peace; and it was his usual preface in his treaties; that when Christ came into the world, peace was fung; and when he went out of the world, peace was bequeathed. And this virtue could not proceed out of fear, or softness; for he was valiant and active, and therefore (no doubt) it was truly Christian and moral. Yet he knew the way to peace was not to seem to be desirous to avoid wars: therefore would he make offers and snares of wars, till he had mended the conditions of peace. It was also much, that one that was so great a lover of peace, should be so happy in war. For his arms (either in foreign or civil wars) were never unfortunate; neither did he know what a disaster meant. The war of his coming in, and the rebellions of the earl of Lincoln, and the lord Audley, were ended by victory. The wars of France and Scotland, by peaces fought at his hands. That of Britain, by accident of the duke's death. The insurrection of the lord Lovel, and that of
History of K. Henry VII.

of Perkin at Exeter, and in Kent, by flight of the rebels, before they came to blows: so that his fortune of arms was still inviolate: the rather sure, for that in the quenching of the commotions of his subjects, he ever went in person: sometimes refering himself to back and seconde his lieutenants, but ever in action; and yet that was not merely forwardness, but partly distrust of others.

He did much maintain and countenance his laws; which (nevertheless) was no impediment to him to work his will: for it was so handled, that neither prerogative, nor profit went to diminution. And yet as he would sometimes strain up his laws to his prerogative, so would he also let down his prerogative to his parliament. For mint, and wars, and martial discipline, (things of absolute power) he would nevertheless bring to parliament. Justice was well administered in his time, save where the king was party: save also, that the council-table intermeddled too much with meum and tuum. For it was a very court of justice during his time, especially in the beginning: but in that part both of justice and policy, which is the durable part, and cut (as it were) in brass or marble (which is the making of good laws) he did excel. And with his justice, he was also a merciful prince: as in whose time, there were but three of the nobility that suffered; the earl of Warwick, the lord chamberlain, and the lord Audley: though the first two were instead of numbers, in the dislike and obloquy of the people. But there were never so great rebellions, expiated with so little blood, drawn by the hand of justice, as the two rebellions of Blackheath and Exeter. As for the severity used upon those which were taken in Kent, it was but upon a sect of the people. His pardons went ever both before and after his word. But then he had withal a strange kind of interchanging of large and unexpected pardons, with severe executions: which (his wisdom considered) could not be imputed to any incon sistency or inequality; but either to some reason which we do not now know, or to a principle he had set unto himself, that he would vary, and try both ways in turn: but the least blood he drew, the more he took of treasure. And (as some construed it) he was the more sparing in the one, that he might be the more pressing in the other; for both would have been intolerable. Of nature assuredly he coveted to accumulate treasure, and was a little poor in admiring riches. The people (into whom there is infused, for the preservation of monarchies, a natural desire to discharge their princes, though it be with the unjust charge of their counsellors and ministers) did impute this unto cardinal Morton, and Sir Reginald Bray: who (as it after appeared) as counsellors of ancient authority with him, did so second his humours, as nevertheless they did temper them. Whereas Empefon, and Dudley that followed, being persons that had no reputation with him, (otherwise than by the servile following of his bent) did not give way only (as the first did) but shape him way to those extremities, for which himself was touched with remorse at his death, and which his successor renounced, and sought to purge. This excess of his, had at that time many glosses and interpretations. Some thought the continual rebellions wherewith he had been vexed, had made him grow to hate his people: some thought it was done to pull down their stomachs, and to keep them low: some, for that he would leave his son a golden fleece: some suspected he had some high design upon foreign parts: but those perhaps shall come nearest the truth, that fetch not their reasons so far off; but rather impute it to nature, age, peace, and a mind fixed upon no other ambition or pursuit. Whereunto I should add, that having every
every day occasion to take notice of the necessities and shifts for money of other great princes abroad, it did the better (by comparison) set off to him the felicity of full coffers. As to his expending of treasure, he never spared charge which his affairs required; and in his buildings was magnificent, but his rewards were very limited: so that his liberality was rather upon his own state and memory, than upon the deserts of others.

He was of an high mind, and loved his own will, and his own way; as one that revered himself, and would reign indeed. Had he been a private man, he would have been termed proud. But in a wise prince, it was but keeping of distance, which indeed he did towards all; not admitting any near or full approach, either to his power, or to his secrets: for he was governed by none. His queen (notwithstanding she had prefented him with divers children, and with a crown also, though he would not acknowledge it) could do nothing with him. His mother he reverenced much, heard little. For any person agreeable to him for society (such as was Hastings to king Edward the fourth, or Charles Brandon after to king Henry the eighth) he had none: except we should account for such persons, Fox, and Bray, and Empjon, because they were so much with him: but it was but as the instrument is much with the workman. He had nothing in him of vain-glory, but yet kept state and majesty to the height; being sensible, that majesty maketh the people bow, but vain-glory boweth to them.

To his confederates abroad he was constant and just, but not open. But rather, such was his enquiry, and such his clofnest, as they flood in the light towards him, and he flood in the dark to them. Yet without strange-ness, but with a semblance of mutual communication of affairs. As for little envies, or emulations upon foreign princes (which are frequent with many kings) he had never any; but went substantially to his own business. Certain it is, that though his reputation was great at home, yet it was greater abroad. For foreigners that could not see the pairages of affairs, but made their judgments upon the tunes of them, noted that he was ever in strife, and ever aloft. It grew also from the airs which the princes and states abroad received from their embassadors and agents here; which were attending the court in great number: whom he did not only content with courtesy, reward, and privateness; but (upon such conferences as passed with them) put them in admiration, to find his universal insight into the affairs of the world: which though he did suck chiefly from themselves, yet that which he had gathered from them all, seemed admirable to everyone. So that they did write ever to their superiors in high terms concerning his wisdom and art of rule: nay, when they were returned, they did commonly maintain intelligence with him. Such a dexterity he had to improper to himself all foreign instruments.

He was careful and liberal to obtain good intelligence from all parts abroad: wherein he did not only use his interest in the liegers here, and his pensioners which he had both in the court of Rome, and other the courts of Christendom; but the industry and vigilance of his own embassadors in foreign parts. For which purpose his instructions were ever extream curious and articulate; and in them more articles touching inquisition, than touching negotiation. Requiring likewise from his embassadors, an answer in particular distinct articles, respectively to his questions.

As for his secret espials, which he did employ both at home and abroad, by them to discover what practices and conspiracies were against him, surely his cafe required it; he had such moles perpetually working and cafting to
HISTORY OF K. HENRY VII.

505

to undermine him. Neither can it be reprehended: for espials be lawful against lawful enemies, much more against conspirators and traitors. But indeed to give them credence by oaths or curses, that cannot be well maintained; for those are too holy vestments for a disguise. Yet surely there was this farther good in his employing of these flies and familiars; that as the use of them was the cause that many conspiracies were revealed, so the fame and suspicion of them kept (no doubt) many conspiracies from being attempted.

Towards his queen he was nothing uxorious, nor scarce indulgent; but companionable and respectful, and without jealousy. Towards his children he was full of paternal affection, careful of their education, aspiring to their high advancement, regular to see that they should not want of any due honour and respect, but not greatly willing to cast any popular luster upon them.

To his council he did refer much, and fave oft in person; knowing it to be the way to affift his power, and inform his judgment. In which respect also he was fairly patient of liberty, both of advice, and of vote, till himself were declared. He kept a strict hand on his nobility, and chose rather to advance clergymen and lawyers, which were more obsequious to him, but had less interest in the people; which made for his absoluteness, but not for his safety. Infomuch as (I am persuaded) it was one of the causes of his troubleome reign; for that his nobles, though they were loyal and obedient, yet did not co-operate with him, but let every man go his own way. He was not afraid of an able man, as Lewis the eleventh was: But contrariwise, he was served by the ablest men that were to be found; without which his affairs could not have prospered as they did. For war, Bedford, Oxford, Surrey, D'Aubigny, Brook, Poynings: For other affairs, Morton, Fox, Bray, the prior of Lanthony, Warham, Hussey, Frewick, and others. Neither did he care how cunning they were that he did employ; for he thought himself to have the master-reach. And as he chose well, so he held them up well: for it is a strange thing, that though he were a dark prince, and infinitely suspicious, and his times full of secret conspiracies and troubles; yet in twenty four years reign, he never put down, or discomposed counsellor, or near servant, save only Stanley the lord chamberlain. As for the disposition of his subjects in general towards him, it stood thus with him; that of the three affections, which naturally tie the hearts of the subjects to their sovereigns, love, fear, and reverence; he had the taste in height, the second in good measure, and so little of the first, as he was beholden to the other two.

He was a prince, sad, serious, and full of thoughts, and secret observations, and full of notes and memorials of his own hand, especially touching persons. As, whom to employ, whom to reward, whom to enquire of, whom to beware of, what were the dependencies, what were the factions, and the like; keeping (as it were) a journal of his thoughts. There is to this day a merry tale; that his monkey (set on as it was thought by one of his chamber) tore his principal note book all to pieces, when by chance it lay forth: Whereat the court (which liked not those penive accounts) was almost tickled with sport.

He was indeed full of apprehensions and suspicions: But as he did easily take them, so he did easily check them and master them; whereby they were not dangerous, but troubled himself more than others. It is true, his thoughts were so many, as they could not well always stand together;
but that which did good one way, did hurt another: Neither did he at some times weigh them aright in their proportions. Certainly, that rumour which did him so much mischief (that the duke of York should be saved, and alive) was (at the first) of his own nourishing; because he would have more reason not to reign in the right of his wife. He was affable, and both well and fair-spoken; and would use strange sweetness and blandishments of words, where he desired to effect or persuade any thing that he took to heart. He was rather studious than learned; reading most books that were of any worth in the French tongue. Yet he understood the Latin, as appeared in that cardinal Hadrian, and others, who could very well have written French, did use to write to him in Latin.

For his pleasures, there is no news of them: and yet by his instructions to Martin and Stile, touching the queen of Naples, it seemeth he could interrogate well touching beauty. He did by pleasures, as great princes do by banquetts, come and look a little upon them, and turn away: For never prince was more wholly given to his affairs, nor in them more of himself: Infomuch as in triumphs of justice and tourneys, and balls, and masks (which they then called disguises) he was rather a princely and gentle spectator, than seemed much to be delighted.

No doubt, in him as in all men (and most of all in kings) his fortune wrought upon his nature, and his nature upon his fortune. He attained to the crown, not only from a private fortune, which might endow him with moderation; but also from the fortune of an exiled man, which had quickened in him all seeds of observation and industry. And his times being rather prosperous than calm, had raised his confidence by success, but almost marred his nature by troubles. His wisdom, by often evading from perils, was turned rather into a dexterity to deliver himself from dangers, when they prelled him, than to a providence to prevent and remove them afar off: And even in nature, the light of his mind was like some lights of eyes; rather strong at hand, than to carry afar off. For his wit increased upon the occasion; and so much the more, if the occasion were sharpened by danger. Again, whether it were the shortness of his foresight, or the strength of his will, or the dazzling of his suspicions, or what it was; certain it is, that the perpetual troubles of his fortunes (there being no more matter out of which they grew) could not have been without some great defects and main errors in his nature, customs, and proceedings, which he had enough to do to save and help with a thousand little indultries and watches. But those do best appear in the story it self. Yet take him with all his defects, if a man should compare him with the kings his contemporaries in France and Spain, he shall find him more politicke than Lewis the twelfth of France, and more entire and sincere than Ferdinando of Spain. But if you shall change Lewis the twelfth, for Lewis the eleventh, who lived a little before, then the comfort is more perfect. For that Lewis the eleventh, Ferdinando and Henry, may be esteemed for the Tres Magi of kings of those ages. To conclude, if this king did no greater matters, it was long of himself; for what he minded he compassed.

He was a comely personage, a little above just stature, well and strait limbed, but slender. His countenance was reverend, and a little like a churchman: and as it was not strange or dark, so neither was it winning or pleasing, but as the face of one well disposed. But it was to the disadvantage of the painter, for it was best when he spake.
His worth may bear a tale or two, that may put upon him somewhat that may seem divine. When the lady Margaret his mother had divers great suitors for marriage, she dreamed one night, that one in the likeness of a bishop in pontifical habit, did tender her Edmund earl of Richmond, (the king's father) for her husband, neither had she ever any child but the king, though the had three husbands. One day when king Henry the sixth (whose innocency gave him holiness) was washing his hands at a great feast, and cast his eye upon king Henry, then a young youth, he said; this is the lad that shall possess quietly that that we now strive for. But that that was truly divine in him was, that he had the fortune of a true Christian, as well as of a great king, in living exercised, and dying repentant: So as he had an happy warfare in both conflicts, both of sin and the cross.

He was born at Pembroke castle, and lieth buried at Westminster, in one of the stateliest and daintiest monuments of Europe, both for the chapel, and for the sepulchre. So that he dwelleth more richly dead, in the monument of his tomb, than he did alive in Richmond, or any of his palaces. I could wish he did the like in this monument of his fame.

THE HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY VIII.

After the decease of that wise and fortunate king, king Henry the seventh, who died in the height of his prosperity, there followed (as used to do, when the sun setteth so exceeding clear,) one of the fairest mornings of a kingdom that hath been known in this land, or any where else. A young king, about eighteen years of age, for stature, strength, making, and beauty, one of the goodliest persons of his time. And though he were given to pleasure, yet...
he was likewise desirous of glory; so that there was a passage open in his mind, by glory, for virtue. Neither was he unadorned with learning, tho' therein he came short of his brother Arthur. He had never any the least pique, difference, or jealousy, with the king his father, which might give any occasion of altering court or council upon the change; but all things passed in a still. He was the first heir of the white and the red rose; so that there was no discontented party now left in the kingdom, but all mens hearts turned towards him: and not only their hearts, but their eyes also: For he was the only son of the kingdom. He had no brother; which tho' it be a comfortable thing for kings to have, yet it draweth the subjects eyes a little aside. And yet being a married man in those young years, it promised hope of speedy issue to succeed in the crown. Neither was there any queen mother, who might share any way in the government, or clash with his counsellors for authority, while the king intended his pleasure. No such thing as any great and mighty subject, who might any way eclipse or overshadow the imperial power. And for the people, and state in general, they were in such lownes of obedience, as subjects were like to yield, who had lived almost four and twenty years, under so politic a king as his father; being also one who came partly in by the sword; and had so high a courage in all points of regality; and was ever victorious in rebellions and seditions of the people. The crown extremely rich, and full of treasure, and the kingdom like to be so in short time. For there was no war, no dearth, no stop of trade, or commerce; it was only the crown which had sucked too hard, and now being full, and upon the head of a young king, was like to draw lefs. Lastly, he was inheritor of his father's reputation, which was great throughout the world. He had first alliance with the two neighbour states, an ancient enemy in former times, and an ancient friend, Scotland and Burgundy. He had peace and amity with France, under the assurance, not only of treaty and league, but of necessity and inability in the French to do him hurt, in respect that the French king's designs were wholly bent upon Italy: so that it may be truly said, there had scarcely been seen, or known, in many ages, such a rare concurrence of signs and promises, of a happy and flourishing reign to ensue, as were now met in this young king, called, after his father's name, Henry the eighth.
THE BEGINNING OF THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN.

By the decease of Elizabeth queen of England, the issues of king Henry the eighth failed, being spent in one generation, and three succesions. For that king, though he were one of the goodliest persons of his time, yet he left only by his six wives three children; who reigning successively, and dying childless, made place to the line of Margaret, his eldest sister, married to James the fourth king of Scotland. There succeeded therefore to the kingdom of England James the sixth then king of Scotland, descended of the fame Margaret both by father and mother: so that by a rare event in the pedigrees of kings, it seemed as if the divine providence, to extinguish and take away all envy and note of a stranger, had doubled upon his person, within the circle of one age, the royal blood of England by both parents. This succesion drew towards it the eyes of all men, being one of the most memorable accidents that had happened a long time in the Christian world. For the kingdom of France having been reunited in the age before in all the provinces thereof formerly dismembered; and the kingdom of Spain being of more fresh memory, united and made entire, by the annexing of Portugal in the person of Philip the second; there remained but this third and last union, for the counterpoizing of the power of these three great monarchies; and the disposing of the affairs of Europe thereby to a more assured and universal peace and concord. And this event did hold mens observations and discourses the more, because the island of Great Britain divided from the rest of the world, was never before united in it self under one king, notwithstanding the people be of one language, and not separate by mountains or great waters: and notwithstanding also that the uniting of them had been in former times industriously attempted both by war and treaty. Therefore it seemed a manifest work of providence, and a case of reservation for these times; infomuch that the vulgar conceived that now there was an end given, and a consummation to superstitious prophecies (the belief of fools, but the talk sometimes of wise men) and to an ancient tacite expectation, which had by tradition been infused and inveterated into mens minds. But as the best divinations and predictions, are the politick and probable forelight
HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN.

fight and conjectures of wise men, so in this matter the providence of king Henry the seventh was in all mens mouths; who being one of the deepest and most prudent princes of the world, upon the deliberation concerning the marriage of his eldest daughter into Scotland, had by some speech uttered by him, showed himself sensible and almost preicient of this event.

Neither did there want a concurrence of divers rare external circumstances (besides the virtues and conditions of the person) which gave great reputation to this succession. A king in the strength of his years, supported with great alliances abroad, established with royal issue at home, at peace with all the world, practiced in the regiment of such a kingdom, as might rather enable a king by variety of accidents, than corrupt him with affluence or vain-glory; and one that besides his universal capacity and judgment, was notably exercised and practiced in matters of religion and the church; which in these times by the confused use of both swords, are become so intermixed and confiderations of estate, as most of the counsels of sovereign princes or republicks depend upon them: but nothing did more fill foreign nations with admiration and expectation of his succession, than the wonderful and (by them) unexpected consent of all estates and subjects of England, for the receiving of the king without the least scruple, pause or question. For it had been generally dispersed by the fugitives beyond the seas (who partly to apply themselves to the ambition of foreigners, and partly to give estimation and value to their own employments, used to represent the state of England in a false light) that after queen Elizabeth's decease, there would follow in England nothing but confusions, interreigns, and perturbations of estate, likely far to exceed the ancient calamities of the civil wars between the houses of Lancaster and York, by how much more the divisions were like to be more mortal and bloody, when foreign competition should be added to domestic; and divisions for religion to matter of title to the crown. And in special, Parsons the Jesuit, under a disguised name, had not long before published an express treatise, wherein whether his malice made him believe his own fancies, or whether he thought it the fittest way to move sedition, like evil spirits, which seem to foretell the tempest they mean to move; he laboured to display and give colour to all the vain pretences and dreams of succession which he could imagine; and thereby had poffessed many abroad that knew not the affairs here with those his vanities. Neither wanted there here within this realm, divers persons both wise and well affected, who though they doubted not of the undoubted right, yet setting before themselves the waves of peoples hearts (guided no less by sudden and temporary winds, than by the natural course and motion of the waters) were not without fear what might be the event. For queen Elizabeth being a princess of extream caution, and yet one that loved admiration above safety; and knowing the declaration of a successor might in a point of safety be disputable, but in point of admiration and respect assuredly to her disadvantage; had from the beginning sett it down for a maxim of estate, to impose a silence touching succession. Neither was it only referred as a secret of estate, but restrained by seve laws; that no man should presume to give opinion, or maintain argument touching the same: so that though the evidence of right drew all the subjects of the land to think one thing; yet the fear of the danger of the law, made no man privy to others thoughts. And therefore it rejoiced all men to see so fair a morning of a kingdom, and to be thoroughly secur'd of former apprehensions; as a man that awaketh out of a fearful dream. But so it was, that

not
not only the consent, but the applause and joy was infinite, and not to be expressed, throughout the realm of England upon this succession: whereof the consent (no doubt) may be truly ascribed to the clearness of the right; but the general joy, alacrity, and gratulation, were the effects of differing causes. For queen Elizabeth, although she had the use of many both virtues and demonstrations, that might draw and knit unto her the hearts of her people; yet nevertheless carrying a hand restrained in gift, and strained in points of prerogative, could not answer the votes either of servants or subjects to a full contentment; especially in her latter days, when the continuance of her reign (which extended to five and forty years) might discover in people, their natural desire and inclination towards change, so that a new court, and a new reign, were not to many unwelcome. Many were glad, and especially those of settled estates and fortunes, that the fears and uncertainties were overblown, and that the dye was cast. Others that had made their way with the king, or offered their service in the time of the former queen, thought now the time was come for which they had prepared: and generally all such as had any dependence upon the late earl of Essex (who had mingled the service of his own ends, with the popular pretence of advancing the king's title) made account their cause was amended. Again, such as might misdoubt they had given the king any occasion of disaffection, did contend by their forwardness and confidence to shew, it was but their fastness to the former government, and that those affections ended with the time. The papists nourished their hopes, by collating the case of the papists in England, and under queen Elizabeth, and the case of the papists in Scotland under the king; interpreting that the condition of them in Scotland was the less grievous, and divining of the king's government here accordingly: besides the comfort they ministr'd to themselves from the memory of the queen his mother. The ministers, and those which stood for the presbytery, thought their cause had more sympathy with the discipline of Scotland, than the hierarchy of England, and so took themselves to be a degree nearer their desires. Thus had every condition of persons some contemplation of benefit, which they promised themselves; over-reaching perhaps according to the nature of hope, but yet not without some probable ground of conjecture. At which time also there came forth in print the king's book, entitled Basarius Divini: containing matter of instruction to the prince his son, touching the office of a king; which book falling into every man's hand, filled the whole realm, as with a good perfume or incense, before the king's coming in: for being excellently written, and having nothing of affectation, it did not only satisfy better than particular reports touching the king's disposition, but far exceeded any formal or curious edict or declaration, which could have been devised of that nature, wherewith princes in the beginning of their reigns do use to grace themselves, or at least express themselves gracious in the eyes of their people. And this was for the general, the state and constitution of mens minds upon this change: the actions themselves passed in this manner, &c.
To the Reader.

I have thought good, as a servant to the labours and memory of that noble lord, the lord viscount St. Alban, to collect into one these few, rather parcels than just works, of his excellent pen: Which I have done for these causes. First, to vindicate the wrong his lordship suffered, by a corrupt and surreptitious edition of that discourse of his, touching a war with Spain, lately set forth. Secondly, by way of prevention, to exempt from the like injury and defacements, those other discourses of his herein contained. Lastly, to satisfy the desires of some, who hold it unreasonable, that any the delineations of that pen, though in never so small a model, should not be shewn to the world. I know it carries the excuse with it after the author's death, to publish fragments: therefore I will make none. These works being all for the argument civil, I cannot represent better than in resemblance of Aristotle's Parva Naturalia, to account them as his lordship's Parva Politica. However, I doubt not but every judicious reader, finding of his lordship's spirit in them, will know them to be his; and will afford them a place of reputation amongst his greater works.

W. RAWLEY.
CONSIDERATIONS TOUCHING A WAR WITH SPAIN.

Inscribed to Prince Charles, An. 1624.

Yours highness hath an imperial name. It was a Charles that brought the empire first into France; a Charles that brought it first into Spain; why should not Great Britain have its turn?

But to lay aside all that may seem to have a flaw of fumes and fancies, and to speak solids: a war with Spain, (if the king shall enter into it) is a mighty work; it requireth strong materials, and active motions. He that faith not so, is zealous, but not according to knowledge.

But nevertheless Spain is no such giant: and he that thinketh Spain to be some great over-match for this estate, as it is, and may be, is no good mint-man; but takes greatness of kingdoms according to their bulk and currency, and not after their intrinsic value. Although therefore I had wholly sequestred my thoughts from civil affairs, yet because it is a new case, and concerneth my country infinitely, I obtained of myself to set down, out of long continued experience in business of estate, and much conversation in books of policy and history, what I thought pertinent to this business; and in all humbleness present it to your highness: hoping that at least you will discern the strength of my affection, through the weakness of my abilities: for the Spaniard hath a good proverb, de suarto si empre con la calentura; there is no heat of affection, but is joined with some idleness of brain.

To a war are required; a just quarrel; sufficient forces and provisions; and a prudent choice of the designs. So then, I will first justify the quarrel; secondly, balance the forces; and lastly, propound variety of designs for choice, but not advise the choice; for that were not fit for a writing of this nature; neither is it a subject within the level of my judgment; I being, in effect, a stranger to the present occurrences.

Wars (I speak not of ambitious predatory wars) are suits of appeal to the tribunal of God's justice, where there are no superiors on earth to determine the cause: And they are (as civil pleas are) plaints or defences. There are therefore three just grounds of war with Spain; one plaint, two upon defence. Solomon faith, a cord of three is not easily broken: but especially...
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

when every of the lines would hold single by itself. They are these: the recovery of the Palatinate; a just fear of the subversion of our civil estate; a just fear of the subversion of our church and religion. For in the handling of the two last grounds of war, I shall make it plain, that wars preventive upon just fears, are true defensives, as well as upon actual invasions: and again, that wars defensive for religion, (I speak not of rebellion) are most just; though offensive wars for religion are seldom to be approved, or never, unless they have some mixture of civil titles. But all that I shall say in this whole argument, will be but like bottoms of thread close wound up, which with a good needle (perhaps) may be flourished into large works.

For the asserting of the justice of the quarrel, for the recovery of the Palatinate, I shall not go so high as to discuss the right of the war of Bohemia; which if it be freed from doubt on our part, then there is no colour nor shadow why the Palatinate should be retained; the ravishing whereof was a mere excursus of the first wrong, and a super-injustice. But I do not take myself to be so perfect in the customs, transactions, and privileges of that kingdom of Bohemia, as to be fit to handle that part: and I will not offer at that I cannot master. Yet this I will say (in passage) positively and resolutely; that it is impossible an elective monarchy should be so free and absolute as an hereditary; no more than it is possible for a father to have so full power and interest in an adoptive son, as in a natural.

guia naturalis obligatio fortior civili. And again, that received maxim is almost unhaken and infallible; *nil magis naturae contingentum est, quam ut ipdem modis res dissolvatur, quibus constituatur.* So that if the part of the people or estate be somewhat in the election, you cannot make them nulls or ciphers in the privation or translation. And if it be said, that this is a dangerous opinion for the pope, emperor, and elective kings; it is true it is a dangerous opinion, and ought to be a dangerous opinion, to such personal popes, emperors, or elective kings, as shall transcend their limits, and become tyrannical. But it is a safe and found opinion for their fees, empires and kingdoms; and for themselves also if they be wife; *plenitudo potestate, est plenitudo tempus.* But the chief caule why I do not search into this point is, because I need it not. And in handling the right of a war, I am not willing to intermix matter doubtful, with that which is out of doubt. For as in capital causes, wherein but one man's life is in question, *in facere vias,* the evidence ought to be clear; so much more in a judgment upon a war, which is capital to thousands. I suppose therefore the worst, that the offensive war upon Bohemia had been unjust; and then make the case, which is no sooner made than resolved; if it be made not enwrapped, but plainly and peripically. It is this in Tbofi. An offensive war is made, which is unjust in the aggressor; the prosecution and race of the war, carrieth the defendant to affail and invade the ancient and indubitate patrimony of the first aggressor, who is now turned defendant; shall he sit down, and not put himself in defence? Or if he be disposed, shall he not make a war for the recovery? No man is so poor of judgment as will affirm it. The cattle of Cadmus was taken, and the city of Thebes it self inveted by Phoebidas the Lacedaemonian, infidiously, and in violation of league: the procefs of this action drew on a re-surprize of the cattle by the Thebans, a recovery of the town, and a current of the war even unto the walls of Sparta. I demand, was the defence of the city of Sparta, and the expulsion of the Thebans out of the ancient Laconian territories, unjust? 

The
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

The sharing of that part of the duchy of Milan, which lieth upon the river of Adda, by the Venetians, upon contract with the French, was an ambitious and unjust purchase. This wheel set on going, did pour a war upon the Venetians with such a tempest, as Padua and Treviso were taken from them, and all their dominions upon the continent of Italy abandoned, and they confined within the salt waters. Will any man say, that the memorable recovery and defence of Padua, (when the gentlemen of Venice, unused to the wars, out of the love of their country, became brave and martial the first day;) and so likewise the re-adoption of Treviso, and the rest of their dominions, was matter of scruple, whether just or no, because it had source from a quarrel ill begun? The war of the duke of Urbin, nephew to pope Julius the second, when he made himself head of the Spanish mutineers, was as unjust as unjust might be; a support of desperate rebels; an invasion of saint Peter's patrimony; and what you will. The race of this war fell upon the loss of Urbin itself, which was the duke's undoubted right; yet in this case no penitentiary, (though he had enjoined him never to trait penance to expiate his first offence) would have counselled him to have given over the pursuit of his right for Urbin; which after he prosperously re-obtained, and hath transmitted to his family yet until this day.

Nothing more unjust than the invasion of the Spanish Armada in 1588, upon our seas; for our land was holy land to them, they might not touch it; I shall say therefore, that the defence of Lisbon, or Cales, afterwards, was unjust? There be thousands of examples; utor in re non dubia exemplis non necessariis: the reason is plain; wars are vindictae, revenges, reparations. But revenges are not infinite, but according to the measure of the first wrong or damage. And therefore when a voluntary offensive war, by the design or fortune of the war, is turned to a necessary defensive war, the scene of the tragedy is changed, and it is a new act to begin. For the particular actions of war, though they are complicate in fact, yet they are separate and distinct in right; like to cross suits in civil pleas, which are sometimes both just. But this is so clear, as needeth no farther to be infifted upon. And yet if in things so clear, it were fit to speak of more or less clear in our present cause, it is the more clear on our part, because the possession of Bohemia is settled with the emperor. For though it be true, that non datur compenfatio injuriarum; yet were there somewhat more colour to detain the Palatinate, as in the nature of a recovery, in value or compenfation, if Bohemia had been lost, or were still the stage of the war. Of this therefore I speak no more. As for the title of proscription or forfeiture, wherein the emperor (upon the matter) hath been judge and party, and hath justified himself, God forbid but that it should well endure an appeal to a war. For certainly the court of heaven is as well a chancery to save and defiueries, as a court of common law to decide rights; and there would be work enough in Germany, Italy, and other parts, if imperial forfeitures should go for good titles.

Thus much for the first ground of war with Spain, being in the nature of a plaint for the recovery of the Palatinate; omitting here that which might be the seed of a larger discourse, and is verified by a number of examples; that whatsoever is gained by an abusive treaty, ought to be restored in integrum: as we see the daily experience of this in civil pleas; for the images of great things are best seen contracted into small glases: we see (I say) that all pretorian courts, if any of the parties be entertained or laid asleep, under pretence of arbitrement or accord, and that the other part...
ty, during that time, doth cautelously get the start and advantage at common law, though it be to judgment and execution; yet the pretorian court will set back all things in statu quo prius, no respect had to such eviction or dispossession. Lastly, let there be no mistaking; as if when I speak of a war for the recovery of the Palatinate, I meant, that it must be in linea recta, upon that place: for look into jus faeciale, and all examples, and it will be found to be without scruple; that after a legation ad res repetendas, and a refusal, and a denunciation or indication of a war, the war is no more confined to the place of the quarrel, but is left at large and to choice, (as to the particular conducing designs,) as opportunities and advantages shall invite.

To proceed therefore to the second ground of a war with Spain, we have set it down to be, a just fear of the subversion of our civil estate. So then, the war is not for the Palatinate only, but for England, Scotland, Ireland, our king, our prince, our nation, all that we have. Wherein two things are to be proved. The one, that a just fear, (without an actual invasion or offence,) is a sufficient ground of a war, and in the nature of a true defensive: the other, that we have towards Spain, caufe of just fear; I say, just fear: for as the civilians do well define, that the legal fear is, justus metus qui cadit in confiantem virem, in private cauæ: So there is, justus metus qui cadit in confiantem fenatum, in causa publica: not out of umbrages, light jealousies, apprehensions a-far off, but out of clear foresight of imminent danger.

Concerning the former proposition, it is good to hear what time faith, Thucydides, in his inducement to his story of the great war of Peloponnesus, sets down in plain terms, that the true caufe of that war was, the overgrowing greatness of the Athenians, and the fear of the Lacedaemonians flooding in thereby; and doth not doubt to call it, a necessity imposed upon the Lacedaemonians of a war; which are the words of the Athenians, being grown great, to the terror of the Athenians; but out of clear foresight of imminent danger. So then, that we have towards Spain, caufe of just fear, and the fear that the Spaniards do well define, that the legal fear is, justus metus qui cadit in consiantem virem, in private cauæ: So there is, justus metus qui cadit in consiantem senatum, in causa publica: not out of umbrages, light jealousies, apprehensions a-far off, but out of clear foresight of imminent danger.

Concerning the former proposition, it is good to hear what time faith, Thucydides, in his inducement to his story of the great war of Peloponnesus, sets down in plain terms, that the true cause of that war was, the overgrowing greatness of the Athenians, and the fear of the Lacedaemonians flooding in thereby; and doth not doubt to call it, a necessity imposed upon the Lacedaemonians of a war; which are the words of the Athenians, being grown great, to the terror of the Lacedaemonians, did impose upon them a necessity of a war: but the causes that went abroad in speech were thefe, &c. Sulpius Galba, conful, when he persuaded the Romans to a preventive war, with the later Philip king of Macedon, in regard of the great preparations which Philip had then on foot, and his designs to ruin some of the confederates of the Romans, confidently faith, that they who took that for an offensive war, understood not the state of the question. Ignorare videmini mihi, (Quirites) non, utrum bellum an pacem babeatis, vos consulti, (neque enim liberum id vobis permitte Philippos, qui terra marique ingens bellum molitur,) non utrum in Macedoniam legiones transporteritis, an bolem in Italian receptis. Ye seem to me (ye Romans) not to understand, that the consultation before you is not, whether you shall have war or peace, (for Philip will take order you shall be no chusers, who prepareth a mighty war both by land and sea,) but whether you shall transport the war into Macedon, or receive it into Italy. Antiochus, when he incited Prusias king of Bithynia, (at that time in league with the Romans,) to join with him in war against them, setteth before him a just fear of the overspreading greatness of the Romans, comparing it to a fire.
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

fire that continually took, and spread from kingdom to kingdom: Venire Romans ad omnia regna tollenda, ut nullum usquam orbis terrarum nisi Romane imperium effet; Philippum & Nabin expugnatos, se tertiun peti; ut quisque proximus ab opprero fit, per omnes velut continens incendium pererafurum: That the Romans came to pull down all kingdoms, and to make the state of Rome an universal monarchy; that Philip and Nabis were already ruined, and now was his turn to be afflicted: so that as every state lay next to the other that was oppressed, so the fire perpetually grazed. Wherein it is well to be noted, that towards ambitious states, (which are noted to aspire to great monarchies, and to seek upon all occasions to enlarge their dominions,) crescent argumenta jufti metus: all particular fears do grow and multiply out of the contemplation of the general courses and practice of such states. Therefore in deliberations of war against the Turk, it hath been often, with great judgment, maintained: that Christian princes and states have always a sufficient ground of invasive war against the enemy: not for cause of religion, but upon a just fear; forasmuch as it is a fundamental law, in the Turkis empire, that they may (without any other provocation) make war upon Christendom, for the propagation of their law; so that there lieth upon the Christians a perpetual fear of a war (hanging over their heads) from them; and therefore they may at all times (as they think good) be upon the prevention. Demosthenes exposed to scorn wars which are not preventive, comparing those that make them to country fellows in a fence school, that never ward till the blow be past: Ut barbari pugiles dicinare jKKnt, ita vos bellum geritis cum Philippo, ex bis enim is qui ietus est, ietui jenper inhaeret: quod si eum alibi verberes, illo manus transfert; idium autem depellere, aut prospicere, neque fiat neque vult. As country fellows use to do when they play at walters, such a kind of war do you (Athenians) make with Philip; for with them he that gets a blow, straight falleth toward when the blow is past; and if you strike him in another place, thither goes his hand likewise: but to put by or foresee a blow, they neither have the skill, nor the will.

Clinias the Candin (in Plato) speaks desperately and wildly, as if there were no such thing as peace between nations; but that every nation expects but his advantage to war upon another. But yet in that excess of speech, there is thus much that may have a civil construction; namely, that every state ought to stand upon his guard, and rather prevent than be prevented. His words are, Quam rem fier vocat pacem, nudum & inane nomen est; revera autem omnibus, edoceris omnes civitates, bellum jenpiternum perdurat. That which men for the most part call peace, is but a naked and empty name; but the truth is, that there is ever between all citates a secret war. I knew well this speech is the objection and not the decision, and that it is after refused; but yet (as I said before) it bears thus much of truth, that if that general malignity, and predisposition to war, (which he untruly figureth to be in all nations) be produced and extended to a just fear of being oppressed, then it is no more a true peace, but a name of a peace.

As for the opinion of Iphicrates the Athenian, it demands not so much towards a war as a just fear, but rather cometh near the opinion of Clinias; as if there were ever amongst nations a brooding of a war, and that there is no sure league but impuissance to do hurt. For he, in the treaty of peace with the Lacedaemonians, speaketh plain language; telling them, there could be no true and secure peace, except the Lacedaemonians yielded to those things, which being granted, it would be no longer in their power
to hurt the Athenians, though they would: and to say truth, if one mark it well, this was in all memory the main piece of wisdom, in strong and prudent counsels, to be in perpetual watch, that the states about them should neither by approach, nor by increaçe of dominion, nor by ruining prudent confederates, nor by blocking of trade, nor by any the like means, have it in their power to hurt or annoy the states they serve; and whensoever any such cause did but appear, straight-ways to buy it out with a war, and never to take up peace at credit, and upon interest. It is so memorable, as it is yet as fresh as if it were done yesterday, how that triumvirate of kings (Henry the eighth of England, Francis the first of France, and Charles the fifth emperor and king of Spain,) were in their times so provident, as scarce a palm of ground could be gotten by either of the three, but that the other two would be sure to do their best, to set the balance of Europe upright again. And the like diligence was used in the age before by that league, (wherewith Guicciardine beginneth his story, and maketh it, as it were, the calendar of the good days of Italy) which was contracted between Ferdinando king of Naples, Lorenzo of Medici potentate of Florence, and Lodovico Sforza duke of Milan, designed chiefly against the growing power of the Venetians; but yet so, as the confederates had a perpetual eye one another, that none of them should overtop. To conclude therefore, howsoever some schoolmen (otherwise reverend men, yet fitter to guide pen-knives than swords) seem præfently to stand upon it; that every offensive war must be ulió; a revenge, that presupponeth a precedent affault or injury; yet neither do they defend to this point, (which we now handle) of a just fear; neither are they of authority to judge this question against all the precedents of time. For certainly, as long as men are men, (the sons, as the poets allude of Prometheus, and not of Epimetheus,) and as long as reason is reason, a just fear will be a just cause of a preventive war; but especially if it be part of the case, that there be a nation that is manifestly detected, to aspire to monarchy and new acquêts; then other states (assuredly) cannot be justly accuèd, for not staying for the first blow; or for not accepting Polyphemus's courtesy, to be the laft that shall be eaten up. Nay, I observe farther, that in that passage of Plato, which I cited before, (and even in the tenet of that person that beareth the resolving part, and not the objecting part,) a just fear is justified for a cause of an invasive war, though the same fear proceed not from the fault of the foreign state to be affailed: for it is there intimated, that if a state, out of the dittemper of their own body, do fear feditious and intestine troubles, to break out amongst themselves, they may discharge their own ill humours upon a foreign war for a cure. And this kind of cure was tender'd by Jasper Coligni, admiral of France, to Charles the ninth the French king, when by a vive and forcible persuasion, he moved him to a war upon Flanders, for the better extinguishment of the civil wars of France; but neither was that counsel prosperous; neither will I maintain that position: for I will never fet politicks against ethicks; especially for that true ethicks are but as a handmaid to divinity and religion. Surely St. Thomas (who had the largest heart of the school divines) bendeth chiefly his style against the depraved passions which reign in making wars, speaking out of St. Augustin: Noenscid capiatis, utijsendi crudelitas, implacata & implacablis animus, feritas rebellandi, libid dominandi, & si quae sunt familia, baec sunt quae in bellis jure culpantur. And the same St. Thomas, in his own text, defining of the just causes of a war, doth leave it upon very general terms: Requiritur ad bellum
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

bellum causa justa, ut si cum illi qui impugnantur, propter aliquam culpam, impugnationem mereantur; for impugnatione culpas, is a far more general word, than ultio injuriae. Thus much for the first proposition, of the second ground of a war with Spain: namely, that a just fear is a just cause of a war; and that a preventive war is a true defensive.

The second or minor proposition was this; that this kingdom hath cause of just fear of overthrow from Spain. Wherein it is true, that fears are ever seen in dimmer lights than facts. And on the other side, fears use (many times) to be represented in such an imaginary fashion, as they rather dazzle mens eyes, than open them: and therefore I will speak in that manner which the subject requires; that is, probably, and moderately, and briefly. Neither will I deduce these fears to present occurrences; but point only at general grounds, leaving the rest to more secret counsels.

Is it nothing, that the crown of Spain hath enlarged the bounds thereof within this last fixcore years, much more than the Ottomans? I speak not of matches or unions, but of arms, occupations, invasions. Granada, Naples, Milan, Portugal, the East and West-Indies; all these are actual additions to that crown. They had a mind to French Britain, the lower part of Picardy and Piedmont; but they have let fall their bit. They have, at this day, such a hovering possession of the Valtoline, as a hobby hath over a lark: and the Palatinate is in their talons: so that nothing is more manifest, than that this nation of Spain runs a race (still) of empire, when all other states of Christendom Stand in effect at a stay. Look then a little further into the titles whereby they have acquired, and do now hold these new portions of the crown; and you will find them of so many varieties, and such natures, (to speak with due respect) as may appear to be easily minted, and such as can hardly at any time be wanting. And therefore, so many new conquests and purchases, so many strokes of the alarum bell of fear and awakening to other nations; and the facility of the titles, which hand over-head have served their turn, doth ring the peal so much the sharper and the louder.

Shall we descend from their general disposition to inlarge their dominions, to their particular disposition and eye of appetite which they have had towards us: they have now twice sought to impatience themselves of this kingdom of England; once by marriage with queen Mary; and the second time by conquest in 88, when their forces by sea and land were not inferior to those they have now. And at that time in 88, the counsel and design of Spain was by many advertisements revealed and laid open to be, that they found the war upon the Low Countries fo churlish and longsome, as they grew then to a resolution, that as long as England stood in state to succour those countries, they should but confume themselves in an endless war; and therefore there was no other way but to affail and depresse England, which was as a back of steel to the Flemings. And who can warrant (I pray) that the same counsel and design will not return again? So as we are in a strange dilemma of danger: for if we suffer the Flemings to be ruined, they are our outwork, and we shall remain naked and dismanted: if we succour them strongly, (as is fit) and set them upon their feet, and do not withal weaken Spain, we hazard to change the scene of the war, and to turn it upon Ireland or England: like unto rheums and defluxions, which if you apply a strong repercussive to the place affected, and do not take away the cause of the discale, will shift, and fall straightways to another joint or place. They have also twice invaded Ireland; once under the pope's
pope's banner, when they were defeated by the lord Gray: and after in their own name, when they were defeated by the lord Mountjoy. So as let this suffice for a taste of their disposition towards us. But it will be said, this is an almanack for the old year; since 88 all hath been well; Spain hath not affailed this kingdom, howsoever by two several invasions from us mightily provoked. It is true: but then consider, that immediately after 88, they were imbroidled for a great time in the protection of the league of France, whereby they had their hands full; after being brought extreme low by their vast and continual intrusions, they were enforced to be quiet that they might take breath, and do reparations upon their former wafthes. But now of late, things seem to come on apace to their former estate; nay, with far greater disadvantage to us; for now that they have almost continued, and (as it were) arched their dominions from Milan, by the Valtoline and Palatinate, to the Low Countries; we see how they thirst and pant after the utter ruin of those states; having in contempt almost the German nation, and doubting little opposition except it come from England: whereby either we must suffer the Dutch to be ruined, to our own manifest prejudice; or put it upon the hazard I spake of before, that Spain will cast at the fairest. Neither is the point of internal danger, which groweth upon us, to be forgotten; this, that the party of the papists in England are become more knotted, both in dependence towards Spain, and amongst themselves, than they have been. Wherein again comes to be remembered the case of 88: for then also it appeared by divers secret letters, that the design of Spain was (for some years before the invasion attempted) to prepare a party in this kingdom to adhere to the foreigner at his coming. And they bragged, that they doubted not but to abuse and lay asleep the queen and council of England, as to have any fear of the party of papists here; for that they knew (they said) the state would but cast the eye and look about to see, whether there were any eminent head of that party, under whom it might unite it self; and finding none worth the thinking on, the state would rest secure and take no apprehension: whereas they meant (they said) to take a course to deal with the people, and particulars, by reconciliations, and confessions, and secret promises, and cared not for any head or party. And this was the true reason, why after that the seminaries began to blossom, and to make missions into England, (which was about the three and twentieth year of queen Elizabeth, at what time also was the first suspicion of the Spanish invasion) then, and not before, grew the sharp and severe laws to be made against the papists. And therefore the papists may do well to change their thanks; and whereas they thank Spain for their favours, to thank them for their perils and miseries if they should fall upon them: for that nothing ever made their state so ill, as the doubt of the greatness of Spain, which adding reason of state to matter of conscience and religion, did whet the laws against them. And this case also seemeth (in some sort) to return again at this time; except the clemency of his majesty, and the state, do super-abound; as for my part, I do with it should: and that the proceedings towards them may rather tend to security, and providence, and point of state, than to persecution for religion. But to conclude; these things briefly touched, may serve as in a subject conjectural and future, for to represent how just cause of fear this kingdom may have towards Spain: omitting, as I said before, all present and more secret occurrences.
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

The third ground of a war with Spain, I have set down to be; a just fear of the subversion of our church and religion: Which needeth little speech. For if this war be a defensive, (as I have proved it to be) no man will doubt, that a defensive war against a foreigner for religion, is lawful. Of an offensive war there is more dispute. And yet in that instance of the war of the Holy Land and sepulchre, I do wonder sometimes, and the schoolmen want words to defend that, which S. Bernard wanted words to commend. But I, that in this little extract of a thing do omit things necessary, am not to handle things unnecessary. No man, I say, will doubt, but if the pope, or king of Spain, would demand of us to forfake our religion upon pain of a war, it were as unjust a demand, as the Persians made to the Graecians of land and water; or the Ammorites to the Israelites of their right eyes. And we see all the heathen did style their defensive wars, pro aris & focis; placing their altars before their hearths. So that it is in vain of this to speak farther. Only this is true; that the fear of the subversion of our religion from Spain, is the more just, for that all other catholick princes and states content and contain themselves to maintain their religion within their own dominions, and meddle not with the subjects of other states; whereas the practice of Spain hath been, both in Charles the fifth's time, and in the time of the league in France, by war; and now with us, by conditions of treaty, to intermeddle with foreign states, and to declare themselves protectors general of the party of catholicks, through the world. As if the crown of Spain had a little of this, that they would plant the pope's law by arms, as the Ottomans do the law of Mahomet. Thus much concerneth the first main point of justifying the quarrel, if the king shall enter into a war; for this that I have said, and all that followeth to be said, is but to show what he may do.

The second main part of that I have propounded to speak of, is the balance of forces between Spain and us. And this also tendeth to no more, but what the king may do. For what he may do is of two kinds: what he may do as just; and what he may do as possible. Of the one I have already spoken; of the other I am now to speak. I said, Spain was no such giant; and yet if he were a giant, it will be but as it was between David and Goliah, for God is on our side. But to leave all arguments that are supernatural, and to speak in an humane and politick sense, I am led to think that Spain is no over-match for England, by that which leadeth all men; that is, experience and reason. And with experience I will begin, for there all reason beginneth.

Is it fortune (shall we think) that in all actions of war or arms, great and small, which have happened these many years, ever since Spain and England have had any thing to debate one with the other, the English upon all encounters have perpetually come off with honour, and the better? It is not fortune sure; (he is not so constant. There is something in the nation and natural courage of the people, or some such thing. I will make a brief list of the particulars themselves in an historical truth, no ways troubled, nor made greater by language. This were a fit speech (you will say) for a general, in the head of an army, when they were going to battle: yes; and it is no les fit speech, to be spoken in the head of a council, upon a deliberation of entrance into a war. Neither speak I this to dispare the Spanish nation, whom I take to be of the best soldiers in Europe: But that forth to our honour, if we still have had the better hand.

VOL. III.
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

In the year 1578, was that famous lammas day, which buried the reputation of Don John of Austria, himself not surviving long after. Don John being superior in forces, affifted by the prince of Parma, Mondragon, Manfellt, and other the best commanders of Spain, confident of victory, charged the army of the states near Rimenant, bravely and furiously at the first; but after a fight maintained by the space of a whole day, was repulsed, and forced to a retreat, with great slaughter of his men; and the course of his farther enterprizes was wholly arrested; and this chiefly by the prowess and virtue of the English and Scotch troops, under the conduct of Sir John Norris and Sir Robert Stuart colonels: Which troops came to the army but the day before, harassed with a long and wearisome march; and (as it is left for a memorable circumstance in all stories) the soldiers being more sensible of a little heat of the sun, than of any cold fear of death, cast away their armour and garments from them, and fought in their shirts: and, as it was generally conceived, had it not been that the count of Bottia was slack in charging the Spaniards upon their retreat, this fight had forced to an absolute defeat. But it was enough to chastifie Don John, for his infamous treaty of peace, wherewith he had abused the states at his first coming. And the fortune of the day, (besides the testimony of all stories) may be the better ascribed to the service of the English and Scotch, by comparison of this charge near Rimenant, (where the English and Scotch in great numbers came in action) with the like charge given by Don John half a year before at Gemblours, where the success was contrary: there being at that time in the army but a handful of English and Scotch, and they put in disarray by the horsemen of their own fellows.

The first dart of war which was thrown from Spain or Rome, upon the realm of Ireland, was in the year 1580; for the design of Stukely blew over into Africk; and the attempt of Sanders and Fitz-Maurice had a spice of madness. In that year Ireland was invaded by Spanish and Italian forces, under the pope's banner, and the conduct of San Josep, to the number of 700, or better, which landed at Smerwick in Kerry. A poor number it was to conquer Ireland to the pope's use; for their design was no less: but withal they brought arms for 5000 men above their own company, intending to arm so many of the rebels of Ireland. And their purpose was, to fortify in some strong place of the wild and defolate country, and there to nestle till greater succours came; they being hastened unto this enterprise upon a special reason of state, not proper to the enterprise it self; which was by the invasion of Ireland, and the noise thereof, to trouble the council of England, and to make a diversion of certain aids, that then were preparing from hence for the low countries. They chose a place where they erected a fort, which they called the Fort del Or; and from thence they bolted like beasts of the fores, sometimes into the woods and fastnesses, and sometimes back again to their den. Soon after, siege was laid to the fort by the lord Gray then deputy, with a smaller number than those were within the fort; venturously indeed; but haste was made to attack them before the rebels came in to them. After the siege of four days only, and two or three fallies, with los on their part, they that should have made good the fort for some months, till new succours came from Spain, or at least from the rebels of Ireland, yielded up themselves without conditions at the end of those four days. And for that they were not in the English army enough to keep every man a prifoner, and for that alfo the deputy expected instantly to be assailed by the rebels; and again, there were no barks to throw them
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

them into, and fend them away by sea; they were all put to the sword: with which queen Elizabeth was afterwards much displeased.

In the year 1582, was that memorable retreat of Gaunt; than the which there hath not been an exploit of war more celebrated. For in the true judgment of men of war, honourable retreats are no ways inferior to brave charges; as having less of fortune, more of discipline, and as much of valour. There were to the number of three hundred horse, and as many thousand foot English (commanded by sir John Norris) charged by the prince of Parma, coming upon them with seven thousand horse; besides that the whole army of Spaniards was ready to march on. Nevertheless sir John Norris maintained a retreat without disarray, by the space of some miles, (part of the way champaign) unto the city of Gaunt, with less loss of men than the enemy: The duke of Anjou, and the prince of Orange, beholding this noble action from the walls of Gaunt, as in a theatre, with great admiration.

In the year 1585, followed the prosperous expedition of Drake and Carlisle into the West-Indies; in which I set aside the taking of S. Iago and S. Domingo in Hispaniola, as surprizes rather than encounters. But that of Carthagena, where the Spaniards had warning of our coming, and had put themselves in their full strength, was one of the hottest services, and most dangerous assaults that hath been known. For the access of the town was only by a neck of land, between the sea on the one part, and the harbour water or inner sea on the other; fortified clean over with a strong rampier and barricado; so as upon the ascent of our men, they had both great ordnance and small shot, that thundered and showered upon them from the rampier in front, and from the gallies that lay at sea in flank. And yet they forced their passage, and won the town, being likewise very well manned.

As for the expedition of sir Francis Drake, in the year 1587, for the destroying of the Spanish shipping and provision upon their own coast; as I cannot say that there intervened in that enterprise any sharp fight or encounter; so nevertheless it did strangely discover, either that Spain is very weak at home, or very slow to move; when they suffered a small fleet of English, to make an hostile invasion, or incursion, upon their havens and roads, from Cadiz to Capa Sacra, and thence to Cape St. Vincent; and to fire, sink, and carry away at the least, ten thousand ton of their great shipping, besides fifty or sixty of their smaller vessels; and that in the sight, and under the favour of their forts; and almost under the eye of their great admiral, (the best commander of Spain by sea) the marquis de Santa Cruz, without ever being disputed with by any fight of importance. I remember Drake, in the vaunting style of a soldier, would call this enterprise, the singeing of the king of Spain’s beard.

The enterprise of 88, devoueth to be stood upon a little more fully, being a miracle of time. There armed from Spain, in the year 1588, the greatest navy that ever swam upon the sea: For though there have been far greater fleets for number, yet for the bulk and building of the ships, with the furniture of great ordnance and provisions, never the like. The design was to make not an invasion only, but an utter conquest of this kingdom. The number of vessels were one hundred and thirty, whereof galleys and galleons seventy two, goodly ships, like floating towers, or castles, manned with thirty thousand soldiers and mariners. This navy was the preparation of five whole years at the least: It bare it self also upon divine assistance; for it received special blessing from pope Sixtus, and was assigned
as an apostolical mission for the reduction of this kingdom to the obedience of the see of Rome. And in farther token of this holy warfare, there were amongst the rest of these ships, twelve, called by the names of the twelve apostles. But it was truly conceived, that this kingdom of England could never be overwhelmed, except the land waters came in to the sea tides. Therefore was there also in readiness in Flanders, a mighty strong army of land forces, to the number of fifty thousand veteran soldiers, under the conduct of the duke of Parma, the best commander next the French king Henry the fourth, of his time. These were designed to join with the forces at sea; there being prepared a number of flat bottomed boats to transport the land forces, under the wing and protection of the great navy. For they made no account, but that the navy should be absolutely master of the seas. Against these forces, there were prepared on our part, to the number of near one hundred ships; not fo great of bulk indeed, but of a more nimble motion, and more serviceable; besides a fleet of thirty ships, for the custody of the narrow seas. There were also in readiness at land two armies; besides other forces, to the number of ten thousand, dispersed amongst the coast towns in the southern parts. The two armies were appointed; one of them consisting of twenty five thousand horse and foot, for the repulsing of the enemy at their landing; and the other of twenty five thousand for safeguard and attendance about the court and the queen's person. There were also other dormant musters of soldiers throughout all parts of the realm, that were put in readiness, but not drawn together. These were assigned to the leading of two generals, noble persons, but both of them rather courtiers, and assured to the state, than martial men; yet lined and assisted with subordinate commanders of great experience and valour. The fortune of the war made this enterprise at first a play at base. The Spanish navy set forth out of the Groyne in May, and was dispersed and driven back by weather. Our navy set forth somewhat later out of Plimouth, and bore up towards the coast of Spain to have sought with the Spanish navy; and partly by reason of contrary winds, partly upon advertisement that the Spaniards were gone back, and upon some doubt also that they might pass by towards the coast of England, whilst we were seeking them afar off, returned likewise into Plimouth about the middle of July. At that time came more confident advertisement, (though false) not only to the lord admiral, but to the court, that the Spaniards could not possibly come forward that year; whereupon our navy was upon the point of dispersing, and many of our men gone ashore: At which very time the invincible Armada, (for so it was called in a Spanish ostentation throughout Europe) was discovered upon the western coast. It was a kind of surprize; for that (as was said) many of our men were gone to land, and our ships ready to depart. Nevertheless the admiral, with such ships only as could suddenly be put in readiness, made forth towards them; informing many of one hundred ships, there came scarce thirty to work. Howbeit with them, and such as came daily in, we set upon them, and gave them the chase. But the Spaniards for want of courage (which they called commission) declined the fight, casting themselves continually into roundels, (their strongest ships walling in the rest) and in that manner they made a flying march towards Calais. Our men by the space of five or six days followed them close, fought with them continually, made great slaughter of their men, took two of their great ships, and gave divers others of their ships their death's wounds, whereof soon after they sank and perished; and, in a word, distressed
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

distressed them almost in the nature of a defeat; we our selves in the mean time receiving little or no hurt. Near Calais the Spaniards anchored, expecting their land forces, which came not. It was afterwards alleged, that the duke of Parma did artificially delay his coming; but this was but an invention and pretension given out by the Spaniards; partly upon a Spanish envy against that duke, being an Italian, and his son a competitor to Portuguese; but chiefly to save the monstrous scorn and disreputation, which they and their nation received by the success of that enterprize. Therefore their colours and excuses (forthwith) were, that their general by sea had a limited commission, not to fight until the land forces were come in to them: and that the duke of Parma had particular reaches and ends of his own under hand, to cross the design. But it was both a strange commission, and a strange obedience to a commission; for men in the midst of their own blood and being so furiously affailed, to hold their hands contrary to the laws of nature and necessity. And as for the duke of Parma, he was reasonably well tempted to be true to that enterprize, by no less promise than to be made a feudatory, or beneficiary king of England, under the feignity (in chief) of the pope, and the protection of the king of Spain. Besides, it appeared that the duke of Parma held his place long after in the favour and trust of the king of Spain, by the great employments and services that he performed in France; and again, it is manifest, that the duke did his best to come down, and to put to sea: the truth was, that the Spanish navy, upon those proofs of fight which they had with the English, finding how much hurt they received, and how little hurt they did, by reason of the activity and low building of our ships, and skill of our seamen; and being also commanded by a general of small courage and experience, and having lost at the first, two of their bravest commanders at sea, Pedro de Valdez, and Michael de Oquenda; durst not put it to a battle at sea, but set up their rest wholly upon the land enterprize. On the other side, the transporting of the land forces failed in the very foundation: For whereas the council of Spain made full account, that their navy should be masters of the sea, and therefore able to guard and protect the vessels of transportation; when it fell out to the contrary that the great navy was distressed, and had enough to do to save it self; and again, that the Hollanders impounded their land forces with a brave fleet of thirty sail, excellently well appointed; things (I say) being in this state, it came to pass that the duke of Parma must have flown if he would have come into England, for he could get neither bark nor mariner to put to sea: yet certain it is, that the duke looked still for the coming back of the Armada, even at that time when they were wandering, and making their perambulation upon the northern seas. But to return to the Armada, which we left anchored at Calais; from thence (as Sir Walter Raleigh was wont prettily to say) they were suddenly driven away with squibs; for it was no more but a stratagem of fire boats, manless, and sent upon them by the favour of the wind in the night time, that did put them in such terror, as they cut their cables, and left their anchors in the sea. After they hovered some two or three days about Graveling, and there again were beaten in a great fight; at what time our second fleet, which kept the narrow seas, was come in and joined to our main fleet. Then upon the Spaniards entering into farther terror, and finding also divers of their ships every day to sink, lost all courage, and instead of coming up into the Thames mouth for London, (as their design was,) fled on towards the north to seek their fortunes; being still chafed by the English navy at the heels,
heels, until we were fain to give them over for want of powder. The breath of Scotland could not endure; neither durft they as invaders land in Ireland; but only ennobled some of the coasts thereof with shipwrecks. And so going northwards aloof, as long as they had any doubt of being pursued, at laft when they were out of reach, they turned, and crossed the ocean to Spain, having loft four-score of their ships, and the greater part of their men. And this was the end of that sea-giant, and invincible Armada: which having not fo much as fired a cottage of ours at land, nor taking a cock-boat of ours at sea, wandered through the wilderness of the northern seas; and according to the curse in the scripture, came out againft us one way, and fled before us seven ways. Serving only to make good the judgment of an astrologer long before given, oCluagijimus oClavus mirabilis annus: or rather, to make good (even to the astonishment of all posterity) the wonderful judgments of God, poured down commonly upon vast and proud aspirings.

In the year that followed of 1589, we gave the Spaniards no breath, but turned challengers, and invaded the main of Spain. In which enterprise, although we failed of our end, which was to settle Don Antonio in the kingdom of Portugal, yet a man shall hardly meet with an action that doth better reveal the great secret of the power of Spain: which power well sought into, will be found rather to consist in a veteran army, (such as upon several occasions and pretensions they have ever had on foot, in one part or other of Christendom, now by the space of almost six-score years) than in the strength of their dominions and provinces. For what can be more strange, or more to the disvaluation of the power of the Spaniard upon the continent, than that with an army of eleven thousand English land-soldiers, and a fleet of twenty-six ships of war, besides some weak vessels for transportation, we should within the hour-glass of two months, have won one town of importance by escalado, battered and assaulted another, overthrown great forces in the field, and that upon the disadvantage of a bridge strongly barricaded, landed the army in three several places of his kingdom, marched seven days in the heart of his countries, lodged three nights in the suburbs of his principal city, beaten his forces into the gates thereof, possessed two of his frontier forts, and come off after all this with small loss of men, otherwise than by sickness? And it was verily thought, that had it not been for four great disfavours of that voyage, (that is to say, the failing in sundry provisions that were promised, especially of cannons for battery; the vain hopes of Don Antonio, concerning the people of the country to come in to his aid; the disappointment of the fleet that was directed to come up the river of Lisbon; and lastly, the diseases which spread in the army by reason of the heat of the season, and of the soldiers misrule in diet;) the enterprise had succeeded, and Lisbon had been carried. But howsoever it makes proof to the world, that an invasion of a few English upon Spain, may have just hope of victory, at least of passport to depart safely.

In the year 1591, was that memorable sight of an English ship called the Revenge, under the command of sir Richard Greenvil; memorable (I say) even beyond credit, and to the height of some herculean fable: and though it were a defeat, yet it exceeded a victory; being like the act of Sampson, that killed more men at his death, than he had done in the time of all his life. This ship, for the space of fifteen hours, sate like a flag amongst hounds at the bay, and was sieged, and fought with, in turn, by fifteen great
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

great ships of Spain, part of a navy of fifty-five ships in all; the rest like abettors looking on afar off. And amongst the fifteen ships that fought, the great S. Philip was one; a ship of fifteen hundred ton, prince of the twelve Sea-Apols, which was right glad when she was shifted off from the Revenge. This brave ship the Revenge, being manned only with two hundred (soldiers and mariners) whereof eighty lay sick; yet nevertheless after a fight maintained (as was said) of fifteen hours, and two ships of the enemy sunk by her side, besides many more torn and battered, and great slaughter of men, never came to be entered, but was taken by composition; the enemies themselves having in admiration the virtue of the commander, and the whole tragedy of that ship.

In the year 1596, was the second invasion that we made upon the main territories of Spain; prosperously atchieved by that worthy and famous Robert earl of Essex, in consort with the noble earl of Nottingham that now liveth, then admiral. This journey was like lightning; for in the space of fourteen hours the king of Spain's navy was destroyed, and the town of Cadiz taken. The navy was no less than fifty tall ships, besides twenty galleys to attend them. The ships were straightways beaten, and put to flight with such terror, as the Spaniards in the end were their own executioners, and fired them all with their own hands. The galleys, by the benefit of the shores and shallows, got away. The town was a fair; strong, well built, and rich city; famous in antiquity, and now most spoken of for this disaster. It was manned with four thousand soldiers foot, and some four hundred horse; it was sacked and burned, though great clemency was used towards the inhabitants. But that which is no less strange than the sudden victory, is the great patience of the Spaniards; who though we stayed upon the place divers days, yet never offered us any play then, nor ever put us in suit by any action of revenge or reparation, at any time after.

In the year 1600, was the battel of Newport in the Low Countries, where the armies of the arch-duke, and the states, tried it out by a just battel. This was the only battel that was fought in those countries these many years. For battels in the French wars have been frequent, but in the wars of Flanders rare, as the nature of a defensive requireth. The forces of both armies were not much unequal: that of the states exceeded somewhat in number, but that again was recompened in the quality of the soldiers; for those of the Spanish part were of the flower of all their forces. The arch-duke was the affailant, and the preventer, and had the fruit of his diligence and celerity. For he had charged certain companies of Scotch men, to the number of eight hundred, sent to make good a passage and thereby sever from the body of the army, and cut them all in pieces: for they, like a brave infantry, when they could make no honourable retreat, and would take no dishonourable flight, made good the place with their lives. This entrance of the battel did whet the courage of the Spaniards, though it dulled their swords; so as they came proudly on, confident to defeat the whole army. The encounter of the main battel which followed, was a just encounter, not hastened to a sudden rout, nor the fortune of the day resting upon a few former ranks, but fought out to the proof by several squadrons, and not without various success; baert pede pes, denfufque vir vir. There fell out an error in the Dutch army, by the overhasty medly of some of their men with the enemies, which hindered the playing of their great ordnance. But the end was, that the Spaniards were utterly defeated.
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

defeated, and near five thousand of their men in the fight, and in the execution, slain and taken; amongst whom were many of the principal persons of their army. The honour of the day was, both by the enemy and the Dutch themselves, ascribed unto the English; of whom Sir Francis Vere, in a private commentary which he wrote of that service lefteth testified, that of fifteen hundred in number, (for they were no more) eight hundred were slain in the field: and (which is almost incredible in a day of victory) of the remaining seven hundred, two men only came unhurt. Amongst the rest Sir Francis Vere himself had the principal honour of the service, unto whom the prince of Orange (as is said) did transmit the direction of the army for that day; and in the next place Sir Horace Vere his brother, that now liveth, who was the principal in the active part. The service also of Sir Edward Cecil, Sir John Ogle, and divers other brave gentlemen, was eminent.

In the year 1601, followed the battle of Kingsale in Ireland. By this Spanish invasion of Ireland, (which was in September that year) a man may guess how long time a Spaniard will live in Irish ground; which is a matter of a quarter of a year, or four months at the most. For they had all the advantages in the world; and no man would have thought (considering the small forces employed against them) that they could have been driven out so soon. They obtained, without resistance, in the end of September, the town of Kingsale; a small garrison of one hundred and fifty English, leaving the town upon the Spaniards approach, and the townsfolk receiving the foreigners as friends. The number of Spaniards that put themselves into Kingsale, was two thousand men, soldiers of old bands, under the command of Don John d’Aquila, a man of good valour. The town was strong of itself; neither wanted there any industrу to fortify it on all parts, and make it tenable, according to the skill and discipline of Spaniards fortification. At that time the rebels were proud, being encouraged upon former success: for though the then deputy, the lord Mountjoy, and Sir George Carew, president of Munster, had performed divers good services to their prejudice; yet the defeat they had given the English at Blackwater, not long before, and the treaty (too much to their honour) with the Earl of Essex, was yet fresh in their memory. The deputy loft no time, but made haste to have recovered the town before new succours came, and fate down before it in October, and laid siege to it by the space of three winter months or more: during which time sallies were made by the Spaniards, but they were beaten in with losfs. In January came fresh succours from Spain to the number of two thousand more, under the conduct of Alonzo d’Ocampo. Upon the comfort of these succours, Tirone and Odomell drew up their forces together, to the number of seven thousand, besides the Spaniards regiments, and took the field, resolved to rescue the town, and to give the English battle. So here was the case: an army of English, of some six thousand, wafted and tired with a long winter’s siege, engaged in the midst, between an army of a greater number than themselves, fresh and in vigour, on the one side; and a town strong in fortification, and strong in men, on the other. But what was the event? This in few words: that after the Irish and Spaniards forces had come on, and shewed themselves in some bravery, they were content to give the English the honour as to charge them first; and when it came to the charge, there appeared no other difference between the valour of the Irish rebels, and the Spaniards, but that the one ran away before they were charged, and the other straight after. And again, the
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

the Spaniards that were in the town had so good memories of their losses in their former fallies; as the confidence of an army, which came for their deliverance, could not draw them forth again. To conclude, there succeeded an absolute victory for the English, with the slaughter of above two thousand of the enemy; the taking of nine ensigns, whereof six Spaniards; the taking of the Spaniards general, d'Ocampo, prisoner; and this with the loss of so few of the English as is scarce credible; being (as hath been rather confidently than credibly reported) but of one man, the cornet of Sir Richard Greene; though not a few hurt. There followed immediately after the defeat, a present yielding up of the town by composition; and not only so, but an avoiding (by express articles of treaty accorded) of all other Spanish forces throughout all Ireland, from the places and nests where they had settled themselves in greater strength, (as in regard of the natural situation of the places) than that was of King'sale; which were Castlehaven, Baltimore, and Berehaven. Indeed they went away with sound of trumpet, for they did nothing but publish and trumpet all the reproaches they could devise, against the Irish land and nation; insomuch as D'Aquila said in open treaty, that when the devil upon the mount did teach Christ all the kingdoms of the earth, and the glory of them, he did not doubt but the devil left out Ireland, and kept it for himself.

I cease here; omitting not a few other proofs of the English valour and fortunes, in these later times: as at the suburbs of Paris, at the Raveline, at Druse in Normandy, some encounters in Brittany, and at Ofenden, and divers others; partly because some of them have not been proper encounters between the Spaniards and the English; and partly because others of them have not been of that greatness, as to have saved in company with the particulars formerly recited. It is true, that amongst all the late adventures, the voyage of Sir Francis Drake, and Sir John Hawkins into the West-Indies, was unfortunate; yet in such fort as it doth not break or interrupt our prescription, to have had the better of the Spaniards upon all sorts of late. For the disaster of that journey was caused chiefly by sickness; as might well appear by the death of both the generals, (Sir Francis Drake, and Sir John Hawkins) of the fame sickness amongst the rest. The land entrance of Panama, was an ill measured and immature counsel; for it was grounded upon a false account, that the passages towards Panama were no better fortified than Drake had left them. But yet it forced not to any fight of importance, but to a retreat, after the English had proved the strength of their first fort, and had notice of the two other forts beyond, by which they were to have marched. It is true, that in the return of the English fleet, they were set upon by Aavellaneda, admiral of twenty great ships Spanish; our fleet being but fourteen, full of sick men, deprived of their two generals by sea, and having no pretence but to journey homewards: and yet the Spaniards did but salute them about the cape de los Corrientes, with some small offer of fight, and came off with loss; although it was such a new thing for the Spaniards to receive so little hurt upon dealing with the English, as Aavellaneda made great brags of it, for no greater matter than the waiting upon the English afar off, from cape de los Corrientes to cape Antonio; which nevertheless, in the language of a soldier, and of a Spaniard, he called a chase.

But before I proceed farther, it is good to meet with an objection, which if it be not removed, the conclusion of experience from the time past, to the time present, will not be found and perfect. For it will be said, that
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

in the former times, (whereof we have spoken) Spain was not so mighty as now it is; and England on the other side was more aforehand in all matters of power. Therefore let us compare with indifferency these disparities of times, and we shall plainly perceive, that they make for the advantage of England at this present time. And because we will less wander in generalities, we will fix the comparison to precise times; comparing the state of Spain and England in the year 88, with this present year that now runneth. In handling this point, I will not meddle with any personal comparisons of the princes, counsellors, and commanders by sea or land, that were then, and that are now, in both kingdoms, Spain and England; but only rest upon real points, for the true balancing of the state of the forces and affairs of both times. And yet these personal comparisons I omit not, but that I could evidently shew, that even in these personal respects, the balance fways on our part: but because I would say nothing that may favour of a spirit of flattery or cenfures of the present government.

First therefore it is certain, that Spain hath not now a foot of ground in quiet possession, more than it had in 88. As for the Valtoline, and the Palatinate, it is a maxim in state, that all countries of new acquiret, till they be settled, are rather matters of burden than of strength. On the other side, England hath Scotland united, and Ireland reduced to obedience, and planted; which are mighty augmentations.

Secondly, in 88, the kingdom of France, able alone to counterpoise Spain it self, (much more in conjunction) was torn with the party of the league, which gave law to their king, and depended wholly upon Spain. Now France is united under a valiant young king, generally obeyed if he will himself, king of Navarre as well as of France; and that is no ways taken prisoner, though he be tied in a double chain of alliance with Spain.

Thirdly, in 88, there sate in the fee of Rome a fierce thundring friar, that would set all at six and seven; or at six and five, if you allude to his name: And though he would after have turned his teeth upon Spain, yet he was taken order with before it came to that. Now there is ascended to the papacy, a personage, that came in by a chaste election, no ways obliged to the party of the Spaniards: a man bred in embassages and affairs of state, that hath much of the prince, and nothing of the friar: and one, that though he loves the chair of the papacy well, yet he loveth the carpet above the chair; that is, Italy, and the liberties thereof well likewise.

Fourthly, in 88, the king of Denmark was a stranger to England, and rather inclined to Spain; now the king is incorporated to the blood of England, and engaged in the quarrel of the Palatinate. Then also Venice, Savoy, and the princes and cities of Germany, had but a dull fear of the greatness of Spain, upon a general apprehension only of the spreading and ambitious desigins of that nation: now that fear is sharpened and pointed, by the Spaniards late enterprizes upon the Valtoline and the Palatinate, which come nearer them.

Fifthly and lastly, the Dutch (which is the Spaniards perpetual duel-lift) hath now, at this present, five ships to one, and the like proportion in treasure and wealth, to that they had in 88. Neither is it possible (whatsoever is given out) that the coffers of Spain should now be fuller than they were in 88: for at that time Spain had no other wars save those of the Low Countries, which were grown into an ordinary; now they have had coupled therewith the extraordinary of the Valtoline, and the Palatinate. And so I conclude my answer to the objection raised, touching the difference of
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

of times; not entering into more secret passages of state, but keeping that character of style whereof Seneca speakeoth, plus signifikat quam loquitur.

Here I would pass over from matter of experience, were it not that I held it necessary to discover a wonderful erroneous observation that walketh about, and is commonly received, contrary to all the true account of time and experience. It is, that the Spaniard, where he once getteth in, will seldom (or never) be got out again. But nothing is less true than this: not long since they got footing at Bréf, and some other parts in France Britain, and after quitted them. They had Calais, Arles, and Amiens, and rendered them, or were beaten out. They had since Marseille, and fairly left it. They had the other day the Valatine, and now have put it in deposit. What they will do with Ormus, which the Perjman hath taken from them, we shall see. So that to speak truly of later times, they have rather poached and offered at a number of enterprises than maintained any constantly, quite contrary to that idle tradition. In more ancient times, (leaving their purchases in Africk, which they after abandoned) when their great emperor Charles had clasped Germany (almost) in his fist, he was forced in the end to go from Isburg, (and as if it had been in a malk, by torch-light) and to quit every foot in Germany round that he had gotten; which I doubt not will be the hereditary issue of this late purchase of the Palatinate. And so I conclude the ground that I have to think, that Spain will be no over-match to Great Britain, if his majesty shoul enter into a war out of experience, and the records of time.

For grounds of reason they are many; I will extract the principal, and open them briefly, and (as it were) in the bud. For situation I pass it over; though it be no small point: England, Scotland, Ireland, and our good confederates the United Provinces, lie all in a plum together, not accesible but by sea, or at least by passing of great rivers, which are natural fortifications. As for the dominions of Spain, they are so scattered, as it yieldeth great choice of the scenes of the war, and promiseth slow succours unto such part as shall be attempted. There be three main parts of military puissance, men, money, and confederates. For men, there are to be considered valour and number. Of valour I speak not; take it from the witnessedes that have been produced before: yet the old observation is not untrue, that the Spaniards valour lieth in the eye of the looker on; but the English valour lieth about the soldiers heart. A valour of glory, and a valour of natural courage, are two things. But let that pass, and let us speak of number: Spain is a nation thin fown of people; partly by reason of the fertility of the soil, and partly because their natives are exhausted by so many employments in such vast territories as they possess. So that it hath been counted a kind of miracle, to see ten or twelve thousand native Spaniards in an army. And it is certain, (as we have touched it a little before in passage) that the secret of the power of Spain consistseth in a veteran army, compounded of miscellany forces of all nations, which for many years they have had on foot upon one occasion or other: and if there should happen the misfortune of a battle, it would be a long work to draw on supplies. They tell a tale of a Spanish ambassador that was brought to see the treasury of S. Mark at Venice, and still he looked down to the ground; and being asked, why he so looked down, said, he was looking to see whether their treasure had any root, (fo that if it were spent it would grow again) as his master's had. But howsoever it be of their treasure, certainly their forces have scarce any root; or at least such a root as bud-
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

deth forth poorly and slowly. It is true they have the Walloons, who are tall soldiers; yet that is but a spot of ground. But on the other side, there is not in the world again such a spring and seminary of brave military people, as is England, Scotland, Ireland, and the United Provinces: So as if wars should move them down never so fast, yet they may be suddenly supplied, and come up again.

For money, no doubt it is the principal part of the greatness of Spain; for by that they maintain their veteran army; and Spain is the only state of Europe that is a money grower. But in this part, of all others, is most to be considered, the ticklish and brittle state of the greatness of Spain. Their greatness confieth in their treasure, their treasure in their Indies, and their Indies (if it be well weighed) are indeed but an accession to such as are masters by sea. So as this axle-tree, whereupon their greatness turneth, is soon cut in two by any that shall be stronger than they by sea. Herein therefore I refer my self to the opinions of all men, (enemies or whomsoever) whether that the maritime forces of Great Britain, and the United Provinces, be not able to beat the Spaniard at sea? For if that be so, the links of that chain whereby they hold their greatness, are dissolved. Now if it be said, that admit the case of Spain to be such as we have made it, yet we ought to descend into our own case, which we shall find (perhaps) not to be in state (for treasure) to enter into a war with Spain. To which I answer, I know no such thing; the mint beateth well; and the pulses of the peoples hearts beat well. But there is another point that taketh a way quite this objection: for whereas wars are generally causes of poverty, or consumption; on the contrary part, the special nature of this war with Spain, if it be made by sea, is like to be a lucrative and restorative war. So that if we go roundly on at the first, the war in continuance will find it self. And therefore you must make a great difference between Hercules' labours by land, and Jason's voyage by sea for the golden fleece.

For confederates, I will not take upon me the knowledge, how the princes, states, and counsels of Europe, at this day, stand affected towards Spain; for that trencheth into the secret occurrences of the present time, wherewith in all this treatise I have forborne to meddle. But to speak of that which lieth open and in view; I see much matter of quarrel and jealousy, but little of amity and trust towards Spain, almost in all other estates. I see France is in competition with them, for three noble portions of their monarchy, Navarre, Naples, and Milan; and now fresh in difference with them about the Valtoline. I see once in thirty or forty years cometh a pope, that casteth his eye upon the kingdom of Naples, to recover it to the church: as it was in the minds of Julius the second, Paul the fourth, and Sixtus the fifth. As for that great Body of Germany, I see they have greater reason to confederate themselves with the kings of France, and Great Britain, or Denmark, for the liberty of the German nation, and for the expulsion of Spanjhe and foreign forces, than they had in the years 1552 and 1553. At which time they contracted a league with Henry the second the French king, upon the same articles against Charles the fifth, who had impatrized himself of a great part of Germany, through discord of the German princes, which himself had fown and fomented; which league at that time did the deed, and drove out all the Spaniards out of that part of Germany; and reintegrated that nation in their ancient liberty and honour. For the West Indies, though Spain hath had yet not much actual disturbance there, except it have been from England; yet nevertheless I see all princes lay a kind
OF A WAR WITH SPAIN.

kind of claim unto them; accounting the title of Spain but as a monopoly of those large countries, wherein they have in great part but an imaginary possession. For Africk upon the west, the Moors of Valentia expelled, and their allies do yet hang as a cloud or storm over Spain. Gabor on the east is like an anniversary wind, that riseth every year once upon the party of Austria. And Persia hath entred into hostility with Spain, and given them the first blow by taking of Ormus. It is within every man's observation also, that Venice doth think their state almost on fire, if the Spaniards hold the Valtoline. That Savoy hath learned by fresh experience, that alliance with Spain is no security against the ambition of Spain; and that of Bavaria hath likewise been taught, that merit and service doth oblige the Spaniard but from day to day. Neither do I say for all this, but that Spain may rectify much of this ill blood by their particular and cunning negotiations: but yet there it is in the body, and may break out, no man knoweth when, into all accidents: and at least it sheweth plainly that which serveth for our purpose, that Spain is much destitute of assured and confident confederates. And therefore I will conclude this part with the speech of a counsellor of state in Spain, at this day, which was not without salt: He said to his master the king of Spain that now is, upon occasion; Sir, I will tell your majesty thus much for your comfort; your majesty hath but two enemies, whereof the one is all the world, and the other is your own ministers. And thus I end the second main part I propounded to speak of; which was, the balancing of the forces between the king's majesty and the king of Spain, if a war must follow.
AN
ADVERTISEMENT
TOUCHING AN
HOLY WAR.
Written in the Year 1622.

To the Right Reverend Father in God,
Lancelot Andrews Lord Bishop of Winchester, and
Counsellor of Estate to his Majesty.

MY LORD,

Amongst consolations, it is not the least to represent to a
man's self, like examples of calamity in others. For examples
give a quicker impression than arguments; and besides, they
certify us that which the scripture also tendreth for satisfaction;
that no new thing is happened unto us. This they do the better, by how
much the examples are liker in circumstances to our own case; and
more especially if they fall upon persons that are greater and worthier
than our selves. For as it favoureth of vanity, to match our selves highly
in our own conceit; so on the other side it is a good found conclusion,
that if our betters have sustained the like events, we have the less cause to
be grieved.

In this kind of consolation I have not been wanting to my self: though
as a Christian, I have tasted (through God's great goodness) of higher re-
medies. Having therefore, through the variety of my reading, set before
me many examples both of ancient and later times, my thoughts (I confess)
have chiefly stayed upon three particulars, as the most eminent and the
most resembling. All three persons that had held chief place of authority
in their countries; all three ruined, not by war, or by any other disaster,
but by justice and sentence, as delinquents and criminals; all three famous
writers, inasmuch as the remembrance of their calamity is now as to po-
sterity but as a little picture of night-work, remaining amongst the fair and
excellent tables of their acts and works: And all three (if that were any
thing to the matter) fit examples to quench any man's ambition of rising
again.
again; for that they were every one of them restored with great glory, but to their farther ruin and destruction, ending in a violent death. The men were, Demosthenes, Cicero, and Seneca; persons that I durst not claim affinity with, except the similitude of our fortunes had contracted it. When I had cast mine eyes upon these examples, I was carried on farther to observe, how they did bear their fortunes, and principally, how they did employ their times being banished, and disabled for publick business: to the end, that I might learn by them; and that they might be as well my counsellors as my comforters. Whereupon I happened to note, how diversly their fortunes wrought upon them, especially in that point at which I did most aim, which was the employing of their times and pens. In Cicero, I saw that during his banishment, (which was almost two years) he was so softened and dejected, as he wrote nothing but a few womanish epistles. And yet, in mine opinion, he had least reason of the three to be discouraged: for that although it was judged, and judged by the highest kind of judgment, in form of a statute, or law, that he should be banished, and his whole estate confiscated and feized, and his houses pulled down, and that it should be highly penal for any man to propose a repeal; yet his case even then had no great blot of ignominy; for it was thought but a tempest of popularity which overthrew him. Demosthenes contrariwise, though his case was foul, being condemned for bribery; and not simple bribery, but bribery in the nature of treason and disloyalty; yet nevertheless took so little knowledge of his fortune, as during his banishment he did much busy himself, and intermeddle with matters of state; and took upon him to counsel the state (as if he had been still at the helm) by letters; as appears by some epistles of his which are extant. Seneca indeed, who was condemned for many corruptions and crimes, and banished into a solitary island, kept a mean; and though his pen did not freeze, yet he abstained from intruding into matters of business; but spent his time in writing books of excellent argument and use for all ages; though he might have made better choice (sometimes) of his dedications.

These examples confirmed me much in a resolution (whereunto I was otherwise inclined) to spend my time wholly in writing; and to put forth that poor talent, or half talent, or what it is that God hath given me, not as heretofore to particular exchanges, but to banks, or mounts of perpetuity, which will not break. Therefore having not long since set forth a part of my inftauration; which is the work, that in mine own judgment (fì non quanquam fallit image) I do most esteem; I think to proceed in some new parts thereof. And although I have received from many parts beyond the seas, testimonies touching that work, such as beyond which I could not expect at the first in so abstruse an argument; yet nevertheless I have just cause to doubt, that it flies too high over men's heads: I have a purpose therefore (though I break the order of time) to draw it down to the sense, by some patterns of a natural story and inquisition. And again, for that my book of advancement of learning, may be some preparative, or key, for the better opening of the inftauration; because it exhibits a mixture of new conceptions and old; whereas the inftauration gives the new unmixed, otherwise than with some little aperion of the old for taste's sake; I have thought good to procure a translation of that book into the general language, not without great and ample additions, and enrichment thereof, especially in the second book, which handleth the partition of sciences; in such sort as I hold it may serve, in lieu of the first part of the inftauration, and acquit my promise.
mifé in that part. Again, because I cannot altogether desert the civil person that I have born; which if I should forget, enough would remember; I have also entred into a work touching laws, propounding a character of justice in a middle term, between the speculative and reverend discourses of philosophers, and the writings of lawyers, which are tied and obnoxious to their particular laws. And although it be true, that I had a purpose to make a particular digest, or recompilament of the laws of mine own nation; yet because it is a work of assistance, and that which I cannot master by my own forces and pen, I have laid it aside. Now having in the work of my inftauation had in contemplation the general good of men in their very being, and the dowries of nature; and in my work of laws, the general good of men likewise in society, and the dowries of government; I thought in duty owed somewhat unto my own countrey, which I ever loved; infomuch as although my place hath been far above my desert, yet my thoughts and cares concerning the good thereof, were beyond, and over, and above my place: so now being (as I am) no more able to do my coutreys service, it remained unto me to do it honour: which I have endeavourd to do in my work of the reign of king Henry the seventh. As for my essays, and some other particulars of that nature, I count them but as the recreations of my other studys, and in that fort purpose to continue them; though I am not ignorant that those kind of writings would, with less pains and embracement (perhaps) yield more lustre and reputation to my name, than those other which I have in hand. But I account the use that a man should seek of the publishing of his own writings before his death, to be but an untimely anticipation of that which is proper to follow a man, and not to go along with him.

But revolving with myself my writings, as well those which I have published, as those which I had in hand, methought they went all into the city, and none into the temple; where because I have found so great consolation, I desire likewise to make some poor oblation. Therefore I have chosen an argument, mixt of religious and civil considerations; and likewise mixt between contemplative and active. For who can tell whether there may not be an exorire aliquis? Great matters (especially if they be religious) have (many times) small beginnings; and the platform may draw on the building. This work, because I was ever an enemy to flattering dedications, I have dedicated to your lordship, in respect of our ancient and private acquaintance; and because amongst the men of our times I hold you in special reverence.

Your lordship's loving friend,

FR. ST. ALBAN.
AN ADVERTISEMENT TOUCHING AN HOLY WAR.

The Persons that speak.

EUSEBIUS, GAMALIEL, ZEBEDAEUS, MARTIUS, EUPOLIS, POLLIO.

HERE met at Paris (in the house of Eupolis) Eusebius, Zebедæus, Gamaliel, Martius, Eupolis, Pollio, all persons of eminent quality, but of several dispositions. Eupolis himself was also present; and while they were set in conference, Pollio came in to them from court; and as soon as he saw them, after his witty and pleasant manner, he said.

POLLIO. Here be four of you, I think, were able to make a good world; for you are as differing as the four elements, and yet you are friends. As for Eupolis, because he is temperate, and without passion, he may be the fifth essence. Eupolis. If we five (Pollio) make the great world, you alone make the little; because you profess and practice both, to refer all things to your self. Pollio. And what do they that profess it, and profess it not? Eupolis. They are the less hardy, and the more dangerous. But come and sit down with us, for we were speaking of the affairs of Christendom at this day; wherein we would be glad also to have your opinion. Pollio. My lords, I have journeyed this morning, and it is now the heat of the day; therefore your lordships discourses had need content my ears very well, to make them entreat mine eyes to keep open. But yet if you will give me leave to awake you, when I think your discourses do but sleep, I will keep watch the best I can. Eupolis. You cannot do us a greater favour. Only I fear you will think all our discourses to be but the better sort of dreams; for good wishes, without power to effect, are not much more. But, sir, when you came in, Martius had both raised our attentions, and affected us with some speech he had begun; and it falleth out well, to shake off your drowsiness; for it seemed to be the trumpet of a

OF AN HOLY WAR.

You came in war. And therefore, (Martius) if it please you, to begin again; for the speech was such, as defereweth to be heard twice; and I assure you, your auditory is not a little amended by the presence of Pollio. Martius. When you came in (Pollio) I was saying freely to these lords, that I had observed, how by the space now of half a century of years, there had been (if I may speak it) a kind of meanness in the designs and enterprizes of Christsendom. Wars with subjects, like an angry suit for a man's own, that might be better ended by accord. Some petty acquittals of a town, or spot of territory; like a farmer's purchase of a close or nook of ground, that lay fit for him. And although the wars had been for a Naples, or a Milan, or a Portugal, or a Bohemia, yet these wars were but as the wars of heathens, (of Athens, or Sparta, or Rome,) for secular interests, or ambition, not worthy the warfare of Christians. The Church (indeed) maketh her missions into the extreme parts of the nations and illes, and it is well: but this is, ecce unus gladius hic. The Christian princes and potentates, are they that are wanting to the propagation of the faith by their arms. Yet our Lord, that said on earth, to the disciples, Ite & praedicate, said from heaven to Constantine, in hoc signo vinces. What Christian soldier is there, that will not be touched with a religious emulation, to see an order of Jesus, or of St. Francis, or of St. Augustine, do such service, for enlarging the Christian borders; and an order of St. Iago, or St. Michael, or St. George, only to robe, and feath, and perform rites and observances? Surely the merchants themselves shall rise in judgment against the princes and nobles of Europe; for they have made a great path in the seas, unto the ends of the world; and set forth ships, and forces, of Spanish, English and Dutch, enough to make China tremble; and all this, for pearl, or stone, or spices: but for the pearl of the kingdom of heaven, or the stones of the heavenly Jerusalem, or the spices of the spouse's garden, not a maft hath been set up: nay, they can make shift to shed Christian blood so far off amongst themselves, and not a drop for the cause of Christ. But let me recall my self: I must acknowledge, that within the space of fifty years (whereof I spake) there have been three noble and memorable actions upon the infidels, wherein the Christian hath been the invader: for where it is upon the defensive, I reckon it a war of nature, and not of piety. The first was, that famous and fortunate war by sea, that ended in the victory of Lepanto; which hath put a hook into the nostrils of the Ottomans to this day; which was the work (chiefly) of that excellent pope Pius Quintus, whom I wonder his successors have not declared a saint. The second was, the noble, though unfortunate, expedition of Sebastian king of Portugal upon Africa, which was achiev'd by him alone; so alone, as left somewhat for others to excufe. The laft was, the brave incursions of Sigismund the Transylvanian prince, the thread of whole prosperity was cut off by the Christians themselves, contrary to the worthy and paternal monitions of pope Clement the eighth. More than these, I do not remember. Pollio. No! What say you to the extirpation of the Moors of Valentinia? At which sudden question, Martius was a little at a stop; and Gasparil prevented him, and said; Gamaliel. I think Martius did well in omitting that action, for I, for my part, never approved it; and it seems, God was not well pleas'd with the deed; for you see the king, in whose time it pass'd, (whom you catholicks count a faint-like and immaculate prince,) was taken away in the flower of his age: and the author, and great counsellor of that rigour (whole fortunes seemed to be built upon the rock) is ruin'd: and it is thought by some, that the reckonings of that business are not
riot yet cleared with Spain; for that numbers of those supposed Moors, being tried now by their exile, continue constant in the faith, and true Christians in all points, save in the thirst of revenge. Zebed. Make not hasty judgment (Gamaliel) of that great action, which was as Christ's fan in those countries, except you could shew some such covenant from the crown of Spain, as Joshua made with the Gibeonites; that that cursed seed should continue in the land. And you see it was done by edict, not tumultuously; the sword was not put into the peoples hand. Eupol. I think Martius did omit it, not as making any judgment of it either way, but because it sorted not aptly with action of war, being upon subjects, and without resistance. But let us, if you think good, give Martius leave to proceed in his discourse; for methought he spake like a divine in armour. Martius. It is true, Eupolis, that the principal object which I have before mine eyes, in that whereof I speak, is piety and religion. But nevertheless, if I should speak only as a natural man, I should persuade the same thing. For there is no such enterprise, at this day, for secular greatness, and terrene honour, as a war upon infidels. Neither do I in this propound a novelty, or imagination, but that which is proved by late examples of the same kind, tho' perhaps of less difficulty. The Cabalians, the age before that wherein we live, opened the new world; and subdued and planted Mexico, Peru, Chili, and other parts of the West-Indies. We see what floods of treasure have flowed into Europe by that action; so that the censers or rates of Christendom are raised since ten times, yea twenty times told. Of this treasure, it is true, the gold was accumulate, and store treasure, for the most part; but the silver is still growing. Besides, infinite is the access of territory and empire, by the same enterprise. For there was never an hand drawn, that did double the rest of the habitable world, before this; for so a man may truly term it, if he shall put to account, as well that that is, as that which may be hereafter, by the farther occupation and colonizing of those countries. And yet it cannot be affirmed, (if one speak ingenuously,) that it was the propagation of the Christian faith that was the adamant of that discovery, entry, and plantation; but gold and silver, and temporal profit, and glory; so that what was first in God's providence, was but second in man's appetite and intention. The like may be said of the famous navigations and conquests of Emmanuel, king of Portugal, whose arms began to circle Africa and Asia; and to acquire, not only the trade of spices, and stones, and musk, and drugs, but footing, and places, in those extreme parts of the east. For neither in this was religion the principal, but amplification and enlargement of riches and dominion. And the effect of these two enterprises is now such, that both the East and the West-Indies, being met in the crown of Spain, it is come to pass, that as one faith in a brave kind of expression, the sun never sets in the Spanish dominions, but ever shines upon one part or other of them; which, to say truly, is a beam of glory, though I cannot say it is so solid a body of glory, wherein the crown of Spain surpasseth all the former monarchies. So as to conclude, we may fee, that in these actions, upon Gentiles or Infidels, only or chiefly, both the spiritual and temporal, honour and good, have been in one pursuit and purchase conjoined. Pollio. Methinks, with your favour, you should remember, (Martius) that wild and savage people are like beasts and birds, which are feræ naturæ, the property of which pasheth with the possession, and goeth to the occupant; but of civil people, it is not so. Mar. I know no such difference, amongst reasonable souls; but that whatsoever is in order
to the greatest and most general good of people, may justify the action, be the people more or less civil. But (Eupolis) I shall not easily grant, that the people of Peru, or Mexico, were such brute savages as you intend; or that there should be any such difference between them, and many of the infidels: which are now in other parts. In Peru, though they were unapparelled people, according to the clime, and had some customs very barbarous, yet the government of the Incaes had many parts of humanity and civility. They had reduced the nations from the adoration of a multitude of idols and fancies, to the adoration of the sun. And, as I remember, the book of Wisdom noteth degrees of idolatry; making that of worshipping petty and vile idols more gross, than simply the worshipping of the creature. And some of the Prophets, as I take it, do the like, in the metaphor of more ugly and beastial fornication. The Peruvians also (under the Incaes) had magnificent temples of their superstition; they had strict and regular justice; they bare great faith and obedience to their kings; they proceeded in a kind of martial justice with their enemies, offering them their law, as better for their own good, before they drew their sword. And much like was the state of Mexico, being an elective monarchy. As for those people of the east, (Goa, Calecut, Malacca,) they were a fine and dainty people; frugal, and yet elegant, though not military. So that if things be rightly weighed, the empire of the Turks may be truly affirmed to be more barbarous than any of these. A cruel tyranny, bathed in the blood of their emperors upon every succession; a heap of vassals and slaves; no nobles; no gentlemen; no freemen; no inheritance of land; no stirp or ancient families; a people that is without natural affection; and, as the scripture faith, that regardeth not the desires of women: and without piety, or care towards their children: a nation without morality, without letters, arts, or sciences; that can scarce measure an acre of land, or an hour of the day: base and brutish in buildings, diets, and the like; and in a word, a very reproach to human society: and yet this nation hath made the garden of the world a wilderness; for that, as it is truly said, concerning the Turks, where Ottoman's horse sets his foot, people will come up very thin. Yet in the midst of your invectives (Martius) do the Turks this right, as to remember that they are idolaters: for if, as you say, there be a difference between worshipping a base idol, and the sun; there is a much greater difference between worshipping a creature, and the Creator. For the Turks do acknowledge God the Father, Creator of heaven and earth, being the first person in the Trinity, though they deny the rest. At which speech, when Martius made some pause, Zebadæus replied with a countenance of great reprehension and severity. Zebed. We must take heed (Pollio) that we fall not at unawares into the heresy of Manuel Conmenus emperor of Graecia, who affirmed, that Mahomet's God was the true God; which opinion was not only rejected and condemned by the synod, but imputed to the emperor as extreme madness, being reproached to him also by the bishop of Thessalonica, in those bitter and strange words, as are not to be named. Martius. I confess that it is my opinion, that a war upon the Turk is more worthy than upon any other gentiles, infidels, or savages, that either have been, or now are, both in point of religion, and in point of honour; though facility, and hope of success, might (perhaps) invite some other choice. But before I proceed, both my self would be glad to take some breath; and I shall frankly desire, that some of your lordships would take your turn to speak, that can do it better. But chiefly, for that I see here some that are excellent interpreters of the divine law, though
though in several ways; and that I have reason to distrust mine own judgment, both as weak in itself, and as that which may be overborn by my zeal and affection to this cause. I think it were an error to speak farther, till I may see some found foundation laid of the lawfulness of the action, by them that are better versed in that argument. Eupolis. I am glad (Martius) to see in a person of your profession so great moderation, in that you are not transported in an action that warms the blood, and is appearing holy to blanch or take for admitted the point of lawfulness. And because I think it were an error to speak farther, till I may see some found foundation laid of the lawfulnefs of the action, by them that are better versed in that argument. Eupolis. I think it would not fort a simile, if Zebedaeus would be pleased to handle the question, whether a war for the propagation of the Christian faith, without other cause of hostility, be lawful or no, and in what cases? I confess also I would be glad to go a little farther, and to hear it spoken to concerning the lawfulness, not only permissively, but whether it be not obligatory to Christian princes and states to design it: which part, if it please Gamaliel to undertake, the point of the lawfulness taken simply will be compleat. Yet there refteth the comparative: that is, its being granted, that it is either lawful or binding, yet whether other things be not to be preferre’d before it; as extirpation of heresies, reconcilements of schisms, pursuit of lawful temporal rights and quarrels, and the like; and how far this enterprize ought either to wait upon these other matters, or to be mingled with them, or to pass by them, and give law to them, as inferior unto itself? And because this is a great part, and Eusebius hath yet said nothing, we will by way of mulct or pain, if your lordships think good, lay it upon him. All this, while, I doubt much that Pollio, who hath a sharp wit of discovery towards what is solid and real, and what is specious and airy, will esteem all this but impossibilities, and eagles in the clouds: and therefore we shall all intreat him to crush this argument with his best forces; that by the light we shall take from him, we may either cast it away if it be found but a bladder, or discharge it of so much as is vain and not separable. And because I confess myself am not of that opinion, although it be an hard encounter to deal with Pollio, yet I shall do my best to prove the enterprize possible; and to shew how all impediments may be either removed or overcome. And then it will be fit for Martius (if we do not desist it before) to resume his farther discourse, as well for the persuasive, as for the consult, touching the means, preparations, and all that may conduce unto the enterprize. Yet this is but my wish, your lordships will put it into better order. They all not only allowed the distribution, but accepted the parts: but because the day was spent, they agreed to defer it till the next morning. Only Pollio said; Pollio. You take me right, (Eupolis) for I am of opinion, that except you could bray Christendom in a mortar, and mould it into a new past, there is no possibility of an holy war. And I was ever of opinion, that the philosophers stone, and an holy war, were but the rendezvous of crackt brains, that wore their feather in their head, instead of their hat. Nevertheless, believe me of courtefy, that if you five shall be of another mind, especially after you have heard what I can say, I shall be ready to certify with Hippocrates, that Athens is mad, and Democritus is only sober. And lest you should take me for altogether adverse, I will frankly contribute to the business now at first. Ye, no doubt, will amongst you devise and discourse many solemn matters; but do as I shall tell you. This pope is decrepied, and
OF AN HOLY WAR.

and the bell goeth for him. Take order, that when he is dead, there be chosen a pope of freth years, between fifty and three score; and see that he take the name of Urban, because a pope of that name did first institute the croisado; and (as with an holy trumpet) did stir up the voyage for the Holy Land. Eupolis. You say well; but be, I pray you, a little more serious in this conference.

The next day the same persons met as they had appointed; and after they were set, and that there had passed some sporting speeches from Pollio, how the war was already begun; for that (he said) he had dreamt of nothing but Janizaries, and Tartars, and Sultans all the night long; Martius said. The distribution of this conference, which was made by Eupolis yefternight, and was by us approved, seemeth to me perfect, save in one point; and that is, not in the number, but in the placing of the parts. For it is so disposed, that Pollio and Eupolis shall debate the possibility or impossibility of the action, before I shall deduce the particulars of the means and manner by which it is to be achieved. Now I have often observed in deliberations, that the entering near hand into the manner of performance, and execution of that which is under deliberation, hath quite overturn'd the opinion formerly conceiv'd, of the possibility or impossibility. So that things, that at the first fhew seemed possible, by ripping up the performance of them, have been convicted of impossibility; and things that on the other side have fhewed impossible, by the declaration of the means to affect them, as by a back light have appeared possible, the way through them being discerned. This I fpeak, not to alter the order, but only to desire Pollio and Eupolis not to speak peremptorily, or conclusively, touching the point of possibility, till they have heard me deduce the means of the execution: and that done, to reserve themselves at liberty for a reply, after they had before them as it were, a model of the enterprize. This grave and solid advertisement and caution of Martius was much commended by them all.

Whereupon Eupolis said. Since Martius hath begun to refine that which was yefternight resolved; I may the better have leave (especially in the mending of a proposition, which was mine own) to remember an omission which is more than a misplacing. For I doubt we ought to have add'd or inferted into the point of lawfulness, the question, how far an holy war is to be pursu'd, whether to displanting and extermination of people? And again, whether to enforce a new belief, and to vindicate or punish ini¬delity; or only to subject the countries and people; and so by the temporal sword, to open a door for the spiritual sword to enter, by persuasion, instruction, and such means as are proper for souls and consciences? But it may be, neither is this necessary to be made a part by it self; for that Zebedaeus, in his wisdom, will fall into it as an incident to the point of lawfulness, which cannot be handled without limitations and distinctions. Zebedaeus. You encourage me (Eupolis) in that I perceive, how in your judgment (which I do so much esteem) I ought to take that course, which of my self I was purposed to do. For as Martius noted well, that it is but a loose thing to speak of possibilities, without the particular designs; so is it to speak of lawfulness without the particular cases. I will therefore first of all distinguish the cases; though you shall give me leave in the handling of them, not to fever them with too much preciseness; for both it would caufe needless length; and we are not now in arts or methods, but in a conference. It is therefore first to be put to question in general, (as Eupolis propounded it) whether it be lawful for Christian princes or states, to make an inva¬
OF AN HOLY WAR.

five war, only and simply for the propagation of the faith, without other cause of hostility or circumstance, that may provoke and induce the war? Secondly, whether it being made part of the case, that the countries were once Christian, and members of the church, and where the golden candlesticks did stand, though now they be utterly alienated, and no Christians left; it be not unlawful to make a war to restore them to the church, as an ancient patrimony of Christ? Thirdly, if it be made a farther part of the case, that there are yet remaining in the countries multitudes of Christians, whether it be not lawful to make a war to free them, and deliver them from the servitude of the infidels? Fourthly, whether it be not lawful to make a war, for the purging and recovery of consecrated places, being now polluted and profaned; as the holy city and sepulchre, and such other places of principal adoration and devotion? Fifthly, whether it be not lawful to make a war, for the revenge or vindication of blasphemies and reproaches against the Deity and our blessed Saviour; or for the effusion of Christian blood, and cruelties against Christians, though ancient, and long since past; considering that God's visits are without limitation of time; and many times do but expect the fullness of the sin? Sixthly, it is to be considered, (as Eupolis now last well remembred) whether a holy war, (which, as in the worthiness of the quarrel, so in the justice of the prosecution, ought to exceed all temporal wars) may be pursued, either to the expulsion of people, or the enforcement of consistencies, or the like extremities; or how to be moderated and limited; left whilst we remember we are Christians, we forget that others are men? But there is a point that precedeth all these points recited; nay, and in a manner dischargesthem, in the particular of a war against the Turk: which point, I think, would not have come into my thought, but that Martius giving us yesterday a representation of the empire of the Turks, with no small vigour of words, (which you, Pollio, called an inveiaive, but was indeed a true charge) did put me in mind of it: and the more I think upon it, the more I settle in opinion; that a war, to suppress that empire, though we set aside the cause of religion, were a just war. After Zebedaen had said this, he made a pause, to see whether any of the rest would say any thing: but when he perceived nothing but silence, and signs of attention, to that he would farther say, he proceeded thus.

ZEBEDAEUS. Your lordships will not look for a treatife from me, but a speech of consultation; and in that brevity and manner will I speak. First, I shall agree, that as the cause of a war ought to be just, so the justice of that cause ought to be evident; not obscure, not scrupulous. For by the consent of all laws, in capital causes, the evidence must be full and clear: and if so, where one man's life is in question, what say we to a war, which is ever the sentence of death upon many? We must beware therefore how we make a Moloch, or an Heathen idol, of our blessed Saviour, in sacrificing the blood of men to him by an unjust war. The justice of every action consistseth in the merits of the cause, the warrant of the jurisdiction, and the form of the prosecution. As for the inward intention, I leave it to the court of heaven. Of these things severally, as they may have relation to the present subject of a war against infidels; and namely, against the most potent, and most dangerous enemy of the faith, the Turk. I hold, and I doubt not but I shall make it plain, (as far as a sum or brief can make a cause plain) that a war against the Turk is lawful, both by the laws of nature and nations, and by the law divine, which is the perfection of the other two.
OF AN HOLY WAR.

two. As for the laws positive and civil of the Romans, or others whatso-
ever, they are too small engines to move the weight of this question. And therefore, in my judgment, many of the late schoolmen, though excellent men, take not the right way in disputing this question; except they had the gift of Navius, that they could ceterum nuncula fieri dixer, new ftones with pen-knives. First, for the law of nature. The philosopher Aristotle is no ill interpreter thereof. He hath set many men on work with a witty speech of natura dominus, and natura servus; affirming expressly and positively, that from the very nativity, some things are born to rule, and some things to obey: Which oracle hath been taken in divers senses. Some have taken it for a speech of ostentation, to entitle the Grecians to an empire over the Barbarians; which indeed was better maintained by his scholar Alexander. Some have taken it for a speculative platform, that reason and nature would that the best should govern; but not in any wise to create a right. But for my part, I take it neither for a brag, nor for a will; but for a truth as he limiteth it. For he faith, that if there can be found such an inequality between man and man, as there is between man and beast, or between soul and body, it investeth a right of government; which seemeth rather an impossible case, than an untrue sentence. But I hold both the judgment true, and the case possible; and such as hath had, and hath a being, both in particular men and nations. But ere we go farther, let us confine ambiguities and mistakings, that they trouble us not. First, to say that the more capable, or the better deserver, hath such right to govern, as he may compulsorily bring under the less worthy, is idle. Men will never agree upon it, who is the more worthy. For it is not only in order of nature; for him to govern that is the more intelligent, as Aristotle would have it; but there is no less required for government, courage to protect; and above all, honesty and probity of the will to abstain, from injury. So fitness to govern is a perplexed business. Some men, some nations, excel in the one ability, some in the other. Therefore the position which I intend, is not in the comparative, that the wiser, or the stoutest, or the juster nation should govern; but in the privative, that where there is an heap of people (though we term it a kingdom or state) that is altogether unable or indign to govern; there it is a just caufe of war for another nation, that is civil or politic, to subdue them: and this though it were to be done by a Cyrus or a Cæsar, that were no Christian. The second mistaking to be banished is, that I understand not this of a personal tyranny, as was the state of Rome under a Caligula, or a Nero, or a Commodus; shall the nation suffer for that wherein they suffer? But when the constitution of the state, and the fundamental customs and laws of the same, (if laws they may be called) are against the laws of nature and nations, then, I say, a war upon them is lawful. I shall divide the question into three parts. First, whether there be, or may be any nation or society of men, against whom it is lawful to make a war, without a precedent injury or provocation? Secondly, what are those breaches of the law of nature and nations, which do forfeit and divest all right and title in a nation to govern? And thirdly, whether those breaches of the law of nature and nations, be found in any nation at this day; and namely in the empire of the Ottomans? For the first, I hold it clear that such nations, or states, or societies of people, there may be and are. There cannot be a better ground laid to declare this, than to look into the original donation of government. Observe it well, especially the inducement, or preface. Sayth God: let us make man after our own image, and
OF AN HOLY WAR.

and let him have dominion over the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the air, and the beasts of the land, &c. Hereupon De Victoria, and with him some others, infer excellently, and extract a most true and divine aphorism, non fundatuv dominium, nisi in imagine Dei. Here we have the charter of foundation: it is now the more easy to judge of the forfeiture, or reseizure. Deface the image, and you divest the right. But what is this image, and how is it defaced? The poor men of Lyons, and some fanatical spirits, will tell you, that the image of God is purity; and the defacement, sin. But this subverted all government: neither did Adam's sin, or the curse upon it, deprive him of his rule, but left the creatures to a rebellion or reluc­
tation. And therefore if you note it attentively, when this charter was renew­ed unto Noab and his sons, it is not by the words, you shall have dominion; but your fear shall be upon all the beasts of the land, and the birds of the air, and all that moveth; not regranting the sovereignty, which stood firm; but protec­ting it against the relucutation. The found interpreters therefore ex­pond this image of God, of natural reason; which if it be totally or mostly defaced, the right of government doth cease: and if you mark all the in­terpreters well, still they doubt of the case, and not of the law. But this is properly to be spoken to in handling the second point, when we shall define of the defacements. To go on: The prophet Hosea, in the perfon of God, faith of the Jews; they have reigned, but not by me; they have set a feigniory over themselves, but I knew nothing of it. Which place prove­th plainly, that there are governments which God doth not avow. For though they be ordained by his secret providence, yet they are not knowned by his revealed will. Neither can this be meant of evil governors or tyrants: for they are often avowed and established, as lawful potentates; but of some perversenes and defection in the very nation it self; which appeareth most manifestly in that the Prophet speaketh of the seigniory in abstra£to, and not of the perfon of the Lord. And although some hereticks of thofe we fpeak of have abused this text, yet the fun is not foiled in paffage. And again, if any man infer upon the words of the Prophet's following, (which declare this rejection, and to ufe the words of the text, reafcion of their estate to have been for their idolatry) that by this reafon the governments of all idolatrous nations should be also dissolved, (which is manifestly un­true;) in my judgment it followeth not. For the idolatry of the Jews then, and the idolatry of the Heathen then and now, are fins of a far differing nature, in regard of the special covenant, and the clear manifestations wherein God did contract and exhibit himself to that nation. This nullity of policy, and right of estate in some nations, is yet more significantly ex­pressed by Mojes in his canticle; in the perfon of God to the Jews: ye have incenfed me with Gods that are no Gods, and I will incenfe you with a people that are no people: Such as were (no doubt) the people of Canaan, after feijin was given of the land of promise to the Israelites. For from that time their right to the land was dissolved, though they remained in many places unconquered. By this we may fee, that there are nations in name, that are no nations in right; but multitudes only, and swarms of people. For like as there are particular persons outlawed and proscribed by civil laws of several countries; fo are there nations that are outlawed and proscribed by the law of nature and nations, or by the immediate commandment of God. And as there are kings de facto, and not de jure, in respect of the nullity of their title; fo are there nations, that are occupants de facto, and not de jure, of their territories, in respect of the nullity of their policy or govern­ment.
ment. But let us take in some examples into the midst of our proofs; for they will prove as much as put after, and illustrate more. It was never doubted, but a war upon pirates may be lawfully made by any nation, though not infested or violated by them. Is it because they have not certas fedes, or lares? In the piratical war, which was achieved by Pompey the great, and was his truest and greatest glory; the pirates had some cities, sundry ports, and a great part of the province of Cilicia; and the pirates now being, have a receptacle and mansion in Algiers. Beasts are not the less savage because they have dens. Is it because the danger hovers as a cloud, that a man cannot tell where it will fall? And so it is every man's case. The reason is good, but it is not all, nor that which is most alleged. For the true received reason is, that pirates are communes humani generis hostes; whom all nations are to prosecute, not so much in the right of their own fears, as upon the band of human society. For as there are formal and written leagues, respective to certain enemies; so is there a natural and tacite confederation amongst all men, against the common enemy of human society. So as there needs no intimation, or denunciation of the war; there needs no request from the nation grieved; but all these formalities the law of nature supplies in the case of pirates. The same is the case of rovers by land; such as yet are some cantons in Arabia, and some petty kings of the mountains, adjacent to straits and ways. Neither is it lawful only for the neighbour princes to destroy such pirates or rovers, but if there were any nation never so far off, that would make it an enterprise of merit and true glory, (as the Romans that made a war for the liberty of Graecia from a distant and remote part) no doubt they might do it. I make the same judgment of that kingdom of the assassins now destroyed, which was situate upon the borders of Saraca; and was for a time a great terror to all the princes of the Levant. There the custom was, that upon the commandment of their king, and a blind obedience to be given thereunto, any of them was to undertake, in the nature of a votary, the insidious murder of any prince, or person, upon whom the commandment went. This custom, without all question, made their whole government void, as an engine built against human society, worthy by all men to be fired and pulled down. I say the like of the anabaptists of Munster; and this although they had not been rebels to the empire: and put case likewise that they had done no mischief at all actually, yet if there shall be a congregation and confent of people, that shall hold all things to be lawful, not according to any certain laws or rules, but according to the secret and variable motions and instincts of the spirit; this is indeed no nation, no people, no seigniory, that God doth know: any nation that is civil and policed, may (if they will not be reduced) cut them off from the face of the earth. Now let me put a feigned case, (and yet antiquity makes it doubtful, whether it were fiction or history) of a land of Amazons, where the whole government publick and private, yea, the militia it self, was in the hands of women. I demand, is not such a preposterous government (against the first order of nature, for women to rule over men) in itself void, and to be suppressed? I speak not of the reign of women, (for that is supplied by counsel, and subordinate magistrates masculine) but where the regiment of state, justice, families, is all managed by women. And yet this last case differeth from the other before, because in the rest there is terror of danger, but in this there is only error of nature. Neither should I make any great difficulty to affirm the fame of the sultanry of the Mamalukes; where slaves, and none but slaves, bought
bought for money, and of unknown descent, reigned over families of free-
men. And much like were the cafe, if you suppose a nation, where the
custom were, that after full age, the sons should expel their fathers and
mothers out of their posseffions, and put them to their pensions: for these
cases, of women to govern men, sons the fathers, slaves free men, are much
in the fame degree; all being total violations and perversions of the laws
of nature and nations. For the West Indies, I perceive (Martius) you have
read Garcilazzo de Viega, who himfelf was descended of the race of the
Incas, a Moftizo, and is willing to make the best of the virtues and man-
ners of his countrey: and yet in troth he doth it soberly and credibly e-
ough. Yet you fball hardly edify me, that thofe nations might not by
the law of nature have been fubdued by any nation, that had only policy
and moral virtue; though the propagation of the faith (whereof we fhall
fpeak in the proper place) were fet by, and not made part of the cafe.
Surely their nakednefs (being with them in moft parts of that countrey,
without all vail or covering) was a great defacement: for in the acknow­
ledgment of nakednefs, was the firft fenfe of fin; and the herefy of the
Adamites was ever accounted an affront of nature. But upon thefe I
stand not; nor yet upon their idiocy, in thinking that horses did eat their bits,
and letters fpeak, and the like: Nor yet upon their forceries, which are
(almoft) common to all idolatrous nations. But, I fay, their Sacrificing,
and more efpecially their eating of men, is fuch an abomination, as (me­
thinks) a man's face fhould be a little confused, to deny, that this cuftom
joined with the refi, did not make it lawful
for
the
Spaniards
to invade
their territory, forfeited by the law of nature; and either to reduce them or
displant them. But far be it from me, yet nevertheless, to juftify the cru­
elties which were at firft used towards them, which had their reward soon
after, there being not one of the principal of the firft conquerors, but died
a violent death himfelf; and was well followed by the deaths of many
more. Of examples enough: except we fhould add the labours of Her­
cules; an example, which though it be flourifhed with much fabulous mat­
ter, yet fo much it hath, that it doth notably fet forth the confent of all
nations and ages, in the approbation of the extirpating and debellating of
giants, monsters, and foreign tyrants, not only as lawful, but as meritorious
even of divine honour: And this although the deliverer came from the
one end of the world unto the other. Let us now fet down some argu­
ments to prove the fame; regarding rather weight than number, as in fuch
a conference as this is fit. The firft argument fhall be this. It is a great
error, and a narrownefs or ftraitnefs of mind, if any man think; that na­
tions have nothing to do one with another, except there be either an union
in sovereignty, or a conjunction in acts or leagues. There are other bands
of fociety, and implicit confederations. That of colonies, or transmigrants,
towards their mother nation. Gentes unus labis is somewhat; for as the
confufion of tongues was a mark of feparation, fo the being of one lan­
guage is yet more, as it was between the Graecians in refpect of
the Barbarians. To be of one feft or worship; if it be a fale worship, I
fpeak not of it, for that is but fratres in mabo. But above all thefe, there
is the supreme and indifpolable confanguinity and fociety between men in
general: of which the heathen poet (whom the Apoftle calls to witnefs)  
faith, we are all bis generation. But much more we Chriftians, unto
whom it is revealed in particularity, that all men came from one lump of

OF AN HOLY WAR.

547

VOL. III.

ZZZ

carth;
OF AN HOLY WAR.

earth; and that two singular persons were the parents from whom all the generations of the world are descended. We (I say) ought to acknowledge, that no nations are wholly aliens and strangers the one to the other: and not to be less charitable, than the person introduced by the comic poet, homo sum, humani nihil a me alienum puto. Now if there be such a tacit league or confederation, sure it is not idle; it is against somewhat, or somebody: who should they be? Is it against wild beasts; or the elements of fire and water? No, it is against such routs and shoals of people, as have utterly degenerated from the laws of nature; as have in their very body and frame of estate, a monstrosity; and may be truly accounted (according to the examples we have formerly recited) common enemies and grievances of mankind; or disgraces and reproaches to human nature. Such people, all nations are interested, and ought to be resenting, to suppress; considering that the particular states themselves, being the delinquents, can give no redress. And this I say is not to be measured so much by the principles of jurisprudence, as by lex charitatis, lex proximi, which includes the Samaritan as well as the Levite; lex filiorum Adae de mappa una: upon which original laws this opinion is grounded: which to deny (if a man may speak freely) were almost to be a schismatick in nature.

The rest was not perfected.

The Lord Bacon’s questions about the lawfulness of a war for the propagating of religion.
Remains, p. 179.

Questions wherein I desire opinion, joined with arguments and authorities.

Whether a war be lawful against infidels, only for the propagation of the Christian faith, without other cause of hostility?

Whether a war be lawful, to recover to the church countries, which formerly have been Christian, though now alienate, and Christians utterly extirpated?

Whether a war be lawful to free and deliver Christians that yet remain in servitude, and subjection to infidels?

Whether a war be lawful in revenge, or vindication, of blasphemy and reproaches against the Deity and our Saviour? Or for the ancient effusion of Christian blood, and cruelties upon Christians?

Whether a war be lawful for the reviving and purging of the Holy Land, the sepulchre, and other principal places of adoration and devotion?

Whether in the cases aforesaid, it be not obligatory to Christian princes, to make such a war, and not permittive only?

Whether the making of a war against the infidels, be not first in order of dignity, and to be preferre’d before extirpations of herefies, reconciliements of schisms, reformation of manners, purfuits of just temporal quarrels, and the like actions for the publick good; except there be either a more urgent necessity, or a more evident facility in those inferior actions, or except they may both go on together in some degree?

The End of the Third Volume.
APPENDIX.

An ACCOUNT of the lately erected Service, called the Office of Compositions for Alienations.

Written [about the close of 1598] by Mr. Francis Bacon, and now first published from a MS in the Inner Temple Library.

ALL the finances or revenues of the imperial crown of this realm of England, be either extraordinary or ordinary.

Those extraordinary, be fifteenths and tenths, subsidies, loans, benevolences, aids, and such others of that kind, that have been, or shall be invented for supporation of the charges of war; the which as it is entertained by diet, so can it not be long maintained by the ordinary fiscal and receipt.

Of these that be ordinary, some are certain and standing, as the yearly rents of the demesne or lands; being either of the ancient possessions of the crown, or of the later augmentations of the same.

Likewise the fee farms referred upon charters granted to cities and towns corporate, and the blanch rents and lath silver answered by the sheriffs. The residue of these ordinary finances be casual, or uncertain, as be the escheats and forfeitures, the customs, butlerage and impost, the advantages coming by the jurisdiction of the courts of record and clerks of the market, the temporalties of vacant bishopricks, the profits that grow by the tenures of lands, and such like, if there any be.

And albeit that both the one sort and other of these, be at the last brought unto that office of her majesty’s exchequer, which we (by a metaphor) do call the pipe, as the civilians do by a like translation name it. The pipe, Fiscus, a basket or bag, because the whole receipt is finally conveyed into it by the means of divers small pipes or quills, as it were water into a great head or cistern; yet nevertheless some of the same be first and immediately left in other several places and courts, from whence they are afterwards carried by silver streams, to make up that great lake, or sea, of money.

As for example, the profits of wards and their lands, be answered into that court which is proper for them; and the fines for all original writs, and for causes that pass the great seal, were wont to be immediately paid into the hanaper of the chancery: howbeit now of late years, all the sums which are due, either for any writ of covenant, or of other sort, (whereupon a final concord is to be levied in the common bench) or for any writ of entry (whereupon a common recovery is to be suffered there;)

as
this office is derived out of the hanaper.

the name of the office.

the scope of this discourse, and the parts thereof.

the first part of this treatise.

the king's tenant in chief could never alien without licence. 1 e. iii. c. 12.

as also all sums demandable, either for licence of alienation to be made of lands holden in chief, or for the pardon of any such alienation, already made without licence, together with the mean profits that be forfeited for that offence and trespass, have been stayed in the way to the hanaper, and been let to farm, upon assurance of three hundred pound of yearly standing profit, to be increased over and above that casual commodity, that was found to be anwered in the hanaper for them, in the ten years (one with another) next before the making of the same lease.

and yet so as that yearly rent of increase is now still paid into the hanaper by four gross portions, not altogether equal, in the four usual open terms of st. michael, and st. hilary, of easter and the holy trinity, even as the former casualty it self was wont to be (in parcel meal) brought in and answered there.

and now forasmuch as the only matter and subject about which this office, farmer, or his deputies, are employed, is to rate or compound the sums of money payable to her majesty, for the alienation of lands that are either made without licence, or to be made by licence, (if they be holden in chief,) or to pass for common recovery, or by final concord to be levied, (though they be not so holden) their service may therefore very aptly and agreeably be termed the office of compositions for alienations. whether the advancement of her majesty's commodity in this part of her prerogative, or the respect of private lucre, or both, were the first motives thus to differver this member, and thereby as it were to mayhem the chancery, it is neither my part nor purpose to dispute.

the scope of but for a full infitution of the service as it now standeth, however some men have not spared to speak hardly thereof, i hold worthy my laubour to set down as followeth.

first, that these fines, exacted for such alienations, be not only of the greatest antiquity, but are also good and reasonable in themselves: secondly, that the modern and present exercise of this office, is more commendable than was the former usage: and lastly, that as her majesty hath received great profit thereby, so may she, by a moderate hand, from time to time reap the like, and that without just grief to any of her subjects.

as the lands that are to be aliened, be either immediately holden in chief, or not so holden of the queen: so be these fines or sums respectively of two fundry sorts. for upon each alienation of lands, immediately holden of her majesty in chief, the fine is rated here, either upon the licence before the alienation is made, or else upon the pardon when it is made without licence. but generally for every final concord of lands to be levied upon a writ of covenant, warrantia chartae, or other writ, upon which it may be orderly levied, the sum is rated here upon the original writ, whether the lands be held of the queen, or of any other perfon; if at the least the lands be of such value, as they may yield the due fine. and likewise for every writ of entry, whereupon a common recovery is to be suffered, the queen's fine is to be rated there upon the writ original, if the lands comprifed therein be held of her by the tenure of her prerogative, that is to say, in chief, or of her royal perfon.

so that i am hereby inforced, for avoiding of confusion, to speak severally, first of the fines for alienation of lands holden in chief, and then of the fines upon the suing forth of writs original. that the king's tenant in chief could not in ancient time alien his tenancy without the king's licence; it appeareth by the statute (1 e. iii. cap. 12.) where it is thus written;
THE OFFICE OF ALIENATIONS.

written: "Whereas divers do complain, that the lands (holden of the king in chief, and aliened without licence) have been feized into the king's hands for such alienation, and holden as forfeit: the king shall not hold them as forfeit in such a case, but granteth that (upon such alienations) there shall be reasonable fines taken in the chancery by due process."

So that it is hereby proved, that before this statute, the offence of such alienation, without licence, was taken to be so great, that the tenant did forfeit the land thereby; and consequentlly that he found great favour there by this statute, to be reasonably fined for his trespass.

And although we read an opinion, 20 lib. Alis. parl. 17, & 26. Alis. parl. 37. which also is repeated by Hanks. 14. H. 4. fol. 3. in which year Magna Charta was confirmed by him, the king's tenant in chief might as freely alien his lands without licence, as might the tenant of any other lord: yet forasmuch as it appeareth not by what statute the law was then changed, I had rather believe (with old judge Thorpe, and late Justice Stanford) that even at the common law, which is as much as to say, as from the beginning of our tenures, or from the beginning of the English monarchy, it was accounted an offence in the king's tenant in chief, to alien without the royal and express licence.

And I am sure, that not only upon the entering, or recording, of such a fine for alienation, it is wont to be said pro tranfgriffione in bac parte facta; but that you may also read amongst the records in the tower (Fines 6 Hen. Reg. 3. Memb. 4.) a precedent of a capias in manum registras alienatas sine licentia regis, and that namely of the manour of Ceflcombe in Kent, whereof Robert Coferton was then the king's tenant in chief. But were it that, as they say, this began first 20 Hen. III. yet it is above three hundred and sixty years old, and of equal if not more antiquity than Magna Charta itself, and the rest of our most ancient laws; the which never found assurance by parliament, until the time of King Edw. I. who may be therefore worthily called our English Solon or Lycurgus.

Now therefore to proceed to the reason and equity of exacting these fines for such alienations, it standeth thus: when the king (whom our law underlandeth to have been at the first both the supreme lord of all the persons, and sole owner of all the lands within his dominions) did give lands to any subject to hold them of himself, as of his crown and royal diadem, he vouchsafed that favour upon a chosen and selected man, not minding that any other should, (without his privity and good liking) be made owner of the same. And therefore his gift hath this secret intention inclosed within it, that if his tenant and patentee shall dispose of the same without his kingly assent first obtained, the lands shall revert to the king, or to his successors, that first gave them: and that also was the very cause, as I take it, why they were anciently feized into the king's hands as forfeit by such alienation, until the making of the said statute (1 Edw. III.) which did qualify that rigour of the former law.

Neither ought this to seem strange in the case of the king, when every common subject (being lord of lands which another holdeth of him) ought not only to have notice given unto him upon every alienation of his tenant, but hall (by the like implied intention) re-have the lands of his tenants, dying without heirs, though they were given out never so many years.
years agone, and have passed through the hands of howsoever many and strange possessors.

Not without good warrant therefore, said Mr. Fitzherbert in his Nat. Brev. fol. 147. That the justices ought not wittingly to suffer any fine to be levied of lands holden in chief, without the king’s licence. And as this reason is good and forcible, so is the equity and moderation of the fine itself most open and apparent; for how easy a thing is it to redeem a forfeiture of the whole lands for ever with the profits of one year, by the purchase of a pardon? Or otherwise, how tolerable is it to prevent the charge of that pardon, with the only cost of a third part thereof, timely and beforehand bestowed upon a licence?

Touching the king’s fines accustomedly paid for the purchasing of writs original, I find no certain beginning of them, and do therefore think that they also grew up with the chancery, which is the shop wherein they be forged; or, if you will, with the first ordinary jurisdiction and delivery of justice it self.

For when as the king had erected his courts of ordinary resort, for the help of his subjects in suit one against another, and was at the charge not only to wage justice and their ministers, but also to appoint places and officers for safe custody of the records that concerned not himself; by which means each man might boldly both crave and have law for the present, and find memorials also to maintain his right and recovery, for ever after, to the singular benefit of himself and all his posterity; it was consonant to good reason, that the benefited subject should render some small portion of his gain, as well towards the maintenance of this his own so great commodity, as for the supportation of the king’s expence, and the reward of the labour of them that were wholly employed for his profit.

And therefore it was well said by Littleton, (34 H. 6. fol. 38.) That the chancellor of England is not bound to make writs, without his due fee for the writing and seal of them. And that, in this part also, you may have assurance of good antiquity, it is extant amongst the records in the tower, 2 H. III. Membr. 6. that Simon Hales and others gave unto him their king, unum palfredium pro summonendo Richardo filio & baerede Willielmi de Hanred quod teneat finem faclum coram juflicariis apud Northampton, inter dictum Williel num & patrem dicti Arnoldi de seco in Barton. And besides that (in Oblatis de ann. 1, 2, & 7. regis Johannis) fines were diversely paid to the king upon the purchasing writs of mort d’auncelior, dower, &c., to remove pleas for inquisitions, trial by juries, writs of sundry summons, and other more.

Hereof then it is, that upon every writ procured for debt or damage, amounting to forty pounds or more, a noble, that is, six shillings and eight pence, is, and usually hath been paid to fine. And so for every hundred marks more a noble; and likewise upon every writ called a praecipe of lands, exceeding the yearly value of forty shillings, a noble is given to a fine; and for every other five marks by year; moreover another noble, as it is set forth 20 Rich. I. (abridged both by justice Fitzherbert, and justice Brooke;) and may also appear in the old Natura brevium, and the register, which have a proper writ of deceit, formed upon the case, where a man did (in the name of another) purchase such a writ in the chancery without his knowledge and consent.
THE OFFICE OF ALIENATIONS.

And herein the writ of right is excepted and passeth freely; not for fear of the words in Magna Charta, Nulli vendemus juifiam vel reúnum, as some do phantasy, but rather because it is rarely brought; and then also bought dearly enough without such a fine, for that the trial may be by battle to the great hazard of the champion.

The like exemption hath the writ to enquire of a man's death, which also, by the twenty-sixth chapter of that Magna Charta, must be granted freely, and without giving any thing for it: which last I do rather note, because it may be well gathered thereby, that even then all those other writs did lawfully answer their due fines: for otherwise the like prohibition would have been published against them, as was in this case of the inquisition it self.

I see no need to maintain the mediocrity and easines of this last sort of fine, which in lands exceedeth not the tenth part of one year's value, and in goods the two hundredth part of the thing that is demanded by the writ.

Neither hath this office of ours * originally to meddle with the fines of any other original writs, than of such only as whereupon a fine or concord may be had and lev'd; which is commonly the writ of covenant, and rarely any other. For we deal not with the fine of the writ of entry of lands holden in chief, as due upon the original writ it self; but only as payable in the nature of a licence for the alienation, for which the third part of the yearly rent is answered; as the statute 32 H. VIII. cap. 1. hath specified, giving the direction for it; albeit now lately the writs of entry be made parcel of the parcel ferm alfo; and therefore I will here close up the first part, and unfold the second.

Before the institution of this ferm and office, no writ of covenant for the levying any final concord, no writ of entry for the suffering of any part of this, nor warrant for pardon of alienation made, could be purchased and gotten without an oath called an affidavit, therein first taken either before a justice of assize, or master of the chancery, for the true discovery of the yearly value of the lands comprised in every of the same: in which doing, if a man shall consider on the one side the care and severity of the law, that would not be satisfied without an oath; and on the other side the assurance of the truth to be had by so religious an affirmation as an oath is, he will easily believe that nothing could be added unto that order, either for the ready dispatch of the subject, or for the uttermost advancement of the king's profit. But quid verba audiam, cum faéta videam? Much peril to the wearer, and little good to our sovereign hath ensued thereof. For on the one side the justices of assize were many times abused by their clerks, that preferred the recognitions of final concords taken in their circuit; and the masters of the chancery were often taken by the fraud of solicitors and attorneys, that followed their clients caufes here at Wolflminfter; and on the other side light and lewd persons, especially, that the exactor of the oath did neither use exhortation, nor examining of them for taking thereof, were as easily suborned to make an affidavit for money, as post-horses and hackneys are taken to hire in Canterbury and Dover way: insomuch that it was usual for him that dwelt in Southwark, Storiditch, or Tothill-street, to depose the yearly rent or valuation of lands lying in the north, the west, or other remote part of the realm, where either he never

VOL. III. A a a a

was
was at all, or whence he came so young, that little could he tell what
the matter meant: And thus confluatuinem peccandi fecit multitudo pec-
cantum. For the removing of which corruption, and of some others
whereof I have long since particularly heard, it was thought good that
the justice of affize should be entreated to have a more vigilant eye upon
their clerks writing; and that one special matter of the chancery should
be appointed to reside in this office, and to take the oaths concerning the
matters that come hither; who might not only reject such as for just
causes were unmeet to be sworn, but might also instruct and admonish
in the weight of an oath, those others that are fit to pass and perform it:
and forasmuch as thereby it must needs fall out very often, that either
there was no man ready and at hand that could with knowledge and good
conscience undertake the oath, or else that such honest persons as were
present, and did right well know the yearly value of the lands, would
rather choose and agree to pay a reasonable fine without any oath, than to
adventure the utmost, which, by the taking of their oath, must
come to light and discovery: It was also provided, that the fermour, and the de-
puties, should have power to treat, compound and agree with such, and
so not exact any oath at all of them.

How much this sort of finance hath been increased by this new
device, I will reserve (as I have already plotted it) for the last part of this dis-
course: but in the mean while I am to note first, that the fear of com-
mon perjury, growing by a daily and over-usual acquaintance with an
oath, by little and little razeth out that most reverend and religious opi-
ion thereof, which ought to be planted in our hearts, is hereby for a
great part cut off and clean removed: then that the subject yieldeth little
or nothing more now than he did before, considering that the money
which was wont to be saved by the former corrupt swearing, was not saved
unto him, but lost to her majesty and him, and found only in the purse
of the clerk, attorney, solicitor, or other follower of the suit: and lastly,
that the client, besides the benefit of retaining a good conscience in the
passage of this his business, hath also this good assurance, that he is always
a gainer, and by no means can be at any loss, as seeing well enough, that
if the composition be over-hard and heavy for him, he may then, at his
pleasure, relieve himself by recourse to his oath; which also is no more
than the ancient law and custom of the realm hath required at his hands.
And the self-same thing is moreover (that I may shortly deliver it by the
way) not only a singular comfort to the executioners of this office, a
pleasant seasoning of all the four of their labour and pains, when they
shall consider that they cannot be guilty of the doing of any oppression or
wrong; but it is also a most necessary instruction and document for them,
that even as her majesty hath made them dispensators of this her royal
favour towards her people, so it behoveth them to shew themselves pere-
grinatores, even and equal distributors of the same; and (as that most ho-
nourable lord and reverend sage counsellor, the *late lord Burleigh, late lord
treasurer, said to my self) to deal it out with wisdom and good dexterity
towards all the sorts of her loving subjects.

But now that it may yet more particularly appear what is the sum of
this new building, and by what joints and sinews the same is raised and
knit together, I must let you know, that besides the fermours deputies
(which at this day be three in number,) and besides the doctor of whom

* This par-

fage alcu-

tains the date

of this writ-
ing.
The part of
each office.
I spake, there is also a receiver, who alone handleth the moneys, and three clerks, that be employed severally, as anon you shall perceive; and by these persons the whole proceeding in this charge is thus performed.

If the recognition or acknowledgment of a final concord upon any writ of covenant finally, for so we call that which containeth lands above the yearly value of forty shillings, and all others we term unfinable, be taken by justice of affize, or by the chief justice of the common plea, and the yearly value of those lands be also declared by affidavit made before the same justice; then is the recognition and value, signed with the hand-writing of that justice, carried by the curator in chancery for that shire where those lands do lie, and by him is a writ of covenant thereupon drawn and ingrossed in parchment; which (having the same value indorsed on the backside thereof) is brought, together with the said paper that doth warrant it, into this office: and there first the doctor, conferring together the paper and writ, indorseth his name upon that writ, close underneath the value thereof: then forasmuch as the valuation thereof is already made, that writ is delivered to the receiver, who taketh the sum of money that is due, after the rate of that yearly value, and indorseth the payment thereof upon the same writ accordingly: this done, the same writ is brought to the second clerk, who entereth it into a several book, kept only for final writs of covenant, together with the yearly value, and the rate of the money paid, with the name of the party that made the affidavit, and of the justice that took it; and at the foot of that writ maketh a secret mark of his said entry: lastly, that writ is delivered to the deputies, who seeing that all the premises be orderly performed, do also indorse their own names upon the same writ for testimony of the money received. Thus passeth it from this office to the custos brevium, from him to the queen's silver, then to the chirographer to be engrossed, and so to be proclaimed in the court.

But if no affidavit be already made touching the value, then is the writ of covenant brought first to the deputies ready drawn and ingrossed: and then is the value made either by composition, had with them without any oath, or else by oath taken before the doctor; if by compulsion, then one of the deputies setteth down the yearly value (so agreed upon) at the foot of the backside of the writ: which value the doctor causeth one of the clerks to write on the top of the backside of the writ, (as the curator did in the former;) and after that the doctor indorseth his own name underneath it, and so passeth it through the hands of the receiver of the clerk that maketh the entry, and of the deputies as the former writ did. But if the valuation be made by oath taken before the doctor, then causeth he the clerk to indorse that value accordingly, and then also subscribeth he his name as before; and so the writ taketh the same course through the office that the others had.

And this is the order for writs of covenant that be finable; the like proceeding upon writs of entry.

And this is the order for writs of covenant that be finable; the like proceeding upon writs of entry.
Proceeding upon forfeiture of mean profits.

AN HISTORICAL ACCOUNT OF

name, and cause the youngest, or third clerk, both to make entry of the writ into a third book, purposely kept for those only writs, and also to indorse it thus, finis nullus: That done, it receiveth the names of the deputies, indorsed as before, and so paseth hence to the custos brevium as the rest. Upon every doquet for licence of alienation, or warrant for pardon of alienation, the party is likewise at liberty either to compound with the deputies, or to make affidavit touching the yearly value; which being known once and set down, the doctor subscribeth his name, the receiver taketh the money after the due rate and proportion; the second clerk entereth the doquet or warrant into the book that is proper for them, and for the writs of entry, with a notice also, whether it paseth by oath or by composition: then do the deputies sign it with their hands, and so it is conveyed to the deputy of Mr. Bacon, clerk of the licences, whose charge it is to procure the hand of the lord chancellor, and consequently the great seal for every such licence or pardon.

There it remaineth untouched, the order that is for the mean profits; for which also there is an agreement made here when it is discovered, that any alienation hath been made of lands holden in chief, without the queen's licence; and albeit that in the other cases, one whole year's profit be commonly payable upon such a pardon, yet where the alienation is made by devise in a last will only, the third part of these profits is there demandable, by special provision thereof made in the statute 34 H. VIII. c. 5, but yet every way the yearly profits of the lands so aliened without licence, and lost even from the time of the writ of jeire facias, or inquisition thereupon returned into the exchequer, until the time that the party shall come hither to sue forth his charter of pardon for that offence.

In which part the subject hath in time gained double ease of two weighty burdens, that in former ages did grievously press him: the one before the institution of this office, and the other thence; for in ancient time, and of right, (as it is adjudged 46 E. III. Fitzb. forfait 18.) the mean profits were precisely answered after the rate and proportion per diem, even from the time of the alienation made. Again, whereas before the receipt of them in this office, they were ascribed by the affidavit from the time of the inquisition found, or jeire facias returned, now not so much at any time as the one half, and many times not the sixth part of them is exacted. Here therefore, above the rest, is great necessity to shew favour and merciful dealing: because it many times happeneth, that either through the remote dwelling of the party from the lands, or by the negligence or evil practice of under- sheriffs and their bailiffs, the owner hath incurred the forfeiture of eight or ten years whole profits of his lands, before he cometh to the knowledge of the process that runneth against him: other times an alienation made without licence is discovered, when the present owner of the lands is altogether ignorant, that his lands be holden in chief at all: other times also some man concludes himself to have such a tenure by his own suing forth of a special writ of livery, or by careless procuring a licence, or pardon, for his alienation, when in truth the lands be not either holden at all of her majesty, or not holden in chief, but by a mean tenure in socage, or by knight's service at the most. In which cases, and the like, if the extremity should be rigourously urged and taken, especially where the years be many, the party should be driven to his utter overthrow, to make half a purchase, or more, of his own proper land and living.
About the discovery of the tenure in chief, following of process for such alienation made, as also about the calling upon sheriffs for their accounts, and the bringing in of the parties by seizure of their lands: therefore the first and principal clerk in this office, of whom I had not before any cause to speak, is chiefly and in a manner wholly occupied and set on work. Now if it do at any time happen (as notwithstanding the best endeavour it may and doth happen) that the process, howsoever colourably awarded, hath not hit the very mark whereat it was directed, but happily calleth upon some man who is not of right to be charged with the tenure in chief, that is objected against; then is he, upon oath and other good evidence, to receive his discharge under the hands of the deputies, but with a quiestque, and with falso jure dominae. Usage and receivable manner of awarding process cannot be avoided, especially where a man (having in some one place both lands holden in chief, and other lands not so holden) alieneth the lands not holden: seeing that it cannot appear by record nor otherwise, without the express declaration and evidences of the party himself, whether they be the same lands that be holden or others. And therefore albeit the party grieved thereby, may have some reason to complain of an untrue charge, yet may he not well call it an unjust vexation; but ought rather to look upon that case, which in this kind of proceeding he hath found, where, besides his labour, he is not to expend above two and twenty shillings in the whole charge, in comparison of that toil, cost and care, which he in the case was wont to sustain by the writ of certiorari in the exchequer; whereof, besides all his labour, it did cost him fifty shillings at the least, and sometimes twice so much, before he could find the means to be delivered.

Thus have I run through the whole order of this practice, in the open time of the term; and that the more particularly and at full, to the end that thereby these things ensuing, might the more fully appear, and plainly bewray themselves: first, that this present manner of exercising of this office, hath so many testimonies, interchangeable warrants, and counterrollments, whereof each, running through the hands and resting in the power of so many several persons, is sufficient to argue and convince all manner of falsehood; so as with a general conspiracy of all those officers together, it is almost impossible to contrive any deceit therein: a right, ancient and sound policy, whereupon both the order of the accounts in the exchequer, and of the affairs of her majesty's own household are so grounded and built, that the infection of an evil mind in some one or twain, cannot do any great harm, unless the rest of the company be also poisoned by their contagion. And surely, as Cicero said, Nullum est tam desperatum collegium, in quo non unus e multis fit sana mente praeditus. Secondly, that here is great use both of discretion, learning and integrity: of discretion, I say, for examining the degrees of favour, which ought to be imparted diversly, and for discerning the valuations of lands, not in one place or shire, but in each county and corner of the realm; and that not of one sort or quality, but of every kind, nature and degree: for a taste whereof, and to the end that all due quality of rates be not suddenly charged with infidelity, and condemned for corruption; it is not worthy, that favour is here sometimes right worthily bestowed, not only in a general regard of the person, by which every man ought to have a good pennyworth of his own, but more especially also and with much distinction: for a peer of the realm, a counsellour of state, a judge of the land, an officer that laboureth
AN HISTORICAL ACCOUNT OF

bouereth in furtherance of the tenure, or a poor person are not, as I think, to be measured by the common yard, but by the pole of special grace and dispensation: such as served in the wars, have been permitted, by many statutes, to alien their lands of this tenure, without facing out of any licence. All those of the chancery have claimed and taken the privilege to pass their writs without fine; and yet therefore do still look to be easily fined: yea, the favourites in court, and as many as serve the queen in ordinary, take it unkindly if they have not more than market measure.

Again, the consideration of the place or county where the lands do lie, may justly cause the rate or valuation to be the more or less: for as the writs do commonly report the land by numbers of acres, and as it is allowable, for the elucidation of some dangers, that those numbers do exceed the very content and true quantity of the lands themselves; so in some counties they are not much acquainted with admeasurement by acre: and thereby, for the most part, the writs of those shires and counties do contain twice or thrice so many acres more than the land hath. In some places the lands do lie open in common fields, and be not so valuable as if they were enclosed: And not only in one and the same shire, but also within the self-same lordship, parish or hamlet, lands have their divers degrees of value, through the diversity of their fertility or barrenness: where-in how great odds and variety there is, he shall soonest find, that will examine it by his own skill in whatsoever place that he knoweth best.

Moreover, some lands are more changeable than others are, respecting either the tenure, as knights service, and the tenure in chief, or in regard of defence against the sea and great rivers; as for their lying near to the borders of the realm, or because of great and continual purveyances that are made upon them, or such like.

And in some counties, as namely westward, their yearly rents, by which most commonly their value to her majesty is accounted, are not to this day improved at all, the landlords making no less gain by fines and incomes, than there is raised in other places by enhacement of rents.

The manner and sorts of the conveyance of the land itself, is likewise variable, and therefore deviseth a divers consideration and value: for in a pardon one whole year's value, together with the mean rates thereof, is due to be paid; which ought therefore to be more favourably affessed, than where but a third part of one year's rent, as in a licence or writ of entry, or where only a tenth part, as in a writ of covenant, is to be demanded.

A licence also and a pardon are to pass the charges of the great seal, to the which the bargain and sale, the fine and recovery are not subject. Sometimes upon one only alienation and change, the purchaser is to pass both licence, fine and recovery, and is for this multiplicity of payments more to be favoured, than he which bringeth but one single pay for all his assurance.

Moreover, it is very often seen that the same land suffereth sundry tranmutations of owners within one term, or other small compass of time; by which return much profit cometh to her majesty, though the party feel of some favour in that doing.

Neither is it of small moment in this part, to behold to what end the conveyances of land be delivered: seeing that sometimes it is only to establish the lands in the hands of the owner and his posterity, without any alienation and change of possession to be made: sometimes a fine is levied
levied only to make good a lease for years, or to pass an estate for life, upon which no yearly rent is reserved; or to grant a reversion, or remainder, expectant upon a lease, or estate, that yieldeth no rent. Sometimes the land is given in mortgage only, with full intention to be redeemed within one year, six months, or a lesser time. Many assurances do also pass to godly and charitable uses alone; and it happeneth not seldom, that, to avoid the yearly oath, for averment of the continuance of some estate for life, which is cion, and not subject to forfeiture for the alienation that cometh after it, the party will offer to sue a pardon uncompelled before the time; in all which some mitigation of the uttermost value may well and worthily be offered, the rather for that the statute (1 E. III. c.12. cap. 12.) willeth, that in this service generally, a reasonable fine shall be taken.

Lastly, error, misclaim and forgetfulness, do now and then become Error and suitors for some remission of extremity rigour: for I have sundry times observed, that an assurance, being passed through for a competent fine, hath come back again by reason of some oversight, and the party hath voluntarily repaid it within a while after. Sometimes the attorney, or follower of the cause, unskilfully thrusteth into the writ, both the uttermost quantity, or more, of the land, and the full rent also that is given for it: or else feeth down an entirety, where but a moiety, a third or fourth part only was to be passed, or causeth a bargain and sale to be enrolled, when nothing passed thereby; because a fine had transferred the land before: or else enrolleth it within the six months; whereas, before the end of those months, the land was brought home to the first owner, by repayment of the money for which it was engaged. In which and many other like cases, the client will rather choose to give a moderate fine for the alienation so recharged, than to undertake a costly plea in the exchequer, for reformation of that which was done amiss. I take it for a venial fault also to vouchsafe a pardon, after the rate and proportion of a licence, to him that without fraud or evil mind, hath slipp'd a term or two months, by forgetting to purchase his licence.

Much more could I say concerning this unblameable inequality of fines and rates; but as I meant only to give an essay thereof, so not doubting that this may stand, both for the satisfaction of such as be indifferent, and for the discharge of us that be put in mind with the service, wherein no doubt a good discretion and dexterity ought to be used, I refer to the place where I left, affirming that there is in this employment of ours great use of good learning also, as well to distinguish the manifold sorts of tenures and estates; to make construction of grants, conveyances and wills, and to found the validity of inquisitions, liversies, licences and pardons: as also to decipher the manifold flights and subtilities that are daily offered to defraud her majesty in this her most ancient and due prerogative, and finally to handle many other matters, which this purpose will not permit me to recount at large.

Lastly, here is need, as I said, of integrity throughout the whole labour and practice, as without the which both the former learning and discretion are no better than armata nequitia, and nothing else but detestable craft and double villainy.

And now as you have seen that these clerks want not their full task of labour during the time of the open term, so is there for them whereupon to be occupied in the vacation also.
AN HISTORICAL ACCOUNT OF

For whereas alienations of lands, holden by the tenure of prerogative, be continually made, and that by many and divers ways, whereof all are not, at the first, to be found of record; and yet for the most part do come to be recorded in the end: the clerks of this office do in the time of the vacation, repair to the rolls and records, as well of the chancery and king's bench, as of the common pleas and exchequer, whence they extract notes not only of inquisitions, common recoveries, and indentures of bargains and sales, that cannot but be of record, but also of such feoffments, exchanges, gifts by will, and indentures of covenants to raise uses of lands holden in chief, as are first made in the country without matter of record, and come at the length to be found by office, or inquisition, that is of record; all which are digested into apt books, and are then sent to the remembrancer of the lord treasurer in the exchequer, to the end that he may make and send out process upon them, as he doth upon the extracts of the final concords of such lands, which the clerk of the fines doth convey unto him.

Thus it is plain, that this new order by many degrees excelleth the former usage; as also for the present advancement of her majesty's commodity, and for the future profit which must ensue, by such discovery of tenures as were concealed before, by awaking of such as had taken a long sleep, and by reviving a great many that were more than half dead.

The fees, or allowances, that are termly given to these deputies, receiver, and clerks, for recompence of these their pains, I do purposely pretermite; because they be not certain, but arbitrary, at the good pleasure of these honourable persons that have the dispensation of the same: howbeit hitherto each deputy and the receiver hath received twenty pounds for his travail in each term, only the doctor hath not allowance of any sum in gros, but is altogether paid in petty fees, by the party or suitor; and the clerks are partly rewarded by that mean also, for their entries, discharges, and some other writings, besides that termly fee which they are allowed.

But if the deputies take one penny, besides their known allowance, they buy it at the dearest price that may be; I mean the shipwreck of conscience, and with the irrecoverable loss of their honesty and credit; and therefore since it appeareth which way each of these hath his reward, let us also examine that increase of benefit and gain, which is brought to her majesty by the invention of this office.

At the end of Hilary term 1589, being the last open term of the lease of these profits granted to the late earl of Leicester, which also was to expire at the feast of the annunciation of the blessed virgin Mary 1590, then shortly to ensue; the officers above remembred thought it, for good causes, their duties to exhibit to the said right honourable the lord treasurer, a special declaration of the yearly profits of these finances, paid into the hanaper during every of the six years before the beginning of the demife thereof made to that earl, conferred with the profits thereof that had been yearly taken, during the six last years before the determination of the lease.

By which it plainly appeared, that in all those first six years, next before the demise, there had been raised only 22798 l. 15 s. 7 d. ob. and in these last six years of the demise the full sum of 32160 l. 4 s. 10 d. qu. and to in all 19362 l. 2 s. 2 d. ob. qu. more in these last, than in those former six years. But because it may be said, that all this increase redounded to the gain of the fermor only, I must add, that during all the time of the demise, he answered 300 l. rent, of yearly increase, above all that profit

Note.
THE OFFICE OF ALIENATIONS.

of 2133 l. 2 s. 7 d. qu. which had been yearly and casually made in the sixteen years one with another next before: the which, in the time of fourteen years, for so long these profits have been demised by three several leases, did bring 4200 l. to her majesty's coffers. I say yearly; which may seem strange, that a casual and thereby uncertain profit should yearly be all one: but indeed such was the wondrous handling thereof, that the profit was yearly neither more nor less to her majesty, howsoever it might casually be more or less to him that did receive it. For the writs of covenant answered year by year 1 152 l. 16 s. 8 d. the licences and pardons 934 l. 3 s. 11 d. qu. and the mean rates 46 l. 2 s. in all 2133 l. 2 s. 7 d. qu. without increase or diminution.

Moreover, whereas her majesty did, after the death of the earl, buy of the countess, being his executrix, the remanent of the said term of three years in those profits, whereof there were only then six terms, that is, about one year and an half, to come, paying for it the sum of 3000 l. her majesty did clearly gain by that bargain the full sum of 1173 l. 15 s. 8 d. ob. above the said 3000 l. above the rent of 3649 l. 13 s. 10 d. ob. qu. proportionably due for that time, and above all fees and other reprises. Neither hath the benefit of this increase to her majesty, been contained within the bounds of this small office, but hath swelled over the banks thereof, and displayed itself apparently, as well in the hanaper by the fees of the great seal, which yielding 20 s. 4 d. towards her majesty for every licence and pardon, was estimated to advantage her highness during those fourteen years, the sum of 372 l. 6 s. ob. more than without that demise she was like to have found. As also in the court of wards and liveries, and in the exchequer it self: where, by reason of the tenures in chief revived through the only labours of these officers, both the sums for respect of homage be increased, and the profits of wardships, primer feisins, oufrer maine, and liveries, cannot but be much advanced. And so her majesty's self hath, in this particular, gained the very certainty whereof lieth not in the knowledge of these officers, nor accounting any part of that great benefit which the earl and his executrix have made by the demises; the which, one year with another, during all the thirteen years and a half, I suppose to have been 2263 l. or thereabouts; and so in all about 27158 l. above all his costs and expences. The which albeit I do here report only for the justification of the service in this place; yet who cannot but see withal, how much the royal revenues might be advanced, if but the like good endeavours were showed for her majesty in the rest of her finances, as have been found in this office for the commodity of this one subject.

The views of all which matter being present to the most wise and princely consideration of her majesty, she was pleased to demise these profits and fines for other five years, to begin at the feast of the annunciation 1590, in the thirty second year of her reign, for the yearly rent formerly referred upon the leaves of the earl; within the compass of which five years expired at the annunciation 1595, there was advanced to her majesty's benefit by this service, the whole sum of 13013 l. 14 s. 1 d. qu. beyond the ancient yearly revenues, which before any lease, were usually made of these finances. To which, if there be added 5700 l. for the gain given to her majesty by the yearly receipt of 300 l. in rent, from the first demise to the earl, until the time of his death, together with the sum

VOL. III. B b b b of
AN HISTORICAL ACCOUNT OF

of 1173 l. 15s. 8d. ob. clearly won in those six terms bought of the countefs: then the whole commodity, from the first institution of this office, till the end of these last five years, expired at the announcement 1595, shall appear to be 19887 l. 9 s. 9 d. ob. qu. To the which sum also, if 28550 l. 15 s. 6 d. ob. qu. which the earl and the countefs levied hereby, be likewise adjoined, then the whole profit taken in these nineteen years, that is, from the first lease, to the end of the last, for her majesty, the earl and the countefs, will amount unto 48438 l. 5 s. 4 d. This labour hitherto thus luckily succeeding, the deputies in this office finding by daily proof, that it was wearisome to the subject to travel to divers places, and through sundry hands, for the purfuing of common recoveries, either not holden of her majesty at all, or but partly holden in chief; and not doubting to improve her majesty's revenue therein, and that without loss to any, either private person or publick officer; if the same might be managed by them jointly with the rest whereof they had the charge, they found by search in the hanaper, that the fruits of those writs of entry had not, one year with another, in the ten years next before, exceeded 400 l. by the year. Whereupon they took hold of the occasion then present, for the renewing of the lease of the former profits; and moved the lord treasurer, and sir John Fortescue, under-treasurer and chancellor of the exchequer, to join the same in one and the same demise, and to yield unto her majesty 500 l. by year therefore; which is 100 l. yearly of increase. The which desire being by them recommended to her majesty, it liked her forthwith to include the same, and all the former demised profits, within one entire lease, for seven years, to begin at the said feast of the announcement 1597, under the yearly rent of 2933 l. 2 s. 7 d. qu. Since which time hitherto, I mean to the end of Michaelmas term 1598, not only the proportion of the said increased 100 l. but almost of one other 100 l. also, hath been answered to her majesty's coffers, for those recoveries so drawn into the demise now continuing.

Thus I have opened both the first plotting, the efepecial practice, and the consequent profit arising by these officers: and now if I should be demanded, whether this increase of profit were likely to stand without fall, or to be yet amended or made more? I would answer, that if some few things were provided, and some others prevented, it is probable enough in mine opinion, that the profit should rather receive accession than decay.

The things that I wish to be provided are these, first, that by the diligence of these officers, assisted with such other as can bring good help thereunto, a general and careful collection be made of all the tenures in chief; and that the same be digested by way of alphabet into apt volumes, for every part, or shire, of the realm. Then that every office, or inquisition, that findeth any tenure in chief, shall express the true quantities of the lands so holden, even as in ancient time it was wont to be done by way of admeasurement, after the manner of a perfect extent or survey: Whereby all the parts of the tenancy in chief may be wholly brought to light, however in process of time it hath been, or shall be torn and dismembered. For prevention, I with likewise, first, that some good means were devised for the restraint of making these inordinate and covenous leaves of lands, holden in chief, for hundreds or thousands of years, now grown so bold, that they dare shew themselves in fines, levied upon the open stage of the common pleas, by which one man taketh the full profit, and another
THE OFFICE OF ALIENATIONS.

ther beareth the empty name of tenancy, to the infinite decept of her majesty, in this part of her prerogative. Then that no alienation of lands, holden in chief, should be available, touching the freehold or inheritance thereof, but only where it were made by matter of record, to be found in some of her majesty's treasuries: and lastly, that a continual and watchful eye be had, as well upon these new founden traverses of tenure, which are not now tried, per patriam, as the old manner was, as also upon all such pleas whereunto the confession of her majesty's said attorney general is expected: so as the tenure of the prerogative be not prejudiced, either by the fraud of counsellors at the law, many of which do bend their wits to the overthrow thereof; or by the greediness of clerks and attorneys, that, to serve their own gain, do both impair the tenure, and therewithal grow more heavy to the client, in so softly pleading for discharge, than the very confession of the matter it self would prove unto him. I may yet hereunto add another thing, very meet not only to be prevented with all speed, but also to be punished with great severity: I mean that collusion let on so lately, between some of her majesty's tenants in chief, and certain other that have had to do in her highness grants of concealed lands: where under a feign'd concealment of the land it self, nothing else is sought but only to make a change of the tenure, which is referred upon the grant of those concealments, into that tenure in chief: in which practice there is no less abuse of her majesty's great bounty, than loss and hinderance of her royal right. These things thus settled, the tenure in chief should be kept alive and nourished; the which, as it is the very root that doth maintain this silver stem, that by many rich and fruitful branches spreadeth it self into the chancery, exchequer, and court of wards: so if it be suffered to starve, by want of ablaquation, and other good husbandry, not only this yearly fruit will much decrease from time to time, but also the whole body and boughs of that precious tree it self, will fall into danger of decay and dying.

And now, to conclude therewith, I cannot see how it may justly be misliked, that her majesty should, in a reasonable and moderate manner, demand and take this sort of finance: which is not newly out and imposed, but is given and grown up with the first law it self, and which is evermore accompanied with some special benefit to the giver of the same: seeing that lightly no alienation is made, but either upon recompence in money, or land, or for marriage, or other good and profitable consideration that doth move it: yea rather all good subjects and citizens ought not only to yield that gladly of themselves, but also to further it with other men; as knowing that the better this and such like ancient and settled revenues shall be answer'd and paid, the less need her majesty shall have, to ask subsidies, fifteens; loans, and whatsoever extraordinary helps, that otherwise must of necessity be levied upon them. And for proof that it shall be more profitable to her majesty to have every of the same to be managed by men of fidelity, that shall be waged by her own pay, than either to be letting out to the fermours benefits, or to be left at large to the booty and spoil of ravenous ministers, that have not their reward: let the experiment and success be in this one office, and persuade for all the rest.

Laus Deo.

Vol. III.  B b b b 2  ADVICE
A D V I C E
TO
Sir GEORGE VILLIERS,
A F T E R W A R D S
D U K E of B U C K I N G H A M,
When he became
Favourite to King James;

Recommending many important instructions how to govern himself in the station of prime minister: written by Sir Francis Bacon, on the importunity of his patron and friend.

N O B L E S I R,

W H A T you requested of me by word, when I last waited on you, you have since renewed by your letters. Your requests are commands unto me; and yet the matter is of that nature, that I find myself very unable to serve you therein as you desire. It hath pleased the king to cast an extraordinary eye of favour upon you, and you express your self very desirous to win upon the judgment of your master, and not upon his affections only. I do very much commend your noble ambition herein; for favour so bottomed is like to be lasting; whereas, if it be built but upon the sandy foundation of personal respects only, it cannot be long lived.

[My lord, when the blessing of God (to whom in the first place I know you ascribe your preferment) and the king's favour, purchased by your noble parts, promising as much as can be expected from a gentleman, had brought you to this high pitch of honour, to be in the eye and ear, and even in the bosom of your gracious master; and you had found by experience the trouble of all men's confluence, and for all matters to your self, as a mediator between them and their sovereign, you were pleased to lay this command upon me: First in general, to give you my poor advice for your carriage in so eminent a place, and of so much danger if not wisely discharged: Next in particular by what means to give dispatches to
to suitors of all sorts, for the king's best service, the suitors satisfaction, and your own ease. I humbly return you mine opinion in both these, such as an hermit rather than a courtier can render."

Yet in this you have erred, in applying yourself to me, the most unworthy of your servants, to give assent upon so weighty a subject. You know, I am no courtier, nor vers'd in state-affairs; my life, hitherto, hath rather been contemplative, than active; I have rather studied books than men; I can but guess, at the most, at these things, in which you desire to be advised: nevertheless, to shew my obedience, though with the hazard of my discretion, I shall yield unto you.

Sir, In the first place, I shall be bold to put you in mind of the present condition you are in; you are not only a courtier, but a bed-chamber man, and so are in the eye and ear of your master; but you are also a favourite; the favourite of the time, and so are in his bosom also; the world hath voted you, and doth esteem of you, for kings and great princes, even the wisest of them, have had their friends, their favourites, their privadoes, in all ages; for they have their affections as well as other men. Of these they make several uses; sometimes to communicate and debate their thoughts with them, and to ripen their judgments thereby; sometimes to ease their cares by imparting them; and sometimes to interpose them between themselves and the envy or malice of their people (for kings cannot err, that must be discharged upon the shoulders of their ministers; and they who are nearest unto them must be content to bear the greatest load.) [Remember then what your true condition is: the king himself is above the reach of his people, but cannot be above their censures; and you are his shadow, if either he commit an error, and is loth to avow it, but excuses it upon his ministers, of which you are still in the eye; or you commit the fault, or have willingly permitted it, and must suffer for it, and so perhaps you may be offer'd a sacrifice to appease the multitude.] But truly, sir, I do not believe or suspect that you are chosen to this eminency, out of the last of these considerations: for you serve such a master, who by his wisdom and goodness is as free from the malice or envy of his subjects, as I think, I may truly say, ever any king was, who hath sat upon his throne before him: but I am confident, his majesty hath cast his eyes upon you, as finding you to be such as you should be, or hoping to make you to be such as he would have you to be; for this I may say without flattery, your outside promiseth as much as can be expected from a gentleman: but be it in the one respect, or other, it belongeth to you to take care of your self, and to know well what the name of a favourite signifies. If you be chosen upon the former respects, you have reason to take care of your actions and deportment, out of your gratitude for the king's sake; but if out of the latter, you ought to take the greater care for your own sake.

You are as a new-risen star, and the eyes of all men are upon you; let not your own negligence make you fall like a meteor.

[Remember well the great trust you have undertaken; you are as a continual centinel, always to stand upon your watch to give him true intelligence. If you flatter him you betray him; if you conceal the truth of those things from him which concern his justice or his honour (although not the safety of his person) you are as dangerous a traitor to his state, as he that rifeth in arms against him. A false friend is more dangerous than an open enemy: kings are styled gods upon earth, not absolute;]
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

lute; but *dixi dies*; and the next words are, *sed moriemini sic ut homines*; they shall die like men, and then all their thoughts perish. They cannot possibly see all things with their own eyes, nor hear all things with their own ears; they must commit many great truths to their ministers. Kings must be answerable to God almighty, to whom they are but vassals, for their actions, and for their negligent omissions: but the ministers to kings, whose eyes, ears and hands they are, must be answerable to God and man for the breach of their duties, in violation of their truths, whereby they betray them. Opinion is a master wheel in these cases: that courtier who obtained a boon of the emperor, that he might every morning at his coming into his presence humbly whisper him in the ear and say nothing, asked no unprofitable suit for himself: but such a fancy raised only by opinion cannot be long lived, unless the man have solid worth to uphold it; otherwise when once discovered it vanishes suddenly. But when a favourite in court shall be raised upon the foundation of merits, and together with the care of doing good service to the king, shall give good dispatches to the suitors, then can he not choose but prosper.

The contemplation then of your present condition, must necessarily prepare you for action: what time can be well sparrow'd from your attendance on your master, will be taken up by suitors, whom you cannot avoid nor decline, without reproach. For if you do not already, you will soon find the throng of suitors attend you; for no man, almost, who hath to do with the king, will think himself safe, unless you be his good angel, and guide him; or at least that you be not a *Malius Genius* against him: so that in respect of the king your master, you must be very wary, that you give him true information; and if the matter concern him in his government, that you do not flatter him; if you do, you are as great a traitor to him in the court of heaven, as he that draws his sword against him: and in respect of the suitors which shall attend you, there is nothing will bring you more honour and ease, than to do them what right in justice you may, and with as much speed as you may: for believe it, sir, next to obtaining of the suit, a speedy and a gentle denial (when the case will not bear it) is the most acceptable to suitors: they will gain by the dispatch; whereas else they shall spend their time and money in attending; and you will gain, in the ease you will find in being rid of their importunity. But if they obtain what they reasonably desire, they will be doubly bound to you for your favour; *Bis dat qui cito dat*, it multiplies the courtesy, to do it with good words and speedily.

That you may be able to do this with the best advantage, my humble advice is this; when suitors come unto you, set apart a certain hour in a day to give them audience: if the business be light and easy, it may by word only be delivered, and in a word be answered; but if it be either of weight or of difficulty, direct the suitor to commit it to writing, (if it be not so already) and then direct him to attend for his answer at a set time to be appointed, which would constantly be observed, unless some matter of great moment do interrupt it. When you have received the petitions, (and it will please the petitioners well, to have access unto you to deliver them into your own hand) let your secretary first read them, and draw lines under the material parts thereof, (for the matter, for the most part, lies in a narrow room.) The petitions being thus prepared, do you constantly set apart an hour in a day to peruse those petitions; and after you have ranked them into several files, according to the
the subject matter, make choice of two or three friends, whose judgments
and fidelities you believe you may trust in a business of that nature; and
recommend it to one or more of them, to inform you of their opinions,
and of their reasons for or against the granting of it. And if the matter
be of great weight indeed, then it would not be amiss to send several
copies of the same petition to several of your friends, the one not know­ing
what the other doth, and desire them to return their answers to you
by a certain time, to be prefixed, in writing; so shall you receive an
impartial answer, and by comparing the one with the other, (as out of re­
ponfa prudentium) you shall both discern the abilities and faithfulness of
your friends, and be able to give a judgment thereupon as an oracle.
But by no means trust to your own judgment alone; for no man is om­
nicient: nor trust only to your servants, who may mistake you or misin­
form you; by which they may perhaps gain a few crowns, but the re­
proach will lie upon your self, if it be not rightly carried.

For the facilitating of your dispatches, my advice is farther, that you
divide all the petitions, and the matters therein contained, under several
heads; which, I conceive, may be fitly ranked into these eight sorts.

I. Matters that concern religion, and the church and churchmen.
II. Matters concerning justice, and the laws, and the professors
thereof.
III. Counsellors, and the council table, and the great offices and
officers of the kingdom.
IV. Foreign negotiations and embassies.
V. Peace and war, both foreign and civil, and in that the navy and
forts, and what belongs to them.
VI. Trade at home and abroad.
VII. Colonies, or foreign plantations.
VIII. The court and curiality.

And whatsoever will not fall naturally under one of these heads, be­
lieve me, sir, will not be worthy of your thoughts, in this capacity we
now speak of. And of these sorts, I warrant you, you will find enough
to keep you in business.

I begin with the first, which concerns religion.

1. In the first place, be you your self rightly persuaded and settled in
the true protestant religion, professed by the church of England; which
doubtless is as sound and orthodox in the doctrine thereof, as any christian
church in the world.

[For religion, if any thing be offered to you touching it, or touching
the church, or church-men, or church-government, rely not only upon your self, but take the opinion of some grave and eminent divines, espe­
cially such as are judicious and discreet men, and exemplary for their lives.]

2. In this you need not be a monitor to your gracious master the king:
the chiefest of his imperial titles is, to be the defender of the faith, and his
learning is eminent, not only above other princes, but above other men; be but his scholar, and you are safe in that.

[If any question be moved concerning the doctrine of the church of
England expressed in the thirty nine articles, give not the least ear to the
movers thereof: that is so soundly and so orthodoxly settled, as cannot be
questioned without extreme danger to the honour and stability of our
religion; which hath been sealed with the blood of so many martyrs and
professors, as are famous through the christian world. The enemies and
underminers thereof are the Romish catholicks (fo flyling themselves) on
the one hand, whose tenets are inconsistent with the truth of religion pro-
feffed and profefled by the church of England, (whence we are called
protestants;) and the anabaptists, and separatists, and sectaries on the other
hand, whose tenets are full of schism, and inconsistent with monarchy:
for the regulating of either, there needs no other coercion than the due
execution of the laws already established by parliament.

3. For the discipline of the church of England by bishops, &c. I will
not positively say, as some do, that it's Jure Divino; but this I say and
think ex animo, that it is the nearest to apostolical truth; and confidently
I shall say, it is fittest for monarchy of all others. I will use no other au-
thority to you, than that excellent proclamation set out by the king him-
self in the first year of his reign, and annexed before the book of com-
mon-prayer, which I desire you to read; and if at any time there shall
be the least motion made for innovation, to put the king in mind to read
it himself: it is most dangerous in a state, to give ear to the
least alterations in government.

[If any attempt be made to alter the discipline of our church, although
it be not an essential part of our religion, yet it is so neceffary not to be
rashly altered, as the very substance of our religion will be interested in it:
therefore I desire you before any attempt be made of an innovation by
your means, or by any interceffion to your matter, that you will first read
over, and his majesty call to mind that wise and weighty proclamation,
which himfelf penned, and caufed to be published in the first year of his
reign, and is prefixed in print before the book of common prayer (of that
impression;) in which you will find fo prudent, fo weighty reafons, not to
hearken to innovations, as will fully fatisfy you, that it is dangerous to
give the leaff ear to fuch innovators; but it is desperate to be mined by
them; and to fettle your judgment, mark but the admonition of the wisest
of men, king Solomon, Prov. xxiv. 21. My fon, fear God and the king, and
meddle not with thofe who are given to change.]

4. Take heed, I befeech you, that you be not an instrument to coun-
tenance the Romish catholicks. I cannot flatter, the world believes that
fome near in blood to you are too much of that perfuafion; you
muft use them with fit refefts, according to the bonds of nature; but you are of
kin, and fo a friend to their perfons, not to their errors.

5. The archbishops and bishops, next under the king, have the
government of the church and eccleliaftical affairs: be not you the mean
to prefer any to thofe places, for any by-reffects; but only for their
learning, gravity and worth; their lives and doctrine ought to be exem-
plary.

6. For deans, and canons or prebends of cathedral churches: in their
first inftitution they were of great ufe in the church; they were not only
to be of counfel with the bishop for his revenue, but chiefly for his go-
vovernment in caufes eccleliaftical: ufe your beft means to prefer fuch to
thofe places who are fit for that purpofe, men eminent for their learning,
piety and discretion, and put the king often in mind thereof; and let
them be reduced again to their firft inftitution.

7. You will be often solicited, and perhaps importuned to prefer schol-
ars to church livings: you may further your friends in that way, caeteris
paribus; otherwife remember, I pray, that these are not places merely of
favour, the charge of fouls lies upon them; the greateft account whereof
will
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

will be required at their own hands; but they will share deeply in their faults who are the instruments of their preferment.

8. Besides the Romish catholicks, there is a generation of sectaries, the anabaptists, brownists, and others of their kinds; they have been several times very busy in this kingdom, under the colour of zeal for reformation of religion: the king your master knows their disposition very well; a small touch will put him in mind of them; he had experience of them in Scotland, I hope he will beware of them in England; a little countenance or connivency sets them on fire.

9. Order and decent ceremonies in the church are not only comely, but commendable; but there must be great care not to introduce innovations, they will quickly prove scandalous; men are naturally over-prone to suspicion; the true protestant religion is seated in the golden mean; the enemies unto her are the extremities on either hand.

10. The persons of churchmen are to be had in due respect for their work's sake, and protected from scorn; but if a clergyman be loose and scandalous, he must not be patroniz'd nor wink'd at; the example of a few such corrupt many.

11. Great care must be taken, that the patrimony of the church be not sacrilegiously diverted to lay uses: his majesty in his time hath religiously stopped a leak that did much harm, and would else have done more. Be sure, as much as in you lies, stop the like upon all occasions.

12. Colleges and schools of learning are to be cherished and encouraged, there to breed up a new flock to furnish the church and commonwealth when the old store are transplanted. This kingdom hath in later ages been famous for good literature; and if preferment shall attend the defervers, there will not want supplies.

II. Next to religion, let your care be to promote justice. By justice and mercy is the king's throne established.

1. Let the rule of justice be the laws of the land, an impartial arbiter between the king and his people, and between one subject and another; I shall not speak superlatively of them, lest I be suspected of partiality, in regard of my own profession; but this I may truly say, they are second to none in the christian world.

[They are the best, the equallest in the world between prince and people; by which the king hath the justest prerogative, and the people the best liberty: and if at any time there be an unjust deviation, Hominis est vitium, non professionis.]

2. And, as far as it may lie in you, let no arbitrary power be intruded; the people of this kingdom love the laws thereof, and nothing will oblige them more, than a confidence of the free enjoying of them; what the nobles upon an occasion once said in parliament, Nolimus leges Angliae mutari, is imprinted in the hearts of all the people.

3. But because the life of the laws lies in the due execution and administration of them, let your eye be, in the first place, upon the choice of good judges: these properties had they need to be furnished with; to be learned in their profession, patient in hearing, prudent in governing, powerful in their elocution to persuade and satisfy both the parties and hearers, just in their judgment: and, to sum up all, they must have these three attributes; they must be men of courage, fearing God, and hating covetousness; an ignorant man cannot, a coward dares not, be a good judge.

Vol. III. C c c 4. By
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

4. By no means be you persuaded to interpose your self, either by word or letter, in any caufe depending, or like to be depending in any court of justice, nor suffer any other great man to do it where you can hinder it, and by all means diffuse the king himself from it, upon the importunity of any for themselves or their friends: if it should prevail, it perverts justice; but if the judge be so just, and of such courage, (as he ought to be) as not to be inclined thereby, yet it always leaves a taint of suspicion behind it; judges must be as chaste as Caesar’s wife, neither to be, nor to be suspected to be unjust; and, fir, the honour of the judges in their judicature, is the king’s honour, whose person they represent.

5. There is great use of the service of the judges in their circuits, which are twice in the year held throughout the kingdom; the trial of cauſes between party and party, or delivering of the goals in the several counties, are of great use for the expedition of justice; yet they are of much more use for the government of the counties through which they pass, if that were well thought upon.

6. For if they had instructions to that purpose, they might be the best intelligencers to the king of the true state of his whole kingdom, of the disposition of the people, of their inclinations, of their intentions and motions, which are necessary to be truly understood.

7. To this end I could wish, that against every circuit all the judges should, sometimes by the king himself, and sometimes by the lord chancellor or lord keeper, in the king’s name, receive a charge of those things which the present times did much require; and at their return should deliver a faithful account thereof, and how they found and left the counties through which they passed, and in which they kept their assizes.

8. And that they might the better perform this work, which might be of great importance, it will not be amiss that sometimes this charge be publick, as it ufeth to be in the star-chamber, at the end of the terms next before the circuit begins, where the king’s care of justice, and the good of his people, may be published; and that sometimes also it may be private, to communicate to the judges some things not so fit to be publickly delivered.

9. I could wish also, that the judges were directed to make a little longer stay in a place than usually they do; a day more in a county would be a very good addition; although their wages for their circuits were increased in proportion, it would stand better with the gravity of their employment; whereas now they are sometimes enforced to rise over-early, and to sit over-late, for the dispatch of their business, to the extraordinary trouble of themselves and of the people, their times indeed not being juridicae; and, which is the main, they would have the more leisure to inform themselves (qua si aliud agentes) of the true estate of the country.

10. The attendance of the sheriffs of the counties, accompanied with the principal gentlemen, in a comely, not a costly equipage, upon the judges of assize at their coming to the place of their sitting, and at their going out, is not only a civility, but of use also: it raiseth a reverence to the persons and places of the judges, who coming from the king himself on so great an errand, should not be neglected.

11. If any sue to be made a judge, for my own part, I should suspect him: but if either directly or indirectly he should bargain for a place of judi-
12. When the place of a chief judge of a court becomes vacant, a
pruine judge of that court, or of another court, who hath approved him-
self fit and deserving, should be sometimes preferred; it would be a good
encouragement for him, and for others by his example.

13. Next to the judge, there would be care used in the choice of such
as are called to the degree of serjeants at law, (for such they must be first
before they be made judges:) none should be made serjeants but such as
probably might be held fit to be judges afterwards, when the experience
at the bar hath fitted them for the bench: therefore by all means cry
down that unworthy course of late times used, that they should pay mo-
neys for it; it may satisfy some courtiers, but it is no honour to the per-
son so preferred, nor to the king, who thus prefers them.

14. For the king’s counsel at the law, especially his attorney and
solicitor general, I need say nothing: their continual use for the king’s
service, not only for his revenue, but for all the parts of his government,
will put the king, and those who love his service, in mind to make choice
of men every way fit and able for that employment; they had need to be
learned in their profession, and not ignorant in other things; and to be
dexterous in those affairs whereof the dispatch is committed to them.

15. The king’s attorney of the court of wards is in the true quality
of the judges; therefore what hath been observed already of judges, which
are intended principally of the three great courts of law at Westminister,
may be applied to the choice of the attorney of this court.

16. The like for the attorney of the duchy of Lancaster, who par-
takes of both qualities, partly of a judge in that court, and partly of an
attorney general; for so much as concerns the proper revenue of the
duchy.

17. I must not forget the judges of the four circuits in the twelve
shires of Wales, who although they are not of the first magnitude, nor
need be of the degree of the coif (only the chief justice of Chester, who
is one of their number, is so,) yet are they considerable in the choice of
them, by the same rules as the other judges are; and they sometimes are,
and fitly may be, transplanted into the higher courts.

18. There are many courts (as you see) some superior, some provin-
cial, and some of a lower orb: it were to be wished, and is fit to be so
ordered, that every of them keep themselves within their proper spheres.
The harmony of justice is then the sweetest, when there is no jarring about
the jurisdiction of the courts; which methinks wisdom cannot much differ
upon, their true bounds being for the most part so clearly known.

19. Having said thus much of the judges, somewhat will be fit to put
you in mind concerning the principal ministers of justice: and in the first,
of the high sheriffs of the counties, which have been very ancient in this
kingdom; I am sure before the conquest: the choice of them I commend
to your care, and that at fit times you put the king in mind thereof;
that as near as may be they be such as are fit for those places: for they
are of great trust and power; the poelle comitatus, the power of the whole
county being legally committed unto him.

20. Therefore it is agreeable with the intention of the law, that
the choice of them should be by the commendation of the great officers of
the kingdom, and by the advice of the judges, who are presumed to be
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

well read in the condition of the gentry of the whole kingdom: and although the king may do it of himself, yet the old way is the good way.

21. But I utterly condemn the practice of the later times, which hath lately crept into the court (at the back-stairs) that some who are prick'd for sheriffs, and were fit, should get out of the bill, and others who were neither thought upon, nor worthy to be, should be nominated, and both for money.

22. I must not omit to put you in mind of the lords lieutenants, and deputy lieutenants of the counties: their proper use is for ordering the military affairs, in order to an invasion from abroad, or a rebellion or sedition at home; good choice should be made of them, and prudent instructions given to them, and as little of the arbitrary power as may be left unto them; and that the muster-masters, and other officers under them, incroach not upon the subject; that will detract much from the king's service.

23. The justices of peace are of great use. Anciently there were conservators of the peace, these are the same, saving that several acts of parliament have altered their denomination, and enlarged their jurisdiction in many particulars: the fitter they are for the peace of the kingdom, the more heed ought to be taken in the choice of them.

24. But negatively, this I shall be bold to say, that none should be put into either of those commissions, with an eye of favour to their persons, to give them countenance or reputation in the places where they live, but for the king's service sake; nor any put out for the disfavour of any great man: it hath been too often used, and hath been no good service to the king.

25. A word more, if you please to give me leave, for the true rules of the moderation of justice on the king's part. The execution of justice is committed to his judges, which seemeth to be the severer part; but the milder part, which is mercy, is wholly left in the king's immediate hand: and justice and mercy the true supports of his royal throne.

26. If the king shall be wholly intent upon justice, it may appear with an over-rigid aspect; but if he shall be over-remiss and easy, it draweth upon him contempt. Examples of justice must be made sometimes for terror to some; examples of mercy sometimes, for comfort to others: the one procures fear, and the other love. A king must be both feared and loved, else he is lost.

27. The ordinary courts of justice I have spoken of, and of their judges and judicature: I shall put you in mind of some things touching the high court of parliament in England, which is superlative; and therefore it will behove me to speak the more warily thereof.

28. For the institution of it, it is very ancient in this kingdom: it consisteth of the two houses, of peers and commons, as the members; and of the king's majesty, as the head of that great body: by the king's authority alone, and by his writs, they are assembled, and by him alone are they prorogued and dissolved, but each house may adjourn it self.

29. They being thus assembled, are more properly a council to the king, the great council of the kingdom, to advise his majesty in those things of weight and difficulty, which concern both the king and people, than a court.

30. No new laws can be made, nor old laws abrogated or altered, but by common consent in parliament, where bills are prepared and prefented to
to the two houses, and then delivered; but nothing is concluded but by the king's royal assent; they are but embryos, 'tis he giveth life unto them.

31. Yet the house of peers hath a power of judicature in some cases; properly to examine, and then to affirm; or if there be cause to reverse the judgments which have been given in the court of king's bench, (which is the court of highest jurisdiction in the kingdom for ordinary judicature;) but in these cases it must be done by writ of error in parliamento: and thus the rule of their proceedings is not absoluta potestas, as in making new laws (in that conjunction as before;) but limitata potestas; according to the known laws of the land.

32. But the house of commons have only power to censure the members of their own house, in point of election or misdemeanors, in or towards that house; and have not, nor ever had power, so much as to administer an oath to prepare a judgment.

33. The true use of parliaments in this kingdom is very excellent; and they would be often called, as the Affairs of the kingdom shall require; and continued as long as is necessary and no longer: for then they be but burthen to the people, by reason of the privileges justly due to the members of the two houses and their attendants; which their just rights and privileges are religiously to be observed and maintained: but if they should be unjustly enlarged beyond their true bounds, they might lessen the just power of the crown, it borders so near upon popularity.

34. All this while I have spoken concerning the common laws of England, generally and properly so called, because it is most general and common to almost all cases and causes, both civil and criminal: but there is also another law, which is called the civil or ecclesiastical law, which is confined to some few heads, and that is not to be neglected: and although I am a professor of the common law, yet I am so much a lover of truth and of learning, and of my native country, that I do heartily persuade that the professors of that law, called civilians (because the civil law is their guide) should not be discountenanced nor discouraged: else whenever we shall have aught to do with any foreign king or state, we shall be at a miserable loss, for want of learned men in that profession.

III. I come now to the consideration of those things which concern counsellors of state, the council table, and the great offices and officers of the kingdom; which are those who for the most part furnish out that honourable board.

1. Of counsellors, there are two sorts: the first, consiliorii nati, (as I may term them;) such are the prince of Wales, and others of the king's sons, (when he hath more,) of these I speak not, for they are naturally born to be counsellors to the king, to learn the art of governing betimes.

2. But the ordinary sort of counsellors are such as the king, out of a due consideration of their worth and abilities, and withal, of their fidelity to his person and to his crown, calleth to be of council with him, in his ordinary government. And the council table is so called from the place where they ordinarily assemble and sit together; and their oath is the only ceremony used, to make them such, which is solemnly given unto them, at their first admission: these honourable persons are from thenceforth of that board and body: they cannot come until they be thus called, and the king at his pleasure may spare their attendance; and he may dispense with their presence there, which at their own pleasure they may not do.
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

3. This being the quality of their service, you may easily judge what care the king should use, in his choice of them. It behooves that they be persons of great trust and fidelity, and also of wisdom and judgment, who shall thus affist in bearing up the king's throne, and of known experience in publick affairs.

4. Yet it may not be unfit to call some of young years, to train them up in that trade, and so fit them for those weighty affairs, against the time of greater maturity; and some also for the honour of their persons: but these two sorts not to be tied to so strict attendance, as the others from whom the present dispatch of business is expected.

5. I could wish that their number might not be so over-great; the persons of the counsellors would be the more venerable: And I know that queen Elizabeth, in whose time I had the happiness to be born, and to live many years, was not so much observed, for having a numerous, as a wise, council.

6. The duty of a privy councillor to a king, I conceive, is, not only to attend the council board, at the times appointed, and there to consult of what shall be propounded; but also to study those things which may advance the king's honour and safety, and the good of the kingdom, and to communicate the same to the king, or to his fellow-councillors, as there shall be occasion. And this, sir, will concern you more than others, by how much you have a larger share in his affections.

7. And one thing I shall be bold to desire you to recommend to his majesty: that when any new thing shall be propounded to be taken into consideration, that no counsellor should suddenly deliver any positive opinion thereof; it is not so easy with all men to retract their opinions, although there shall be cause for it: but only to hear it, and at the most but to break it, at first, that it may be the better understood against the next meeting.

8. When any matter of weight hath been debated, and seemeth to be ready for a resolution; I wish it may not be at that fitting concluded (unless the necessity of the time press it,) left upon second cogitations there should be cause to alter; which is not for the gravity and honour of that board.

9. I wish also that the king would be pleased sometimes to be present at that board; it adds a majesty to it: and yet not to be too frequently there, that would render it less esteemed when it is become common; besides, it may sometimes make the counsellors not to be so free in their debates in his presence, as they would be in his absence.

10. Besides the giving of counsel, the counsellors are bound by their duties ex vi termini, as well as by their oaths, to keep counsel; therefore they are called de privato confilio regis, & a secretioribus consilii regis.

11. One thing I add, in the negative, which is not fit for that board, the entertaining of private caufes, of meum & tuum; those should be left to the ordinary course and courts of justice. As there is great care to be used, for the counsellors themselves to be chosen; so there is of the clerks of the council also, for the secreting of their consultations: and methinks, it were fit that his majesty be speedily moved to give a strict charge, and to bind it with a solemn order (if it be not already so done,) that no copies of the orders of that Table be delivered out by the clerks of the council, but by the order of the board; nor any, not being a counsellor, or a clerk of the council, or his clerk, to have access to the council book s: and to that purpose, that the servants attending
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

attending the clerks of the council be bound to secrecy, as well as their matters.

13. For the great offices and officers of the kingdom, I shall say little; for the most part of them are such, as cannot well be sever’d from the councillorship; and therefore the same rule is to be observed for both, in the choice of them. In the general, only, I advise this, let them be set in those places for which they are probably the most fit.

14. But in the quality of the persons, I conceive it will be most convenient to have some of every sort, (as in the time of queen Elizabeth it was:) one bishop at the least, in respect of questions touching religion, or church government; one or more skilled in the laws; some for military affairs; and some for foreign affairs: by this mixture one will help another in all things that shall there happen to be moved. But if that should fail, it will be a safe way, to consult with some other able persons well versed in that point which is the subject of their consultation; which yet may be done so warily, as may not discover the main end therein.

IV. In the next place, I shall put you in mind of foreign negotiations and embassies, to or with foreign princes or states; wherein I shall be little able to serve you.

1. Only, I will tell you what was the course in the happy days of queen Elizabeth, whom it will be no dis-reputation to follow: she did vary, according to the nature of the employment, the quality of the persons employed; which is a good rule to go by.

2. If it were an embassiy of gratulation or ceremony (which must not be neglected,) choice was made of some noble person, eminent in place, and able in purse; and he would take it as a mark of favour, and discharge it without any great burthen to the queen’s coffers, for his own honour’s sake.

3. But if it were an embassy of weight, concerning affairs of state, choice was made of some sad person of known judgment, wisdom and experience, and not of a young man, not weighed in state matters: nor of a mere formal man, whatsoever his title or outside were.

4. Yet in company of such, some young towardly noblemen or gentlemen were usually sent also, as assistants or attendants; according to the quality of the persons; who might be thereby prepared and fitted for the like employment, by this means, at another turn.

5. In their company were always sent some grave and sad men, skilful in the civil laws, and some in the languages, and some who had been formerly conversant in the courts of those princes, and knew their ways; these were assistants in private, but not trusted to manage the affairs in publick; that would detract from the honour of the principal embassador.

6. If the negotiation were about merchants affairs, then were the persons employed for the most part doctors of the civil law, assist’d with some other discreet men; and in such, the charge was ordinarily defrayed by the company or society of merchants, whom the negotiation concerned.

7. If legier embassadors or agents were sent to remain in or near the courts of those princes or states (as it was ever held fit, to observe the motions, and to hold correspondence with them, upon all occasions) such were made choice of as were presumed to be vigilant, industrious, and discreet men, and had the language of the place whither they were sent; and with these were sent such as were hopeful to be worthy of the like employment at another time.

8. Their
8. Their care was, to give true and timely intelligence of all occurrences, either to the queen herself, or the secretaries of state, unto whom they had their immediate relation.

9. Their charge was always born by the queen, duly paid out of the exchequer, in such proportion, as, according to their qualities and places, might give them an honourable subsistence there: but for the reward of their service, they were to expect it upon their return, by some such preference as might be worthy of them, and yet be little burthen to the queen's coffers or revenues.

10. At their going forth they had their general instructions in writing, which might be communicated to the ministers of that state, whither they were sent; and they had also private instructions, upon particular occasions; and at their return, they did always render an account of some things to the queen herself, of some things to the body of the council, and of some others to the secretaries of state; who made use of them, or communicated them, as there was cause.

11. In those days there was a constant course held, that by the advice of the secretaries, or some principal counsellors, there were always sent forth, into several parts beyond the seas, some young men, of whom good hopes were conceived of their towardness, to be trained up, and made fit for such publick employments, and to learn the languages. This was at the charge of the queen, which was not much; for they travelled but as private gentlemen: and as by their industry their deserts did appear, so were they farther employed or rewarded. This course I shall recommend unto you, to breed up a nursery of such publick plants.

V. For peace and war, and those things which appertain to either; I in my own disposition and profession am wholly for peace, if please God to bless this kingdom therewith, as for many years past he hath done: and,

1. I presume I shall not need to persuade you to the advancing of it; nor shall you need to persuade the king your master therein, for that he hath hitherto been another Solomon, in this our Israel, and the motto which he hath chosen (Beati Pacifici) shews his own judgment: but he must use the means to preserve it, else such a jewel may be lost,

2. God is the God of peace (it is one of his attributes;) therefore by him alone we must pray, and hope to continue it: there is the foundation.

3. And the king must not neglect the just ways for it; justice is the best protector of it at home, and providence for war is the best prevention of it from abroad.

4. Wars are either foreign or civil; for the foreign war by the king upon some neighbour nation, I hope we are secure; the king, in his pious and just disposition is not inclined thereunto, his empire is long enough; bounded with the ocean, as if the very situation thereof had taught the king and people to set up their refts, and say, Ne plus ultra.

5. And for a war of invasion from abroad; only we must not be over-secure: that's the way to invite it.

6. But if we be always prepared to receive an enemy, if the ambition or malice of any should incite him, we may be very confident we shall long live in peace and quietness, without any attempts upon us.

7. To make the preparations hereunto the more assured: in the first place, I will recommend unto you the care of our out-work, the navy royal and shipping of our kingdom, which are the walls thereof: and every great ship is as an impregnable fort; and our many safe and commodious
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

dious ports and havens, in every of these kingdoms, are as the redoubts to secure them.

8. For the body of the ships, no nation of the world doth equal England, for the oaken timber wherewith to build them; and we need not borrow of any other, iron for spikes, or nails to fasten them together; but there must be a great deal of providence used, that our ship-timber be not unnecessarily wafted.

9. But for tackling, as sails and cordage, we are beholden to our neighbours for them, and do buy them for our money; that must be foreseen and laid up in store against a time of need, and not sought for when we are to use them: but we are much to blame that we make them not at home, only pitch and tar we have not of our own.

10. For the true art of building of ships, for burthen and service both, no nation in the world exceeds us: shipwrights and all other artificers belonging to that trade must be cherished and encouraged.

11. Powder and ammunition of all sorts we can have at home, and in exchange for other home commodities we may be plentifully supplied from our neighbours, which must not be neglected.

12. With mariners and seamen this kingdom is plentifully supplied: the constant trade of merchandizing will furnish us at a need; and navigable rivers will repair the store, both to the navy royal and to the merchants, if they be let on work, and well paid for their labour.

13. Sea captains and commanders and other officers must be encouraged, and rise by degrees, as their fidelity and industry deserve it.

[Let brave spirits that have fitted themselves for command, either by sea or land, not be laid by, as persons unnecessary for the time; let arms and ammunition of all sorts be provided and stored up, as against a day of battle; let the ports and forts be fitted so, as if by the next wind we should hear of an alarm; such a known providence is the surest protection. But of all wars, let both prince and people pray against a war in our own bowels: the king by his wisdom, justice and moderation, must foresee and stop such a storm, and if it fall must allay it; and the people by their obedience must decline it. And for a foreign war intended by an invasion to enlarge the bounds of our empire, which are large enough, and are naturally bounded with the ocean, I have no opinion either of the justness or fitness of it; and it were a very hard matter to attempt it with hope of success, seeing the subjects of this kingdom believe it is not legal for them to be enforced to go beyond the seas, without their own consent upon hope of an unwarranted conquest; but to resist an invading enemy, or to suppress rebels, the subject may and must be commanded out of the counties where they inhabit. The whole kingdom is but one entire body, else it will necessarily be verified, which elsewhere was asserted, Dum singuli pugnamus, omnes vincimus.]

14. Our strict league of amity and alliance with our near neighbours the Hollanders, is a mutual strength to both; the shipping of both, in conjunction, being so powerful, by God's blessing, as no foreigners will venture upon; this league and friendship must inviolably be observed.

15. From Scotland we have had in former times some alarms, and invades into the northern parts of this kingdom; but that happy union of both kingdoms under one sovereign, our gracious king, I hope, hath taken away all occasions of breach between the two nations. Let not the cause arise from England, and I hope the Scots will not adventure it; or if they...
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

do, I hope they will find, that although to our king they were his first-born subjects, yet to England belongs the birthright: but this should not be any cause to offer any injury to them, nor to suffer any from them.

16. There remains then no danger, by the blessing of God, but a civil war, from which God of his mercy defend us, as that which is most desperate of all others. The king's wisdom and justice must prevent it, if it may be; or if it should happen, quod abit, he must quench that wild-fire, with all the diligence that possibly can be.

17. Competition to the crown, there is none, nor can be, therefore it must be a fire within the bowels, or nothing; the cures whereof are these, Remedium praecvens, which is the best physic, either to a natural body, or to a state, by just and equal government to take away the occasion; and Remedium puniens, if the other prevail not: the service and vigilance of the deputy lieutenants in every county, and of the high sheriff, will contribute much herein to our security.

18. But if that should not prevail, by a wise and timous inquisition, the peccant humours and humorists must be discovered, and purged, or cut off; mercy, in such a case, in a king, is true cruelty.

19. Yet if the heads of the tribes can be taken off, and the misled multitude will see their error, and return to their obedience, such an extent of mercy is both honourable and profitable.

20. A King, against a storm, must foresee, to have a convenient stock of treasure; and neither be without money, which is the sinews of war, nor to depend upon the courtesy of others, which may fail at a pinch.

21. He must also have a magazine of all sorts, which must be had from foreign parts, or provided at home, and to commit them to several places, under the custody of trusty and faithful ministers and officers, if it be possible.

22. He must make choice of expert and able commanders to conduct and manage the war, either against a foreign invasion, or a home rebellion; which must not be young and giddy, which dare, not only to fight, but to swear, and drink, and curse, neither fit to govern others, nor able to govern themselves.

23. Let not such be discouraged, if they deserve well, by mis-information, or for the satisfying the humors or ambition of others, perhaps, out of envy, perhaps, out of treachery, or other sinister ends: a steady hand, in governing of military affairs, is more requisite than in times of peace, because an error committed in war, may, perhaps, prove irreparable.

24. If God shall bless these endeavours, and the king return to his own house in peace, when a civil war shall be at an end, those who have been found faithful in the land must be regarded, yea, and rewarded also; the traitorous, or treacherous, who have misled others, severely punished; and the neutrals and false-hearted friends and followers, who have started aside like a broken bow, be noted, Carbone nigro; and so I shall leave them, and this part of the work.

VI. I come to the fifth part, which is trade; and that is either at home or abroad. And I begin with that which is at home, which enableth the subjects of the kingdom to live, and layeth a foundation to a foreign trade by traffick with others, which enableth them to live plentifully and happily.

1. For the home trade, I first commend unto your consideration the encouragement of tillage, which will enable the kingdom for corn for the natives
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

natives, and to spare for exportation: and I my self have known, more than once, when, in times of dearth, in queen Elizabeth's days, it drained much coin of the kingdom, to furnish us with corn from foreign parts.

2. Good husbands will find the means, by good husbandry, to improve their lands, by lime, chalk, marl, or sea-fand, where it can be had: but it will not be amiss, that they be put in mind thereof, and encouraged in their industries.

3. Planting of orchards, in a soil and air fit for them, is very profitable, as well as pleasurable; cyder and perry are notable beverage in sea voyages.

4. Gardens are also very profitable, if planted with artichokes, roots, and such other things as are fit for food; whence they be called kitchen gardens, and that very properly.

5. The planting of hop-yards, sowing of woad and rape-seed, are found very profitable for the planters, in places apt for them, and consequently profitable for the kingdom, which for divers years was furnished with them from beyond the seas.

6. The planting and preserving of woods, especially of timber, is not only profitable, but commendable, therewith to furnish posterity, both for building and shipping.

7. The kingdom would be much improved, by draining of drowned lands, and gaining that in from the overflowing of salt waters and the sea, and from fresh waters also.

8. And many of those grounds would be exceeding fit for dairies, which, being wellhoufewed, are exceeding commodious.

9. Much good land might be gained from forests and chases, more remote from the king's access, and from other commonable places, so as always there be a due care taken, that the poor commoners have no injury by such improvement.

10. The making of navigable rivers would be very profitable; they would be as so many in-draughts of wealth, by conveying of commodities with ease from place to place.

11. The planting of hemp and flax would be an unknown advantage to the kingdom, many places therein being as apt for it, as any foreign parts.

12. But add hereunto, that if it be converted into linen-cloth or cordage, the commodity thereof will be multiplied.

13. So it is of the wools and leather of the kingdom, if they be converted into manufactures.

14. Our English dames are much given to the wearing of costly laces; and, if they be brought from Italy, or France, or Flanders, they are in great esteem; whereas, if the like laces were made by the English, so much thred as would make a yard of lace, being put into that manufacture, would be five times, or perhaps, ten or twenty times the value.

15. The breeding of cattle is of much profit, especially the breed of horses, in many places, not only for travel, but for the great saddle; the English horse, for strength, and courage, and swiftness together, not being inferior to the horses of any other kingdom.

16. The minerals of the kingdom, of lead, iron, copper, and tin, especially, are of great value, and set many able-bodied subjects on work; it were great pity they should not be industriously followed.

Vol. III.  D d d 2  17. But
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

17. But of all minerals, there is none like to that of fishing, upon the coasts of these kingdoms, and the seas belonging to them: our neighbours, within half a day's sail of us, with a good wind, can shew us the use and value thereof; and, doubtless, there is sea-room enough for both nations, without offending one another; and it would exceedingly support the navy.

18. This realm is much enriched, of late years, by the trade of merchandize which the English drive in foreign parts; and, if it be wisely managed, it must of necessity very much increase the wealth thereof: care being taken, that the exportation exceed in value the importation; for then the balance of trade must of necessity be returned in coin or bullion.

19. This would easily be effected, if the merchants were persuaded, or compelled, to make their returns in solid commodities, and not too much thereof in vanity, tending to excess.

20. But especially care must be taken, that monopolies, which are the cankers of all trading, be not admitted, under specious colour of publick good.

21. To put all these into a regulation, if a constant commission, to men of honesty and understanding, were granted, and well pursued, to give order for the managing of these things, both at home and abroad, to the best advantage; and that this commission were subordinate to the council-board; it is conceived, it would produce notable effects.

VII. The next thing is that of colonies and foreign plantations, which are very necessary, as out-lets, to a populous nation, and may be profitable also if they be managed in a discreet way.

1. First, in the choice of the place, which requireth many circumstances; as, the situation, near the sea, for the commodiousness of an intercourse with England; the temper of the air and climate, as may agree with the bodies of the English, rather inclining to cold than heat; that it be stored with woods, mines, and fruits, which are naturally in the place; that the soil be such as will probably be fruitful for corn, and other conveniencies, and for breeding of cattle; that it hath rivers, both for passage between place and place, and for fishing also, if it may be; that the natives be not so many, but that there may be elbow-room enough for them, and for the adventurers also: all which are likely to be found in the West-Indies.

2. It would be also such as is not already planted by the subjects of any Christian prince or state, nor over-nearly neighbouring to their plantation. And it would be more convenient, to be chosen by some of those gentlemen or merchants which move first in the work, than to be designed unto them from the king; for it must proceed from the option of the people, else it sounds like an exile; so the colonies must be raised by the leave of the king, and not by his command.

3. After the place is made choice of, the first step must be, to make choice of a fit governor; who, although he have not the name, yet he must have the power of a viceroy; and if the person who principally moved in the work be not fit for that trust, yet he must not be excluded from command; but then his defect in the governing part must be supplied by such assistants as shall be joined with him, or as he shall very well approve of.

4. As at their setting out they must have their commission, or letters patents from the king, that so they may acknowledge their dependency upon the
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

the crown of England, and under his protection; so they must receive some general instructions, how to dispose of themselves, when they come there, which must be in nature of laws unto them.

5. But the general law, by which they must be guided and governed, must be the common law of England; and to that end, it will be fit, that some man, reasonably studied in the law, and otherwise qualified for such a purpose, be persuaded (if not thereunto inclined of himself, which were the best) to go thither as chancellor amongst them, at first; and when the plantation were more settled, then to have courts of justice there, as in England.

6. At the first planting, or as soon after as they can, they must make themselves defensible both against the natives, and against strangers; and to that purpose, they must have the assistance of some able military man, and convenient arms and ammunition for their defence.

7. For the discipline of the church in those parts, it will be necessary, that it agree with that which is settled in England, else it will make a schism and a rent in Christ's coat, which must be seamless; and, to that purpose, it will be fit, that by the king's supreme power in causes ecclesiastical, within all his dominions, they be subordinate under some bishop and bishoprick of this realm.

8. For the better defence against a common enemy, I think it would be best, that foreign plantations should be placed in one continent, and near together; whereas, if they be too remote, the one from the other, they will be disunited, and so the weaker.

9. They must provide themselves of houses, such as, for the present, they can, and, at more leisure, such as may be better; and they first must plant for corn and cattle, &c. for food and necessary sustenance; and after, they may enlarge themselves for those things which may be for profit and pleasure, and to traffic with also.

10. Woods for shipping, in the first place, may doubtless be there had, and minerals there found, perhaps, of the richest; howsoever, the mines out of the fruits of the earth, and seas and waters adjoining, may be found in abundance.

11. In a short time they may build vessels and ships also, for traffic with the parts near adjoining, and with England also, from whence they may be furnished with such things as they may want, and, in exchange or barter, send from thence other things, with which quickly, either by nature or art, they may abound.

12. But these things would, by all means, be prevented; that no known bankrupt, for shelter; nor known murderer or other wicked person, to avoid the law; nor known heretic or schismatick, be suffered to go into those countries; or, if they do creep in there, not to be harboured or continued: else, the place would receive them naught, and return them into England, upon all occasions, worse.

13. That no merchant, under colour of driving a trade thither, or from thence, be suffered to work upon their necessities.

14. And that to regulate all these inconveniences, which will insensibly grow upon them, that the king be pleased to erect a subordinate council in England, whose care and charge shall be, to advise, and put in execution, all things which shall be found fit for the good of those new plantations; who, upon all occasions, shall give an account of their proceedings to the king, or to the council-board, and from them receive such directions as may best agree with the government of that place.

15. That
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

15. THAT the king's reasonable profit be not neglected, partly, upon reservation of moderate rents and services; and, partly, upon importation and exportation of merchandize; which for a convenient time after the plantation begin, would be very easy, to encourage the work; but, after it is well settled, may be raised to a considerable proportion, worthy the acceptance.

[Yet these cautions are to be observed in these undertakings:

1. THAT no man be compelled to such an employment; for that were a punishment and not a service fit for a free man,

2. THAT if any transplant themselves into plantations abroad, who are known schismaticks, outlaws, or criminal persons, that they be sent for back upon the first notice; such persons are not fit to lay the foundation of a new colony.

3. To make no extirpation of the natives under pretence of planting religion: God surely will no way be pleased with such sacrifices.

4. THAT the people sent thither be governed according to the laws of this realm, whereof they are, and still must be subjects.

5. To establish there the same purity of religion, and the same discipline for church government, without any mixture of popery or anabaptism, lest they should be drawn into factions and schisms, and that place receive them there bad, and send them back worse.

6. To employ them in profitable trades and manufactures, such as the climate will beft fit, and such as may be useful to this kingdom, and return to them an exchange of things necessary.

7. THAT they be furnished and instructed for the military part, as they may defend themselves; left, on a sudden, they be exposed as a prey to some other nation, when they have fitted the colony for them.

8. To order a trade thither, and thence, in such a manner as some few merchants and trademen, under colour of furnishing the colony with necessities, may not grind them, so as shall always keep them in poverty.

9. To place over them such governors as may be qualified in such manner as may govern the place, and lay the foundation of a new kingdom.

10. THAT care be taken, that when the Industry of one man hath settled the work, a new man, by infinuation or misinformation, may not supplant him without a just cause, which is the discouragement of all faithful endeavours.

11. THAT the king will appoint commissioners in the nature of a council, who may superintend the works of this nature, and regulate what concerns the colonies, and give an account thereof to the king, or to his council of state.

Again, For matter of trade, I confess, it is out of my profession, yet in that I shall make a conjecture also, and propound some things to you, whereby (if I am not much mistaken) you may advance the good of your country and profit of your master.

1. LET the foundation of a profitable trade be thus laid, that the exportation of home commodities be more in value, than the importation of foreign; so we shall be sure that the stocks of the kingdom shall yearly increase, for then the balance of trade must be returned in money or bullion.

2. In the importation of foreign commodities, let not the merchant return toys and vanities (as sometimes it was elsewhere apes and peacocks) but solid merchandize, first for necessity, next for pleasure, but not for luxury.

3. LET
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

3. Let the vanity of the times be restrained, which the neighbourhood of other nations have induced; and we strive to exceed our pattern: let vanity in apparel, and, which is more vain, that of the fashion, be avoided. I have heard, that in Spain, (a grave nation, whom in this I wish we might imitate) they do allow the players and courtesans the vanity of rich and costly clothes; but to sober men and matrons they permit it not, upon pain of infamy; a severer punishment upon ingenuous natures than a pecuniary mullet.

4. The excess of diet in costly meats and drinks fetched from beyond the seas would be avoided: wise men will do it without a law, I would there might be a law to restrain fools. The excess of wine costs the kingdom much, and returns nothing but surfeits and diseases; were we as wise as easily we might be, within a year or two at the most, if we would needs be drunk with wines, we might be drunk with half the cost.

5. If we must be vain and superfluous in laces and embroideries, which are more costly than either warm or comely, let the curiosity be the manufacture of the natives; then it should not be verified of us, materiam juperabat opus.

6. But instead of crying up all things, which are either brought from beyond sea, or wrought here by the hands of strangers, let us advance the native commodities of our own kingdom, and employ our countrymen before strangers; let us turn the wools of the land into cloths and stuffs of our own growth, and the hemp and flax growing here into linen cloth and cordage; it would set many thousand hands on work, and thereby one million worth of the materials, would by industry be multiplied to five, ten, and many times to twenty times more in the value being wrought.

7. And of all sorts of thrift for the publick good, I would above all others commend to your care the encouragement to be given to husbandry and the improving of lands for tillage; there is no such usury as this. The king cannot enlarge the bounds of these islands, which make up his empire, the ocean being the unremoveable wall which encloseth them; but he may enlarge and multiply the revenue thereof by this honest and harmless way of good husbandry.

8. A very great help unto trade are navigable rivers: they are so many indrafts to attain wealth, where by art and industry let them be made; but let them not be turned to private profit.

9. In the last place, I beseech you, take into your serious consideration, that Indian wealth, which this island and the seas thereof excel in, the hidden and rich treasure of fishing: Do we want an example to follow? I may truly say to the English, Go to the pismire, thou sluggard. I need not expound the text; half a day's sail with a good wind, will shew the mineral and the miners.

10. To regulate all these it will be worthy the care of a subordinate council, to whom the ordering of these things may be committed, and they give an account thereof to the state.

VIII. I come to the last of those things which I propounded, which is, the court and curiality.

The other did properly concern the king, in his royal capacity, as Pater patriae; this more properly, as Pater-familias: and herein,

1. I shall, in a word, and but in a word only, put you in mind, that the king in his own person, both in respect of his household or court, and in respect of his whole kingdom, (for a little kingdom is but as a great household,
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

hold, and a great houhold as a little kingdom) must be exemplary, Regis ad exemplum, &c. But for this, God be praised, our charge is easy; for our gracious master, for his learning and piety, justice and bounty, may be, and is, not only a precedent to his own subjects, but to foreign princes also; yet he is still but a man, and reasonable Memento's may be useful; and, being discreetly used, cannot but take well with him.

2. But your greatest care must be, that the great men of his court (for you must give me leave to be plain with you, for so is your injunction laid upon me,) your self in the first place, who are first in the eye of all men, give no just cause of scandal, either by light or vain or by oppressive carriage.

3. The great officers of the king's houhold had need be both discreet and provident persons, both for his honour and for his thrift; they must look both ways, else they are but half-sighted: yet in the choice of them, there is more latitude left to affection, than in the choice of counsellors, and of the great officers of state, before touched, which must always be made choice of merely out of judgment; for in them the publick hath a great interest.

[And yet in these, the choice had need be of honest and faithful servants, as well as of comely outsides, who can bow the knee, and kiss the hand, and perform other services, of small importance compared to this of publick employment. King David, Ps. ci. 6,7, propounded a rule to himself for the choice of his courtiers. He was a wise and a good king; and a wise and a good king shall do well to follow such a good example; and if he find any to be faulty, which perhaps can't suddenly be discovered, let him take on him this resolution as king David did, 'There shall no deceitful person dwell in my house.' But for such as shall bear office in the king's house, and manage the expenses thereof, it is much more requisite to make a good choice of such servants, both for his thrift and for his honour.]

4. For the other ministerial officers in court, (as for distinction sake, they may be termed) there must be also an eye unto them and upon them. They have usually risen in the houhold by degrees, and it is a noble way, to encourage faithful service: but the king must not bind himself to a necessity herein, for then it will be held ex debito: neither must he alter it, without an apparent cause for it: but to displace any who are in, upon displeasure, which for the most part happeneth upon the information of some great man, is, by all means, to be avoided, unless there be a manifest cause for it.

5. In these things you may sometimes interpose, to do just and good offices; but for the general, I should rather advise: meddle little, but leave the ordering of those houhold affairs to the white-flaffs, which are those honourable persons, to whom it properly belongeth to be answerable to the king for it, and to those other officers of the green-cloth, who are subordinate to them, as a kind of council, and a court of justice also.

6. Yet for the green-cloth law, (take it in the largest sense) I have no opinion of it, farther than it is regulated by the just rules of the common laws of England.

7. Towards the support of his majesty's own table, and of the princes, and of his necessary officers, his majesty hath a good help by purveyance, which justly is due unto him; and, if justly used, is no great burthen to the subject; but by the purveyors, and other under officers, is many times abused. In many parts of the kingdom, I think, it is already reduced to a certainty
certainty in money; and if it be indifferently and discreetly managed, it
would be no hard matter to settle it so throughout the whole kingdom;
yet to be renewed from time to time, for that will be the best and safest,
both for the king and people.

8. The king must be put in mind, to preserve the revenues of his crown,
both certain and casual, without diminution, and to lay up treasure in store
against a time of extremity; empty coffer give an ill found, and make the
people many times forget their duty, thinking that the king must be beholding
to them for his supplies.

9. I shall by no means think it fit, that he reward any of his servants
with the benefit of forfeitures, either by fines in the court of star-chamber;
or high commission courts, or other courts of justice, or that they should
be farmed out, or bestowed upon any, so much as by promise, before judgment
given; it would neither be profitable nor honourable.

10. Besides matters of serious consideration, in the courts of princes,
there must be times for pastimes and diversions: when there is a queen, and
ladies of honour attending her, there must sometimes be masques, and
revels, and interludes; and when there is no queen, or princess, as now; yet
at festivals, and for entertainment of strangers, or upon such occasions, they
may be fit also: yet care would be taken, that, in such cases, they be set
off more with wit and activity, than with costly and wasteful expenses.

11. But for the king and prince, and the lords and chivalry of the
court, I rather commend, in their turns and seasons, the riding of the great
horse, the tilts, the barriers, tennis, and hunting, which are more for the
health and strength of those who exercise them, than in an effeminate way
to please themselves and others.

And now the prince groweth up fast to be a man, and is of a sweet and
excellent disposition; it would be an irreparable stain and dishonour upon
you, having that access unto him, if you should mislead him, or suffer him
to be misled by any loose or flattering parasites; the whole kingdom hath
a deep interest in his virtuous education; and if you, keeping that distance
which is fit, do humbly interpose your self, in such a case, he will one
day give you thanks for it.

12. Yet dice and cards may sometimes be used for recreation, when field-
sports cannot be had; but not to use it as a mean to spend the time, much
less to mispend the thrift of the gamesters.

Sir, I shall trouble you no longer; I have run over these things as I
first propounded them; please you to make use of them, or any of them,
as you shall see occasion; or to lay them by, as you shall think best, and
to add to them; as you daily may, out of your experience.

I must be bold, again, to put you in mind of your present condition;
you are in the quality of a sentinel; if you sleep, or neglect your charge,
you are an undone man, and you may fall much faster than you have risen.

I have but one thing more to mind you of, which nearly concerns your
self; you serve a great and gracious master, and there is a most hopeful
young prince, whom you must not defert; it behoves you to carry your
self wisely and evenly between them both: adore not so the rising son, that
you forget the father, who raised you to this height; nor be you so obse-
quious to the father, that you give him such cause to suspect that you
neglect him: but carry your self with that judgment, as, if it be possible,
ADVICE TO SIR GEORGE VILLIERS.

may please and content them both, which, truly, I believe, will be no hard matter for you to do; so may you live long beloved of both.

[If you find in these or any other your observations (which doubtless are much better than these loose collections) any thing which you would have either the father or the son to take to heart, an admonition from a dead author, or a caveat from an impartial pen, whose aim neither was nor can be taken to be at any particular by design, will prevail more and take better impression than a downright advice; which perhaps may be mistaken as if it were spoken magisterially.

Thus may you long live an happy instrument for your king and country: you shall not be a meteor or a blazing star, but stella fixa: happy here and more happy hereafter. Deus manu jua te ducat:] which is the hearty prayer of

Your most obliged and devoted Servant.
INDEX.

A.

Becedarium naturae, pag. 173

Abilities natural, like plants, want pruning, 371

Academics acknowledged by all sects to be the belt, 385


Accretion and Alimentation how they differ, 120

Acres in mens bodies foreshow rain and frost, 169

Acquefls, new ones, more burden than strength, 441

Aching in fong graceful, 355

Alive men wherein prefer'd to virtuous, 370

Ablution, battle of, decided the empire of the world, 346

Adrian VI. 275, 276

Adrian the emperor, 284. Mortally envied in others the qualities he excell'd in, 311

Adversity, 306. Remembles miracles in its command over nature, ibid. Fortitude its proper virtue, ibid.

Advice how to be given and taken, 370

Advice to sir G. Villiers, 564. V. Villiers. Advocates, 377. Surprising that their confidence should prevail with judges, 378. What is due to and from them, ibid.

AEgypt hath little rain, 156. AEgyptian converting bodies, 157. Their mummies, ibid.

AEneas Sylvius his remark on the conduct of the popes and lawyers, 278. Says, that had not christianity been supported by miracles, it ought to be received for its honesty, 279

AEquinoctial more tolerable for heat than the torrid zones, 84. Three causes thereof, ibid.

AEfop, his fable of the frogs in a great drought, 386. Of the cat and the fox, 388. Of the fainting man and death, 389

AEthiopes, fleshly and plump, why, 84

AEtites, or eagle-stone, 39

AEtna and Vefuvius, why they shoot forth no water, 160

Affection of tyranny over mens understandings and beliefs, 209

Affections of beasts impressed upon inanimate things, 204. Three Affections which tye subjets to sovereigns, 505. No heat of Affection without idlenes, 513

Africa, why so fruitful of monsters, 97. The people there never fir out after the firit showers, 166. See p. 185.

Agarick works most on phlegm, 11. A spongy excrefence on the roots of trees, 111, 121, 125. A putrefaction, 136

Agathocles, 268

Age, V. Youth.

Age, its excellency in four things, 276. Its inconveniences and difficulties with regard to action, 361

Agehauz, 268

Agrippa raised by Augustus, 338, 339

Agues cured by applications to the wrift, 26. Proceed mostly from obstruction of the humours, 71

Air turned into water, 6, 7. By four several ways, ibid. Inflances tending thereto, 20, 21. Converted into a dense body, a rarity in nature, 6. Increases in weight, and yields nourishment, 8. Hath an antipathy with tangible bodies, 21. Converted into water by repercussion from hard bodies, 21, 22. Air turned into water, by the fame means that ice, 22. Meddles
INDEX.

little with the moisture of oil, 24. Efficion of the Air a term of ignorance, 34. Air condened into weight, 8, 150, 151. Air pent the cause of founds, 32, 33, 34. Eruptions thereof cause founds, 34. Air not always necessary to founds, 32. Thicknes of the Air in night, contributes to the increaing and our better hearing of founds than in the day, 38. As well as the general silence, ibid. Air excluded in some bodies, prohibiteth putrefaction, 72. In some cauleth it, 76. The caues of each, ibid. Air compressed and blown prohibiteth putrefaction, 73. Congealing of Air, 77. Airs wholesome how found out, 158, 159. The putrefaction of Air to be discerned aforeshed, 166, &C. Airs good to recover consumptions, 195. Air healthful within doors how procured, ibid.

Air and fire forebey winds, 168


Air poisoned by art, 191, 193. Why the middle region of it coldeff, 389

Albert Durer, 362

Alicermes, 203

Alchymifts, 69

Alchermes, 69

Alga, his advice to Pericles about giving in his accounts, 288. Beaufiful, 362

Alexander, why his body sweet, 2


Alexander VI. sends the bishop of Concordia to mediate between the kings of England and France, 439. Thanks H. VII. for entering into a league in defence of Italy, 477

Alga marina applied to roots of plants, furthers their growth, 93

Alienation-Office, history of it, 549. The reafon of its name, with its ufe, 550. The parts of each officer therein, 554, 555. How its profits might increafe without damage to the subjefts, 592, 593

Aimes changed good, 19

Alyes close gravel'd, what they bring forth, 113

All night, what it is in the court, 80

Almonds, how ufed in clarifying the Nile water, 156

Almond butter for nourishing fick bodies better than callices, 13

Alono Petrucci, his plot againft the king of Naples, has the order of the garter from H. VII, 448

Alterations of Bodies, 173

Alterations in medicine, 19

Altering the colours of hairs and feathers, 24, 25. V. p. 183

Amalgamation, 218. Mixing mercury with other metals in a hot crucible, 220

Amber found from a soft substance, 22.

A more durable monument for flies and spiders than the greatest kings have, 28

Amber heated by fire not attractive, 227

Amber-smells &c. reckon'd provocatives, 195

Ambition, 298, 354. To take a soldier without it, is to pull off his spurs, 355. The mischiefs of it, ib. The ufe of Ambitious men, 355

America, a supposed prophecy of its discovery, 353

Anmura, what, 132

Anacriffs, 291

Anarchy in the spirits and humours, when, 77

Anaxagoras condemn'd to die by the Athenians, 289

Andes, mountains of, 380

Andrews, bishop, his account of Spalato, 279

Angelo, Michael, 275

Anger, 144. The impressions and various effects thereof, ibid. Caufeth the eyes to look red, 182. The caufe, ibid. Angry men refer'd think worse than they speak, 292. Angry men clamorous speak worse than they think, ibid. Anger not to be extinguiished only confind, 379. Compar'd by Seneca to rain, which breaks itfelf on what it falls, ibid. Is great weakness, from the subjefts in whom it most reigns, ibid. Remedies of it, 379, 380

Animals and plants that put forth prickles generally dry, 204

Animate and inanimate wherein they differ, 129

Ann of Bullen, 261


Annihilation, not possible in nature, 28

Annual herbs may be prolong'd by feaonomous cutting, 116

Anointing
INDEX.

Anointing of birds and beasts, whether it alters their colour, 25. Anointing the body a preventive of health, 150. Anointing of the weapon said to heal, 207
Antialcidas the Spartan, 287. Rebukes an Athenian, ibid.
Anisopus, 289
Antiochus thought to derive its wholesome air from the groves of bays, 196
Antiphene, 286
Antinous, his genius weak before Augustus, 196. The advice given him thereby upon the footsayer, ibid. Embassadors of Afia Minor expostulate with him for imposing a double tax, 290. His character, 313. Calls Brutus witch, 338
Apis, a merry bold beast, 204. How the writers in natural Magick extol him, ibid.
Apelles, 362
Apolonius of Tyana, 189. Says, the ebbing and flowing of the sea was the respiration of the world, 189. Tells Velspafian, that Nero let down the strings of government too low, or wound them up too high, 282, 297. Tires Velspafian at Alexandria with his infipid speculations, 288. His affection of retirement, 337
Anophebegus, 260. Their use; ibid.
Apothecaries, how they clarify their syrups, 2. Their pots, how resembling Socrates, 285
Apple inclosed in wax for speedy ripening, 68. Hanged in smoke, ibid. Covered in lime and ashes, ibid. Covered with Crabs and Onions, ibid. Apple in hay and straw, ibid. In a clofe box, ibid. 72. Apple rowled, 68. Apple in part cut befitned with fack, ibid. Rotten Apples contiguous to found ones putrefy them, 71
Apple-cions grafted on the flock of a colewort, 94
Apple-trees, fome of them bring forth a fweet mof, 110
Aquafortis dissolving iron, 161
Arcb-bishop of Vienna his revelation to Lewis XI, 205
Arcebidamus retorts upon Philip that his shadow was no longer than before his victory, 285
Arifander the footsayer, 353
Arifippus, his abject behaviour to Dionyfus, 282. His luxury, 284. Infulted by the mariners for fiewing signs of fear in a tempeft, 287. His cenfure of thofe who are attached to particular sciences, 290
Ariftotle mistakes the reafon why the feathers of birds have more lively colours than the hairs of beasts, 2. His precept that wine be born in confumptions, 15
Ariftotle, his reafon why some plants are of greater age than animals, 15. His method of hardening bodies with clofe pores, 23. Ariftotle's phyficks, 201. Full of vain glory, 375
Arms, the profefion of them neceffary to the grandeur of any state, 344, 345
Arrows with wooden heads sharpened, pierce wood fooner than with iron heads, 142
Arfennick faid to be a prefervative againft the plague, 203
Art of memory, 201
Art of war, its progress, improvement and change, 382
Arithboaks made lefs prickly and more dainty, 94, 95. Artiebook only hath double leaves, one for the stalk, another for the fruit, 133
Athes in a vesfel will not admit equal quantity of water, as in the vesfel empty, 10. Athes an excellent compott, 118. V. p. 168
Afp caufeth eafy death, 127. Afp by which Cleopatra was poifon'd of affinity with opium, ibid.
Asias, 357
Affimilation in bodies inanimate, 24. In vegetables, ibid. 76, 172
Affi1ition prohibith putrefaction, 72. Of the nature of cold, ibid.
Affringents, a catalogue of them, 230, 231
Ateftimony, 323. Rather in the lip than the heart, 324. The caufes of it, ibid.
Atheis and Epicure, 305. Atheis contemptive rare, 324
Athens, their manner of executing capital offenders, 127. There wife men propofe, and fools difpofe, 291. Their wars, 345
Atlantis now, 235, &c. Described, 243, 244.
Swellow'd
INDEX.

Swallowed up by an earthquake, as the AEgyptian priest told Solon, 380
Atoms, how supported by Democritus, 26, 27
Aton in Scotland, its cattle taken by the E. of Surrey, 475
Attainders of the adherents of H. VII. how reverfed, 403, 404. Attainders of his enemies, 404
Attention without too much labour fillith the spirits, 151
Attraction by similitude of substance, 142, 185. Catalogue of Attractive bodies, 226
Audacity and induftry, the great effects owing to them, 100
Audibles mingle in the medium, which visibles do not, 51. The caufe thereof, ibid. Several conflents of Audibles and visibles, 56, 57. Several differences of them, 57, 58. Audibles and visibles do not deftruy or hinder one another, 57. Audibles carried in arcuate lines, visibles in ftraight ones, 57. V. p. 196.
Audley, lord, heads the Cornith rebels, 471. His character, ibid. Taken, 473. Headed on Tower-hill, 474
Avemnes, 193
Augens flable, 189
Augustus Caesar, 157, 268. Should never have died or never have been born, 267. His confolation to Livia, 279. His wonder at Alexander, 283. Indignation againft his pofterity calling them impoftumus, and not deftruy or hinder one another, 57. Audibles carried in arcuate lines, visibles in ftraight ones, 57. V. p. 196.
Aulis, lord, heads the Cornith rebels, 471. His character, ibid. Taken, 473. Headed on Tower-hill, 474
B.

Babylon, its walls cemented by naphtha, 221
Bacon, Mr. Anthony, 273. Our author's dedication to him, 299
Bacon, sir Nicolas, 265, 273, 275
Bacon, Sir Francis, when made attorney-general, 273. His conversation with Gondomar when advanc'd to the great seal, 273
Bagge growing in the fields, 115
Baggage, the properties of it, 351
Bagazet better read in the alcoran, than government, 437
Banquet of the seven wife men, 285
Barbardico duke of Venice joins in the Italian league, 462
Barbary, the plague cured there by heat and drought, 81. Hotter than under the line, 84
Bargains of a doubtful nature, 352
Barley, William, fent to lady Margaret, &c. 452. Made his peace at leaf, 459
Barrel empty knocked, faid to give a dia­palon to the fame barrel full, 44
Barrenness of trees, the caufe and cure, 96, 97
Barton, Elizabeth, the holy maid of Kent, her treafon, 458
Bafli turned into wild thyme, 106
Bafli/kt faid to kill by afpeet, 194. V. p. 203
Batting, 142
Batting the body, 150. Would not be healthful for us if it were in ufe, ibid. For the Turks good, ibid.
Battle of Granicum, 283. Of Arabela, 343.
Beads of several forts commended, 202
Beaks of birds caft, 152
Bearing in the womb, in fome creatures longer, in fome shorter, 153, 154
Bears, their sleeping, 15, 188. Breed during their sleeping, 188. Bear big with young feldom feen, ibid.
Beafts, their hairs have lefs lively colours than birds feathers, 2, 24. Beafts do not imitate man's feech as birds do, 53. The caufe, ibid. Beafts communicat­ting in fpecies with, or reembling one another, 133. The comparative greatnefs of beafts and birds with regard to fhibes, 178. Greater than birds, the caufe, ibid.
Beafts, that yield the taste or virtue of the herb they feed on, 101. Their bearing in the womb, 154
Beautiful persons, 302
Beauty, how improv'd, 7
Beauty and deformity, 362. Its relation to virtue, ib. When good things appear in full beauty, 388
Bedford, duke of, 402. See Jasper.
Bees humming, an unequal sound, 42. Known to have lived seven years, 139. Whether they fleap all winter, 151
Beja-
INDEX.

Blood, 127
Blood draweth fain, 205
Blood of the cuttle-fish, why black, 150.
One who hath had his hands in Blood, fit only for a desperate undertaking, 357.
Blood-foam, said to prevent bleeding at the nofe, 203
Bloffoms pluck'd off makes the fruit fairer, 93
Blows and bruises induce swelling, 180, 181. The caufe, ibid.
Blushing seen in the passage to the face, 145
Blushing caufeth redness in the ears, not in the eyes, as anger doth, 182. The caufe of each, ibid.
Boaring an hole through a tree helpheth its fruitfulness, 91
Body brittle ftrucken, 3. Bodies natural, most of them have an appetite of admitting other into them, 61, 62, 163, 164. Except flame, ibid. Diffolution of them by deficcation and putrefaction, 70
Bodies imperfectly mixt, 171
Bodies in nature that give no founds, and that give founds; 35, 32, 34
Bodies folid are all cleaving more or lefs, 62. All Bodies have pneumatical and tangible parts, 174
Bodies to which wine is hurtful, and to which good, 147
Bodies conferred a long time, 156, 157.
The feveral properties of Bodies, 173
Bobomia, 514, &c.
Boiling, no water in that fate fo clear as when cold, 134. Bottom of a veife1 of Boiling water not much heath, 135
Boiling caufeth grains to swell in different proportion, 179
Bolnefs, 315. The child of ignorance and bafenefs, 315. Operates better with private perfons than publick bodies; 316. Much of ridiculoufnefs and blindnefs in its composition, ibid.
Bolnefs and industry, the power of them in civil buinfenes, 190, 196, 197. In civil buinfenes like pronunciation in the orator, 296. Ill in council, good in execution, ibid.
Boletus, an exceflence on the roots of oaks, 125
Bolefin invented by H. VII. 447
Bolus Armenus, coldeft of medicinal earths, 141
One in the heart of a flag, 152
Bottles under water preferve fruit a long time, 124
Bourbier archbishop of Canterbury enter-

Beaviour of some men like verfe, in which every syllable is meafur'd, 373. Should be like the apparel, not too frant, 374
Befts, why they found fo long after the percufion, 3, 34. Ringing of them faid to have chafed away thunder and diftrufted pelletif air, 35. V. p. 59. Befts, what helps the clearnefs of their found, 213
Benevolence, when that tax first devised, 442, 495
Bernard, St. 324
Bettenham, Mr. reader of Grays-inn, 278, 279
Bevers, lord, admiral of the arch-duke, 469
Bias, his precept about love and hate, 269
Bill and beaks sometimes caft, 152
Bion, his reproof to an envious man, 270. eftem'd an atheift, 281. Reprimands the diffolute mariners in a tempeft, 287
Birds, their feathers have more orient colour than the hairs of beasts, 2, 24, 25.
Because they pass through finer ftrainers, ibid.
Birds have another manner in their quickening than men or beasts, 25. Birds only imitate human voice, 53. The caufe, ibid. Birds communicating in species with one another, 132. Swifter in motion than beasts, 134. The caufe, ibid. In their kinds less than beasts or fishes, 171. The caufe, ibid. Birds have no instruments of urine, 134. The swiftnefs of their motion, ibid. Have no teeth, 151. Among fingeing Birds the beft, 177. Birds carnivorous not eaten, 180
Birth of living-creatures, 74. How many ways it may be accelerated, 74, 75
Bifhop taken armed in battle, 276
Bitumen, 158. A mixture of fiery and watry fubftance, 160. Mingled with lime and put under water, will make an artificial rock, ibid.
Black the beft colour in plums, 104
Black-beat, battle between H. VII. and the Cornifh rebels, 472
Blacks, or tawny-moors, their colouration, 84
Bladders dry will not blow, &c. 73. To be held by the middle according to the Indian emblem, 472
Blafphemly ought to be chaftis'd by the temporal fword, 305. Of the devil, ib.
Blear-eyes infectous, 194, 202
Bleeding of the body at the approach of the murderer, 201
Blifter on the tongue, 374
Blows, an experiment about improving milk there, 82
Blood, five means of flanching it, 18, 19. Why it separath when cold, 71. Hath falsnefs, 127
INDEX.

Bramston, H. VII. 402
Bourchier, Sir John, one of the hostages left at Paris by H. VII. 405
Bozkis low enlarge the fruit, 91
Bow, Turkish, 142
Bowling good for the stone and reins, 372
Bracelets worn, which comfort the spirits, 202, 203. Their three several operations, ibid. Other Bracelets for the same purpose, ibid.
Brackenbury lieutenant of the tower refuses to murder Edw. V. and his brother, 453
Brain, over-moisture of it obstructs the sight, 137. As blindness often comes from rheums, ibid. Brains of beasts that are fearful said to strengthen the memory, 204. Brain increased in the full moon, 187
Brass much heavier than iron, 211
Brass fanative of wounds, 161
Brass-plates affluage swelling, 180
Brass ordnance, the advantage of them, 211. Brass-plates left replethand than steel, ibid.
Brewery stands upon comparisons, 375
Brey, Sir Reginald, clamour’d against, 470. Noted to have the greatest freedom with K. H. VII. 491. His death, ibid.
Breath held helpeth hearing, 60. Because it hinders expiration, ibid.
Breviary letter to Francis I. 277
Brewing neglected in many countries, 142
Briar-bush, with the plants that have prickles, 112. Pricks and scratches only, 306
Brimstone useful in melting of steel, 210
Bringing forth many at a birth, and but one, 154. The reasons assign’d, ibid.
Britainy, the fleps taken to re-annex it to the crown of France, 417, 418
Brittle bodies, why they shiver at a distance from the preffure, 3
Brook, Robert, lord, sent at the head of 8000 men in aid of Britainy, 426
Broughton, Sir Thomas, a powerful man in Lancashire, 406, 411. Slain in the battle near Newark, fighting against H. VII. 414
Brown, Dr, a character of him, 278
Bruges, 433, 443
Brutus, his power with Caesar, 238
Bubbles rise swift in water from the preffure or percutition of the water, 5. Bubbles and white circles of froth on the sea, 168. Meet on the top of water, 477
Bucket, its increase of found in the bottom of a well, 39
Buckingham, duke of, 300
Building, 363. Variety of circumstances to be consider’d in the situation of it, ibid. Of the Vatican and Escurial without a good room, 264
Ballet, its motion, 74
Burleigh, lord, his observation on licences, 264
Burning-glaflves, their operations, 34
Burning some vegetables upon the ground enricheth it, 119
Burnt wine, why more arftringent, 187
Burrey leaf infufed, reprefles melancholy, and removes madness, 4
Burying hard and soft bodies in earth, 80, 81. Again, 253
Busbecius his account of a Chriftian gagging a fowl in Conftantinople, 316
Buses compared to the roads, 279. How left forwarded, 326. Again, 368
By-laws refrain’d, being fraternities in evil, 494

C

Abinet counfel, their introduction, 339
Cadiz taken by Rob. earl of Effex, 547
Caesar Borgia, his perfidy, 280
His Anticato, 290. V. p. 322. To the pilot, 350
Cairo afflicted with plagues on the rife of the river Nile, 151
Caius Marius, 286
Cake growing on the side of a dead tree, 111
Calaminar flone, 211
Calaminas, when the corn could not rife in the fraw, 131
Calcination, 218. How perform’d, 220
Calliphoren and his hatred of Alexander, 268
Calmurnia her dream, 338
Candles of feveral mixtures, 79. Of feveral wicks, ibid. Laid in bran for frafting, ibid. Candles of falamanders wool, 158
Candle-light, colours appearing beft by it, 356
Canibal, or eaters of man’s flefh, faid to be the original of the French difeafe, 6. Three reasons why man’s flefh is not to be eaten, 180. V. 547.
Cantharides wherever apply’d affect the bladder, 25, 205. The flies Cantbarides, 147. Of what substance they are bred,
INDEX.

Indebtedness, and their qualities, 147, 148.
Operate upon urine and hydropical water, 205
Cape, Sir W. alderman of London, an instance of the king's extortion, 460
Capital to confpire the death of a lord, or any of the king's council, 427
Capon drink for a consumption, 13
Caracalla, 327
Cardinals of Rome their affected wildness, 374
Carrying of foreign roots with safety, 123
Carvajal, 277
Caffia, an odd account of it from one of the ancients, 123
Caffius in the defeat of Crassus by the Parthians, 289
Cassitas, a superplant of Syria, 130
Castello, Adrian de, pope's legate, 430
Caste, Philip king of, driven on the English shore, 497, 498
Casting of the skin or shell, 148. The creatures that cast either, ibid.
Casting down of the eyes proceedeth of reverence, 145
Cataracts of the eye; 58. O' Nile, said to strike men deaf, ibid. What good for those of the eyes, 126
Caterpillars, their produce and growth, 147. Several kinds of them, ibid.
Cato Major compares the Romans to sheep, 281. His reason to his son for bringing in a stepmother, 283. Says, wise men profit more by fools, than fools by wise men, 289. V. p. 290. His character, 359
Catullus his farcean upon Clodius, 281
Cecile duchess of York, mother of Edw. IV. her death, 462
Celfus his great precept of health, 347
Cements that grow hard, 176, 177. Cement as hard as stone, 160
Ceremonies and reliefs, 373. Their flight ofe and great abuse, ibid. Often raise envy and obstrue buffnsls, 374
Charon, battle of, won by Philip of Macedon, 285
Chalicites, or vitriol, 139
Chalk, a good composit, 118. Good for pasture as well as for arable, ibid.
Chambell'd paper, 150
Chameleons, their description, 76, 77. Their rais'd a tempest if burnt, a fond tradition, 77
Chandos of Britain made earl of Bath, 405
Change in medicines and aliments, good, 18. The caufe why, ibid. V. p. 347
Charcoal vapour, in a close room mortal, 193, 194

Vol. III.

Charges warily to be enter'd upon,' 342
Charities why not to be deferr'd till death, 352
Charlemagne, 382, 433
Charles duke of Burgundy slain at the battle of Granjon, 205
Charles king of Sweden a great enemy to the jefuits, 274. Hanging the old ones and sending the young to the mines, ibid.
Charles V. emperor, passes unarmed thro' France, 277. Has the fate of great conquerors to grow superflitious and melancholy, 327. Married the second daughter of H. VII. 501. See p. 518.
Charles prince of Wales, our author's dedication to him, 397. Another, 513. A Charles who brought the empire first into France and Spain, ibid.
Charles VIII. of France marries Ann inheriteef of Britain, 401. Fortunate in his two predeceffors, 416. His character and conduct in re-annexing Britain, 417, &c. Treats with great art and diffimilation, 419, 420, 422, 435. Resolved upon the war of Naples and an holy war, how, 437, 438. Marries the heir of Britain, tho' both parties were contracted to others, 435, 440. Restores Ruffignon and Perpignan to Ferdinand, 447. Befides prent money grants an annual pension or tribute to H. VII. for a peace, ibid. Dispatches Lucas and Fron in embaffy to Perkin, 451. To invite him into France, ibid. Conquers and lofes Naples, 461. His ill conduct recapitulated, 462
Charles IX. advice given him by Jasper Coigni, 518. To discharge the ill humours of his state in a foreign war, 518
Charms, 199, 200
Cheap fuel, 158
Cecarfulness a prefervative of health, 347
Childless men authors of the noblest works and foundations, 308, 309
Children, a foollih pride in having none, from covetoufnefs and a fondnefs to be thought rich, 309
Chiton, 279. His faying of men and gold, 287

ff

Chinefs
INDEX.

Chinesees commended for attempting to make silver rather than gold, 69. Paint their cheeks scarlet, 150. Eat horse- flesh, 179. Had ordnance 2000 years ago, 382

Choleric creatures not edible, 179, 180

Christian priest, a description of a good one, 240

Christianity how commended by AEnesius

The Church of England the eye of England, 327


Cines, how he check’d Pyrrhus his ambition, 269

Cius over ruleth the flock, 89, 94, 97. Must be superior to it, 95. Re-grafting often the fame Cions may inlarge the fruit, 94. Grafted the small end downwards, 178

Cinnamom dry, 123. The properties of that tree, ibid.

Circuits of judges how render’d more serviceable to crown and country, 570

Citron grafted on a quince, 106

Civil war like the heat of a fever, 346

Clammy bodies, 62

Clarence, duke of, his death contriv’d by his brother Rich. 398


Clarification, 156. Of the Nile water, ibid.

Claudius, a Conspicuary against him, 289

Clay Grounds produce mois in trees, 110

Clean’s dream, 354

Cleopatra, her death, 127. Contrivance, 196

Clergy pared by H. VII. 428

Clerk and inferior ministers of justice, 378

Clifford, sir Thomas, embarks for Flanders in favour of Perkin, 452. Deferts him, 454. Returns and impeaches sir W. Stanley lord chamberlain, 457. Who had fav’d the king’s life, and fet the crown upon his head, ib. Clifford thought to have been a lpy from the beginning, 458

Climes, 385

Clocks, 257

Clodius acquitted by a corrupted jury, 281

Clyes attractive of water, 21

Coasting of plants, 96

Cocks may be made capons, but capons never Cocks, applied to the Epicureans, 287

Coffee, a berry making drink in Turkey, 149

Cake, sir Edward, 272, 274

Coalfeater offers how improv’d, 141, 142


Cold, the production of it a noble work, 19. Seven means to produce it, 19, 20. The earth primum Frigidum, 19. Transfitive into bodies adjacent as well as heat, ibid. All tangible bodies of themselves Cold, 20. Denity caufe of Cold, ibid. Quick spirite in a cold body increaft Cold, 20. Chafing away the warm spirite increaft Cold, ibid. Exhaling the warm spirite doth the fame, ibid. Cold caueth induration, 23. And quickens liquors, 67. Hinders putrefaction, 72. Irritateth flame, 80. Cold sweats often mortal, 143. How to help a mortification arising from Cold, 161

Coloquintida further’d in their growth by sea-weed, 93. By being watered with salt water, 94. Apple grafted on them in the Low Countries, 94. Hurt neighboring plants, 98. Apples grafted on them produce fruit without core, 178

Colic cured by application of wolves guts, 204

Coligni, sir W., admiral of France, his advice, 518

Colligation, whence it proceedeth, 70, 173

Colesquintida being flam’d purges by vapour, 194

Colouration of flowers, 104. Different Colours of flowers from the same seed proceed from the earth’s nourishment, 105. Colours of herbs, ibid. Colours vanish not by degrees as founds do, 49. The cauSES thereof, ibid. Colours of metals orient in their dissolutions, 61. The cauSES thereof, ibid. Mixture of many Colours disagreeable to the eye, 171. Colour of the sea and other water, 183. Light and Colours, 255, 256. All Colours agree in the dark, 304. Which flew
INDEX.

shew best by Candle-light, 356
Colours in birds and beasts, 2, 24, 25. The nature of Colours, 25. Colours orient in dissolv'd metals, 61
Colours of good and evil, 384
Columbus, Christoper, his discovery of America, 481
Comets rather gaz'd upon than wisely observed, 380
Comforting the spirits of men by several things, 202
Commens, Philip, 205. His observation of Charles the hardy, 339
Committees for ripening of business in affairs of state, 331
Commodus, 327
Compotus to enrich ground, 118, 119. The ordering of them for several grounds, ibid. Six kinds of them, ibid. V. p. 253.
Compound fruits, 97. How they may be made, ibid.
Concealment, 172. The word least restrained than formerly, ibid. Not the work of heat alone, ibid. The two periods of it, ibid.
Concord in musick, 30
Concord final upon any writ of covenant, 555
Concretion of bodies, 174. Dissolved by the contrary, ibid.
Condensing medicines to relieve the spirits, 149
Condensing of air into weight, 151
Confederates, their great importance to any state, 531, 532
Confederation tacit, 547, 548
Confusion makes things appear greater, 387
Congealing of air of great confluence, 77
Conquerors grow superfluous and melancholy, 327
Conquest, the inconveniences of that claim in the person of H. VII. 400
Conclave, 277. His saying of honour, 379
Conferration of bodies long time, 156, 157. The causes and helps thereof, ibid.
Conferration of bodies in quick-filver, 163
Conferratory of snow and ice, 19, 20. Great ues to be made thereof in philosophy, 20. And likewise in profit, 81
Conscripti nati, who, 573
Confencies of bodies how divers, 173
Vol. III.

Constantine the great, what he said of Trajan, 276. What pope Pius II. observ'd of his pretended grant of St. Peter's patrimony, 278, 279. What fatal to him, 328
Constantinople, 142, 316
Confable, Sir John, 300
Consumptions, 13, 17. In what airs recover'd, 195
Contempt causes and gives an edge to anger, 379
Contiguous things or such once, their operations, 192
Continuity, solution of it causes putrefaction, 71
Contradiction of bodies in bulk, by mixing solids and fluids, 10. Contradiction of the eye, 182
Coppice woods haften'd in their growth, 90
Coral participates of the nature of plants and metals, 121. Coral, much found on the south-west of Sicily, 159. Its description, ibid. Coral laid to wax pale when the party wearing it is ill, 202
Coranus, 277
Cordes, lord, would lie in hell seven years to win Calais from the English, 434. Appointed to manage the treaty, 346, 347
Cordials, 231
Core in fruits, how obtain'd, 195, 196
Corn changed by fowing often in the same ground, 107. Changed into a bafer kind by the fertility of the year, ibid. The difeases thereof, 131. The remedy of the difease, 132. Choice of the best Corn, ibid.
Corns painful towards rain or frost, 169
Cornish insurrection, 470
Corruption and generation, nature's two boundaries, 70
Corruption to be avoided in suitors as well as minions, 315
Cosinus duke of Florence says, we no where read that we are to forgive our friends, 278, 306. Temperate in youth, 361
Council to be ask'd of both times, ancient and present, 314
Countenance greatly to be guarded in secrecy, 307
Court of Vulcan near Puteoli, 160. Courts obnoxious, 378
Courts of justice, an account of them, 427
Courtney, Edward, made earl of Devon at the coronation of H. VII. 402

F f f f 2

Courtney,


INDEX.

Courtney, W. earl of Devon, married to Katharine daughter of Edw. IV, 493. Attached by the king his brother-in-law, ibid.

Crafty cowards like the arrow flying in the dark, 306

Cramp, or contraction of the sinews, 202. Two cures of it, 202, 203

Craffus west for the death of a fish, 283. Defeats the fugitives, 286. Defeated by the Parthians, 289

Creatures said to be bred of putrefaction, 71, 107. Creatures moving after the severing of the head, 85. The causes thereof, ibid. Creatures that sleep much eat little, 139. Creatures that generate at certain seasons, 153. That renew their youth, or cast their spoils, 203

Croefus’s gold liable to be rifled by any man who had better iron, 284, 343

Croillus his dispensatory, 208

Crowd is not company, 338

Crown, the title to it descanted upon, 399, 400

Crutality, 172


Cucumbers made to grow sooner, 93. To bear two years, ibid. By steeping their seeds in milk prove more dainty, 94. Made more delicate by throwing in chaff when they are set, 95. They exceedingly affect moisture, ibid. Will grow towards a pot of water, 95, 101. May be as long as a cane, or moulded into any figure, 103

Culture, plants for want of it degenerate, 6

Cunning, 332. Difference between a cunning and wise man in honesty and ability, 332

Cure by custom, 17. Caution to be used in diseases counted incurable, ibid. Cure by excess, ibid. The cause of it, ibid. Cure by motion of content, ibid. Physicians how to make use of this motion, ibid.

Curiosity, the king matter of this as matter of his family, 583

Curiosities touching plants, 103, 104, 105, 106

Curled leaves in plants from abundance of moisture, 128

Cyrus, fir John, governor of the cattel of Hammes, 493. Flies from his charge in order to betray or get into the secrets of the malecontents, ibid. Occasions the spilling of much blood, and the con-

fiment of others, ibid. But is curst by the pope’s bull at Paul’s crofs, in order to deceive the more effectually, 493, 494


Custom and education, 357, 358. Custom in its exaltation, 358

Cutting trees once, caueth their long lasting, 116. Cuttings of vines burnt make lands fruitful, 131

Cutties blood, the colour from its high concoction, 150. As we see by boiling of blood, which turns it black, 150

Cyder ripeneth under the line, 188

Cyprus, a kind of iron said to grow there, 163

Cyrus the younger, 288

D.

Daily roots boil’d in milk said to make dogs little, 75

Dam, how surprized by the D. of Saxony, 443

Damske roes when the first came into England, 129

Damps in mines and minerals, 193. Kill by suffocation or the poisonous mineral, ibid.

Dancing to song, 355

Dangers not light if they seem so, 332. Whether they justify war, 514

D’Aquila the Spaniard, his indignation against the Irish, 529

Daubeney, or D’aubigny, fir Giles, created lord, 405. Deputy of Calais, raifes the siege of Diumede, 434. Appointed to treat with lord Cordes about peace, 447. Made lord chamberlain in the room of sir W. Stanley, 458. Commands the king’s forces against the Cornith men, 471, 473. Taken, but refued, 473

Dauibigny, Bernard, 420

D’aubigny, William, beheaded in Perkin’s affair, 456

David, how he propounded to make choice of his curriers, 583

Day-flowers not so good for fruits as night-flowers, 133

Dead sea aboundes with bitumen, 150

Deatb without pain, 127. The pomp of it more terrible than the thing itself, 302. Opens the gate to fame, 303. Causes of life and Deatb how to be adjudg’d, 377.

Dead Authors sometimes belt, 586

Decolation takes away the virtue and flatu-

lency of medicines, 5, 11. Decolation ma-

keth
INDEX.

Dejiccation, 72
Diagrams, 73
Deer, in them the young horn puttheth off the old, 148
Deer, 153. Their generating at certain feasons, ibid.
Deformed persons generally even with nature, 362. Mollly bold and industrious, 363
Degenerating of plants, 106, 107. The several causes thereof, ibid.
Delays to be avoided, 315. Delays, 312.
Delicate persons, 49. as anger proceeds from a fente of hurt, 379
Demades the orator, 283
Demetrius king of Macedon, 289
The relation how he kept himself alive by smelling at new bread, 195. His school, 323
Demobhenes his reply when reproach'd for flying from the battle, 269. His reply to AEfchines, 283. V. p. 290. Demobhenes his chief part of an orator, 315. How he reprehends the Athenians, p. 390. Reprehendas the people for suffered on her altar, 367. How he reprehends the Athenians,—p. 392. Expofes to fcorn wars which suffered on her altar, 367.
Dew upon hills better than upon valleys, 159.
Dew of the rainbow, 170
Diamonds Cornith, 2
Diana, how patientely the boys of Sparta suffered on her altar, 357
Diapafon the sweeteft of founds, 29. The Diapafon, or number of eight, rather a thing received than a true computation, 30. Half notes of necifity, the unifon and the Diapafon, ibid.
Diet drinks, 19. Most troublefome at first, ibid.
Diet of a Woman with child affects the infant, 204. What diet is good, 233
Differences of plants, 117, 118. Differences of several passions in matter, 175, 176
Digby, sir John, lieutenant of the tower, 484
Digfions three, 171. Extended to liquors and fruits as well as living creatures, 172. Four Digfion enumerated, ibid.
Difgination the earth healthful, 194
Difipation and extenfion of bodies, 174. Difipation in boiling, 179. Difipation and contraction in excess hurt the eye, 182
Dioscleran, 327
Diogenes, 289. Why he would be buried with his face downwards, 281. Plato's reafon why he came into the markethplace naked on a cold morning, 282. His pride chafed by Plato, 283. V. p. 290.
Dionysius his rebuke to his fon, 268. Being depofit he kept a fchool at Corinth, 282
Difcipline of our church, 568
Difconceintments, their caufe and cure, 322
Difcontinuance, how avoided in fluids, 6
Difcoris in mufick, 30, 31. Difcord of the bafe, molt difturibeth the mufick, ibid.
Difcovery of perons how made, 369
Difcourfe, whether wit and judgment the greater ornament of it, 348. Of a man's felf should be feldom and well cho'en, 349
Difesafes contrary to predifpofition, whether more difficult to be cured than concurrent, 18. What the phyfician is to do in each caufe, ibid. Difesafes infecfious, 63. Difesafes epidemical, their caufe, 81, 82
Displacing courtiers should always proceed from manifect caufe, 584
Difpleafures and pleafures of the fenfes, 140. Difpleafure flight, its natural and common effects, 145. viz. Shaking the head, frowning and knitting the brows, ibid.
Difpollefled, whether he may make a war for recovery, 514
Difolution of bodies from deficcation and putrefaction, 72
Difolution of iron in aqua fortis, 161
Difdil'd waters laft longer than raw; 73
Difdil'd water from salt, wormwood, lofe their faftness and bitter, &c. 184
Diftribution and order the life of biffines and disfpatch, 336
Divination natural, 165
Dixmude, 433, 434
Dogs, how made little, 75. Biting in anger a fitone thrown at him, 204. Communicates a cholerick quality to the powder of it, ibid. Dogs know the dog-killer tho' they never faw him before, 205
Dolabella, 279
Dominion how founded, 545
Domitian the younger fon of Vefpafian, 279. Tyrannical, 284. What he excelled in, 327.
Domitian,
INDEX.

Donatus, 284
Dorset, marquis, hostage for H. VII. 405.
Committed to the tower, 413. Relies'd, 416
Double flowers, how to produce them, 195
Down upon the leaves of plants, 112. The virtue of those leaves, ibid.
Draining salt-water by defcent doth not make it fresh, 1. Of lands under water would make excellent pasture, 579
Drade, sir Francis, his prosperous expeditions into the West-Indies, 523. Burns, sinks and carries off ten thousand ton of their great shipping, ibid. His death, 529
Dreams pleasant and prophetic, procured by some finnells, 195. Several remarkable dreams, 353, 354
Drinks, 67. The maturation of them, ibid. How it is wrought, ibid. By congregating and digesting the spirits, 67. Wherein it differs from clarification, ibid.
Degrees of maturation by infusing the motion of the spirits, ibid. Quickening of Drink that is dead or palled, 67. Ripend'd by being immerged in the sea, 133
Drowning of metals, the bafer in the more precious, 163, 164. The methods to perform the operation, 212
Drums, caufe of found in them, 38
Drunken men, 146. Their fperm unfruitful, ibid. They are unapt for voluntary motion, ibid. Imagine false things as to the eye, ibid. Men sooner drunk with small draughts than with great, 147
Drunkenness, 137
Drying the adventurous moisture prohibiteth putrefaction, 73. Mixture of Dry things prohibit it, ibid.
Drynfs turneth hair and feathers grey and white, 177
Dutchy of Lancaster, 571
Duchy bodies, 175
Dudley, 491. Made speaker of the house of commons, 494. See Emphion.
Dulcoration of metals, 76. Of several things, as malt, &c. 128. Of fruits several ways, 179. The caufe thereof, ibid. Dulcoration of faIt-water, 184
Dunging of grounds in the decreafe of the moon when the wind-bloweth, beet, 131
Dungs of beasts to enrich grounds, 118. Which of them the beet, ibid.
Duration of plants, 114, 115
Duft maketh trees fruitful, as vines, &c. 131
Dutch not to be abandon'd for our safety, nor kept for our profit, 293
Dutchman his project for making gold, 69. See Flemings
Duty of a privy-counellor, 574
Dwarf-oak, or holly-oak, in Cephalenia, 185
Dwarf-pine good for the jaundice, 130
Dyer, sir Edward, 278

E.

Eagle imperial, falls from the spire of Paul's, upon the black Eagle in the church-yard, 498. In the fame tempete which drove the king of Caltile hither, ibid.
Ear erected to hear attentively, 57. Ear dangerous to be picked in yawning, 135. Ears wax red in blushing, 182
Early flowers and plants, 114
Earth and fand differ, 1. Earth primum Frigium, 19. Infusions in Earth, 80, 81. The effects thereof, ibid. Cautions to be used therein, ibid. Several infiances thereof, ibid. Earth taken out of the vaults will put forth herbs, 107, 112, 113. The nature of those herbs, ibid. What Earth taken out of faIdy and warry woods will put forth, 113. Earth upon Earth a good compofit, 118. Earths good and bad, 130. Large clofs and putting forth mofs, bad, 130, 131. Earths medicinal, 141. Earth taken near the river Nilus, faid to increafe in weight till the river comes to its height, 150. New turn'd up hath a fweet fcent, 170. Pure the healthfulleft smell of all, 194. Fruitful, 253
Earthquakes, whether greatest in the full moon, 187
Ebbing and flowing of the fa, the caufe of it according to Gallilaeus, 162. By Apollonius call'd the refpiration of the world, 189
Echoes a repercussion only, 35. Echo of an Echo, 54. Artificial Echoes not known, ibid. Natural Echoes, where found, ibid. The differences between the concurrent Echo and iterant, ibid. No Echo from a trunk ftopped at one end, ibid. The caufe, ibid. Echo from within a well, ibid. Whether Echoes move in the fame angle with the original founds, ibid. Plurality of Echoes in one place, ibid. Comes in a round orb of air, 54. Back Echoes, 55. Echoes returning many words, 55. Echo upon Echo, 54, 55, 162. The like betwixt an houfe and an hill, 55. Echo will not return the letter S, ibid. 56. Difference of Echoes, 56. Mixture of Echoes, ibid. Resemble the ear, 57. And have a refemblance of hearing, 60. Super-refection of Echoes, 162
Edgecomb,
INDEX.

Edgecomb, sir Richard, comptroller of the king's house, sent into Scotland, 416
Edible fish, and not Edible, 179, 180.
The causes of each, ibid.
Edmund earl of Richmond father of H. VII. 407
Edward I. the best of lawgivers, 430. Our English Solon or Lycurgus, 551
Edward II. how used by his torturers, 290, 291. His disposition and murder owing to his queen, 328
Edward IV. 362. The trains and mines laid for him by the duke of Glocefter, 399. His interview and treaty of peace with Lewis IX. ibid. Touched with remorse for the death of his brother the duke of Clarence, 407. First devis'd the tax called benevolence, 442
Egerton master of the rolls and lord keeper, 275
Eggs, the yolks of them great nourishers, 14. How to be used, ibid. Yolk conduceth more to the nourishment, white to the generation of the bird, 25. Hatch'd in an oven, 179. Egg petrified, 222. White of an Egg long lying in the sun fad to turn to stone, ibid.
Egremont made leader of the Yorkshire riot against the subsidy, 429. Flies to lady Margaret into Flanders, ibid.
Eights, the sweetest concord in musick, 29.
Thro' 'tis a received rather than a true computation, 30
Elder-flowers good for the stone, 136
Elder-stick put to consume taketh away warts, 192, 207
Elastic of silver, 212
Elasticum, ancient, its proportion of silver and gold, 163
Elastic bodies, 191
Elegant sentences of our author, 294
Elements and their conjunctions ruinous to knowledge, 171
Elijon of the air a term of ignorance, 34
Elizabeth eldest sister to Edw. IV. 411, 488. Married for her second husband Johan de la Pool duke of Suffolk, 488
Elizabeth, lady, 399. Not mention'd in the claim of H. VII. 400. Repairs to London by direction, to the queen dowager her mother, 401. Married to H. VII. 405. Crown'd at Welfminister to give contentment to the people, 445
In the third year of the king's reign, 416. Dies in childbed at the tower, 491
Q. Elizabeth petition'd to releafe the four evangelists, being prisoners, 261. Her speech about the archduke's raising the siege of Grave, 262. Said, she had rather be dead than put in custody, 262. Her remarks upon facile and instructions to great officers, 263. Retorted upon, that a man thinks of nothing when he thinks of a woman's promise, 291. Has good regard to perfignage, ibid. A princes of extreme caution, 510. Yet lov'd admiration above safety, ibid. Carried a hand restrained in gifts, but strained in prerogative, 511. Had not a numerous but wise council, 574
Els framed, 94
Elmfore lord chancellor, 292
Embalmings of dead bodies, 73
Embassies how managed by Q. Elizabeth, 575
Emissions of several kinds, 191
Emmanuel Comnenus poison'd the water when the christians were to pass thro' his country to the holy land, 193
Empedocles the Sicilian, 337
Empire, 377. Its true temper, ibid. States liberal of naturalization fit for Empire, 344. What most importeth Empire, viz. the profecfion of arms, 345
Empson the son of a fievemaker, 491. His method of extortion in conjunction with Dudley, 492. His book of accounts signed by the king, 493
Empty coffers in a prince make the people forget their duty, 585
Enclosures, when frequent, and how guarded against, 431
Enemies, common Enemies of mankind, 547, 548
Enforcing a thought upon another, 198. Inftance thereof in a jugler's tricks, ibid. Three means by which it must be wrought, 199
England compared to France, tho' left in territory, 343. Compared to Spain, 530
English valour remarkable, 524—529
Engifhman hurt in the leg hard to cure, 160
Envious and froward men, not like dogs licking the fores, but like flies and vermin, 317
Enemy most forcible in an oblique caft, 197
Enemy most predominant in a man that hath no virtue, 310. Who are most exposed to this infirmity, 311. Publick not fo pernicious as private Enemy, 312. Confracted by great mens followers, 370. The canker of honour, 376
Epa
INDEX.

Epaminondas grants that to a whore which he refused to his friend, 270. A long invective against him by the Lacedaemonians, 285. His fortune, 359
Epistèles; 290. His state of man, 359
Epistémé; 81, 82
Epimenides
Epidemical
Epictetus;

Elyex
Euphrates
Eunuchs

Excrences, much not to be used with a spare diet, 125. 126

Exercife, ibid. Exercife ibid.

Excrences

Evils

Eyebrows


F
Abius Maximus, 285. Was feared by Hannibal, 290
Fable of Hercules and Hylas, 39. Of the Fly, 375. Of the frogs in drought, 386
Facility, in ministers worse than bribery, 315. To be guarded against, 373
Factions, those who are good in them mean men, 297. To govern by them low policy, 372. When one is extinguished the others subdivide, ibid.
Faithful men should be rewarded as well as regarded, 578
Falling sicknes how helped, by male-pions, 203
Fame, like fire, easy to preserve, but difficult to re-kindle, 291. Like a river bearing up light things and sinking weighty, 374
Fame made a monfter by the poets, 383. On what occasion said to be daughter of the earth, ibid. How to difcern between true and false Fames, ibid. Increases virtue, as heat is redoubled by reflexion, 386
Fascination, the opinion of it ancient, and ever by the eye, 197. Ever by love or envy, 319
Fat extracted out of flesh, 133
Favour, how to be dispenc'd, 370
Favourites, judges should have none, 378. Kings and great princes, even the wifef, have had their Favourites, 565. To ripen their judgments and eafe their cares,
INDEX.

Fire and time work the same effects, 52. Preferves bodies, 73. Fire tanneth not as the sun doth, 84. Fire and hot water heat differently, 134. Fires subterraney, eruptions of them out of plains, 77. Fire and air foreth wind, 169. Fire of diseases how to be put out, 203. To be extingiuish'd as the fire of an house, ibid.

Fib of the sea put into fresh water, 141, 142. Fibes foreweth rain, 169. Fibes greater than any beasts, 178. The caufe, ibid. Shell-fib, some have male and female, some not, 183. Ficbry, no min­

eral like it, 580, 583

Fitz-Gerard, Thomas earl of Kildare, and deputy of Ireland, proclaims Simnel the counterfeit Plantagenet, 409. Invades England in conjunction with the E. of Lincoln and L. Lovel, 413. Slain in battle near Newark, 414

Fitz-Herbert, what he says of fines, 552

Fitz-Walter, lord, supports Perkin, 452. John Ratcliffe-lord Fitz-Walter apprehended, 456. Convicted and conveyed to Calais in hope, ibid. Beheaded for dealing with his keeper to escape, ibid,

Fixation of bodies, 164

Flame of powder, how it dilateth and moveth, 5. Flame and air mix not, 8, 9. Except in the spirits of vegetables, ibid. And of living creatures, ibid. Their wonderful effects mixed, 9. Form of Flame would be globular, and not pyra­midal, 9. Would be a lafting body, if not extinguished by air, ibid. Mixeth not with Flame, ibid. Burneth stronger on the fides than in the midst, 9, 10. Is irritated by the air ambient, ibid. Opinion of the Peripateticks of the elem­ment of fire, ibid. Preyeth upon oil, as air upon water, 24. Experiments about its duration, 78, 79. Taketh in no other body into it, but converteth it, 164. More easy to move than air, 168. Flame caufing water to rife, 186, Flame, 78. The continuance of it according to feveral bodies, ibid. Observation about going out of Flame, ibid. Lafting thereof in candles of severall mixtures, ibid. Of feveral wicks, 79. In candles laid in bran, ibid. In lampes, 80. Where it draweth the nourishment far, ibid. In a turretted lamp, ibid. Where it is kept close from air, ibid. According to the temper of the air, ib. Irritated by cold, ibid. Experiment about Flame, 186

Flammedock the lawyer, Thomas, incites the Cornish men to rebel against the subfi­

Ggggdy,
Forming of parts in young creatures, 7

Fornication, the guilt and odiousness of it represented, 337

Fortescue, sir John, under-treasurer and chancellor of the exchequer, 259

Fortune like a market, 565

Fortune, 358. Tho' blind is not invisible, 358. Confidence and reputation the daughters of Fortune, 359

Foulks, how they differ from plants, 130.

Fouls, their medicinal uses, ibid.

Foundations and gifts, 352

Fountains, with regard to the beauty and refreshment in gardens, 367

Fox, water-Fo'ls forebore rain, 168

Fox bishop of Exeter made controller to H. VII. 465. Made lord privy-seal, and successively bishop of Bath and Wells, Durham, Winchester, ibid. Sent on an embassage to James III. of Scotland, 416. One of the commissioners of trade, 469. His great diligence in opposing the K. of Scots, 474. Takes a journey to Scotland about the breach of truce, 483. His character, 489. The main instrument of the marriage between the lady Margaret and K. of Scots, 491. Concludes the match between Charles prince of Castile, and Mary second daughter of H. VII. 501

Fragile bodies, 174. The cause of their fragility an impotency of being extended, ibid.

France, its flourishing state, 416, 417. V. Charles VIII.

Francis D. of Britainy, loses his memory, and is under the direction of the D. of Orleans, 420. His death after his army was beaten, 426

Francis I. 267. His noble nature, 277

French disease, its supposed original, 6

Frenchman hurt in the head hard to cure, 160. Wiser than they seem, 337

French king's titles, how they rival the emperor's, 388

Fright, a furtherer of nourishment, 16. Maketh the parts more flethly, 184. The cause, ibid. Impingugated more than exerciser, ibid. The cause, ibid.

Friends ought not to be forgiven, according to Cosmus duke of Florence, 278. The world a wilderness without Friends, 338. The manifold fruits of Friendship, 339, 340, 341. A false Friend more dangerous than an open enemy, 565

Friendship, 337

Frier Bacon's illusion, 155

Fries, 470. Is taken and executed, 473.

Fletcher, his words make against the man in whose behalf they are spoken, 318.

No such Flatterer as a man's self, 340. Several forts and ranks of them, 374. Flattery of princes as criminal as drawing the sword against them, 566, 566

Fleming, Adrian, the son of a Dutch brewer, made card. Tortofo, 430. Preceptor to Charles V. and pope, ibid.


Their comparative strength, 530

Flesh, human, its venomous quality, 6.

Fleshs disolved into fat, 133. Fleshs edible and not edible, 179, 180. The causes of each, ibid. Horses Fleshs sometimes eaten, said ibid. Man's flesh likewise, 6, ibid. Said to be eaten by witches, ibid.

Flies in excess, a sign of a pestilential year, 470.

Foliation of birds, the swiftest motion, 134.

The cause thereof, ibid.

Fliat laid at the bottom of a tree hath helped the growth, 90. The cause, ibid.

Float and reflof of the sea, 191

Flowers small best whole leaves small not, 83. How to enlarge Flowers, and increase their odours, 90, &c. Flowers growing amongst the corn and no where else, 98. To have Flowers open at the fun's approach very obvious, 99. Flowers, incrustation of them on trees, 103. To induce colour into Flowers, ibid.

Flowers made double by frequent removal into new earth, 105. To make them double in fruitful trees, ibid.

Flowers, 116. All exquisitely figured, 117. Numbers of their leaves, ibid.

Flowers in gardens, 366

Fly, the fable of it, 375

Flying in the air of a body unequal, 161. of a body supported with feathers, 185

Foliationes, feeding on leaves, a religious order, why put down by the pope, 13

Follioters and friends, 370. Cotly ones make the train longer than the wings, ibid. Their several denominations, ibid.

Fomitation or bath, 233. Makes the unguent enter in a moral as well as natural fene, 326

Foreign plants, 114. How best remov'd, 123

Forests and chasies, much good land recoverable from them, 579

Forfeitures or fines, not to be anticipated or farmed out, 585
INDEX.

Galaucus his opinion of the ebbing and flowing of the sea, 162
Galley-slaves, why generally fleshy, 148
Gaping, a motion of imitation, 62
Garcilazze de Viegia, descended of the race of the Incas, 547
Gardens, 365. For all months in the year, 365, 366
Gardiner bishop of Winchester, 275
Garments, of what plants they may be made, 123
Garrius under ground the best preservatives of corn, 72
Garter, order of, 448
Gaffen de Fois, 361
Gathering of wind for freshness, 158
Gaunt, the honourable retreat there by fir John Norris, 523
Generation opposed to corruption, 70.
They are nature's two boundaries, ibid.
Generating of some creatures at set times only, of some at all times, 153. The cause of each, ibid. 154
Genius over-murthering, 196
George, order of saint, should do more than robe and feast, 538
German mines having vegetables in the bottom, 113
Germination of plants accelerated by several means, 86, 87, 88. Retarded by several means, 89
Giddinefs, why after long fitting, 149
Girdles and garters shackles to some, 306
Glahs, why preture upon the lip of it makes the water frisk, 2, 3
Glahs, the materials thereof in Venice, 156
Glafs out of the fand, 159. Glahs whether remolten it keepeth weight, 164
Glafs, how to be improv'd, 212, 213
Glades at distance appearing flat, 184
Glow-worms shine longer than they live, 74. Glow-worm, its nature and properties, 143. Glow-worms put in glaffes under the water, their life, 154
Gold, 69. The making of it, ibid. A work if possible, yet not rightly pursu'd, ibid. Difcourse of a stranger touching the making of it, 69. Directions for the making of it, ibid. 70. Directions of a trial, ibid. Several properties of Gold, ibid. Gold hath in it the leaf volatile of any metal, 164. The making Gold scarcely possible, 212. Will incorporate with quickfiver, lead, copper, brass, iron, tin, 215, 216
Gondomar, his tale when our author was advanced to the great seal, 273. V. p.
Gonfalo, his character of a folder, 269
Goodness of nature, 316. Has no excess but

Frain, Stephen, secretary in the French tongue to H. VII. 450. Gained by lady Margaret, ibid. Defeared Perkin, 477
Frogs in excess, a sign of a peftilential year, 149. The caufe, ibid. The fable of the Frogs in a drought, 386
Fruits, their maturation, 67, 68. The caufes thereof, ibid. Several inftances there­of, ibid. The dulcoration thereof by other means, 179. The several caufes, ibid. Fruit cut or pirered rots sooner, 71. Inlarged how, 90, &c. Fruit prick­ed as it growth, ripens sooner, 93. Made fairer by plucking off some blof­foms, ibid. Fruit-tree graft upon a wild tree, 94. Fruit dulcorated by applying of fwines-dung, 95. The caufe, ibid. Alfo by chaff and fwines-dung mingled, ibid. Enlarged by being cover'd with a pot as it growth, ibid. Fruits compound, 97, 98. Fruits of di­vers kinds upon one tree, 103. Fruits of divers shapes and figures, ibid. 104.
Fuel confumming little, 158
Fuel confumming faft, ibid. Fuel cheap, ibid.
Full of the moon, 187. Several effects of it, ibid. Trials for further obervations, ibid.
Fumes taken in pipes, 194
Fumitory, a prefervative againft the fpleen, 136

G.

Abate, Sebastian, a native of Venice living at Britifl, 481. His reflections on the discoveries of Columbus, ibid. Obtaining a fhip man'r of H. VII. the courfe he feared, 482
Gad-fly, 138
Gagvien, prior of Trinity in France, his speech to the council of H. VII. 435. Disperses a libel in latin verfe againft the king at his going home, 440
Galba, 279, 303, 323. Was thought fit for government till he had power, 315
Galen, his cure for the feirrus of the liver, 101
Galeot flain, 426

Vol. III.
INDEX.

but error, ibid. The several signs or symptoms of it, 317
Gordon, Katharine, married to Perkin, 466.
Her commendations, 480. Taken and sent to the queen, and had an honourable allowance, ibid.
Gorgias, 197
Government, its four pillars, 321. V. p. 272. Its charter of foundation, 545. They who can’t govern themselves not fit to govern others, 578
Gout, order in curing it in 24 hours, 16. V. p. 233. Mineral bath prescribed for its cure, 161

Grafting of roses, 89. A late coming fruit upon an early fruit-tree, 89. Grafts in great plenty, 91
Grafting melliorate the fruit, 93. Tho’ some trees come better from the kernel than the Graft, ibid. Grafting of trees that bear no fruit enlargeth the leaves, 96. Grafting of several kinds maketh not compound fruits, 97. Doubtless flowers, but maketh not a new kind, 97
Grafting vine upon vine, 131
Grains of youth, 228
Granada almost recover’d from the Moors, 437. The final conquest of it, 444. Had been in possession of the Moors 700 years, 445

Granicum, battle of, 283
Grapes, how they may be kept long, 124. Also by preferring of the stalk, ibid.
Graifiers, why they remove their cattle from mean to better pastures, 92
Gravity, its increas and decrease, 10. Motion of gravity within or at distance from the earth, ibid. V. p. 142. Opinion of moving to the center a vanity, 10
Grey, lord, takes the Spaniards fore and in Ireland, 522
Great Britain, the beginning of a history thereof, 509
Great place, 314. Men in great place servants of their sovereign, fame and bufi­ness, ibid. The vices of it, delays, corruption, roughness and facility, 315
Great offices and officers, 575
Greatness comparative of living creatures, 178

Greatness of kingdoms, 342. How advanced, 346, 347
Green, the general colour of plants, 105
Greencloth, our author has no opinion of it, 584
Greennes, in some plants all winter, 117. The caufe, ibid.
Greenvil, sir Richard, his memorable action in the Revenge, against the Spanish fleet, 526, 527

Gregory the great, why traduced by Mac­chavel, 380
Grevel, sir Fulk, disallows the tyranny of precedents, 274
Grief and pain, 144. The impressions thereof, ibid.
Grindle, his cenure of physicians, 277

Gros of bays hinder pestilent airs, 195. Which were thought to cause the whole­some air of Antiochia, 196

Growing of certain fruits and herbs, after they are gathered, 7, 8. The caufe, ibid. Trial whether they increas in weight, 8. V. p. 90. Growing or multiplying of metals, 103

Growth of hair, nails, hedges and herbs, in the moon’s increas, 187
Guite, Henry duke of, in what sense the greatest usurper in France, 280
Guinea-pepper caueth sneezing, 194
Gum of trees, the caufe of its shining, 2
Gum diffolves both by fire and water, 174
Gum-dragon, 160
Gunpowder, 8. The caufe of the great noise it yieldeth, ibid. White, whether it giveth no found, 33

H

Air coloured black by the Turks, 150

Hairs of beafts not so freth colours as birds feathers, 2. How the colour of them may be changed, 24, 25
Hair on the head of children new-born, 134. Standing erect from the pores being flush in a fright, 144
Hair changing colour, 177. Hair of the party beloved worn, exciteth love, 207

Hander of the chancery, what it included, 549, 550

Hands have a sympathy with the head and other parts, 25, 26

Hannibal’s character of Fabius and Marcel­lus, 290

Hanno and Hannibal, 285

Hard substances in the bodies of living creatures, 151. Most about the head, ibid. Some of them flow at a scanty, some continually grow, ibid. All of them without sense but the head, 152

Hard bodies, 174. The caufe, ibid.
Hatching of eggs, 154

Hawkins, sir John, his unfortunate death by sickness in the West-Indies, 529
Haws and hips in store, portend cold winters, 149, 167

Hayward, Dr. committed to the tower for the history of the deposition of K. Richard II. 263. Stole from C. Tacitus, 264

Head
INDEX.

Head and stomach cured by an application to the feet, 25. Local motion continued after the Head struck off, 85. Head cut off in some creatures, leaveth a little space of motion, ibid. The causes, ibid.

Healtb, regimen of it, 347. Interrupted by sudden change of diet, ibid. Clearfulness a great preservative of it, ibid. How consulted by the situation of buildings, 350.

Healthful airs oft-times without scent, 191.

Hearing hath more immediate operation upon the manners and spirits of men than the other senses, 31, 32. Hindrances and helping of Hearing, 60. Hearing hindered by yawning, ibid. The cause, ibid. Helped by holding the breath, ibid. The cause, ibid. Instruments to help Hearing, ibid. Ufed in Spain, ibid. Hearing causeth horror, 140. Hearing more offended by some objects, than the eye by ungrateful sights, 58.

Heart of an ape worn increaseth audacity, as reported, &c. 204.

Heat and cold nature's two hands, 19. Heat the chiefest power in nature, 27. How to make trial of the highest operation of it, ibid. Heat and time work the like effects, 27, 62. Their different operations in many things, ibid. 134. Heat more tolerable under the line than on the skirts of the torrid zone, 84. Heat being qualified by moisture, the effect, 134. Heat causeth the differences of male and female, 177. Also many other differences thereupon, ibid. The fame tempered with moisture, ibid. The several effects of Heat in the fun, fire, and living creatures, 179. Heat and cold, a virtual transition without communication of subtance, 181. Heat within the earth, 185. Greater in winter than summer, ibid. Trial of drawing it forth by the moon-beams, 186. Heats under the equinoctial, les than under the torrid zones, 84. Three causes thereof, ibid.

Heaten opinion, touching generation of creatures perfect by concretion, refellled, 188.

Heavenly bodies dispence heat and light, 186. Their influences, 191, 192.

Hebrews, 246.

Hēler, Dr. his preſcription to the dames of London, 392.

Hedge-bogs fleth a great drier, 204.

Helena, her lover quitted Juno and Pallas, 313.

Heliotrophia, 99. The causes of the open-
and makes peace, 447. Notifies his gainful peace to the mayor and aldermen of London, 448. General clamour against the king, 452. His diligence in tracing Perkin's history, 453, 454. Has his own spies cursed publickly at Paul's, 454. The probable reasons of his dislike against Sir W. Stanley, 448. The king pester'd with swarms of libels, the females of sedition, 459. Crushes money from his subjects by his penal laws, 460. Enters into a league in defence of Italy, 462. A reward promised for killing or taking the king by Perkin's proclamation, 468. The king's wars were always a mine of treasure to him, 469. Creates bannerets after the victory at Blackheath, 473. Demands of the Scots to have Perkin deliver'd, 476. Constantly nam'd in the Italian league before Ferdinand, 462. Exerts his utmost force to secure Perkin, when he had got him on English ground, 479. Enters the city of Exeter joyfully, and gave them his sword, 480. Takes Perkin out of Weymouth, 497, 498, 499. Enters into a league in defence of Italy, 501. The probable reasons of his dislike against Sir W. Stanley, 448. The king's wars were always a mine of treasure to him, 469. Creates bannerets after the victory at Blackheath, 473. Demands of the Scots to have Perkin deliver'd, 476. Constantly nam'd in the Italian league before Ferdinand, 462. Exerts his utmost force to secure Perkin, when he had got him on English ground, 479. Enters the city of Exeter joyfully, and gave them his sword, 480. Takes Perkin out of Weymouth, 497, 498, 499. Enters into a league in defence of Italy, 501.

INDEX

Hops, broom, &c. 124
Horns, 152. Horned beasts have no upper teeth. 152
Horfe feth eaten, 179. Horfe tooth has the mark of their age, 152. Sea-Horse tooth ring good for the cramp, 202
Horfe English excel in strength and swiftnefs, 579
Hortenfius, his character to the life; 362
Hot bread nourishing in the odours thereof, 195
Horfe of peers a court of judicature, 573. of commons can't administer an oath, ibid.
Howard, Henry, E. of Northampton, lord privy seal, &c. 265. His an{wer to the Dutch minister, 275
Humours ill lodged very dangerous, 18
Husband affected by their wives breeding, 205. Who make good ones, 310
Husbandry in many particulars, 579. 585
Hydraulick, 29
Hylas, Hercules page, the fable of him, 39
Hypocrates the greatest atheist, 324

I.

James I. compares his speech to a mirror, 261. Compares himfelf and parliament to husband and wife, where jealousy is pernicious, ibid. Says, when the fun appears watry, 'tis owing to the interception of a cloud, 262. Derifors the countrygentlemen should not long live in London, 292. Writing his book concerning the office of a king ferv'd him, 511. See 565.

James III. of Scotland plain at Bannockbourn, 430
James IV. wholly at the devotion of France, 442. Married to Margaret eldelft daughter of H. VII, 490

Jafon of Thiffaly, 289
Jasper earl of Pembroke uncle to H. VII, 402. Made duke of Bedford at the coronation, ibid. Commands the army against the lord Lovel, 406. Made general again, 413. For the French expedition, 446

Jaudice, whence the difficulty of curing it proceeds, 208

Jefi a molt pernicious flmall, 193. And next to the plague, ibid.

Idolatry, degrees of it, 540. Doth not diffuse government, 545

Jefuits precept, 332, 333

Jfe, what matters ought to be privileged from it, 348

Jewi-car, its strange property and ufe, 111. A putrefaction, 136

Ignorant man, or coward, ought not to be a judge, 369

Image, whether it might be seen without feeing the glafs, 154

Image of God, 545

Imagination, the force of it, 162. Imagination exalted, 189. Force of it upon the body of the Imaginat by infpiring industry, 150. Three cautions about the fame, ibid. Worketh moft upon weak perfons, ibid. Imagination, 197. The kinds of it, ibid. The force of it upon another body, ibid. 198. Several infances of it, ibid. & in f. An infance thereof by a pair of cards, ibid. Three means to impose a thought, 199, 200. D.ignations for trial of the operations in this kind, ibid. 201. To work by one that hath a good opinion of you, 200. To work by many, ibid. Means to preferve Imagination in the strength, ibid. It worketh more at fome times than others, ibid. It hath moft force upon the lighteft motions, ibid. 202, 206. Effects of the fenfe, 162, 163. Imagination imitating the imitations of nature, I

Imitation in men and other creatures, 53. A thing to be wondered at, ibid. Several motions in men of Imitation, 62. Imitation a globe of precepts, 314

Impofers and pirates not to be protected, 455

Impofure by counterfeiting the diftance of voices, 54

Impotency of men towards their wives procured in Zant and Galcony, 186, 201

Impeaffe and not impoffible, 175

Impofion and perciuion of bodies, 155

Impofion of a body unequal, 161

Inanimate and animate wherein they differ, 120

Incendio thought to difpofe to devotion by the operation of the femll, 195

Incentions, 392, 393

Incorporating or drowning of metals, 163

Incorporating of iron and flone, 210. Of brains and iron, ibid. Of silver and tin, 212

Incubus, how helped, 203

Indian earth brought over hath produced Indian plants, 114

Indian fig, its surprizing way of growing, 122. Its leaves of great dimensions without stalks, ibid. Their custom of quietly burning themselves, 357. Had something like ordinance in the time of Alexander, 382

Induration, or lapidification of bodies, 22. Three means to effect it, ibid. Examples thereof, ibid. 23. Indurations by snow
INDEX.

Snow or ice, 22. By metalline waters, 22, 23. In some natural spring-waters, 23. Of metals by heating and quenching, ibid. By fire, ibid. By decoctions within water, the water not touching, ibid. Induration by sympathy, 176

Infant, what we reap from it makes the fruition more pleasant, 423. In fome natural spring-waters, the water not touching, ibid. Imagination, 439. Induration, 166. Receiv'd from the mother's diet, 484. Which parts it, 4, 5. In them, 497. According to the several matters they are cate'd to all creatures bred of putrefaction, 523, 524, 525, 526


Influences in air, 5. The several odours of it, ibid. Cautions to be used in it, ibid. Several instances thereof, ibid. Iniquity profitable, is arrant theft, 319. Innocent VII. pope, 402, 444. Innovations, 335. To be avoided in the church, 568, 569. Inquisition or unconciotion, 172. Inquisition touching the compounding of metals, 210. Touching the separation of metals and minerals, 217. Inscriptions upon fruits, 103. Insecta, 138. Held by physicians to clarify the blood, 138. The name communicate'd to all creatures bred of putrefaction, ibid. The difference of them, according to the several matters they are bred of, 138, 139. The enumeration of many of them, ibid. Several properties in them, ibid. They have voluntary motion, ibid. Other senses beside taste, ibid.

Infructions to great officers like garments, grow loose in the wearing, 263. Intrails of beasts, whether more nourishing than the outward flesh, 13. Insusive war, not made by the first blow, but by the first provocation, 418. Inventors, a catalogue of them, 258. Invis'ible armada, a minute account of it, 523, 524, 525, 526.
INDEX.

caufe, ibid. How eaten by Canibals, ibid. Wherefore eaten by witches, ibid.
Mandrakes, the ill use made of them, 123
Manna of Calabria best and most plentiful, 159
Manufactures foreign should be prohibited where the materials are superfluities, 494. Our own should be encouraged, 579. Manufactures of old generally wrought by slaves, 344
March, towards the end, the best discoverer of summer sickness, 106
Margaret, lady, 406. Second sister of Edw. IV. and dowager of Charles the hardy D. of Burgundy, 411. Had the spirit of a man and the malice of a woman, 411, 412. Raifes the ghost of the second son of Edw. IV. 448. Reflected on by Dr. Warham, 455. Not mention'd in the account of Perkin's examination, 481
Margaret eldest daughter of H. VII. married to James IV. of Scotland, 490. Her line succeeds to the crown, 509
Mar's a good compott, 118. Esteemed the best as having most fatnes, ibid.
Marriage recommended, 250. The laws and conditions of marriage, 251
Marriage and single life, 309. Marriage defp'd by the Turks, 310
Marriage by the book and by the sword, 439. Between the crowns of England and Scotland, how caus'd, 475
Marrow more nourishing than fat, 13. Of two kinds, 152
 Martyrdom miraculous, caufe it exceeds the power of human nature, 381
Mary second daughter of H. VII. 497. Married to Charles prince of Castile, afterwards Charles V. 501
Mary queen, a conspiracy against her to kill her by a burning-glafs, 24
Majques, 355, 356
Majolace in Paris, 265, 305
Matter said to be like a common trumphet, 164
Maturation, 67, 172. Of drinks, 67. Of fruits, 68, 179. Maturation or digestion best promoted by a temperate heat, 69,70
Maximilian king of the Romans, 417, 418, 419. Unstable and neccesitous, 422. Incouraged by H. VII. to proceed to a match with Ann heir of Britanny, 433. And married to her by proxy, 434. But when defeated, his behaviour, 440. Disappoints K. H. VII. 446. His league with H. VII. 462
Mayor and companies of London receive H. VII. at Shoreditch, 401. Meet pope Vol. III.

Alexander's nuncio at London-bridge, 477
Meats inducing satiety, 63
Mecenas his advice to Augustus touching Agrippa, 338, 339
Medicines changed, helpful, 19
Medicines which affect the bladder, 25
Medicines condensing which relieve the spirits, 149
Medicinable herbs, 101, 102. Soporiferous Medicines, 204
Megrims come upon rising, not during the fitting, 149
Melancholy persons dispose the company to the like, 196
Melioration of fruits, trees, and plants, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96
Melting of metals, observations thereon, 217. Metals give orient colours when melted, 61
Memory the art, 201. Perfons better places than words, ibid. Memory strengthened by the brains of some creatures, 204
Mendes, 288
Menstruous woman rufts the glafs, 194
Menstruums, 218, 219
Merchants, their importance, 329. How they convey blessings to any countrey, 259. Promoted by H. VII. 425. 469, &c. Negotiations about them directed by Q. Eliz, 575
Mercurial and sulphurous bodies, 70
Mercy and justice the two supports of the crown, 572. When cruelty, 578
Meroë, the metropolis of AEthiopia, 84
Metals give orient colours in their diſ Solutions, 61. The cauſes to be affign'd, ibid.
Metals and plants, wherein they differ, 120. Growing of Metals, 163. Drowning of Metals, ibid. Refining of Metals not sufficiently attended to, 176. Metalline vapours hurtful to the brain, 193
Metals, an inquisition touching the compounding of them, 210. For magnificence and deliracy, 211. Separation of them, 217. Variation of them, 218. All Metals may be dissolved, 220. Often fired and quenched grow churliſh, and will sooner break than bow, 479
Metellus opposes Caesar, 286
Melibaeus water, 229
Mercurilis, his answers touching minerals, 214, 217
Military men when dangerous to a state, 320. Love danger better than labour, 344. Had greater encouragement from the ancients than the moderns, 346. How improv'd here, 431. Military pu-
INDEX.

N. 151

Nakedness uncomely in mind as well as body, 397. V. p. 547.

Nantes the strongest city in Britanni closely besieged, 422, &c.

Naples the strongest of all vegetable poisons, 101. And yet a maid lived of it, ibid. And poison'd those who had carnal knowledge of her, ibid.

Naples, 437, 448

Naphtha, 191, 221

Narcissus his art with Claudius, 333

Narthurium, or cardamon, good for children, 75

Nations by name not so in right, 544, 545


Nature better perceiv'd in small than in great, 137


Natures fort with their vocations, 357.

Runs to herbs or weeds, ibid.

Natural divination, 165

Navigation of the ancients, 243, 245, 246

Negroes, an inquiry into their colouration, 84


Dislike of Seneca's style, 288. His harp, 327

Nerva, his dislike of informers to support tyranny, 284

Neutral, 578

New Atlantis, 235. Dr. Rawley's account of the design of it, ibid.

Night-flowers better for fruit than day-flowers, 130

Night's star-light or moon-shine, colder than cloudy, 181

Nilus, a strange account of its earth, 150

Nilus, the virtues thereof, 156. How to clarify the water of it, ibid.


Nobility, the depression of them makes a king more absolute and less safe, 296, 339. Nobility, 319. Attempters love-reigny, ibid. Should not be too great for love-reigny or justice, ibid. Too numerous cauith poverty and inconvenience in a state, ibid. Reafon why they should not multiply too fast, 343. Their retinues and hospitality conduces to martial greatness, 344

Nefes, some promote sleep, 151

Nonclaim statute, 431

Norris, sir John, makes an honourable re-
INDEX.

Northumberland, earl of, slain for demanding the subsidy granted to H. VII. 428, 439
Northumberland, earl of, conveys the lady Margaret into Scotland, 491
Northumberland destroyed by fire and sword by James IV. in favour of Perkin, 468
Nourishing meats and drinks, 12, 13, 14.
Nourishment in plants, 14, 124
Nourishment, 14. Five several means to help it, ibid. 15, 16. Nourishment mended, a great help, 92
Numa's two coffins, 157. A lover of retirement, 337
Nurseries for plants should not be rich land, 92

O.

Oak-leaves have honey-dews, probably from the cloveness of the surface, 100. An old tradition that Oak boughs put into the earth bring forth wild vines, 106. Oak-apples, an excrecence with putrefaction, 112
Oak bears the most fruits amongst trees, 125. The caufe, ibid. Our Oaken timber for shipping not to be equalled, 577
Objects of the sight caufe great delight in the spirits, but no great offence, 182. The caufe, ibid.
Ocampo the Spanish general in Ireland, 528. Taken prisoner, 529
Ocebus a tree in Hycrania, 122
Odious objects caufe the spirits to fly, 162
Odours infuffions in air, 5. Odours in some degree nourishing, 195
Officers in court, minifterial, how to be treated, 584. See Great-place.
Oil can't be form'd out of water, 76
Oilify substances and watry, 73. Comfiture of Oily substances prohibiteth putrefation, ibid. Turning of watry substances into Oily, 76. A great work in nature, ibid. Some infuffions thereof, ibid. Oil of sweet almonds a great nourisher, 14. How to be used, ibid.
Ointment fragrant, 234. Ointments fluit in the vapours, and fend them powerfully to the head, 191. Said to be used by witches, 204. Preferving Ointments, 228
Old trees bearing better than the fame young, 126
Old men converfing with young company live long, 197
Onions flooit in the air, 7
Onions made to wax greater, 96. In growing carry the feed to the top, 128
Openers, a catalogue of them, 231
Operations of sympathy, 191
Opinion, a matter-wheel in some cafes, 566
Oquenda, Michael de, the Spanish admiral loft, 525
Orange-flowers infuffed, 4. Orange-feeds fown in April will bring forth an excellent Sallad herb, 114
Orators, 270
Orbilius, 121
Order in curing difeafes, 16, 17
Ordinance, its antiquity, 382. Call'd by the Macedonians thunder, lighting and magic, ibid.
Orleans, duke of, 420. Route and taken, 426
Ormond, earl of, 439. Thomas earl of, 446
Ormus taken from the Spaniard by the Per- fian, 531, 533
Ophents, 277
Orris only sweet in the root, 181
Othricb ran fome fpace after the head fruck off, 85. Lays her eggs in the fand to be hatch'd by the fun's heat, 179
Oba, when he flew himself, many follow'd the example, 302
Ottomans, when they firft flav'd the beard, 278. When divided, 437. Without nobles, gentlemen, freemen, or inheritance, 540
Ox-horn, whether it will ripen feeds, 110
Oxford, John earl of, defigned general, 413. Created fuch under the king for the French expedition, 446. Commands in chief at Blackheath, 472. Made high-steward for the trial of the earl of Warwick, 485. A monftenrous account of the king's ufage of him, 492, 493
Oxidraces, a people of India, 382. Had ordinance in the time of the Macedonians, ibid.

P.

Agent, lady, 263
Pain and grief, 144. The imprefions thereof, ibid.
Paintings of the body, 149, 150. Barbarous people much given to it, ibid.
Palace, one defcribed, 364, 365
Palenefs proceeds from the blood's running to the heart, 144
Palliation in difeafes, 17
Palm-tree, a ftrange relation of its growth, 121
Panicer,
INDEX.

Panicum, 92
Pantomimi, their exact imitation, 54
Paper chambletted, 150
Paracelsus his pygmies, 28. Principles, 75, 76, 136, 189
Parents finding an alteration upon the approach of their children, tho’ unknown to them, 196
Parents and children, 308. Their faults in education, 309. Tho’ that have children have the greatest regard to future times, ibid.
Paris, our author there at his father’s death, 205. Paris, our author there when he was about sixteen, 207. The massacre there, 265, 305
Parker, sir James, slain by Hugh Vaughan at tilts, 445
Parliament court superlative, 572. By the king’s authority alone assembled, ibid.
Their bills are but embryo’s till the king gives them life, 573
Parmenides, prince of, attacks sir John Norris, 523. One of the best commanders of his time, 524. Blamed by the Spaniards, 525. Was to have been of his time, ’524. Blamed by the
Their vir­
Paffions the power of imitation, 53
Parts in living creatures easily reparable, and Parts hardly reparable, 16. Parts of living creatures fever’d, 207. Their virtues in natural magick, ibid. Four parts of a judge, 377
Paffions of the mind, 143, 144, 145. Their several impressions upon the body, ibid. All Paffions refer to the part that labours most, 146. All passions conquer the fear of death, 302. In excess destruc­tive of health, 347
Paffions and disports, how far allowable in courts, 585
Patents, the freest, 391
Patrick, an Augu­
Perfumes of metals, air and water, create sounds, 29. Difference of tones in music caused by the different Percussions, 42, 43. Percussion and impulsion of bod­ies, 155
Perfumes driers, and Perfumes moisteners of the brain, 194. Perfumes procure pleafant and prophetical dreams, 195
Pericles his prefervative against the plague, 203. Studies how to give in his accounts, 288
Peripateticks, their element of fire above, exploded, 9
Perkin, 450. See Warbeck.
Persians demand of the Greeks land and water, 521. Take Ormus from the Spaniards, 531, 533
Perspective, 32
Persians near in blood, or other relations, have many secret passages of sympathy, 205. When doing bufinefs in Perfon beft, 369
Pertinax, the revenge of his death, 306
Peruvians, their commendations, 540
Peflifental classes, if not expelled by fweet end in loofenefs, 17. A probable caufe of Pefilences, 71. ‘Pefilences, tho’ more frequent in summer, more fatal in winter, 81. Pefilent fevers and agues how to be repref’d, 203
Pefilential years, 81. Their prognosticks, 136, 149, 166, 167
Petrifying springs, 23. Again, 221
Phaeton’s car went but a day, 380
Philip of Macedon beat by the Romans, 280. His faying of one who fpoke ill of him, 283. V. p. 284, 285, 287. His dream, 323, 516
Philip archduke, 454
Philo Judaeus his account of fene, 283
Philofophers re­
Physic, if avoided in health, will be strange when you need it; ibid.

Phylogeny, 165

Pickles, 233

Piligrim's reply to Alexander's tender, 285

Physicians both too fudious and negligent of the patient's humour, 347

Physick, 192

Physicians, 349. How to be regulated with regard to speedy profit, and the people with whom you plant, ibid. With regard to foil, minerals and produce, 350. How the government, customs and buildings are to be divided, ibid. When to be planted with women, 351. Plantations at home with regard to orchards, gardens, hop-yards, woods, &c. 579. A further regulation of foreign ones, 580. Fixing of them should proceed rather from the King's leave than command, ibid. 581, 582

Plantationus, 339

Plane-tree watered with wine, 123


Plants
INDEX.

Plants whereof garments are made, 123.
Plant sleeping, ibid. Plants with bearded roots, ibid. Plants effulent, 124, 125. Effulent raw, ibid. Having paffed the fire, ibid. Pars in Plants that are nourishing, 124, 125. Seeds in Plants more strong than either leaf or root, 125. The cause, ibid. In some not, ibid. Plants with milk in them, 126. Plants with red juice, ibid. No Plants have a fait taff, 127. Plants with curled leaves, 128. Plants may be translated into other regions, 129. Yet they like some foils more than others, ibid. Several inftances thereof, 130. Plant without leaves, 156. Singularities in several Plants, 133

Plates of metal affluage swelling, 180


Plate, his notion that all knowledge was but remembrance, 380

Pleasure of the eye and ears, the effect of equality and good proportion, 31

Pleasure and displeasure of the senses, 140

Pliny's mixtures of metals almost forgotten, 211. His account of the Roman mirror, commonly looking-glaifs, 216

Ploeg followed healthful, 194

Plum, of what colour the best, 104. The drier the better fort, ibid.

Plumeage, 134

Plumpinfy in birds, 134. The caufe thereof, ibid.

Plutarch did not write the discourse de primo frigido, 19. His account of Augustus's visiting Alexander's epulchre, 157. Several observations of his, 291. Of fame and superstition, 325. What he faith of Timoleon's fortune, 359, 391

Pluto, 351

Pneumatics in bodies, 75, 174

Poets, the best next to the profe writers, 281

Poison of alps, 127

Poifoning of air, 193

Poifonings by finells, 193. Caution touching Poifoning, ibid.

Poifonous creatures love to lie under odorate herbs, 132

Poifons externally used draw venom, 203

Pois, William de la, brother to the E. of Suffolk, feized by H. VII. 493

Politicians of the weaker fort great dissimblers, 307. Composition of a compleat one, 308

Polycrates, 353

Polygamy falfow'd, 251

Polyphemus's courtefy, to be last eaten up, 518

Vol. III.

Pomanders, or knots of powders, their uses, 195

Pompy, 279. Says duty is more neceffary than life, 283. V. Caefar, and p. 372.

How ruin'd by Caefar, 338

Pons, protector of the knights of Rhodes, 488

Pons, Jasper, a Spaniard, the pope's commiioner in the Jubilee year, 487

Pont-Charenton, the echo there, 55

Pope, what expected from them when they affect the title of Padre commune, 373

Pomfam, speaker of the house of commons, and afterwards chief justice, 287

Pore-blind men fee belt near hand, 182. The caufe, ibid.

Poitures of the body, 148. To be altered every half hour, 232

Potato roots, 13. Potted grow larger, 96

Poults for the gout, 233

Powder in shot, 3

Powder, white, without noise, feems impossible, 31

Powders and liquor, their incorporation, 63

Powder-teafon furpafles all the barbarities of the heathens, 305. Powder and ammunition of all forts we have at home, 577

Power fought by the los of liberty, 314. Power abolute cannot conclude itself, 463

Paynings, Sir Edward, went with a navy in aid of Flanders, 444. Takes Sluice and Bruges, ibid. Sent to the arch-duke Philip to difmis Perkin, 454. Sent to Ireland with a martial commiffion above the deputy, the E. of Kildare, 459. His famous law, 460

Praife the reflection of virtue, 374. Praife in excefs raifes envy, contradiction, &c. 374

Precious stones comfort the spirits, 202

Precipitation, 218. When metal is diffolv'd, and beat down into a powder by salt-water, 220

Prelates, when dangerous, 328, 339

Preparation of faffion, 228. Preparation of garlick, 229. Of damask roes for finell, ibid.

Preftence, the advantage of a good one, 276

Prevention of bodies from corruption, 28.

Prevention of fruits in syrops, 124. Also in powders, ibid. When to gather fruits for Prevention, ibid. Also in bottles in a well, ibid. Preventing grapes long, ibid. Another way thereof, 129

Prevention, what motion it cauSES in bodies, 2, 3

Pretexts never wanting to power, 444

Pretorian
INDEX.

Pretorian courts, 515
Prickles of trees and shrubs, 112. And animals, 204
Pride Christian, 240
Priser leaning to party, like a boat over­
set by uneven weight on one side, 320.
Advice to them, 323. Resemble the heav­
eny bodies, 329
Principiation, according to the chymists,
whether any such thing or no, 217.
None such as ful, sulphur and mercury, 218
Priviledged officers an interruption to justice
as much as privileged places, 494. Privi­
leges of members of parliament, when
burthenfome, 573
Privy counsellors duty, 574. Privy coun­
cil how to be chosen, 575
Prometheus, his scheme to reduce the army, 323
Procession, a pleasant observation upon one,
321, 322
Proclamation of K. James before the book
of common-prayer, 568
Procreations for persons in the service of the
crown, strengthened, 442
Proud Persons how they bear misfortunes, 390
Puebla, Dr. embassador lieger from Spain, 496
Purging medicines, 5. Having their virtue
in a fine spirit, endure not boiling, ibid.
Taking away their unpleasent taft, ibid.
Several ways of the operations of Pur­
ing medicines, 10, 11, 12. Proceeds
from the quantity or quality of the me­
dicines, 11. They work upon the hu­
mours, ibid. Medicines that purge by
fool, and that purge by urine, 12. Their
several caufes, ibid. Work in these ways
as they are given in quantity, ibid. Open
weather bell for Purging, 18. Prepara­
tions before Purging, ibid. Want of pre­
paratives, what hurt it doth, both in
Purging and after Purging, ibid.
Purveyance justly due to the crown, 584.
And yet frequently abused, ibid.
Putrefation, its inception hath in it a ma­
turation, 67. Putrefation, the acceler­
ation of it, 70. The caufe of Putrefation,
ibid. Putrefation whence, 71. Ten
means of inducing Putrefation, ibid. Prohibiting Putrefation, 72. Ten means
of prohibiting it, ibid. 72, 73. Inceptions
of Putrefation, 75, 126. Putrefactions for
the most part small ill, 72, 171. The
caufe, ibid. Putrefation hath affinity
with plants, 121. Putrefation from what
causes it cometh, 171, 172. Putrefation
the subtileft of all motions, 136. V. p.
157. Putrefation induced by the moon­
beams, 186, 187. Doth not rise to its
height at once, 166. Putrefactions of liv­
ing creatures have caufed plagues, 193
Putrefied bodies moft odious to a creature
of the fame kind, 205
Pyrrhus had his teeth undivided, 152. His
ambition, 269
Pythagoras his philofophy, 189. Full of su­
perftition, ibid. Visited Hiero, 286. His
parable, 339

Q. Quaries that grow hard, 176, 177
Quifions touching minerals, 214. Unex­pected furprizes, 334. The use and advan­
tage of asking Quifions, 344, 345. About
the lawfulnefs of a war for the propa­
gating of religion, 548
Quickfliver heated and pent in hath the
fame force with gun-powder, 8. The
coldeft of metals because the fulleft of
spirits, 20. Will not bear the fire, 70
Quickfliver will confevre bodies, 163. And
harden them, ibid.
Quickfliver fixed to the hardnefs of lead,
176, 212. How gilders guard againft
the ill effefts of it, 193. A prefervative
against the plague, 203
Quintilius, Titus, 180, 181. His cenfure of
Antiochus
INDEX.

Antiochus and the AEtolians, 181
Quintus, Pius, the victory of Lepanto owing to him, 538

R.
Abelais, 266
Rabbits, 361
Racking of wine or beer, 68
Rain in AEgypt scarce, 156. The cause thereof, ibid. Several prognosticks of rain, 168, 169
Rainbow, the sweetnefs of its odour, 170
Rams skins good to be applied to wounds, 133
Rape drawn forth into length, what, 427
Ravenfein, lord, rebels againft Maximilian, 433, 443. Carries on a piratical war, 443
Rawleigh, sir Walter, compared the ladies of the queen's bedchamber to witches, 266. Which have power to do hurt, but no good, ibid. V. p. 271, 272.
Reading, how to be regulated, 372
Red within, some few fruits, 105
Red juice in plants, 126
Reeds, a watry plant, 129
Referendaries, 371
Reflection of founds, 54. Not to be guided like the Reflection of species visible, ibid.
Refining of metals insufficient, 176. How to multiply the heat, or open the body in refining, 217
Refraction caufeth the species visible to appear bigger, 154. Other observations about Refractions, ibid.
Remains medical, 228
Remembrancer of the lord treafurer in the exchequer, 560
Repletion hindreth generation, 91. And flature, 108
Reproofs from authority should not be taunting, 315
Resemblances between the species of plants, 133. And likewife among animals, ibid.
Respiration of the world, what, according to Apollonius, 189
Reft caufeth putrefaction, 72
Reftitutions of metals and minerals, 221
Retardation of germination, 89
Revenge, wild justice, and ought to be weeded, 295, 305
Revenge, 305. Puts the law out of office, ibid. Can only take place where there is no law to remedy, 306. Publick Revenue Vol. III.

gets mostly fortunate, 366
Revenues, lundy forts of royal Revenues, 549. Of the crown ought to be preferred, 585
Reverence of one's self a bridle of vice, 251
Revels, how caufed, 11, 12
Richard II. his deposition, 263
Richard III. tyrant in title and regiment, 398. Slain in Bosworth field, ibid. Slew with his own hands Henry VI. ibid. And his two nephews, ibid. Thought to poifon his wife, ibid. Attainted after his death, 404
Ricbes, wherein they refemble muck, 279
Richet, the baggage of virtue, 298, 351. Have fold more men than they have bought out, 351. Unjust means of acquiring them, ibid. Little Riches more hard to be got than great, 352
Rice a nourifhing meat, 14. The general food in Turkey, ibid.
Riding good for the head, 372
Right side and left, 183. Senfes alike strong on both fides, limbs strongeft on the right, ibid. The caufe of each, ibid.
Rivers, the advantage of making them navigable, 579
Roots, the ancients thought fprings chiefly generated there, 6, 7
Romans, how they eftee'm'd a goofe's liver, 13. Their fyle in war and peace, 280. Beat Philip of Macedon, ibid. Open to receive ftrangers into their fbofon, 344. Made wars for the liberty of Greece, 345, 546
Rome heathen, grew great by its reverence of the Gods, 325
Romulus his legacy to the Romans, 345
Rooms built for health, 196
Roots, digging and loofening the earth about them, 87, 91
Roots of fruit-trees multiplied, 90. Root made great, 90, 92. By applying Par nicum about it, 92. Roots potted grow greater, 96. Roots preferred all winter, ibid. Roots bulbous, fibrous and hirifute, 123. Roots of trees that defend deep, 128. Others that spread more, ibid. The caufe of each, ibid.
Rofa folis, the herb, 100
Rifes damask, how confevered, 78, 88. How to make them late and fweer, 89. And come twice a year, 115
Rotten apples putrefy found ones, 71

VOL. III.
Roxolana, the destruction of sultan Mustapha, 328
Rubbing healthful from the instance of carrying horses, 16
Rue improv'd, 98. Rue helpeth the fig-tree, 98
Rufian monks, their prodigious patience, 358
Rust of metals, 70

S
Sailors, their device to get fresh water, from expoing fleeces of wool, 21
Salamander's wool, 158
Salamander, 180. The causes why it endureth the fire, if true, 180
Salginas, a sea-plant, 127
Salick law, several remarks on it, 265
Saltbury, Robert earl of, his character, 292
Salt a good compot, 85, 118. Salt-petre, how to hatch the breeding of it, 118
Salt in plants, 127. Salt hath a sympathy with blood, 205. It is an healer, ibid.
Salt-water, how frequented, or the Salt imbibed, 205. Salt-water paffed through earth becomes fæth, 1. Four differences between the paffing it in vefhels and in pits, 2. Salt-water good for to water fome herbs, 132. Salt-water boiled become more potable, 184. Salt-water sooner difolving Salt, than frefh water, 185. The caufe, ibid. Salt-water fhineth in the deftruction, 74. Salt in its feveral difguifes a compofition of mercury and sulfur, 75, 76
Salt-waters qualified by the pope at the interpoftion of H. VII. 416
Sand for making glafs near mount Carmel, 159
Sand turning minerals into a glaffy subflance, ibid.
Sanguis draconis, the tree that bears it, 126
Sap affifted by leaving top boughs in polling, 89. Sap of trees, 129. The differing nature thereof in feveral trees, ibid.
Sepientia veterum quoted, 26
Saltsey or cloying in meats, 63, 64
Sawge, sir John, plain riding about the walls of Boloign, 447
Sawges, how treated, 351
Saw, sir Henry, his judgment of poets, 281
Saxony, duke of, how he surprizes Dam in favour of Maximilian, 443. Takes Sluice, 444
Scales growing to the teeth as hard as the teeth, 24. Of fiftes refemble rotten

INDEX

wood in their fhining, 74
Sealiger, 137
Scarlet-dye, 185
Scibim more scandalous than corruption of manners, 295, 303
Schoolmen compar'd to the fictions of astrology, 279, 325. Ufield, 372. Fitter to guide penknives than fwords, 518
Schools of learning to be cherished, 569
Scripio Africanus his declension, 362
Sciffle and not Sciffle, 175
Sciffing at holy matters the caufe of Atheifm, 324
Scribonianus, his conspiracy againft Claudius, 289
Scriebbing, 144
Sea-plants, 113. Why Sea-fand produces no plants, 113
Sea clearer, the north wind blowing, than the south, 134. Sea by the bubbles forefhews wind, 168. Sea-water looketh black moved; white refting, 183. The caufe, ibid. Seas shallow and narrow, break more than deep and large, 164
Sea-fish put into frefh waters, 141
Sea-hare coming near the body hurteth the lungs, 205
Sea-fand a good compot, 118. Sea-fands produce no plant, 113
Sea-fights of what confequence, 346
Seasons of plants, 114, 115
Seasons of the year, good obfervations on them by Hippocrates, 82
Seats or houfes, 167. Of justice fet to fale oppression, 318
Sebaflian king of Portugal, his expedition into Africa, 538
Secret proprieties, 208, 209. Secrets not to be reveal'd in anger, why, 379
Secrety the virtue of a confefior, 307.
Secrets, what neceffary to it, 308. The great importance of it to princes, 330. Secrety in council and ceremony in execution, 332.
Secretaries, their tenets inconfiftent with monarchy, 568. Not to have countenance or conivance, 369
Secundine, or caul, 148
Seditions, 320. Seditions and tumults are brother and fifter, ibid. The materials, motives and remedies of them, 321. To be reprefented in their beginnings, 323
Seeds fleeped in feveral liquors haftens their growth, 86. Seeds in plants more frong than either leaf or root, 125. The caufe, ibid. In fome not, ibid. Seeds their choice, 132. Plants growing without Seed, 112, 113. Seeds, if very old, make the plant degenerate, 106
Sejanus, his intimacy with Tiberius, 239.

The
The device to pull him down, 355
Seminaries, when they blossom'd in their
missions into England, 520
Sena lost his windiness by decoction, 5.
Purges melancholy, 11
Seneca's styyle, mortar without lime, 288.
His sentiment of despising death, 302.
Says the good things of adversity are to be
A saying of his, 531. Condemned, 535
Seneca the tragedian, 323
Septimius Severus, 276. Died in dispatch
of Edw. IV.
Serves, their pleasures and displeasures, 140.
Their instruments have a similitude with
that which gives the reflection of the
ones, 59, 60
Serpents of several natures by training,
2. Of several liquors by weight, 3. And
of the same kind of liquors thickened, 4.
Of metals, 163
Evaporation of the cruder parts prohibiteth
putrefaction, 72
Evaporation of bodies by weight, 3, 4. In
liquors, 65, 66, 67
Evaporation of metals and minerals, 271.
Confuits of refining, extracting and prin-
cipiation, ibid.
Septimius Severus, 276. Died in dispatch
of business, 303. His excessive fondness
to his chief favourite, 339. His charac-
ter, 361
Servants feaft, 461
Servants at law, none to be made except
such as are qualified to be judges after-
wards, 571
Serpent, an observation on him, 338
Sertorius, 286
Servants, 314
Servants us'd in Turkey, 142
Setting of wheat, 92
Setting of trees higher or lower, 96
Several fruits upon one tree, 103
Sexes in plants, 131
Sforia, Ludovico, D. of Milan, 462
Shade helpeth some plants, 92
Shadow seeming ever to tremble, 184
Shaking of the head compared to the slaughter
of a bottle, 276
Shallows break more than deeps, 184
Shame, 145, 195. The impressions thereof
infected, 145
Shaw, Dr. his tale at Paul's crofs, 400.
Concerning the babbardry of the children
of Edw. IV., 400
Shell-fish have no bones within, 151. Have
male and female generally, 183
Shell palace almost burnt down, 481
Sheriffs, accounts how to be managed, 557.
Their attendance in the circuits of the
judges, 570. Anciener than the con-
quest, and of great consequence, 571
Shifting for the better helpeth plants and
living creatures, 92
Shining wood, many experiments about it,
74
Shipping, or navy, the walls of England,
576, 577. All the necessary materials
of it our own produce, have fails and
cordage, 577
Shooting, good for the lungs and stomach,
372
Showers good for the fruit, 130. For some
not, ibid. Night-showers better than
day-showers, ibid.
Showers after a long drought cause sick-
ness, if they be gentle, 166. If great,
not, ibid. 194
Sidby's books, 392
Sicknnesses of the summer and the winter, 81
Sighing and yawning, the breath drawn in
by both, 135
Sight, the object thereof, quicker than of
hearing, 48, 49. Sight, 181, 182. Ob-
jects thereof cause great delights in the
spirits, but no great offence, ibid. The
cause, ibid.
Sigismund prince of Transylvania, 538
Silkworms, 139
Silver more easily made than gold, 69, 212.
The Chinese intent upon making it, 69.
Silver half-pence, 299
Simnel Lambert, 407. His history in per-
fonating the second son of Edw. IV.
ibid. 408. Changes his scene and perfo-
nates Edw. Plantagenet, 408. After-
wards proclaim'd at Dublin, 409. Ta-
taken in the battle near Newark, 414.
Confign'd to an office in the king's kit-
chen, 415. Prefer'd to be his falconer,
ibid. 455
Simon, William, 407. Never brought to
trial or execution, 408. Taken at the battle of Stokefield, 414. No more heard of,
415
Simeonites, 287
Simplices special for medicine, 136, 137.
Such as have subtle parts without acrimo-
ny, ibid. Many creatures bred of put-
refaction are such, ibid. Also purrefac-
tions of plants, ibid.
Simulation and disimulation, 307. A weak
kind of policy, ibid. And differ from
judgment, ibid. Three degrees of it,
ibid. Its advantages, 308. The case of
dissembling knowledge, 349
Sineus much affected with cold, because
without blood, 136
Single life, the causeth of it, 309. Recom-
mended to churchmen, ibid. Most char-
itable and yet most cruel, 310
Singu-
INDEX.

Vetraus, 184

Trent, council of, 325

Trepidation of water hath an affinity with the letter L, 42. Trepidation on the fight of offensive objects, 162

Trijals for whosefome airs, 158, 159

Triumvirate of kings, 328

Trotchifs of vipers much magnified, 136.

Again, 203

Truths, 301. Theological, philosophical and political, 302. Truth and falsehood will not incorporate, but resembhe Nebuchadnezzar's image, 304. The concealment of it from princes, sometimes as bad as treachery, 565

Tuft of mosses on a briar-bush, 112

Turks great fitters, 150. To them bathing good, ibid. Empoision the water, 193. Make an expedition into Peria, 287. Despite marriage, 310. Turks cruel to men and compassionate to beafts, 316. Warlike, 345. Why always a juft caufe of war against them, 517

Turky, 14. Turkish turban, 237

Twelve tables of Rome, 378

Twice a year fruits, 114, 115

Tying of the point, 186, 201

Tyranny over mens understandings and beliefs much affected, 209

Tyrant in title, 308. Princes think it moft politic to have a Tyrant reign in their neighbourhood, 418

V.

Agabonds and gamesters coupled together in the flatuses, 495

Vain-glory, 375. Essential to soldiers and commanders, 375

Value of several kinds, 531

Vapours metalline, very noxious, 193

Vapour of char-coal, or of sea-coal, or of a room-new plaiftered, mortal, 193, 194

Vapours which taken outwardly would confente the spirits, 195

Vatican, 364

Vegetables roting upon the ground a good compoft, 119. Several instances thereof, ibid.

Venus, 173

Venous bodies, 6

Venoms quality of man's flesh, 363

Venus, 137. In ecefs dimmeth the fight, ibid. The acts of it, ibid. Men more inclined in winter, women in summer, 137

Verdië falls, remediable, 363

Vere, fir Francis, acrithb the victory at the battle of Newport to the English, 528

Vere, fir Horace, 528

Verjuice, 188

Vermin frighted with the head of a wolf, 204

Verunfel president of Flanders, 469

Vespasian reprimands his fon Domitian, 279

Vespasian defeats a corrupt suitor, 282.

His queftion to Apollonius, ibid. Sets a tribute upon urine, 284. Died with a jeft, 303. Changed for the better by power, 313

Vesuvius, the countries about it enriched by the eruptions, 119, 160

Vices, if profitable, the virtuous man the finner, 294

Vicifitude of wet and dry, hot and cold, haften putreffaction, 71, 72, 73

Vicifitude of things, 380. In earth and in the heavens, ibid. In religion, 381. In wars, ibid. In weapons of war, 382

Villiers, fir George, afterwards duke of Bucks, 564. Firft favourite to the king, 565. Caution'd, becaufe forne near in blood to him were thought Papifts, 568. Should give no scandal by vain or oppreffive carriage, 584. Is in the quality of a centinel, 585


Vine graffed upon Vine three ways, 131

Vinegar, why it will not burn, 67. See p. 188.

Violent motion the caufe of all mechanical operations, 3. And yet not sufficiently inquired into, ibid.

Violet vinegar, how best prepar'd, 4

Virgil his observation of the wolf, 342, 343

Virginian tobacco, 178. How it suffered there, 350

Virtuous men like fome spices, which give not their fweet fmalil till they are crufted, 278, 307

Viftibles hitherto the fubject of knowledge, 26. Mingle not in the medium as audibles do, 51. The caufe thereof, ibid. Several contents of Viftibles and audibles, 56, 57. Several differents of Viftibles and audibles, 57, 58. Viftible species, 154. Viftibles and audibles, 196. Two lights of
INDEX.

Waking, birds kept waking to increase their attention,

Wales. 176

Walking up hill and down, 149

Walking, 532. See Flemings.

Walls of brick, but not of stone, wholesome, 196

War incited by music, 31. When lawful,

War with Spain, consideration concerning it, 513. Changes in Wars, 381, 382. Art of War improved, 382. War to maintain itself, 441. Jut cause, sufficient forces, prudent designs, necessary to a war, 514. Not confined to the place of the quarrel, 516. Why always a just cause of War against the Turk, 517. War, defensive, what, 516, 521. Wars with subjects like an angry suit for a man's own, 538. Wars foreign and civil,

War holy, 537. The schoolmen want words to defend it, when St. Bernard wanted words to commend it, 521. For the propagation of the faith, whether lawful or obligatory, 541. Several questions touching the lawfulness, 543

INDEX.

481. The account of his examination, ibid. Makes his escape, and gets into the priory of Shene, 483. Set in the stocks twice, where he reads his confession, and then sent to the tower, 484. Where he seduces the earl of Warwick into a plot against the lieutenant, ibid. Arraigned for treasons committed since his coming into this kingdom, condemned and executed at Tyburn, 485

Warham, sir William, LL. D. sent to the archdeacon Philip against Perkin, 454. His Speech, 454, 455. Matter of the rolls and commissiner for trade, 469

Warlike people their importance, 342, 343. Profession of arms necessary to a warlike nation, 345. England warlike, 431, 432

Warm water founds less than cold, 40. Whether good for plants, 93. Makes a fruit with little or no core, 106

Warmb a special means to make ground fruitful, 119

Warts cured by the juice of sow-thistle, 126. Taken away by lard, or an elder-blossom rooting, 207

Warwick, earl of, 407. See Plantagenet

Water, salt, how made fresh. Foul, how clarified, 2. How separated from wine, 3, 4. Turned into ice by snow, nitre and salt, if it may be transferred to the turning of air into water, 7


Water-fowls flocking to the shore portend rain, 168

Weapon anointed, 207, 208. Weapons and ammunition of all sorts should be stored up, 577

Weapon of war, 382

Weight of the dissolution of iron in Aquafortis, 161

Weight, how it causes separation of bodies; 3, 4. Weight in air and water, 223

Wheat, 92

Whispering place, 38. You can't make a tone or ring in whispering, 45


White gunpowder, 31

Whitehead favoured by queen Elizabeth, 171

White robe, the clearness of that title, 399

Wholesale feats, 159. Trial for them, 166. Moiit air not good, ibid. Inequality of air naught, 166, 167

Wife and children hostages to fortune, 309. Reckoned only as bills of charges by some, ibid. Wives good and bad, 310. Are mistresses, companions, nurses, ibid. Wives of kings, 328

Wildfires, why water will not quench them, 150

Wild herbs shew the nature of the ground, 130

Wilford, Ralph, counterfeit earl of Warwick, 484

William I. declines the title of conqueror in the beginning of his reign, 400. And claims by the Will of Edw. the confessor, ibid.

Willingboky, sir Robert, sent to Sheriff-Hutton, 400. Conveys Edward Plantagenet, and shuts him up in the tower, ibid. Created lord Brook, 405

Winds vary founds, 57

Winds southern dispose mens bodies to heaviness, 81. Winds southern without rain feverish, 160. Winds gathered for freshehns, 158. Breathing out of the earth, 168. Prognosticks of Winds from animals, 169

Widow trees, 109

Windham, sir John, beheaded by H. VII. 493

Windfor treaty with the king of Castile, 495

Wine and water separated by weight, 3, 4. Trial thereof in two glasses, ibid. When
INDEX.

it will operate, and when not, ibid. Spirit of Wine burn'td, 78. Mingled with wax, the operation of it, 78, 79. Wine whether separated from water by paffing through ivy-wood. 2. Wine burnt inflameth less because the finer spirit is evaporated, 5. Wine, how made more fruitful, 10. Wine sparingly to be used in consumptions, 15. Retards the germination of seeds, 86, 87. Said by the ancients to make the plane-tree fruitful, 123. Wine belt in a dry vintage, 130. New Wine let down into the sea presently made potable, 133. For what bodies good and for what hurtful, 147. How to correct the Greek Wines, that they may not fume or inebritate, 160. Wine for the spirits, 228. Against melancholy, ibid. Wine in which gold is quenched recommended, 232. Wines and woads not to be imported but upon English bottoms, 432. Winter and summer sicknesses, 81. Warm Winters deftroy trees, 130. Signs of a cold Winter, 149, 167. Winter sleepers, 188. Wisdom for a man's self, 334. Wife men learn more by fools, than fools by wife men, 289. Difference between a wife and cunning man, 332. Such as are wife only in appearance, 337. Wits, 348. We should distinguish between the faltness and the bitterness of it, 348, 349. Witches said to eat man's flesh greedily, 180. Their confessions not rashly to be credited, 190, 191. Of what kind, 199. Work by imagination, ibid. Ointments said to be used by them, 204. Wolf's guts applied to the belly cure the colic, 204. Head hung up frighteth Vermin, ibid. Wolsey, Thomas, employ'd to conclude a match for H. VII. with Margaret duech's dowager of Savoy, 500. Was then the king's chaplain, ibid. Woman's milk why only good for infants, 14. Women making an ill choice generally maintain their conduct, 391. Made capital to carry them away forcibly, 427. Advanced by their husbands, should not alien, 463. The regiment of them con sider'd, 549. Wonder, 145. The impressions thereof, ibid. In Wonder the spirits fly not as in fear, but settle, ibid. Wood shining in the dark, 7+. Bathed in hot ashes becometh flexible, 173. Woodbine, 100, 133. Woodraise, 100, 101. Is found only on hot herbs, ibid. Woodville, lord, uncle to the Q. of H. VII. 421. Governor of the isle of Wight, ibid. Against the king's commandment raises 400 men, and passes to the assistance of the duke of Britainy, ibid. Slain fighting valiantly for the Britains, 426. Wool attractive of water, 21, 25. Through a vessel, ibid. World suppos'd by some to be a living creature, 189. Worms foretell rain, 169. Worlsey William, a Dominican, and dean of Paul's, not tried for Perkin's treason, 456. Wotton, sir Henry, his sentiment how contemptible critics were, 290. Wounds, some applications to them, 133. Cured by skins of beasts newly pull'd off, and whites of eggs, 133. Wounds made with brafs easier to cure than with iron, 161. Writs have a sympathy with the head, and other parts, 26. Writs original, no certain beginning of them, 552. Writs of covenant and of entry, 555. Writ of certiorari in the exchequer, 557. X. Xenophon commends the nurture of the Perian children for feeding on cardamon, 75. Observes the Medes painted their eyes, 150. Xerxes, how driven out of Greece by a rumour, 383. Ximenes, cardinal, calls the smoke of the fire-arms his incence, 288. Y. Awning hindereth hearing, 60. Because the membrane is extended, ibid. It is a motion of imitation, 62, 63. In Tawning dangerous to pick the ear, 135. Years fleer cause corn to degenerate, 107. Years pestifential, 149. See Pestifential. Yellow colour in herbs, 105. Lefs succulent and generally fland to the north, ibid. Yolk of the egg conduceth little to the generation of the bird, 25. Only to the nourishment,
INDEX.

nourishment, ibid.
York, house of, the indubitate heirs of the crown, 399, 400. The people's affection to it, 405, 409
Young trees, which bear best, 126. Have more watry juices, and less concocted, ibid.
Younger brothers seldom fortunate where the elder are disinherited, 309
Youth and age, 361. The influence of customs in Youth, 358. Youth and age their advantages and disadvantages,

361. In the Youth of a state arms flourish, in the middle learning, 382

Z
Ant, 186, 201
Zelim the first of the Ottomans who shaved his beard, 278
Nova Zembla, 188, 194
Zones torrid, less tolerable for heats than the equinocial, 84. Three causes thereof, ibid.

FINIS.